

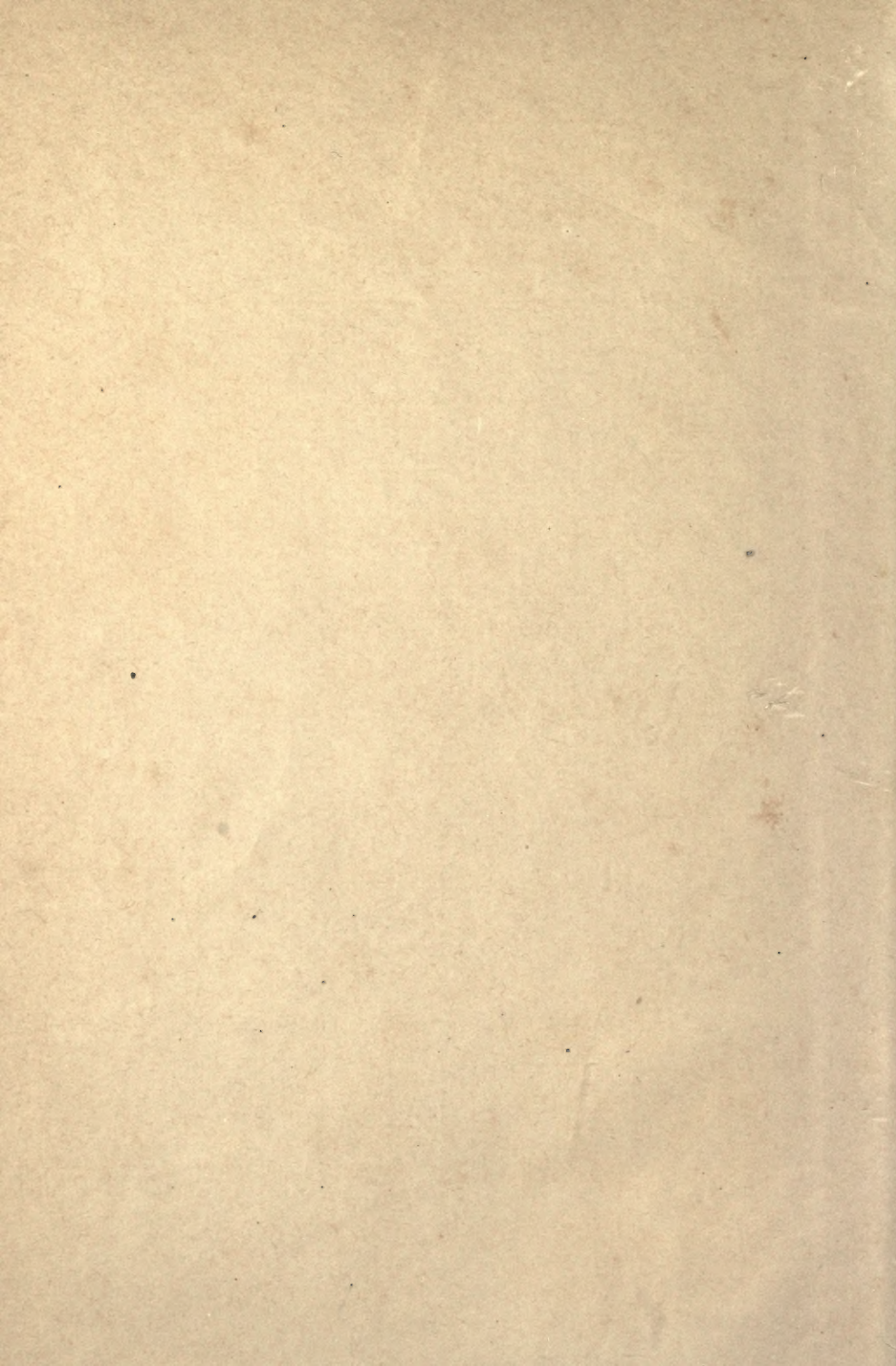
CONVERSATIONAL JAPANESE  
FOR BEGINNERS

BY ARTHUR ROSE-INNES

alt









CONVERSATIONAL JAPANESE  
FOR BEGINNERS BY  
ARTHUR ROSE-INNES

PART I  
  
GRADUATED EXERCISES  
  
IN  
  
CONVERSATIONAL JAPANESE.

---

NEW EDITION

---

KELLY & WALSH, LTD.  
  
YOKOHAMA, SHANGHAI, HONGKONG and SINGAPORE.

(All rights reserved.)

THE BOX OF CURIOS PRESS, YOKOHAMA.



CONVERSATION EXERCISES  
FOR BEGINNERS  
IN JAPANESE

PART I

GRADUATED EXERCISES

IN

CONVERSATION IN JAPANESE

NEW EDITION

KELLY & WALSH LTD.

YOKOHAMA, SHANGHAI, HONGKONG & MANILA

PRINTED IN JAPAN

MADE IN JAPAN



# CONVERSATIONAL JAPANESE FOR BEGINNERS.

## INTRODUCTION.

This book consists of three parts : Part I, Graduated Exercises in Conversational Japanese ; Part II, Elementary Grammar of the Japanese Spoken Language ; Part III, Vocabulary of Common Japanese Words.\*

The learning of a language is a complicated process. In general it may be said to consist of two parts, theory and practice. Theory refers to the knowledge of words, their peculiarities, special uses, inflexions, how they depend on each other and how they are combined in a sentence. Elementary notions on these subjects as regards Colloquial Japanese will be found in Parts II and III of this work. Practice consists in learning to express oneself without difficulty or hesitation, in acquiring a correct pronunciation and in training the ear to understand the language as spoken by the natives. Practice, of course, cannot be learned from books ; however, the Exercises in Part I, supply models and materials for a great number of sentences which can be used in real life.

The student is strongly advised to speak Japanese or try to speak Japanese on every possible occasion : to servants, rikisha-men, tramway-conductors, shop-attendants, etc.; and to continue speaking Japanese even when the other person answers in quite good English. Get as much practice in Japanese as you can, and don't go about giving free lessons in English.

The author suggests that the student should begin with the Exercises, studying only such parts of the Grammar as are indicated at the beginning of each Exercise and consulting the Vocabulary when necessary. No particular method of study is recommended in detail ; but the author believes that the pupil should repeat each sentence after his teacher several times until he can say it with a fairly good pronunciation and a reasonable degree of fluency ; he should also have a knowledge of what the sentence means while he is saying it ; the lesson should not be considered as known until he can do all the above with his book closed.

By the time the student has finished the Exercises, he will have gone all through the Grammar, and he should then, if he has the courage, read the Vocabulary, which contains many useful phrases not found in the Exercises, and many hints regarding the use of common words, which frequently are a source of trouble to the beginner.

The Japanese Exercises were made in Japanese by a Japanese under the author's direction ; they are in no sense a translation of the English ; on the contrary, the English is a translation of the Japanese. It should be clearly understood that the version given is only one out of many equally good and correct translations which might be given. This will be readily understood when it is remembered, that in Japanese nouns have neither gender, number

\* For the convenience of those who wish to read the Japanese Characters from the very beginning of their studies, the Japanese text of Part I has been printed apart in Japanese Characters with *kana* alongside : this is called Part IV.



nor case, and verbs have often no subject expressed nor have they any inflexions corresponding to person or number ; in real life, the meaning is determined by context and circumstances.

In the Vocabulary at the end of this book the etymology of words is given when it is considered helpful to the student. The average educated Japanese has no notion of what etymology means ; and when asked the origin of a word will immediately start explaining the characters or symbols with which it is written. In this matter the author's chief guide has been Ōtsuki's *Genkai*.

Besides the present book, the student who wishes, not only to go through these Exercises, but to express his own ideas, must have an English-Japanese Dictionary : the best one no doubt is, Hobart-Hampden and Parlett's *English-Japanese Dictionary of the Spoken Language* ; if a pocket dictionary is desired, the author's *English-Japanese Conversation Dictionary* may prove useful. Japanese-English dictionaries are very numerous but mostly unsatisfactory as they are generally made for the use of the Japanese ; the best one is perhaps Brinkley's.

The author begs also to recommend the following : Lange's *A Text-book of Colloquial Japanese*, for exercises of a more advanced type ; Chamberlain's *Handbook of Colloquial Japanese*, for further studies of the grammar ; Imbrie's *Handbook of English-Japanese Etymology*, for the translation of those words in English which are of special difficulty. These books the author has consulted throughout and used freely.

The author's *Examples of Conversational Japanese*, Parts I and II may be useful to the student who has made some progress in the present book. Part II uses no word not contained in this work, Part I has a somewhat more extensive vocabulary but an English translation is given along with the Japanese text. Part III of this work is the Japanese text of Parts I and II in Japanese characters with *kana* alongside.

Those who wish to obtain some knowledge of the written characters cannot do better than study Chamberlain's *The Study of Japanese Writing* ; a cheap extract on the same subject is the author's *Three Thousand Chinese-Japanese Characters*.

The letter A, B, C or D found after each sentence gives an idea of the degree of politeness : 'A' sentences should be used to inferiors only ; 'B' are familiar ; 'C' are polite in an ordinary way ; and 'D' are somewhat formally polite.

Black-face numbers refer to the paragraphs of Part II.

---



# PART I.

## GRADUATED EXERCISES IN CONVERSATIONAL JAPANESE.

### EXERCISE 1.

Japanese nouns have no number and, as a rule, no gender.

Adjectives in Japanese, as in English, have no gender or number. Japanese verbs have no person or number.

True adjectives in Japanese end in *ai*, *ii*, *oi* or *ui*. Used attributively the adjective is placed, as in English, before the noun. When used as predicates of affirmative sentences in familiar speech there is no need of any verb in Japanese; in less familiar speech *no desū* or simply *desū* is added.

The negative construction of adjectives is shown in 195; *nai* is familiar and must be replaced by *arimasen* in polite speech.

Particles or postpositions are placed after the word to which they refer.

*empitsū* : a pencil.

*mise* : a shop ; an office.

*uchi* : a house.

*kono* : this.

*sono* : that (not far).

*ano* : that (far).

*takai* : dear ; high.

*yasui* : cheap.

*ōkii* : big.

*chiisai* : small.

*kuroi* : black.

*desū* : am ; is ; are.

*arimasen* ; *nai* (familiar) : is not.

*wa* : a particle used for emphasis or contrast, often placed after the subject of a sentence.

*no* : a particle with many varied uses.

*ka* : an interrogative particle.

1. *Kono chiisai mise wa takai* (B). 2. *Ano ōkii mise wa yasui no desū* (C).  
3. *Kono chiisai mise wa yasui no desū ka?* (C). 4. *Sono chiisai mise wa takai no desū* (C). 5. *Chiisai mise wa yasuku arimasen* (C). 6. *Kono empitsū wa takai desū ka?* (C). 7. *Sono empitsū wa takaku nai* (B). 8. *Kono uchi wa ōkii ka?* (B). 9. *Kono uchi wa ōkiku nai* (B). 10. *Sono empitsū wa kuroi no desū ka?* (C). 11. *Kono empitsū wa kuroi* (B). 12. *Ano uchi wa chiisai ka?* (B). 13. *Ano uchi wa ōkii desū* (C). 14. *Ano uchi wa takai desū ka?* (C). 15. *Ano uchi wa takaku arimasen* (C). 16. *Sono empitsū wa yasui no desū ka?* (C). 17. *Kono empitsū wa yasui* (B).

1. This small shop is dear. 2. That big shop is cheap. 3. Is this small shop cheap? 4. That small shop is dear. 5. Small shops are not cheap. 6. Is this pencil dear? 7. That pencil is not dear. 8. Is this house big? 9. This house is not big. 10. Is that pencil black? 11. This pencil is black. 12. Is that house small? 13. That house is big. 14. Is that house high? 15. That house is not high. 16. Is that pencil cheap? 17. This pencil is cheap.



## EXERCISE 2.

True adjectives when used as predicates in connection with the polite verb *gozaru* change their terminations as shown in 192.

The negative construction of these sentences is shown in 196.

*hana* : a flower.

*heya* : a room.

*hon* : a book.

*inu* : a dog.

*kami* : paper.

*kodomo* : a child ; boy ; girl.

*tokei* : a watch ; clock.

*tsükue* : a desk.

*akai* : red.

*kitanai* : dirty.

*shiroi* : white.

*gozaimasü* (polite) : am ; is ; are.

*gozaimasen* (polite) : is not.

*wataküshi* ; *watashi* : I.

*anata* : you.

1. *Sono tsükue wa takö gozaimasü ka ?* (D). 2. *Kono tsükue wa yasü gozaimasü* (D). 3. *Ano hana wa akö gozaimasü* (D). 4. *Sono kami wa shirö gozaimasü ka ?* (D). 5. *Kono kami wa shirö gozaimasen ; kono kami wa akö gozaimasü* (D). 6. *Anata wa ökiü gozaimasü* (D). 7. *Watashi wa ökiku arimasen* (C). 8. *Kono heya wa kitanö gozaimasü* (D). 9. *Ano kodomo wa chiisö gozaimasü ka ?* (D). 10. *Ano kodomo wa chiisö gozaimasen* (D). 11. *Wataküshi wa chiisö gozaimasü* (D). 12. *Kono kuroi inu wa kitanö gozaimasü ka ?* (D). 13. *Sono kuroi inu wa kitanaku arimasen* (C). 14. *Kono hon wa takö gozaimasü ka ?* (D). 15. *Kono hon wa takaku nai* (B). 16. *Ano uchi wa akö gozaimasü ka ?* (D). 17. *Ano uchi wa akaku nai* (B). 18. *Kono tokei wa yasü gozaimasü* (D). 19. *Ano ökii mise wa yasü gozaimasü ka ?* (D). 20. *Ano mise wa yasü gozaimasen* (D). 21. *Ano mise wa kitanö gozaimasü* (D). 22. *Kono tokei wa takai desü ka ?* (C). 23. *Kono tokei wa takö gozaimasen* (D). 24. *Sono empitsü wa kurö gozaimasü ka ?* (D). 25. *Kono empitsü wa kurö gozaimasen ; kono empitsü wa akö gozaimasü* (D). 26. *Sono akai hon wa takö gozaimasü ka ?* (D). 27. *Kono akai hon wa takaku nai* (B). 28. *Ano takai uchi wa kitanö gozaimasü ka ?* (D). 29. *Ano uchi wa kitanaku arimasen* (C). 30. *Kono heya wa chiisö gozaimasü ka ?* (D). 31. *Kono heya wa ökiü gozaimasü* (D). 32. *Ano ökii heya wa kitanai* (B). 33. *Kono kuroi inu wa chiisö gozaimasü* (D). 34. *Ano ökii inu wa kitanö gozaimasü ka ?* (D). 35. *Ano inu wa kitanai* (B). 36. *Kono kodomo wa kitanai* (B). 37. *Ano takai uchi wa shiroi desü ka ?* (C). 38. *Ano uchi wa shiroku nai* (B).

1. Is that desk dear ? 2. This desk is cheap. 3. That flower is red. 4. Is that paper white ? 5. This paper is not white ; this paper is red. 6. You are big. 7. I am not big. 8. This room is dirty. 9. Is that child small ? 10. That child is not small. 11. I am small. 12. Is this black dog dirty ? 13. That black dog is not dirty. 14. Is this book dear ? 15. This book is not dear. 16. Is that house red ? 17. That house is not red. 18. This watch is cheap. 19. Is that big shop cheap ? 20. That shop is not cheap. 21. That shop is dirty. 22. Is this clock dear ? 23. This clock is not dear. 24. Is that pencil black ? 25. This pencil is not black ; this pencil is red. 26. Is that red book dear ? 27. This red book is not dear. 28. Is that high house dirty ? 29. That house is not dirty. 30. Is this room small ? 31. This room is big. 32. That big room is dirty. 33. That black dog is small. 34. Is that big dog dirty ? 35. That dog is dirty. 36. This child is dirty. 37. Is that high house white ? 38. That house is not white.



### EXERCISE 3.

Certain nouns followed by the particle *na* or *no* have the force of adjectives, and are called quasi-adjectives.

When used predicatively *de* takes the place of *na* (or *no*) and is followed by *aru*, *arimasu* or *gozaimasu* according to the degree of politeness. Note that *de aru* is generally abbreviated to *da*, and *de arimasu* to *desu*.

In the negative *na* (or *no*) is changed to *de wa* (often abbreviated to *ja*).

Some true adjectives may be used attributively as quasi-adjectives in *na* after suppressing the final *i* of the adjective. Thus *oki uchi* or *oki na uchi* a big house; *chiisai mise* or *chiisa na mise* a small shop.

*kin* (noun); *kin no* (adj.): gold.

*baka*: a fool.

*baka na*: foolish; silly.

*benri na*: convenient.

*kirei na*: pretty; clean.

*rikō na*: clever.

*murasaki no*: violet (colour).

*oki na*: big.

*chiisa na*: small.

*na*: a particle used for forming quasi-adjectives.

*no*: a particle used for forming quasi-adjectives; also means possession; of.

*wata(kū)shi no*: my; mine.

*anata no*: your; yours.

*de*: a particle.

*da* (= *de aru*): is.

*ja* = *de wa*.

1. *Ano kirei na inu wa rikō desu ka?* (C).
2. *Ano inu wa baka de gozaimasu* (D).
3. *Kono chiisa na inu wa rikō de gozaimasu* (D).
4. *Kono ōki na tsūkue wa benri de gozaimasu ka?* (D).
5. *Kono tsūkue wa benri de wa nai* (B).
6. *Anata no tokei wa kin de gozaimasu ka?* (D).
7. *Kono tokei wa kin ja nai* (B).
8. *Anata no empitsū wa murasaki de gozaimasu ka?* (D).
9. *Watashi no empitsū wa murasaki ja arimasen*; *watashi no wa kuroi desu* (C).
10. *Kono murasaki no empitsū wa benri desu* (C).
11. *Ano ōki na kodomo wa baka desu ka?* (C).
12. *Ano kodomo wa rikō da* (B).
13. *Anata no heya wa kirei de gozaimasu ka?* (D).
14. *Watakūshi no heya wa kirei de wa gozaimasen* (D).
15. *Kono kirei na hon wa anata no hon desu ka?* (C).
16. *Sono hon wa watashi no ja nai* (B).
17. *Anata no empitsū wa murasaki desu ka?* (C).
18. *Watakūshi no empitsū wa murasaki de gozaimasu* (D).
19. *Kin wa kirei da* (B).
20. *Kin no tokei wa kirei desu* (C).
21. *Inu no uchi wa chiisai* (B).
22. *Sono kirei na hon wa Tarō no hon desu* (C).
23. *Kono murasaki no empitsū wa anata no desu ka?* (C).
24. *Sono empitsū wa waashi no ja nai*; *watashi no wa akai* (B).
25. *Ano ōki na uchi wa anata no uchi desu ka?* (C).
26. *Ano uchi wa watashi no ja nai* (B).
27. *Watashi no uchi wa chiisa na uchi desu* (C).
28. *Ano kodomo wa baka na kodomo de gozaimasu ka?* (D).
29. *Ano kodomo wa baka ja nai* (B).

1. Is that pretty dog clever?
2. That dog is stupid.
3. This small dog is clever.
4. Is this big desk convenient?
5. This desk is not convenient.
6. Is your watch gold? (is yours a gold watch?)
7. This watch is not gold.
8. Is yours a violet pencil?
9. My pencil is not violet; it is black.
10. This violet pencil is convenient.
11. Is that big boy silly?
12. That boy is clever.
13. Is yours a pretty room?
14. My room is not pretty.
15. Is this pretty book yours?
16. That book is not mine.
17. Is yours a violet pencil?
18. My pencil is violet.
19. Gold is pretty.
20. Gold watches are pretty.
21. The dog's kennel is small.
22. That pretty book is Tarō's.
23. Is this violet pencil yours?
24. That pencil is not mine; mine is red.
25. Is that big house yours?
26. That house is not mine.
27. Mine is a small house.
28. Is that a silly child?
29. That child is not silly.

## EXERCISE 4.

When the verb 'to be' has a noun as a predicate, the noun is followed by *de aru*, *de arimasu* or *de gozaimasu* in the affirmative, and *de wa nai*, *de wa arimasen* or *de wa gozaimasen* in the negative. Remember the contractions noted in the previous lesson.

'Have (got)' meaning 'possess' is translated by *aru*, *arimasu* or *gozaimasu* in the affirmative, and by *nai*, *arimasen* or *gozaimasen* in the negative; the English subject takes the postposition *wa*, and the object becomes the Japanese subject and takes the postposition *ga*.

*ginkō* : a bank.

*hagaki* : a postcard.

*kitte* : a postage stamp.

*neko* : a cat.

*shimbun* : a newspaper.

*kore* : this (noun).

*are* ; *sore* : that (noun).

*to* : and.

*ga* : postposition often used after the subject of a sentence.

*nani* ? *nan* ? what ?

1. *Are wa anata no uchi desu ka* ? (C). 2. *Are wa watakushi no uchi de gozaimasu* (D). 3. *Kore wa Tarō no neko de gozaimasu ka* ? (D). 4. *Sore wa Tarō no neko da* (B). 5. *Ano takai uchi wa ginkō ka* ? (B). 6. *Ano uchi wa ginkō ja nai* (B). 7. *Sore wa anata no kitte de gozaimasu ka* ? (D). 8. *Kore wa watakushi no kitte de wa gozaimasen* (D). 9. *Anata wa shimbun ga arimasu ka* ? (C). 10. *Watashi wa shimbun ga aru* (B). 11. *Anata wa hagaki to kitte ga gozaimasu ka* ? (D). 12. *Watashi wa hagaki wa arimasu* ; *kitte wa arimasen* (C). 13. *Anata wa murasaki no empitsū ga aru ka* ? (B). 14. *Watashi wa murasaki no empitsū ga nai* (B). 15. *Anata wa kami to empitsū ga arimasu ka* ? (C). 16. *Watashi wa kami ga gozaimasen* (D). 17. *Watashi wa neko ga arimasu* ; *anata wa nani ga arimasu ka* ? (C). 18. *Watashi wa chiisai inu ga aru* (B). 19. *Are wa nan de gozaimasu ka* ? (D). 20. *Are wa ginkō desu* (C). 21. *Kono ōki na uchi wa nan de gozaimasu ka* ? (D). 22. *Kore wa mise da* (B). 23. *Sore wa anata no tsukue desu ka* ? (C). 24. *Kore wa watashi no de wa arimasen* (C). 25. *Watashi no tsukue wa chiisō gozaimasu* (D). 26. *Sore wa shimbun desu ka* ? (C). 27. *Kore wa shimbun de gozaimasu* (D). 28. *Kono ginkō wa ōkiū gozaimasu ka* ? (D). 29. *Kono ginkō wa ōkiū gozaimasen* (D). 30. *Are wa rikō na neko desu ka* ? (C). 31. *Are wa baka na neko da* (B). 32. *Anata no neko wa kurō gozaimasu ka* ? (D). 33. *Watashi no neko wa shirō gozaimasu* (D). 34. *Are wa nan desu ka* ? (C). 35. *Are wa neko de gozaimasu* (D).

1. Is that your house ? 2. That is my house. 3. Is this Tarō's cat ? 4. That is Tarō's cat. 5. Is that tall building a bank ? 6. That building is not a bank. 7. Is that your stamp ? 8. This stamp is not mine. 9. Have you a newspaper ? 10. I have a newspaper. 11. Have you a postcard and a stamp ? 12. I have got a postcard; I haven't got a stamp. 13. Have you got a violet pencil ? 14. I haven't got a violet pencil. 15. Have you got some paper and a pencil ? 16. I have not got any paper. 17. I have a cat, what have you got ? 18. I have a little dog. 19. What is that ? 20. That is not a bank. 21. What is this big house ? 22. This is a shop. 23. Is that your desk ? 24. This is not mine. 25. Mine is a small desk. 26. Is that a newspaper ? 27. This is a newspaper. 28. Is this a big bank ? 29. This is not a big bank. 30. Is that a clever cat ? 31. That is a stupid cat. 32. Is your cat black ? 33. My cat is white. 34. What is that ? 35. That is a cat.



## EXERCISE 5.

In the sense of 'to be (in a place)' 'there is' use the verb *aru*, *arimasu* or *gozaimasu* if speaking of things without life; and *iru*, *imasu* or *orimasu* if speaking of living things. The negative forms of these latter verbs are *i-nai*, *imasen*, *orimasen*.

*hako* : a box.

*imo* : potato.

*tegami* : a letter.

*uma* : a horse.

*ushi* : a bull ; cow ; ox.

*San* : Mr ; Mrs ; Master ; Miss.

*koko* : here ; this place.

*asûko* ; *soko* : there ; that place.

*doko* ? where ?

*ni* : in ; at ; to ; etc.

1. *Kami wa doko ni arimasu ka ?* (C). 2. *Kami wa ano ôki na hako ni aru* (B).
3. *Koko ni ginkô ga gozaimasu ka ?* (D). 4. *Koko ni ôki na ginkô ga arimasu* (C).
5. *Asûko ni tokei ga gozaimasu ka ?* (D). 6. *Asûko ni wa tokei wa nai* (B). 7. *Sono hako ni imo ga aru ka ?* (B).
8. *Kono hako ni wa imo ga gozaimasen* (D). 9. *Anata no uchi ni uma ga imasu ka ?* (C).
10. *Watakushi no uchi ni uma ga orimasen* (C). 11. *Yamada San no uchi ni ushi ga iru ka ?* (B).
12. *Yamada San no uchi ni ushi to uma ga iru* (B). 13. *Tarô San wa uchi ni imasu ka ?* (C).
14. *Tarô wa uchi ni orimasen* (C). 15. *Anata no uchi ni neko ga imasu ka ?* (C).
16. *Watashi no uchi ni wa neko ga imasen* (C). 17. *Yamada San no tegami wa ano hako ni arimasu ka ?* (C).
18. *Yamada San no tegami wa asûko ni wa arimasen* (C). 19. *Soko ni uma ga orimasu ka ?* (C).
20. *Koko ni wa uma ga i-nai* (B). 21. *Imo wa doko ni gozaimasu ka ?* (D).
22. *Imo wa kono hako ni aru* (B). 23. *Jirô San wa doko ni orimasu ka ?* (C).
24. *Jirô wa Yamada San no uchi ni orimasu* (C). 25. *Anata no hako wa kirei de gozaimasu* (D).
26. *Kore wa Tarô San no tegami desu ka ?* (C). 27. *Sore wa Tarô San no tegami ja nai* (B).
28. *Tarô San no tegami wa doko ni aru ka ?* (B). 29. *Tarô San no tegami wa ano kirei na hako ni gozaimasu* (D).
30. *Ano ôki na uma wa Yamada San no desu ka ?* (C). 31. *Are wa Yamada San no uma ja nai, Jirô no uma da* (B).
32. *Anata no shiroi neko wa doko ni imasu ka ?* (C). 33. *Shiroi neko wa asûko ni orimasu* (C).
34. *Shimbun wa soko ni arimasu ka ?* (C). 35. *Koko ni wa shimbun ga nai* (B).

1. Where is the paper ? 2. The paper is in that big box. 3. Is there a bank here ? 4. There is a big bank here. 5. Is there a clock there ? 6. There is no clock there. 7. Are there any potatoes in that box ? 8. There are none in this box. 9. Is there (have you) a horse at your house ? 10. There is no horse in my house. 11. Are there any cows at Mr Yamada's place ? 12. At Mr Yamada's place there are both cows and horses. 13. Is Master Tarô at home ? 14. Tarô is not at home. 15. Is there a cat in your house ? 16. There is no cat in our house. 17. Is Mr Yamada's letter in that box ? 18. Mr Yamada's letter is not there. 19. Is there a horse there ? 20. There is no horse here. 21. Where are the potatoes ? 22. The potatoes are in this box. 23. Where is Master Jirô ? 24. Jirô is at Mr Yamada's house. 25. Your box is pretty. 26. Is this Master Tarô's letter ? 27. That is not Master Tarô's letter. 28. Where is Master Tarô's letter ? 29. Master Tarô's letter is in that pretty box. 30. Does that big horse belong to Mr Yamada ? 31. That is not Mr Yamada's horse ; it is Jirô's. 32. Where is your white cat ? 33. The white cat is there. 34. Is the newspaper there ? 35. The newspaper is not here.



## EXERCISE 6.

Form the present tense of the verbs given below from tables 28 and 29. See 35 and 36; also 38.

The subject is often not expressed in Japanese.

*iku* (irreg.) : to go.  
*kaku* : to write.  
*kau* : to buy.  
*kuru* (irreg.) : to come.  
*motsū* : to have ; hold.  
*yobu* : to call.  
*yomu* : to read.

*asa* : the morning.  
*ashita* : tomorrow.  
*de* : at ; in ; etc.  
*e* : to.  
*mo* : also.  
*wo* : postposition used after the objective case.

1. *Anata wa nani wo kaimasū ka ?* (C). 2. *Hon to kami wo kau* (B). 3. *Ano kodomo wa kirei na hako wo motte iru* (B). 4. *Tarō wa tegami wo kaite imasū* (C). 5. *Akai empitsū wo kau ka ?* (B). 6. *Akai empitsū wa kaimasen* (C). 7. *Anata wa ano inu wo yonde imasū ka ?* (C). 8. *Ano inu wo yonde wa imasen* (C). 9. *Watashi wa asa shimbun wo yomu* (B). 10. *Yamada San wa Tōkyō no shimbun wo kaimasū* (C). 11. *Doko de kami wo ka imasū ka ?* (C). 12. *Ano ōki na mise de kau* (B). 13. *Yamada San wa ashita Tōkyō e ikimasū ; watashi wa ikimasen* (C). 14. *Anata wa ashita koko e kimasū ka ?* (C). 15. *Kimasū* (C). 16. *Watashi mo kimasū* (C). 17. *Ashita no asa Tanaka San ni tegami wo kakimasū* (C). 18. *Ano kodomo wa nani wo motte imasū ka ?* (C). 19. *Kirei na shiroi hana wo motte iru* (B). 20. *Ashita mo ginkō e ikimasū ka ?* (C). 21. *Ashita wa ikimasen* (C). 22. *Anata wa kono mise de shimbun wo kaimasū ka ?* (C). 23. *Kono mise ja kaimasen* (C). 24. *Hana-ko San wa nani wo yonde imasū ka ?* (C). 25. *Tegami wo yonde iru* (B). 26. *Yamada San wa ashita watashi no uchi e kuru* (B). 27. *Hagaki to kitte wo motte iru ka ?* (B). 28. *Hagaki wa arimasū ; kitte wa motte imasen* (C). 29. *Nani wo kaite imasū ka ?* (C). 30. *Tarō San ni tegami wo kaite imasū* (C). 31. *Ashita Tōkyō de nani wo kaimasū ka ?* (C). 32. *Hon to empitsū wo kau* (B). 33. *Doko e ikimasū ka ?* (C). 34. *Mise e ikimasū* (C). 35. *Watashi no shimbun wa asa kimasū* (C).

1. What are you buying ? 2. I am buying a book and some paper. 3. That child has a pretty box. 4. Tarō is writing a letter. 5. Are you buying a red pencil ? 6. I am not buying a red pencil. 7. Are you calling that dog ? 8. I am not calling that dog. 9. I read the newspaper in the morning. 10. Mr Yamada buys a Tōkyō newspaper. 11. Where do you buy your paper ? 12. I buy it at that big shop. 13. Mr Yamada is going to Tōkyō tomorrow, I'm not going. 14. Are you coming here tomorrow ? 15. I am. 16. I also am coming. 17. Tomorrow morning I shall write a letter to Mr Tanaka. 18. What has that boy got in his hand ? 19. He has a pretty white flower. 20. Are you going to the bank again tomorrow ? 21. I am not going tomorrow. 22. Do you buy your newspaper at this shop ? 23. I don't buy it at this shop. 24. What is Miss Hana-ko reading ? 25. She is reading a letter. 26. Mr Yamada is coming to my house tomorrow. 27. Have you got a postcard and a stamp ? 28. I have a postcard but I haven't got a stamp. 29. What are you writing ? 30. I am writing a letter to Master Tarō. 31. What are you going to buy in Tōkyō tomorrow ? 32. I am going to buy a book and a pencil. 33. Where are you going ? 34. I am going to the office. 35. My newspaper comes in the morning.



## EXERCISE 7.

See how the different forms of the probable present or future tense are formed in tables 28 and 29. The principal idea of this tense is uncertainty.

For the probable present of *aru* and *de aru*, see 93 and 94.

*ame* : rain.

*densha* : an electric car.

*Ei-go* : English (language).

*kisha* : a train.

*kudamono* : fruit.

*kuruma* : a rikisha.

*Nihon* ; *Nippon* : Japan.

*Nihon-go* : Japanese (language).

*kyō* : today.

*deki'ru* : to be able ; can ; can do ; can speak ; be made, finished, ready.

(The English object often becomes the subject in Japanese).

*furu* : to fall (as rain, snow).

*kaeru* : to return ; come back.

*matsū* : to wait.

*uru* : to sell.

1. *Tarō San wa kyō Tōkyō e iku deshō ka ?* (C). 2. *Kyō wa iku darō* (B). 3. *Anata wa densha de kaerimasu ka ?* (C). 4. *Kuruma de kaerō* (B). 5. *Silva San wa Ei-go ga dekimasu ka ?* (C). 6. *Ei-go wa dekimasūmai ; Nihon-go wa dekimasu* (C). 7. *Kore wa Tōkyō no shimbun darō ka ?* (B). 8. *Sore wa Tōkyō no shimbun ja nai deshō* (C). 9. *Smith San wa Nihon e kuru deshō ka ?* (C). 10. *Kuru deshō* (C). 11. *Ano mise de kudamono wo utte iru darō ka ?* (B). 12. *Utte i-nai deshō* (C). 13. *Hana-ko San wa ashita densha de kuru deshō ka ?* (C). 14. *Kisha de kuru deshō* (C). 15. *Ashita ame ga furu deshō ka ?* (C). 16. *Ashita wa furumai* (B). 17. *Tsukue wa ashita no asa dekimashō ka ?* (C). 18. *Dekimashō* (C). 19. *Jirō San wa mise de watashi wo matte iru darō ka ?* (B). 20. *Matte i-nai deshō* (C). 21. *Ano mise ni kono kami ga gozaimashō ka ?* (D). 22. *Asūko ni wa arimasūmai* (C). 23. *Terada San no uchi ni Ei-go no shimbun ga arimashō ka ?* (C). 24. *Asūko ni wa aru darō* (B). 25. *Kyō wa ame ga furu deshō ka ?* (C). 26. *Ame wa fura-nai darō* (B). 27. *Hana-ko wa ashita uchi e tegami wo kaku darō ka ?* (B). 28. *Ashita no asa kaku deshō* (C). 29. *Yamada San wa ano ōki na tsukue wo kau darō ka ?* (B). 30. *Kau deshō ; ano tsukue wa benri deshō* (C).

1. I wonder whether Master Tarō will go to Tōkyō today ? 2. I think he will go today. 3. Will you return by tram-car ? 4. I am thinking of going back by rikisha. 5. Can Mr Silva speak English ? 6. I don't think he can speak English ; he can speak Japanese. 7. I wonder whether this is a Tōkyō newspaper ? 8. I don't think that's a Tōkyō newspaper. 9. Do you think Mr Smith will come to Japan ? 10. I think he will. 11. I wonder whether they sell fruit at that shop ? 12. I don't think they do. 13. Do you think Miss Hana-ko will come tomorrow by tram-car ? 14. She will probably come by train. 15. Do you think it will rain tomorrow ? 16. I don't think it will. 17. I wonder whether my desk will be ready tomorrow morning ? 18. I think it will. 19. I wonder whether Master Jirō is waiting for me at the office ? 20. I don't expect he is. 21. Do you think they've got paper like this at that shop ? 22. I don't think they've got any there. 23. I wonder whether there is an English newspaper at Mr Terada's house ? 24. I expect there is. 25. Do you think it will rain today ? 26. I don't think it will. 27. I wonder whether Hana-ko is going to write home tomorrow ? 28. I think she will write tomorrow morning. 29. Do you think Mr Yamada will buy that big desk ? 30. I expect he will ; it looks a very convenient desk.



## EXERCISE 8.

Study the formation of the past tense in tables; 28 and 29. For *aru* and *de aru* see 93 and 94.

*bōshi* : hat.  
*hito* : man.  
*ito* : thread.  
*kotoba* : words ; something said.  
*niku* : meat.  
*pen* : pen.  
*tamago* : egg.  
*kesa* : this morning.  
*kinō* : yesterday.

*suru* (irreg.) : to do.  
*wakaru* : to understand. (The English object becomes the subject in Japanese).  
*e* : interjection ; sometimes 'yes'.  
*hai* : interjection ; I have heard ; I understand ; that is so ; yes.  
*ie* : no.

1. Yamada San wa kesa nani wo shite imashita ? (C). 2. Shimbun wo yonde ita (B). 3. Kyō ginkō e itta ka ? (B). 4. Kyō wa ika-nakatta ; ashita ikō (B). 5. Ano mise ni ito ga arimashita ka ? (C). 6. Iie, asūko ni wa nakatta (B). 7. Ano bōshi wa Suzuki San no deshita ka ? (C). 8. Iie, Suzuki San no ja nakatta ; Tanaka San no datta (B). 9. Kesa niku to tamago wo kaimashita ka ? (C). 10. Hai, kaimashita (C). 11. Maruzen ni Ei-go no shimbun ga atta ka ? (B). 12. Iie, arimasen deshita (C). 13. Kinō pen wo kaimashita ka ? (C). 14. E, katta (B). 15. Hana-ko San wa kinō uchi e kimasen deshita (C). 16. Brown San wa kinō mo hon wo yonde ita ka ? (B). 17. Iie, kinō wa hon wo yonde i-nakatta (B). 18. Ano hito wa Brown San ja arimasen deshita (C). 19. Tanaka San no kotoba ga wakarimashita ka ? (C). 20. Iie, wakarimasen deshita (C). 21. Bōshi wa arimashita ka ? (C). 22. Hai, gozaimashita (D). 23. Kono empi-tsū wa doko de kaimashita ? (C). 24. Tōkyō de katta (B). 25. Kinō nani wo shimashita ? (C). 26. Kinō wa uchi ni tegami wo kakimashita (C). 27. Anata wa kinō uchi ni ita ka ? (B). 28. Kinō wa uchi ni imasen deshita ; mise de tegami wo kaite imashita (C). 29. Ano pen wa anata no deshita ka ? (C). 30. Iie, watashi no ja nakatta (B). 31. Kinō Tōkyō wa ame ga futta ka ? (B). 32. Iie, furimasen deshita (C). 33. Silva San wa Ei-go no shimbun wo yonde imashita ka ? (C). 34. Iie, Ei-go no shimbun wo yonde imasen deshita (C).

1. What was Mr Yamada doing this morning ? 2. He was reading the newspapers. 3. Did you go to the bank today ? 4. I didn't go today ; I shall go tomorrow. 5. Did you find any thread at that shop ? 6. There was none there. 7. Was that hat Mr Suzuki's ? 8. No, it was not Mr Suzuki's ; it was Mr Tanaka's. 9. Did you buy some meat and some eggs this morning ? 10. Yes, I did. 11. Was there an English newspaper at Maruzen's ? 12. No, there was not. 13. Did you buy a pen yesterday ? 14. Yes, I did. 15. Miss Hana-ko did not come to my house yesterday. 16. Was Mr Brown again reading a book yesterday ? 17. No, he wasn't reading a book yesterday. 18. That man was not Mr Brown. 19. Did you understand what Mr Tanaka said ? 20. No, I did not. 21. Have you found your hat ? (was your hat anywhere ?) 22. Yes, I have. 23. Where did you buy this pencil ? 24. I bought it in Tōkyō. 25. What did you do yesterday ? 26. I wrote home yesterday. 27. Were you at home yesterday ? 28. I was not at home yesterday ; I was at the office writing letters. 29. Was that pen yours ? 30. No, it was not mine. 31. Did it rain in Tōkyō yesterday ? 32. No, it did not. 33. Was Mr Silva reading an English newspaper ? 34. No, he was not.



## EXERCISE 9.

The adverbial form of true adjectives is shown in **192**; quasi-adjectives change *na* (or *no*) into *ni* when used as adverbs. See also **190**, 4.

*Atsui* and *atsuku natta* (lit. has or did become hot) both mean 'is hot'; but when you say *atsuku natta* you imply that formerly it was not hot.

*sōji* : cleaning ; sweeping.

*atarashii* : new.

*furui* : old.

*hayai* : early ; quick.

*mijikai* : short.

*nagai* : long.

*naru* : to become.

*oki'ru* : to get up.

*sūte'ru* : to throw away ; get rid of.

*sūkoshi* : a little.

*takusan* : a great deal.

*zuibun* : very.

*kara* : after ; from.

*kara* : because ; as ; since.

1. *Yamada San no inu wa ōkiku narimashita ka ?* (C). 2. *Hai, zuibun ōkiku narimashita* (C). 3. *Kami ga zuibun takaku natta* (B). 4. *Kinō karu imo ga sūkoshi yasuku natta* (B). 5. *Ano mise wa takaku uru* (B). 6. *Watashi no bōshi wa furuku natta kara, sūteyō* (B). 7. *Anata wa asa hayaku okimasu ka ?* (C). 8. *E, hayaku okimasu* (C). 9. *Ano hito wa tegami wo kirei ni kakimasu* (C). 10. *Kono uchi wa benri ni dekite iru* (B). 11. *Kesa uchi wo kirei ni sōji shimashita* (C). 12. *Kinō Tanaka San kara nagai tegami ga kimashita* (C). 13. *Anata wa kesa heya no sōji wo shimashita ka ?* (C). 14. *Hai, kirei ni sōji shimashita* (C). 15. *Uchi ni hana ga takusan arimasu* (C). 16. *Brown San wa kesa Tōkyō kara kaetta* (B). 17. *Ano mise wa takai kara kaumai* (B). 18. *Suzuki San ni mijikai tegami wo kakimashita* (C). 19. *Kore wa furui ginkō desu ka ?* (C). 20. *Iie, atarashii desu* (C). 21. *Kyō wa ame ga furu kara, Kamakura e ika-nai* (B). 22. *Ashita no asa wa sūkoshi hayaku okiyō* (B). 23. *Kono hon wa furuku natta kara, sūtemashō* (C). 24. *Ano hito wa zuibun asa hayaku okiru* (B). 25. *Sono kudamono wa furui kara kawa-nai* (B). 26. *Kono bōshi wa zuibun kitanaku narimashita* (C). 27. *Kyō no shimbun wa doko ni arimasu ?* (C). 28. *Watashi no heya ni aru* (B). 29. *Hayaku heya no sōji wo shiyō* (B). 30. *Anata no uchi ni Ei-go no hon ga takusan gozaimasu ka ?* (D). 31. *Iie, takusan wa arimasen ; sūkoshi arimasu* (C).

1. Has Mr Yamada's dog grown big ? 2. Yes, he's grown very big. 3. Paper is very dear now. 4. Since yesterday potatoes are somewhat cheaper. 5. That shop sells very dear. 6. My hat is old, so I'll throw it away. 7. Do you get up early ? 8. Yes, I get up early. 9. That man writes his letters very neatly. 10. This house is constructed in a very convenient way. 11. This morning I swept the (whole) house very carefully. 12. I received a long letter yesterday from Mr Tanaka. 13. Did you sweep your room this morning ? 14. Yes, I swept it carefully. 15. We have a lot of flowers in our place. 16. Mr Brown returned from Tōkyō this morning. 17. I don't think I'll buy (anything) at that shop, it's too dear. 18. I wrote a short letter to Mr Suzuki. 19. Is this an old bank ? 20. No, it's new. 21. As it is raining today, I shall not go to Kamakura. 22. I think I'll get up a little earlier tomorrow morning. 23. As this book is out of date now, I'll throw it away. 24. That man gets up very early in the morning. 25. As that fruit is stale, I won't buy it. 26. This hat has become quite soiled. 27. Where is today's newspaper ? 28. In my room. 29. I will hurry up and sweep my room. 30. Have you got a lot of English books in your house ? 31. No, I haven't got many ; I have a few.



## EXERCISE 10.

Study the forms of the imperative in tables 28 and 29.

*denki* : electricity ; electric light.

*iya na* : disagreeable ; distasteful.

*ii* ; *yoi* : good.

*o* : honorific prefix.

*omae* (familiar) : you.

*dōzo* : please.

*ikemasen* ; *ike-nai* (familiar) : it

won't do.

*kesū* : to put out.

*mī'ru* : to look.

*tabe'ru* : to eat.

*tsūke'ru* : to apply.

*kudasai* (polite) ; *kure* (impolite) : by themselves they mean 'give' ; used also after gerund in imperative forms.

*nasai* : literally 'deign' ; used after the 2nd base in the imperative.

*goran* : generally takes the place of the 2nd base in the imperative of *mī'ru* to see.

*o-ide* : generally takes the place of the 2nd base in the imperative of *kuru* to come and *iku* to go.

1. Yamada San, *ashita watashi no uchi e o-ide nasai* (C). 2. Kyō no shimbun wo *kudasai* (C). 3. Ii kudamono wo *katte o kure* (A). 4. Dōzo Brown San wo *yonde kudasai* (D). 5. Watashi no tegami wo *yonde wa ikemasen* (C). 6. Ano hon wa *watashi no ja nai kara yonde wa ikemasen* (C). 7. Dōzo watakushi no heya e *o-ide kudasai* (D). 8. Ano inu wa *iya da kara yoba-nai de o kure* (A). 9. Kono kudamono wo *o tabe nasai* (C). 10. Sono akai hon wo *goran nasai* (C). 11. Omae wa sono tegami wo *mite wa ike-nai* (A). 12. Denki wo *tsūkemashō ka?* (C). 13. Iie, *tsūke-nai de kudasai* (C). 14. Asa hayaku *oki nasai* (A). 15. Dōzo kono tegami wo *goran kudasai* (D). 16. Denki wo *keshimashō ka?* (C). 17. Kesa-nai de *ii* (B). 18. Ano mise wa *takai desū kara, asūko de kami wo kawa-nai de kudasai* (C). 19. Yamada San ni tegami wo *kaite kudasai* (C). 20. Ano kodomo wo *goran nasai* (C). 21. Omae no bōshi wa *kitanaku natta kara, sūte nasai* (A). 22. Are wa Yamada San no inu da *kara, yonde wa ike-nai* (A). 23. Kore wa *ii kami desū kara, takūsan o kai kudasai* (D). 24. Kyō wa *ginkō e ika-nai de ii* (B). 25. Hagaki wo *kudasai* (C). 26. Kono tegami wo *yonde o kure* (A). 27. Watashi no heya e *kite o kure* (A). 28. Tamago wo *takūsan katte wa ikemasen* (C). 29. *Ashita no asa hayaku Tōkyō e itte kudasai* (C). 30. Anata no o heya wo *sōji shimashō ka?* (C). 31. Iie, *shi-nai de ii* (A). 32. Watashi no heya e *ko-nai de kudasai* (C).

1. Mr Yamada, please come to my house tomorrow. 2. Please give me today's paper. 3. Buy some good fruit. 4. Please call Mr Brown. 5. You mustn't read my letters. 6. You mustn't read that book, it is not mine. 7. Please come to my room. 8. I don't like that dog, so don't call it. 9. Eat this fruit. 10. Look at that red book. 11. You mustn't read that letter. 12. Shall I turn on the electric light? 13. No, please don't do so. 14. Get up early in the morning. 15. Please read this letter. 16. Shall I turn off the electric light? 17. Don't do so. 18. As that shop is expensive please don't buy the paper there. 19. Please write a letter to Mr Yamada. 20. Look at that child. 21. Your hat is dirty, throw it away. 22. That is Mr Yamada's dog, so you mustn't call it. 23. As this is very good paper, please buy a good deal. 24. You needn't go to the bank today. 25. Please give me a postcard. 26. Read this letter. 27. Come to my room. 28. Don't buy too many eggs. 29. Please go to Tōkyō early tomorrow morning. 30. Shall I sweep your room? 31. No, you needn't. 32. Please don't come to my room.

## EXERCISE 11.

Study the formation of the gerund in tables 28, 29 and 93; some of the uses of the gerund in 58, 2, 3, 6.

*fune* : ship.

*hōki* : broom.

*Igirisū* : England.

*ka* : mosquito.

*kane* : metal ; money.

*kasa* : umbrella.

*kaze* : wind.

*kyaku* : visitor ; guest.

*au* : to meet.

*dasū* : to take out of ; post (of a letter).

*de-ru* : to come out of ; go out.

*fūku* : to blow.

*yaru* : to give.

*motte iku* : to take.

*motte kuru* : to bring ; take to my place.

*motte kaeru* : to bring or take back.

*ammari* : too ; to be in excess.

1. *Kesa no shimbun wo motte kite o kure* (A). 2. *Tarō wa kasa wo motte ikimashita ka?* (C). 3. *E, motte ikimashita* (C). 4. *Kono tokei wa Yamada San ga Igirisū kara motte kaerimashita* (C). 5. *Kesu uchi ni tegami wo kaite dashimashita* (C). 6. *Hōki wo motte kite kono heya wo sōji shite kure* (A). 7. *Kono hako wo Tanaka San no o uchi e motte o-ide nasai* (B). 8. *Kono hako kara kami wo dashite motte kite o kure* (A). 9. *Koko wa ka ga takusan ite iya desū* (C). 10. *Kinō wa kyaku ga kite Tōkyō e ikimasen deshita* (C). 11. *Ammari kaze ga fuite fune ga de-nakatta* (B). 12. *Kitte wo katte, kono tegami wo dashite kudasai* (C). 13. *Ginkō e itte, Terada San ni atta* (B). 14. *Dōzo Yoshi-ko ni atte, kore wo yatte kudasai* (C). 15. *Sore wa Haru-ko no desū kara, motte itte yarimashō* (C). 16. *Kono tsukue wo watashi no heya e motte kite o kure* (A). 17. *Kinō hana wo katte Kimi-ko ni yarimashita* (C). 18. *Sore wo motte itte wa ike-nai* (A). 19. *Kane ga nakute ano kirei na tokei wo kaimasen deshita* (C). 20. *Kasa wo motte ikimashō ka?* (C). 21. *E, motte o-ide nasai* (B). 22. *Hagaki wo motte kite o kure* (A). 23. *Ano hito wa Ei-go ga dekimasū ka?* (C). 24. *E, yoku dekimasū* (C). 25. *Bōshi wa Maruzen ni itte kaimashō* (C). 26. *Ammari takai bōshi wo kawa-nai de kudasai* (C). 27. *Kinō no kane de nani wo kaimashita?* (C). 28. *Empitsū to kami wo katte Jirō ni yarimashita* (C).

1. Bring me this morning's paper. 2. Did Tarō take an umbrella with him? 3. Yes, he did. 4. Mr Yamada brought this clock back from England with him. 5. This morning I wrote a letter home (and posted it). 6. Bring a broom and sweep this room. 7. Take this box to Mr Tanaka's house. 8. Take some paper out of that box and bring it here. 9. I don't like this place, there are so many mosquitos. 10. A visitor came yesterday so I didn't go to Tōkyō. 11. There was such a strong wind the boat didn't leave. 12. Buy a stamp and post this letter please. 13. I went to the bank and I met Mr Terada. 14. Please go to Yoshi-ko's house and give her this. 15. As this belongs to Haru-ko I will take it (and give it) to her. 16. Take this desk to my room. 17. I bought some flowers yesterday and gave them to Kimi-ko. 18. You mustn't take that away. 19. As I had no money I didn't buy that pretty clock. 20. Shall I take an umbrella? 21. Yes, take one. 22. Bring me a postcard. 23. Can that man speak English? 24. Yes, he speaks it very well. 25. I'll go to Maruzen's and buy a hat. 26. Don't buy one which is too expensive. 27. What did you buy with your money yesterday? 28. I bought a pencil and some paper and gave them to Jirō.



## EXERCISE 12.

Study some of the uses of the gerund in **58, 9, 10, 11.**

*kōen* : public garden ; park.

*kutsu* : boots.

*mizu* : water.

*nashi* : pear.

*sakana* : fish.

*haku* : to sweep.

*nomu* : to drink.

*oku* : to put ; place.

*ima* : now.

*mada* : still ; yet.

1. *Kaze ga fuite mo fune wa kyō deru deshō* (C). 2. *Kono hon wo mite mo yō gozaimasū ka?* (D). 3. *Mite ii* (B). 4. *Ashita anata no kutsu wo kaimashō ka?* (C). 5. *Kutsu wa mada kawa-nai de mo ii desū* (C). 6. *Sono nashi wo tabete mo yō gozaimasū ka?* (D). 7. *E, ii* (B). 8. *Ima anata no heya wo haite yō gozaimasū ka?* (D). 9. *Iie, kyō wa haka-nakūte mo ii* (B). 10. *Kono hako wo Saburō ni yatte mo ii deshō ka?* (C). 11. *E, yatte mo ii darō* (B). 12. *Kyō kōen ni itte mo ii desū ka?* (C). 13. *Kyō itte wa ikenai ; ashita o-ide nasai* (A). 14. *Kore wo anata no heya ni oite yō gozaimasū ka?* (D). 15. *Hai, oite mo yō gozaimasū* (D). 16. *Sakana wo katte yō gozaimasū ka?* (D). 17. *Iie, sakana wa iya desū ; niku wo katte o kure* (B). 18. *Ano hito wa kane ga takūsan atte mo, kin no tokei wo motte imasen* (C). 19. *Kono mizu wo nonde mo ii desū ka?* (C). 20. *Sore wa kitanai kara, nonde wa ike-nai* (A). 21. *Yamada San ga ko-nakūte mo anata wa kimasū ka?* (C). 22. *E, kimasū* (C). 23. *Ano inu wo yonde mo ii desū ka?* (C). 24. *E, yonde mo ii ; ano inu wa zuibun rikō da* (B). 25. *Sono tegami wo yonde mo yō gozaimasū ka?* (D). 26. *Iie, kore wa yoma-nai de kudasai* (C). 27. *Ashita anata no uchi ni itte mo yō gozaimasū ka?* (D). 28. *Ashita wa kyaku ga kimasū kara, ko-nai de kudasai* (C). 29. *Sono kitte wo omae ni yaru kara, motte itte ii* (A). 30. *Sono hon wa furuku natte mo sūte-nai de o kure* (A). 31. *Terada San ni kyō tegami wo kaite yō gozaimasū ka?* (D). 32. *E, kyō kaite o kure* (A). 33. *Ashita wa ko-nakūte ii no desū ka?* (C). 34. *Dōzo ashita mo kite kudasai* (C). 35. *Tamago wa ano mise de katte yō gozaimasū ka?* (D). 36. *Asūko wa sūkoshi takai kara, ike-nai* (A).

1. In spite of the wind I expect the boat will leave today. 2. May I read this book? 3. You may. 4. Shall I buy your boots tomorrow? 5. You needn't buy the boots yet. 6. May I eat that pear? 7. All right. 8. Shall I sweep your room now? 9. No, you needn't sweep it today. 10. Do you think it will matter if I give this box to Saburō? 11. I think that will be all right. 12. May I go to the park today? 13. You mustn't go today, go tomorrow. 14. Shall I leave this in your room? 15. Yes, you may leave it there. 16. Shall I buy some fish? 17. No, I don't want any fish (today); buy some meat. 18. Although that man has a lot of money he hasn't got a gold watch. 19. May I drink this water? 20. Don't drink that, it's dirty. 21. Will you come even if Mr Yamada doesn't? 22. Yes, I shall. 23. May I call that dog? 24. Yes, you may; that dog is very clever. 25. May I read that letter? 26. No, please don't read it. 27. May I go to your house tomorrow? 28. Please don't come tomorrow, I am expecting a visitor. 29. You may take that stamp, I'll give it to you. 30. Don't throw this book away even after it gets old. 31. Shall I write to Mr Terada today? 32. Yes, write today. 33. Needn't I come tomorrow? 34. Come again tomorrow please. 35. Shall I buy the eggs at that shop? 36. Don't buy them there, they sell rather dear there.

## EXERCISE 13.

Study the 1st set of numerals in 271; see also 276, 1.

*do* : times.

*sen* : a sen, (1/100 yen).

*yen* : a yen ; Japanese dollar.

*ban* : number (for houses in European part of the town).

*banchi* : number (for houses in native part of the town).

*kai* : storey ; floor.

*nikai* : first floor (the one above the ground floor, therefore the second counting the ground floor) ; upstairs.

*iku* ? how many ?

*ikura* ? how much ?

*kurai* (very often *gurai*) : about.

*harau* : to pay.

1. *Kono bōshi wa ikura* ? (B). 2. *Roku-yen hachi-jis-sen de gozaimasū* (D).  
 3. *Maruzen ni ikura haraimashita* ? (C). 4. *Roku-jū-yen haratta* (B). 5. *Yamada San no uchi wa nan-banchi desū ka* ? (C). 6. *Ni-jū-shichi banchi desū* (C). 7. *Brown San no uchi wa jū-ban de gozaimasū* (D). 8. *Kyō wa Tōkyō e ni-do ikimashita* (C). 9. *Nikai kara kyō no shimbun wo motte kite o kure* (A).  
 10. *Ano hako wa takai darō ka* ? (B). 11. *San-jis-sen gurai de gozaimashō* (D).  
 12. *Nikkō e iku-do ikimashita* ? (C). 13. *San-do ikimashita* (C). 14. *Anata no uchi wa sam-byaku yon-jū banchi desū ka* ? (C). 15. *Iie, ni-hyaku yon-jū banchi de gozaimasū* (D). 16. *Kono tokei wa ikura desū ka* ? (C). 17. *Jū-ichi-yen go-jis-sen de gozaimasū* (D). 18. *Sore wo uchi e motte kite kudasai. Watashi no uchi wa hachi-ban desū* (C). 19. *Ano mise wa nan-gai desū ka* ? (C). 20. *Shi-kai de gozaimasū* (D). 21. *Anata no heya wa nikai desū ka* ? (C). 22. *Iie, watashi no heya wa san-gai ni arimasū* (C). 23. *Kono akai empitsū wa ikura desū* ? (C). 24. *Roku-sen de gozaimasū* (D). 25. *Kinō go-jū-san-yen no tsūkue wo kaimashita* (C). 26. *Kono kirei na hon wa ikura de gozaimasū ka* ? (D). 27. *Sore wa ni-yen san-jis-sen de gozaimasū* (D). 28. *Terada San ni ni-do tegami wo dashita* (B). 29. *Terada San wa nan-banchi ni imasū ka* ? (C). 30. *Jū-hachi banchi ni iru* (B). 31. *Kono kudamono wo hachi-jū-ichi-ban no Smith San e motte itte kure* (A). 32. *Kono kutsu wa ikura de kaimashita* ? (C). 33. *Hachi-yen de kaimashita* (C). 34. *Kyō wa heya no sōji wo ni-do shita* (C). 35. *Ano uchi wa ni-sen go-hyaku-yen gurai de uru deshō* (C).

1. How much is this hat ? 2. Six yen eighty sen. 3. How much did you pay Maruzen ? 4. I paid sixty yen. 5. What is the number of Mr Yamada's house ? 6. Number 27. 7. Mr Brown's house is number 10. 8. I went to Tōkyō twice today. 9. Bring the newspaper from upstairs. 10. Do you think that box will be dear ? 11. I expect it's about thirty sen. 12. How often have you been to Nikkō ? 13. I have been three times. 14. Is the number of your house 340 ? 15. No, number 240. 16. How much is this watch ? 17. Eleven yen fifty sen. 18. Take it to my house. My house is number 8. 19. How many storeys high is that house ? 20. Four storeys. 21. Is your room on the first floor ? 22. No, my room is on the second floor. 23. How much is this red pencil ? 24. Six sen. 25. I bought a desk yesterday for fifty-three yen. 26. How much did this pretty book cost ? 27. It cost two yen thirty sen. 28. I have written twice to Mr Terada. 29. What is the number of Mr Terada's house ? 30. Number 18. 31. Take this fruit to Mr Smith at number 81. 32. How much did these boots cost you ? 33. Eight yen. 34. I've swept my room twice today. 35. I think they'd sell that house for two thousand five hundred yen.



## EXERCISE 14.

Many nouns are counted by the aid of an auxiliary numeral; see 276, 2. See also 281, *-nin*, *-hon*, *-mai*, *-hiki*, *-dai*.

*bō* : stick.

*hari* : needle.

*ko* : child.

*otoko* : man.

*onna* : woman.

*jochū* : servant (female).

*-nin* : auxiliary numeral for men  
(except 1, 2, 4 men).

*hitori* : one man.

*fūtari* : two men.

*yottari* : four men.

*ikutari* ? how many men ?

*de* : sometimes used after what is the  
subject in English.

*ga* : but ; however.

1. *San-sen no kitte wo jū-mai katte o kure* (A). 2. *Kono murasaki no empitsū wo sam-bon kudasai* (C). 3. *Kodomo wa ikutari aru* ? (B). 4. *Onna no ko ga fūtari, otoko no ko ga hitori gozaimasū* (D). 5. *Hari wo ni-hon motte o-ide* (A). 6. *Yamada San no uchi ni wa ūma ga ni-hiki, inu ga ip-piki iru* (B). 7. *Anata no uchi ni jochū ga ikutari imasū ka* ? (C). 8. *San-nin orimasū* (C). 9. *Kuruma wo ni-dai yonde kure* (A). 10. *Jis-sen no kitte wo sam-mai to yon-sen no kitte wo hachi-mai katte o kure* (A). 11. *Hagaki wo ni-mai kudasai* (C). 12. *Bō wo ip-pon motte kite o kure* (A). 13. *Yamada San wa kodomo ga yottari aru* (B). 14. *Anata no uchi ni neko ga imasū ka* ? (C). 15. *Iie, neko wa imasen ga, inu ga ni-hiki orimasū* (C). 16. *Kuruma wo ni-dai yobimashō ka* ? (C). 17. *Iie, ichi-dai de yō gozaimasū* (D). 18. *Ashita no asa hayaku kuruma wo ichi-dai yonde kudasai* (C). 19. *Yon-sen no hagaki wo go-mai to, jis-sen no kitte wo shichi-mai kudasai* (C). 20. *Empitsū wo jip-pon to kono kami wo hyaku-mai kudasai* (C). 21. *Kono empitsū wa yasui kara, ni-hon kaimashō ka* ? (C). 22. *Iie, ip-pon de takusan* (B). 23. *Ashita no asa Asakusa e ikimasū kara kuruma wo ichi-dai yonde kudasai* (C). 24. *Kono sakana wo ni-hiki Tanaka San no uchi e motte itte o kure* (A). 25. *Ano mise ni hito ga ikutari gurai imasū ka* ? (C). 26. *San-jū-nin gurai iru deshō* (C). 27. *Are wa ūma deshita ga, ammari takai desū kara kaimasen deshita* (C). 28. *Kono bō wo ni-hon kudasai* (C).

1. Buy ten three-sen stamps. 2. Give me three of these violet pencils. 3. How many children have you ? 4. Two girls and one boy. 5. Bring me two needles. 6. Mr Yamada keeps two horses and a dog. 7. How many servant-girls are there in your house ? 8. Three. 9. Call two rikishas. 10. Buy three ten-sen stamps and eight four-sen stamps. 11. Please give me two postcards (When not otherwise qualified, by the word postcard a Japanese will understand a 1½ sen postcard for use in Japan). 12. Bring me a stick. 13. Mr Yamada has four children. 14. Do you keep a cat in your house ? 15. No, we have no cat, but we keep two dogs. 16. Shall I call two rikishas ? 17. No, one will be enough. 18. Call a rikisha for me early tomorrow morning. 19. Please give me five four-sen postcards and seven ten-sen stamps. 20. Give me ten pencils and a hundred sheets of this paper. 21. As these pencils are cheap, shall I buy two ? 22. No, one will be enough. 23. As I am going to Asakusa tomorrow morning, call a rikisha for me. 24. Take these two fishes to Mr Tanaka's house. 25. How many people (employees) are there in that shop ? 26. About thirty I should think. 27. That was a good horse, but as it was too dear I didn't buy it. 28. Please give me two of these sticks.

## EXERCISE 15.

Study the 2nd set of numerals in 271. See also 276, 3, 4. The 2nd set of numerals is used to express a person's age.

*ban* : night.  
*bin* : bottle.  
*inki* : ink.  
*koppu* : tumbler.  
*toshi* : year.  
*tsūki* : moon ; month.

*dame* : useless.  
*ikutsū* ? how many? (in connection with the 2nd set of numerals).  
*hairu* : to enter ; go in.  
*tomaru* : to stop ; pass the night at.  
*shika* (foll. by neg.) : only.

1. *Nashi wo ikutsū kaimashō ka ?* (C). 2. *Ōkii nashi wo nanatsū katte o kure* (A). 3. *Chiisai koppu wo mitsū motte kite kudasai* (C). 4. *Tarō wa nashi wo tō motte imasū ka ?* (C). 5. *Iie, muttsū shika motte imasen* (C). 6. *Kesa watashi wa tamago wo fūtatsū tabemashita* (C). 7. *Kyōto ni iku-ban tomarimashita ?* (C). 8. *Mi-ban tomatta* (B). 9. *Sono hako ni bin ga iku-hon hairimasū ka ?* (C). 10. *Jū-ni-hon hairimasū* (C). 11. *Hana-ko San no toshi wa ikutsū de gozaimasū ka ?* (D). 12. *Itsutsū da* (B). 13. *Akai inki wo hito-bin katte kudasai* (C). 14. *Kono inki wa kitanai kara dame da* (B). 15. *Watashi wa Rondon ni yotsūki orimashita ga, Ei-go ga yoku dekimasen* (C). 16. *Omae wa ikutsū ?* (A). 17. *Kokonotsū de gozaimasū* (D). 18. *Yamada San wa mada go-jū ni naranai deshō* (C). 19. *Yon-jis-sen no koppu wo yottsū o kai nasai* (B). 20. *Kono kudamono wa hito-hako go-jis-sen ja ammari takai darō* (B). 21. *Kono bin wa ammari chiisai kara, dame da ; ōkii bin wo motte o-ide* (A). 22. *Watashi no heya kara pen to inki wo motte o-ide* (A). 23. *Ashita no ban wa Nagoya ni tomarimasū* (C). 24. *Sono hako ni nashi ga ikutsū arimasū ?* (C). 25. *Yattsū arimasū* (C). 26. *Ima kane ga sūkoshi shika arimasen kara, tokei wa ashita kaimashō* (C). 27. *Kono kudamono wo fūta-hako uchi e motte kite kudasai* (C). 28. *Nikkō ni ikutsūki gurai imashita ?* (C). 29. *Mi-tsūki shika imasen deshita* (C). 30. *Kono uchi ni heya ga ikutsū gozaimasū ka ?* (D). 31. *Muttsū arimasū* (C). 32. *Watashi no heya e haite wa ikemasen* (B). 33. *Terada San wa Igarisū ni fūta-tsūki ite, kinō uchi e kaerimashita* (C). 34. *Kono koppu wa ikura deshita ka ?* (C).

1. How many pears shall I buy ? 2. Buy seven big pears. 3. Bring three small tumblers. 4. Has Tarō got ten pears ? 5. No, he has only five. 6. I ate two eggs this morning. 7. How many days (*lit.* nights) did you stop at Kyōto ? 8. I stopped three days. 9. How many bottles go into that box ? 10. Twelve. 11. How old is Miss Hana-ko ? 12. She is five. 13. Buy a bottle of red ink. 14. This ink is no use, it's dirty. 15. I was four months in London, but I cannot speak English well. 16. How old are you ? 17. I am nine. 18. I don't think Mr Yamada is fifty yet. 19. Buy four forty-sen tumblers. 20. I think fifty sen is too much for a box of this fruit. 21. This bottle is no use, it's too small ; bring a bigger one. 22. Bring me a pen and ink from my room. 23. I intend to sleep tomorrow night at Nagoya. 24. How many pears are there in that box ? 25. There are eight. 26. As I have only a little money now I'll buy the clock tomorrow. 27. Send two boxes of this fruit to my house. 28. How many months were you at Nikkō ? 29. I was only there three months. 30. How many rooms are there in this house ? 31. There are six. 32. You mustn't go into my room. 33. Mr Terada was two months in England, he returned home yesterday. 34. How much was this tumbler ?



## EXERCISE 16.

Study the names of the months, January, February, etc. in **293**; the days of the month in **294**; and the days of the week in **297**.

*nichi* : day.

*yō-bi* : day of the week.

*kongetsū* : this month.

*raigetsū* : next month.

*sengetsū* : last month.

*itsū* ? when ?

*nan-* ? how many ?

*kakaru* : to cost ; take time.

*tsūku* : to arrive.

*made* : until.

1. *Suzuki San wa itsū Igisitō kara kaerimasū ka ?* (C). 2. *Raigetsū no mikka ni Kōbe ni tsukimasū* (C). 3. *Terada San wa nan-nichi ni Tōkyō e kimasū ka ?* (C). 4. *Kongetsū no hatsūka ni kuru darō* (B). 5. *Sengetsū no itsūka wa nani-yō-bi deshita ?* (C). 6. *Getsuyō-bi de gozaimasū* (D). 7. *Watakushi no kutsu wa itsū dekimasū ka ?* (C). 8. *Kinyō-bi ni dekimasū* (C). 9. *Koko kara Rondon made iku-nichi gurai kakarimasū ka ?* (C). 10. *Kisha de jū-yokka gurai kakarimasū* (C). 11. *Doyō-bi ni kōen ni ikimashō* (C). 12. *Shimbun no kane wa misoka ni haraimasū* (C). 13. *Tanaka San wa nichiyō ni mo ginkō e ikimasū ka ?* (C). 14. *Iie, nichiyō ni wa uchi ni imasū* (C). 15. *Yamada San kara suiyō-bi ni tegami ga kimashita ka ?* (C). 16. *Iie, suiyō-bi ni wa kimasen deshita ; mokuyō-bi ni kimashita* (C). 17. *Kyō wa kayō de gozaimasū* (D). 18. *Watashi wa sangatsū futsūka ni Kyōto e ikimasū* (C). 19. *Anata no jochū wa itsū kaerimasū ka ?* (C). 20. *Raigetsū no tsuitachi ni kaerimasū* (C). 21. *Rondon made tegami wa iku-nichi kakarimasū ka ?* (C). 22. *Hatsūka gurai kakaru* (B). 23. *Igisitō no fune wa itsū tsukimasū ka ?* (C). 24. *Raigetsū no tsuitachi ni tsūku deshō* (C). 25. *Yamada San wa doyō-bi ni Kōbe kara kaerimashita* (C). 26. *Dōzo nichiyō no asa hayaku uchi e o-ide kudasai* (D). 27. *Kongetsū no yokka ni Nikkō no Takada San ni tegami wo dashita* (B). 28. *Kono hon wa mimashita kara Tarō ni motte itte yarimasū* (C). 29. *Roku-gatsū no misoka no shimbun wo motte kite kure* (A). 30. *Muika no asa hayaku Mukōjima e ikimasū* (C). 31. *Doyō-bi ni ame ga futte Yamada San no uchi e ikimasen deshita* (C).

1. When will Mr Suzuki come back from England ? 2. He will arrive at Kōbe on the 3rd of next month. 3. When will Mr Terada come to Tōkyō ? 4. I think he will come on the 20th of this month. 5. What day of the week was the 5th of last month ? 6. Monday. 7. When will my boots be ready ? 8. On Friday. 9. How many days does it take from here to London ? 10. By train about fourteen days. 11. I am thinking of going to the park on Saturday. 12. I pay for the newspaper on the last day of the month. 13. Does Mr Tanaka go to the bank also on Sundays ? 14. No, he stays at home on Sundays. 15. Did the letter from Mr Yamada come on Wednesday ? 16. Not on Wednesday, it came on Thursday. 17. Today is Tuesday. 18. I am going to Kyōto on the 2nd of March. 19. When is your servant coming back ? 20. On the 1st of next month. 21. How long does a letter take (from here) to London ? 22. About twenty days. 23. When will the English boat arrive ? 24. It will probably arrive on the 1st of next month. 25. Mr Yamada arrived from Kōbe on Saturday. 26. Please come to my house early on Sunday morning. 27. I wrote to Mr Takada of Nikkō on the 4th of this month. 28. As I have read this book, I'll (go and) give it to Tarō. 29. Bring me the newspaper of the 30th of June. 30. I am going to Mukōjima early on the morning of the 6th. 31. It rained on Saturday so I didn't go to Mr Yamada's house.

## EXERCISE 17.

Numbers **298, 299, 301, 302, and 303** should be studied.

*fun* : minute.

*ji* : hour.

*jikan* : hour (duration).

*gozen* : morning.

*gogo* : afternoon.

*hiru* : noon ; day-time.

*yoru* : evening ; night.

*hambun* (noun) ; *han* (adjective) : half.

*koro* (generally pronounced *goro*) : about.

*mae* : before ; in front of.

*mō* : more ; already.

*sugi* : after.

1. *Kinō nan-ji no kisha de kaerimashita* ? (C). 2. *Gogo no roku-ji ni jip-pun no kisha de kaerimashita* (C). 3. *Kono tegami wa itsu kimashita* ? (C). 4. *Gozen jū-ichi-ji goro kita* (B). 5. *Ueno kara Nikkō made nan-jikan kakarimasu ka* ? (C). 6. *Go-jikan gurai kakaru* (B). 7. *Yamada San wa kinō yoru no jū-ji no kisha de Kyōto e itta* (B). 8. *Ima nan-ji de gozaimasu ka* ? (D). 9. *Go-ji jip-pun sugi desu* (C). 10. *Mō roku-ji sugi desu* (C). 11. *Ashita no ban shichi-ji han ni o-ide nasai* (C). 12. *Ku-ji mae ni kono tegami wo dashite kudasai* (C). 13. *Sono nashi wo hambun Jirō ni o yari nasai* (B). 14. *Ano fune wa kinō san-ji go-fun mae ni deta* (B). 15. *Ginkō no mae ni ōki na inu ga imasu* (C). 16. *Kono fune wa ashita no hiru deru* (B). 17. *Igisu no fune wa ashita no ban hachi-ji ni tsukimasu* (C). 18. *Kimura San wa mō kaerimashita ka* ? (C). 19. *Iie, mada desu* (C). 20. *Asakusa e kuruma de nan-jikan kakarimasu ka* ? (C). 21. *Koko kara ichi-jikan han gurai kakaru* (B). 22. *Mokuyō no asa hachi-ji han ni Suzuki San no uchi ni iku* (B). 23. *Yamada San wa sengetsu no tōka no ban ni kaetta* (B). 24. *Kono kisha wa nan-ji ni demasu ka* ? (C). 25. *San-ji go-fun mae ni demasu* (C). 26. *Jochū wa kinō yoru no ku-ji jū-go-fun sugi ni kaerimashita* (C). 27. *Watashi wa raigetsu no kokonoka goro Nikkō e ikimasu* (C). 28. *Omae wa asa go-ji ni oki nasai* (A). 29. *Ashita gozen jū-ji han ni niku wo motte kite kudasai* (C). 30. *Ano hito wa raigetsu no mikka goro Yokohama e tsuku deshō* (C). 31. *Roku-ji mae ni watashi no heya e kite wa ike-nai* (A). 32. *Koko karu Shimbashi made densha de han-jikan kakaru* (B).

1. By what train did you come back yesterday ? 2. By the 6.20 P.M. train. 3. When did this letter arrive ? 4. It came at about eleven o'clock in the morning. 5. How many hours does it take from Ueno to Nikkō ? 6. About five hours. 7. Mr Yamada left for Kyōto last night by the 10 o'clock train. 8. What time is it ? 9. It is ten minutes past five. 10. It's already past six. 11. Come tomorrow evening at half past seven. 12. Post this letter before nine o'clock. 13. Give half of that pear to Jirō. 14. That ship left yesterday at five minutes to three. 15. There is a big dog in front of the bank. 16. This boat will leave tomorrow at noon. 17. The English boat will arrive tomorrow evening at eight o'clock. 18. Is Mr Kimura back already ? 19. No, not yet. 20. How long does it take to go to Asakusa by rikisha ? 21. About an hour and a half from here. 22. I am going to Mr Suzuki's house on Thursday morning at half past eight. 23. Mr Yamada returned last month on the evening of the 10th. 24. At what o'clock does this train leave ? 25. At five minutes to three. 26. The servant returned last night at a quarter past nine. 27. I shall go to Nikkō about the 9th of next month. 28. Get up at 5 o'clock. 29. Bring me the meat tomorrow morning at half past ten. 30. I expect he will arrive at Yokohama about the 3rd of next month. 31. You mustn't come to my room before 6 o'clock. 32. It takes half an hour by tram-car from here to Shimbashi.



## EXERCISE 18.

See the formation of the conditional present and past in tables 28 and 29; also 93 and 94.

The negative present conditional followed by *ike-nai* or *nara-nai* may be translated by 'must'; (72).

The past conditional is sometimes translated by 'when' or 'after'; (69).

*jibiki* : dictionary.

*kimono* : dress.

*shigoto* : work.

*kirai* : dislike of something.\*

*suki* : fondness for anything.\*

*arau* : to wash.

*dekake'ru* : to leave; set out.

*kari'ru* : to borrow.

*kasu* : to lend.

*sumu* : to finish; come to an end.

*moshi* : if; supposing that.

*nara* (used after verbs, adjectives, nouns and adverbs) : if.

1. *Anata ga uchi ni ko-nakereba watashi ga anata no uchi ni ikimashō* (C).
2. *Ashita ame ga fureba Nikkō e ika-nai* (B).
3. *Ammari ame ga futte i-nakereba kono tegami wo dashite kudasai* (C).
4. *Jibiki ga nakereba Terada San ni kari nasai* (B).
5. *Jū-yen motte ireba takusan deshō* (C).
6. *Hana-ko San ga nikai ni imashitara yonde kudasai* (C).
7. *Doyō-bi ni Suzuki ga ko-nakattara tegami wo dashite kure* (A).
8. *Moshi kasa wo motte kimasen deshitara watashi no wa kashimashō* (C).
9. *Jochū ga sōji wo shite i-nakereba yonde o kure* (A).
10. *Ei-go no tegami deshitara ano hito wa wakimasu* (C).
11. *Watashi wa roku-ji mae ni kaera-nakereba narimasen* (C).
12. *Omae wa hayaku oki-nakereba ike-nai* (A).
13. *Kōbe ni tsuitara Yamada San ni tegami wo dashite kudasai* (C).
14. *Ano hito ga deketara Tanaka San ga kita* (B).
15. *Sono shigoto ga sundara kono kimono wo aratte kure* (A).
16. *Moshi kyō uchi kara kane ga ko-nai nara, ginkō e ika-nakereba nara-nai* (B).
17. *Kono nashi ga suki nara o tabe nasai* (B).
18. *Kirai nara tabe-nai de ii* (A).
19. *Moshi sono tsūkue ga benri nara kaimashō* (C).
20. *Kutsu wa mō dekimashita ka?* (C).
21. *Iie, mada de gozaimasu* (D).
22. *Dekitara watashi no uchi e motte kite kudasai* (C).
23. *Kimō no shimbun ga attara dōzo kashite kudasai* (C).

1. If you don't come to my house, I'll go to yours.
2. If it rains tomorrow, I won't go to Nikkō.
3. If it isn't raining too hard, (go and) post this letter.
4. If you haven't got a dictionary, borrow one from Mr Terada.
5. If you have ten yen with you, that will be plenty I think.
6. If Miss Hana-ko is upstairs, please call her.
7. If Suzuki doesn't come on Saturday, write him a letter.
8. If you haven't brought an umbrella with you, I'll lend you mine.
9. If the servant is not (busy) sweeping, call her.
10. If the letter is in English, that man will understand it.
11. I must go back before 6 o'clock.
12. You must get up early.
13. As soon as you arrive at Kōbe, please write to Mr Yamada.
14. As soon as he'd gone out Mr Tanaka arrived.
15. When you finish what you are doing, wash this dress.
16. Supposing I receive no money from home today, I shall be obliged to go to the bank.
17. If you like this pear, eat it.
18. If you don't like it, don't eat it.
19. If that desk is convenient, I shall buy it.
20. Are my boots ready yet?
21. No, not yet.
22. When they are ready send them to my house.
23. If you have yesterday's paper, please lend it to me.

\* The object of the dislike or fondness generally takes the postposition *ga* before *kirai* or *suki*.

## EXERCISE 19.

In Japanese true adjectives have a kind of conjugation ; see **198 ; 199.**

Study the uses of adjectival gerund noted in **200, 1, 3, 4 and 5.**

No after an adjective often has the meaning of 'one'; *akai* no the red one.

*shina* : quality ; articles.

*atsui* : hot.

*muzukashii* : difficult.

*ūmai* : nice (of taste) ; well done.

*kamau* : to matter (gen. used in neg.).

*sō* : so ; in that way ; like that.

*yori* : than.

*shikata* ; *shiyō* : (lit.) the way of doing.

*shikata* (or *shiyō*) *ga nai* : there is no help for it.

1. *Omae no tsūkue wa takakatta ka?* (A).
2. *Iie, takō gozaimasen deshita* (D).
3. *Sō ka? takaku nai nara watashi mo kaō* (B).
4. *Ano bōshi wa takakarō* (B).
5. *Kami wa hyaku-mai go-jis-sen yori takakereba kawa-nai de kudasai* (C).
6. *Atarashii tamago ga nakattara kawa-nai de ii* (A).
7. *Sono hon ga moshi muzukashiku nakattara watashi ni kashite kudasai* (C).
8. *Kono koppu wa yasūkute shina ga yō gozaimasu* (D).
9. *Kono nashi wa yasūkute ūmai* (B).
10. *Kyō wa atsūkute shiyō ga arimasen* (C).
11. *Uchi no jochū wa kitanakute shiyō ga nai* (B).
12. *Kono ito wa furukute dame desū* (C).
13. *Sono bō wa nagakute ikemasen* (C).
14. *Kono hon wa furuku nakute mo zuibun kitanai* (B).
15. *Sono kudamono wa yasūkute mo ūmaku nakereba kawa-nai* (B).
16. *Takakute mo kaimasen kara, atarashii sakana wo o kai nasai* (B).
17. *Sono hari ga moshi dame deshita, ii no wo o kai nasai* (B).
18. *Hana-ko no bōshi wa akai no de gozaimasu* (D).
19. *Ōki na nashi wo kaimashō ka?* (C).
20. *Ūmakereba ōkiku nakute mo kamawa-nai* (B).
21. *Yamada San no tegami wa nagō gozaimashita ka?* (D).
22. *E, zuibun nagakatta* (B).
23. *Kono akai empitsū wa anata no desū ka?* (C).
24. *Iie, sō ja arimasen ; watashi no wa kuroi no desū* (C).
25. *Ano hana wa kirei desū ga, yasuku nakereba kaimasūmai* (C).
26. *Ano hon wa ammari muzukashikattara kawa-nai* (B).
27. *Sono empitsū ga go-sen yori yasūkattara, jū-go-hon katte o kure* (A).
28. *Nashi wa ōkikute mo ūmaku nai nara katte wa ike-nai* (A).
29. *Kono bin wa ammari ōkikute shiyō ga nai* (B).

1. Did your desk cost dear ?
2. No, it was not dear.
3. Is that so ? If they are not dear I will buy one also.
4. I suppose that hat is expensive.
5. Don't buy any paper if it costs more than fifty sen the hundred sheets.
6. Don't buy any eggs if they are not fresh.
7. If that book is not difficult please lend it to me.
8. These tumblers are cheap and the quality is good.
9. These pears are cheap and they taste very nice.
10. It's awfully hot today.
11. Our servant is very dirty.
12. This thread is old, it's no use.
13. That stick is too long, it won't do.
14. Although this book is not old, it's very dirty.
15. If that fruit doesn't taste nice I'll not buy any even if it's cheap.
16. Buy some fresh fish, it doesn't matter even if it's dear.
17. If those needles are no good buy some good ones.
18. Hana-ko's hat is a red one.
19. Shall I buy some big pears ?
20. It doesn't matter if they are not big, so long as they taste nice.
21. Was Mr Yamada's a long letter ?
22. Yes, it was a very long one.
23. Is this red pencil yours ?
24. No, (that is not so ; ) mine is a black one.
25. Those flowers are pretty, but if they are not cheap I don't think I'll buy them.
26. If that book is too difficult I won't buy it.
27. If those pencils cost less than five sen each, buy fifteen.
28. If the pears are not nice, don't buy any even if they are big.
29. This bottle is very big.



## EXERCISE 20.

Quasi-adjectives in *na* (or *no*) have constructions corresponding to the gerundial constructions of true adjectives ; 219.

Ordinary nouns followed by *de* are sometimes used in a way very similar to the gerundial constructions of quasi-adjectives.

*No* with the meaning of 'one' is placed after quasi-adjectives in *na* (*kirei na* pretty ; *kirei na no* a pretty one) ; after quasi-adjectives in *no*, another *no* is not needed to give the meaning of 'one' (*murasaki no* violet, or a violet one ; *hoka no* another, or another one).

*byōki* : illness.

*yama* : mountain.

*fuben na* : inconvenient.

*hoka no* : another.

*jōtō no* (or *na*) : high-class ; best quality.

*shinsetsū na* : kind ; kind-hearted.

*shōjiki na* : honest.

*wagamama na* : self-willed.

*motto* : more.

*tabi-tabi* : frequently.

1. *Ano kodomo wa baka de wagamama da* (B). 2. *Uchi no jochū wa shōjiki de shinsetsū desū* (C). 3. *Kono hako wa kirei ja nakūte takai* (B). 4. *Motto kirei de jōtō no bōshi wa o kai nasai* (B). 5. *Yoshi-ko San wa zuibun rikō de shinsetsū na hito desū* (C). 6. *Ano ko wa byōki de wa naku wagamama da* (B). 7. *Hana-ko wa wagamama de shiyō ga arimasen* (C). 8. *Kono ko wa baka de shūkata ga nai* (B). 9. *Kono tsūkue wa benri de mo ammari takai kara kawa-nai* (B). 10. *Kami wa jōtō no de nakūte mo kamaimasen* (C). 11. *Sono hako wa kirei de mo yowai kara dame desū* (C). 12. *Kuroi no wa Tarō no inu de, shiroi no wa Jirō no inu desū* (C). 13. *Watashi wa yama ga sūki de tabi-tabi ikimasū* (C). 14. *Brown San no tegami wa Ei-go de watashi wa wakarimasen* (C). 15. *Kono tsūkue wa fuben de ike-nai kara, hoka no wo kaō* (B). 16. *Motto ōki na hako ga nai ka?* (B). 17. *Kore yori ōki na no wa gozaimasen* (D). 18. *Kono bōshi wa Tarō no desū ka?* (C). 19. *Iie, sore wa Jirō no da* (B). 20. *Kono kittle wa Suzuki San no de gozaimasū* (D). 21. *Kono hana wa kirei de sūki da* (B). 22. *Uchi no Matsū wa wagamama na jochū de shiyō ga arimasen* (C). 23. *Motto kirei ni tegami wo kaki nasai* (A). 24. *Kono uchi wa fuben de ikemasen kara, hoka no wo karimasū* (C). 25. *Ano hito wa rikō de mo shōjiki ja nai kara dame darō* (B).

1. That child is silly and self-willed. 2. Our servant is honest and kind-hearted. 3. This box is not pretty and it's dear. 4. Buy a prettier and better hat. 5. Miss Yoshi-ko is a very clever and kind-hearted girl. 6. That child is not ill, he is self-willed. 7. Hana-ko is very self-willed. 8. This child is very silly. 9. Although this is a convenient desk I won't buy it as it is too dear. 10. It doesn't matter even if the paper is not of the best quality. 11. Although that box is pretty it won't do as it is too weak. 12. The black dog belongs to Tarō and the white one to Jirō. 13. I often go to the mountains as I'm fond of them. 14. Mr Brown's letter is in English so I don't understand it. 15. As this desk is inconvenient and won't do, I'll buy another one. 16. Isn't there a bigger box? 17. There is not a bigger one (than this one). 18. Is this Tarō's hat? 19. No, it is Jirō's. 20. This stamp belongs to Mr Suzuki. 21. I like this flower, it's very pretty. 22. Our servant Matsu is very self-willed. 23. Write the letter more carefully. 24. As this house is inconvenient and won't do, I'll take another. 25. As that man is not honest I don't think he'll suit you although he is clever.

## EXERCISE 21.

See the formation of the desiderative in tables 28 and 29. The desiderative is a real adjective and has all the inflexions of one. The object of the desire often takes the postposition *ga* in Japanese.

(o) *cha* : tea.  
*chichi* : milk.  
*gohan* : cooked rice ; a meal.  
*hikidashi* : a drawer.  
*nodo* : throat.  
*kawaku* : to become dry.

*nodo ga kawaku* : to be thirsty.  
*onaka* : belly.  
*sūku* : to become empty.  
*onaka ga sūku* : to be hungry.  
*sampo* : a walk.  
*sampo ni iku* : to go for a walk.

1. *Nodo ga kawakaita* ; *mizu ga nomitai* (B). 2. *Ano akai hon ga mitai* (B).  
 3. *Rondon e itte mitai* (B). 4. *Kyō wa sakana wa tabetaku arimasen* (C). 5. *Nichiyō ni Yamada San no uchi ni ikimashita ka?* (C). 6. *Iie, Jirō San ni aitaku nakatta kara, ikimasen deshita* (C). 7. *Uchi ni tegami wo kakimashita ka?* (C).  
 8. *E, kakitaku arimasen deshita ga, kakimashita* (C). 9. *Onaka ga sūkimashita* ; *gohan ga tabetō gozaimasu* (D). 10. *Kinō sampo ni ikitakatta ga, ame ga futte dame datta* (B). 11. *Matsū wa uchi ni kaeritai darō* (B). 12. *Watashi wa nodo ga kawaite, o cha ga nomitakutte shiyō ga nai* (B). 13. *Tarō wa nashi ga tabetai deshō kara, hitotsū yatte kudasai* (C). 14. *Watashi wa uchi ni kaeritaku narimashita* (C). 15. *Moshi kono hon ga yomitaku nattara, kono hikidashi ni arimasu kara, dashite goran nasai* (C). 16. *Sampo ni ikitai desū ka?* (C). 17. *Iie, kyō wa ikitaku arimasen* (C). 18. *Ikitaku nattara, itte mo kamaimasen* (C). 19. *Onaka ga sūkimashita ka?* (C). 20. *Iie, onaka wa sūkimasen ga, chichi ga ikitaku narimashita* (C). 21. *Yamada San no uchi ni ikitaku natta* (B). 22. *Sono hon wa mō yomitaku naku narimashita* (C). 23. *Ano hito no tegami wa yomitaku arimasen* (C). 24. *Nodo ga zuibun kawakimashita* (C). 25. *O cha wo nomitai desū ka?* (C). 26. *Iie, o cha wa kirai desū ; chichi wo sūkoshi nomitai* (B). 27. *Ano tsūkue wo kaitai ga, ammari takai* (B).

1. I am thirsty ; I would like to drink some water. 2. I would like to read that red book. 3. I would like to go and see London. 4. I don't feel inclined to eat fish today. 5. Did you go to Mr Yamada's house on Sunday ? 6. No, I didn't go as I didn't wish to meet Mr Jirō. 7. Did you write home ? 8. Yes, I didn't feel inclined, but however, I did write. 9. I am hungry, I would like to have my dinner. 10. I wanted to go for a walk yesterday, but as it rained I couldn't do so. 11. I suppose Matsu wishes to return home. 12. I am thirsty, I do so wish to drink some tea. 13. I suppose Tarō would like a pear to eat, please give him one. 14. (On account of something which has happened) I now feel inclined to return home ; (*lit.* I have become desirous of returning home). 15. If you feel inclined later on to read this book, as it's in this drawer take it out and read it ; (*lit.* if you become desirous). 16. Do you wish to go for a walk ? 17. No, I don't wish to go today. 18. Should you feel inclined to go later on, you may do so. 19. Are you hungry ? 20. No, I am not hungry, but I would like some milk to drink (*lit.* I have become desirous of drinking milk). 21. I feel inclined now to go to Mr Yamada's house. 22. I no longer feel inclined to read that book ; (*lit.* have become non-desirous). 23. I don't wish to read that man's letter. 24. I am very thirsty. 25. Would you like some tea to drink ? 26. No, I don't care for tea, I would like a little milk. 27. I would like to buy that desk, but it's too dear.



## EXERCISE 22.

Honorific and humble words to a certain extent take the place of personal and possessive pronouns : honorific words are generally used when speaking of the 2nd (sometimes the 3rd) person, and humble words when referring to the 1st person.

Notice the irregularities of the verbs *gozaru*, *irassharu*, *kudasaru* and *nasaru* mentioned in 96.

*ageru* : to give (humble).

*itadaku* : to receive ; eat ; drink (humble).

*itasu* : to do (humble).

*mairu* : to come ; go (humble).

*goran nasaru* : to look (honorific).

*irassharu* : to be ; come ; go (honorific).

*kudasaru* : to give (honorific).

*meshi-agaru* : to eat ; drink (honorific).

*nasaru* : to do (honorific).

*o-ide nasaru* : to be ; come ; go (honorific).

*kure'ru* : to give (used only of the 2nd or 3rd person, but not polite).

1. *Itsū Amerika e irasshaimasū ka ?* (D). 2. *Raigetsū no muika ni mairimasū* (D). 3. *Dōzo kono kudamono wo meshi-agatte kudasai* (D). 4. *Sūkoshi itadakimashō* (D). 5. *Anata wa nichiyō ni nani wo nasaimasū ka ?* (D). 6. *Nichiyō ni wa Tōkyō e mairimasū* (D). 7. *Suzuki San ga Tarō ni kirei na hon wo kudasaimashita* (D). 8. *Kono hon wo mada goran nasaimasen deshōtara, agemashō* (D). 9. *Kinō Yamada San ni kono hana wo itadakimashita* (D). 10. *Hana-ko San wa mō Kyōto e o-ide nasaimashita ka ?* (D). 11. *Iie, mada de gozaimasū ; ashita gogo no roku-ji no kisha de mairimasū* (D). 12. *Neko ni kudamono wo kurete wa ike-nai* (A). 13. *Kinō Yamada San ga o-ide nas'tte kore wo watakushi ni kudasaimashita* (D). 14. *Terada San wa kesa gohan wo meshi-agarimasen deshita* (D). 15. *Kono kudamono wo Yoshi-ko San ni agemashō* (D). 16. *O cha wo agemushō ka ?* (D). 17. *Iie, o cha wa itadakimasen* (D). 18. *Dōzo ashita no ban hachi-ji ni uchi e irash'tte kudasai* (D). 19. *Kesa nikai no sōji wo shita ka ?* (A). 20. *Hai, itashimashita* (D). 21. *Yamada San wa doko ni irasshaimasū ka ?* (D). 22. *Nikai ni irasshaimasū* (D). 23. *Saburō wa watashi ni chiisa na inu wo ipiki kureta* (B). 24. *Tanaka San wa ima doko ni irasshaimasū ka ?* (D). 25. *Sengetsū kara Hakone ni o-ide nasaimasū* (D). 26. *Watakushi ga kono heya no sōji wo itashimashō* (D). 27. *Yamada San wa asa no gohan no mae ni shimbun wo goran nasaimasū* (D). 28. *Kinō Tōkyō e o-ide nasaimashita ka ?* (D).

1. When are you going to America ? 2. I am going on the 6th of next month. 3. Please eat this fruit. 4. I will eat a little. 5. What do you do on Sundays ? 6. I go to Tōkyō on Sundays. 7. Mr Suzuki gave Tarō a pretty book. 8. If you haven't yet read this book I will give it to you. 9. Mr Yamada gave me this flower yesterday (*lit.* I received this flower from, etc.). 10. Has Miss Hana-ko already left for Kyōto ? 11. No, not yet ; she is going by the 6 P.M. train tomorrow. 12. Don't give fruit to the cat. 13. Mr Yamada came yesterday and gave me this. 14. Mr Terada didn't eat his breakfast this morning. 15. I will give this fruit to Miss Yoshi-ko. 16. May I offer you some tea ? 17. No thanks, I don't take tea. 18. Please come to my house tomorrow evening at eight o'clock. 19. Did you sweep the rooms upstairs this morning ? 20. Yes, I did. 21. Where is Mr Yamada ? 22. He is upstairs. 23. Saburō gave me a little dog. 24. Where is Mr Tanaka now ? 25. He is in Hakone since last month. 26. I will sweep this room. 27. Mr Yamada reads the newspaper before breakfast. 28. Did you go to Tōkyō yesterday ?

## EXERCISE 23.

Ordinary verbs may be made honorific as explained in 359, 360.

*hanashi* : a tale.

*kata* : person.

*sara* : plate.

*hanasū* : to speak.

*heta na* : incompetent ; a bad hand at.

*jōzu na* : a good hand at ; expert.

*yasashii* : easy.

*dono* ? which ?

*taihen* : very.

1. *Anata wa Ei-go wo o hanashi nasaimasū ka ?* (D). 2. *Hai, sūkoshi hanashimasū* (C). 3. *Dono hon wo Tarō ni o yari nasaimashita ?* (D). 4. *Yasashii hanashi no hon wo yarimashita* (C). 5. *Kono kirei na sara wa doko de o kai ni narimashita ?* (D). 6. *Sore wa Hana-ko ga Igrisū kara motte kimashita* (C). 7. *Mō Suzuki San ni tegami wo o dashi nasaimashita ka ?* (D). 8. *Iie, mada dashimasen ; nichiyō ni kakimashō* (C). 9. *Ashita nan-ji no kisha de Matsushima e o-ide de gozaimasū ka ?* (D). 10. *Ku-ji no kisha de mairimasū* (D). 11. *Anata wa taihen jōzu ni Ei-go wo o hanashi nasaimasū* (D). 12. *Iie, mada heta de gozaimasū* (D). 13. *Kinō dono tsūkue wo o kai-deshita ka ?* (C). 14. *Kono chiisai no wo kaimashita* (C). 15. *Mō kyō no shimbun wo o yomi desū ka ?* (C). 16. *E, mō yomimashita* (C). 17. *Akai empitsū wo o mochi-deshitara, dōzo o kashi kudasai* (D). 18. *Silva San wa Nihon-go wo o hanashi nasaimasū ka ?* (D). 19. *Hai, taihen jōzu ni o hanashi ni narimasū* (D). 20. *Ano kata wa Ei-go mo yoku o wakari de gozaimasū* (D). 21. *Terada San ni kudamono wo o age nasaimashita ka ?* (D). 22. *E, kinō motte ikimashita* (C). 23. *Hana-ko San wa Ei-go ga o wakari ni narimasū ka ?* (D). 24. *Iie, ano kata wa Ei-go wa o deki nasaimasen* (D). 25. *Kono hana wa o kai ni narimashita ka ?* (D). 26. *Iie, Yoshi-ko ga kuremashita* (C). 27. *Watashi wa Nihon-go ga yoku wakarimasen kara, yasashii kotoba de o hanashi kudasai* (D). 28. *Kono hon wa yasashii desū kara, o wakari ni naru deshō* (D). 29. *Yamada San wa Ei-go no tegami wo jōzu ni o kaki nasaimasū* (D). 30. *Watashi wa Nihon-go ga heta ni natta* (B). 31. *Mitsū-ko San no tegami wo goran desū ka ?* (C). 32. *Iie, mada mi-nai* (B). 33. *Kono sara wa kirei de taihen yasū gozaimashita* (D).

1. Can you speak English ? 2. Yes, a little. 3. Which book did you give Tarō ? 4. I gave him an easy story-book. 5. Where did you buy this pretty plate ? 6. Hana-ko brought it from England with her. 7. Have you already written to Mr Suzuki ? 8. No, not yet ; I'll write on Sunday. 9. By what train tomorrow are you going to Matsushima ? 10. By the nine o'clock train. 11. You speak English very well. 12. No, I still speak it very incorrectly. 13. Which desk did you buy yesterday ? 14. I bought this small one. 15. Have you already read today's paper ? 16. Yes, I've already read it. 17. If you happen to have a red pencil about you, please lend it to me. 18. Can Mr Silva speak Japanese ? 19. Yes, he can speak it very well. 20. He also understands English very well. 21. Did you give the fruit to Mr Terada ? 22. Yes, I took it (to his house) yesterday. 23. Does Miss Hana-ko understand (speak) English ? 24. No, she does not. 25. Did you buy this flower ? 26. No, Yoshi-ko gave it to me. 27. As I don't understand Japanese well, please use simple words. 28. I expect you'll understand this book as it's easy. 29. Mr Yamada writes letters in English very well. 30. I am out of practice now in Japanese (*lit.* I have become unskilful). 31. Have you seen Miss Mitsu-ko's letter ? 32. No, not yet. 33. These plates are pretty and they were very cheap.



## EXERCISE 24.

A few nouns are in themselves honorific or humble. Many nouns which are not honorific, may be made so by prefixing *o* or, if a person, by adding *sama* or *san*.

<i>chichi</i> (humble); <i>o tō-san</i> (honorific):	<i>otōto</i> : younger brother.
father.	<i>imōto</i> : younger sister.
<i>haha</i> (humble); <i>o kō-san</i> (honorific):	<i>yado</i> (humble); <i>danna sama</i> (honorific):
mother.	husband.
<i>musūko</i> : son ; boy.	<i>kanai</i> (humble); <i>oku-sama</i> (honorific):
<i>musūme</i> : daughter ; girl.	wife.
<i>o-jō-san</i> (honorific) : daughter ; girl.	<i>sama</i> : Mr ; Mrs ; etc. (more polite than
<i>ani</i> (humble); <i>nii-san</i> (honorific):	<i>san</i> ).
elder brother.	<i>donata</i> ? (polite); <i>dare</i> ? who ?
<i>ane</i> (humble); <i>nē-san</i> (honorific):	<i>keredomo</i> : although ; however.
elder sister.	

1. *Ano o kata wa donata de irasshaimasū ka ?* (D). 2. *Yamada San no otōto desū* (C). 3. *O tō-san to o kō-san wa kinō Tōkyō e o-ide nasaimashita ka ?* (D). 4. *Chichi wa itta keredomo haha wa ika-nakatta* (B). 5. *Danna sama wa kyō wa o uchi ni irasshaimasū ka ?* (D). 6. *Yado wa kyō wa uchi ni orimasū* (C). 7. *Suzuki San no oku-sama wa taihen shinsetsū na o kata de gozaimasū* (D). 8. *Anata wa o ko san ga arimosū ka ?* (C). 9. *Musūme wa arimasū ga, musūko wa arimasen* (C). 10. *O-jō-san wa Ei-go ga o deki nasaimasū ka ?* (D). 11. *Iie, dekimasen* (C). 12. *Yamada no kanai wa watashi no imōto desū* (C). 13. *Nii-san wa itsū Amerika kara o kaeri ni narimashita ?* (D). 14. *Sengetsū no hatsūka ni kaerimashita* (C). 15. *Kore wa nē-san no tokei de gozaimasū ka ?* (D). 16. *Iie, sō ja arimasen ; ane wa tokei wo motte imasen* (C). 17. *Ani wa Ei-go ga taihen jōzu da* (B). 18. *Haha wa Terada San no oku-san to Nikkō e mairimashita* (D). 19. *O tō-san wa dare to Yokohama e irasshaimashita ?* (D). 20. *Imōto to ikimashita* (C). 21. *Ani wa kinyō no ban Kōbe kara kaette, doyō-bi ni Igirisū e ikimasū* (C). 22. *Yamada San wa musūko ga san-nin atte, hitori wa Amerika ni imasū* (C). 23. *Silva San wa taihen Nihon-go ga o jōzu desū ga, oku-san wa heta desū* (C). 24. *Imōto san wa ima nani wo nas'tte irasshaimasū ka ?* (D). 25. *Nikai de tegami wo kaite imasū* (C). 26. *O bōshi wa koko ni gozaimasū* (D).

1. Who is that person ? 2. He is Mr Yamada's (younger) brother. 3. Did your father and mother go to Tōkyō yesterday ? 4. My father went but my mother did not. 5. Is your husband at home today ? 6. My husband is at home today. 7. Mrs Suzuki is a very kind lady. 8. Have you got any children ? 9. I have a daughter but no son. 10. Can your daughter speak English ? 11. No, she cannot. 12. Mrs. Yamada is my (younger) sister. 13. When did your brother return from America ? 14. On the 20th of last month. 15. Is this your sister's watch ? 16. No, my sister hasn't got a watch. 17. My brother speaks English very well. 18. My mother went with Mrs Terada to Nikkō. 19. Whom did your father go to Yokohama with ? 20. He went with my little sister. 21. My brother will return from Kōbe on Friday and leave for England on Saturday. 22. Mr Yamada has three sons ; one of them is in America. 23. Mr Silva knows Japanese very well, but his wife hardly knows any. 24. What is your sister doing now ? 25. She is writing letters upstairs. 26. Your hat is here.

## EXERCISE 25.

Study the uses that the verbs *yaru*, *age'ru*, *kure'ru* and *kudasaru* sometimes have after gerunds, in 109.

*kōri* : ice.

*ire'ru* : to put into.

*kawakasu* (trans.) : to dry.

*naosu* : to mend ; translate.

*nure'ru* : to get wet.

*oi-dasu* : to drive away.

*oshie'ru* : to teach.

*shiru* : to know.

*arigatō* : thanks.

*iro-iro no* : various ; several.

*dare de mo* : everybody ; anybody.

*itsū de mo* : always ; any time.

*nan de mo* : everything ; anything.

1. *O tō-san no kimono ga nurete imashita kara, kawakashite agemashita* (D).
2. *Tanaka San ga Suzuki San no tegami wo Ei-go ni naoshite kudasaimashita* (C).
3. *Terada San ga watakushi no tokei wo naoshite kudasaimashita* (C).
4. *Dōzo sūkoshi Nihon-go wo oshiete kudasaimasen ka?* (D).
5. *E, yoku wa dekimasūmai ga, oshiete agemashō* (C).
6. *Ano hito wa itsu de mo shinsetsu ni oshiete kuremasū* (C).
7. *Kono hon wa dare de mo mite ii desū* (C).
8. *Omae ga byōki nara, watashi ga sōji wo shite yaru* (A).
9. *Ano kitanai iku ga kitara oi-dashite yari nasai* (A).
10. *Yamada San wa itsu de mo jibiki wo kashite kudasaimasū* (C).
11. *Kono kimono ga kawaitara anata no o heya ni motte itte agemashō* (C).
12. *Dare ga omae ni sono hana wo motte kite kureta?* (A).
13. *Hana-ko desū* (C).
14. *Broken San wa musuko ni Ei-go wo oshiete kudasaimashita* (C).
15. *Anata no tokei wo naoshite agemashō ka?* (C).
16. *Arigatō, mō Yamada San ga naoshite kudasaimashita* (C).
17. *Mizu ni kōri wo irete agemashō ka?* (C).
18. *Ano mise wa nan de mo yasui kara itsu de mo kyaku ga takusan aru* (B).
19. *Kinō Tarō ni iro-iro no empitsū wo katte yatta* (B).
20. *Sore wa dare de mo shitte iru deshō* (C).
21. *Mizuno San ga tokei wo katte kudasaimashita* (C).
22. *Kono jibiki wa chichi ga Tōkyō de katte kuremashita* (C).
23. *Watashi wa kinō kyaku ga atte, Tōkyō e ikimasen deshita kara, kami wa Yamada San ga katte kudasaimashita* (C).
24. *O Matsū San, watashi no kimono wo aratte kuremasū ka?* (C).
25. *E, aratte agemasū* (C).

1. Father, as your clothes were wet I dried them for you. 2. Mr Tanaka translated Mr Suzuki's letter into English for me. 3. Mr Terada mended my watch for me. 4. Wouldn't you kindly teach me a little Japanese? 5. I am afraid you will find me a very poor teacher but I will do what I can for you. 6. That man is always willing to teach one. 7. Anybody may read this book. 8. If you are ill I'll do the rooms for you. 9. If that nasty dog comes again, drive it away. 10. Mr Yamada always lends me his dictionary. 11. When this dress is dry I'll take it to your room, (so you needn't bother). 12. Who (brought and) gave you those flowers? 13. Hana-ko. 14. Mr Brown taught my son English. 15. Shall I mend your watch for you? 16. Thanks, Mr Yamada has already mended it. 17. Shall I put some ice into your water? 18. There are always a lot of customers in that shop, they sell (everything) so cheap. 19. I bought several pencils yesterday and gave them to Tarō. 20. I suppose everybody knows that. 21. (a) Mr Mizuno bought a watch and gave it to me. (b) Mr Mizuno bought a watch for me (as I could not go myself). 22. My father bought this dictionary for me in Tōkyō. 23. I didn't go to Tōkyō yesterday as a visitor came, so Mr Yamada bought the paper for me. 24. Matsu, will you wash my dress for me? 25. Very well.



## EXERCISE 26.

Study the uses that the verbs *morau*, *itadaku*, *kuru*, *irassharu* and *mairu* sometimes have after gerunds, in **108, 103.**

*shujin* : master.  
*yuki* : snow.  
*isogashii* : busy.  
*oishii* : nice (of taste).  
*aruku* : to walk.

*kaesû* (trans.) : to return ; give back.  
*morau* : to receive.  
*okosû* (trans.) : to wake up.  
*tetsûdau* : to help.  
*sugu ni* : soon ; immediately.

1. *Yon-sen no hagaki wo go-mai to jis-sen no kitte wo roku-mai katte kima-shita* (C). 2. *Sugu ni kuruma wo yonde ki nasai* (A). 3. *Kesa watashi ga dekaketara sugu ni yuki ga futte kita* (B). 4. *Asakûsa kara koko made aruite irasshaimashita ka?* (D). 5. *Iie, kuruma de kimashita* (C). 6. *Ashita no asa hayaku ginkô e itte mairimashô* (D). 7. *Kyô wa isogashii kara tetsûdatte moraitai* (A). 8. *Hana-ko ni oishii nashi wo katte moraimashita* (C). 9. *Sono tegami wo jochû ni dashite morai nasai* (B). 10. *Kono hana wo Teru-ko San no o uchi ni motte itte moraitai* (B). 11. *Dare ga Tanaka San ni shimbun wo kaeshimashita?* (C). 12. *Tarô ni kaeshite moraimashita* (C). 13. *Kinô nii-san ni tegami wo kaite moraimashita ka?* (C). 14. *Iie, kinô wa ani ga isogashikutte kaite kure-masen deshita* (C). 15. *Moshi ame ga futte kitara, mise e kasa wo motte kite moraimashô* (C). 16. *Shujin wo yonde itadakitai* (B). 17. *Dôzo kono tegami wo Ei-go ni naoshite itadakitô gozaimasû* (D). 18. *O tô-san ni tokei wo katte itadaita* (B). 19. *Ashita roku-ji no kisha de Yokohama e ikimasû kara go-ji ni okoshite moraitai desû* (C). 20. *Terada San ni Ei-go de tegami wo kaite itadaite, Brown San ni o dashi nasai* (B). 21. *Raigetsû kara Brown San ni Ei-go wo oshiete moraimasû* (C). 22. *Ame ga futte kimashita kara, otôto wa mise kara kuruma de kaette kuru deshô* (C). 23. *Nê-san ni yasashii hanashi no hon wo katte itadaite, Jirô ni yarô* (B). 24. *Sara wo ni-mai motte kite moraitai* (B). 25. *Dare ni tokei wo naoshite moraimashita?* (C). 26. *Suzuki San ni naoshite itadakimashita* (C).

1. I went and bought five four-sen postcards and six ten-sen stamps (*lit.* bought and came). 2. Go and call a rikisha immediately. 3. It began to snow as soon as I left this morning. 4. Did you walk all the way from Asakusa here? 5. No, I came by rikisha. 6. I will go to the bank (and come back) early tomorrow morning. 7. I wish you would help me today as I am very busy. 8. Hana-ko bought these nice pears for me. 9. Tell the servant to go and post that letter. 10. I wish you would take these flowers to Miss Teru-ko's house. 11. Who returned the newspaper to Mr Tanaka? 12. Tarô returned it (at my request). 13. Did your brother write the letter for you yesterday? 14. No, he was too busy yesterday to write it for me. 15. If it starts raining take my umbrella to the office. 16. Please call your master. 17. I wish you would kindly translate this letter into English for me. 18. My father (bought and) gave me a watch. 19. As I am going to Yokohama by the six o'clock train tomorrow I wish to be called at five o'clock. 20. Ask Mr Terada to translate this letter into English for you, and send it to Mr Brown. 21. Beginning next month Mr Brown is going to teach me English. 22. As it has started raining I expect my brother will come back by rikisha from the office. 23. I am going to ask my sister to buy me an easy story-book and I'll give it to Jirô. 24. I wish you would bring me two plates. 25. Who mended your watch for you? 26. Mr Suzuki mended it for me.

## EXERCISE 27.

Study the uses that the verbs *mi'ru*, *goran nasaru*, *shimau* and *oku* sometimes have after gerunds, in 104—106.

*jama* : obstruction.

*mado* : window.

*toki* : time.

*kurai* : dark.

*ake'ru* : to open.

*mise'ru* : to show.

*shimau* : to finish ; put away.

*shime'ru* : to close ; shut.

*shinu* : to die.

*tsure'ru* : to take (person or animal) along with.

*wasure'ru* : to forget.

*naze* ? why ?

1. *Kono tegami wa zuibun muzukashii ; anata yonde goran nasai* (C). 2. *Ashita Smith San no uchi e ittara, Ei-go de hanashite miyō* (B). 3. *Ammari kurai kara, sono mado wo akete mimashō* (C). 4. *Nichiyō ni Mitsū-ko ga uchi e kuru deshō kara, anata mo kite goran nasai* (C). 5. *Kono nashi wo tabete mimashita ga, ammari oishiku arimasen* (C). 6. *Sono hako ni nani ga aru ka akete goran* (B). 7. *Naze inu wo tsurete kimasen ka ?* (C). 8. *Watashi no inu wa shinde shimaimashita* (C). 9. *Uchi no jochū wa byōki de uchi e kaette shimaimashita* (C). 10. *Sono hon wo yonde shimattara Tarō San ni kaeshite kudasai* (C). 11. *Watashi wa Hana-ko San no banchi wo wasurete shimatta* (B). 12. *Kono shigoto wo shimattara, sampo ni ikō* (B). 13. *Shimbun wa ano hako ni shimai nasai* (A). 14. *Kaze ga fūkimasu kara, mado wo shimete oite kudasai* (C). 15. *Kono tegami wa shimatte oite, Yamada San ga kita toki misemashō* (C). 16. *Tanaka San no banchi wo kami ni kaite okimashita* (C). 17. *Suzuki San no banchi wo wasuretara taihen desu kara, kaite oki nasai* (B). 18. *Yamada San no tegami wa kono hako ni irete okimasu* (C). 19. *Kono hon wa mō yonde shimaimashita kara, hikidashi ni irete okimashō* (C). 20. *Kono tsūkue wa jama da kara, nikai e motte itte oki nasai* (A). 21. *Sōji wo shite shimattara, sugu ni ginkō e itte kite o kure* (A). 22. *Ano hako ni nani ga arimasu ka ?* (C). 23. *Akete goran nasareba wakarimasu* (C). 24. *Kono kami wa taihen yasui kara, takusan katte okimashō* (C).

1. This letter is very difficult ; see if you can read it. 2. When I go to Mr Smith's house tomorrow, I'll try and speak English (to him). 3. As it's so dark I'll open the window (and we will see whether that improves things). 4. Perhaps Mitsu-ko will come on Sunday, you come also (and see whether you are lucky enough to meet her). 5. I tried these pears but they are not very nice. 6. Open that box and see what's in it. 7. Why didn't you bring your dog ? 8. My dog died. 9. My servant fell ill and returned home (for good). 10. When you finish that book please return it to Master Tarō. 11. I've forgotten the number of Miss Hana-ko's house. 12. When I finish this work I'll go for a walk. 13. Put the newspaper away in that box. 14. Shut the window as it's windy. 15. I'll keep this letter and show it to Mr Yamada when he comes. 16. I wrote down the number of Mr Tanaka's house on a piece of paper. 17. As it would be very inconvenient if we were to forget Mr Suzuki's address, write it down. 18. I keep Mr Yamada's letters in this box. 19. As I have finished reading this book I'll put it away in this drawer. 20. As this desk is in the way, take it upstairs (and leave it there). 21. When you've finished doing the rooms go to the bank (and come back). 22. What is there in that box ? 23. If you open it and look, you'll know. 24. As this paper is very cheap I'll buy a lot and put it away (for future use).



## EXERCISE 28.

The Japanese adjective in its ordinary inflexions may mean not only the positive but the comparative or superlative degree. *Kore wa yasui* may be translated according to circumstances by 'this is cheap', 'this is cheaper' or 'this is the cheapest'.

The words *hō* 'side' and *yori* 'than' make the comparison more explicit; the word *ichiban* 'number one' serves the same purpose in the superlative.

*himo* : string.

*hō* : side.

*jōbu na* : strong.

*katai* : hard.

*tsuyoi* : strong.

*yawarakai* : soft.

*yowai* : weak.

*dore* ? which (of several) ?

*dotchi* ? *dochira* ? which (of two) ?

*ichiban* : number one; used to give a superlative effect.

*no uchi* : among.

*ka—ka* ; *to—to* : or.

1. *Kisha to densha to dotchi ga hayai ka* ? (B).
2. *Kisha ga hayai desū* (C).
3. *Sono bō ga mijikakereba nagai no wo motte kite agemashō* (D).
4. *Kono himo wa yowakutte ike-nai kara, jōbu na no wo motte o-ide* (A).
5. *Kono bin wa chiisai kara, ōki na no wo kudasai* (C).
6. *Kono nashi wa dore ga oishii desū ka* ? (C).
7. *Sono chiisai no ga oishiū gozaimasū* (D).
8. *Empitsū wo katte kite o kure* (A).
9. *Katai no to yawarakai no to dotchi wo katte mairimashō* ? (D).
10. *Yawarakai hō wo katte moraitai* (A).
11. *Iro-iro mite yawarakai no wo katte mairimashita* (D).
12. *Niku ka sakana ka katte o kure* (A).
13. *Sakana no hō ga yasū gozaimasū kara, sakana wo katte mairimashō* (D).
14. *Kono empitsū yori sore no hō ga yawarakai* (B).
15. *Brown San no o uchi wa Yamada San no o uchi yori takō gozaimasū* (D).
16. *Hana-ko yori Sumi-ko no hō ga ōkii* (B).
17. *Tarō to Jirō to Haruo no san-nin no uchi de Jirō ga ichiban tsuyoi* (B).
18. *Dono kutsu ga ichiban yasui desū ka* ? (C).
19. *Kore ga yasū gozaimasū ga, ammari jōbu de wa gozaimasen* (D).
20. *Kono sam-bon no empitsū no uchi de, kore ga ichiban katō gozaimasū* (D).
21. *Kono kami wa are yori yasū gozaimasū* (D).
22. *Yamada San no o uchi wa watashi no uchi yori ōkiku nai* (B).
23. *Kono sam-mai no kami no uchi de dore ga jōtō desū ka* ? (C).
24. *Kore ga ii no de gozaimasū* (D).
25. *Akai empitsū yori murasaki no hō ga takō gozaimasū* (D).

1. Which is the faster, a train, or a tram-car ?
2. A train is faster.
3. If that stick is too short, I will bring a longer one.
4. This string won't do, it's too weak; bring me a stronger piece.
5. This bottle is too small, please give me a bigger one.
6. Which are the nicest of these pears ?
7. Those small ones are the nicest.
8. Go and buy a pencil.
9. What kind shall I buy, a hard one or a soft one ?
10. Buy me a soft one.
11. After having seen several I bought a soft one (and came).
12. Buy some meat or some fish.
13. As fish is cheaper I will buy some-fish.
14. That pencil is softer than this one.
15. Mr Brown's house is higher than Mr Yamada's.
16. Sumi-ko is taller than Hana-ko.
17. If we compare Tarō, Jirō and Haruo, we find that Jirō is the strongest.
18. Which boots are the cheapest ?
19. These are the cheapest but they are not very strong.
20. This is the hardest of these three pencils.
21. This paper is cheaper than that.
22. Mr Yamada's house is not bigger than mine.
23. Which is the best of these three sheets of paper ?
24. This is the best.
25. A violet pencil is dearer than a red one.

## EXERCISE 29.

To after the present tense may sometimes be translated by 'if' or 'when'.  
To *omou* is used to express somebody's thoughts, opinion or intention.

*hima* : spare time.

*kaji* : a fire ; conflagration.

*komaru* : to be in a difficulty ; be inconvenienced.

*okoru* : to get angry.

*omou* : to think.

*toru* : to take.

*mata* : again.

*yūbe* : last night.

*sō* (followed by negative) : not very.

*to* : thus ; that.

1. *Ashita ame ga furu to komarimasu* (C). 2. *Ammari kudamono wo taberu to byōki ni naru* (B). 3. *Nichiyō ni Hana-ko San ga irasshara-nai to komarimasu kara, tegami wo dashimashō* (C). 4. *Ani ga Amerika kara kaeru to watashi ga Igrisū e iku* (B). 5. *Sono hana wo toru to Tarō ga okoru darō* (B). 6. *Anata ga uchi e kaette shimau to watashi ga zuibun komarimasu* (C). 7. *Yamada San wa itsu kuru deshō ka?* (C). 8. *Doyō-bi no ban ni irassharu to omoimasu* (C). 9. *Watashi wa raigetsu Nikkō e ikō to omou* (B). 10. *Kono kami wa hyaku-mai ni-jū-go-sen nara sō takaku nai to omoimasu* (C). 11. *Kono hon wa muzukashii kara, Tarō ni yatte mo dame darō to omou* (B). 12. *Kyō wa ame ga furumai to omotta ga, mata futte kita* (B). 13. *Yūbe no kaji wa nan-ji goro deshita?* (C). 14. *Asa no ni-ji goro deshita to omoimasu* (C). 15. *Moshi o isogashii gozaimasen deshītara, sūkoshi. Ei-go o oshiete itadakitai to omoimasu* (D). 16. *E, ku-gatsu ni naru to hima ga dekimasu kara, oshiete agemashō* (C). 17. *Ashita mo mata ame da to omoimasu ka?* (C). 18. *Iie, ashita wa fura-nai deshō to omoimasu* (C). 19. *Ano hito ga okotte iru to (wa) omowa-nakatta* (B). 20. *Hana-ko San wa anata wo taihen yowai kata da to omotte imasu* (C). 21. *Watashi wa ano otoko wa shō-ji ni hito to omoimasen* (C). 22. *Yūbe Tarō ga kuru ka to omotta ga, ko-nakatta* (B). 23. *Mata ano hito ga okoru to ike-nai kara, sono hon wa mi-nai de kudasai* (C). 24. *Yamada San wa isogashii hito desu kara, kyō mo uchi ni i-nai deshō to omoimasu* (C).

1. I would be much inconvenienced were it to rain tomorrow. 2. If you eat too much fruit, you'll get ill. 3. As I would be inconvenienced if Miss Hana-ko were not to come on Sunday, I will write her a letter. 4. When my brother returns from America, I shall leave for England. 5. If you pick those flowers, I think Tarō will be angry. 6. When you return home, I will find myself seriously inconvenienced. 7. When do you think Mr Yamada will come? 8. I expect he'll come Saturday evening. 9. I intend to go to Nikkō next month. 10. I don't think this paper is very dear if it only costs twenty-five sen the hundred sheets. 11. As this book is difficult, I think it is no use to give it to Tarō. 12. I didn't think it would rain today, but it has started again. 13. At what o'clock was the fire last night? 14. At about two o'clock in the morning, I believe. 15. If you are not very busy, I wish you would teach me a little English (*lit.* I think I would like you to teach). 16. All right; I shall have some free time in September, I will teach you then. 17. Do you think it will rain again tomorrow? 18. No, I don't think it will. 19. I didn't think that man would have been angry. 20. Miss Hana-ko thinks you are very weak. 21. I don't think that man is honest. 22. I thought Tarō might come last evening, but he didn't. 23. It wouldn't do to make that man angry again so don't look at that book, please. 24. Mr Yamada is a busy person, I expect he will be absent from home again today.



## EXERCISE 30.

*To iu* is used in direct quotations ; the corresponding English, however, is frequently an indirect quotation.

*ji* : letter ; character ; word.  
*kuruma-ya* : a rikisha-man.  
*namae* : name.  
*rusu* : absence.  
*tokoro* : place.  
*iu* : to say.

*okuru* : to send.  
*dō* ? how ? what ?  
*dō iu* ? what kind of ?  
*kō iu* : this kind of ; such as this.  
*ā iu* ; *sō iu* : that kind of ; such as that.  
*to iu* : called ; often not translated.

1. *Kesa Tarō ga kite 'kyō wa Tōkyō e ika-nai' to itta* (B). 2. *Kuruma-ya ni 'go-ji ni kite kure' to itte o-ide* (A). 3. *Ano hito no namae wa nan to iimasu ka?* (C). 4. *Suzuki to iimasu* (C). 5. *Hakone to iu tokoro wo shutte imasu ka?* (C). 6. *Iie, shira-nai* (B). 7. *Kono ji wa dō kakimasu ka?* (C). 8. *Nichiyō-bi no shimbun wa dō shimashita?* (C). 9. *Hana-ko ga 'Yamada San no oku-san ni okutta' to iimasu* (C). 10. *Kō iu empitsū wo ni-hon katte o-ide* (A). 11. *Ā iu hon wo yonde wa ike-nai* (A). 12. *Anata wa dō iu inu ga o sūki desu ka?* (C). 13. *Watashi wa chiisa na inu ga sūki da* (B). 14. *Tanaka San wa 'ashita uchi ni iru' to iimashita ka?* (C). 15. *Hai, sō iimashita* (C). 16. *Kinō o rusu ni Suzuki to iu kata ga kimashita* (C). 17. *Ano akai hana wa o sūki de gozaimasu ka?* (D). 18. *Iie, ā iu hana wa kirai de gozaimasu* (D). 19. *Nan to iimashita? yoku wakari-masen deshita kara, mō ichi-dō itte kudasai* (C). 20. *Haruo wa 'kyō uchi e kaeritai' to iu darō* (B). 21. *Jochū ni 'motto hayaku oki-nai to komaru' to itte o kure* (A). 22. *Kō iu kami ga arimasu ka?* (C). 23. *Sō iu kami wa ima gozaimasen* (D). 24. *Yamada San wa 'doyō-bi ni Kamakura e iku' to iimashita ka?* (C). 25. *Iie, sō iimasen deshita* (C). 26. *Kore wa nan to iu kudamono de gozaimasu ka?* (D). 27. *Nashi to iimasu* (C). 28. *Anata no shiroi inu wa dō narimashita?* (C). 29. *Are wa byōki de shinde shimaimashita* (C). 30. *Matsū ni 'nikai ni denki wo tsukete kure' to itte kudasai* (C). 31. *Moshi rusu ni Kimura to iu hito ga kitara 'matte ite kure' to itte kudasai* (C).

1. Tarō came this morning and said he wasn't going to Tōkyō today. 2. Go and tell the rikisha-man to come at five o'clock. 3. What is that man's name? 4. He is called Suzuki. 5. Do you know a place called Hakone? 6. No, I do not. 7. How do you write this character? 8. What did you do with Sunday's newspaper? 9. Hana-ko says she sent it to Mrs Yamada. 10. Go and buy two pencils like this. 11. You mustn't read books like that. 12. What kind of dogs are you fond of? 13. I am fond of small dogs. 14. Did Mr Tanaka say he would be at home tomorrow? 15. Yes, he said so. 16. A gentleman called Suzuki came yesterday while you were out. 17. Do you like that red flower? 18. No, I don't like that kind of flower. 19. What did you say? As I didn't quite understand you, please say it again. 20. I suppose Haruo will say he wants to go back home today. 21. Tell the servant that I shall be inconvenienced if she doesn't get up earlier. 22. Have you any paper like this? 23. I have no paper like that at present. 24. Did Mr Yamada say he was going to Kamakura on Saturday? 25. No, he didn't say so. 26. What's this fruit called? 27. It's called a pear. 28. What's happened to your white dog? 29. He fell ill and died. 30. Please go and tell Matsu to turn on the electric lights upstairs. 31. Should a man called Kimura come while I am out please tell him to wait.

## EXERCISE 31.

Verbs and verbal phrases are often used attributively; they are sometimes translated by relative clauses.

*dempō* : telegram.  
*isu* : chair.  
*junsa* : policeman.  
*kago* : basket.  
*michi* : road; way.  
*satō* : sugar.  
*todana* : cupboard.

*tonari* : next-door; immediate neighbour.  
*tsubo* : jar.  
*koshi-kake'ru* : to sit.  
*noru* : to get on.  
*ori'ru* : to get off.  
*tatsū* (intr.) : to stand.  
*kara* after gerund : after.

1. *Asūko ni tatte iru hito wa dare desū?* (C). 2. *Kimura to iu hito de gozaimasū* (D). 3. *Kono hako ni aru empitsū wa donata no de gozaimasū ka?* (D). 4. *Otōto no de gozaimasū* (D). 5. *Todana kara satō ga haite iru tsubo wo motte o-ide* (A). 6. *Kore wa doko e iku michi de gozaimasū ka?* (D). 7. *Kōen ni iku michi da* (B). 8. *Shimbun wo yonde kara, tegami wo kakō* (B). 9. *Kinō kita dempō wo motte kite kure* (A). 10. *Kono hon wo kaita hito wa ima doko ni imasū?* (C). 11. *Shina ni imasū* (C). 12. *Kinō katta isu wa dore desū?* (C). 13. *Kinō katta no wa nikai ni gozaimasū* (D). 14. *Anata no tonari ni koshi-kakete ita hito wa donata deshita?* (C). 15. *Donata da ka shirimasen* (C). 16. *Watashi no tonari ni iru hito wa junsa da* (B). 17. *Sono tegami wa o tō-san ga o kaeri ni natte kara o dashi nasai* (B). 18. *Suzuki San ga Kyōto e o-ide nas'tte kara, mō mi-tsūki ni naru* (B). 19. *Sono kago ni ireta kudamono wo Tanaka San no o uchi ni motte itte o kure* (A). 20. *Kisha ni noru hito wa koko de densha wo orimasū* (C). 21. *Kinō o kai ni natta hon wa doko ni gozaimasū ka?* (D). 22. *Are wa Tarō ni okutte yatta* (B). 23. *Dōzo Asakusa e iku michi wo oshiete kudasai* (D). 24. *Sendai e iku kisha wa nan-ji ni demasū ka?* (C). 25. *Asa no roku-ji jū-go-fun ni deru* (B). 26. *Kinō mīta kirei na bōshi wa mō arimasen deshita* (C). 27. *Tōka ni o dashi nas'tta o tegami ga kesa mairimashita* (D). 28. *Tanaka San ni karita kasa wa mō kaeshimashita ka?* (C).

1. Who is that man standing over there? 2. He is (a man called) Kimura. 3. Whose is this pencil in this box? 4. My brother's. 5. Bring me the sugar-jar which is in the cupboard (*lit.* bring me from the cupboard the jar which has sugar in it). 6. Where does this road go to? 7. It goes to the park. 8. After I've read the newspaper I'll write my letters. 9. Bring me the telegram that came yesterday. 10. Where is the author of this book living now? (*lit.* the man who wrote this book). 11. He is in China. 12. Which was the chair you bought yesterday? 13. The one I bought yesterday is upstairs. 14. Who was the man sitting next to you? 15. I don't know who he was. 16. My next-door neighbour is a policeman (*lit.* the man living next-door). 17. Post that letter after your father returns. 18. It is three months now since Mr Suzuki went to Kyōto. 19. Take that basket of fruit to Mr Tanaka's house (*lit.* fruit which has been put into that basket). 20. Those who take the train get off the tram-car here. 21. Where is the book you bought yesterday? 22. I sent it to Tarō. 23. Please tell me which is the way to Asakusa. 24. At what time does the Sendai train leave? (*lit.* the train which goes to Sendai). 25. It leaves at a quarter past six in the morning. 26. The pretty hat I saw yesterday was no longer there. 27. I received this morning your letter of the 10th (*lit.* the letter you posted on the 10th came this morning). 28. Have you already returned to Mr Tanaka the umbrella you borrowed from him?



## EXERCISE 32.

*Ni* after the stem (2nd base) of a verb means 'in order to'.

*No desū* frequently added after a verb at the end of a sentence, is generally a mere rounding off; it sometimes, however, has a distinct force of its own.

*e* : picture.

*isha* : doctor.

*kotoshi* : this year.

*kutsu-ya* : bootmaker.

*pan* : bread.

*tabako* : tobacco.

*warui* : bad.

*narau* : to learn.

*sagasū* : to look for.

*tanomu* : to ask for aid; request; order.

*issho ni* : together (with).

*konaida*; *kono aida* : the other day;  
recently.

1. *Matsū wa imasū ka?* (C). 2. *Ima pan wo kai ni ikimashita* (C). 3. *Ashita Tarō wo ginkō ni kane wo tori ni o yari nasai* (B). 4. *Kutsu-ya ni konaida tanonda kutsu wo tori ni itte o kure* (A). 5. *Doko e itte kimashita?* (C). 6. *Inu wo sagashi ni itte kita no desū* (C). 7. *Hana-ko ga nani wo shite iru ka, mi ni ikimashō* (C). 8. *Tokei ga waruku natta kara, naoshi ni yara-nakereba nara-nai* (B). 9. *Tabako wo kai ni jochū wo yatte kure* (A). 10. *O isha wo yobi ni dare ga itta no desū?* (C). 11. *Maeda ga itta no da* (B). 12. *Brown San wa Ei-go wo oshie ni irassharu no desū ka?* (C). 13. *Iie, Nihon-go wo narai ni o-ide nasaru no desū* (C). 14. *Kotoshi mo nii-san to Hakone e irassharu no desū ka?* (C). 15. *Iie, kotoshi wa uchi ni imasū* (C). 16. *Anata wa mō Mitsūya San no e wo goran nas'tta no desū ka?* (C). 17. *Iie, mada mi-nai no desū* (C). 18. *Kisha ni noru hito wa koko de oriru no desū* (C). 19. *Watashi mo ashita o tō-san to issho ni Tōkyō e iku no desū ka?* (C). 20. *Omae wa ikitaku nakereba ika-nakutte mo ii no da* (A). 21. *Jochū wa doko e ikimashita?* (C). 22. *Tegami wo dashi ni itta no desū* (C). 23. *Yamada San no tokoro e ōki na jibiki wo kari ni ika-nakereba nara-nai* (B). 24. *Ashita Tanaka San e konaida karita kasa wo kaeshi ni ikō to omoimasū* (C). 25. *O isogashii toki wa tetsudai ni mairimashō* (D). 26. *Satō ga mō arimasen kara, ashita kai ni ikimashō* (C). 27. *Sono tegami wa dare kara kita no desū ka?* (C). 28. *Ane kara kita no desū* (C). 29. *Ima shimbun wo kai ni kita hito wa Brown San da* (B).

1. Is Matsu in? 2. She has gone to buy some bread. 3. Send Tarō tomorrow to get some money from the bank. 4. Go to the bootmaker's to fetch the boots I ordered the other day. 5. Where have you been? (*lit.* where did you go to and come). 6. I went to look for the dog. 7. I'll go and see what Hana-ko is doing. 8. My watch is out of order, I must give it to be mended. 9. Send the servant to buy some tobacco. 10. Who has gone to call the doctor? 11. Maeda went. 12. Does Mr Brown come to teach you English? 13. No, he comes to learn Japanese. 14. Are you going to Hakone again this year with your brother? 15. No, I shall remain at home this year. 16. Have you (already) seen Mr Mitsuya's picture? 17. No, not yet. 18. Those who take the train must get off here. 19. Am I also to go to Tōkyō tomorrow with my father? 20. You needn't go if you don't want to. 21. Where has the servant gone to? 22. She went to post a letter. 23. I must go to Mr Yamada's house and borrow his big dictionary. 24. I intend to go to Mr Tanaka's house tomorrow to return the umbrella I borrowed from him the other day. 25. I will come and help you when you are busy. 26. There's no more sugar, I'll go tomorrow and buy some. 27. Whom is that letter from? 28. From my sister. 29. The man who came just now to buy a newspaper was Mr Brown.

# EXERCISE 33.

*go* : an honorific prefix.  
*gomen* : your permission, pardon.  
*komban* : this evening.  
*konnichi* : today.  
*tenki* : weather.  
*mina* ; *minna* : all ; every one.  
*mina-san* : everybody.  
*samui* : cold.  
*yoroshiku* : used for sending or giving salutations.

*o-hayō* : good morning,  
*sayonara* : good-bye.  
*agaru* : to go up ; to enter a house (the mats are on a higher level than the ground) ; to visit (humble) ; to eat, drink (honorific).  
*dōmo* : has a vague superlative meaning.  
*ikaga* ? how ? (polite).  
*ne* : interjection ; at the end of sentence it has often an interrogative force.

1. *Konnichi wa ; Ueda San wa irasshaimasū ka ?* (D). 2. *Hai, o-ide nasaimasū. Yoku irasshaimashita ne. Dōzo o agari kudasai* (D). 3. *Mō o kaeri de gozaimasū ka ? Mata dōzo o-ide nas'tte kudasai* (D). 4. *Arigatō gozaimasū, mata agarimashō. Sayonara* (D). 5. *Mina-san ni dōzo yoroshiku* (D). 6. *Watashi no uchi de wa minna jōbu desū* (C). 7. *Gomen kudasai, haitte mo yō gozaimasū ka ?* (D). 8. *O-hayō, kesa wa zuibun samui desū ne ?* (C). 9. *Komban wa, o atsū gozaimasū* (D). 10. *Kinō wa kirei na hon wo kudasaimashite, dōmo arigatō gozaimashita* (D). 11. *Dō itashimashite* (C). 12. *Kyō wa ii o tenki de gozaimasū ne. Doko e o dekake de gozaimasū ka ?* (D). 13. *Sampo ni ikō to omoimasū ; anata mo irasshaimasen ka ?* (D). 14. *Arigatō gozaimasū ; hima de gozaimasū kara, go issō ni mairimashō* (D). 15. *O cha wa ikaga de gozaimasū ka ?* (D). 16. *Arigatō, sūkoshi itadakimashō* (C). 17. *Oku-san wa ikaga de irasshaimasū ka ?* (D). 18. *Arigatō gozaimasū, jōbu desū* (C). 19. *Kono nashi wo o agari nasai* (C). 20. *O cha wo agemashō ka ?* (C). 21. *Arigatō gozaimasū, o cha wa itadakimasen* (D). 22. *Konaida wa o tegami wo arigatō gozaimashita ; haha (no byōki) wa mō yoku narimashita* (D). 23. *Tanaka San ga anata ni yoroshiku itte kure to imashita* (C). 24. *Dōzo kono tegami wo nē-san ni agete kudasai* (D). 25. *Mina-san o jōbu de irasshaimasū ka ?* (D). 26. *Kyō wa dōmo atsui desū ne* (C). 27. *Dōzo sono mado wo akete kudasaimasen ka ?* (D). 28. *Kyō gogo ni o uchi ni agarō to omoimasū ga, o isogashiū gozaimasū ka ?* (D).

1. Good day. Is Mr Ueda at home ? 2. Yes, he is ; you are welcome. Please come in. 3. Are you already going ? Please come again. 4. Thank you, I will come again. Good-bye. 5. Please remember me to all at home. 6. Everybody at home is quite well. 7. Excuse me, may I come in ? 8. Good morning. It is very cold this morning, isn't it ? 9. Good evening. It is very hot. 10. Thank you very much for the pretty book you gave me yesterday. 11. Don't mention it. 12. The weather is very fine today, isn't it ? Where are you going ? 13. I was thinking of going for a walk, won't you come with me ? 14. Thank you, as I have some spare time, I will go with you. 15. May I offer you a cup of tea ? (*lit.* what do you say to some tea ?). 16. Thanks, I will take a little. 17. How is your wife ? 18. She is quite well, thank you. 19. Please eat one of these pears. 20. May I offer you some tea ? 21. Thanks, I don't drink tea. 22. Thanks for your letter the other day ; my mother is quite well again now. 23. Mr Tanaka asked me to give you his kind regards. 24. Please give this letter to your sister. 25. Is everybody well at home ? 26. It is very hot today, isn't it ? 27. Please open that window. 28. I was thinking of going to see you this afternoon, are you busy ?



## EXERCISE 34.

The passive is formed from the 4th base. In the case of verbs ending in *e'ru* or *i'ru* add *rare'ru*; in all other cases add *re'ru*. The subject of the passive in Japanese is the person affected by the act of the verb, see 124. The passive is often used in a potential sense, see 126.

*dorobō* : thief ; robber.

*itazura* : mischief.

*koto* : thing.

*yubi-wa* : finger-ring.

*korare'ru* : irregular passive of *kuru*  
to come.

*ki'ru* : to put on ; wear.

*kūsaru* : to decay ; become rotten.

*shikaru* : to scold.

*warau* : to laugh.

*yosū* : to cease ; leave off.

*totemo* : an emphatic negative word.

1. *Ano ko wa itazura wo shīte o tō-san ni shikarare mashita* (C). 2. *Sō iu koto wo suru to hito ni warawareru kara, o yoshi nasai* (B). 3. *Ano hito wa minna ni shōjiki da to omowarete imasu* (C). 4. *Kyō wa asa hayaku kyaku ni korarete komatta* (B). 5. *Yūbe dorobō ni tokei to yubi-wa wo torare mashita* (C). 6. *Ano jochū wa dorobō wo shīte oi-dasareta no desū* (C). 7. *Watashi wa hito ni tegami wo miraretaku nai* (B). 8. *Ano akai hon wo mita kara, Tarō ni okorareta no da* (B). 9. *Kinō wa Asakusa e itte, ame ni furarete zuibun komarimashita* (C). 10. *O isogashii toki ni jochū ni byōki ni nararete taihen o komari deshō* (C). 11. *Kyō wa kaze ga fuite mado wo akaremasen* (C). 12. *Kono sakana wa kūsatte iru kara, taberare-nai* (B). 13. *Kono kimono wa mō furukutte kirare-nai* (B). 14. *Nihom-bashi made nam-pun kakarimasu ka?* (C). 15. *Aruite ni-jip-pun kakareba ikare mashō* (C). 16. *Yamada San no o hanashi wa koko de wa iwaremasen kara, koman anata no o uchi ni itte hanashimashō* (C). 17. *Kono heya wa atsukutte totemo irare-nai* (B). 18. *Kono nashi wa mō taberaremasu ka?* (C). 19. *Iie, mada taberemasen* (C). 20. *Yamada San wa oku-san ga go byōki desū kara, kyō wa korare-nai deshō* (C). 21. *Konaida dorobō ni torareta yubi-wa wo kyō junsu ga motte kite kure mashita* (C).

1. As that child had been up to mischief he was scolded by his father. 2. If you do things like that people will laugh at you, so leave off. 3. Everybody considers that man to be honest (*lit.* he's thought honest by everybody). 4. A visitor came early this morning and I was much inconvenienced (*lit.* I got the coming of a visitor). 5. My watch and my ring were stolen last night (by a robber). 6. That servant was discharged because she was (caught) stealing. 7. I don't like people to look at my letters (*lit.* I do not wish my letters to be seen). 8. Tarō got angry with me because I looked at that red book. 9. I went to Asakusa yesterday and was caught in the rain, so I was much inconvenienced (*lit.* I got the falling of the rain). 10. You must find it very inconvenient to have your servant ill (precisely now) when you are so busy (*lit.* to get the falling ill of your servant). 11. The wind is blowing (hard) today so I can't open the window. 12. You can't eat this fish, it's gone bad. 13. This dress is so old I cannot wear it. 14. How long does it take to Nihom-bashi? 15. If you give yourself twenty minutes you can walk there. 16. I can't tell you here what Mr Yamada said, I will go to your house this evening and tell you. 17. This room is so warm I cannot possibly remain here. 18. Is this pear fit to eat yet? 19. No, it is not ripe yet. 20. Mr Yamada's wife is ill, so I don't think he will be able to come today. 21. A policeman today brought me the ring which had been stolen the other day (by a robber).

## EXERCISE 35.

By changing the final *u* of a verb into *e-ru* we obtain intransitive verbs which often do duty for potential verbs. When the original verb ends in *e-ru* or *i-ru* this cannot be done.

*nimotsū* : package ; luggage.

*oto* : sound.

*ri* : 2·4 miles.

*yūbin* : the post.

*omoshiroi* : amusing.

*ijiru* : to touch ; meddle with.

*kiku* : to hear ; ask.

*kikoe-ru* : irregular potential of *kiku*  
to hear.

*mie-ru* : irregular potential of *mi-ru*  
to see ; to be able to see ; be visible ;  
come.

*otosū* : to let fall ; drop.

1. *Ei-go ga yomemasū ka?* (C). 2. *Hanasemasū ga, yomemasen* (C). 3. *Asūko ni mieru yama wa nan de gozaimasū ka?* (D). 4. *Fuji-san de gozaimasū* (D). 5. *Yamada San no banchi wo wasuremashita, Tarō San ni kiite kimashō* (C). 6. *Kinō Hana-ko San kara kiita o hanashi wa taihen omoshirō gozaimashita* (D). 7. *Kikoemasen deshita kara, dōzo mō ichi-do itte kudasai* (C). 8. *Kyō wa kane wo otoshite densha ni noremashen deshita* (C). 9. *Ei-go ga deki-nai to fuben de gozaimasū kara, naraō to omoimasū* (D). 10. *Yamada San ga mie-mashita* (C). 11. *Densha no oto ga koko made kikoemasū ka?* (C). 12. *Hai, yoku kikoemasū* (C). 13. *Ano mise no shujin wa Ei-go ga yoku hanasemasū* (C). 14. *Kono nimotsū wa yūbin de okuremasū ka?* (C). 15. *Ammari ōkii kara, okure-masen* (C). 16. *Ichinichi ni go-ri arukemasū ka?* (C). 17. *E, sono gurai wa arukemasū* (C). 18. *Watashi wa ūma ni nore-nai* (B). 19. *Ei-go ga hanaseru hito wo yonde kudasai* (C). 20. *Sono bin wa kodomo ga ijiru to ike-nai kara, mie-nai tokoro e shimatte oki nasai* (A). 21. *Ima nan-ji desū ka, nii-san ni kiite kudasai* (C). 22. *Ano hito ga nani wo itte iru ka, itte kiite o-ide nasai* (B). 23. *Kō ni yasashii hon nara Tarō mo yomemashō* (C). 24. *Ano kata no o hanashi ga kikoemasū ka?* (C). 25. *Iie, yoku kikoemasen* (C). 26. *Sore de wa mae e irasshai* (C).

1. Can you read English? 2. I can speak it but I cannot read it. 3. What is that mountain you can see over there? 4. It is Mount Fuji. 5. I have forgotten the number of Mr Yamada's house, I'll go and ask Mr Tarō. 6. The tale Miss Hana-ko told me yesterday was very amusing (*lit.* the tale that I heard from Miss Hana-ko). 7. As I didn't hear (what you said) please say it again (If *kikimasen* had been used instead of *kikoemasen* the meaning would have been, as I wasn't listening). 8. As I lost my purse (*lit.* money) today I couldn't take the tram-car. 9. It is inconvenient not knowing English, so I intend to study it. 10. Mr Yamada has come. 11. Can you hear the noise of the tram-cars from here? 12. Yes, quite well. 13. The owner of that shop speaks English very well. 14. Can I send this parcel by post? 15. You can't send it, it is too big. 16. Can you walk five *ri* (twelve miles) a day? 17. Yes, I can walk about that much. 18. I cannot ride on horseback. 19. Please call somebody who can speak English. 20. It wouldn't do for the children to meddle with this bottle so put it away somewhere where they can't find it (*lit.* in an invisible place). 21. Please (go and) ask your brother what time it is now. 22. Go and see what that man is saying (*lit.* go, listen and come). 23. If it's such an easy book, even Tarō can probably read it. 24. Can you hear what that man is saying? 25. No, I can't hear properly. 26. Well then, go a little nearer (*lit.* in front i.e. a few paces forward).



## EXERCISE 36.

*Koto* and *mono* (sometimes abbreviated to *mon'* or *no*) both mean 'thing'. *Koto* nearly always refers to an abstract thing; *mono* generally to a concrete thing. These words and the abbreviations *mon'* and *no* when used after verbs, serve to substantivize the verb and form many important idioms. Observe the following :

*koto ga deki'ru* after verb (present)  
has the force of a potential.

*koto ga aru* after verb (generally  
past) : once ; sometimes.

*koto ga aru ka?* after verb (generally  
past) : ever ?

*koto ga nai* after verb (generally past) :  
never.

*mon' desū ka?* after verb (present) is a  
denial of, or protest against, an  
absurd statement or supposition.

*no desū* after a verb has already been  
noticed in Exercise 32.

1. *Watakūshi wa haha ga byōki desū kara, ashita Kamakura e iku koto ga dekimasen* (C). 2. *Anata wa Ei-go de tegami wo kaku koto ga dekimasū ka?* (C). 3. *Mada dekimasen* (C). 4. *Nichiyō-bi no asa koraremasū ka?* (C). 5. *Nichiyō no asa wa tegami wo kakimasū kara, kuru koto ga dekimasen* (C). 6. *Kyōto e o-ide nas'tta koto ga gozaimasū ka?* (D). 7. *E, itta koto ga aru* (B). 8. *Nara e wa mada itta koto ga nai* (B). 9. *Suzuki San ni atta koto ga arimasū ka?* (C). 10. *E, atta koto ga arimasū ; oku-san ni wa mada atta koto ga arimasen* (C). 11. *Kore wa anata no mono de gozaimasū ka?* (D). 12. *Iie, watakūshi no mono de wa gozaimasen* (D). 13. *Tanaka San no mono wo minna nikai e motte itte o kure* (A). 14. *Tarō wa Ei-go wo kaku koto ga dekiru deshō ka?* (C). 15. *Kaku koto ga dekiru mon' desū ka?* mada yomu koto mo dekimasūmai (C). 16. *Anata wa Yamada San to issho ni Asakusa e iku deshō?* (C). 17. *Iie, iku mon' desū ka?* *Watashi wa Yamada San wa kirai desū* (C). 18. *Dare ga omae ni tetsudatte kureru mon' ka?* (A). 19. *Ano ūma ni noru no wa o yoshi nasai* (B). 20. *Wata-shi wa Hana-ko San no okotta no wo mita koto ga nai* (B). 21. *Asa hayaku okiru no wa ii koto desū* (C). 22. *Taihen na ame da kara, kyō Hakone e iku no wo yosō* (B). 23. *Tanaka San ni sō iu koto wo iu no wa ike-nai* (A). 24. *Sono minu wo nomu no wa o yoshi nasai* (B). 25. *Natsūme San no kaita mono wo o yomi ni natta koto ga gozaimasū ka?* (D). 26. *E, yoku yomimasū. Ano hito no hon wa sūki desū* (C).

1. As my mother is ill I cannot go to Kamakura tomorrow. 2. Can you write letters in English? 3. Not yet. 4. Can you come on Sunday morning? 5. As I write my letters on Sunday mornings, I cannot come. 6. Have you ever been to Kyōto? 7. Yes, I have been there. 8. I have never been to Nara (yet). 9. Have you ever met Mr Suzuki? 10. Yes, I have met him but I have never met his wife. 11. Is this yours? (*lit.* your thing). 12. No, it's not mine. 13. Take all Mr Tanaka's things upstairs. 14. I wonder if Tarō can write English? 15. Of course he can't; he can't probably even read it yet. 16. I suppose you'll go with Mr Yamada to Asakusa? 17. Most decidedly not; why, I hate Mr Yamada. 18. Whoever is going to help *you*? (you are too lazy, too ill-natured). 19. Don't ride that horse. 20. I have never yet seen Miss Hana-ko angry. 21. It is a good thing to get up early in the morning. 22. As it is raining so hard I'll give up the idea of going to Hakone today. 23. You mustn't say things like that to Mr Tanaka. 24. Don't drink that water. 25. Have you ever read anything that Mr Natsume has written? 26. Yes, often; I like his books.

## EXERCISE 37.

The postposition *wo*, corresponding to the immediate object of the verb *suru*, is often suppressed, the noun and *suru* forming a sort of verbal unit.

The Japanese future has often the meaning of the 1st person plural imperative. *Ikō* or *ikimashō* let us go.

*Ja nai* (or *arimasen*) *ka?* is frequently added at the end of a sentence; it means 'isn't it?' It need not always be translated.

*benkyō* : study ; diligence.

*ryokō* : travel.

*sentaku* : washing.

*jikusuru* ; *jikusū* : to be ripe.

*yakusuru* ; *yakusū* : to translate.

*osoi* : late.

*de mo* : a conjunctival phrase ; well, but.

1. *Nii-san wa Igrisū de nani wo benkyō shīte imasū ka?* (C). 2. *Ei-go wo benkyō shīte imasū* (C). 3. *Kyō wa ii tenki da kara, kōen wo sampo shiyō* (B). 4. *Chichi wa ima Shina wo ryokō itashīte orimasū* (D). 5. *Kono kimono wo sentaku shīte o kure* (A). 6. *Yoku benkyō shi-nakereba Ei-go wo oshiete yara-nai* (A). 7. *Raigetsū wa hima ni narimasū kara, Kyōto ni ryokō shimasū* (C). 8. *Brown San wa Nihon-go wo benkyō shi ni Nihon e kita no desū* (C). 9. *Sono kimono wa mada sentaku shi-nai de ii* (A). 10. *Tenki ga yokereba doyō-bi no hiru kara, Hakone e ikō* (B). 11. *Hakone yori Nikkō ga ii ja arimasen ka?* (C). 12. *Ano nashi wa jikushīte imasū ka?* (C). 13. *Mada jikushimasen* (C). 14. *O hima deshītara, dōzo kono tegami wo Ei-go ni yakushīte kudasai* (C). 15. *Mada ika-nai no desū ka? Hana-ko San ga matte iru ja arimasen ka?* (C). 16. *De mo, mada roku-ji ni nara-nai ja arimasen ka?* (C). 17. *Osoi kara, mō kaerō* (B). 18. *Osoku naru to ike-nai, densha de ikimashō* (C). 19. *Sono hon wo yakushīte kara, nani wo nasaimasū ka?* (D). 20. *Sūkoshi ryokō shītai to omou no desū* (C). 21. *Kyō wa tenki ga warui kara, sentaku suru no wa yosō* (B). 22. *Kono tegami wa muzukushikūtte watashi wa totemo yakusū koto ga dekimasen* (C). 23. *Sono nashi wa yoku jikushīte i-nai kara, tabete wa ike-nai* (A). 24. *Sūkoshi Ei-go wo benkyō shīte Amerika e ikimashō* (C). 25. *Tarō ni Brown San no tegami wo yakushīte moraimashō ka?* (C). 26. *Tarō wa mada dame ja arimasen ka? Suzuki San ni tanomimashō* (C).

1. What is your brother studying in England? 2. He is studying English. 3. The weather is fine today, so let's go for a walk in the park. 4. My father is travelling now in China. 5. Wash this dress. 6. I won't teach you English unless you study hard. 7. As I shall have spare time next month, I'll make a trip to Kyōto. 8. Mr Brown came to Japan to study Japanese. 9. You needn't wash that dress yet. 10. If the weather is fine, let's go to Hakone on Saturday afternoon. 11. Don't you think Nikkō would be nicer than Hakone? 12. Are those pears ripe? 13. Not yet. 14. If you have time please translate this letter into English for me. 15. Haven't you gone yet? Miss Hana-ko is waiting for you, isn't she? 16. Well, but it's not yet six o'clock. 17. As it is late, let's return home. 18. As it wouldn't do to be late, let's go by tram-car. 19. What are you going to do after you've finished translating that book? 20. I think I'll travel a little. 21. As the weather is bad today I think I'll give up the idea of doing my washing. 22. This letter is so difficult I can't possibly translate it. 23. Don't eat that pear, it is not ripe. 24. I'll study a little English and then go to America. 25. Shall I ask Tarō to translate Mr Brown's letter? 26. Tarō doesn't know enough yet, let's ask Mr Suzuki (*lit.* Tarō is still of no use).



## EXERCISE 38.

Derivative and compound words are extremely numerous in Japanese: the stem (2nd base) of verbs, and the stem (what remains after suppressing the final *i*) of true adjectives, are constantly used in this connection.

<i>shimai</i> [from <i>shimau</i> to finish]: the end.	<i>kaki-naosû</i> [ <i>kaku</i> to write; <i>naosû</i> to mend]: to write over again so as to correct the mistakes.
<i>kangae'ru</i> : to think.	<i>nori-kae'ru</i> [ <i>noru</i> to ride; <i>kae'ru</i> to change]: to change cars.
<i>kangae</i> : a thought.	<i>nakunaru</i> [ <i>nai</i> non-existent; <i>naru</i> to become]: to be lost; die.
<i>kai-mono</i> [from <i>kau</i> to buy; <i>mono</i> a thing]: a thing bought; a purchase.	<i>nakusuru</i> ; <i>nakusû</i> [ <i>nai</i> non-existent; <i>suru</i> to make]: to lose.
<i>kai-mono ni iku</i> : to go shopping.	<i>sugi'ru</i> : to exceed; used frequently in compounds.
<i>nomi-mono</i> : something to drink.	<i>nani ka</i> : something or other.
<i>mono-oki</i> : store-room; pantry.	
<i>-ya</i> added to nouns means a shop or the person who keeps the shop or trades in an article.	

1. *Kono hon wa shimai ga taihen muzukashii* (B). 2. *Yokosûka e iku (no) ni wa doko de nori-kaeru no desû ka?* (C). 3. *Ôfuno de nori-kaeru no desû* (C). 4. *Kono tegami wa kitanai kara, kaki-naoshite kudasai* (C). 5. *Sentaku shite kara, kai-mono ni itte o-ide* (A). 6. *Yamada San ni nani ka nomi-mono wo o age nasai* (A). 7. *Mono-oki kara sara wo jû-mai dashite o-ide* (A). 8. *Satô ga nakunatta kara, kawa-nakereba nara-nai* (B). 9. *Ôtôto ga Amerika kara okutte kureta kitte wo nakushimashita* (C). 10. *Kono bin wa ôki-sugiru, motto chiisai no wo motte o-ide nasai* (A). 11. *Sono Ei-go no hon wa Hana-ko San ni wa muzukashi-sugiru deshô* (C). 12. *Yoku kangaete kara, mono wo o ii nasai* (A). 13. *Watashi no kangae de wa Jirô wa mô kaette ko-nai darô to omou* (B). 14. *Hon-ya e itte, konaida katta jibiki no kane wo haratte kimasû* (C). 15. *Koppu wo misete kudasai* (C). 16. *Kore wa chiisu-sugimasû, mô sûkoshi ôkii no ga arimasen ka?* (C). 17. *Kono akai hon wo shimai made o yomi nasaimashita ka?* (D). 18. *Iie, mada hambun gurai shika yomimasen* (C). 19. *Haha wa 'Mitsûkoshi ni kai-mono ni iku' to itte, kesa hayaku dekakemashita* (C). 20. *Ashita Tôkyô e ikimasû kara, nani ka kai-mono ga arimashitara, katte kite agemashô* (C).

1. This book is very difficult towards the end (*lit.* as for this book the end is very difficult). 2. Where must I change for Yokosuka? 3. You must change at Ôfuno. 4. This letter is dirty, so write it again. 5. When you finish the washing go and do your shopping (*lit.* go and come). 6. Offer Mr Yamada something to drink. 7. Get ten plates out of the pantry. 8. There is no more sugar, so I must buy some. 9. I have lost the stamps which my brother sent me from America. 10. This bottle is too big, bring me a smaller one. 11. I expect that English book is too difficult for Miss Hana-ko. 12. Think before you speak (*lit.* after thinking well, say things). 13. In my opinion Jirô will not come back again. 14. I'll go to the bookseller's and pay for the dictionary I bought the other day. 15. Show me some tumblers. 16. This one is too small, haven't you got a slightly bigger one? 17. Have you read this red book right to the end? 18. No, I have only read about half yet. 19. My mother went out this morning early saying she was going to Mitsukoshi to make some purchases. 20. As I am going to Tôkyô tomorrow, if there is anything you want bought, I can buy it for you.

## EXERCISE 39.

*Hō* is used after verbs when comparing acts, in a way which is like its use after adjectives, see Exercise 28.

*hoteru* : (foreign-style) hotel.

*kado* : corner.

*yado-ya* : (native) inn.

*massugu na* : straight.

*magaru* : to turn.

*yaru* : to send.

1. *Yamada San ni tegami wo dashimashō ka ? Tarō wo yobi ni yarimashō ka ?* (C). 2. *Tegami wo dasū yori, Tarō wo yobi ni yaru hō ga ii deshō* (C). 3. *Nimotsū ga takūsan aru kara, densha yori kisha de iku hō ga yokarō* (B). 4. *Teishaba e wa koko wo itte ii no desū ka ?* (C). 5. *Ano kado wo magatte massugu iku hō ga yō gozaimasū* (D). 6. *Kō iu yowai hako nara, kawai hō ga yokatta* (B). 7. *Kamakura yori Nikkō e iku hō ga ii desū* (C). 8. *Kutsu wo dashite o kure* (A). 9. *Dochira wo dashimashō ?* (C). 10. *Kinō katta hō wo dashite kure* (A). 11. *Go-sen no empitsū wo ni-hon kau yori, jis-sen no wo ip-pon katta hō ga ii ja arimasen ka ?* (C). 12. *Sakana ga kūsarū to komaru kara, tabete shimau hō ga ii* (B). 13. *Koko e tsūkue wo oku to jama da, nikai ni motte iku hō ga ii* (B). 14. *Sono tokei ga iya ni nattara uru hō ga yokarō* (B). 15. *Nihon no yado-ya e tomarimashō ka ? hoteru e tomarimashō ka ?* (C). 16. *Nihon no yado-ya no hō ga yasui kara, yado-ya e tomaru hō ga ii* (B). 17. *Kono tegami wa jūnsa ni miseru hō ga ii* (B). 18. *Saitō San wa irasshaimashita ka ?* (C). 19. *Mada desū, mō sūkoshi matte mimashō* (C). 20. *Sō iu hon wa kodomo ni mise-nai hō ga ii deshō* (C). 21. *Tarō San no byōki wo Yamada San ni tegami de itte yarimashō ka ?* (C). 22. *Tegami wo o dashi nasaru yori, atte o hanashi nasaru hō ga yō gozaimashō* (D). 23. *Anata wa doko de kudamono wo o kai nasaimasū ka ?* (D). 24. *Watanabe de kaimasū* (C). 25. *Asūko wa takai desū kara, o kai ni nara-nai hō ga ii deshō* (C). 26. *Sō desū ka ? de mo, ano mise no wa taihen atarashikutte ii to omoimasū* (C). 27. *Atsui kara, mado wo akete oku hō ga ii deshō* (C).

1. Shall I write to Mr Yamada, or shall I send Tarō to call him ? 2. I think it would be better to send Tarō than to write a letter. 3. As we have so much luggage it would be better to go by train than by tram-car. 4. Does this road take me to the station ? 5. It would be better to turn at that corner and go straight on. 6. It would have been better not to have bought anything at all rather than a weak box like this. 7. It would be better to go to Nikkō instead of Kamakura. 8. Get out a pair of boots. 9. Which shall I get out ? 10. Get out the pair I bought yesterday. 11. Instead of buying two five-sen pencils would it not have been better to have bought one ten-sen one ? 12. You had better eat all the fish otherwise it will go bad, and I don't want that. 13. You had better take the desk upstairs, it's in the way here. 14. If you no longer care for that watch, you had better sell it. 15. Shall we stop at a Japanese inn or at a hotel ? 16. We had better stop at a Japanese inn, it is cheaper. 17. You had better show this letter to the police. 18. Has Mr Saitō arrived ? 19. Not yet ; let's wait a little longer and see if he comes. 20. You had better not show a book like that to children. 21. Shall I inform Mr Yamada of Master Tarō's illness by letter ? 22. I think you had better go and see him yourself (instead of writing a letter). 23. Where do you buy your fruit ? 24. I buy it at Watanabe's. 25. You had better not buy it there, it is a dear shop. 26. You may be right, but I find the fruit there very good and nice. 27. As it is hot I think we'd better open the window.



## EXERCISE 40.

Causative verbs are formed from the 4th base. In the case of verbs ending in *e'ru* or *i'ru*, add *sase'ru*; in all other cases add *se'ru*; (137). They are translated by : tell, get, make, let or have. The agent takes the postposition *ni* in the causative construction; (145).

Causative verbs all end in *-se'ru*; their 3rd base is irregular, viz.—*shit*; but the regular form *-set* is also sometimes used; (97).

*akambō* : baby.

*daiku* : carpenter.

*ita* : board.

*kippu* : ticket.

*ko-zutsumi* : parcel (for the post).

*sūteishon* : station.

*dare ka* : somebody or other.

*koshirae'ru* : to make.

*sase'ru* : irregular passive of *suru* to do.

*kikase'ru* : to cause to hear, i.e. to tell.

*taitei* : generally.

1. *Yo-ji han ni kaeru kara, dare ka kitara, matashite oite kudasai* (C). 2. *Kono kimono wo Matsū ni arawashite o kure* (A). 3. *Watashi no heya wo jochū ni sōji sashite kure* (A). 4. *Ko-zutsumi wo imōto ni dasashite kudasai* (C). 5. *Shimbun wa dō shita no darō?* (B). 6. *Mada kimasen, jochū ni kawasemashō* (C). 7. *Kono ita de daiku ni hako wo koshiraesasemashō* (C). 8. *Tarō wo yonde kono tegami wo Nihon-go ni yakusaseyō* (B). 9. *O dekake de gozaimasū ka?* *kuruma wo yobasemashō ka?* (D). 10. *Iie, aruite ikimasū* (C). 11. *Kippu wa imōto ni kawasemashō* (C). 12. *Watashi wa tegami wa taitei musūme ni kakasemasū* (C). 13. *Ashita kono kimono wo jochū ni sentaku saseyō* (B). 14. *Kodomo ni sono nashi wo tabesashite wa ike-nai* (A). 15. *Sono hon wo kodomo ni ijrase-nai de kudasai* (C). 16. *Hana-ko ni mizu wo nomase-nai de o kure* (A). 17. *Konaida daiku ni koshiraesasete hako wa kore desū* (C). 18. *Akambō ni chichi wo nomashite o kure* (A). 19. *Mitsū-ko ni kō iu hon wo yomashite mo, wakara-nai deshō* (C). 20. *Sono hanashi wa Hana-ko San ni kikase-nai de kudasaimasen ka?* (C). 21. *Ano tamago wo Chōkichi ni motasete, Tanaka San no tokoro e yatte o kure* (A). 22. *Kono hon wo jochū ni yomaseyō* (B). 23. *Suburō wa ammari jōbu ja nai no desū kara, sō benkyō sase-nai de, sūkoshi ryokō wo saseru hō ga ii to omoimasū* (C). 24. *Kono hagaki to ko-zutsumi wo jochū ni dasashite kudasai* (C).

1. I shall be back at half past four, if anybody should come tell him to wait. 2. Tell Matsu to wash this dress. 3. Tell the servant to do my room. 4. Tell my sister to post the parcel. 5. What about the newspaper? 6. It hasn't come yet, I'll tell the servant to buy one. 7. I'll get the carpenter to make a box out of this board. 8. I'll call Tarō and get him to translate this letter into Japanese. 9. Are you going out now? Shall I get (somebody) to call a rikisha? 10. No, I shall walk. 11. I'll get my sister to buy the ticket. 12. I generally make my daughter write my letters for me. 13. I'll make the servant wash this dress tomorrow. 14. Don't let the child eat those pears. 15. Don't let the child meddle with that book. 16. Don't let Hana-ko drink water. 17. This is the box that I had made the other day by the carpenter. 18. Give the baby his milk (*lit.* make baby drink the milk). 19. I don't think Mitsu-ko would understand a book like this even if you gave it to her to read. 20. Please don't tell that to Miss Hana-ko. 21. Tell Chōkichi to take those eggs to Mr Tanaka's house (*lit.* make Chōkichi carry those eggs and send him to Mr Tanaka's place). 22. I'll tell the servant to read this book. 23. Saburō is not very strong; instead of studying so much I think it would be better to make him travel a little. 24. Tell the servant to post this postcard and the parcel.

## EXERCISE 41.

*yō na* : like ; similar.

*yō ni* : like ; in order to ; so that ;  
often not translated.

*ka mo shire-nai* : added at the end  
of a sentence to express uncer-  
tainty.

*yūbin-kyoku* : post office.

*kondo* : this time ; next time.

*hoshii* : desirous of having.

*mezurashii* : rare ; strange.

*kowasū* (trans.) : to break.

*tsutsumu* : to wrap up.

1. *Watashi mo Yamada San no yō na ūma wo ip-piki kaimasū* (C). 2. *Mankichi no yō na otoko ni wa kamawa-nai hō ga yokarō* (B). 3. *Teru-ko San no yō na yasashii musūme wa mezurashii* (B). 4. *Watashi mo Hana-ko San no yō na empitsū ga hoshii* (B). 5. *Bōshi wo o kai nasaimashita ka?* (D). 6. *Iie, Hana-ko San no yō na no ga arimasen deshita kara, kaimasen deshita* (C). 7. *Kono bin wo kowasa-nai yō ni aratte o kure* (A). 8. *Takeo ni isogashii kara, kondo no doyō-bi ni kaeru yō ni tegami wo kaite kudasai* (C). 9. *Kuruma-ya ni hachi-ji ni kuru yō ni itte o-ide* (A). 10. *Kono hon wo ko-zutsumi de okuru yō ni tsutsunde o kure* (A). 11. *Ko-zutsumi ga kinyō no asa tsūku yō ni dashite kudasai* (C). 12. *Kō iu (yō na) kami ga arimasū ka?* (C). 13. *Mō sūkoshi ii no ga hoshii no desū* (C). 14. *Kono hō ga sore yori ii ka mo shiremasen* (C). 15. *Kyō wa ame ga furu ka mo shiremasen kara, kasa wo o mochi nasaru hō ga yō gozaimashō* (D). 16. *Watashi ni tegami ga kite iru ka mo shire-nai kara, yūbin-kyoku e itte mite o kure* (A). 17. *Yamaguchi San no tonari ni iru hito wa Terada San deshō ka?* (C). 18. *Sō ka mo shire-nai* (B). 19. *Brown San wa kondo wa itsū Nihon e o-ide nasaru no deshō ka?* (C). 20. *Konaida kiite mita ga, kotoshi wa korare-nai ka mo shire-nai to itte ita* (B). 21. *Tarō wa ashita no ban nī-san to issho ni kaeru no ka mo shire-nai* (B). 22. *Kono hako wa daiku ga koshiraeta no de gozaimasū ka?* (D). 23. *Iie, ani ga koshiraeta no ka mo shire-nai* (B). 24. *O tō-san no jama wo shi-nai yō ni o shi nasai* (A). 25. *Ashita no asa roku-ji no kisha de iku yō ni hayaku okimashō* (C).

1. I also am going to buy a horse like Mr Yamada's. 2. You had better take no notice of a man like Mankichi. 3. It's seldom you find such a sweet-tempered girl as Miss Teru-ko. 4. I also would like a pencil like Miss Hana-ko's. 5. Did you buy a hat? 6. No, I didn't buy one as I couldn't find one like Miss Hana-ko's. 7. Wash this bottle and don't break it. (*lit.* wash this bottle in such a way that you do not break it). 8. Write to Takeo and tell him to come back on Saturday as I've a lot of work to do. 9. Go and tell the rikisha-man to be here at eight o'clock. 10. Wrap up this parcel (in a way suitable) to send by post. 11. Send the parcel so that it will arrive on Friday morning. 12. Have you got any paper like this? 13. I want some a little better. 14. I think this kind is better than that. 15. I think you had better take an umbrella as I believe it will rain today. 16. As I think there may be a letter for me, go to the post office and find out. 17. I wonder if the man next to Mr Yamaguchi is Mr Terada? 18. I believe he is. 19. When do you think Mr Brown will come again to Japan? 20. I asked a few days ago and he said that he didn't expect to be able to come this year. 21. I think Tarō will return tomorrow with his brother. 22. Was this box made by a carpenter? 23. No, I think my brother made it. 24. Don't disturb your father (*lit.* behave so as not to disturb). 25. Let's get up early tomorrow morning so as to catch the six o'clock train.



## EXERCISE 42.

*tsumori* : intention.

*hazu* : obligation ; fitness ; reasonable expectation ; conviction.

*ashi* : leg ; foot.

*atama* : head.

*inaka* : country (as opposed to town).

*karada* : body.

*kega* : wound.

*natsu* : summer.

*naoru* : to get well ; get mended.

*noboru* : to ascend.

*isshōkemmei* : with all one's might and main ; with concentrated attention.

*sukkari* : completely.

1. *Kotoshi no natsu wa dō nasaru o tsumori de gozaimasu ka ?* (D). 2. *Dōmo karada ga warui desū kara, Yumoto e itte, fūta-tsūki gurai ite kuru tsumori desū* (C). 3. *Karada ga naottara isshōkemmei (ni) Ei-go wo benkyō suru tsumori da* (B). 4. *Kyō wa Yamada San no uchi e iku tsumori desū* (C). 5. *Ashi no kega ga naottara Fuji-san e noboru tsumori desū* (C). 6. *Omae wa shujin ni yobareta toki wa sugu ni iku hazu da* (A). 7. *Kyō uchi kara tegami ga kuru hazu desū kara, kitara sugu ni mise e motte kite kudasai* (C). 8. *Kono jibiki wa ano hon-ya ni aru hazu desū* (C). 9. *Ano mise ni kō iu hon ga aru hazu wa nai* (B). 10. *Ano hito no yō ni isshōkemmei ni benkyō sureba Ei-go ga jōzu ni naru hazu desū* (C). 11. *Tarō ga Hana-ko San no banchi wo shitte iru hazu ga arimasen* (C). 12. *Hikidashi ni jū-yen aru hazu da kara, motte kite o kure* (A). 13. *Karita mono wa kaesū hazu ja arimasen ka ?* (B). 14. *Atama ga warukutte shigoto ga dekimasen kara, inaka e iku tsumori de gozaimasu* (D). 15. *O kega wa dō nasaimashita ?* (D). 16. *Arigatō gozaimasu ; mō sukkari naorimashita* (D). 17. *Sore wa yō gozaimashita* (D). 18. *Otōto San wa Nikkō kara o kaeri nasaimashita ka ?* (D). 19. *Iie, mada desū ; ku-gatsu ni natte kara, kaeru tsumori deshō* (C). 20. *Yamada San no byōki wa ikaga de gozaimasu ka ?* (D). 21. *Dōmo naora-nai de komarimasu* (C). 22. *Kyō wa Ueno e iku tsumori datta ga, iya ni natta kara, yosō* (B). 23. *Inaka wa fuben desū kara, ammari sūki ja arimasen* (C).

1. What do you intend to do this summer ? 2. As I am not feeling at all well, I intend to go to Yumoto (and stay there) for a couple of months. 3. When I get well again, I intend to study English as hard as I can. 4. I intend to go to Mr Yamada's house today. 5. When my foot gets well, I intend to go up Mount Fuji. 6. You must go to your master as soon as he calls you. 7. I am expecting a letter from home today ; as soon as it comes bring it to the office. 8. You ought to find this dictionary at that bookseller's. 9. They don't keep books like this at that shop. 10. You would make great progress in English if you studied as hard as that man does. 11. There's no reason why Tarō should know Miss Hana-ko's address. 12. There ought to be ten yen in the drawer, bring them. 13. Don't you know yet that when you borrow things you must return them ? 14. I am feeling tired and I can't do my work properly, so I intend to go to the country (*lit.* my head is bad). 15. How is your wound getting on ? 16. Thanks, I am completely well again now. 17. I am very pleased to hear it. 18. Is your brother back from Nikkō yet ? 19. No, not yet ; he intends to come back in September (*lit.* after it becomes September). 20. How is Mr Yamada (who has been ill) getting on ? 21. I am feeling very anxious about him because he gets no better. 22. I intended to go to Ueno today but I no longer feel inclined to go, so I won't (*lit.* it has become distasteful). 23. I am not very fond of the country, I find it inconvenient.

## EXERCISE 43.

*Yō da* is used after verbs, true adjectives, or quasi-adjectives in *na* or *no* : it means semblance or appearance.

*Sō da* is used after verbs, true adjectives, or quasi-adjectives in *na* : it means they say, I hear that, he says, etc.

*gin* : silver.

*henji* : answer.

*kaban* : trunk ; travelling bag.

*penjiku* : penholder.

*saji* : spoon.

*tana* : shelf.

*itai* : painful.

*kara no* : empty.

*seiyō* : the West ; Europe, America.

*seiyō no* : foreign.

*seiyō-jin* : a foreigner.

*kono-goro* : now-a-days ; lately.

*kyonen* : last year.

*okure'ru* : to be late, behind time.

*yame'ru* : to cease ; stop ; leave off ; give up.

1. *Ame ga furu yō da kara, kyō wa sentaku wo shi-nai hō ga ii* (B). 2. *Tarō wa kono-goro yoku benkyō shite iru yō desū* (C). 3. *Kotoshi wa kyonen yori atsui yō de gozaimasū* (D). 4. *Ano ōki na tsukue wa fuben na yō da* (B). 5. *Ano hito wa seiyō-jin no yō da* (B). 6. *Ano saji wa gin no yō desū* (C). 7. *Ano tana ni aru bin wa kara no yō da ga, motte kite goran* (A). 8. *Asūko ni aru no ga wata-kūshi no kaban no yō de gozaimasū* (D). 9. *Ano seiyō no shimbun wa Terada San no da sō desū* (C). 10. *Kono tabako wo Suzuki San ni okutte agemashō ka?* (C). 11. *Suzuki San wa tabako wo o yame nas'tta sō desū kara, okutte agete mo dame deshō* (C). 12. *O isha ni yameru yō ni iwareta no da sō da* (B). 13. *Kore wa Jirō San no penjiku no yō da, motte itte kiite goran* (B). 14. *Jirō San no de wa nai sō de gozaimasū* (D). 15. *Go-ji no kisha wa jū-go-fun okureru sō da* (B). 16. *Yamada San kara henji ga kita ka, o kā-san ni kiite kudasai* (C). 17. *Mada ko-nai sō desū* (C). 18. *Kado no kudamono-ya wa takai sō desū kara, asūko de kawa-nai de kudasai* (C). 19. *Yamada San no imu wa taihen rikō na sō da* (B). 20. *O Matsū wa atama ga itakutte kyō wa okirare-nai sō da* (B). 21. *Taihen warui yō da kara, o isha wo yobō* (B). 22. *Ani wa karada ga yowai kara, mise wo yamete inaka e iku sō desū* (C). 23. *Danna sama wa kono-goro ikaga de gozaimasū ka?* (D). 24. *Kinō tegami ga kimashita ga, mō sukkari naotta sō desū* (C).

1. You had better not do your washing today, it looks like rain. 2. Tarō appears to be studying very hard lately. 3. It seems to me that it's hotter this year than last. 4. That big desk looks inconvenient. 5. That man looks like a foreigner. 6. Those spoons look like silver. 7. I believe that bottle on the shelf is empty, bring it. 8. That bag there looks like mine. 9. I hear that foreign newspaper belongs to Mr Terada. 10. Shall I send this tobacco to Mr Suzuki? 11. They say Mr Suzuki has given up smoking, so it will probably be useless to send it to him. 12. They say the doctor told him to give it up. 13. This penholder looks like Jirō's; take it and see if it is. 14. Master Jirō says it's not his. 15. They say the five o'clock train is fifteen minutes late. 16. Go and ask mother if an answer has come from Mr Yamada. 17. She says no answer has come yet. 18. They say the fruit-shop at the corner is dear, so please don't buy anything there. 19. They say Mr Yamada's dog is very clever. 20. Matsu says she has a headache and can't get up today. 21. It seems to ache so badly I think I'll call a doctor. 22. As my brother is weak I hear he is going to leave the office and go to the country. 23. How has your husband been lately? 24. A letter came yesterday and he says he is quite well again now.



## EXERCISE 44.

*hidari* : the left-hand side.

*kao* : face.

*kūsuri* : medicine ; something good  
for the health.

*me* : eye.

*migi* : the right-hand side.

*te* : hand.

*aoi* : green ; blue ; pale.

*daiji na* : important ; precious.

*shizuka na* : quiet.

*ne'ru* : to lie down ; sleep.

*yasumu* : to rest.

*dō ka* : somehow or other.

1. *Omāe wa aoi kao wo shīte iru, dō ka shīta no ka ?* (A). 2. *Onaka ga itai no desū* (C). 3. *Sore wa ike-nai. O isha ni mite morau hō ga ii* (B). 4. *Iie, kamawa-nai de oite mo naoru deshō* (C). 5. *Kono kūsuri wo nonde shizuka ni o ne nasai* (C). 6. *O te wo dō nasaimashita ?* (D). 7. *Kega wo shita no desū ; migi desū kara, zuibun fuben desū* (C). 8. *Tarō wa hidari no me ga warukutte o isha ni itte iru* (B). 9. *Watakushi wa sengetsu byōki de mise wo yasumimashita* (C). 10. *Dōzo o karada wo o daiji ni nas'te kudasai* (D). 11. *Sō iu chīsai ji no hon wo yomu to me ga waruku narimasū* (C). 12. *Kūsuri wo kai ni jochū wo yatte o kure* (A). 13. *Kinō Hana-ko San no o uchi e ikimashita ga, Hana-ko San wa go byōki deshita kara, aimasen deshita* (C). 14. *Kono-goro watashi wa dōmo atama ga itakutte ikemasen kara hito-tsūki gurai shizuka na tokoro e ikō to omoimasū* (C). 15. *Jirō wa onaka ga itai sō desū ; ammari kudamono wo tabeta kara deshō* (C). 16. *Sore de wa kono kūsuri wo nomasete o yari nasai* (B). 17. *Karada no warui toki wa ko-nai de ii* (A). 18. *Yamada San kara mada henji ga kimasen ga, byōki ka mo shiremasen* (C). 19. *Tegami wo dashite kiite mimashō* (C). 20. *O yasumi nasai* (C). 21. *Jochū ga atama ga itai to itte nete iru* (B). 22. *Musūko san ga o kega wo nas'tta sō de gozaimasū ga ikaga de gozaimasū ka ?* (D). 23. *Arigatō gozaimasū. Taihen na kega de wa gozaimasen ga, naoru made tōka gurai kakaru darō to o isha ga imashita* (D). 24. *Kono ko wa kūsuri wo nomu no ga kirai de dōmo komaru* (B). 25. *O Matsū wa kyō wa ichi-do mo gohan wo tabe-nai kara, o isha wo yonde mite morawa-nakereba nara-nai* (B).

1. You are pale, is anything the matter with you ? 2. I have a stomach-ache. 3. I am sorry to hear it. You had better see a doctor. 4. Oh no, if I leave it alone and take no notice of it, no doubt, I'll get well again. 5. Take this medicine and lie down quietly. 6. What have you done to your hand ? 7. I've hurt myself ; as it's my right hand I find it very inconvenient. 8. Tarō's left eye is bad, he goes to the doctor. 9. I was ill last month and on that account I was absent from the office. 10. Please take great care of yourself. 11. If you read books with such small print, you'll damage your eyesight. 12. Send the servant to buy the medicine. 13. I went to see Miss Hana-ko yesterday, but as she was ill I didn't see her. 14. As I have been greatly troubled lately with my headaches, I am thinking of going to some quiet place for a month or so. 15. Jirō says he's got a stomach-ache, I've no doubt, it's because he's been eating too much fruit. 16. Well then, give him this medicine to take. 17. You needn't come when you are not feeling well. 18. Mr Yamada hasn't answered (my letter) yet, he may be ill. 19. I'll write and inquire. 20. Good night. 21. The servant is lying down, she says she's got a headache. 22. I've heard that your son hurt himself, how is he now ? 23. Thanks, it's nothing serious, the doctor says he will be well again in about ten days. 24. I really don't know what to do with this child, he does so dislike taking medicine. 25. Matsu hasn't eaten anything today, I must send for the doctor.

## EXERCISE 45.

*ato-oshi* : rikisha push-man.

*machi* : town ; street.

*saka* : an inclined road ; hill (up or down).

*abunai* : dangerous.

*tōi* : far.

*wakai* : young.

*isogu* : to hurry.

*ma ni au* : to be in time ; serve the purpose.

*tome'ru* (trans.) : to stop.

*yatou* : to engage ; employ.

*ue* : above ; on the top of.

1. *Kuruma wo yonde kure* (A). 2. *Kono kuruma wa furukütte ike-nai, hoka no wo yonde kure* (A). 3. *Wakai kuruma-ya no hō ga ii* (B). 4. *Ueno made ikura?* (B). 5. *Go-jis-sen itadakitō gozaimasū* (D). 6. *Go-jis-sen ja ammari takai. Tabi-tabi notta koto ga aru kara, taitei shitte iru* (B). 7. *Ame ga futte taihen michi ga warū gozaimasū kara, o takaku wa gozaimasen* (D). 8. *Keredomo, sugu soko ja nai ka? yon-jis-sen de ii darō?* (A). 9. *Sore de wa komarimasū, mō go-sen kudasaimasen ka?* (D). 10. *Ja sō shiyō* (B). 11. *Jikan de yatoitai, ichi-jikan ikura?* (A). 12. *Tōi tokoro e o-ide nasaimasū ka?* (D). 13. *Ichiban tōi tokoro wa Aoyama da* (B). 14. *Ginkō e itte o kure* (A). 15. *Hayaku ika-nai to ma ni awa-nai* (B). 16. *Tokei-ya no mae de tomete o kure* (A). 17. *Isoide saka wo orite wa ike-nai, abunai kara* (A). 18. *Ginkō wa nani machi ni gozaimasū ka?* (D). 19. *Sono saka no sugu ue da* (B). 20. *Ato-oshi wo o yobi nasai* (A). 21. *Go-ji no kisha ni ma ni au yō ni sūkoshi isoide o kure* (A). 22. *Hayaku ikeba mō jis-sen yarō* (B). 23. *Yūbin-kyoku e itte kure* (A). 24. *Koko ni matte ite moraitai* (A). 25. *Dare ka ni michi wo kiki nasai* (A). 26. *Atama ga itai no da kara, shizuka ni itte moraitai* (A). 27. *Ammari isoga-nai de o kure* (A). 28. *Sūteishon made dono gurai kakaru ka?* (A). 29. *San-jip-pun de mairimasū* (D). 30. *Ginkō wa doko de gozaimasū ka?* (D). 31. *Sono kado wo migi e magaru to sugu ginkō no mae ni deru* (B). 32. *Yo-ji mae ni tsūkitai no da, hayaku itte o kure* (A). 33. *Kono saka wa abunai kara, orite aruite ikō* (B). 34. *Ano hon-ya de kai-mono wo suru kara, tomete moraitai* (A).

1. Call a rikisha. 2. This rikisha won't do, it's too old ; call another one. 3. A young rikisha-man would be better. 4. How much do you charge to go to Ueno? 5. Fifty sen. 6. Fifty sen is too dear. I have often been there and I know the proper price. 7. As it has rained and the roads are very bad, I really don't think it's too much. 8. Well, but it's only a short distance, will you go for forty sen? 9. That is too little, can't you give me five sen more? 10. Well, I will do so. 11. I want to engage you by the hour ; how much an hour? 12. Are you going far? 13. The farthest place I am going to is Aoyama. 14. Go to the bank. 15. If you don't go quickly I won't be there in time. 16. Stop at that watchmaker's. 17. Don't go too fast down the hills, it is dangerous. 18. In what street is the bank? 19. It's just on the top of that hill. 20. Call a push-man. 21. Hurry up a little so as to catch the five o'clock train. 22. If you go quickly I'll give you ten sen more. 23. Go to the post office. 24. Wait here. 25. Ask somebody the road. 26. I want you to go slowly as I have a headache. 27. Don't go too quickly. 28. How long does it take to go to the station? 29. I can go in thirty minutes. 30. Where is the bank? 31. Turn to the right at that corner and you'll soon come to the bank. 32. I wish to get there before four o'clock, so hurry up. 33. This hill is dangerous, I'll get down and walk. 34. I want to stop at that book-seller's as I have some purchases to make.



## EXERCISE 46.

*akabō* : railway porter.

*ōfuku* : there and back ; return.

*-tō* : class (as 1st, 2nd, or 3rd class).

*it-tō* : first class.

*ni-tō* : second class.

*san-tō* : third class.

*azuke'ru* : to give in deposit.

*nose'ru* : to put on to.

*tōru* : to pass.

*tsūkau* : to use.

*soba* : beside ; near.

*tsugi no* : next.

*yuki* (from *yuku*, the correct form of the verb to go) : used after destination of trains, ships, etc.

1. *Kyōto-yuki no kisha wa nan-ji ni demasū ka ?* (C). 2. *Hachi-ji ni demasū* (C). 3. *Kippu wo uru tokoro wa doko deshō ?* (C). 4. *Kōbe it-tō ichi-mai* (B). 5. *Tōkyō ōfuku ni-tō sam-mai kudasai* (C). 6. *Kono kippu wa iku-nichi tsūkaemasū ka ?* (C). 7. *Kyōto de orite mo ii no desū ka ?* (C). 8. *Koko de tabako wo nonde mo kaimasen ka ?* (C). 9. *Akabō wo yonde kure* (A). 10. *Kono kaban wo kisha no naka e motte itte ii desū ka ?* (C). 11. *Kono ōki na nimotsū wo fūtatsu Kōbe made azuketai* (B). 12. *Tsugi no sūteishon wa nan to iimasū ?* (C). 13. *Kono kisha wa Kyōto e nan-ji ni tsūkimasū ?* (C). 14. *Nimotsū wa kimashita ka ?* (C). 15. *Hai, mō kuruma ni nosemashita* (C). 16. *Kono densha wa Shimbashi sūteishon no soba wo tōrimasū ka ?* (C). 17. *Shimbashi e nori-kae-nai de ikaremasū ka ?* (C). 18. *Kono tsugi no ni noreba nori-kae-nai de ikareru* (B). 19. *Shinagawa-yuki wa koko de noru no desū ka ?* (C). 20. *Iie, ano hon-ya no mae kara noru no desū* (C). 21. *Hongō e iku no ni wa doko de nori-kaeru no de gozaimashō ?* (D). 22. *Suda-chō de o nori-kae nasareba yō gozaimasū* (D). 23. *Suda-chō wo shirimasen kara, kitara ōshiete kudasai* (C). 24. *Kono tsugi wa Suda-chō de gozaimasū* (D). 25. *Sūteishon no mae de orimasū kara, tomete kudasai* (C). 26. *Ōfuku ikura desū ?* (C). 27. *Jis-sen desū* (C). 28. *Ame ga furu yō desū kara, densha de kaerō ja arimasen ka ?* (C). 29. *E, sō shimashō* (C). 30. *Moshi ame ga futtara, densha wo orite kara, kuruma de ikō* (B). 31. *Nimotsū ga takusan aru nara, densha de ika-nai de, kuruma de iku hō ga ii darō* (B). 32. *Densha no hō ga hayai kara denshu de ikō* (B).

1. At what time does the train for Kyōto leave ? 2. At eight o'clock. 3. I wonder where the booking-office is ? 4. One first Kōbe. 5. Three second returns Tōkyō. 6. How many days is this ticket available ? 7. May I break the journey at Kyōto ? 8. Is smoking allowed here ? 9. Call a porter. 10. May I take this bag into the carriage with me ? 11. I want to check these two big trunks to Kōbe. 12. What's the name of the next station ? 13. At what time does this train arrive at Kyōto ? 14. Has my luggage arrived ? 15. Yes, I have already put it on a rikisha. 16. Does this tram-car pass near Shimbashi station ? 17. Can I go to Shimbashi without changing cars ? 18. If you take the following car you needn't change. 19. Is this the place where one takes (the tram-car) for Shinagawa ? 20. No, in front of that bookseller's. 21. Where must I change for Hongō ? 22. Change at Suda-chō. 23. As I don't know where Suda-chō is, please tell me when we get there. 24. The next stop is Suda-chō. 25. As I want to get off at the station, please stop. 26. How much is a return ticket ? 27. Ten sen. 28. As it looks like rain, let's go back by tram-car. 29. All right, let's do so. 30. Supposing it starts raining, when we get off the tram-car, let's take rikishas. 31. If you have too many parcels, instead of taking the tram-car you had better take a rikisha. 32. Let's go by tram-car, it's faster.

## EXERCISE 47.

*kire* : cloth.  
*shimi* : stain.  
*teishaba* : station.  
*uke-tori* : receipt.  
*fudan no* : usual ; everyday.  
*iru* : to need.

*todoke'ru* : to send to destination.  
*yokosû* : to send (towards the speaker).  
*kitto* : positively ; surely.  
*mukai* : the opposite side.  
*mukô* : beyond ; over there.

1. *Teishaba e wa dore ga ichiban chikai michi desû ka?* (C). 2. *Kore ga ichiban chikai* (B). 3. *Kôen e iku michi wa dochira de gozaimasû ka?* (D). 4. *Ano kado wo hidari e magatte massugu ni o-ide nasai* (C). 5. *Kore wo ikeba Ueno sûteishon e demasû ka?* (C). 6. *Iie, koko wo itte wa dame desû ; teishaba wa mukô desû* (C). 7. *Tokai wo misete kudasai* (C). 8. *Kore wa taka-sugimasû, motto yasui no ga arimasen ka?* (C). 9. *Yasui no de ii no desû* (C). 10. *Kore wo kaimashô. Kyô uchi e todokete kuremasen ka?* (C). 11. *Kane wa motte kita toki haraimasû kara, uke-tori wo motte kite kudasai* (C). 12. *Kodomo no bôshi wo misete kudasai* (C). 13. *Fudan no desû kara, sô ii no wa irimasen* (C). 14. *Takai kara, yoshimashô* (C). 15. *Sono kire wo misete kudasaimasen ka?* (C). 16. *Koko ni shimi ga arimasû ; shimi ga aru no wa iya desû* (C). 17. *Kutsu wo koshiraete moraitai desû ga, itsû dekiru deshô?* (C). 18. *Doyô-bi no gogo ni tori ni yokosû kara, sore made ni kitto koshiraete oite kure* (A). 19. *Ginkô no mukai ni hon-ya ga aru, soko de kô ni jibiki wo katte kite kure* (A). 20. *Kono empitsû wa ikura?* (B). 21. *Go-sen de gozaimasû* (D). 22. *Kore wo go-hon to ano awi kami wo hyaku-mai kudasai* (C). 23. *Ko-zutsumi de okuru yô ni tsutsunde kuremasen ka? Uke-tori wo naka e irete kudasai* (C). 24. *Isogimasû kara, hayaku shite moraitai desû* (C). 25. *Minna de ikura ni narimasû?* (C). 26. *Yûbin-kyoku wa doko ni arimasû ka?* (C). 27. *Koko kara migi no hō e o-ide nasaimasû to gozaimasû. Go-fun gurai de ikaremasû* (D). 28. *Ko-zutsumi wa watakushi no hō de dashimashō ka?* (D). 29. *Iie, watashi ga dasō* (B). 30. *Sore de wa yûbin-kyoku made go issho ni dare ka ni motasete agemashō* (D).

1. Which is the nearest way to the station? 2. This is the nearest way. 3. Which is the way to the park, please? 4. Turn to the left at that corner and go straight on. 5. If I go this way will it take me to Ueno station? 6. No, that's not the way; the station is over there. 7. Please show me some watches. 8. These are too dear; have you no other cheaper ones? 9. A cheap one will do. 10. I will take this one. Please send it to my house today. 11. I'll pay on delivery, so send the receipt at the same time. 12. Show me some children's hats. 13. As it's for everyday use I don't want a very good one. 14. It's too dear, I won't take it. 15. Please show me that cloth. 16. There's a stain here, I don't want anything soiled. 17. I want some boots made, when can you have them ready? 18. I'll send for them on Saturday afternoon, so be sure and have them ready by then. 19. There's a bookseller in front of the bank, go there and buy a dictionary like this. 20. How much is this pencil? 21. Five sen. 22. Give me five of these pencils and a hundred sheets of that blue paper. 23. Would you kindly pack them up so as to send by post? Enclose the receipted bill, please. 24. As I'm in a hurry, be quick about it, please. 25. How much is it altogether? 26. Where is the post office? 27. If you go to the right (on leaving the shop) you'll come to it. It's about five minutes' walk. 28. Shall I send the parcel? 29. No, I will send it. 30. Well then, allow me to send somebody to carry it for you to the post office.



## EXERCISE 48.

*denwa* : telephone.

*go* : language ; word.

*kaki-tome* : writing down ; registration.

*owari* : end.

*tsutsumi* : parcel.

*kakaru* : used of the telephone.

*kake'ru* : used of telegrams and telephone.

*todoku* : to reach ; arrive.

*chotto* : a short time.

*tabun* : perhaps.

1. *Kono tegami wo kaki-tome ni shite dashite o kure* (A). 2. *Watashi ni tegami ga kita deshō ?* (C). 3. *Iie, mairimasen* (D). 4. *Kono tegami wa ikura de ikimasū ka ?* (C). 5. *Roku-sen de ikimasū* (C). 6. *Ano tsutsumi wo Tanaka San e o todoke nasai* (A). 7. *Dempō wo kaketai kara, yūbin-kyoku e itte kure* (A). 8. *Ei-go no dempō wo kakeraremasū ka ?* (C). 9. *Ei-go no dempō wa ichi-go ikura ?* (B). 10. *Koko de wa Ei-go no dempō wa kakeraremasen* (C). 11. *Yamada San, dōzo denwa wo chotto kashite kudasaimasen ka ?* (D). 12. *E, o tsūkai nasai* (C). 13. *Brown San wa nam-ban deshō ?* (C). 14. *Naniwa no sam-byaku-jū-ichi-ban de gozaimasū* (D). 15. *O rusu ni Suzuki San kara denwa ga kakarimashita* (D). 16. *Suzuki San wa ashita no asa o-ide kudasaru sō de gozaimasū* (D). 17. *Tanaka San ga irasshaimashitara, dōzo denwa e o yobi kudasai* (D). 18. *Kono ko-zutsumi wa Amerika e ikura de ikimasū ka ?* (C). 19. *Itsū todokimasū ka ?* (C). 20. *Tabun kongetsū no owari ni tsūkimasū* (C). 21. *Hana-ko San ga Kōbe kara o kaeri ni natta ka, denwa de kiite o kure* (A). 22. *Kesa ku-ji goro ni kono kaki-tome ga mairimashita* (D). 23. *Kono kudamono wa yūbin de okurimashō ka ?* (C). 24. *Kisha no hō ga hayaku tsūkimasū kara, kisha de o yari nasai* (B). 25. *Denwa de niku wo motte kuru yō ni iimashō ka ?* (C). 26. *Denwa de wa sugu ni motte ko-nai ka mo shire-nai kara, tori ni iku hō ga ii* (B). 27. *Danna sama wa irasshaimasū ka ?* (D). 28. *Yūbe haha kara dempō ga kite, sugu ni inaka e ikimashita* (C). 29. *Donata ka go byōki de gozaimasū ka ?* (D). 30. *Iie, sō ja nai deshō to omoimasū* (C). 31. *Kono tegami wa san-sen de iku deshō ka ?* (C). 32. *Omoi kara roku-sen kakarimasū* (C).

1. Send this letter by registered post. 2. I wonder if a letter has come for me ? 3. No. 4. What's the postage on this letter ? 5. Six sen. 6. Send that parcel to Mr Tanaka. 7. I want to send a telegram, take me to the post office. 8. Can I send a telegram in English ? 9. How much does each word in English cost ? 10. You can't send a telegram in English from here. 11. Mr Yamada, would you allow me the use of the telephone for a moment ? 12. Certainly. 13. What's Mr Brown's number ? 14. Naniwa three hundred and eleven. 15. While you were out Mr Suzuki called you up on the telephone. 16. Mr Suzuki says that he'll come tomorrow morning. 17. If Mr Tanaka is at home, please ask him to come to the telephone. 18. What's the fee for sending this parcel to America ? 19. When will it arrive ? 20. Perhaps at the end of this month. 21. Find out by telephone if Miss Hana-ko has returned from Kōbe. 22. This registered (letter) came this morning at about nine o'clock. 23. Shall I send this fruit by post ? 24. Send it by train, it will arrive sooner. 25. Shall I call up (the butcher) on the phone and ask him to send the meat ? 26. If you telephone for it they may not send it immediately, so you had better send for it. 27. Is your husband at home ? 28. Yesterday evening a telegram came from his mother and he immediately set out for the country. 29. Is anybody ill ? 30. No, I don't think so. 31. Will this letter go for three sen ? 32. It's overweight, it will need six sen.

## EXERCISE 49.

*gakkō* : school.

*gomu* : rubber ; gum.

*hakuboku* : chalk (for the black-board).

*hatsuon* : pronunciation.

*keiko* : exercise ; lesson.

*kokuban* : black-board.

*peiji* : page.

*seito* : scholar ; pupil.

*sensei* : teacher.

*chigau* : to be different ; be mistaken.

*machigae'ru* : to (make a) mistake.

*machigae* ; *machigai* : mistake.

*oboeru* : to remember ; learn ; understand.

*iku—mo* : any number of ; several.

1. *Gakkō e o-ide nasaimasū ka ?* (D). 2. *Anata no irassharu gakkō wa nan to iimasū ka ?* (D). 3. *Nihon-go Gakkō to iimasū ; sensei wa Tanabe to iu hito de gozaimasū* (D). 4. *Seito ga iku-nin imasū ka ?* (C). 5. *San-jū-nin gurai orimasū* (C). 6. *Kyō no keiko wa doko kara desū ka ?* (C). 7. *Jū-ni peiji kara de gozaimasū* (D). 8. *Watakushi ga ichi-do yomimasū kara, mina-san yoku kiite irasshai* (C). 9. *Brown San, anata yonde goran nasai* (C). 10. *Kokuban e 'kōen' to kaite goran nasai* (C). 11. *Sore wo hatsuon shite kudasai* (C). 12. *Chigaimasū, 'kōen' no 'kō' wa nagaku hatsuon suru no desū. Mō ichi-do itte goran nasai* (C). 13. *Kondo wa yō gozaimasū, iku-do mo hatsuon shite, yoku oboete ite kudasai* (C). 14. *Smith San, 'konnichi' to kaite goran nasai. Hakuboku wa ano-hako ni arimasū* (C). 15. *Sore de wa chigaimasū. Jones San, anata o kaki nasai* (C). 16. *Sō desū. 'Konnichi' wa 'n' ga fūtatsu aru no desū. Smith San, machigae-nai yō ni yoku oboete kudasai* (C). 17. *Kami wo dashite, watashi no yomu koto wo kaite kudasai* (C). 18. *Machigai wa ikutsū gozaimasū ka ?* (D). 19. *Nanatsu gozaimasū* (D). 20. *Gomu wo wasurete motte kimasen deshita, dōzo anata no wo kashite kudasaimasen ka ?* (D). 21. *E, o tsūkai nasai* (C). 22. *Kyō wa jū-shi peiji made ni shimashō* (C). 23. *Koko wa muzukashii gozaimasū kara, o kaeri ni natte kara, iku-do mo o yomi ni natte kudasai* (D). 24. *Kono tsugi no tokoro wo o uchi de ichi-do yonde o-ide nasai* (C). 25. *Moshi shira-nai ji ga attara, jibiki wo goran nasai* (C). 26. *Ano kata wa anata no Nihon-go no sensei de gozaimasū ka ?* (D). 27. *Iie, ano kata wa sensei no o tō-san de gozaimasū* (D).

1. Do you go to school ? 2. What is the name of the school you go to ? 3. It is called the Japanese Language School ; the teacher is called Tanabe. 4. How many pupils are there ? 5. There are about thirty. 6. Where does today's lesson begin ? 7. It begins at page twelve. 8. I am going to read it once ; all of you pay great attention. 9. Mr Brown, please read that. 10. Write the word '*kōen*' on the black-board. 11. Pronounce that word. 12. That is not right ; the '*kō*' of '*kōen*' is pronounced long. Please say it again. 13. That is right now. Pronounce it over and over again so as not to forget it. 14. Mr Smith, write the word '*konnichi*'. There is some chalk in that box. 15. That is wrong. Mr Jones, you write it. 16. Yes, that's right. '*Konnichi*' has two *n*'s. Mr Smith, remember it well so as not to make the mistake again. 17. Take some paper and write down what I'm going to dictate. 18. How many mistakes have you made ? 19. Seven. 20. I forgot to bring my india-rubber ; will you please lend me yours ? 21. Certainly. 22. We'll do today as far as page fourteen. 23. As this part is difficult, when you go back home, read it over several times. 24. Read over the next lesson once at home. 25. If there are any words that you don't know, look them up in your dictionary. 26. Is that gentleman your Japanese teacher ? 27. No, he is my teacher's father.



## EXERCISE 50.

The object of this Exercise is to draw attention to the fact, noticed no doubt already by the student, that there are many words in Japanese pronounced alike or nearly alike, and verbs which are alike in some inflexions but not in others.

*hen* : region.

*shio* : salt.

*tomodachi* : friend.

*yōfūku* : foreign clothes.

*ki* : spirit.

*ki wo tsūke'ru* : to take care ; pay attention.

*kanari* : rather.

1. *Kuruma-ya ni itte, ni-ji ni kuru yō ni itte o kure* (A). 2. *Hoteru ni iru to kane ga iru kara, yado-ya ni iru hō ga ii* (B). 3. *Mise de Yamada San ni atte, han-jikan gurai hanashita ; Yamada San wa shigoto ga takūsan atte, nichiyō ni mo yasume-nai to itte ita* (B). 4. *Tōru hito ga kudamono wo toru ka mo shire-nai kara, ki wo tsukete o-ide* (A). 5. *Hana-ko San wa kinō uchi e yōfūku wo kite kita* (B). 6. *Ammari ii o tenki desū kara, sampo ni ikō ja arimasen ka ?* (C). 7. *Kyō wa atama ga itai kara, uchi ni itai* (B). 8. *Nii-san wa ni-san-nichi Hakone ni iru to itte tegami wo yokoshimashita* (C). 9. *Akai empitsū wo go-hon to kono hon wo ko-zutsumi de Tarō ni okutte yarimashō* (C). 10. *Jis-sen no kitte wo katte kite kure ; sugu ni itte o-ide* (A). 11. *Anata wa Kyōto wo shitte imasū ka ?* (C). 12. *E, kyo-nen no natsū ano hen wo ryokō shite, kanari yoku shitte imasū* (C). 13. *Kono tsubo wo kudasaimasen ka ?* (D). 14. *Sore ni wa shio wo iremasū kara, irimasū* (C). 15. *Tanaka San wa o kō-san ga go byōki de kesa go-ji no kisha de o uchi e o kaeri nasaimashita* (D). 16. *Tarō wo yonde sono tegami wo yonde kikase nasai* (A). 17. *Tomodachi ni attara, jibiki wa Naka-ya ni atta to itte kudasai* (C). 18. *Jirō no tokoro e itte, kyō wa ame ga furu yō da kara, ko-nai de ii to o ii nasai* (B). 19. *Kono densha ni wa watashi no kirai na hito ga orimasū kara, orimasū* (C). 20. *Hana-ko San ga Amerika e iku to kiita ga, sō darō ka ? Hana-ko San no o kō-san ni kiite kite kudasai* (B). 21. *E, kiite kite agemashō* (C). 22. *Tonari no kodomo wa uchi no mae wo tōru to kitto hana wo toru ; dōmo iya na ko da* (B).

1. Go and tell the rikisha-man to come here at two o'clock. 2. If you stop at a hotel it is very expensive (*lit.* a lot of money is needed) ; so you had better stop at a Japanese inn. 3. I met Mr Yamada at the office, and we had about half an hour's talk. Mr Yamada has so much to do that he says he does not rest even on Sundays. 4. Passers-by may pick the fruit, so take care. 5. Miss Hana-ko put on foreign clothes yesterday and came to see me. 6. It's such lovely weather, let's go for a walk. 7. I've got a headache today, so I want to stay at home. 8. My brother wrote saying that he was going to stay two or three days at Hakone. 9. I'll send five red pencils and this book to Tarō by parcel post. 10. Go and buy a ten-sen stamp, and be quick about it. 11. Do you know Kyōto ? 12. Yes, I was travelling about there last (year in the) summer, so I know it fairly well. 13. Please give me this jar. 14. I need it as I use it for putting salt in. 15. Mr Tanaka's mother is ill, he went home this morning by the five o'clock train. 16. Call Tarō and read that letter to him. 17. If you meet your friend please tell him that I found the dictionary at Naka-ya's. 18. Go to Jirō's house and tell him that he needn't come today as it looks like rain. 19. There's a man I hate in this tram-car, so I'll get off. 20. I've heard that Miss Hana-ko is going to America, I wonder if that is so ? Go and ask her mother. 21. Very well, I'll go and ask her. 22. Whenever the child from next door happens to pass in front of our house, he is sure to pick some flowers ; he's a most objectionable boy.

# EXERCISE 51.

Article. Nouns : gender, number. Study 174—180.

*gejo* : maid-servant.

*geta* : clogs.

*kuni* : country ; province ; one's native place.

*mendori* : hen.

*nen* : year.

*oba* : aunt.

*oji* : uncle.

*ondori* : cock.

*shaku* : foot (measure).

*tori* : bird.

*wa* : aux. num. for counting birds.

*hōbō* : on all sides ; everywhere.

1. *Ano kago ni tori ga iru* (B). 2. *Kinō katta isu wo motte o-ide nasai* (B). 3. *Tamago wo hitotsū Saburō ni yatte kudasai* (C). 4. *Kono kire wa shaku de go-jis-sen de gozaimasū* (D). 5. *Watakūshi wa tsūki ni ni-do haha ni ai ni kuni e kaerimasū* (C). 6. *Ushi to iu mono wa tsuyoi mono da* (B). 7. *Anata wa geta to iu mono wo shitte imasū ka?* (C). 8. *Hakodate to iu tokoro e o-ide ni natta koto ga gozaimasū ka?* (D). 9. *Hai, otōto ga imasū kara, taitei nen ni san-do gurai ikimasū* (C). 10. *Kyōnen oji to oba to watashi to san-nin de Fuji-san ni noborimashita* (C). 11. *Oba no tokoro ni wa ondori ga sam-ba, mendori ga jū-shichi-wa imasū kara, itsū de mo atarashii tamago ga arimasū* (C). 12. *Tonari ni wa meshi ga ni-hiki iru ; o-ushi wa i-nai* (B). 13. *Kodomo-tachi wa hōbō sagashimashita ga, imasen* (C). 14. *Gejo ga byōki de nete imasū kara, watakūshi wa zuibun isogashii gozaimasū* (D). 15. *Kamakura e iku ni wa Ōfuna to iu tokoro de nori-kaeru no desū* (C). 16. *Yokohama e tabi-tabi o-ide nasaimasū ka?* (D). 17. *Nanuka ni ichi-do iku* (B). 18. *Kono kire wa ikura desū ka?* (C). 19. *Shaku de san-jū-has-sen de gozaimasū* (D). 20. *Sore wo roku-shaku kaimashō* (C). 21. *Shina to iu kuni wa zuibun ōki na kuni de gozaimasū* (D). 22. *Amerika e o-ide nasaimashitara, tsūki ni ichi-do wa kitto o tegami wo kudasai* (D). 23. *Watakūshi no Ei-go no sensei wa Thompson to iu Igirisū no hito de gozaimasū* (D). 24. *Jibiki ga arimashita ka?* (C). 25. *Hōbō no hon-ya de kiite mimashita ga, gozaimasen deshita* (D). 26. *Sono akai himo wa shaku de ikura?* (B). 27. *Sore wo san-jaku kudasai* (C). 28. *Ano uchi no kodomo-tachi wa minna rikō na sō desū* (C).

1. There is a bird in that cage. 2. Bring the chair I bought yesterday. 3. Please give Saburō an egg. 4. This cloth is fifty sen a foot. 5. I go home twice a month to see my mother. 6. The bull is a strong animal. 7. Do you know what *geta* are? 8. Have you ever been to (a place called) Hakodate? 9. Yes, my younger brother is living there, so I generally go there three times a year. 10. Last year I went up Mount Fuji with my uncle and aunt (three of us altogether). 11. At my aunt's house there are three cocks and seventeen hens, so there are always fresh eggs. 12. My neighbour has two cows, but he hasn't got a bull. 13. I've looked for the children everywhere but I can't find them. 14. I am very busy as the maid-servant is ill in bed. 15. To go to Kamakura you must change at a place called Ōfuna. 16. Do you go frequently to Yokohama? 17. I go once a week. 18. What is the price of this cloth? 19. Thirty-eight sen a foot. 20. I'll take six feet. 21. China is a very big country. 22. While you are away in America be sure to write to me at least once a month. 23. My English teacher is an Englishman called Thompson. 24. Did you find the dictionary? 25. I inquired at all the booksellers but I couldn't find it. 26. What is the price a foot of that red cord? 27. Please give me three feet. 28. They say that all the children of that house are very clever.



## EXERCISE 52.

Derivative and compound concrete nouns. Study 181, 1--5.

*fūkuro* : bag.  
*te-bukuro* : gloves.  
*kuchi* : mouth ; opening.  
*de-guchi* : exit.  
*kugi* : nail ; peg.  
*mado-kake* : curtain.  
*wa* : wheel ; hoop.  
*yubi* : finger.

*asobu* : to play.  
*asobi* : game.  
*asobi ni iku* : to go (somewhere) for  
 pleasure ; visit.  
*hiku* : to pull ; draw ; lead.  
*kake'ru* : to hang.  
*mawasu* (trans.) : to turn round.  
*yogore'ru* : to get soiled, dirty.

1. *Tarō to Jirō ga wa wo mawashite asonde imasu* (C). 2. *Komban omoshiroi asobi wo shiyō to omoimasu kara, shichi-ji ni o-ide kudasai* (D). 3. *Anata nani ka ii o kangae ga gozaimashitara, dōzo o hanashi kudasai* (D). 4. *Yamada San ga anata ni o hanashi ga aru to itte o-ide nasaimashita* (D). 5. *Ashita Kamakura e asobi ni iku toki kono fūkuro e kudamono wo irete irasshai* (C). 6. *Te-bukuro wo dashite o kure* (A). 7. *Hana-ko wa doko e ikimashita* ? (C). 8. *Yubi ni kega wo shite, ichi-jikan mae ni o isha e ikimashita* (C). 9. *Anata no yubi-wa wa taihen kirei de gozaimasu* (D). 10. *Kesa roku-ji goro Sankichi ga kuruma wo hiite tōrimashita* (C). 11. *Bōshi no uke-tori wa tsukue no hidari no hikidashi ni irete oki nasai* (A). 12. *Kimono wo ano kugi ni kakete okō* (B). 13. *Mado-kake ga yogoreta kara, sentaku sashite o kure* (A). 14. *Kuchi wo akete goran nasai* (C). 15. *De-guchi wa dochira de gozaimasu ka* ? (D). 16. *De-guchi wa mukō ni arimasu* (C). 17. *Omae wa uchi ni iru to jama da kara, kōen ni itte asonde o-ide* (A). 18. *Kono mado-kake wa furuku natta kara, atarashii no wo kaō* (B). 19. *Oji san ni kono yubi-wa wo itadakimashita* (D). 20. *Kore wa donata no te-bukuro de gozaimashō* ? (D). 21. *Hana-ko San no ka mo shire-nai* (B). 22. *Oba san ga omoshiroi hanashi wo kikashite kudasaru sō desu kara, itte mo yō gozaimasu ka* ? (D). 23. *E, itte o-ide nasai* (A). 24. *Hana-ko San no tokoro de iro-iro no asobi wo shite, zaibun omoshirokatta* (B). 25. *Tsukue no hikidashi wo sōji shite, ira-nai mono wa minna sūtete shimaimashō* (C). 26. *Mado-kake no sentaku wo shimashita ka* ? (C). 27. *Hai, mō sugu ni kawakimashō* (C).

1. Tarō and Jirō are playing, rolling their hoops. 2. We are going to play an amusing game this evening, so please come at seven o'clock. 3. If you have a good idea please tell it to me. 4. Mr Yamada came and said that he had something he wanted to tell you. 5. When you go to Kamakura tomorrow take some fruit in this bag. 6. Get out my gloves. 7. Where did Hana-ko go to ? 8. She hurt her finger and went to the doctor an hour ago. 9. Your ring is really very pretty. 10. This morning at six o'clock Sankichi passed by here pulling a rikisha. 11. Put the receipt for the hat in the left-hand drawer of my desk. 12. I'll hang my dress on that nail. 13. The curtains are dirty, have them washed. 14. Open your mouth please. 15. Where is the exit ? 16. The exit is over there. 17. (If you are) at home you are in the way, so go and play in the park. 18. These curtains are old, I'll buy some new ones. 19. My uncle gave me this ring. 20. Whose gloves are these ? 21. I believe they are Miss Hana-ko's. 22. My aunt says that she is going to tell us an amusing story, may we go (to her house) ? 23. All right. 24. I amused myself a great deal at Miss Hana-ko's house, we played several games. 25. I'll clean out the drawers of my desk and throw away all the things I don't want. 26. Have you washed the curtains ? 27. Yes, they will soon be dry.

## EXERCISE 53.

Derivative and compound concrete nouns. Study from 181, 6 to the end of the paragraph.

*aka-gane* : copper.  
*aomono* : vegetables.  
*fûta* : lid.  
*inaka-mono* : peasant.  
*kawa* : river.  
*keshiki* : view.  
*ki* : tree ; wood.  
*nabe* : saucepan.

*niwa* : garden.  
*wasure-mono* : a thing left behind,  
 forgotten.  
*hiroi* : wide ; large.  
*hiro-buta* : tray.  
*hataraku* : to work.  
*kudaru* : to descend.

1. *Kono nabe wa aka-gane de gozaimasû* (D). 2. *Nabe ni fûta wo shôte o kure* (A). 3. *Yamada San no niwa wa hirokûte ki ga takusan arimasû* (C). 4. *Kono sara to koppu wo hiro-buta ni nosete nikai e motte o-ide* (A). 5. *Hon-ya de Tarô San ni aimashita kara, nichiyô no asa ku-ji ni kuru yô ni hanashimashita* (C). 6. *Sentakû-ya ga o kane wo tori ni mairimashita* (D). 7. *Watashi no gakkô no Ei-go no sensei wa Amerika-jin deshita* (C). 8. *Sono kata wa taihen Nihon-go ga jôzu de gozaimashita* (D). 9. *Kyônen no natsû Fuji-kawa wo kudarimashita ga, ii keshiki deshita* (C). 10. *Yokohama no sûteishon e wasure-mono wo shôte kimashita* (C). 11. *Kono hen wa aomono ga takai yô de gozaimasû* (D). 12. *Uchi no jochû wa inaka-mono desû* (C). 13. *Asa hayaku kara, yoru osoku made isshôkemmei ni hatarakimasû* (C). 14. *Yûbin-kyoku ga chikaku ni gozaimasû ka?* (D). 15. *Ame ga furu ka mo shire-nai kara, tôku e asobi ni itte wa ike-nai* (A). 16. *Tamago wo katte kite o kure ; keredomo, atarashii no ga nakereba kawa-nai de ii* (A). 17. *Wasure-mono wo shi-nai yô ni ki wo tsûke nasai* (A). 18. *Ano seiyô-jin wa itsû de mo Nihon no kimono wo kite imasû* (C). 19. *Watashi wa aka-gane no nabe wa kirai desû, abunai kara* (C). 20. *Ano aomono-ya wa takai yô da kara, kono tsugi kara hoka no mise de kai nasai* (A). 21. *Kono michi wa hirokûte ii* (B). 22. *Ano mise no shujin wa doko no hito de gozaimashô?* (D). 23. *Shina-jin da sô da ga, Nihon-go ga taihen jôzu da* (B).

1. This saucepan is made of copper. 2. Put the lid on the saucepan. 3. Mr Yamada's garden is large, there are a lot of trees in it. 4. Put this plate and this tumbler on a tray and take them upstairs. 5. I met Tarô at the bookseller's and I asked him to come on Sunday morning at nine o'clock. 6. The washer-man has come for the money. 7. The teacher of English at our school was an American. 8. He could speak Japanese very well. 9. I went down the river Fuji last (year in the) summer, the scenery was very fine. 10. I lost something at Yokohama station. 11. Vegetables seem to be dear round about here. 12. Our servant is a country girl. 13. She works very hard from early in the morning till late at night. 14. Is there a post office near here? 15. I think it may rain so don't go (to play) far. 16. Go and buy some eggs, however, if there are no fresh ones, don't buy any at all. 17. Take care and don't lose anything. 18. That foreigner always wears a Japanese kimono. 19. I don't like copper saucepans, they are dangerous. 20. That green-grocer seems to be rather expensive ; in future buy at some other shop. 21. This road is wide and is in good condition. 22. What is the nationality of the owner of that shop? 23. They say he is a Chinaman, but he speaks Japanese very well.



## EXERCISE 54.

Abstract nouns. Study 182, 183.

*ana* : hole.  
*ha* : tooth.  
*mizu-umi* : lake.  
*sun* : 1/10 foot ; inch.  
*fūkai* : deep.  
*nigai* : bitter.  
*onaji* ; *onnaji* : same.  
*itamu* : to pain.

*itami* : pain.  
*kaburu* : to wear on the head.  
*taisō* : very.  
*mo--mo* : a) in aff. sentences after nouns  
 —‘both—and’; after verbs or adj.—  
 ‘whether—or’ ‘either—or’; b) in neg.  
 sentences—‘neither—nor’.

1. *Kasa wo misete kudasai* (C). 2. *Kore de wa ike-nai ; watashi wa ao ga kirai da* (B). 3. *Kono mizu-umi wa taisō fūkō gozaimasū* (D). 4. *Ano ana no fūkasa wa ni-shaku go-sun aru* (B). 5. *Kotoshi wa kyonen yori samusa ga tsuyoi yō de gozaimasū* (D). 6. *Sono himo no nagasa wa dono gurai aru ka, mite o kure* (A). 7. *Kore wa taisō nigai kūsuri da* (B). 8. *Kono kudamono wa sūkoshi nigami ga arimasū ne ? nan to iu mono desū ka ?* (C). 9. *Atsui no ni bōshi wo kabura-nai de aruite wa byōki ni naru* (B). 10. *Karada no yowai no ga ichiban komaru koto da* (B). 11. *Tarō ga yūbe ha ga itamu to itte ita ga, naorimashita ka ?* (C). 12. *Mada itami ga tomara-nai to itte, kesa wa okimasen* (C). 13. *Watashi no kuni wa samui koto wa gozaimasen ga, tuihen kaze ga fūku tokoro de gozaimasū* (D). 14. *Karita empitsū wo nakushitara, onnaji mono wo katte kaeseba ii deshō* (C). 15. *Kō iu kūsuri nara, nonde mo, noma-nakutte mo onnaji koto desū* (C). 16. *Kore to onaji ōkisa no koppu wo yottsū katte kite kudasai* (C). 17. *Sono koppu ga san-jis-sen nara takai koto wa arimasen* (C). 18. *Ano nashi no ki no takasa wa ku-shaku shika nai* (B). 19. *Kono kudamono wa nigakutte taberaremasen* (C). 20. *Kono kire no nagasa wa nan-jaku gozaimasū ka ?* (D). 21. *Has-shaku arimasū* (C). 22. *Kono mizu-umi no fūkasa wa ni-hyaku go-jis-shaku aru to kiki-mashita* (C). 23. *Densha de itte mo, kisha de itte mo, o kane wa onaji koto desū ga, densha wa tabi-tabi tomarimasū kara, kisha de ikimashō* (C). 24. *Kono heya wa hiroi koto wa hiroi desū ga, kurakutte fuben desū* (C).

1. Please show me some umbrellas. 2. This one won't do ; I don't like green. 3. This lake is very deep. 4. That hole is two feet six inches deep (*lit.* the depth of that hole). 5. It seems colder this year than last (*lit.* the cold of this year seems stronger). 6. See how long that string is. 7. This is a very bitter medicine. 8. This fruit is a little bitter, what is it called ? 9. If you walk about in this heat without a hat, you'll get ill. 10. To be weak is a very great trouble (*lit.* the weakness of the body). 11. Last night Tarō said that he had a toothache, is he better now ? 12. He says the pain has not ceased yet ; so he did not get up this morning. 13. My native place is not cold, but it is very windy. 14. If you've lost the pencil you borrowed, buy another just like it and that will be all right. 15. If this is the kind of medicine, it doesn't matter much whether you take it or not. 16. Go and buy four tumblers the same size as this one. 17. If that tumbler only costs thirty sen, I don't consider it dear. 18. That pear-tree is only nine feet high. 19. I can't eat this fruit, it is too bitter. 20. How long is this piece of cloth ? 21. Eight feet. 22. I've heard that this lake is two hundred and fifty feet deep. 23. Whether you go by train or by tram it costs the same, but as the tram stops so frequently let us go by train. 24. This room is large as far as that goes, but it's dark and therefore inconvenient.

# EXERCISE 55.

Diminutives and augmentatives. Study 184—186.

*chūmon* : an order (for goods).

*katana* : sword.

*kogatana* : penknife.

*ō-kaze* : gale.

*ōya* : landlord, [*ō* big ; *ya* person].

*yane* : roof.

*daijōbu na* : safe ; calling for no anxiety.

*kawaii* : charming ; lovely.

*kezuru* : to plane ; sharpen ; scrape.

*kiru* (trans.) : to cut.

*kire'ru* (intr.) : to cut ; be able to cut.

*moru* : to leak.

*taore'ru* : to fall over.

*toyu* : to sharpen.

*bakari* ; *bakkari* : only ; about.

1. *Abunai kara, kodomo ni katana wo motasete wa ike-nai* (A). 2. *Kogatana ga kire-naku natta, toga-nakereba nara-nai* (B). 3. *Yamada San no uchi no ko-ushi wa kawaii* (B). 4. *Empitsū wo kezuru toki ni kogatana de hidari no ko-yubi wo kirimashita* (C). 5. *Uchi no neko no ko wa tonari e itte mo daijōbu desū, itazura wo shimasen kara* (C). 6. *Kinō no ō-kaze de taoreta no wa nashi no ki bakari desū ka?* (C). 7. *Iie, hoka ni mo iro-iro taoreta ki ga aru* (B). 8. *Kondo no ō-ame de yane ga hōbō moru yō ni narimashita kara, ōya ni hanashite naoshite moraimashō* (C). 9. *Ō-kaze de nashi no ki ga taorete shimatte, dai-sūki na nashi ga taberarenaku natta* (B). 10. *Tonari no ko-inu wa kitanakutte dai-kirai* (B). 11. *Oba san ni itadaita hon wo daiji ni shite oki nasai* (A). 12. *Kinō no ō-kaze de Kōbeyuki no kisha ga jū-go-fun bakari okureta sō da* (B). 13. *Akai inki no ko-bin wo hito-bin katte kite o kure* (A). 14. *Kono tsūkue wa taihen benri de gozaimasū ne?* o kai ni natta no de gozaimasū ka? (D). 15. *Iie, chūmon shite koshiraesashita no desū* (C). 16. *O hanashi shūtai koto ga aru no desū ga, itsū agarimashō ka?* (C). 17. *Nichiyō no gogo wa taitei uchi ni imasū kara, sono toki ni o-ide nasai* (C). 18. *Ō-kaze ga fuite mo kono uchi nara taoreru mon' desū ka?* (C). 19. *Ko-neko ga doko e itta ka, ni-san-nichi miemasen* (C). 20. *Ame bakari nara ii no desū ga, kaze ga tsuyoi desū kara, yane ga moru no desū* (C).

1. Don't let the child handle the sword, it's dangerous. 2. My penknife is blunt, I must sharpen it. 3. Mr Yamada's calf is a pretty little thing. 4. When I was making a point to my pencil, I cut the little finger of my left hand (with my penknife). 5. Even if the kittens go next door, it doesn't matter; they don't do any mischief. 6. Was it only a pear-tree that was blown down yesterday by the gale? 7. No, several other trees were also blown down. 8. The heavy rain (we have just had) has caused the roof to leak in several places; I must tell the landlord to get it mended. 9. The gale has blown down the pear-tree, and now I won't be able to eat those pears I'm so fond of. 10. My neighbour's puppy is a dirty beast, I hate it. 11. Be very careful with the book your aunt gave you (and don't spoil it). 12. On account of the gale yesterday, they say that the train going to Kōbe was about fifteen minutes late. 13. Go and buy a small bottle of red ink. 14. This is a very convenient desk. Did you buy it (ready-made)? 15. No, I had it made to order. 16. There's something I want to speak to you about. When could I see you? 17. I am generally at home on Sunday afternoons, come then. 18. Even if a gale does blow, it's absurd to think that this house can be blown over. 19. I wonder where the kitten has gone. I haven't seen it for two or three days. 20. If it were only rain it wouldn't matter so much, but with this strong wind the roof is leaking.



## EXERCISE 56.

### Adjectives. Study 187—191.

*hashi* : bridge.

(o) *bā-san* : old woman ; grand-mother.

(o) *jii-san* : old man ; grandfather.

*shōsetsū* : a novel.

*gōjō na* : obstinate.

*honto no* : true.

*semai* : narrow ; small.

*shita* : under ; below.

*ikura de mo* : any amount whatever.

1. *Nichiyō ni nii-san to issho ni oji san no uchi e asobi ni itte, omoshirokatta* (B).  
 2. *Kono shōsetsū wa taihen omoshiroi to omoimasu, mada o yomi ni nara-nakereba kashite agemashō* (C). 3. *Kono ko-neko wa dore no ko desu ka?* (C). 4. *Asūko ni iru shiroi no no ko desu* (C). 5. *Nashi no oishii no ga arimasu ka?* (C). 6. *Hashi no shita ni neko no shinda no ga ita* (B). 7. *Shimbun no furui no ga gozaimashitara, go-roku-mai kudasaimasen ka?* (D). 8. *Ikura de mo o mochi nasai* (C). 9. *Tonari no wagamama na, gōjō na musume ga kono-goro miemasen ga, doko e itta no deshō?* (C). 10. *Ammari wagamama de shiyō ga nai kara, ano ko no sensei no uchi e azuketa sō desu* (C). 11. *Mukai no o bā-san wa shōjiki na, shinsetsū na hito da* (B). 12. *Asūko no o jii-san wa honto ni jōbu na, ōkii hito desu* (C). 13. *Kō iu semai kurai heya wa iya desu, hoka no wo sagashimashō* (C). 14. *Ammari takai jōtō no bōshi wo katte wa ike-nai* (A). 15. *Yamada San no uchi ni wa iro-iro no seiyō no shōsetsū ga arimasu* (C). 16. *Jirō wa nashi no aoi no wo tabete onaka wo waruku shita no desu* (C). 17. *Ano onna no hito wa itsu de mo kuroi ōki na bōshi wo kabutte imasu* (C). 18. *Tamago no atarashii ōki na no wo itsutsu kudasai* (C). 19. *Ima ōki na no ga gozaimasen* (D). 20. *Ja, shikata ga nai kara, chiisai no wo katte ikimashō* (C). 21. *Empitsu no katai no wo katte o-ide* (A). 22. *Nani ka yasashii omoshiroi Ei-go no shōsetsū wo kashite kudasaimasen ka?* (D). 23. *Sore de wa, kore wo yonde goran nasai, kitto omoshiroi deshō* (C). 24. *Hana-ko San wa wakai kirei na hito desu* (C). 25. *Kono-goro Hana-ko San kara o tegami ga kimashita ka?* (C).

1. On Sunday I went with my brother to my uncle's house, and I enjoyed myself very much. 2. I find this novel is very interesting, if you haven't read it yet I'll lend it to you. 3. Which is the mother of this kitten? (*lit.* Of which is this kitten the child?). 4. That white one over there (*lit.* It is the child of that white one). 5. Have you got any nice pears? 6. There was a dead cat under the bridge. 7. If you have any old newspapers, could you let me have a few? 8. Take as many as you want. 9. I haven't seen my neighbour's self-willed, obstinate girl lately, I wonder where she's gone to? 10. She is so self-willed that I hear they have sent her to live with her teacher. 11. The old lady across the way is an honest, kind person. 12. The old man (who lives) over there is a very healthy, big man. 13. I don't like a small, dark room like this, I'll look for another one. 14. Don't buy a too expensive and high-class hat. 15. Mr Yamada has a lot of foreign novels (in his house). 16. Jirō ate some pears that were not ripe, and (the result is that) he's got a stomach-ache. 17. That woman always wears a big black hat. 18. Give me five large fresh eggs. 19. I have no large ones now. 20. Well, it can't be helped, I'll take some small ones. 21. Go and buy a pencil, a hard one. 22. Would you please lend me an English novel? I'd like it to be easy and amusing. 23. Well, try this one, I'm certain you'll find it amusing. 24. Miss Hana-ko is young and pretty. 25. Have you had a letter from Miss Hana-ko lately?

## EXERCISE 57.

True adjectives. Study **192—199**. The examples in this Exercise refer especially to those points not previously studied.

*byō-nin* : sick person ; patient.

*gaikoku* : foreign countries.

*karui* : light ; not heavy.

*mittomonai* : offensive to the sight ; improper.

*omoi* : heavy.

*sabishii* : lonely.

*sūkunai* : little (in quantity) ; few.

*kawaru* : to change.

*umu* : to give birth to ; (of an egg) to lay.

*jibun* : self ; oneself.

*aida* : between ; while ; during.

*naka* : inside ; among.

1. *Brown San wa Nihon-go ga o jōzu desū ka ?* (C). 2. *Hai, sei-yō-jin no naka de ano kata gurai hanaseru kata wa sūkunō gozaimasū* (D). 3. *Ani ga Rondon e itta koro wa Igrisū ni iru Nihon-jin wa zuibun sūkunakattarō* (B). 4. *Ima wa gaikoku ni benkyō ni iku hito ga sūkunaku nai* (B). 5. *Kō shitara mittomonō gozaimasū ka ?* (D). 6. *Iie, mittomonaku nai* (B). 7. *O kā-san ga o rusu no aida wa sabishikatta deshō ?* (C). 8. *E, sabishiū gozaimashita ; tabi-tabi tonari no Sonoe San ni uchi e kite moraimashita* (C). 9. *Chōkichi wa jibun de nimotsū wo motte ikimashita ka ?* (C). 10. *E, sō desū ; sō omoku nakatta deshō* (C). 11. *Kono nimotsū wa ōkii keredomo omoi koto wa nai* (B). 12. *Go byō-nin wa ikaga de gozaimasū ka ?* (D). 13. *Arigatō gozaimasū, yokattari warukattari shite, ummari kawarimasen* (D). 14. *Kono tori no umu tamago wa akakattari, shirokattari suru* (B). 15. *Nimotsū ga karukatta kara, kuruma ni nora-nai de sūteishon kara aruite kita* (B). 16. *Suzuki no kuru no wa osokattari hayakattari shite komaru* (B). 17. *Ano inu wa kitanō gozaimasū kara, o kamai nasara-nai de kudasai* (D). 18. *Smith San ga konaida kuni e okutta geta wa san-yen gurai deshō ka ?* (C). 19. *Sō takaku nakatta deshō* (C). 20. *Sengetsū made ita heya wa semaku nakatta no desū ga, ano uchi ni byō-nin ga dekimashita kara, yameta no desū* (C). 21. *Sono kaban ga omokereba nii-san ni motte itte morai nasai* (A). 22. *Karū gozaimasū kara, jibun de motte ikaremasū* (D).

1. Does Mr Brown speak Japanese well ? 2. Yes, there are very few foreigners who can speak Japanese as well as he can. 3. There were probably very few Japanese in England at the time when my brother was in London. 4. Those who go to study abroad are no longer a few (i.e. quite a lot). 5. If I do this would it be considered improper ? 6. No, that would be quite all right. 7. I suppose you felt very lonely while your mother was away. 8. Yes, I did feel lonely. I often asked my neighbour Miss Sonoe to come and keep me company. 9. Did Chōkichi carry the bundle himself ? 10. Yes, I don't think it was very heavy. 11. This parcel is big, but it is not heavy. 12. How is the patient ? 13. Thanks, he's sometimes better and sometimes worse, (on the whole) there's not much change. 14. This hen sometimes lays brown eggs and sometimes white. 15. As the bag was not heavy I didn't take a rikisha, but I walked here from the station. 16. I am much inconvenienced by Suzuki's coming sometimes late and sometimes early. 17. That's a dirty dog, leave it alone. 18. I wonder if the clogs Mr Smith sent home the other day cost him about three yen ? 19. I don't think they were as dear as that. 20. The room I had until the end of last month was not a small one, but there was a sick person in the house, so I gave it up. 21. If that bag is too heavy for you, ask your brother to carry it. 22. It's not heavy, I can carry it myself.



## EXERCISE 58.

### True adjectives. Study 200—211.

(o) *yu* : hot water.  
*hidoi* : cruel ; violent.  
*mazui* : of insipid or bad taste.  
*ōi* : (too) many ; (too) much.  
*tsumetai* : cold.  
*anna* ; *sonna* : that kind of.  
*konna* : this kind of.

*ore'ru* (intr.) : to break ; be able to break.  
*wakasū* (trans.) : to boil.  
*jiki* (*ni*) : immediately ; soon.  
*waza-waza* : purposely ; expressly.  
*ni chigai nai* : at the end of a sentence  
 expresses certainty.

1. *Ano mise no mono wa yasūkutte shina ga yō gozaimasū* (D). 2. *Kono jibiki wa chiisakutte kotoba ga ōi* (B). 3. *Ano hito ga kaku shōsetsū wa mijikakutte omoshiroi desū* (C). 4. *Kono empitsū wa katakutte jiki ni oreru* (B). 5. *Konna ni kaze ga hidokutte wa totemo fune ga demasūmai* (C). 6. *Anmari shio ga ōkutchu mazuku narimasū* (C). 7. *Sonna ni muzukashikutchu ano hito wa yome-nai* (B). 8. *Watashi ga Nihon e kita toki ni wa Yokohama ni iru Igrisū-jin wa ima no yō ni ōku arimasen deshita* (C). 9. *Mizu de sentaku suru no wa tsumetai deshō kara, o yu wo wakashite agemashō* (C). 10. *Kono hon wo kaeshi ni waza-waza o-ide nas'ita no desū ka ? Sonna ni isoide o kaeshi ni nara-nakutte mo ii no deshita* (C). 11. *Ano tsūkue wa ikura ?* (B). 12. *Sonna ni takakutte wa totemo kae-nai* (B). 13. *Suzuki San no yō na bōshi ga hoshikatta n' desū ga, arimasen deshita kara, konna no wo katta no desū* (C). 14. *Anna nashi wa mazui ni chigai arimasen* (C). 15. *Dō shite o tō-san ni shikarareta no de gozaimasū ka ?* (D). 16. *'Isogashii kara, sugu kaette ki nasai' to itte tegami ga kita no desū ga, sugu ni ko-nakatta no ga warui no deshita* (C). 17. *Tegami ga kita toki sugu kaette ko-nakatta no ga waru-katta no deshō* (C). 18. *Anata mo watashi no yō na tsūkue ga hoshii no deshītara, issho ni chūmon shite ageru n' deshita* (C). 19. *Mō atama ga itaku nai no nara, okite hataraku hazu da* (A). 20. *Tarō ga yonde iru hon wa sō muzukashii no ja nakarō* (B). 21. *Tanaka San wa honto ni atama ga itai n' ja nakatta-deshō ga, watashi ni aitaku nai kara, anna koto wo itta no deshō* (C).

1. The things of that shop are cheap and of good quality. 2. This dictionary is small but it has a lot of words. 3. The novels that man writes are short but they are interesting. 4. This pencil is hard but it is very fragile. 5. I think it's impossible that the boat should leave with this strong wind blowing. 6. If you put in too much salt it won't taste nice. 7. If it's as difficult as that, he won't be able to read it. 8. When I arrived in Japan there weren't as many English people in Yokohama as there are now. 9. I think you'll find it cold doing your washing in cold water, let me heat some water for you. 10. Did you come expressly to return this book ? There was no need to be in such a hurry about it. 11. How much is that desk ? 12. If it's as dear as that, I can't possibly buy it. 13. I wanted a hat like Mrs Suzuki's, but as I couldn't find one I bought this one. 14. Those pears are not nice, I feel sure. 15. Why did your father scold you ? 16. My father wrote to me to come back immediately as he was busy, and I did wrong in not coming back soon. 17. I suppose I did wrong in not returning as soon as I received the letter. 18. If I had known that you wanted a desk like mine I would have given an order for two. 19. If your head no longer aches you ought to be up and working. 20. The book Tarō is reading is probably not very difficult. 21. I don't suppose Mr Tanaka really had a headache, he said that, merely because he didn't want to see me.

## EXERCISE 59.

Quasi-adjectives in *Na* or *No*. Study 212—226.

*fuyu* : winter.

*kinu* : silk.

*attakai* ; *attaka na* : warm.

*hade na* : bright ; gay.

*suzushii* : cool.

*hajime'ru* (trans.) : to begin.

*kosu* : to change one's abode.

*kurasu* : to pass the time ; live.

*naru* : to bear fruit.

*goku* : very.

*toki-doki* : now and then ; occasionally.

1. *Murasaki de nai empitsū ga attara kashite kudasai* (C). 2. *Kondo koshita uchi wa shizuka de ii tokoro desū ga, kai-mono ni wa benri de nai tokoro desū* (C). 3. *Ano oku-san wa wakai no desū ga, hade de nai kimono wo kite imasū* (C). 4. *Ano kata ga sūki de nai mono wa age-nai hō ga ii deshō* (C). 5. *Jochū ga fu-shōjiki de dōmo komarinasū ; uchi e kaesō ka to omoimasū* (C). 6. *Tonari no kodomo ni fu-shinsetsū na koto wo shite wa ike-nai* (A). 7. *Ano ko wa jōbu na yō na kao wo shite iru keredomo, toki-doki byōki ni naru* (B). 8. *Kono kimono wa watashi ni wa sūkoshi hade na yō de gozaimasū kara, imōto ni yarimashō* (D). 9. *Kono kire wa chotto mireba kinu no yō desū ga, honto no kinu ja nai no desū* (C). 10. *Hashi no soba no kudamono-ya wa kono-goro hajimeta mise da* (B). 11. *Uchi no mae no nashi ga kotoshi wa takusan narimashita* (C). 12. *Chichi wa karada ga yowai desū kara, natsū wa suzushii tokoro e, fuyu wa attaka na tokoro e itte kurashimasū* (C). 13. *Shiro no kinu-ito to hari wo ip-pon motte kite kudasai* (C). 14. *Goku yawaraka na, jōtō no empitsū wo ni-hon kudasai* (C). 15. *Yamada San wa sō Ei-go ga heta ja nai hito desū ga, jibun de wa hanase-nai to itte imasū* (C). 16. *Ammari jōtō de nai kami wo katte ki nasai* (A). 17. *Yoku hataraitte mo fu-shōjiki na gejo de wa iya desū* (C). 18. *Anata ni ageyō to omotte waza-waza katte kita no desū* (C). 19. *Sore ga sūki de nakereba hoka no wo o kai nasai* (B). 20. *Jama da kara, daiji de nai tegami wa sūtete shimau hō ga yokarō* (B). 21. *Kimi-ko wa yasashii yō na musume desū ga, honto wa zuitun gōjō na ko desū* (C).

1. If you have a pencil which is not violet, please lend it to me. 2. The house I'm in now is in a very quiet locality, but it is a very inconvenient place for shopping. 3. That lady is still young but she wears clothes which are not gay. 4. You'd better not give that person a thing which he does not like. 5. I'm greatly troubled because my servant is dishonest, I'm thinking of discharging her. 6. Don't behave unkindly to the children next door. 7. That child has a healthy appearance, but he gets ill every now and then. 8. This dress seems too showy for me, so I'll give it to my younger sister. 9. At first sight this stuff looks like silk. But in reality it's not silk. 10. The fruit-store near the bridge is a shop which was opened quite recently. 11. The pear-tree in front of the house bore a lot of fruit this year. 12. My father is weak, so he goes to a cool place in summer and a warm place in winter. 13. Bring me some white silk thread and a needle. 14. I want two, very soft pencils of good quality. 15. Mr Yamada doesn't speak English so very badly, but he himself says he cannot speak it. 16. Go and buy some paper, it needn't be of the best quality. 17. I don't like a dishonest servant even if she works very hard. 18. I bought this especially to give to you. 19. If you don't like that one buy another one. 20. You had better throw away all the unimportant letters, they are in the way. 21. To look at her, Kimi-ko seems a very gentle girl, but in reality she is a most obstinate child.



## EXERCISE 60.

### Adjectival phrases. Study 227—232.

*gyōgi* : behaviour.  
*kenka* : quarrel.  
*kigen* : temper ; feeling.  
*kyōdai* : brothers and sisters.  
*mimi* : ear.  
*moto* : origin.

*oya* : parents.  
*naka* : the relation between two persons.  
*tsugō* : convenience.  
*un* : luck.  
*kawaisō na* : exciting pity.  
*wakare'ru* : to be separated from.

1. *Watakūshi no kuni wa ame no ōi tokoro de gozaimasū* (D). 2. *Ichido Yokohama e itte mitai to omoimasū kara, itsū ka go tsugō no ii toki ni tsurete itte kudasai* (C). 3. *O-bā-san wa kigen no ii hito desū* (C). 4. *Hana-ko to Mitsū-ko wa taihen naka no ii kyōdai de gozaimasū* (D). 5. *Ano ko wa yottsū no toshi ni oya ni wakareta, un no warui, kawaisō na ko desū* (C). 6. *Kai-mono ni benri no ii tokoro e koshūtō gozaimasū* (D). 7. *Tonari no musūme wa taisō gyōgi ga ii* (B). 8. *Yamada San ga raigetsū Kōbe e o-ide nasaru sō desū kara, watashi mo issho ni ikareru to taihen tsugō ga ii to omoimasū* (C). 9. *Tanabe sensei wa zuibun kigen ga warukatta ga, kono-goro naotta* (B). 10. *Ano kyōdai wa taisō naka ga yō gozaimashita ga, oya ga nakunatte kara, kenka bakari shite orimasū* (D). 11. *Ani wa imōto to wa naka ga yō gozaimasū ga, otōto ga kirai de gozaimasū* (D). 12. *Tomodachi ga kinō 'Kamakura e ikō' to itta ga, tsugō ga warukutte ikare-nakatta* (B). 13. *Tarō to Jirō wa moto wa yoku kenka wo shite ita ga, ima wa naka yoku kurashite iru* (B). 14. *O-jii-san wa mimi ga tōku narimashita* (C). 15. *Uchi no jochū wa kigen yoku shigoto wo shimasū* (C). 16. *Kono hen wa jū-ichi-gatsū wa kaze ga ōi toki da* (B). 17. *Watashi no kuni wa Nihon de ichiban ame no sūkunai tokoro desū* (C). 18. *Ano musūme wa oya mo kyōdai mo nakutte kawaisō desū* (C). 19. *Ashita omae ga Tōkyō e itte kureru to taihen tsugō ga ii* (A). 20. *Suzuki San wa Mizuno San to naka ga warū gozaimashita ga, mō yoku natta ka mo shiremasen* (D).

1. My native province is a rainy place. 2. I'd like to see Yokohama once, so when it's convenient to you please be so kind as to take me. 3. Grandmother is a very good-tempered person. 4. Hana-ko and her sister Mitsu-ko are very fond of each other. 5. That child is very unlucky and worthy of pity, he lost his parents when he was four. 6. I want to change to a more convenient place for shopping. 7. The girl from next door is very well behaved. 8. They say Mr Yamada is going to Kōbe next month, it would be very convenient for me if I could go with him. 9. Our teacher Mr Tanabe was very bad-tempered, but lately he has improved. 10. Those brothers used to live on very good terms with each other, but now they've lost their parents, they do nothing but quarrel. 11. My elder brother is very fond of my little sister, but he doesn't like my younger brother. 12. My friend invited me yesterday to go to Kamakura, but it was inconvenient and I couldn't go. 13. Formerly Tarō and Jirō were always quarrelling ; now, however, they are on good terms with each other. 14. My grandfather is now hard of hearing. 15. Our servant is always working and always in a good temper (*lit.* works good-temperedly). 16. In this part of the country the windy season is in November. 17. My native province is the least rainy part of Japan. 18. That girl is to be pitied, she has neither parents nor brothers nor sisters. 19. It would be very convenient for me if you were to go to Tōkyō tomorrow. 20. Mr Suzuki and Mr Mizuno used to be on bad terms with each other, but I believe they have made it up.

## EXERCISE 61.

Verbs used as adjectives. Study 233—235.

*doku* : poison.

*keisatsu* : police.

*urayamashii* : envious.

*fūtoru* : to become fat.

*fūtotta* : fat ; stout.

*yase'ru* : to become thin.

*yaseta* : thin.

*haku* : to put on ; wear ; (refers to legs or feet, as boots, trousers).

*hirou* : to pick up.

*dan-dan* : little by little.

1. *Kore wa doku no aru sakana da* (B). 2. *Kono kutsu wa furuku natte hake-naku natta* (B). 3. *Hachi-gatsu ryokō shiyō to omoimashita ga, byō-nin ga dekite, ikare-naku natte shimaimashita* (C). 4. *Kawata San wa 'karada ga yowakutte, mise wo yame-nakereba nara-naku natta' to itte tegami wo yokoshimashita* (C). 5. *Ei-go ga hanaseru ni-jū-go gurai no otoko wo hitori yatoitai no desu* (C). 6. *Asuko de shimbun wo yonde iru fūtotta hito ga Nakamura San da* (B). 7. *Watashi wa yaseta hito ga urayamashii* (B). 8. *Kono sakana wa doku ga gozaimasu* (D). 9. *Ano hito wa fūtotte iru yō ni mieru* (B). 10. *Nihon de mo yōfuku wo kiru hito ga dan-dan ōku natte kimashita* (C). 11. *Ano hito no byōki wa naora-nai byōki da sō desu* (C). 12. *Suzuki San no oku-san wa ano shiroi yōfuku wo kita hito de gozaimasu* (D). 13. *Hashi no ue ni tatte iru hito wa watashi no gakkō no sensei desu* (C). 14. *Yūbe hirotta tokei wo keisatsu e todokete o-ide nasai* (B). 15. *Tarō ni iwa-nakereba nara-nai koto ga aru kara, koko e kuru yō ni itte o kure* (A). 16. *O tō-san no tonari ni koshi-hakete iru hito wa o tō-san to onaji mise ni iru hito deshō* (C). 17. *Inaka ni ita haha ga nakunatte, watashi wa kanai to issho ni kaera-nakereba nara-nai koto ni narimashita* (C). 18. *Konaida jochū ga hirotta yubi-wa wa otoshita hito ga wakatta sō de gozaimasu* (D). 19. *Sonna furukutte hake-nai kutsu wa sūtete o shimai nasai* (A). 20. *Anata no o uchi de Ei-go no shimbun wo o yomi nasaru kata wa donata de gozaimasu ka?* (D). 21. *Amerika ni go-nen bakari ite kita ani ga yomu no desu* (C). 22. *Kono bōshi mo mō kabure-naku natta kara, atarashii no wo hitotsu kawa-nakereba nara-naku natta* (B).

1. This is a poisonous fish. 2. These boots are old, I can no longer wear them. 3. I thought of going travelling in August, but I was prevented from doing so by somebody falling ill at home. 4. Mr Kawata writes saying that he's very weak and has found himself obliged to discontinue going to the office. 5. I wish to engage a young man about twenty-five years old who can speak English. 6. That stout man over there reading the newspaper is Mr Nakamura. 7. I envy thin men. 8. This fish is poisonous. 9. That man looks stout. 10. In Japan also, people who wear foreign clothes are gradually increasing in number. 11. I hear that his illness is incurable. 12. Mrs Suzuki is the lady wearing that white foreign dress. 13. The man standing on the bridge is a teacher at my school. 14. Go and hand over to the police, the watch you found last night. 15. Go and tell Tarō to come here, there's something I must tell him. 16. The man sitting next to my father is in the same office as he is. 17. My mother who was living in the country has died, and so it has become necessary for my wife and myself to go home. 18. It seems they have found the owner of the ring my servant picked up the other day. 19. Throw away boots like that which are so old you can no longer wear them. 20. Who is it in your house who reads the English newspapers? 21. My elder brother who was five years in America. 22. I can no longer wear this hat, so I must buy a new one.



## EXERCISE 62.

Compound and derivative adjectives. Study 236--245.

*ie* : house.

*ishi* : stone.

*wake* : reason ; cause.

*erabu* ; *eramu* : to choose.

*kūsai* : malodorous.

1. *Kono sakana wa kūsai kara, tabete wa ike-nai* (A). 2. *Uchi no jochū wa Tōkyō ni kite san-nen ni naru keredomo mada inaka-kūsai* (B). 3. *Yamada San no ji wa taisō yomi-ii ji de gozaimasū* (D). 4. *Ano saka wa ishi ga atte, taihen aruki-nikui* (B). 5. *Tonari no Kanekichi San wa karada wa okii keredomo kodomorashii kao wo shite iru* (B). 6. *Oda San wa zuibun nagaku Igirisū ni ita no desū ga, Ei-go ga hanase-nai-rashii desū* (C). 7. *Watashi no oji wa dō iu wake deshō, taisō wasureppoku narimashita* (C). 8. *Ashita wa tenki ni nari-sō da* (B). 9. *Ano kodomo wa rikō-sō na kao da ga, karada ga yowa-sō da* (B). 10. *Kono uchi kara yosa-sō na no wo erande kudasai* (C). 11. *Katō San no tokoro ni wa ano jibiki wa nasa-sō desū kara, kari ni itte mo dame deshō* (C). 12. *Umi-tate no tamago wo yottsū kudasai* (C). 13. *Ano hito wa byōki de gakkō wo yameru no da to itte ita ga, nani ka hoka ni wake ga ari-sō da* (B). 14. *Kono ie wa seiyō-kūsai ie desū ne?* (C). 15. *Hana-ko San no uchi wa wakari-nikū gozaimasū kara, go issho ni itte agemashō* (D). 16. *Kondo kita jochū wa taisō jōbu-sō desū* (C). 17. *Anna okorippoi hito wa mezurashiū gozaimasū* (D). 18. *Inaka wa fuben de gozaimasū ga, tori-tate no aomono ga taberareru no ga yō gozaimasū* (D). 19. *Watashi wa kono-goro wasureppoku natte komatta* (B). 20. *Tegami wa yasashii kotoba de wakari-yoku kaite kudasai* (C). 21. *Kono byōki wa paori-nikū gozaimasū* (D). 22. *Kono himo wa kire-yasui kara, hoka no motto jōbu na no wo motte kite kudasai* (C). 23. *Ano hon-ya ni wa seiyō no hon wa nasa-sō da* (B).

1. Don't eat this fish, it smells bad. 2. It is now three years since my servant came to Tōkyō, but her appearance is still that of a country girl. 3. Mr Yamada's writing is very easy to read. 4. That hill is very stony, walking there is very difficult. 5. Master Kanekichi from next door is very big, nevertheless he has got a very childish face. 6. Mr Oda was in England a good many years, but he doesn't seem to be able to speak English. 7. My uncle for some reason or other is always forgetting things now. 8. I believe it'll turn out fine tomorrow. 9. That child has an intelligent face but he seems weak. 10. Choose the one you like best from among these (*lit.* the one which is probably best). 11. I think it likely that Mr Katō has not got that dictionary, so it would be useless to go and ask him to lend it to you. 12. Please give me four new-laid eggs. 13. He says he is going to leave school on account of his health, but there's probably some other reason. 14. This house in some of its details is built in European style. 15. Miss Hana-ko's house is rather difficult to find, may I accompany you there? 16. The servant who arrived recently seems to be a very healthy person. 17. Persons as bad-tempered as that man are scarce. 18. The country is inconvenient (in many ways), but you have at least the advantage of being able to eat fresh vegetables. 19. I've become so absent-minded lately, I really don't know what to do. 20. Please write the letter using simple words so that it can be easily understood. 21. This is an illness from which one seldom recovers (completely). 22. This cord is too weak (easily broken), please bring me a stronger one. 23. There are probably no foreign books at that bookseller's.

## EXERCISE 63.

Comparison of adjectives. Study 246—252.

*omocha* : toy.

*sakura* : cherry-tree.

*shūkan* : week.

*taku* : house.

*hai* : aux. num. for glassfuls, cupfuls, etc.

*hae'ru* : to grow ; spring up.

*kare'ru* : to wither ; die (of plants).

*ijō* : more than.

*sendatte* : the other day.

*yokei* : more.

1. *Kono yama ni wa moto wa motto ki ga haete ita no desū ga, dan-dan karete, sūkunaku natta no desū* (C). 2. *Kono hon wo yakushūte shimau made ni wa mō ni-shūkan kakarimasū* (C). 3. *Anmari nodo ga kawaita kara, mō ip-pai o cha wo o kure* (A). 4. *Sendatte katta satō ga mada aru ka?* (A). 5. *Mō kyō wa kudamono wo tabete wa ikemasen* (A). 6. *O cha wa mō nai ka?* (A). 7. *Mada tsubo ni gozaimasū* (D). 8. *Kisha de iku no to fune de iku no to dotchi ga yokei o kane ga kakarimasū ka?* (C). 9. *Fune no hō ga yokei kakarimasū* (C). 10. *Yamada San no o taku ni wa kono kōen yori yokei sakura no ki ga gozaimasū* (D). 11. *Ano ginkō ga dekite kara san-jū-nen ijō ni naru* (B). 12. *Kono shiroyi tori wa ano ōki na tori yori yokei tamago wo umu* (B). 13. *Watashi no gakkō ni wa Shina-jin ga go-jū-nin ijō orimasū* (C). 14. *Hana-ko wa Kinu-ko yori omocha ni wa takusan motte iru deshō* (C). 15. *Mitsuo ni motto chichi wo o yari nasai* (A). 16. *Kono kami wo mō sam-byaku-mai motte kite kuremasen ka?* (C). 17. *San-sen no kittle wa mada arimasū kara, kawa-nai de ii desū* (C). 18. *Shio ga mō gozaimasen kara katte mairimashō* (D). 19. *Akai empitsū ga mada aru ka?* (A). 20. *Mada ip-pon gozaimasū* (D). 21. *Ano bin wa kore yori yokei hairu deshō* (C). 22. *Go-nin kuru hito ga aru no da kara, isu wo mō fūtatsu motte kite kure* (A). 23. *Kono heya e wa ni-hyaku-nin yori yokei wa haire-nai darō to omou* (B). 24. *Isogashikutte shiyō ga nai kara, mō hitori jochū wo yatou koto ni shiyō* (B). 25. *Tarō wa onaka ga warui no desū kara, nashi wo hitotsū yori yokei yara-nai de kudasai* (C). 26. *Satō wo mō fūta-saji irete o kure* (A).

1. Formerly there used to be a lot of trees growing on this mountain, however, little by little they have died, and there are only a few left. 2. It'll take me two weeks more to finish translating this book. 3. I'm so thirsty, bring me another (one more) cup of tea. 4. Is there any of the sugar you bought the other day left? 5. You mustn't eat any more fruit today. 6. Is there no more tea? 7. There's some in the jar. 8. Which costs more, to go by train or by boat? 9. By boat costs more. 10. There are more cherry-trees in Mr Yamada's place than there are in this park. 11. It is more than thirty years since that bank was established. 12. This white hen lays more eggs than that big one. 13. There are more than fifty Chinese scholars at my school. 14. I think Hana-ko has more toys than Kinu-ko. 15. Give Mitsuo some more milk. 16. Bring me three hundred sheets more of this paper. 17. You needn't buy any more three-sen stamps, I have some still. 18. I'll go and buy some more salt, there's none left. 19. Have you got any more red pencils? 20. I've got one more. 21. I think that bottle holds more than this. 22. There are five people coming, so go and fetch two chairs more. 23. I don't think more than two hundred people can get into this room. 24. I am so busy that I shall engage another servant. 25. Please don't give Tarō more than one pear, his stomach is out of order. 26. Put in two more spoonfuls of sugar.



## EXERCISE 64.

Comparison of adjectives. Study 253—259.

*itoko* : cousin.  
*kazu* : number.  
*kin* : pound (lb.).  
*nedan* : price.  
*sewa* : assistance.  
*shoku-nin* : artisan.

*hakurai no* : foreign-made.  
*tari'ru* : to be enough ; sufficient.  
*hodo* : approximate quantity ; word  
 used in comparisons.  
*zutto* : very much.

1. *Satō wa ik-kin de wa tari-nai, ni-kin katte kite o kure* (A). 2. *Koko kara sūteishon made densha de ikeba san-jip-pun kakarimasūmai* (C). 3. *Kono kawa no fūkasa wa has-shaku wa nai darō* (B). 4. *Ano tsūkue wa chūmon shite koshi-raesashita no desū ga, roku-jū-yen tara-zu de dekimashita* (C). 5. *Uchi no shoku-nin no kazu wa ano mise yori sūkunai desū* (C). 6. *Itoko wa watakūshi yori fūtatsū ue de gozaimasū ga, watakūshi yori wakaku miemasū* (D). 7. *Haruo San wa omae yori toshi ga shita desū kara, iro-iro sewa wo shite yara-nakereba ikemasen* (A). 8. *Ano hito wa tabun watashi yori mitsū gurai shita deshō* (C). 9. *Watashi wa Yamada San hodo Ei-go ga jōzu de wa arimasen* (C). 10. *Tarō kara mireba Gorō San wa zutto karada ga ōkii* (B). 11. *Kono bōshi wa hakurai no to onaji gurai yoku dekite iru* (B). 12. *Ano empitsū wa hakurai to onaji gurai no nedan desū ga, hakurai hodo shina ga yoku arimasen* (C). 13. *Ani to ane wa onaji gurai Ei-go ga hanasemasū* (C). 14. *Kōbe yori tōi tokoro e wa ika-nai hō ga yokarō* (B). 15. *Kikeba kiku hodo kawaisō na musūme da* (B). 16. *Kyōto wa Nara hodo shizuka na tokoro ja arimasen* (C). 17. *Satō San wa mi-tsūki tara-zu de ano shōsetsū wo yakushite shimatta sō da* (B). 18. *Ano koppu to kono koppu wa ōkisa wa onaji gurai desū ga, nedan wa taihen chigaimasū* (C). 19. *Kono himo wa naga-sugimashō ka?* (C). 20. *Iie, nagakereba nagai hodo ii no desū* (C). 21. *Kono asobi wa hito ga ōkereba ōi hodo omoshiroi no de gozaimasū* (D). 22. *Imōto wa watashi yori hitotsū shika shita ja arimasen* (C). 23. *Kyōnen wa kotoshi hodo atsuku nakatta to omoimasū ga, dō deshō?* (C).

1. One pound of sugar will not be enough, buy two pounds. 2. I think it takes less than thirty minutes from here to the station by tram-car. 3. I think this river is less than eight feet deep. 4. I had that desk made to order, it cost less than sixty yen. 5. We employ less men than they do at that factory. 6. My cousin is two years older than I but he looks younger. 7. Haruo is younger than you, so you must take care of him (and do what is necessary). 8. I dare say that man is about three years younger than I. 9. I can't speak English as well as Mr Yamada. 10. Compared to Tarō, Master Gorō is a very big boy. 11. This hat is as well made as a foreign-made one. 12. That pencil is the same price as a foreign-made one, but the quality is not as good. 13. My elder sister speaks English just as well as my elder brother does. 14. You had better not go further than Kōbe. 15. The more I hear about that poor girl the more I think she's to be pitied. 16. Kyōto is not such a quiet place as Nara. 17. They say that Mr Satō translated that novel in less than three months. 18. These two tumblers are the same size, but the prices are very different. 19. Will this string be too long? 20. No, the longer the better. 21. The more people there are who play at this game, the more amusing it is. 22. My sister is only one year younger than I. 23. I believe last year was not as hot as this, however, I may be wrong.

## EXERCISE 65.

Superlative. Study 260—270.

*jitsū* : fact.

*kane-mochi* : a rich man.

*makoto* : truth.

*mura* : village.

*nare'ru* : to become accustomed.

*yohodo* ; *yoppodo* : very.

1. *Kore wa Nihon ichi no nagai kawa de gozaimasū* (D). 2. *Kyōto ichi no yado-ya wa doko deshō?* (C). 3. *Ano kata no o tō-san wa kono machi-jū de no o isha de gozaimashita* (D). 4. *Watashi no mura de no kane-mochi wa Tamura to iu hito desū* (C). 5. *Watashi no kyōdai no uchi de yasete iru no wa ani desū* (C). 6. *Dono tori ga yokei tamago wo umimasū ka?* (C). 7. *Anō hito no tegami wa nakanaka yomi-nikui kara, yoppodo nareta hito de nai to wakara-nai* (B). 8. *Tsūkue wo hitotsū koshiraete moraitai, naru-take yasuku koshiraete kudasai* (C). 9. *Iro-iro shigoto ga aru kara, dekiru dake hayaku kaette kuru tsumori da* (B). 10. *Yamada San no o-jō-san-tachi wa makoto ni gyōgi ga yō gozaimasū* (D). 11. *Kyō wa baka ni atsui ne* (B). 12. *Koyama San ga Hakone de kaita e wa jitsū ni yoku dekite iru* (B). 13. *Tarō wa ammari gakkō e iku no ga sūki ja nai yō da* (B). 14. *Ō-kaze de taoreta no wa daibu ōki na ki da* (B). 15. *Uchi no musuko wa kanari muzukashii Ei-go no hon wo yomu yō ni narimashita* (C). 16. *Kutsu wo chūmon shitai no desū ga, naru-take jōbu ni koshiraete moraitai desū* (C). 17. *Kono mise wa Tōkyō ichi no kutsu-ya da* (B). 18. *Kyōdai-jū de ano musume ga ichiban rikō da to minna itte iru* (B). 19. *Kono hon no uchi de sūki na no ga attara agemasū kara, o mochi nasai* (C). 20. *Anata no ji wa kono-goro yohodo yomi-yoku natte kimashita* (C). 21. *Kono himo wa goku jōbu de gozaimasū* (D). 22. *Tenki ga warui kara, sakana ga baka ni takai* (B). 23. *Yamada San ga kondo koshita tokoro wa jitsū ni shizuka de ii tokoro desū* (C). 24. *Sensei ga kigen ga warukutte okotte bakari ita ga, kono-goro daibu naotta yō da* (B). 25. *Kyō wa byō-nin ga taisō warū gozaimasū kara, dekiru dake hayaku o-ide kudasai* (D).

1. This is the longest river in Japan. 2. Which is the best inn in Kyōto? 3. That gentleman's father was the best doctor in the town. 4. The richest man in my village is a man called Tamura. 5. The thinnest of us all, brothers and sisters, is my eldest brother. 6. Which of these hens lays most eggs? 7. that man's letters are very difficult to read, only those who are thoroughly accustomed to his handwriting can make them out. 8. I want to have a desk made, please make it as cheap as possible. 9. As I have a lot to do, I intend to come back as soon as possible. 10. The Misses Yamada are really very well-behaved young ladies. 11. It's awfully hot today, isn't it? 12. The picture which Mr Koyama painted at Hakone is very well done. 13. Tarō doesn't seem to care very much for school. 14. The tree that was blown down by the wind was rather a big one. 15. My son is now able to read fairly difficult books in English. 16. I want to have some boots made, and I wish them made as strong as possible. 17. This is the best bootmaker in Tōkyō. 18. Everybody says that that girl is the cleverest of all her brothers and sisters. 19. If there's any book among these you care for I'll give it to you. 20. Your handwriting has improved very much lately. 21. This cord is very strong. 22. As the weather is bad, fish is very dear. 23. The house that Mr Yamada has just moved to is in a very quiet neighbourhood. 24. Our master used always to be in a bad temper, however, his temper seems to have improved a good deal lately. 25. The patient is much worse today so please come as soon as possible.



## EXERCISE 66.

Cardinal numbers. Study 271—280.

*abura* : oil.

*fūta-go* : twins.

(o) *tsuri* : the change, (money returned as balance of that tendered for an article).

*hatachi* : twenty years of age.

*hen* : num. for times.

*ma* : room.

*soroi* : suit (of clothes).

*soroi no* : of the same pattern.

*ijime'ru* : to tease ; worry.

*mitsuke'ru* : to find.

1. *Ani wa hatachi no toshi ni oji ni tsurerarete Igrisū e mairimashita* (D).
2. *Kono nashi wa hitotsū yon-sen, hito-hako jū-ni de yon-jis-sen ni uri nasai* (A).
3. *Nana-sen no empitsū wo jū-ni-hon katte o-ide, kyū-jis-sen yaru kara, roku-sen no o tsuri da* (A).
4. *Kono abura wa o ikura deshita?* (C).
5. *Hito-bin go-jis-sen de kaita* (B).
6. *Ano tana ni aru bin wo fūtatsū motte kite, kirei ni aratte o kure* (A).
7. *Kono hen ni wa ni-sam-ben kita koto ga arimasu kara, kanari yoku shitte imasu* (C).
8. *Kono uchi wa mi-ma shika nakutte, semai desu kara, mō sūkoshi ōki na no wo mitsukemashō* (C).
9. *Ano mise ni wa onna ga san-nin, otoko ga yottari iru* (B).
10. *Hashi no ue de fūtari no kodomo ga ip-piki no inu wo ijimete ita* (B).
11. *Ano fūtatsū no isu wa Amerika de dekita mono de gozaimasu* (D).
12. *Tarō wa kesa tamago fūtatsū to chichi wo koppu ni ip-pai nomimashita* (C).
13. *Raigetsū gaikoku e iku made ni yōfuku wo hito-soroi koshirae-nakereba nara-nai* (B).
14. *Koko kara Nagasaki made wa futsūka fūta-ban kakarimasu* (C).
15. *Ano fūta-go wa itsu de mo soroi no kimono wo kite imasu* (C).
16. *Kono shigoto wa otoko go-nin de is-shūkan kakaru darō* (B).
17. *Hito-hako yon-jis-sen no nashi wo mi-hako sugu ni todokete kudasai, kane wa ima haraimashō* (C).
18. *Nikai ni fūta-ma arimasu ga, tsūkaimasen kara, dare ka ni kashitai to omotte orimasu* (C).
19. *Ano seiyō-jin wa Nihon e kite yo-tsūki gurai ni shika narimasen ga, mō Nihon-go ga yohodo hanaseru yō ni narimashita* (C).
20. *Jochū fūtari de wa shigoto ga ō-sugimasu kara, mō hitori yatoe-nakereba narimasen* (C).
21. *Ano hito wa hatachi desu ga, ni-jū-ni-san ni mieru* (B).

1. When my brother was twenty my uncle took him to England.
2. Sell these pears at four sen each, or forty-sen the box of twelve.
3. Go and buy twelve seven-sen pencils, I'm giving you ninety sen, so the change will be six sen.
4. What was the price of this oil?
5. It cost fifty sen a bottle.
6. Bring two of those bottles that are on the shelf and wash them carefully.
7. I've been two or three times in this neighbourhood before, so I know it fairly well.
8. This house is small, it has only three rooms. I must look for a bigger one.
9. There are three women and four men in that shop.
10. Two children were worrying a dog on the bridge.
11. Those two chairs are American made.
12. This morning Tarō had two eggs and a cup of milk.
13. I must have a suit of clothes made before I go abroad next month.
14. It takes two days and two nights to go to Nagasaki.
15. Those twins always wear clothes of the same pattern.
16. I think it would take five men a week to do this work.
17. Please send to my house immediately three boxes of pears at forty sen a box, I'll pay for them now.
18. There are two rooms upstairs and as I don't use them, I was thinking of letting them to somebody.
19. It's only four months since that foreigner arrived in Japan, nevertheless he can already speak quite a lot of Japanese.
20. The work is too much for two servants, I must engage one more.
21. That man is twenty, but he looks twenty-two or twenty-three.

## EXERCISE 67.

### Auxiliary numerals. Study 281—283.

*hana-ike* : flower-vase.

*kawa* : side.

*kinjo* : neighbourhood.

*naifu* : knife.

*ni-guruma* : hand-cart.

*shinrui* : relation ; relative.

*tōri* : street ; road.

*wataru* : to cross over.

*dake* : only.

1. *Kono kūsuri wo ip-puku nondara atama no itai no ga naotta* (B). 2. *Wata-shi wa nen ni san-zoku kutsu ga irimasu* (C). 3. *Kono kinjo ni yado-ya ga gozai-mashō ka?* (D). 4. *Kono tōri ni wa gozaimasen ga, ano hashi wo wataru to migi kawa ni san-gen gozaimasu* (D). 5. *O rusu ni ko-zutsumi ga ni-ko mairimashita kara, o tsūkue no ue ni motte itte okimashita* (D). 6. *Ashita koshimasu kara, ni-guruma wo ni-dai tanonde kudasai* (C). 7. *Yon-sen no hagaki go-mai, jis-sen no kitte jū-mai katte kite o kure* (A). 8. *Naifu wo ni-chō motte kite kudasai* (C). 9. *Ogawa ni omoshiroi o hanashi no hon ga arimashita kara, yon-satsu katte, inaka no shinrui ni okutte yarimashita* (C). 10. *Kono hana-ike wa ikura?* (B). 11. *Tsui de ni-jū-yen de gozaimasu. Hitotsu dake wa urimasen* (D). 12. *Ashita no gogo Igrisū no fune ga ni-sō tsūku hazu de gozaimasu* (D). 13. *Tarō no kutsu ga amari furuku natta kara, is-soku katte yarō* (B). 14. *Tabako wo ip-puku ikaga de gozaimasu ka?* (D). 15. *Arigatō, 'tabako wa karada ni warui' to isha ni iwarete kara, noma-nai koto ni shite iru* (B). 16. *Kono nimotsu wo san-ko Sendai made azuketai* (B). 17. *Seiyō no hon wo uru mise ga arimasu ka?* (C). 18. *Kono machi ni wa seiyō no hon wo uru tokoro wa nai no desu* (C). 19. *Nodo ga kawaita, o cha wo ip-pai o kure* (A). 20. *Kuruma wa san-dai yobimashō ka?* (C). 21. *Iie, nimotsu ga sonna ni ōku arimasen kara, ni-dai de takusan desu* (C). 22. *Kore to onnaji kugi wo rop-pon motte kite kure* (A). 23. *Kodomo ni wa kono kūsuri wo ip-puku no hambun nomase nasai* (A). 24. *Tegami wo san-shi-hon kaitara, Ueno e sampo ni iku tsumori da* (B). 25. *Kimura San no kyōdai wa yottari atte, minna onna bakari desu* (C).

1. As soon as I'd taken a dose of this medicine, my headache was better. 2. I use three pairs of boots a year. 3. I wonder if there's an inn in this neighbourhood? 4. There are none in this street, but as soon as you cross that bridge you'll find three on your right. 5. While you were out two parcels came for you, I have put them on your desk. 6. As I'm going to move to another house tomorrow, order two hand-carts. 7. Go and buy five four-sen postcards and ten ten-sen stamps. 8. Please bring two knives. 9. There were some interesting story-books at Ogawa's; I bought four and sent them to my relations in the country. 10. How much is this flower-vase? 11. Twenty yen the pair. I can't sell one by itself. 12. Two English steamers are expected tomorrow in the afternoon. 13. Tarō's boots are worn out, I'll buy him another pair. 14. Have a smoke. 15. Thanks, the doctor says it's bad for my health, so I have given up smoking. 16. I want to check these three pieces of luggage to Sendai. 17. Is there a shop where they sell foreign books? 18. In this town there's not a single place where you can get foreign books. 19. I'm thirsty, get me a cup of tea. 20. Shall I call three rikishas? 21. No, two will be quite enough, I haven't got much luggage. 22. Bring me six nails like this. 23. Give the child half a dose of this medicine. 24. When I've written three or four letters, I intend to go for a walk to Ueno. 25. The Kimuras are four altogether, and they are all girls.



# EXERCISE 68.

Ordinal numbers. Study 284—289.

<i>kaisha</i> : a company (commercial) ;	<i>ato</i> : after ; behind.
offices of a company.	<i>ippai</i> : full.
<i>tansū</i> : chest of drawers.	<i>shijū</i> : always.
<i>to</i> : door.	<i>yatto</i> : at last.
<i>tazune'ru</i> : to visit ; inquire.	

1. *Brown San ni aitai to omotte, san-do tazunemashita ga, shijū o rusu de, yotabi-me ni yatto au koto ga dekimashita* (C). 2. *Sam-bam-me no musūko wa Kōbe de gakkō no sensei wo shūte orimasū* (C). 3. *Ato kara ni-dai-me no kuruma ni notte ita no ga kondo gaikoku kara kaette kita Tanaka San no o-jō-san desū* (C). 4. *Kono hako wa minna tamago ga haite iru no de gozaimasū ka?* (D). 5. *Iie, ni-bam-me no wa tamago no hako ja arimasen* (C). 6. *Yūbin-kyoku kara rok-kem-me no uchi ga tomodachi no uchi da* (B). 7. *Migi kara roku-satsū-me no hon wo yokoshite kudasai* (C). 8. *Yottsū-me no isu ni koshi-kakete iru no ga Sugita to itte, watashi no kaisha ni iru otoko desū* (C). 9. *Te-bukuro wo dashite o kure ; tansū no shita kara ni-bam-me no hikidashi ni haite iru* (A). 10. *Tōkyō e kite ni-bam-me ni ō-kaji ga arimashita* (C). 11. *Ima tabeta nashi wa hajime no wa oishikatta ga, tsugi no wa mazukatta* (B). 12. *Kono densha wa ippai desū kara, ato no ni norimashō* (C). 13. *Mae no Ei-go no sensei wa Amerika-jin deshita ga, ima no wa Igrisū-jin desū* (C). 14. *Ichi-ban shimai ni deru hito wa to wo shimete kudasai* (C). 15. *Tsugi no teishaba de oriru no de gozaimasū* (D). 16. *Sūteishon e wa dō ikeba yō gozaimasū ka?* (D). 17. *Ni-bam-me no kado wo hidari e magatte, hashi wo wataru to sugu ni sūteishon desū* (C). 18. *Tana ni aru, migi kara mitsū-me no ōki na tsubo wo motte o-ide nasai* (A). 19. *Fūta-hako-me no nashi wa kūsatta no ga mitsū atta* (B). 20. *Asa okitara ichi-ban hajime ni to wo akete o kure* (A). 21. *Kono densha wa Shinagawa e ikimasū ka?* (C). 22. *Iie, Shinagawa-yuki wa kono ato desū* (C). 23. *Go-bam-me no musūko wa isha ni naritai to itte benkyō shūte imasū* (C).

1. I wanted to see Mr Brown so I went to his house three times, but he was always out ; I was able at last the fourth time to see him. 2. My third son is teaching at a school in Kōbe. 3. The person riding in the last rikisha but one, is Miss Tanaka who arrived recently from abroad. 4. Are all these boxes full of eggs ? 5. No, the second one is not a box of eggs. 6. The sixth house from the post office is the house of one of my friends. 7. Hand me the sixth book from the right, please. 8. The man sitting on the fourth chair is called Sugita, he goes to the same office as I do. 9. Get me my gloves ; they are in the chest of drawers, the second drawer from the bottom. 10. The third night I was in Tōkyō there was a big fire. 11. The first of the pears I've just eaten was very nice, but the next one was no good. 12. This tram-car is full, let's take the next one. 13. Our former teacher of English was an American, our present teacher is an Englishman. 14. The last one who leaves, please close the door. 15. We get off at the next station. 16. How can I get to the station ? 17. Take the second turning to the left and cross the bridge. 18. Bring the big jar from the shelf, the third from the right. 19. There were three bad pears in the second box. 20. Open the door as soon as you get up in the morning. 21. Does this tram-car go to Shinagawa ? 22. No, the following one is the Shinagawa tram-car. 23. The fifth son says he wants to be a doctor, he is studying medicine.

# EXERCISE 69.

Dates. Study 290—297.

*hi* : day.

*jishin* : earthquake.

*sensō* : war.

*hajimaru* (intr.) : to begin.

*odoroku* : to be astonished.

*tatsu* : to start.

*umare'ru* : to be born.

*hajimete* : for the first time.

1. *Meiji ni-jū-roku-nen ku-gatsū ni-jū-ni-nichi wa watakūshi ga ūmareta hi de gozaimasū* (D). 2. *Yōroppa no dai-sensō wa Taishō san-nen hachi-gatsū ni hajimarimashita* (C). 3. *Watakūshi ga hajimete Nihon e kita no wa Meiji san-jū-ni-nen no roku-gatsū tsuitachi deshita* (C). 4. *Kōbe ni san-ka-nen ite, Meiji san-jū-go-nen ni Yokohama e kimashita* (C). 5. *Ano ko wa Taishō ni-nen shōgatsū hatsuka ni ūmareta no desū* (C). 6. *Yokohama ni tsuite mikka-me ni ō-jishin ga atte zuibun odorokimashita. Watashi wa jishin ga dai-kirai desū kara totemo nagaku koko ni iru koto wa deki-nai to omoimashita* (C). 7. *Watashi wa Rondon ni ni-ka-nen orimashita ga, yoku Ei-go ga hanasemasen* (C). 8. *Nihon e kite fūta-tsūki-me ni byōki ni natta* (B). 9. *Broken San wa Nihon e kite hachi-nen-me de kondo kuni e kaeru no da sō desū* (C). 10. *Chichi wa Meiji shi-jū-san-nen no ō-misoka ni shinimashita* (C). 11. *Annari karada ga yoku arimasen kara, ni-ka-getsū gurai Kyōto no hen de asonde kuru tsumori desū* (C). 12. *Yamada San wa san-gatsū tōka ni Rondon wo tatte, Nihon e kaeru to itte yokoshimashita* (C). 13. *Roku-nen-me de kaette kuru no desū kara, iro-iro kawatte iru no ni odoroku deshō* (C). 14. *Nii-san ga Amerika e o-ide nasaru sō de gozaimasū ga, itsu o tachi nasaimasū ka?* (D). 15. *Jū-gatsū yōka ni tatsu to itte orimashita* (C). 16. *Atama ga itaku natte kara, mikka-me ni isha ni mite moraimashita* (C). 17. *Nihon e kite mi-tsūki-me ni Nihon-go no gakkō e haitta* (B). 18. *Kono byōki ga sukkari naoru made ni wa ik-ka-getsū ijō kakaru* (B). 19. *Ano ginkō wa Taishō san-nen ni-gatsū yokka ni hajimeta no desū* (C). 20. *Nihon e kite kara jū-nen-me ni narimasū ga, watashi ga kita koro koko wa honto ni sabishii tokoro deshita* (C).

1. I was born on the 22nd of September, 1893. 2. The great war in Europe began in August, 1914. 3. I arrived in Japan for the first time on the 1st of June, 1899. 4. I was three years in Kōbe and came to Yokohama in 1902. 5. That child was born on the 20th of January, 1913. 6. On the third day after my arrival in Yokohama there was a big earthquake which frightened me a great deal. I hate earthquakes so I thought I would never be able to live long in this place. 7. I was in London two years but I cannot speak English well. 8. The second month after my arrival in Japan I fell ill. 9. It's eight years since Mr Brown arrived in Japan. He's going back home for the first time now. 10. My father died on the 31st of December, 1910. 11. I am not very well so I intend to go to Kyōto for a couple of months. 12. Mr Yamada writes saying that he is coming back to Japan and is starting from London on the 10th of March. 13. As it's six years since he was here he will be surprised to find many things changed. 14. I hear your brother is going to America, when does he start? 15. He said he was starting on the 8th of October. 16. I had a headache three days before I went to see the doctor. 17. The third month after I arrived in Japan, I entered a school for learning Japanese. 18. It will be more than a month before you recover completely from this illness. 19. That bank was founded on the 4th of February, 1914. 20. It is now ten years since I came to Japan, this was a very lonely place at that time.



# EXERCISE 70.

Time. Study 298—304.

*hiru-mae* : forenoon.  
*hiru-sugi* ; *hiru kara* : afternoon.  
*mon* : gate.  
*taiyō* : sun.  
*yakūsoku* : promise.  
*nanni mo* (with neg.) : nothing.

*mukae'ru* : to go out to meet ; welcome.  
*a(t)chi* ; *achira* : there ; in that place.  
*ko(t)chi* ; *kochira* : here ; in this place.  
*sakki* : a short time ago.  
*mai-* : (in compounds) every.

1. *Nan-ji de gozaimasū ka ?* (D). 2. *Watashi no tokei wa tomatte ite wakari-masen ga, yūbin-kyoku no mae wo sakki tōtta toki go-fun de ku-ji deshita* (C). 3. *Kono-goro wa roku-ji han goro ni taiyō ga deru* (B). 4. *Mai-ban jū-ji ni mon wo shimete o kure* (A). 5. *Ashita asa no shichi-ji no kisha de oji san ga irassharu sō da kara, sūteishon e mukae ni itte o-ide* (A). 6. *Haha wa roku-jū-go ni narimasū ga, taisō jōbu de go-nen-kan ichi-do mo isha ni ikimasen* (C). 7. *Mise e tōi desū kara, asa shichi-ji ni uchi wo de-nakereba ma ni aimasen* (C). 8. *Asada San wa ban no ku-ji no kisha de atchi wo tatte kuru no da kara, kotchi e tsūku no wa gozen rei-ji ni-jip-pun da* (B). 9. *Anata Tōkyō e nichiyō ni iku nara issu ni ikimashō ka ?* (C). 10. *Hiru-mae ni o-ide nasaimasū ka ? hiru-sugi de gozaimasū ka ? Watakushi wa hiru-mae wa tomodachi no uchi e iku yakūsoku wo shimashita kara, mairimasen* (D). 11. *Kono ko wa muiku-kan nanni mo tabe-nai de chichi bakari nonde imashita* (C). 12. *Chichi wa kinō gogo rei-ji go-jip-pun ni Kōbe ni tsuita to itte dempō wo yokoshimashita* (C). 13. *O-jō-san wa nan-ji no kisha de o kaeri nasaimasū ka ?* (D). 14. *Hiru no jū-ichi-ji no kisha de kaeru hazu de gozaimasū* (D). 15. *Omae wa hiru kara yūbin-kyoku e itte kite, sore kara nikai no sōji wo shi nasai* (A). 16. *Mai-asa go-ji ni okite, ichi-ji-kan han Ei-go wo benkyō shite kara, mise e iku no desū* (C). 17. *Mō hachi-ji jip-pun mae desū kara, isoide o-ide nasai* (B). 18. *Konaida no nichiyō wa hiru kara ō-ame deshita* (C). 19. *Yokka-kan yama-nai de ane ga futta kara yane ga moru yō ni natta* (B).

1. What o'clock is it ? 2. My watch has stopped ; however, when I passed in front of the post office a few moments ago, it was five minutes to nine. 3. The sun is rising now at about half past six. 4. Close the gate every night at ten o'clock. 5. As your uncle (says he) is coming tomorrow morning by the seven o'clock train go and meet him at the station. 6. My mother is sixty-five, but she is so healthy she hasn't seen a doctor once in five years. 7. The office is far (from my house), so I have to leave home at seven o'clock if I want to be in time. 8. Mr Asada is leaving by the nine o'clock train, so he'll arrive at twenty past twelve midnight. 9. If you are going to Tōkyō on Sunday, let's go together. 10. Are you going in the morning or in the afternoon ? I can't go in the morning as I've promised to go to a friend's house. 11. This child has been eating nothing for six days, he has only been drinking milk. 12. My father sent a telegram saying he had arrived at Kōbe yesterday at 12.50. 13. By what train is your daughter coming back ? 14. I am expecting her by the eleven o'clock train. 15. After lunch go to the post office, and then do the rooms upstairs. 16. I get up at five o'clock every morning, I study English for an hour and a half and then I go to the office. 17. It is already ten minutes to eight, so hurry up and go (to your work). 18. Last Sunday it rained very heavily in the afternoon. 19. It rained four days without stopping so the roof started leaking.

## EXERCISE 71.

Various numerical expressions. Study 305—318.

*heikin* : average.

*sakunen* : last year.

*maze'ru* : to mix.

*mōkaru* : to be earned (of money).

*hotondo* : about.

*oki* : omitting.

*ichi-nichi oki* : every other day.

*no tame ni* : on account of; for—sake.

*zutsū* : each.

1. *Kono machi no sam-bun no ichi wa gaikoku-jin no mise de gozaimasū* (D).
2. *Kinō inaka kara okutte yokoshita kudamono no hako wo akete mitara hambun wa kūsatte ita* (B).
3. *Sakunen wa byōki no tame ni hotondo han-toshi nete kurashi-mashita* (C).
4. *Akambō ni yaru chichi wa chichi shichi-bu ni mizu sam-bu mazete yatte o kure* (A).
5. *Kono hon wa nan-wari mōkarimasū ka?* (C).
6. *Ni-wari go-bu mōkarimasū* (C).
7. *Mai-nichi ichi-jikan zutsū Ei-go wo naraō to omoimashita ga, ichi-jikan wo bai no ni-jikan ni shūte, ichi-nichi oki ni shimashita* (C).
8. *Kono hako wa ano hako no sam-bai hairu* (B).
9. *Tarō San wa kazoe-doshi no jū-san de gozaimasū ka?* (D).
10. *Iie, maru jū-san de gozaimasū* (D).
11. *Ano mise ni wa maru roku-nen orimashita ga, kono-goro dōmo karada ga yoku arimasen kara, yamemashita* (C).
12. *Ruigetsū no go-roku-nichi goro ni Kyūshū no hō e ryokō ni dekakeru tsumori desū* (C).
13. *Asūko no hashi wo jū-ni-san-nin no otoko ga naoshite ita* (B).
14. *O kyaku ga takusan aru ka?* (B).
15. *Ichi-nichi heikin hak-ku-nin gozaimasū* (D).
16. *Taihen ōki na hon da kara, minna yakusū ni wa go-rok-ka-getsū wa kakaru darō* (B).
17. *Koppu ni mizu wo shichi-bu hodo irete motte kite kudasai* (C).
18. *Ammari atama ga itai kara, ni-san-jikan nete iyo* (B).
19. *Kono kami wa sendatte no kami no hotondo bai no nedan desū ga, shina ga sō yoku nai yō desū* (C).
20. *Konaida no ō-jishin de uchi ga hyaku ni-san-jik-ken taoreta to shimbun ni dete imasū* (C).
21. *Ano masūme wa jū-go-roku darō* (B).
22. *Kyonen me ga warukatta toki wa mi-tsuki-kan yomu koto mo kaku koto mo dekimasen deshita* (C).

1. A third of the shops in this town belong to foreigners.
2. When I opened the box of fruit that came from the country yesterday, I found that half were bad.
3. Last year I was ill in bed about six months.
4. The milk for the baby is to be seven parts milk and three parts water.
5. How much per cent. do you make on this book?
6. Twenty-five per cent.
7. I thought of studying English one hour every day, but instead of that I've decided to study two hours every other day.
8. This box holds three times as much as that one.
9. Is Master Tarō thirteen according to the Japanese way of counting?
10. No, he has turned thirteen (European style).
11. I was six (complete) years in that office, but I left because I have not been well lately.
12. I intend to start on the 5th or the 6th of next month on a trip to Kyūshū.
13. There were twelve or thirteen men mending that bridge.
14. Have you got many customers?
15. On an average eight or nine a day.
16. It is such a big book that I expect it'll take me five or six months to translate it all.
17. Bring me a tumbler about three quarters full of water.
18. I shall lie down for two or three hours. I've got such a headache.
19. This paper is almost twice as dear as what I had last time, but the quality is not so very good.
20. The newspaper says that a hundred and twenty or a hundred and thirty houses were wrecked by the big earthquake the other day.
21. I think that girl must be about fifteen or sixteen.
22. Last year, when my eyes were bad, I wasn't able to read or write for three months.



## EXERCISE 72.

Personal, possessive and reflexive pronouns. Study 319—327.

*shinyō* : confidence.

*shitaku* : preparation.

*nuu* : to sew.

*nan to mo* (with neg.) : nothing.

*taigai* : generally.

*tambi* : as often as ; whenever.

1. *Boku no uchi no mon no soba ni aru nashi no ki wa shizen ni haeta no da to iu hanashi da* (B). 2. *Kimi wa Ei-go ga hanasemasu ka?* (C). 3. *Sono hako wa omae san ni yaru kara atchi e motte o-ide nasai* (A). 4. *Uchi no Hana-ko wa jibun de kimono wo nutte kimasu* (from *ki-ru* to put on). 5. *Kimi to boku to issho ni sampo ni deru tambi ni ame ga furu yō da* (B). 6. *Sensei-gata wa yo-ji made o-ide nasaimasu ga, seito wa taigai san-ji made ni kaette shimaimasu* (C). 7. *Kono nashi wo mittsu zutsu ano kodomo-tachi ni yatte kudasai* (C). 8. *Yattsu no Teruo wa mai-asa hitori de shitaku wo shite gakkō e ikimasu* (C). 9. *Ano hito-tachi wa Chōsen e iku no da sō desu* (C). 10. *Isogashii toki wa o tagai ni tetsudatte agetari, tetsudatte morattari shimashō* (C). 11. *Yamada San ga Sendai de byōki ni natta to iu hanashi desu ga, honto deshō ka?* (C). 12. *Boku no hō e wa nan to mo itte yokosa-nai kara, wakara-nai ga, sonna koto wa nai darō* (B). 13. *Ano mise wa ammari shinyō ga nai to iu hanashi da* (B). 14. *Kono byōki wa kamaru-nakutte mo shizen ni naorimasu* (C). 15. *Watashi wa Suzuki wo shinyō shi-nai* (B). 16. *Ano ki wa shizen ni karete shimatta* (B). 17. *Omae wa byō-nin da kara, hitori de kisha ni nottari shite wa ike-nai* (A). 18. *Sono hon wo kashite kudasaimasen ka?* (D). 19. *Kore desu ka? Jibun no mono nara kashite agemasu keredomo, korē wa tomodachi no desu kara, kashite ageraremasen* (C). 20. *Ano oku-san wa minna jibun de kai ni ikimasu* (C). 21. *Karada ga warukereba shizen benkyō ga dekinaku naru* (B). 22. *Tarō wa kono-goro uchi e tegami o yokosa-nai sō da* (B). 23. *Nagasaki no chikaku ni shinruu ga ik-ken aru kara, kotoshi no natsu itte miyō to omotte iru* (B).

1. They say the pear-tree by our gate grew by itself (i.e. was not planted). 2. Can you speak English? 3. I'll give you that box, you may take it. 4. My daughter Hana-kō sews her own dresses. 5. Whenever you and I go out together for a walk it's sure to rain. 6. The teachers stay until four, but the pupils leave at three o'clock. 7. Give each of those children three pears. 8. My son Teruo is only eight but he gets ready and goes to school all by himself every morning. 9. I hear that those men are going to Korea. 10. Let's help each other, when you've got a lot to do I'll help you and when I've got a lot of work to do please help me. 11. I hear that Mr Yamada has fallen sick at Sendai, I wonder whether it's true. 12. I haven't heard from him so I don't know, but I don't think it's true. 13. It seems that that shop doesn't enjoy the confidence of the public. 14. You'll get over this illness without any special treatment (Nature will do the work for you). 15. I've no confidence in Suzuki. 16. That tree died of itself (nobody did anything to it). 17. You are an invalid, and you can't go travelling about by yourself. 18. Would you please lend me that book? 19. Is this the one you mean? If it were my own I'd lend it to you, but it belongs to a friend, so I can't. 20. That lady does all her shopping and marketing herself. 21. When one doesn't feel well one naturally becomes incapable of studying. 22. They say that Tarō hasn't written home lately. 23. I have some relatives in the neighbourhood of Nagasaki (one house of relatives), I am thinking of going to see them this summer.

## EXERCISE 73.

Relative pronouns and adverbs. Study 328—335.

*aki-ya* : empty, unoccupied house.

*kashi-ya* : house to let.

*poketto* : pocket.

*shibai* : theatre ; theatrical play.

*su* : nest.

*betsu no (or na)* : different.

*kowagaru* : to be afraid.

*naku* : to cry ; sing (of birds).

*waku* (intr.) : to boil.

*yake'ru* (intr.) : to become destroyed by fire, burnt.

1. *Yūbe no kaji de yaketa uchi wa aki-ya datta sō da* (B). 2. *Konaida Satō San ga hanashita kashi-ya wo mi ni itte kimashita ga, ammari semai desū kara, betsu na no wo sagasu tsumori desū* (C). 3. *Koko wa natsū Yamada San to Suzuki San ga kita tokoro desū* (C). 4. *Sakki iwareta koto wo mō wasurete shimatte, watashi wa dō shita no darō?* (B). 5. *Poketto ni aru mono wo o mise nasai* (B). 6. *Ano hito no iu no wo kaite kudasai* (C). 7. *Kōbe ni ita jibun ni ni-san-do ano hito no uchi wo tazuneta koto ga arimashita* (C). 8. *Igirisū ni ita toki sono shibai wo mimashita ga, sō omoshiroi to omoimasen deshita* (C). 9. *Kimura San ga kuru made ni sono tegami wo kaite shimai nasai* (A). 10. *Ano ko wa junsu no kao wo miru to kowagatte nakimasū* (C). 11. *Taiyō ga hairu to tori ga su ni kaeru* (B). 12. *Taiyō ga deru to tori ga naku* (B). 13. *Sono hon wo yonde shimattara, kondo wa mō sūkoshi muzukashii no wo agemashō* (C). 14. *O yu ga waitara sō itte o kure* (A). 15. *Shimbashi e tsūku to Tarō to Jirō ga mukae ni kite ita* (B). 16. *Sono hanashi no aru hon ga arimasū kara, kashite agemashō* (C). 17. *Uchi kara o kane ga kitara ryokō ni dekakemasū* (C). 18. *Ima otōto ga itta koto wa tabun machigai darō* (B). 19. *Are ga Yamada San no irassharu kaisha de gozaimasū* (D). 20. *Kore wa uchi no Hana-ko ga kowagaru inu darō ka?* (B). 21. *Iie, sore ja arimasen. Hana-ko ga kowagaru no wa Suzuki San no inu desū* (C). 22. *Ano kata no kaita mono wa shijū yonde orimasū* (C). 23. *Tone-gawa wo wataru to ame ga futte kite, ni-jikan hodo nurete aruita* (B).

1. They say that the house that was burnt by the fire last night was unoccupied. 2. I went to see the house to let which Mr Satō told me about the other day, however, it is too small, so I intend to look for another one. 3. This is where Mr Yamada and Mr Suzuki came in the summer. 4. I've already forgotten what I was told just now, I wonder what's the matter with me. 5. Show me what you've got in your pocket. 6. Write down what that man says. 7. When I was in Kōbe I went to (visit him at) his house two or three times. 8. When I was in England I went to see that play, but I didn't think it so very amusing. 9. Have that letter written when Mr Kimura arrives. 10. When that child sees a policeman he is afraid and starts crying. 11. When the sun sets, the birds return to their nests. 12. When the sun rises, the cock crows. 13. When you've finished reading that book, I'll lend you one a little more difficult. 14. When the water starts boiling, let me know. 15. When I arrived at Shimbashi, Tarō and Jirō were there to meet me. 16. I have the book in which that tale is to be found, I'll lend it to you. 17. When funds arrive from home, I'll start on my journey. 18. What my brother said just now is perhaps a mistake. 19. That is the office Mr Yamada goes to. 20. Is this the dog Hana-ko is afraid of? 21. No, that's not the one. Mr Suzuki's dog is the one Hana-ko is afraid of. 22. I always read what that man writes. 23. When we crossed the river Tone it started raining, and we had to walk two hours in the rain.



## EXERCISE 74.

Demonstrative, interrogative, and indefinite pronouns and adverbs. Study Table I of 336, and 337—353.

*kane-ire* : purse.

*shimpai* : anxiety ; worry.

*tsumara-nai* : worthless ; foolish.

*aki-ru* : to get tired of.

*hakkiri* : clearly.

*shibaraku* : some time ; a short while ; a long while.

1. *Shibaraku Ei-go wo benkyō shite kara Igirisū e iku kangae desū* (C). 2. *Sore wa tsumara-nai ja arimasen ka? Mukō e tsuite kara benkyō suru hō ga zutto hayaku oboerareru deshō* (C). 3. *Kore kara Yamada San ni henji wo kaite dashi ni ikimasū* (C). 4. *Kono hon wo yonde shimatte, sore kara hoka no wo goran nasai* (B). 5. *Shujin wa yo-ji han ni kaette mairimasū kara, dōzo sore made o machi kudasaimasen ka?* (D). 6. *Satō wa dono gurai ireru no de gozaimasū ka?* (D). 7. *Sore dake o kane wo motte ittara, takūsan darō* (B). 8. *Are hodo itte kikasete mo mada wakara-nai no ka?* (A). 9. *Konna yado-ya ni iru no wa akite shimatta* (B). 10. *Kono bin wa kō shite okureba daijōbu darō ne?* (B). 11. *E, sō nasareba mō shimpai wa arimasen* (C). 12. *O karada wa kono-goro ikaga de gozaimasū ka?* (D). 13. *Anata wa doko no sūteishon kara o nori nasaimashita?* (D). 14. *Doko-ira de kane-ire wo otoshita n' desū?* (C). 15. *Koko-ira datta to omoimasū ga, hakkiri wakarimasen* (C). 16. *Kinō gakkō kara o kaeri ni natte, nani wo nasaimashita?* (D). 17. *Are kara konaida katta Igirisū no shōsetsū wo yonde iru to tomodachi ga kite, fūtari de sampo ni ikimashita* (C). 18. *Koko-ira ni o isha san ga arimashō ka?* (C). 19. *Ano hito wa tō no toki ni omoi byōki wo shite, sore kara tate-naku natte shimatta no desū* (C). 20. *Kore made iku-do mo Ei-go wo oshieta koto ga arimasū ga, Hana-ko San no yō ni hayaku oboeta hito wa arimasen deshita* (C). 21. *Sonna hon wo yonde wa ike-nai* (A). 22. *Anna hanashi wa mō akite shimatta* (B). 23. *Mikka bakari atama ga itakutte nanni mo dekimasen, isha ni mite moraō ka to omoimasū* (C).

1. After I have studied English for some time, I am thinking of going to England. 2. Surely that's not the way to do it. Go and study there, that's the way to learn quickly. 3. I'll now (write and) send Mr Yamada an answer (to his letter). 4. Read this book through, and after that, read another one. 5. My master will be back at half past four, please wait until then. 6. How much sugar shall I put in? 7. If you take as much money as that, it will be quite enough. 8. Don't you understand yet after having been told so often? 9. I'm sick of being in an inn like this. 10. If I send this bottle (packed) like this it will be quite safe, don't you think so? 11. Oh yes, if you pack it like that, you needn't worry about it. 12. How have you been lately? 13. At what station did you get on the train? 14. Whereabouts did you lose your purse? 15. I think it was somewhere about here, but I don't know for certain. 16. What did you do yesterday after you came back from school? 17. (After that) I read the English novel I bought the other day, and then a friend came and we both went for a walk. 18. I wonder if there's a doctor round about here? 19. That man had a serious illness when he was ten years of age, and since then he hasn't been able to stand. 20. (Up to now) I've very often taught English, but I've never found a person who learnt it as quickly as Miss Hana-ko. 21. Don't read a book like that. 22. I'm tired of a tale like that. 23. I've had such a headache for three days, I haven't been able to do anything; I'm thinking of seeing a doctor.

## EXERCISE 75.

Demonstrative, interrogative and indefinite pronouns and adverbs. Study the second column of Table II in 336.

*botan* : button.

*netsū* : fever.

*shina-mono* : articles ; goods.

*nokoru* : to remain ; be left over.

*sagaru* : to descend ; go down.

1. *Rusu ni dare ka kitara, tōka ni kaeru to itte o kure* (A). 2. *Dare ka boku no jibiki wo motte itte shimatta* (B). 3. *Donata ka Ei-go no dekiru kata ni yonde o morai nasaru to yō gozaimasū* (D). 4. *Dōzo kono hana wo dore ka hītotsū kudasaimasen ka ?* (D). 5. *Shina-mono wo kaesū ka, kane wo harau ka dotchi ka ni shinakereba nara-nai* (B). 6. *Dō ka shīte ichi-do Fuji-san e nobotte mitai* (B). 7. *Konna atsui tokoro ni wa iraremasen kara, doko ka suzushii tokoro e ikimashō* (C). 8. *Kō iu botan ga hoshii no desū ga, Tōkyō ni aru deshō ka ?* (C). 9. *Tōkyō-jū sagashīta, doko ni ka aru darō* (B). 10. *Mada Ueno e itta koto ga arimasen kara, itsū ka o hima no toki ni tsurete itte kudasai* (C). 11. *Satō wa mō nai ka ?* (A). 12. *Mada ikura ka nokotte imasū* (C). 13. *Go byō-nin wa dō nasaimashīta ka ?* (D). 14. *Netsū wa ikura ka sagarimashīta ga, atama no itai no wa kawara-nai to itte imasū* (C). 15. *Kimura San ga inaka e o kaeri nasaru sō desū kara, nani ka inaka ni nai mono wo katte Hana-ko San ni motte itte moraimashō* (C). 16. *Dure ka o isha san wo yobi ni itte kite o kure* (A). 17. *Dare ka ni michi wo o kiki nasai* (A). 18. *Donata ka kane-ire wo otoshīta kata wa arimasen ka ?* (C). 19. *Itsū ka go tsugō no ii toki ni Enoshima e itte kimashō* (D). 20. *Sono hon wo yonde shimattara Jirō ka dare ka ni o yari nasai* (B). 21. *Kono kami wa hakurai yori yasū gozaimasū ga, shina ga ikura ka warui yō de gozaimasū* (D). 22. *Nodo ga kawaita ; nani ka nomu mono wo o kure* (A). 23. *Ei-go ka Fūransū-go ka, dotchi ka hītotsū narau tsumori desū* (C). 24. *Yamada San wa moto doko ka kono kinjo ni ita koto ga aru sō desū* (C).

1. If anyone comes while I am away, tell him that I'll be back on the 10th. 2. Somebody has taken my dictionary. 3. You had better get somebody who knows English to read it to you. 4. Will you please give me one of these flowers? 5. I must either return the goods or pay the money. 6. I would like to manage somehow to go up Mount Fuji once. 7. I can't live in a place as hot as this, let's look out for a cooler place. 8. I want some buttons like this. I wonder whether there are any to be had in Tōkyō. 9. If you look all over Tōkyō you will probably find some like it somewhere. 10. I have never been to Ueno yet. Some day when you are free please take me there. 11. Is there no more sugar? 12. There's still a little left. 13. How is the patient? 14. The fever is somewhat less, but he says his headache is as bad as ever. 15. I hear that Mr Kimura is going back to his house in the country, I must buy something which they haven't got in the country for Miss Hana-ko, and ask him to take it to her. 16. One of you (servants) go and call the doctor; (or: Go and call any doctor). 17. Ask somebody the way. 18. Has anybody lost his purse? 19. Some day when convenient to you let's go to Enoshima. 20. When you've finished reading that book give it to Jirō or somebody or other. 21. This paper is cheaper than the foreign article, but the quality is somewhat inferior. 22. I'm thirsty, bring me something to drink. 23. I intend to study either English or French. 24. They say that Mr Yamada formerly used to live somewhere in this neighbourhood.



## EXERCISE 76.

Demonstrative, interrogative and indefinite pronouns and adverbs. Study the third column of Table II in 336.

*arashi* : storm.  
*chawan* : teacup.  
*kan* : tin-can.  
*rōsoku* : candle.  
*tēburu* : table.

*karappo no* : empty.  
*korobu* : to fall down.  
*soto* : outside ; exterior.  
*ura* : the back ; rear.

1. *Uchi de wa dare mo tabako wo noma-nai* (B). 2. *Dare ka kimashita ka?* (C).  
 3. *Kyō wa donata mo o-ide ni narimasen deshita* (D). 4. *Kono nashi wa dore mo kūsatte ite taberare-nai* (B). 5. *Ano fūtatsu no tēburu wa dotchi mo chūmon shite koshiraesashita no desū* (C). 6. *Sendatte no arashi de ura no ki ga ni-sam-bon taoremashita ga, uchi wa dō mo narimasen deshita* (C). 7. *Otōto san ga sakki mon no soto de koronda sō desū ga, doko ka kega wa shimasen deshita ka?* (C). 8. *Arigatō gozaimasū, doko mo itaku wa shimasen deshita* (C). 9. *Kō iu chawan wo kaitai to omotte hōbō kiite mita ga, doko ni mo nakatta* (B). 10. *Itsū mo kai mise de o kai nasai* (B). 11. *Shio wa ano tsubo ni ikura mo aru* (B). 12. *Omae wa ikutsū mo nashi ga aru no da kara, sūkoshi Mitsū-ko San ni o age nasai* (A). 13. *Hakodate e wa iku-do mo mairimashita kara, yoku shitte imasū* (D). 14. *Sō iu rōsoku nara nam-bon mo aru* (B). 15. *Ano kan ni wa nanni mo gozaimasen ; karappo de gozaimasū* (D). 16. *Kono naka ni dore ka anata no hon ga arimasū ka?* (C). 17. *Iie, dore mo watakushi no de wa gozaimasen* (D). 18. *Watashi wa Eigo mo Fūransū-go mo dotchi mo hanasemasen* (C). 19. *Ano kata no o niwa ni wa sakura no ki ga iku-hon mo gozaimasū* (D). 20. *Suzuki Tama-ko to iu hito no koto wo shitte imasū ka?* (C). 21. *Iie, watashi wa nanni mo shirimasen* (C). 22. *Ryokō shita koto ga arimasen kara, Tōkyō no hoka wa doko mo shirimasen* (C). 23. *Furui shimbun wo go-roku-mai kudasaimasen ka?* (D). 24. *E, ikura mo arimasū kara, hoshii dake o tsūkai nasai* (C). 25. *Ano hito wa itsū mo mise e iku toki densha de au hito da* (B).

1. At home nobody smokes. 2. Did anybody come ? 3. Nobody has come today. 4. Every one of these pears is bad, not one is fit to eat. 5. Both of those tables were made to order. 6. The storm the other day blew down two or three of the trees at the back of the house, but no damage was done to the house itself. 7. I hear that your brother fell down outside the gate, has he hurt himself (anywhere) ? 8. Thanks, he didn't hurt himself at all. 9. I wanted to buy some teacups like this and I asked everywhere, but I couldn't find any anywhere. 10. Buy it at the same shop you always go to. 11. There's any amount of salt in that jar. 12. As you've got any amount of pears, give a few to Miss Mitsu-ko. 13. I know Hakodate quite well, I've been there any number of times. 14. If that's the kind of candle (you are referring to) I've got any number. 15. There's absolutely nothing in that tin-can, it's empty. 16. Are any of these books yours ? 17. No, none of them are mine. 18. I can neither speak English nor French. 19. There are any number of cherry-trees in that gentleman's garden. 20. Can you give me any information about a person called Tama-ko Suzuki ? 21. No, I know nothing at all about her. 22. As I've never travelled, I know no place outside of Tōkyō. 23. Would you please give me a few old newspapers ? 24. I've got any amount, so take as many as you want. 25. That's the man I always meet in the tram-car when I'm going to the office.

## EXERCISE 77.

Demonstrative, interrogative and indefinite pronouns and adverbs. Study the fourth column of Table II in 336.

*fude* : writing-brush.

*hasami* : scissors.

*kanshin* : admiration.

*katte* : convenience.

*rambō na* : disorderly ; unruly.

*teinei na* : polite ; careful.

*mitsukaru* : to become found ; be found.

*ossharu* (polite) : to say ; speak.

*ya* : a copulative particle ; and.

1. *Ano musūme wa yoku otōto yo imōto no sewa wo shimasū kara, dare de mo kanshin shite imasū* (C). 2. *Donata de mo omae wa rambō da to ossharu* (A). 3. *Koko ni aru hasami wa dore de mo tsūkatte ii no desū ka?* (C). 4. *Fude de mo, pen de mo, dotchi de mo o tsūkai nasai* (C). 5. *Ueno e doyō-bi ni ikimashō ka,* *nichiyō ni ikimashō ka?* (C). 6. *Dō de mo omae no katte ni nasai* (A). 7. *Nihon wa doko de mo roku-gatsū ame ga furu no desū ka?* (C). 8. *Ashūta ichi-nichi hīmu wo yaru kara, doko ni de mo katte na tokoro e itte asonde o-ide* (A). 9. *Hon no wakara-nai tokoro wo oshiete itadakitai no desū ga, itsū agareba yō gozaimashō?* (D). 10. *Gogo nara itsū de mo uchi ni imasū kara, o-ide nasai* (C). 11. *Byōki nara ikura de mo kane wo tsūkatte ii* (B). 12. *Koppu wa ikutsū de mo ano hako ni aru* (B). 13. *Iku-do de mo oboeru made yoma-nakereba nara-nai no desū* (C). 14. *Chiisa na kashi-ya nara nan-gen de mo atta no desū ga, ōki na no ga mitsūkarimasen* (C). 15. *Ano hito no suru koto wa nan de mo teinei da* (B). 16. *Kono nira wa dare de mo hairemasū ka?* (C). 17. *Hai, donata de mo haitte goran ni natte yō gozaimasū* (D). 18. *Ano hito wa watashi ga iku to itsū de mo hon wo yonde iru* (B). 19. *Akai empitsū ga gozaimasū ka?* (D). 20. *Kuroi no wa nam-bon de mo aru ga, akai no wa ip-pon mo nai* (B). 21. *Oji san ni itadaita o kane de hon wo katte yō gozaimasū ka?* (D). 22. *Nan de mo omae no sūki na mono wo o kai nasai* (A). 23. *Kono hasami wa Tōkyō ni aru deshō ka?* (C). 24. *E, doko ni de mo arimasū* (C). 25. *Dore de mo yō gozaimasū kara, kono e wo ichi-mai kudasaimasen ka?* (D). 26. *E, dore de mo ii no wo agemashō* (C).

1. Everybody admires that girl, she takes such care of her little brother and sister. 2. Everybody says you are very unruly. 3. May I use any of the scissors here? 4. Use either a brush or a pen. 5. Shall I go to Ueno on Saturday, or on Sunday? 6. Do just as you like. 7. Does it rain everywhere in Japan during the month of June? 8. I'll give you a holiday tomorrow, you can go and enjoy yourself wherever you like. 9. I wish you'd explain to me some things I don't understand in my book, when can I go to see you? 10. Come some day in the afternoon, I'm always in. 11. In case of illness, it doesn't matter how much money is spent. 12. There are any number of tumblers in that box. 13. You must read it over and over again until you know it (by heart). 14. There were any number of small houses to let, but I couldn't find a big one. 15. Everything that man does, he does carefully. 16. May anybody visit this garden? 17. Yes, anybody may go in and see it. 18. Whenever I go, that man is always reading. 19. Have you got a red pencil? 20. I've any number of black pencils, but I haven't got a red one. 21. May I buy a book with the money my uncle gave me? 22. Buy whatever you like. 23. I wonder whether I can get scissors like this in Tōkyō? 24. Oh yes, you can get them anywhere. 25. Would you please give me one of these pictures? I don't mind which. 26. Certainly, I'll give you the one you like best.



## EXERCISE 78.

Honorific verbs. Study 354—363.

*shashin* : photograph.

*yoroshii* (hardly ever used attributively) : good.

*kekkō na* : splendid ; excellent.

*tadaima* : at present ; soon ; just now.

*zehi* : by all means ; without fail.

1. *Nani shimbun wo goran ni narimasu ka ?* (D). 2. *Yamada San no banchi wa o tō-san ga go zonji de gozaimasu* (D). 3. *Nii-san wa inaka e o-ide nas'tte kara, taihen o fūtori desu ne* (C). 4. *Saitō San wa Ei-go wa go zonji de (wa) gozaimasen ga, Fūransū-go wa taisō yoku o deki no hazu de gozaimasu* (D). 5. *Tegami wo kakimashite gozaimasu ga, kore de yoroshiu gozaimashō ka ?* (D). 6. *Yamada San wa ku-ji ni wa o yasumi no hazu de gozaimasu kara, ima o-ide nasaimashite mo, o me ni kakaru koto wa dame de gozaimashō* (D). 7. *Oku-sama wa tadaima shimbun wo yonde irasshaimasu* (D). 8. *Konaida Hana-ko San wo o tazune itashimashitara, Fūransū-go no hon wo o yomi de irasshaimashita* (D). 9. *Kondo o-ide kudasaimasu toki zehi o-jō-san wo o tsure mōshite kudasai* (D). 10. *Nani wo go shimpai nas'tte irasshaimasu ka ?* (D). 11. *Yamada San ga Rondon no shimbun wo totte o-ide no hazu da kara, sengetsu no tōka no wo karite kite o kure* (A). 12. *Sendatte gaikoku ni iru ane ga shashin wo yokoshimashita kara, o me ni kakemashō ka ?* (D). 13. *Hai, haiken itashimashō* (D). 14. *Kinō chōdai itashimashita kudamono wa makoto ni kekkō de gozaimashita* (D). 15. *Tarō no sensei ni o me ni kakatte, sono koto wo mōshi-agete kudasai* (C). 16. *Byō-nin ga taisō netsu ga demashite gozaimasu kara, sugu ni o-ide kudasaimasu yō o tanomi mōshimasu* (D). 17. *Kono tegami wo o tō-san ni o me ni kakete kudasai* (C). 18. *Danna sama wa nan-ji no kisha de o kaeri de irasshaimasu ka ?* (D). 19. *Mada tegami ga mairimasen kara, wakarimasen* (D). 20. *Kono-goro Suzuki San wa issshōkemmei de Fūransū-go wo go benkyō de irassharu sō de gozaimasu* (D). 21. *Watashi wa Itō desu ga, go shujin ni o me ni kakaritai desu* (C). 22. *Dōzo ano hon wo haiken sashite kudasaimasen ka ?* (D). 23. *O tō-san wa atama ga itakutte irassharu kara, jama wo shi-nai yō ni o shi nasai* (A).

1. What newspaper do you read ? 2. Your father knows Mr Yamada's address. 3. Your brother has become much stouter since he is in the country. 4. Mr Saitō doesn't know English, but I understand that he knows French very well. 5. I have written the letter, will it do ? 6. I understand Mr Yamada goes to bed at nine, so you couldn't see him even if you went to his house now. 7. My mistress is reading the newspaper now. 8. When I went to see Miss Hana-ko the other day, she was reading a French book. 9. When you come next time be sure to bring your daughter with you. 10. What are you worrying about ? 11. I have reason to believe that Mr Yamada takes in a London newspaper, go and ask him to lend me the paper of the 10th of last month. 12. My sister who is abroad sent her photograph the other day, would you like to see it ? 13. Yes, please show it to me. 14. The fruit you kindly gave me yesterday was simply exquisite. 15. Go to Tarō's master and tell him that, (what we've been speaking about). 16. The patient has developed a high fever ; so I beseech you to come immediately. 17. Please show this letter to your father. 18. By what o'clock train is your master returning ? 19. I haven't received a letter yet, so I don't know. 20. I hear Mr Suzuki is studying French very hard. 21. My name is Itō, can I see your master ? 22. Would you please show me that book ? 23. Your father has a headache, so don't bother him in any way.

## EXERCISE 79.

Honorific nouns. Study 364—378.

*kurō* : trouble ; labour.

*o-itoma* : leave ; discharge.

(*o*) *seji* : politeness ; civility ;  
flattery.

*sake-nomi* : drunkard.

*sumu* : to be easy in mind ; (especially  
used in the neg. in sentences said to  
beg somebody's pardon).

*ainiku* : unfortunately.

*wari ni* : relatively ; comparatively.

1. *Ano onna wa sake-nomi wo teishu ni motte shijū kurō shīte iru* (B). 2. *Yado wa tadaima Kōbe e mairimashite, rusu de gozaimasū* (D). 3. *Ano sentaku-ya no o-kami-san wa o seji ga ii* (B). 4. *Taku wa nichiyō ni wa itsū mo kodomo wo tsurete Ueno e sampo ni mairimasū* (D). 5. *Dōzo anata no o shashin wo ichi-mai kudasai* (D). 6. *Omae wa ikura itte mo o-shaberi ga naora-nakereba hima wo yaru* (A). 7. *Kyō wa taihen o samū gozaimasū* (D). 8. *Kono kutsu wa o yasui wari ni jōbu ni dekite orimasū* (D). 9. *Gaikoku-go wo go benkyō nasaru nara, o wakai toki ni o hajime nasaru hō ga yoroshiū gozaimasū* (D). 10. *O-kage sama de Tarō ga taisō jōbu ni narimashita* (D). 11. *Kinō wa O Kiku wo gakkō e tsurete itte kudas'ite dōmo o sewa sama deshita* (C). 12. *Go-kurō sama desū ga, kono nimotsū wo nikai e agete kudasai* (C). 13. *O jama itashimashita, mō o-itoma itashimashō* (D). 14. *Go-busata itashimashite, makoto ni sumimasen* (D). 15. *Ainiku tadaima kono kami wa gozaimasen, dōmo o kinodoku sama de gozaimasū* (D). 16. *Moshi o isogashiū gozaimasen deshītara kono tegami wo Ei-go ni yaku-shite itadakitō gozaimasū* (D). 17. *Go-busata shite orimashita ga, mina-san o kawari wa gozaimasen ka?* (D). 18. *Arigatō gozaimasū, o-kage sama de minna jōbu de gozaimasū* (D). 19. *Danna sama wa kaisha ni itte irasshaimasū ka?* (D). 20. *Taku wa kono-goro karada ga warui to mōshimashite, kongetsū kara, kaisha wo yamemashita* (D). 21. *Ano onna no teishu wa daiku da* (B). 22. *Tonari no o-kami-san wa o seji ga nakute sūki desū* (C).

1. That woman has got a drunkard for a husband with the result that she is always in some trouble or other. 2. My husband is not at home, he has gone to Kōbe. 3. That laundry-man's wife is very civil and well-spoken. 4. My husband always takes the children for a walk to Ueno on Sunday. 5. Please give me your photograph. 6. It's no use speaking to you, so if you don't correct yourself of talking so much, I shall have to dismiss you. 7. It's very cold today. 8. These boots are cheap and considering the price, they are strongly made. 9. If you are going to study a foreign language you'd better start while you are young. 10. Thanks to you Tarō is now quite strong. 11. Thank you for kindly taking Kiku to school yesterday. 12. I am very sorry to trouble you, but would you please take these bags upstairs? 13. Excuse me for having interrupted you; I will now take my leave. 14. I've been sadly remiss about calling upon you, I am really quite ashamed of myself. 15. I am sorry but unfortunately I have no paper like this at present. 16. If you are not busy now, I wish you would translate this letter into English for me. 17. I hope you'll excuse my not having called upon you lately; how is everybody at home? 18. Thanks (to you) everybody is quite well. 19. Does your husband go to the office? 20. My husband (says he) has not been well lately, he left off going to the office from the beginning of this month. 21. That woman's husband is a carpenter. 22. I like that woman next door, she's not given to flattery.



## EXERCISE 80.

Postpositions and Quasi-postpositions. Study 379--388.

*kagen* : state of one's health.

*shokuji* : a meal.

*sōdan* : consultation.

*unchin* : charge for transportation ;  
carriage ; cartage.

*noroi* : slow (in a bad sense).

*tachi-domaru* : to stop while walking.

*kawari* : alteration ; instead of ; on the  
other hand.

1. *Kono hon wa dare ni de mo hoshii hito ni ageru no-desū* (C). 2. *Shinda no wa ōki na inu desū ka* ? (C). 3. *Iie, ōki na no de wa arimasen, chiisa na hō desū* (C). 4. *Sono jibiki wo uru no wa nī-san ni sōdan shīte kara no koto ni nasai* (A). 5. *Kono nimotsū wo kisha de okuritai no desū ga, Niigata made no unchin wa ikura desū* ? (C). 6. *Sumimasen ga, shokuji wo shimasū aida o machi kudasai* (C). 7. *Kono empitsū wa takai kawari ni shina ga ii* (B). 8. *Chōbei wa nani wo shīte mo noroi koto wa noroi ga, sono kawari ni teinei da* (B). 9. *Hashi no ue de inu ga kenka wo shīte iru to soba wo tōru hito ga minna tachi-domatte mite imashita ; (soko no soba).* (C). 10. *O kagen ga warui nara watashi ga kawari ni kai-mono ni itte kimashō ; (anata no kawari).* (C). 11. *Kono niwa wa dare ga mite mo ii no desū ka* ? (C). 12. *Hai, yoroshiū gozaimasū, haitte naka wo goran kudasai* (D). 13. *Tansū no ue no omocha wa tonari no o-jō-san ni ageru tsumori de katte kita no desū* (C). 14. *Kimi-ko San no uchi wa ano yūbin-kyoku no ura da* (B). 15. *Ginkō wa hashi no mukō ja nai, kotechi da* (B). 16. *Enoshima e wa Kamakura kara de mo, Fujisawa kara de mo ikaremasū* (C). 17. *Kore wa anata no tokei desū ka* ? (C). 18. *Iie, watashi no wa sonna ōki na n' ja arimasen* (C). 19. *Kono tegami wo dasū no wa Yamada San ni misete kara ni shiyō* (B). 20. *Ano yama no ue ni yuki ga arimasū ka* ? (C). 21. *E, natsū de mo arimasū* (C). 22. *Hon-ya no mae ni kuroi ōki na inu ga ita* (B). 23. *Ane wa atama ga itai to mōshimasū kara, watakushi ga kawari ni mukae ni mairimashita* (D). 24. *Ano mise de kai-mono wo shīte kimasū kara, sono aida o machi kudasai* (C).

1. I'll give a copy of this book to whoever wants one. 2. Was it the big dog that died ? 3. No, it wasn't the big one, it was the little one. 4. Consult your brother before selling that dictionary. 5. I want to send this piece of luggage by train, what would the charge be to Niigata ? 6. Excuse me, but would you mind waiting while I have my dinner ? 7. This pencil is dear, but on the other hand the quality is good. 8. There's no denying that Chōbei takes a long time about everything, but on the other hand he works very carefully. 9. Two dogs were fighting on the bridge, and all the passers-by stopped to look at them. 10. If you are not feeling well I'll go and do the shopping for you. 11. May anybody visit this garden ? 12. Yes, please go inside and see the interior. 13. I bought the toy which is on the chest of drawers with the intention of giving it to the little girl next door. 14. Miss Kimi-ko's house is at the back of that post office. 15. The bank is not on the other side of the bridge, it's on this side. 16. You can go to Enoshima either from Kamakura or from Fujisawa. 17. Is this your watch ? 18. No, mine is not such a big one. 19. I won't send this letter until I've shown it to Mr Yamada. 20. Is there any snow on the top of that mountain ? 21. Yes, there's snow even in summer. 22. There was a big black dog in front of the bookseller's. 23. As my sister (says she) has a headache, I have come to meet you in her stead. 24. I'm just going to that shop to buy something, please wait till I come back.

# EXERCISE 81.

## Wa and Ga. Study 389—392.

(o) *bon* : tray.  
*garasū* : glass.  
*kawa* : leather.

*ushiro* : the back ; behind.  
*koware'ru* (intr.) : to break ; be broken  
 or ruined.

1. *Kore wa chichi ga seiyō kara tsurete kita inu de gozaimasū* (D). 2. *Mizu wa dono gurai iremashō ka?* (C). 3. *Chichi shichi-bu ni mizu sam-bu irete o kure* (A). 4. *Yamada San no ushiro de hon wo yonde iru hito wa donata deshō?* (C). 5. *O bon wa mono-oki ni arimasū kara, dashite kudasai* (C). 6. *Hoka no hito ga ko-nakutte mo Suzuki San wa kitto kuru* (B). 7. *Kore wa anata no te-bukuro de gozaimashō ka?* (D). 8. *Iie, ano kawa no ga watashi no desū* (C). 9. *Kore ga o-jō-san no o-ide nasaru gakkō de gozaimasū ka?* (D). 10. *Iie, kore wa uchi no musūme no gakkō de wa gozaimasen ; Ueno kōen no shita ni aru no ga musūme no iku gakkō de gozaimasū* (D). 11. *Dare ga ano mado no garasū wo kowashita no da?* (A). 12. *Jishin de kowareta no de gozaimasū* (D). 13. *Watashi wa Hakone yori (wa) Chūzenji ga zutto sūki de gozaimasū* (D). 14. *Kane ga nakutte ryokō ga deki-nai no ka mo shiremasen* (C). 15. *Tarō wa doko ga warui no darō?* (B). 16. *Ha ga itai no deshō* (C). 17. *Fuji-san no takasa wa dono gurai arimasū ka?* (C). 18. *Kono tegami wa Hakodate kara koko made yokka kakarimashita* (C). 19. *Satō ga mō gozaimasen kara, katte mairimashō* (D). 20. *Tanaka San wa irasshaimashita ga, Suzuki San wa mada o mie ni narimasen* (D). 21. *Dono jibiki ga ii darō?* (B). 22. *Kore ga ti yō da* (B). 23. *Kochira mo nichiyō ni ame ga furimashita ka?* (C). 24. *Ame wa furimasen deshita ga, ō-kaze de soto e deru koto ga dekimasen deshita* (C). 25. *Tatte iru no wa Yamada San ja arimasen ; tēburu no soba ni koshi-kakete iru no ga Yamada San desū* (C). 26. *Inu ga kaette kimashita ka?* (C). 27. *Kuroi no wa kaerimashita ga, shiroi no wa hōbō sagasase-mashita keredomo, mada miemasen* (C). 28. *Inu ya neko ga o sūki desū ka?* (C). 29. *Inu wa sūki desū ga, neko wa iya desū* (C). 30. *Dore ga anata no o kutsu de gozaimasū ka?* (D). 31. *Sono akai no ga boku no da* (B).

1. This is a dog my father brought from abroad. 2. How much water shall I put in? 3. Put in seven parts of milk and three parts of water. 4. I wonder who the gentleman is, reading a book behind Mr Yamada? 5. There are some trays in the pantry, take them out. 6. Even if nobody else comes, Mr Suzuki is sure to come. 7. Are these your gloves? 8. No, those leather ones are mine. 9. Is this the school your daughter goes to? 10. No, this is not the school she goes to, she goes to the school at the foot of Ueno park. 11. Who broke (the glass of) that window? 12. It was broken in the earthquake. 13. I much prefer Chūzenji to Hakone. 14. I dare say the reason that he can't go travelling is that he has no money. 15. What's the matter with Tarō? 16. I think he has a toothache. 17. How high is Mount Fuji? 18. This letter took three days to come from Hakodate here? 19. There's no more sugar, so I'll go and buy some. 20. Mr Tanaka is here, but Mr Suzuki hasn't come yet. 21. Which dictionary is the best? 22. This one appears to be the best. 23. Did it also rain here on Sunday? 24. It didn't rain but the wind was so strong it was impossible to go out of doors. 25. Mr Yamada is not the man standing, he's the man sitting near the table. 26. Have the dogs come back? 27. The black dog has come back, but the white one is not to be found anywhere. 28. Do you like dogs and cats? 29. I am fond of dogs but I don't like cats. 30. Which are your boots? 31. Those brown ones are mine.



## EXERCISE 82.

*De and Ni. Study 393.*

*hayashi* : wood ; forest.  
*hiru-meshi* : lunch.  
*kage* : shadow ; shelter.  
*tani* : valley.

*yasai* : vegetables.  
*osoroshii* : fearful.  
*ureshii* : joyful.  
*same'ru* (intr.) : to wake.

1. *Ginkō de jū-nen ijō awa-nakatta tomodachi ni atte, ureshikatta* (B). 2. *Hakone ni is-shūkan hodo tomatte, sore kara hōbō aruku tsumori desū* (C). 3. *Yasai wa itsū de mo ano kado no mise de kaimasū* (C). 4. *Onaka ga suite ga, doko de hiru-meshi wo tabeyō?* (B). 5. *Ano hayashi no naka de tabeyō ja nai ka?* (B). 6. *Watashi no mura ni wa gakkō ga arimasen kara, minna tonari mura no gakkō e iku no desū* (C). 7. *Anata no tokoro ni ka ga takusan imasū ka?* (C). 8. *Kagen ga warukereba aruite ika-nai de, kuruma de o-ide nasai* (B). 9. *O tō-san ni sō iwaremashita* (C). 10. *Yūbe no arashi de me ga samemasen deshita ka?* (C). 11. *Anata-gata no naka ni (or de) Chōsen e itta koto ga aru hito ga imasū ka?* (C). 12. *Sono hako wa ki de dekite iru no desū ka?* (C). 13. *Konaida o me ni kaketa hana-ike wa ni-jū-yen de katta no de gozaimasū ga, ni-jū-hachi-yen ni urimashita* (D). 14. *Ano yama no kage wa fūkai tani de, osoroshii tokoro de gozaimasū* (D). 15. *Are wa kinu ni miemasū ga, honto no kinu ja nai no desū* (C). 16. *Kono machi ni hoteru ga gozaimasū ka?* (D). 17. *Yado-ya nara gozaimasū ga, hoteru wa gozaimasen* (D). 18. *Ano ki no kage de shibaraku yasumō* (B). 19. *Aruite mairimashō ka?* (D). 20. *Osoku naru to ikemasen kara, densha de mairimashō* (D). 21. *Shina-jin ni wa Ei-go no jōzu na hito ga takusan arimasū* (C). 22. *Kono koppu wa muttsū ni-yen de katta no desū* (C). 23. *Ano mise ni wa taihen Ei-go no ūmai hito ga hitori iru* (B). 24. *Kesa mise e iku toki densha de Yamada San ni atta* (B). 25. *Donata ka o ko san ga go byōki de irasshaimasū ka?* (D). 26. *Jirō ga shi-go-nichi mae kara kagen ga warukutte nete imasū, keredomo shim-pai na byōki de wa arimasen* (C).

1. I had the pleasure of meeting at the bank a friend whom I had not seen for more than ten years. 2. I intend to stop about a week at Hakone and after that to go touring on foot. 3. I always buy my vegetables at that corner shop. 4. I'm hungry, where shall we eat our lunch? 5. Let's eat it in that wood. 6. There's no school in our village, so the children have to go to the school in the neighbouring village. 7. Are there many mosquitos in your house? 8. If you are not feeling well don't walk, go by rikisha. 9. I was told so by my father. 10. Weren't you woken by the wind last night? 11. Have any of you ever been to Korea? 12. Is that box made of wood? 13. The flower-vase I showed you the other day I bought for twenty yen, and I sold it for twenty-eight yen. 14. On the other side of that mountain there's a deep ravine, it's an awe-inspiring place. 15. That looks like silk, but it's not real silk. 16. Is there a hotel in this town? 17. There are native inns, but there is no foreign-style hotel. 18. Let's rest a while under that tree (in the shade of that tree). 19. Shall we go on foot? 20. As it wouldn't do to arrive late, let's go by tram-car. 21. A great many of the Chinese can speak English quite well. 22. I bought six of these tumblers for two yen. 23. There's a man at that shop who speaks very good English. 24. This morning, going to the office, I met Mr Yamada in the tram-car. 25. Is one of your children ill? 26. Jirō is not feeling well, he has been in bed four or five days; however, it's nothing to worry about.

## EXERCISE 83.

### Adverbs. Study 394—403.

*mihon* : sample.

*sekitan* : coal.

*sūtekki* : walking-stick.

*nige'ru* : to escape ; run away.

*tate'ru* : to set up ; build.

*yaku* (trans.) : to burn.

*chitto* : a little ; bit.

*-darake* : all over ; full of.

1. *Kore wa mihon to maru de chigaimasū* (C). 2. *Uchi no neko wa shi-hiki ko wo unda no desū ga, jōbu de ikite iru no wa kono neko ip-piki kiri desū* (C). 3. *Suzuki San ni wa ni-san-do atta kiri de, ammaru yoku shirimasen* (C). 4. *Byōnin ga kite ita kimono wa nokora-zu yaite shimai nasai* (A). 5. *Kawa no mukō ni bonyari to mieru no ga Suzuki San ga atarashiku tateta uchi da* (B). 6. *Dare ni de mo wakaru yō ni hakkiri to kaite oki nasai* (A). 7. *Watashi wa Ei-go no hon wa yomeru keredomo, hanasū koto wa chitto mo deki-nai* (B). 8. *Doko ka no otoko no ko ga uchi no nashi wo totte, don-don nigete itte shimatta* (B). 9. *Kono michi wa ishi-darake desū kara, soro-soro arukimashō* (C). 10. *Sekitan wa mō nai ka?* (A). 11. *Iie, mada fūta-tsūki tsūkai hodo gozaimasū* (D). 12. *Sayō de gozaimasū, mō chitto mo gozaimasen* (D). 13. *Anna hidoi yūbe no jishin ni me ga same-nakatta no desū ka?* (C). 14. *E, chitto mo shirimasen deshita ; nan-ji goro deshita?* (C). 15. *Kinō kono sūtekki wo wasurete oite irash'ita no wa anata de wa gozaimasen ka?* (D). 16. *Iie, boku ja arimasen* (C). 17. *Kamakura e nichiyō ni ika-nakatta no desū ne?* (C). 18. *Iie, itte kimashita ; dare ga sonna koto wo imashita?* (C). 19. *Iie, kōen de anata wo mimashita kara, sō hitori de omotta no desū* (C). 20. *Konna ni ame ga fureba Hana-ko San wa irasshara-nai ka mo shiremasen ne?* (C). 21. *Iie, ano kata wa o tenki ga warukutte mo kitto o-ide nasaimasū* (D). 22. *Mō tamago wa mitsū kiri nai no?* (B). 23. *Hai, mō sore kiri de gozaimasū* (D). 24. *Ashi ga itai kara, soro-soro ika-nakereba nara-nai* (B). 25. *Tarō to Jirō wa kyōdai da keredomo maru de kao ga chigau* (B). 26. *Isshōkemmei ni shite mo deki-nakereba shikata ga nai kara, dare ka ni tetsūdatte morattara ii deshō* (C).

1. This is entirely different from the sample. 2. Our cat had four kittens, but this is the only one that is still alive and strong. 3. I don't know Mr Suzuki very well, I've only met him two or three times. 4. Burn absolutely all the clothes used by the deceased. 5. The house you see dimly the other side of the river is the one Mr Suzuki recently built. 6. Write it clearly so that everybody can understand. 7. I can read English but I can't speak it at all. 8. Some boy I don't know stole some of our pears and ran away as quickly as he could. 9. This road is nothing but stones, let's walk slowly. 10. Is there no more coal left? 11. Yes, there's enough for about two months. 12. No, there's not any left. 13. Do you mean to say that severe earthquake last night didn't wake you? 14. No, I didn't feel it at all. What o'clock was it? 15. Somebody left a stick behind yesterday. Isn't it yours? 16. No, it's not mine. 17. So you didn't go to Kamakura on Sunday. 18. Oh yes, I did, who said I didn't go? 19. Nobody said so, but I thought I saw you in the park. 20. If it continues raining like this, I don't suppose Miss Hana-ko will come. 21. Oh yes, she's sure to come no matter how bad the weather is. 22. What, are there only three eggs left? 23. Yes, that is all. 24. I can only walk slowly, my feet hurt me. 25. Tarō and Jirō are brothers but they don't look like it. 26. If you can't do it by yourself no matter how much you try, you had better get somebody to help you. What else can you do?



## EXERCISE 84.

Conjunctions. Study 404; 405.

(o) *kashi* : sweets ; pastry.  
*kemono* : quadruped.  
*undō* : movement ; exercise.  
*uta* : song ; poem.

*bimbō na* : poor.  
*kau* : to keep (of animals).  
*utau* : to sing.  
*kawari-gawari* : by turns.

1. *Tarō to Jirō wa kawari-gawari o-jii-san ni shimbun wo yonde kikasemasū* (C). 2. *Oji wa iro-iro no tori ya kemono wo katte imasū* (C). 3. *Densha to ka denwa to ka iu yō na mono wa kono-goro dekita mono da* (B). 4. *Omae wa amari o kashi da no, kudamono da no wo tabe-nai yō ni shi nasai* (A). 5. *Brown San wa Nihon-go wo hanasū koto mo kaku koto mo dekimasū* (C). 6. *San-sen no kette wo jū-mai ni, hagaki wo ni-jū-mai katte kite o kure* (A). 7. *Watashi wa asa-ban undō no tame ni ano kawa no tokoro made iku koto ni shite imasū* (C). 8. *Yamada San wa Rondon e itte, gakkō e hairu no da to imashita* (C). 9. *Kono hon wa omoshirokutte, tame ni narimasū* (C). 10. *Omae ga watashi no rusu ni deta no de doko e itta no darō to omotte ita* (A). 11. *Asa hayaku okireba karada mo jōbu ni nari, benkyō mo yoku dekiru no desū* (C). 12. *Chichi wa shōsetsū mo kaku shi, e mo kakimasū* (C). 13. *Ano mise de wa hon mo ureba, shimbun mo uru* (B). 14. *Hon wo yondari, uta wo utattari shite, omoshiroku asobimashō* (C). 15. *Ano hito wa bimbō desū, sore ni karada ga yowai no desū kara, donna ni komatte iru ku shiremasen* (C). 16. *Kono tegami wo motte Yamada San no tokoro e itte o-ide nasai ; soshite, henji wo moratte kuru no desū* (B). 17. *Watashi wa Kyōto e mo itta shi, Nara e mo itta ga, mada Kōbe e wa itta koto ga nai* (B). 18. *Kotshi no natsū wa yama e nobottari, ryokō shitari shite, jitsū ni omoshiro gozaimashita* (D). 19. *Kono kire wa yasukutte jōbu desū* (C). 20. *Tori wa sūki desū ga, inu ya neko wa iya desū kara, kaimasen* (C). 21. *Chichi ni satō ni koppu wo fūtatsū motte o-ide* (A). 22. *Ano toki kara otōto ni wa atta koto mo nai shi, tegami mo kimasen* (C).

1. Tarō and Jirō read the newspaper to their grandfather by turns. 2. My uncle keeps several kinds of birds and animals. 3. Electric cars, telephones, and such like things are all modern inventions. 4. Don't eat too many sweets and fruit. 5. Mr Brown can both speak and write Japanese. 6. Go and buy ten three-sen stamps and twenty postcards. 7. For the sake of exercise, every morning and every evening I go as far as that river. 8. Mr Yamada said that he went to London and entered college there. 9. This book is amusing and it is instructive. 10. You went out while I was away, and I was wondering where you had gone to. 11. If you get up early in the morning it would be good for the health and you will be able to study better. 12. My father writes novels and he also paints pictures. 13. At that shop they sell books and newspapers. 14. Let's amuse ourselves by reading books and singing songs. 15. That man is poor and his health is bad into the bargain : I really couldn't tell you how much he suffers. 16. Take this letter to Mr Yamada's place and bring back an answer. 17. I've been to Kyōto and I've been to Nara, but I've not yet been to Kōbe. 18. Last summer I climbed mountains and I went travelling. I really had a very good time. 19. This cloth is cheap and strong. 20. I like birds, but I hate dogs and cats, so I don't keep any. 21. Bring me some milk, some sugar, and two tumblers. 22. Since then I haven't seen my brother nor heard from him.

## EXERCISE 85.

### Conjunctions. Study 406; 407.

*ban* : guard.

*kōhii* : coffee.

*sei* : stature.

*akarui* : well-lighted ; bright.

*hikui* : low.

*otonashii* : quiet ; well-behaved.

*mujaki na* : innocent ; simple.

*shimeppoi* : damp.

*shirase'ru* : to inform ; tell.

*chanto* : perfectly ; correctly ; exactly.

1. *Kono o heya wa hirokutte akarū gozaimasū ne* (D). 2. *Tonari no Shinobu San wa taihen mujaki de kawaii ko desū* (C). 3. *Ano hito wa yasete ite sei ga takai* (B). 4. *Koko wa samukutte, shimeppoi tokoro desū kara, karada no tame ni yoku nai deshō* (C). 5. *Isu ni koshi-kakete iru fūtotta sei no hikui hito wa, watashi no itoko de, Yamada to iu no desū* (C). 6. *O cha ka kōhii ka agemashō ka?* (C). 7. *Ikitaī nara, dempō ka, denwa de shirasete kudasai* (C). 8. *Tōkyō e itta no wa anata desū ka, nii-san desū ka, hakkiri itte kudasai* (C). 9. *Te ni aru mono wo mise-nakereba kono hon wo yara-nai* (A). 10. *Ano onna wa teishu to wakarete kara shichi-hachi-nen ni naru darō* (B). 11. *Tamago wa chiisakutte mo, ōkikutte mo, atarashii no nara ii* (B). 12. *Anna hito-tachi ga kite mo ko-nakutte mo kamau mon' desū ka?* (C). 13. *Watashi wa ano hito no ban wo shite i-nai kara, itsū doko e itta ka shira-nai* (B). 14. *Sono o kata wa doko no nan to ossharu o kata de gozaimasū ka?* (D). 15. *Uchi no nashi wo totta kodomo wa doko no dare da ka chanto wakatte iru* (B). 16. *Watashi no uchi wa semakutte, fuben desū kara, koshitai to omou no desū ga, naka-naka ii uchi ga mitsukarimasen* (C). 17. *Senoe San wa kirei na otonashii musūme san da* (B). 18. *Kimura San no o-jō-san ni o kashi ka, kudamono ka agete o kure* (A). 19. *Tetsudatte moraitai koto ga aru kara, O Matsū de mo O Yuki de mo yokoshite kudasai* (C). 20. *Onna ni wa totemo motemasen kara, Tarō ka Jirō ni tanominashō* (C). 21. *Hachi-ji no kisha ni nora-nakereba ma ni awa-nai ka mo shire-nai* (B). 22. *O Kiyo San wa mō kodomo ga san-yo-nin aru sō da* (B).

1. This room is very big and bright, isn't it? 2. Miss Shinobu from next door is a very innocent and charming child. 3. That man is thin and tall. 4. As this place is cold and damp I don't think it's good for the health. 5. That fat, short man sitting in the chair is my cousin, he's called Yamada. 6. May I offer you some tea or some coffee? 7. If you wish to go let me know by telegram or by telephone. 8. Please tell me clearly who it was who went to Tōkyō, was it you or was it your brother? 9. Show me what you've got in your hand, or I won't give you this book. 10. I think it's about seven or eight years since that woman has been separated from her husband. 11. So long as the eggs are fresh it doesn't matter whether they are small or big. 12. What does it matter, whether people like that come or not. 13. I'm not in charge of that man so I don't know when he went nor where. 14. Where is that man from and what's his name? 15. I know exactly who the boy was who stole our pears and I know where he lives. 16. My house is small and inconvenient so I want to move somewhere else, but I cannot find a house to suit me. 17. Miss Senoe is a very pretty girl and she has a very gentle disposition. 18. Offer Miss Kimura some sweets or some fruit. 19. I want somebody to help me, so send Matsu or Yuki here. 20. It's impossible for a woman to carry this, so I'll ask Tarō or Jirō to carry it for me. 21. You must take the eight o'clock train, or I am afraid you'll be late. 22. I hear that Kiyo has already got three or four children.



## EXERCISE 86.

Interjections. Study 408—410.

After a gerund *-te wa* and *-de wa* are familiarly contracted respectively into *-cha* and *-ja*.

*hi* : fire.

*iu koto* : something which is said ;  
commands.

*iu koto wo kiku* : to obey.

*machidō* : waiting a long time.

*tōri* : way ; manner.

*heiki na* : undisturbed ; indifferent.

*yatara na* : careless ; reckless.

*butsū* : to beat (men or animals).

*tōtō* : finally ; at last.

*yappari* : also ; too.

1. *Kore, sō yatara ni hito wo waratcha ike-nai yo* (B). 2. *Ā, tōtō futte kita* (B). 3. *Sore goran, watashi no itta tōri da* (B). 4. *De mo, anna ii tenki datta no desū mono. Masaka furu to wa omoimasen deshita wa* (C, fem.). 5. *Komban wa kaze ga tsuyoi kara, hi wo ki wo tsuke-nai to ike-nai yo* (A). 6. *Korā, iu koto wo kikanai to butsū zo !* (A). 7. *O machidō sama ; sā, ikimashō* (C). 8. *Kono arashi ja totemo fune wa de-nai deshō nē ?* (C). 9. *Nāni, kono gurai no arashi wa heiki sa* (B). 10. *Ā, komatta !* (B). 11. *Nani ? Dō nas'tta no desū ?* (C). 12. *Kono tegami ga ne, dōmo yome-nai no desū yo* (C). 13. *Mā, sonna koto desū ka ? Dore, o mise nasai, yonde agemasū kara* (C). 14. *Naruhodo ! kore wa mattaku yomi-nikui tegami desū ne* (C). 15. *Sore, yappari wakara-nai ja arimasen ka ?* (C). 16. *Yoshi, ja Satō San ni yonde moraō* (B). 17. *Ano ne, tonari no Haruo San ga asūko no hashi no soba de koronde ashi ni ōki na kega wo shita n' desū yo* (C). 18. *Mā, sō desū ka ? kawaisō ni nē* (C). 19. *Sonna abunai koto wo shite, kega wo shitara, sore koso taihen da* (B). 20. *Nāni, daijōbu sa !* (B). 21. *Ano hon wo yonde mo yō gozaimasū ka ?* (D). 22. *Ā, ii to mo* (A). 23. *Kimura San wa nam-banchi desū ka ne ?* (C). 24. *Sayō. Asūko wa, ē to, hachi-banchi deshō yo* (C). 25. *Moshi, moshi, kore wa anata no ja arimasen ka ?* (C). 26. *Ara ! Hana-ko San deshō ? Mā, shibaraku* (C). 27. *Mā, ano tori no hayai koto !* (C).

1. I say, you mustn't go about laughing at people like that. 2. What a pity. After all it's begun to rain. 3. There you are. It's just as I told you. 4. Well, but the weather was so fine ; I thought it impossible that it would turn out rainy. 5. As it is very windy this evening, you must be careful about the fire. 6. Take care, if you don't do what you are told, I'll beat you. 7. Sorry to have kept you so long ; well, let's be going. 8. In this gale, I suppose it is impossible for the steamer to leave ; isn't that so ? 9. Oh nonsense, there's nothing out-of-the-way in a wind like this. 10. Oh, I don't know what to do ! 11. What is it ? What's happened ? 12. I cannot read this letter. 13. What ! Is that all your trouble ? Show me the letter, I'll read it for you. 14. You are right ; this letter is really very difficult to read. 15. There you are ; you can't read it either. 16. All right then ; let's ask Mr Satō to read it. 17. I say, Master Haruo from next door fell down near that bridge and hurt his leg badly. 18. Oh, you don't say so ! Poor fellow ! 19. If you do a dangerous thing like that and hurt yourself, it would be a serious matter. 20. Oh, there's no fear. 21. May I read that book ? 22. Oh, certainly. 23. I say ! what's the number of Mr Kimura's house ? 24. H'm... that house, ... let me see ... why, I believe it's number eight. 25. I say, isn't this yours ? 26. What ! is it Miss Hana-ko ? Well, it is a long time since I saw you ! 27. How fast that bird flies !

## EXERCISE 87.

Construction of sentences. Study 411—413.

*aki-chi* : unoccupied ground.  
*kembutsū* : sight-seeing.  
*koe* : voice.  
*koe wo kake'ru* : to call out.  
*zutsū* : headache.  
*kurushii* : agonizing ; painful.

*atsumaru* (intr.) : to assemble.  
*kimaru* (intr.) : to be settled, decided.  
*kime'ru* (trans.) : to settle ; decide.  
*ki ga suru* : to be under the impression ;  
 believe.  
*sakuban* : last night.

1. *Muzukashii kono hon ga dō shite watashi ni wakarimashō ?* (C). 2. *Anata ni kono hako ga motemasū ka ?* (C). 3. *Boku ni wa totemo mote-nai* (B). 4. *Brown San ga kuni e o kaeri nasaru no de, ano o uchi wa Suzuki San de o kai nasaru koto ni kimatta sō de gozaimasū* (D). 5. *Yasuda ginkō de wa ura no aki-chi wo uru koto ni kimeta to iu hanashi da* (B). 6. *Ani mo ane mo Kyōto e kembutsū ni ikimashita ga, watashi dake ikimasen deshita* (C). 7. *Sakuban asūko e atsumatta hito wa ni-hyaku-nin gurai atta to omoimasū* (C). 8. *O Matsū wa zutsū ga suru to itte nete iru ga, yoppodo kurushi-sō da kara, isha wo yonde mite morawanakereba narumai* (B). 9. *Yamada San wa tabun sakana ga o kirai datta to omou ga, hakkiri shi-nai kara, kiite miru hō ga ii* (B). 10. *Ano kata wa Nihongo ga wakara-nai kara, dare ka ni tanonde tegami wo Ei-go ni naoshite moratte o dashi nasai* (B). 11. *Tanaka San ni ni-do mo tegami wo dashite mo mada henji ga ko-nai ga, dō ka shita no ka mo shire-nai* (B). 12. *Ha ga itakutte kinō Tōkyō e ikimasen deshita kara, kawari ni kanai ga ikimashita* (C). 13. *Kyō uchi no mae wo tōtta musūme ga dōmo mita koto ga aru yō na ki ga suru no de, koe wo kakete miru to O Kiku San datta no sa* (B). 14. *Itsū mo kau mise no nashi wa yasūkutte mo ūmaku arimasen deshita kara, Kanda made itte kimashita* (C). 15. *Karita kogatana wo otoshitara, onnaji no wo katte kaeseba ii deshō keredomo, karita mono wa daiji ni shite, otosa-nai yō ni ki wo tsūkeru hazu desū ; tabi-tabi itta ja arimasen ka ?* (B).

1. How do you expect me to understand a difficult book like this ? 2. Can you lift this box ? 3. Oh no, it's much too heavy for me. 4. They say that as Mr Brown is returning home, Mr Suzuki has decided to buy his house. 5. I hear that the Yasuda Bank have decided to sell the unoccupied ground at the back of their premises. 6. My brother and my sister both went on a trip to Kyōto, I was the only one of the family who didn't go. 7. I think about two hundred men must have collected there last night. 8. Matsu is in bed with a headache ; as she seems to be in great pain I suppose we had better call a doctor. 9. I believe Mr Yamada doesn't like fish, however, as I'm not certain you had better inquire. 10. As that gentleman doesn't understand Japanese get somebody to translate your letter into English (and sent it). 11. Mr Tanaka hasn't answered yet although I've written him two letters. Perhaps he's ill or something. 12. I had a toothache yesterday, so I didn't go to Tōkyō ; my wife went instead. 13. A girl passed in front of our house today and I had a feeling I knew her, and when I called out to her, she turned out to be Miss Kiku. 14. The pears at the shop I usually go to were cheap but they weren't nice, so I went as far as Kanda (to see if I could get some better ones). 15. As you've lost the penknife you borrowed you must buy another one like it and return that instead ; then it will be all right : however, you ought to take proper care of the things you borrow and not lose them ; I've often told you so, haven't I ?



# EXERCISE 88.

## Ellipses. Study 414.

*basha* : carriage.

*hon-dana* : book-shelf.

*zasshi* : magazine ; periodical.

*bushō na* : lazy ; slovenly.

*tashika na* : safe ; certain.

*dempō wo utsū* : to send a telegram.

1. *Kinō Rondon kara kita zasshi wa doko. . . (desū ka) ? (C).* 2. *Nikai no hon-dana ni agete okimashita (C).* 3. *Basha yori kuruma no hō ga zutto sūki. . . (desū) (C).* 4. *Ashita made matte henji ga ko-nai nara, dempō wo uta-nakereba. . . (nara-nai) (B).* 5. *Dare ga anna hito no iu koto wo. . . (honto ni suru mon' desū ka) ? (C).* 6. *Moshi O Haru San ni o ai nasaimashitara, dōzo yoroshiku. . . (osshatte kudasai) (D).* 7. *O tenki ga yokereba dekiru no de gozaimasū keredomo. . . (o tenki ga warukereba dame de gozaimasū) (D).* 8. *Dōmo sumimasen ga, tōka ni wa tashika ni o kaeshi mōshimasū kara. . . (sore made dōzo o machi kudasai) (D).* 9. *Yamada San wa zuibun hidoi yo ; boku wo butte. . . (B).* 10. *Omae ga ike-nai no da, itsū de mo asūko no inu wo ijimeru kara. . . (butareta no da) (A).* 11. *Teishu ga jōbu ni natte kurereba hoka ni nanni mo komaru koto wa nai no de gozaimasū ga. . . (ainiku byōki de gozaimasū) (D).* 12. *Jibun de sureba ii no ni. . . (bushō shite jochū ni saseta) (B).* 13. *Anna kodomo ni kane wo motashite yaru no wa yoku nai koto de. . . (gozaimasū) (D).* 14. *Konnichi wa makoto ni ii o tenki de. . . (gozaimasū) (D).* 15. *Nani ? Tarō no iru tokoro ga wakatta to. . . (iu no desū ka) ? Sore wa nani yori. . . (ureshii koto desū) (C).* 16. *Kore ga anata no o kaki nas'ita e. . . (de gozaimasū ka) ? Mā, konna ni o jōzu ni. . . (o deki nasaru no desū ka) ? (D).* 17. *Hōbō sagashita no da keredomo. . . (nakattu) (B).* 18. *Ashita otōto wo tsurete agarimasū (D).* 19. *Imōto san wa. . . (ko-nai no desū ka) ? (C).* 20. *Imōto wa O Chiyo San to doko ka e iku yakūsoku wo shita sō desū kara. . . (tsurete koraremasen) (C).* 21. *O kai-mono. . . (ni o-ide nasaimasū ka) ? (C).* 22. *Iie, ginkō. . . (e iku no desū) (B).* 23. *Aruite desū ka. . . ? (Aruite o-ide nasaru no desū ka) ? (C).* 24. *Iie, ashi ga itai kara kuruma de. . . (iku) (B).*

1. Where's the London magazine that came yesterday ? 2. I put it on the book-shelf upstairs. 3. I much prefer a rikisha to a carriage. 4. If an answer doesn't come by tomorrow, I'll have to send a telegram. 5. Whoever's going to believe what that man says ? 6. If you meet Miss Haru please remember me kindly to her. 7. I can do it if the weather is fine but. . . (if the weather is bad I cannot). 8. I am ashamed of myself, but I'll return it to you on the tenth so. . . (please wait until then). 9. Mr Yamada is very cruel, he beat me. 10. You are a bad boy ; you are always worrying his dog. That's why. . . (he beat you). 11. If my husband were well I'd have nothing to worry me, however. . . (unluckily he's ill). 12. You ought to have done it yourself but. . . (you are lazy and got the servant to do it for you). 13. You oughtn't to give a child like that money to carry. 14. The weather is really very fine today. 15. What ? Do you say you know Tarō's address ? Nothing could give me greater pleasure. 16. Did you draw this picture ? I didn't know you were so clever. 17. I've looked everywhere, but. . . (I can't find it anywhere). 18. I'll come with my brother to visit you tomorrow. 19. And what about your sister ? 20. My sister has promised to go somewhere with Miss Chiyo, so. . . (I can't bring her). 21. Are you going shopping ? 22. No, I'm going to the bank. 23. Are you going to walk ? 24. No, my feet hurt me, so I'll take a rikisha.

## EXERCISE 89.

Negatives ; Interrogations ; Quotations. Study 415—429.

*basho* : place.

*bentō* : lunch ; light refreshment,  
usually enclosed in a box.

*yō* : business.

*deki-agaru* : to be finished.

*yurusu* : to pardon ; permit.

*uchi* : while ; within.

*'tte* : he says ; they say.

1. *Ano nimotsū wa omokutte hitori de wa motte ikare-nai kara, dare ka ni tetsudatte moraw-nakereba nara-nai* (B). 2. *Yamada San ga kyō wa bentō wo motte ko-nai sō da kara, uchi de gohan wo ageru shitaku wo shi-nakereba nara-nai* (B). 3. *Kippu wo motte ika-nakereba asūko wo mirare-nai no desū ka?* (C). 4. *Motte ika-nakereba nara-nai koto wa nai ga, kippu no aru hito no hō ga ii basho ni irareru no da* (B). 5. *Sono musūme no kawaiō na hanashi wo kiite, naka-nakatta hito wa hitori mo nakatta* (B). 6. *Wake wo hanaseba yurushite kure-nai koto wa nai deshō* (C). 7. *Sakki koko ni atta mono wo shira-nai hazu ga nai ja nai ka?* (A). 8. *Ano ko no chichi wa ano ko ga ūmare-nai mae ni shinda no de, oya no kao wo shira-nai no desū* (C). 9. *Satō San no atarashii uchi wa yatto deki-agatte, mada haira-nai uchi ni kaji de yakete shimatta no desū 'tte* (C). 10. *Oji san ga raigetsū irassharu 'te tegami ga kita no kai?* (A). 11. *Oji san ga arimasen yo : 'oba san ga o-ide ni naru' to itte yokoshita no desū yo* (C). 12. *Akio San ga 'komban roku-ji ni uchi e kuru' to itta* (B). 13. *O Matsū ni moshi yō ga nakereba kuru yō ni itte o kure* (A). 14. *Suzuki San ga mikka ni kuru yō ni hagaki wo yokoshita no de matte ita ga, ko-nakatta* (B). 15. *Doyō-bi no asa hayaku Hana-ko San ga Kōbe kara Amerika e o tachi nasaru yō ni osshaimashita* (D). 16. *O tō-san kara tegami ga ko-nai uchi wa ryokō ni ikare-nai no kai?* (A). 17. *E, sō desū* (C). 18. *O rusu ni Gotō San ga irasshaimashite 'kongetsu no owari goro Kyōto e tatsū' to osshaimashita* (D). 19. *Kono kimono wo O Matsū ni sentaku sashite o kure* (A). 20. *Muika made ni kono e wo kaite shimau yō ni tanomareta no da ga, dōmo atama ga itakutte shigoto wo suru ki ni nare-nai* (B).

1. As that bag is too heavy for me to carry by myself I must get somebody to help me. 2. As Mr Yamada didn't bring his lunch with him today, you must prepare some lunch for him. 3. Can't you go in and see that without a ticket? 4. A ticket is not absolutely necessary, but those who have tickets are given better places. 5. When the audience heard the sad tale of that girl, there was not a single person who did not shed tears. 6. If you tell him the reason I don't think he will refuse to pardon you. 7. You can't help knowing about a thing that was here a few minutes ago (isn't that so)? 8. That child never knew his father, he died before the child was born. 9. They say that Mr Satō's new house was finished, but was burnt down before he moved into it. 10. Does the letter say that your uncle is coming next month? 11. No, it's not my uncle, it's my aunt who's coming, (that's what the letter says). 12. Akio says he's coming at six o'clock this evening. 13. Tell Matsu to come if she's not busy. 14. I was expecting Mr Suzuki as he had sent a postcard saying he was coming on the third; however, he did not come. 15. Miss Hana-ko said she was leaving Kōbe for America early Saturday morning. 16. Can't you go travelling until you receive a letter from your father? 17. No, I can't. 18. While you were away Mr Gotō came and said he was going to Kyōto about the end of this month. 19. Tell Matsu to wash this dress. 20. I was asked to finish this picture by the 6th, but I have such a headache that I don't feel like work.



## EXERCISE 90.

The Present, Probable Present and Future Tenses. Study 38—52.

*hayari* : fashion.  
*kakkō* : shape.  
*katappo* : one of a pair.  
*tokoro* : time ; when.  
*umi* : sea.

*oyogu* : to swim.  
*ima-goro* : about this time ; now.  
*nanzo* : and such like things.  
*sekkaku* : with special pains or difficulty ;  
 expressly.

1. *Oji san wa ima-goro inaka de uno shōsetsū wo yakushite irassharu darō* (B).  
 2. *Nichiyō ni umi ni oyogi ni ikō to omotte ita ga, ame ga furu no de ikare-nakatta* (B). 3. *Kesa sukkari shitaku wo shite, ryokō ni dekakeyō to shite iru tokoro e haha ga abunai to iu dempō ga kita no desū* (C). 4. *Ikura kotoshi no hayari de mo, konna kakkō no bōshi wo kabure wa shimasen* (C). 5. *Masaka ano hito ga sonna koto wo ii ya shi-nai darō* (B). 6. *Go-ri ya roku-ri aruite mo byōki ni narya shi-nai yo* (B). 7. *Yamada to iu hito ni wa mada ai koso shi-nai ga, iro-iro hanashi wo kiite, yoku shitte iru tsumori da* (B). 8. *Sekkaku motte kite kureta no de, arigatō to ii koso shita keredomo, boku wa ano kudamono wa dai-kirai* (B). 9. *Sono hon mo hako ni iremashō ka?* (C). 10. *Iie, kore wa hako ni ire-nai de o kure ; kisha no naka de yomu no da kara, jibun de motte iku* (A). 11. *Ano hito wa daiku ni naru no darō?* (B). 12. *Iie, daiku ni nanzo nari ya shimasen yo, te ga katappo warui no ja arimasen ka?* (C). 13. *Nii-san ga irassharu kaisha no soba ni ōki na aki-ya ga ik-ken gozaimashō?* *Suzuki San ga koshite irassharu no wa ano uchi de gozaimasū* (D). 14. *Tarō ni yarō to omotte kono hon wo katte kita keredomo, muzukashi-sugiru kara yatte mo shikata ga nai* (B). 15. *Watashi wa Ei-go wa yomi koso shimasū ga, hanasū koto wa maru de dame desū* (C). 16. *Yamada San no ushiro ni sei no takai, fūtotta hito ga iru darō?* *Ogawa to iu no wa ano hito da* (B). 17. *Kono hanashi wa taihen omoshiroi kara, itsu ka hima no toki ni Nihon-go ni yakushite miyō to omou* (B).

1. I believe my uncle is now in the country translating a novel. 2. I was thinking of going for a swim in the sea on Sunday, but the rain prevented me. 3. I had everything prepared this morning for going on a journey and was just about to start when a telegram came saying my mother was seriously ill. 4. I don't care how fashionable it is, I'm certainly not going to wear a hat of this extraordinary shape. 5. Oh, it's impossible he should have said a thing like that. 6. There's no fear of my being ill because I walk five or six *ri* (12—15 miles). 7. I have never met Mr Yamada, but I've heard so much about him that I feel as if I knew him quite well. 8. Of course I thanked him for the fruit he kindly brought me, but the fact is I don't like that kind of fruit at all. 9. Shall I put that book also in the box? 10. No, don't put that in the box ; I intend to read it in the train so I'll take it with me. 11. I suppose that man will be a carpenter. 12. No, he can't be a carpenter or anything like that, don't you know that one of his arms is weak? 13. You know there's a big house to let next to the office your brother goes to? Well, that's the house Mr Suzuki is going to move into. 14. I bought this book with the idea of giving it to Tarō, but it's so difficult that it would be of no use even if I did give it. 15. It's true I can read English, but I can't speak it at all. 16. Do you see that tall stout man behind Mr Yamada? Well, that's Mr Ogawa (of whom we were speaking). 17. This tale is so very interesting that I intend to translate it into Japanese when I have time.

## EXERCISE 91.

### Past and Probable Past Tenses. Study 53—57.

*iro* : colour.

*miyage* : a present (generally a souvenir from some place).

*senjitsū* : the other day.

*kyū na* : sudden.

*hara* : belly.

*hara wo tate'ru* : to get angry.

*hidoi me ni au* : to be treated cruelly.

*namake'ru* : to be idle.

*yoru* : to call in when passing.

*saki* : before.

1. *Anata wa mada koko ni ita n' desū ka ? Boku wa mō uchi e kaette shimatta koto to omotte ita no ni* (C). 2. *Shina-mono wo motte kita toki kane wo haraimashō* (C). 3. *Dō shīte ano ko wa watashi yori saki ni shinda no darō ?* (B). 4. *Hajime omae ga Fuyuo wo baka ni shi-nakereba sonna hidoi me ni wa awa-nakattarō* (A). 5. *Oji ga Igirisū kara o miyage ni motte kite kureta ōki na jibiki ga atta deshō ? are wo Tarō ni kashite yatta n' desū ga, kaeshite kure-nai no desū yo* (C). 6. *Me ga waruku nakereba ano hito mo Amerika e ittārō ga...* (B). 7. *Aruita no de nodo ga kawaita ; o cha wo ip-pai o kure* (A). 8. *Senjitsū go chūmon no kutsu ga dekimashita kara, komban o taku e motte mairimasū* (D). 9. *Sakki made anna ni futte ita no ni kyū ni tenki ni natta* (B). 10. *Kono bōshi wa zuibun takakatta no da ga, mō iro ga kawattē dame ni natte shimatta* (B). 11. *Rokuzō mo kita 'tte kamawa-nai ; basho ga takusan aru kara* (B). 12. *Ano hito wa nani wo iwarete mo hara wo tate-nai* (B). 13. *Kondo Tōkyō e itta toki Gotō San no tokoro e yotte, hanashite kimashō* (C). 14. *Wakai toki ni namake-nai de yoku benkyō shite okeba konna ni komara-nakattarō* (B). 15. *Atsui o yu wo ire-nakereba koware-nakattarō ni ; kore kara ki wo tsukete o kure* (A). 16. *Anata wa ikura kūsuri no nonda 'tte, undō wo shi-nakereba yoku nari wa shimasen* (C). 17. *Hachi-ji no kisha de Suzuki San ga irassharu to iu hagaki ga kita kara, teishaba e mukae ni itta ga, irasshara-nai no de tsumara-nakatta* (B). 18. *Imu ga kega wo shita sō desū ga, dō desū ?* (C). 19. *Mō shinimashita* (C).

1. Are you still here ? I thought you'd gone back home. 2. When you bring the goods, I'll pay for them. 3. Oh, why did the child die before me ? 4. If you first hadn't played tricks on Fuyuo, he (probably) wouldn't have hit you. 5. You know I had a big dictionary which my uncle gave me as a present when he came back from England ? Well, I lent it to Tarō and he hasn't returned it yet. 6. If his eyes hadn't been bad, he also would probably have gone to America, but...(unluckily he fell ill). 7. I've been walking, so I'm thirsty ; bring me a cup of tea. 8. The boots you ordered the other day are ready. I'll take them to your house this evening. 9. It was raining hard until a few moments ago, and now all of a sudden it's fine. 10. This hat was very dear, nevertheless the colour has already faded and it's good for nothing. 11. Rokuzō can come if he likes, there's plenty of room anyhow. 12. That man never gets angry no matter what I say to him. 13. Next time I go to Tōkyō I'll call on Mr Gotō and tell him about it. 14. If I had studied properly when I was young instead of waisting my time, I wouldn't be in such difficult circumstances now. 15. If you hadn't put in such hot water it wouldn't have broken ; be careful in future. 16. No matter how much medicine you take, you'll never get well unless you take some exercise. 17. I received a postcard from Mr Suzuki saying he was coming by the eight o'clock train, so I went to the station to meet him, but was disappointed as he did not come. 18. I hear your dog was hurt, how is he getting on ? 19. He died.



## EXERCISE 92.

### Gerund. Study 58.

*anshin* : peace of mind.

*kao-iro* : looks.

*yo-naka* : midnight ; during the night.

*hazukashii* : shameful ; ashamed.

*ayamaru* : to beg pardon.

*hikkosō* : to change one's residence.

*shaberu* : to talk without thinking.

*dōse* : anyhow.

*ittai* : exclamation of wonder.

1. *Kono ko wa yo-naka ni naite shiyō ga gozaimasen* (D). 2. *O Matsū wa kodo-mo ni iro-iro na koto wo shabette, dōmo komaru* (B). 3. *Ano hito wa ikura ayamatte mo yurushite kure-nai darō* (B). 4. *Hana-ko San ni ni-do mo tegami wo dashite mo nada henji ga ko-nai ga, ittai dō shita no darō?* (B). 5. *Ammari undō wo shi-sugite mo karada ni doku desū ; ii kagen ni shi-nakereba ike-nai no desū* (C). 6. *Inaka wa fuben desū ga, atarashii yasai ga taberarete ii desū* (C). 7. *Dōzo kyō san-ji goro itsū mo no yō ni anata no o heya de uta wo utatte kudasaimasen ka?* (D). 8. *Dōse betsū ni yō mo arimasen kara, o taku e agatte utatte mo yoroshiū gozaimasū* (D). 9. *Anata no koto wa chitto mo waruku omotte wa imasen kara, go anshin nas'te kudasai* (C). 10. *Taisō o kao-iro ga o warui yō de gozaimasū kara, o isha ni mite o morai nas'te wa ikaga de gozaimasū ka?* (D). 11. *Inaka e hikkoshite wa kodo-mo gakkō e iku no ni tsugō ga waruku naru kara, yappari koko ni iru hoka shikata ga arumai* (B). 12. *Tonari no ko wa uchi no hana wo totte komaru kara, ano ko no chichi ni sō itte, shikatte morare-nakūte wa nara-nai* (B). 13. *Konna kao wo hito ni mirarete wa hazukashii kara, naoru made soto e de-zu ni iijō* (B). 14. *Ano ko wa shijū itazura wo shite wa shikararete iru* (B). 15. *Kasa wo mota-zu ni dekakete wa, ame ga futta toki ni komaru darō* (B). 16. *Watashi wa kono-goro taihen wasureppoku natte, dōmo komarimasū ; kinō mo kane wo mota-zu ni kai-mono ni itte, zuibun hazukashiū gozaimashita* (D).

1. This baby cries so much during the night I really don't know what to do. 2. I really don't know what to do with Matsū ; she is always telling the children lots of silly things. 3. No matter how much I beg his pardon, I don't think he'll grant it me. 4. Although I've written twice to Miss Hana-ko, she hasn't answered me yet ; I wonder whatever can be the matter with her ? 5. If you take too much exercise that also would be bad for you, (the same as if you take too little), you must take a moderate amount. 6. The country is inconvenient in many ways, but one has at least the advantage of being able to eat fresh vegetables. 7. Would you kindly sing as usual in your room today at about three o'clock ? 8. I have nothing special to do anyhow, so if you like, I can go to your house and sing there. 9. I've got nothing against you, so you needn't be anxious in any way. 10. You are looking very pale, wouldn't it be a good thing to see a doctor ? 11. If I were to go to the country it would be very inconvenient to send the children to school, so I suppose there's no help for it but to remain here. 12. I am much inconvenienced by the child from next door who is always picking my flowers, the child's father must be told and he must scold the child. 13. I'm ashamed to be seen with a face like this (e.g. a boil) I must remain indoors and not go out until it gets better. 14. That child is always up to mischief, that's why he's always being scolded. 15. If you go out without an umbrella, you will be inconvenienced should it rain. 16. I'm getting so absent-minded lately I really don't know what to do ; (besides the other silly things I've done) yesterday I went out shopping without taking any money with me, I felt quite ashamed of myself.

## EXERCISE 93.

The Imperative ; commanding and requesting. Study 59—64.

*baai* : circumstances.

*bikkuri* : surprise.

*hari-shigoto* : sewing ; needlework.

*tenugui* : (Japanese) towel.

*damaru* : to be silent.

*kakure'ru* : to hide oneself.

*yukkuri* : leisurely.

1. *Kyō wa taihen isogashii kara, dare mo watashi no heya e yokosa-nai de o kure* (A). 2. *Anata wa koko ni kakurete irasshai, soshite Tarō ga kitara kyū ni dete bikkuri sashite o yari nasai* (C). 3. *Omae ga kuchi wo dasu baai ja nai, damatte i nasai* (A). 4. *Kyō wa nichiyō de, betsū ni go yō ga gozaimasūmai, go yukkuri asonde irasshai* (D). 5. *Kondo Tōkyō e itta toki ii no wo katte kite agemasu kara, sore made kono hasami wo tsukatte irash'ite kudasai* (D). 6. *Omae wa otonashiku shite o-ide nasai ; sugu kaerimasu kara* (A). 7. *Anata wa me ga sukkari naoru made hari-shigoto wo shi-nai de irasshai* (C). 8. *Ano hito no tokoro e wa shibaraku henji wo dasa-zu ni o-ide nasai* (C). 9. *Sonna ni onaka ga warukutte komaru nara, kyō wa gohan wo tabe-nai de ite goran* (A). 10. *Ame ga furi-sō da kara, sentaku suru no wa o yoshi nasai* (A). 11. *Anna hito no iu koto wo shinyō shite wa dame desu* (C). 12. *Shōsetsu bakari yonde i-zu ni, isogashii toki wa sūkoshi tetsudai nasai* (A). 13. *Sono kitte wa o sūte ni naru nara, watashi ni chōdai* (C). 14. *Tenugui wo kashite chōdai* (C). 15. *Ni-san-nichi shizuka ni nete o-ide nasai* (C). 16. *Sono ki e nobotte wa dame, abunai kara* (B). 17. *Ano gaikoku-jin wa kitto kotoba ga wakara-nai no de komatte iru no darō ; omae itte donna yō ka kiite o-ide* (this o-ide means 'come') (A). 18. *Watashi ga kawari ni mise ni ite yaru kara itte gohan wo tabete ki nasai* (A). 19. *Sono hon wa Jirō ga mitai to iu ka mo shiremasen kara, mada sūte-nai de oki nasai* (B). 20. *Haruo, iuu nanzo ijimete i-zu ni, Ei-go wo benkyō nasai* (A). 21. *Omae no te no kitanai koto ! Kirei ni aratte irasshai* (A). 22. *Watashi no tegami wo yoma-nai de kudasai* (C).

1. As I am very busy today, don't let anybody come to my room. 2. You, hide yourself here, and when Tarō comes, jump out and give him a good fright. 3. You've no business to meddle, be silent. 4. I don't suppose you've got anything special to do today as it's Sunday, please stay here and don't hurry away. 5. I'll buy you a good pair of scissors next time I go to Tōkyō, in the meantime try to manage with these. 6. Remain here and behave well, I'll soon be back. 7. Don't do any sewing until your eyesight has completely recovered. 8. Don't give him any answer for some few days. 9. If your stomach is so painful don't eat anything today. 10. Don't do your washing (today), it looks like rain. 11. Don't believe a word a man like that says. 12. Instead of (wasting your time in) doing nothing but read novels, when I'm busy help me a little. 13. If you are going to throw away that stamp, please give it to me. 14. Please lend me a towel. 15. Stay in bed quietly for two or three days. 16. Don't climb that tree, it's dangerous. 17. I expect that foreigner is in difficulties because he doesn't understand what people are saying to him, go and see what he wants. 18. Go and have your lunch, I'll remain in the shop instead of you. 19. I dare say Jirō will want to read that book, so don't throw it away yet. 20. Haruo, you study your English instead of worrying the dog. 21. What dirty hands you've got ! Go and wash them. 22. Please don't read my letters.



## EXERCISE 94.

### Conditional. Study 65—68.

*annai* : guide.

*nami* : wave.

*arai* : rough.

*muri na* : unreasonable.

*nemuru* : to sleep.

*asatte* : the day after tomorrow.

*ototoi* : the day before yesterday.

*jūbun* : enough.

1. *Doyō-bi nara ikaremasū ga, nichiyō ni wa itoko wo annai shīte hōbō e ikana-kereba narimasen kara, mairemasen* (C). 2. *Asūko wa nami ga arai naru. doko ka hoka no ii tokoro wo gashīte oyogeba yokarō* (A). 3. *Ototoi chūmon shīta kutsu ga dekite itara motte kite o kure* (A). 4. *Asatte de nai to deki-nai sō de gozaimasū ; kutsu-ya ga kega wo shīte shigoto wo fūtsūka yasunda no de gozaimasū 'tte* (D). 5. *Otonashiku shi-nakereba doko e mo tsurete itte agemasen yo* (A). 6. *Ikitaiku nakereba muri ni ika-nai de mo ii no desū* (C). 7. *Yoru o cha wo nomeba nemure-nai no wa wakatte iru no desū* (C). 8. *O kane wa san-jū-yen mo motte ikeba jūbun deshō to omoimasū* (C). 9. *Yamada San wo yonde kite kudasai ; moshi irasshara-nakereba otōto san de mo ii kara kite morau yō ni itte kite kudasai* (C). 10. *Omae ni sono hon ga yomeru nara yarō* (A). 11. *Watashi no iu koto ga muri da to omou nara, dare ni de mo kiite goran nasai* (A). 12. *Ano hashi no ue ni iru to dare ka watashi no na wo yobu no de, miru to san-jū gurai no shira-nai hito datta* (B). 13. *Ano hito no uchi e iku to itsu de mo Kyōto no hanashi ga dete kuru* (B). 14. *Watashi wa Tōkyō e ikimasū to atama ga itaku narimasū* (D). 15. *Nareta hito de nai to sō hayaku wa dekimasen* (C). 16. *Jū-ji nara o yasumi nasai* (B). 17. *Sampo ni irassharu nara, sumimasen ga, kono tegami wo dashite kudasaimasen ka?* (D). 18. *Ima sugu ni dekakereba ku-ji no kisha ni ma ni au deshō* (C). 19. *Wake wo hanaseba misete kure-nai koto wa nai deshō* (C). 20. *Kono tegami wo kaite shimaeba hima ni narimasū kara, doko e de mo go issho ni ikaremasū* (C).

1. I can go on Saturday, but on Sunday I can't go as I've got to take a cousin of mine round to several places. 2. If it is rough there, look out for some other quiet spot and bathe there (*lit.* and if you swim there, it will probably be all right). 3. If the boots I ordered the day before yesterday are ready, bring them. 4. The bootmaker says he hurt himself and was not able to work for two days; they will not be ready until the day after tomorrow. 5. If you don't behave yourself, I won't take you anywhere. 6. If you don't want to go, you needn't (go against your will). 7. I know I can never sleep well when I take tea in the evening. 8. If you take thirty yen I think that will be plenty. 9. Please call Mr Yamada; if he is not at home ask his brother to come instead. 10. If you can read that book, I'll give it to you. 11. If you think what I say is unreasonable, ask anybody you like. 12. While I was on that bridge somebody called my name. On looking round I found it was an unknown person about thirty years of age (who was calling me). 13. Whenever I go to that man's house we always drift into talking about Kyōto. 14. Whenever I go to Tōkyō I get a headache. 15. It can't be finished as soon as that unless it's a person accustomed to the work. 16. If it's ten o'clock go to bed. 17. Excuse me for troubling you, but if you are going for a walk, would you mind posting this letter for me? 18. If you start immediately, I think you'll catch the nine o'clock train. 19. If you give your reasons, I've no doubt they'll show it to you. 20. I shall be free as soon as I have finished writing this letter, and I shall then be able to accompany you wherever you may wish to go.

## EXERCISE 95.

### Conditional. Study 69—75.

*gakkari* : tired ; dejected.

*jō-bukuro* : envelope.

*aku* (intr.) : to open.

*kaze wo hiku* : to catch a cold.

*iki'ru* : to live.

*saku* : to blossom.

*yorokobu* : to rejoice.

1. *Jō-bukuro ga kore de tari-nakattara, ano hako ni takusan haite imasu* (C).  
 2. *Yūbe kara baka ni me ga itai kara, kyō isha ni mite morattara, shimpai shi-nai de ii to iu koto datta* (B). 3. *Ame no naka wo ni-jikan bakari aruitara kaze wo haite, nodo ga itakutte shiyō ga nai. Shi-go-nichi tattara naoru darō ga...* (B).  
 4. *Ueno no sakura ga saitara mi ni ikō ja arimasen ka?* (C). 5. *Oba ga kinō kuru to itte yokoshita no de, yorokonde matte imashitara, kimasen kara, gakkari shimashita* (C). 6. *Kyō koso wa tenki ni naru darō to omottara, mata futte kita* (B). 7. *Oku-sama ga o-ide nasaimashitara dōzo denwa e yonde kudasai* (D). 8. *Tegami wo kaite shimattara, sugu ni dashite kite o kure* (A). 9. *Kono tegami wo Yamada San no tokoro e motte itte, henji wo moratte ki nasai ; moshi o rusu dattara oite kite ii no da* (A). 10. *Rusu ni moshi dare ka kitara, yo-ji ni kaeru to itte o kure* (A).  
 11. *Moshi hachi-ji no kisha ni ma ni awa-nakattara densha de iku hō ga yokarō* (B). 12. *Kane sae arya donna koto de mo dekiru to omou to ō-chigai da* (B). 13. *Chichi sae ikite orimashitara konna ni komari ya shi-nai no de gozaimasu ga...* (D). 14. *Kono ko wa gohan wo tabe sae sureba kitto onaka ga itaku naru no desū itte ; desū kara, kyō o isha ni tsurete iku tsumori desū* (C). 15. *Dō shitara kono mado ga akimasū ka?* (C). 16. *Sono himo wo hiki sae sureba aku no desū* (C).  
 17. *Ano akai hon wo kinō mite itara Tarō ni okoraremashita* (C). 18. *Hana-ko San ga o kaeri ni narimashitara, sugu ni uchi e o-ide kudasaimasū yō ni osshatte kudasai* (D). 19. *Kyō wa shi-nakereba nara-nai koto ga atte, dare ni mo aitaku nai kara, moshi hito ga kitara, i-nai to itte o kure* (A).

1. If these envelopes are not enough, there are plenty more in that box. 2. My eyes are very painful since last evening ; however, when I went to see the doctor, he told me it was nothing to be anxious about. 3. As I was walking in the rain for two hours, I caught a cold and my throat is very painful. I expect I'll be better in a few days. 4. When the Ueno cherry-trees are in blossom, let's go and see them. 5. My aunt sent word she was coming yesterday ; I was awaiting her coming with pleasure, but she disappointed me as she didn't come. 6. I thought at least it would be fine today, however, it's raining again. 7. If your mistress is in, please call her to the telephone. 8. Send your letter as soon as it's ready. 9. Take this letter to Mr Yamada's house and wait for an answer ; if he is out you needn't wait but leave the letter there. 10. Supposing somebody were to come while I was out, tell him that I'll be back at four. 11. If you don't catch the eight o'clock train you had better go by tram-car. 12. It's a great mistake to think that provided you have money you can do everything. 13. If only my father were alive I wouldn't find myself in such straits. 14. This child says that he has only to eat something to make his stomach ache, that is why I intend to take him to the doctor today. 15. How do you open this window ? 16. You've only to pull that cord and it will open. 17. I was reading that red book yesterday and Tarō got angry with me. 18. When Miss Hana-ko returns please ask her to come to my house as soon as she can. 19. I've got a lot of work which must be done today, so I don't want to see anybody. Should anybody come, say I'm not at home.



## EXERCISE 96.

### The Frequentative and Desiderative. Study 76—80.

*eda* : branch.

*hige* : beard.

*mushi* : insect.

*tsūkai* : errand ; messenger.

*jiyū* na : free.

*fu-jiyū* na : not free.

*nama* no : raw.

*mōke'ru* : to gain ; earn.

*soru* ; *suru* : to shave.

*suwaru* : to squat down.

*nanka* : and such like things.

1. *Brown San wa jiyū ni Nihon-go wo yondari hanashitari shimashita* (C). 2. *Yamada San wa ashi ga warukutte, tattari suwattari suru no ni fu-jiyū da to itte yokoshimashita* (C). 3. *Sonna aoi kudamono wo nama de tabetari suru to byōki ni naru* (B). 4. *Anna chiisa na kodomo wo hitori de tsūkai ni yattari nanka shite wa abunai* (B). 5. *Watashi-tachi fūtari ga mōkeru o kane wa tabetari kitari suru ni wa jūbun desū* (C). 6. *Goran nasai, tori ga atchi no eda ni ittari, kotechi no eda ni kitari shite, mushi ka nanka tabete imasū* (C). 7. *Nii-san wa kesa hayaku okite hige wo suttari, o yu ni haittari shimashita ; doko ka e iku no deshō* (C). 8. *Ano hito wa sakki kara uchi no mae wo ittari kitari shite iru keredomo, nani ka yō ga aru n' darō ka ?* (B). 9. *Suzuki San ga mada gakkō ni ita koro wa yoku uchi e kitari, boku ga ano hito no uchi wo tazunetari shita no desū ga, Hokkaidō e itte kara wa, tegami wo yokoshita koto mo arimasen* (C). 10. *Ano fūtari wa itsū de mo omoshiro-sō ni uta wo utattari, warattari shite iru* (B). 11. *Jirō ga anata to go issō ni Kōbe e ikitai to mōsū no de gozaimasū ga, tsurete itte itadakemashō ka ?* (D). 12. *E, ii desū to mo, tsurete itte agemashō* (C). 13. *Ano ko wa uchi e kaeritasa ni shujin no tokoro wo nigete kita no da sō da* (B). 14. *Hana-ko mo Ueno e ikitai to iu nara o yari nasai* (A). 15. *Kono kata wa anata no e wo mitasa ni tōi tokoro kara waza-waza o-ide ni natta no desū* (C). 16. *Byō-nin ga nashi ga tabetai to imasū ga, tabesashite yoroshiū gozaimashō ka ?* (D). 17. *Sō desū ne... kyō wa naru-take tabesasetaku nai no desū* (C).

1. Mr Brown used to read and speak Japanese quite fluently. 2. Mr Yamada writes and says that as his legs are painful he can only stand up and squat down with difficulty. 3. If you eat green fruit like that raw, you'll be ill. 4. It's dangerous to send a little child like that on errands and such like things. 5. The money we two earn is quite enough for our food and clothing. 6. Just look at that bird, it goes from one branch to another eating insects or something. 7. My brother got up early this morning, shaved himself, and had his bath. I suppose he's going somewhere. 8. That man has been walking backwards and forwards in front of the house for some time. I wonder whether he wants (me for) anything. 9. When Mr Suzuki was at school he often used to come to my house, and I used to go to his; however, since he's gone to Hokkaidō we haven't even written to each other. 10. Those two men seem always to be in high spirits, laughing and singing. 11. Jirō says he would like to go to Kōbe with you; would you be kind enough to take him? 12. Certainly, of course I will. 13. They say that child was home-sick, and ran away from his master's house and went back home. 14. If Hana-ko also says that she wants to go to Ueno, let her go. 15. This gentleman was so desirous of seeing your picture, that he came especially from a long distance with that object. 16. The patient says that he wants to eat some pears, may I let him? 17. H'm... as far as possible, I wish you wouldn't let him eat any today.

## EXERCISE 97.

### The Verbal Stem. Study 81 ; 82.

*ase* : perspiration.

*kōkoku* : advertisement.

*taikutsū* : tedium ; weariness.

*sūteki na* : fine ; remarkable.

*fūku* : to wipe.

*ukagau* : to hear.

*omoi-gake nai* : unexpected.

1. *Go-busata shīte imashita ga, mina-san o kawari wa arimasen ka ?* (C). 2. *Kinō katta niku no nokori ga aru kara, kyō wa kawa-nai de ii* (B). 3. *Sumimasen ga, kono hon wo kashite kudasaïmasen ka ?* *Ashita no ban o kaeshi shimasū* (D). 4. *O hanashi wa uchi e itte o cha de mo nomi nagara yukkuri ukagaimashō* (C). 5. *Kisha no naka de omoi-gake naku onnaji gakkō ni ita Motono to iu otoko ni atte iro-iro hanashi nagara kita no de, chitto mo taikutsū shi-nakatta* (B). 6. *Shi-baraku mie-nakatta ne ? kawari wa nai darō ?* (A). 7. *Arigatō gozaimasū, o-kage sama de nan no kawari mo gozaimasen. Agarō to omoi nagara, isogashii no de, taisō go-busata itashimashita* (D). 8. *Ano hito wa tabi-tabi Tōkyō e ki nagara, uchi e wa chitto mo yora-nai ga, nani ka okotte de mo iru no darō ka ?* (B). 9. *Niku-ya no mae de hitori no hito ga ase wo fūki nagara, ōki na koe de shabette iru kara, dō shita no ka to omottara, kūsuri no kōkoku wo shīte iru no da* (B). 10. *Yūbin-kyoku e iku nara kaeri-gake ni tokei-ya e yotte, konaida naoshi ni yatta no ga dekite itara, mōtte kite o kure* (A). 11. *Ashita wa mise e iki-gake ni Yamada San no uchi e yoru kara, san-jip-pun hayaku shokuji ni shīte kudasai* (C). 12. *Ano hito wa e mo kaki, shōsetsū mo kaki, uta mo utaimasū ga, dore mo sūteki ni ūmai to wa iwaremasen* (C). 13. *O taku no Haruo San ga kasa wo wasurete ikimashita kara, kaeri-gake ni o yon nasai* (C). 14. *Amerika e mo itte mi, Yōroppa e mo itte mimashita ga, yappari jibun no ūmareta tokoro ga ichiban yō gozaimasū ; anata wa dō o omoi ni narimasū ka ?* (D).

1. I have been sadly remiss about calling upon you ; is everybody well at home ? 2. You needn't buy any meat today, there's some left from yesterday. 3. Excuse me, but would you kindly lend me this book ? I will return it tomorrow evening. 4. Come to my house, and I'll hear what you've got to say, leisurely, over a cup of tea or something. 5. I met unexpectedly an old school-fellow of mine in the train, a man called Motono ; we talked about all sorts of things so the time didn't hang at all heavily on my hands. 6. It's a long time I haven't seen you ; I hope you're well. 7. Thanks, I am quite well. I was thinking of going to pay you my respects, but I was so busy that I put it off, and have been very impolite. 8. Although that man comes to Tōkyō frequently, he never comes to see me ; I wonder if he's put out about anything. 9. There was a man standing in front of the butcher's, talking away in a loud voice and wiping the perspiration from his face ; I was wondering what it all meant and it turned out he was advertising some medicine. 10. If you are going to the post office, call at the watchmaker's on your way back ; if the watch I gave to be mended the other day is ready, bring it. 11. As I intend to call tomorrow at Mr Yamada's on my way to the office, please get my breakfast ready half an hour earlier than usual. 12. That man paints, writes, and sings, but I can't say that he does anything very well. 13. Your son, Master Tarō, left his umbrella here ; on your way back please call for it. 14. I've been to America, and I've been to Europe, but after all, I like my native land best ; what are your feelings ?



## The Infinitive (English). Study 83.

*jimen* : ground ; plot of land.  
*sumi* : corner.  
*yoso* : another, a different place.  
*butsūkaru* : to hit, bump against.

*iwaku* : to tie.  
*kotoxcaru* : to refuse.  
*muku* : to peel.  
*tsubusū* : to crush ; smash.

1. Sono himo wa nani ni o tsūkai nasaimasū ka ? (D). 2. Ko-zutsumi ya nanka iwaku no ni tsūkau (B). 3. Dō shite o kega wo nasaimashita ? (D). 4. Nashi no kara wo mukō to shite itara, kodomo ga buttsūkatta no desū (C). 5. Ano hito wa ammari tabi-tabi tanomi ni kuru no de kotowari-nikui (B). 6. Yamada San wa uchi wo tateru tame ni jimen wo kaimashita (C). 7. Tanaka San ni aō to omotte ikimashita ga, yoso e dekakeru tokoro deshita kara, sugu ni kaette kimashita (C). 8. Ano ōki na hako wo sumi e yarō to omotte, ashi wo tsubushimashita (C). 9. O Matsū wa iru kai ? (A). 10. Tadaima tegami wo dashi ni ikimashita (C). 11. De wa, kaettara, kuruma wo yobi ni yari nasai (A). 12. Hayaku kuni e kaeritō gozaimasū (D). 13. Sono shigoto wa itsu made ni nasareba ii no desū ka ? (C). 14. Doyō-bi no hiru made ni shi-nakereba narimasen (C). 15. Ano hito no ji wa yomi-nikui (B). 16. O Hana San wa Tōkyō ni kitai to imashita (C). 17. Nii-san wa nani shi ni Rondon e irash'ita no desū ? (C). 18. Ei-go wo benkyō shi ni itta no de gozaimasū (D). 19. Yoru osoku made okite iru no wa karada ni doku da (B). 20. Naze mai-asa sampo wo nasaru no desū ? (C). 21. Asa no gohan ga oishiku taberareru yō ni desū (C). 22. Ashita no asa shichi-ji no kisha ni ma ni au yō ni, hayaku okoshite kudasai (C). 23. Teishaba e iku ni wa dono michi ga ichiban chikai deshō ? (C). 24. Ano kado wo hidari e magatte massugu iku to ichiban chikai (B). 25. O hitori de ryokō wo nasaru no wa tsumara-nai deshō (C). 26. Kono jibiki wa taihen hiki-ii (B). 27. O mise no kinjo e hikkoshi nasaru hō ga benri deshō (C). 28. Hibiya kōen e iku no ni nam-pun kakarimasū ka ? (C).

1. What do you use that string for ? 2. I use it to tie up parcels. 3. How did you cut yourself ? 4. I was going to peel a pear when the child bumped up against me. 5. That man has come so often to request me (to do something) that it is difficult to refuse him. 6. Mr Yamada bought a plot of land to build a house. 7. I went to see Mr Tanaka, but, as he was on the point of going out, I immediately came back. 8. I was going to move that big box into the corner and I hurt my foot. 9. Is Matsu in ? 10. She has just gone out to post a letter. 11. Well, when she comes back, tell her to call a rikisha. 12. I would like to return soon to my native land. 13. When have you to finish that work ? 14. I have to finish it by Saturday midday. 15. His writing is very difficult to read. 16. Miss Hana says she would like to come to Tōkyō. 17. What did your brother go to London for ? 18. He went to study English. 19. It is bad for the health to stay up late at night. 20. Why do you go for a walk every morning ? 21. I go to work up an appetite for my breakfast. 22. Please wake me up tomorrow morning early enough to catch the seven o'clock train. 23. Which is the nearest way (to go) to the station ? 24. Turn to the left at that corner and go straight on ; (that's the nearest way). 25. It would be very uninteresting for you to travel about by yourself. 26. This dictionary is very convenient to use. 27. Wouldn't it be more convenient for you to move somewhere near your office ? 28. How long does it take to go to Hibiya park ?

## EXERCISE 99.

### Various Verbal Phrases. Study 84—91.

*jibun* : time.

*kimochi* : feeling.

*saisoku* : urging.

*shitsürei* : rudeness.

*uso* : lie ; falsehood.

*mendō-kūsai* : troublesome.

*oshii* : deplorable ; regrettable.

*omoi-dasū* : to call to mind ; recollect.

*kesshite* : an emphatic negative particle.

1. *Yamada San ni kashita hon wo saisoku suru no wa shitsürei deshō ka ?* (C).  
 2. *Saisoku nas'tte mo betsu ni shitsürei ja nai deshō ; wasurete iru no ka mo shire-masen* (C). 3. *Dō iu wake de O Matsū ni hima wo o dashi ni natta n' desū ka ?* (C). 4. *Are wa shigoto wa isshōkemmei ni shite kurete, taihen yokatta no desū keredomo, dōmo o-shaberi de, iro-iro komaru koto ga atta mono desū kara, hima wo yatta wake desū* (C). 5. *Ano hito wa ichi-do chichi ni uso wo itta mon' desū kara, sore kara uchi de wa kesshite shinyō shi-nai no desū* (C). 6. *Smith San ni wa Kyōto ni ita jibun ni ni-san-do atta koto ga aru n' desū ga, tō gurai no toki deshita kara, donna hito datta ka chitto mo omoi-dasemasen* (C). 7. *Hon wo yonde itara atama ga itaku natte kita kara, soto e dete kodomo-tachi ga asonde iru no wo mite ita n' desū* (C). 8. *Kakitai koto wa ikura de mo aru n' desū ga, kaku no ga mendō-kūsai desū* (C). 9. *O isha ni o-ide nasaimasū ka ? Doko ka o warui no de gozaimasū ka ?* (D). 10. *Iie, watashi ga mite morau no ja arimasen ; ane ga kinō kara kimochi ga warui to iimasū kara, o isha wo tanomi ni kita n' desū* (C). 11. *Watakushi no kuni wa Sendai de wa gozaimasen keredomo, jū-go no toshi kara orimasū no de, yoku shitte iru no de gozaimasū* (D). 12. *Tenki ga yokattara haha mo iku no deshitarō ga, ano ame de, yameta no desū* (C). 13. *Anata ga ano hon wo yomu no dattara sūtete shimawa-nai de totte oku nō datta* (B). 14. *Ammari ii tsūki de neru ni wa oshii kara, sūkoshi arukō ja arimasen ka ?* (C). 15. *Asonde bakari i-nai de, benkyō wo suru ga yokarō* (A). 16. *Kono kami wa shujin ga tegami wo kaku ni tsūkaimasū* (C).

1. Do you think it would be rude for me to ask Mr Yamada to return the book I lent him ? 2. I don't see why you shouldn't ; I dare say he's forgotten all about it. 3. Why did you send Matsu away ? 4. She was a very good servant, and she worked very hard ; however, she was such a chatterbox that several times she made things very inconvenient for me, so I had to discharge her. 5. That man once told my father a lie, and since then, we have no confidence in him. 6. I met Mr Smith two or three times when I was in Kyōto, but as I was only ten years old then, I don't remember at all what kind of a man he is. 7. I was reading a book and I got a headache, so I went out and looked at the children playing. 8. There are any number of things I would like to write, but I find writing such a nuisance. 9. So you are going to see the doctor ? what's the matter with you ? 10. No, it is not I who am going to consult the doctor ; my sister is not feeling well since yesterday, that is why I have come for him. 11. Sendai is not my native town, but as I've lived there since I was fifteen, I know it quite well. 12. My mother would have gone if the weather had been fine, but with rain like that, she gave up the idea. 13. I wouldn't have thrown that book away if I'd known you wanted to read it. 14. It seems a pity to go to bed yet with such a beautiful moon shining ; let's go for a stroll. 15. Instead of wasting your time you'd better study. 16. My master uses this paper for writing letters.



## Irregular Verbs. Study 92—97.

*akari* : a light.*gaman* : patience ; fortitude.*imi* : meaning.*kutsu-shita* : socks ; stockings.*mendō* : trouble ; bother.*son* : loss.*kuyashii* : regrettable ; annoying.*chirakasu* : to disarrange ; scatter.*katazuke'ru* : to put away (in its place) ;  
put in order.*kutabire'ru* : to be tired.*tsuide* : opportunity ; at the same time.

1. *Taihen kurō gozaimasū ne, akari wo o tsūke nas'ttara yoroshiū gozaimashō* (D). 2. *O kao-iro ga o warū gozaimasū ga, mairi ni gaman wo nas'tte irash'tte wa doku de gozaimasū kara, mite o morai ni natte wa ikaga de gozaimasū ka?* (D). 3. *Kono mae anata ga o-ide kudas'tte kara hito-tsūki gurai ni narimashō ga, byōnin wa sendatte to sūkoshi mo kawatta koto ga gozaimasen* (D). 4. *Nikai no sōji wa O Matsū ni sashite, omae wa chotto watashi no heya e kite o kure* (A). 5. *Asūko wo tōru to otoko no ko-tachi ni itazura wo sareru kara, betsū no michi wo tōtte ikimashō* (C). 6. *Anna hito ni baka ni saretā to omou to kuyashikutte shiyō ga nai* (B). 7. *Konna ni iro-iro chirakashite oite, o kyaku sama ni korareru to hazukashii kara, katazuketē o kure* (A). 8. *Yamada San wa nan-ji goro irasshaimashita ka?* (D). 9. *San-ji han ni irash'tte chichi to jū-go-fun bakari o hanashi nas'tte o kaeri nasaimashita* (D). 10. *Kono ji no imi wo go zonji de irasshaimashitara, dōzo oshiete kudasaimasen ka?* (D). 11. *Anata wa sensei wo okorashite wa son ja arimasen ka?* (C). 12. *Maru-ya e irash'ttara, tsuide ni watashi no kutsu-shita wo katte kite kudasai* (C). 13. *Sūteishon kara zutto aruite irash'tta no desū ka?* 14. *Jibun de henji wo kaku no ga mendō nara Tarō ni kakashite hayaku o dashi nasai* (B). 15. *Senjitsū wa lekkō na nashi wo kudas'tte dōmo arigatō gozaimashita ; taisō oishite gozaimashita* (D). 16. *Yūbe anata no tonari ni koshi-kakete irash'tta no wa donata deshita?* (C). 17. *Ano yōfuku wo kite irash'tta oma no kata desū ka?* 18. *Ane no tomodachi de, konaida gaikoku kara o kaeri nas'tta Hatano to iu kata desū* (C).

1. It's very dark, I think you'd better light the lights. 2. You are looking pale ; it's no good trying to bear your illness without taking any medicine. hadn't you better see a doctor ? 3. I think it's about a month since you called ; since then the patient is much about the same. 4. Tell Matsu to sweep upstairs, and you, come to my room. 5. If I go that road the boys will play tricks on me, so I'll go another way. 6. I'm awfully put out to think that a man like that has made a fool of me. 7. I'd be ashamed for visitors to come and see things all in disorder like this, so put everything away. 8. At what time did Mr Yamada arrive ? 9. He arrived at half past three, and left again after fifteen minutes' talk with my father. 10. If you know the meaning of this character, please explain it to me ? 11. It's to your own disadvantage to be always making your master angry. 12. As you're going to Maru-ya's, would you mind buying me some socks ? 13. Did you come walking all the way from the station here ? You must be very tired ; have a cup of tea and rest awhile. 14. If you find it too much trouble to write (the letter) yourself, ask Tarō to write it for you, and send it quickly. 15. Thanks very much for the beautiful pears you sent me the other day ; they were delicious. 16. Who was it sitting last night next to you ? 17. Do you mean that lady in foreign clothes ? She is a friend of my sister's who arrived recently from abroad, her name is Mrs Hatano.

# EXERCISE 101.

## Auxiliary and Terminal Verbs. Study 98—110.

*kanjō* : reckoning ; account.

*kūsa* : grass.

*megane* : spectacles.

*tatemono* : building.

*kuu* : to bite ; eat.

*kui-tsūku* : to bite (as an attack).

*migaku* : to polish ; clean.

*sawagu* : to make a noise, disturbance.

*tatamu* : to fold.

1. Yamada San wa byōki wo naoshi ni is-shūkan bakari mae kara Hakone e itte iru sō da (B). 2. Sakki kite irush'tta kata wa go shinrui no kata de gozaimasū ka ? (D). 3. Iie, sō ja nai desū, tomodachi desū (C). 4. Anata no kimono wa tatande arimasū (C). 5. Danna sama no kutsu wo migaita kai ? (A). 6. Hai, mō migaitte gozaimasū (D). 7. Watakushi mo ane to issō ni kinō Ueno e mairimashite gozaimasū (D). 8. Konaida Tarō San ga jibiki wo kashite kure to itte kita kara. kashite yattara, sugu ni motte kuru to ii nagara, mada kaeshite ko-nai (B). 9. Hana-ko San wa ha ga itai kara komban irasshara-nai to tegami de itte kimashita (C). 10. Yamashita Sen ga Nikkō de kaite kita e wa jitsū ni yoku kaite aru (B). 11. Sakki kodomo-tachi ga ô-sawagi wo suru no de, nan darō to omotte mite mita tokoro ga, hitori ga inu ni kui-tsūkarete naite iru no datta (B). 12. Kondo anata ga irassharu made ni kore wo yakushite kirei ni kaite oite agemasū (D). 13. Sugu ni henji wo dashite shimawana to wasurete shimau kara, ima kaite dasō (B). 14. Watakushi wa taihen kimochi ga warū gozaimasū kara, megane no kanjō wo tori ni Chōkichi San ni itte moratte yō gozaimasū ka ? (D). 15. Kono mae kita toki wa kono hen wa kūsa ga haete ite sabishii tokoro datta no ni, mō konna ni ōki na tatemono ga ikutsū mo tatte iru (B). 16. Itoko ga kotchi e kuru no de, hito-tsūki bakari tomatte itai to iu no da ga, nikai ga aite iru kara, watashi wa ii to omou keredomo, omae no kangae wa dō da ? (A). 17. Sō de gozaimasū ne, yoku kangaete okimashō (D). 18. Watashi no te-bukuro wo motte kite o kure ; tansū no hikidashi ni irete oita kara (A). 19. Hōbō sagashite mimashita keredomo gozaimasen (D).

1. Mr Yamada has been in Hakone a week recovering from his illness. 2. Was the gentleman who was here just now a relation of yours ? 3. No, he's only a friend. 4. Your dress is folded. 5. Have you cleaned your master's boots ? 6. Yes, I have (*lit.* they are cleaned). 7. I went with my sister yesterday to Ueno. 8. Master Tarō came a few days ago to ask me to lend him my dictionary. I lent it to him ; and although he said he'd bring it back soon, he hasn't returned it yet. 9. Miss Hana-ko has written to say that she can't come this evening as she has a toothache. 10. The picture Mr Yamashita painted when he was in Nikkō is really very well painted. 11. The children were making such a noise just now that I wondered what had happened. I went to see and found that what had happened was that one of them had been bitten by a dog, and was crying. 12. I'll translate this, write it out and have it ready for you when you come again. 13. As I'm sure to forget it if I don't answer the letter soon. I'll do it at once. 14. As I'm not feeling at all well would you mind if Master Chōkichi were to go instead of me to collect the bill for the spectacles ? 15. When I was here last, all this neighbourhood was all grass and there were no houses ; and now, just look at all the big buildings there are. 16. My cousin is coming and he says he would like to stay a month here. As the top floor is unoccupied I think we could put him up, what do you say ? 17. I don't exactly know, I'll think it over. 18. Bring me my gloves, I left them in the chest of drawers. 19. I've looked for them in every drawer, but I can't find them.



## EXERCISE 102.

### Transitive and Intransitive Verbs. Study 111—118.

*ambai* : condition ; manner.

*hashigo-dan* : staircase.

*kane* : bell.

*tetsubin* : kettle.

*urusai* : annoying.

*attamaru* (intr.) : to become warm.

*attame'ru* (trans.) : to warm.

*kobore'ru* (intr.) : to get spilt.

*kobosū* (trans.) : to spill.

*narasū* (trans.) : to cause to sound ; ring.

*naru* (intr.) : to make a noise ; ring.

*orosū* (trans.) : to take down.

*watasū* (trans.) : to hand over.

*chōdo* : exactly ; just.

1. *Ano kane wa nichiyō-bi no asa shichi-ji ni naru no de gozaimasū* (D). 2. *Chōdo jū-ji ni kane wo narashite kudasai* (C). 3. *Mizu ga ippai haitte imasū kara, kobore-nai yō ni shizuka ni motte irasshai* (C). 4. *Hashigo-dan e inki wo koboshita no wa dare desū ? Koboshita hito wa jibun de fuite oki nasai* (B). 5. *O yu wo saki ni wakashite, sore kara chichi wo attamete o kure* (A). 6. *Chichi ga attamattara akambō ni o yari nasai* (A). 7. *Sono hashi wo wataru to Kanda desū* (C). 8. *Kono shashin wo otōto san ni o watashi kudasaimasen ka ?* (D). 9. *Benkyō shite ite akiru to uchi wo dete, kōen no naka wo shibaraku aruite kuru koto ni kimete imasū* (C). 10. *Ano ame no naka wo aruka-nakereba nara-nai no ka to omotte shimpai shite kimashita ga, kisha wo oriru to sugu ni ame ga yande, ii ambai deshita* (C). 11. *Tetsubin ni o yu wo ippai wakashite moraitai* (A). 12. *O yu ga waitara sō itte o kure* (A). 13. *O yu ga wakimashita* (C). 14. *O yu wa mō waite iru* (B). 15. *O yu wa mō wakashite arimasū* (C). 16. *Sumimasen ga, tana kara ano hako wo oroshite kudasaimasen ka ? Watakushi wa sei ga hikukutte todokimasen* (D). 17. *Omae wa urusai kara shita e orite o-ide* (A). 18. *Kono kudamono wo o bon ni nosete danna sama no tokoro e motte o-ide nasai* (A). 19. *Kyō wa atama ga itai kara, densha e noru-zu ni kuruma de ikimasū* (C). 20. *Hon wa minna sono hako ni irete kudasaimasen ka ?* (C). 21. *Minna wa hairimasen ; nokotta no wa kaban ni iremashō ka ?* (C). 22. *E, ja, sō shite kudasai* (C). 23. *Mise no kaeri-gake ni Hibiya de densha wo orite, Tanaka San no tokoro e chotto gotte kimashita* (C). 24. *Jochū ga mō mitsukarimashita ka ?* (C).

1. That bell rings every Sunday morning at seven o'clock. 2. Please ring the bell exactly at ten o'clock. 3. This (jug) is full of water ; you must carry it very carefully so as not to spill it. 4. Who has spilt ink on the stairs ? Whoever has done it must wipe it clean. 5. First boil the water and after that warm the milk. 6. When the milk is warm give it to the baby. 7. When you cross that bridge you will be in Kanda. 8. Would you kindly give this photograph to your brother ? 9. It's now a fixed habit of mine when I get tired of studying, to go out and walk about the park for a while. 10. I was feeling anxious (in the train) thinking I'd have to walk in the rain, but luckily I'd hardly got off the train when it stopped raining. 11. Boil a kettleful of water for me. 12. When the water boils let me know. 13, 14 and 15. The water is boiling. 16. Excuse me, but would you mind getting me the box from the shelf ? I (am so short that I) cannot reach it myself. 17. You are a nuisance, go and stay downstairs. 18. Put this fruit on a tray and take it to your master's room. 19. As I've a headache today instead of going by tram-car, I'll take a riksha. 20. Please put all the books in that box. 21. They won't all go in ; shall I put what's over in the trunk ? 22. Yes, please do so. 23. On my way back from the office, I got off the tram-car at Hibiya and I made a short call on Mr Tanaka. 24. Have you found a servant yet ?

# EXERCISE 103.

## Passive Verbs. Study 119—125.

*fū* : way ; manner.  
*waru-kuchi* : evil-speaking.  
*atarimae no* : usual ; ordinary.  
*fui no* : sudden.  
*okashii* ; *okashi na* : laughable ;  
 strange.  
*gomakasū* : to deceive.  
*home'ru* : to praise.  
*kamu* : to bite.

*keru* : to kick.  
*nusumu* : to steal.  
*osowaru* : irreg. passive of *oshie'ru* to  
 teach.  
*shimaru* (intr.) : to shut.  
*shiran* (corr. of *shira-nai*) : having no  
 knowledge ; feigning ignorance.  
*shiran kao* : not to betray one's know-  
 ledge by the expression of the face.

1. *Sono kimono wo kiru to Shina-jin to machigaerareru darō* (B). 2. *Sonna fū wo shīte aruku to hito ni warawaremasū* (C). 3. *Waru-kuchi wo iwarete mo shiran kao de irasshai* (C). 4. *Anna koto wo saretara okoru no wa atarimae da* (B). 5. *Inu ni yubi wo kamaremashta* (C). 6. *Fui ni watashi ga itta kara, oba san ga bikkuri shita* (B). 7. *Nikai no mado wa shimatte iru kai?* (A). 8. *Kinō wa sakana ga takusan toremashita* (C). 9. *Takeo wa kinō ūma ni kerarete kega wo shita* (B). 10. *Kuruma-ya ni gomakasare-nai yō ni ki wo tsūke nasai* (B). 11. *Ano ko wa itsu mo sensei ni homeraremasū* (C). 12. *Yūbe dorobō ni yubi-wa wo nusumaremashta* (C). 13. *Nihon-go wo donata ni osowari nasaimashita?* (D). 14. *Tanabe San ni osowarimashita* (C). 15. *Sonna okashi na fū wo sureba warawareru no wa atarimae da* (B). 16. *Koko ni nan to kaite arimasu ka?* (C). 17. *Watashi wa shira-nai* (B). 18. *Sono chawan wa doko de dekita no desū?* (C). 19. *Kyōto de dekita no de gozaimasū* (D). 20. *Danna ni shikarareru kara hayaku o kaeri* (A). 21. *Kodomo ni nakareru no ga ichiban urusai* (B). 22. *Ano fūtotta hito wa nan to iu hito desū?* (C). 23. *Suzuki to iu hito desū* (C). 24. *Kore wa nan to iu kudamono de gozaimasū?* (D). 25. *Nashi to iu no da* (B). 26. *Ano yaseta hito wa Koyama to iu hito desū* (C). 27. *Kami wo kai ni ikimashitara, mō mise ga shimatte imashita* (C). 28. *Ano hito wa shujin ni yobarete mo shiran kao wo shīte iru* (B). 29. *Jibun no koto wa hito no sewa ni nara-nai de suru hō ga ii* (B).

1. If you put on that dress, you may be taken for a Chinese. 2. If you go out (dressed) like that, people will laugh at you. 3. Even if people speak ill of you, don't take any notice. 4. It is only natural that he should get angry when they behave like that to him. 5. My finger was bitten by a dog. 6. As I went unexpectedly, my aunt was surprised. 7. Is the window upstairs closed? 8. A lot of fish was caught yesterday. 9. Takeo was kicked by a horse yesterday and was hurt. 10. Take care and don't let the rikisha-man cheat you. 11. That child is always praised by his teacher. 12. Last night a robber stole my ring. 13. Who taught you Japanese? 14. Mr Tanabe taught me. 15. Of course people will laugh at you if you go about in that strange way. 16. What is written here? 17. I don't know. 18. Where was that tea-cup made? 19. It was made in Kyōto. 20. Come back quickly so as not to get scolded by your master. 21. It is very annoying to hear children crying. 22. What's that stout man called? 23. He is called Suzuki. 24. What is this fruit called? 25. It is called a pear. 26. That thin man is called Koyama. 27. I went to buy some paper but the shop was already closed. 28. Even when his master calls him, he pretends not to hear. 29. You had better do your own things yourself and not be helped by others.



# EXERCISE 104.

## Passive Verbs (continued).

*hori* : ditch ; moat.

*namake-mono* : a lazy person.

*yōsū* : condition.

*kowai* : fearful ; afraid.

*damasū* : to deceive ; cheat.

*hikkomu* : to draw back ; retire.

*horu* : to dig.

*korosū* : to kill.

*yarū* : to do.

*abekobe* : the other way about.

1. *Hito ni iware-nakūte mo ii koto wo iwareru no mo minna ano to no tame da* (B). 2. *Tabako wa karada ni warai to isha ni iwarete kara noma-nai koto ni kimemashita* (C). 3. *Omae ni sono ōki na koe de uta wo utawareru to atama ga itaku naru* (A). 4. *Miraretara taihen desū kara, isoide hikikomimashita* (C). 5. *Haruo wa Akio kara damasarete kuyashikūte shikata ga nai no desū* (C). 6. *Sonna tokoro e hori wo horarete wa watashi no hō de taihen tsugō ga warui desū* (C). 7. *Ano o kashi wa tabetai, keredomo, danna ga kaette kite shikarareru to kowai* (B). 8. *De mo, kimi ga okorare-nakereba ii no darō? Boku ga umaku yaru kara, fūtari de are wo tabete shimaō* (B). 9. *Sakki butsūkatta otoko ni kane wo torareta no ni kimatte imasū ga, uchi ga bimbō desū kara, watakushi ga totta to omowareru ni chigai arimasen* (C). 10. *Ano otoko wo damashite yarō to omotte ite, abekobe ni damasarete shimatta* (B). 11. *Konna yōsū wo shīte iru tokoro wo hito ni mirareru to hazukashiū gozaimasū kara, soto e detaku gozaimasen* (D). 12. *Ima made iro-iro no koto wo iwarete mo gaman shite ita ga, dorobō to iwarete wa mō yurusū koto wa deki-nai* (A). 13. *Ano otoko wa amnari namake-mono desū kara, o tō-san ni uchi wo oi-dasoreta no desū* (C). 14. *Hito kara nani ka iwareta toki wa kitto o henji wo shi-nakereba ikemasen yo. Nani ka hikareta toki damatte iru no wa taihen shitsūrei na koto desū kara ne* (B). 15. *Inu wo korosareta hito wa ano mise no shujin desū* (C). 16. *Anata ni iwareta tōri ni shimashitara, ha no itai no ga sukkari tomarimashita* (C). 17. *O tō-san ni mitsūkaru to butareru kara, doko ka e kakurete irasshai* (B).

1. It's all that child's fault that people are saying things about us they ought not to. 2. I've decided to give up smoking as the doctor says it's bad for the health. 3. If you keep on singing songs in a loud voice like that, you'll give me a headache. 4. As it would be a very disagreeable thing if he were seen, he hurriedly went into the house. 5. Haruo was very much annoyed at being deceived by Akio. 6. If you dig a ditch there it would be extremely inconvenient for me. 7. I'd like to eat those sweets but I'm afraid of the scolding I'd get when my master comes back. 8. Well, but it would be all right, wouldn't it, if he didn't get angry with you? I'll arrange it cleverly, so let's eat them up between us. 9. I'm certain that the man who bumped against me just now took the money, but as my family is poor, there's no doubt people will think that I stole it myself. 10. I thought of deceiving that man but it turned out the other way about, I was taken in by him. 11. I don't want to go out as I'm ashamed people should see me like this. 12. Up to now he's called me many things and I've put up with it, but I can't allow myself to be called a thief. 13. That man is so lazy that his father turned him out of the house. 14. Be sure to answer whenever you are spoken to; it is very rude to remain silent when you are asked a question. 15. The man whose dog was killed is the owner of that shop. 16. I did as you told me, and my toothache has entirely stopped. 17. As your father will beat you if he finds you, hide yourself somewhere.

# EXERCISE 105.

## Potential Verbs. Study 126—136.

*daidokoro* : kitchen.  
*hankechi* : handkerchief.  
*hashigo* : ladder.  
*kura* : godown.  
*shiawase na* : lucky ; fortunate.

*suberu* : to slip.  
*torikae'ru* : to change.  
*ue'ru* : to plant.  
*uke-toru* : to receive.

1. *Yūbe wa kono ko ga naite bakari ite tōtō nemure wa shimasen deshita* (C). 2. *Sumimasen ga, o mise no kaeri ni hankechi wo roku-mai katte kite kudasaimasen ka? watashi wa kaze wo hiite ite, soto e deraremasen kara* (C). 3. *Anata no yō na kata ga dō shite kono omoi mono wo motte ikaremashō? Dōse otōto ga asonde imasu kara, go issho ni motashite agemasu* (C). 4. *Sakki o tō-san ni 'kimono wo naoshite kure' to iwareta toki 'isogashikutte naose-nai' to wa itta keredomo, sō hima no iru koto de wa nai kara, chotto naoshite ageyō* (B). 5. *Musūko san ga naotte hatarakeru yō ni natte o shiawase desu* (C). 6. *Sono ki wa suberu kara, hashigo wo kake-nakereba noboremasen* (C). 7. *Chōdo kyō o me ni kakarete konna ureshii koto wa gozaimasen* (D). 8. *Uchi no tori ga kesa yoso no inu ni korosareta no desu ga, kō iu toki ni inu no shujin kara kane wo toru koto ga dekimasu ka?* (C). 9. *Soko e ki wo uerarete wa watashi no hō de komaru no desu ga, yoso e uete itadaku koto wa dekimasen ka?* (C). 10. *Anata ga jibun de ginkō e ika-nakereba o kane wo uke-toru koto ga deki-nai to iu hanashi deshita* (C). 11. *Yado-ya de dorobō ni kane wo torarete shimatte komatta keredomo, tomodachi no o-kage de yatto kaette kuru koto ga dekita* (B). 12. *Mō asūko e kura wo tate-hajimemashita kara, ima kara basho wo torikaeru wake ni wa ikimasen* (C). 13. *Sore wa watashi ga otoshita kane ja nai kara, uke-toru wake ni ika-nai to itta ja arimasen ka?* (C). 14. *Ano ko wo hitori de tsūkai ni yatte wa ike-nai to itta 'tte, daidokoro wo kamawa-nai de watashi ga issho ni itte yaru wake ni wa ika-nai deshō?* (C).

1. Last night this child did nothing but cry, so I wasn't able to sleep the whole night. 2. I am sorry to trouble you, but would you mind buying me half a dozen handkerchiefs on your way back from the office? I've caught a cold and I can't go out. 3. How can a weak person like you possibly carry this heavy thing? Anyhow, as my brother has got nothing to do for the moment, he can go with you and carry it. 4. When my father asked me just now to mend his kimono I said I was so busy I couldn't do it; however, it won't take long so I'll mend it for him after all. 5. I am glad to hear that your son has recovered and is able to work again. 6. That tree is slippery, you won't be able to climb it unless you've got a ladder. 7. It has been a very great pleasure for me (to have been able) to see you today. 8. This morning one of my fowls was killed by a (strange) dog; in such a case can I claim money from the owner of the dog? 9. If you plant the tree there, you will inconvenience me a great deal, couldn't you plant it somewhere else? 10. They said that if you yourself don't go to the bank, you can't get the money. 11. My money was stolen at an inn and I found myself in a very awkward position; however, at last, thanks to a friend, I was able to return home. 12. As I have already started building the godown there, I cannot now change the place. 13. I told you I can't receive that money as it wasn't I who lost it. 14. Although you say I oughtn't to send that child alone on errands, you can well understand I can't go with him and leave the kitchen.



# EXERCISE 106.

## Causative Verbs. Study 137—148.

*go-chisō* : feast.

*hokori* : dust.

*kufū* : plan ; scheme.

*sake* : alcoholic drink made from rice.

*shitate-ya* : tailor.

*sūtōbu* : stove.

*make'ru* : to lose ; reduce the price.

*nigasū* : to let escape.

*ochi'ru* : to fall.

*taku* : to kindle.

1. *Anata wa komaraseyō to iu tsumori ja nai no desū kara, dōka waruku omowanai de kudasai* (C). 2. *O samū gozaimashitara, sūtōbu ni hi wo takasemashō* (D). 3. *Ano mise wa baka ni tukai kara kondo ittara makesashite yara-nakereba...* (B). 4. *Tarō no inu ga Haruo no inu to kenka wo shite makemashita* (C). 5. *Otōto wa karada ni warui kara sake wo noma-nai yō ni to icarete mo yappari nande komatta mono da ; dō ka shite yamesaseru kufū wa nai darō ka ?* (B). 6. *Kono kimono wa shitate-ya de nutta no de gozaimasū ka ?* (D). 7. *Iie, uchi no Hana ni mawasete no de gozaimasū* (D). 8. *O tsūkue no ue ga hokori-darake de gozaimasū kara, jochū ni fūkasemashō* (D). 9. *Kodomo ni kega wo sase-nai yō ni shijū ki wo tsukete ite o kure* (A). 10. *Watashi ga uchi e itte kuru aida kono inu wo nigasanai yō ni ban wo shite ite kudasai* (C). 11. *Watashi sae soba ni itara, sonna shigoto wa sase-nai no desū ga, wake ga atte kochira e kite imasū no de, omou yō ni ika-nai no desū* (C). 12. *Watashi ga yatta inu wo kodomo ni ijimesaseru nara inu wo kaeshite kudasai* (B). 13. *Kitto onaka wo sūkashite o kaeri darō to omotte, go-chisō wo koshiraete matte imashita* (C). 14. *Kinō Tarō ga yane e agatte, dō iu wake ka ashi wo suberasete ochite kega wo shimashita* (C). 15. *Kimono ga yogoreta kara jochū ni arawashite o kure* (A). 16. *Koppu wa watashi ga kowashita no desū kara, watashi ni harawasete kudasai* (C). 17. *Konna hon wo kodomo ni yomasete wa ike-nai ja nai ka ?* (A). 18. *Anata wa dō iu wake de kono ko wo nakashitari suru no desū ?* (C).

1. As I had no intention of putting you in an awkward position, please don't think ill of me. 2. If you are cold, I'll have the stove lit. 3. As that shop always charges so dear, next time I go there I must beat them down. 4. Tarō's dog had a fight with Haruo's and was beaten. 5. We are very anxious about my brother. Although he's been told not to drink *sake* because it's bad for his health, he nevertheless goes on drinking. What could we do to make him stop? 6. Did a tailor make this kimono? 7. No, my daughter Hana made it for me (*lit.* I had it sewn by my daughter Hana). 8. Your desk is all dusty, I'll tell the servant to wipe it (with a duster). 9. Be always careful so that the children may not hurt themselves. 10. I'm just going to my house for a moment, please don't let the dog run away in the meantime. 11. If I had only been there I wouldn't have let you do (heavy) work like that, but I was obliged to be here, so I couldn't do as I wanted. 12. If you are going to let the children worry the dog I gave you, you'd better give it back to me. 13. I thought you would be sure to be hungry when you came back, so I prepared a good dinner for you. 14. Tarō got on to the roof yesterday, and for some reason or other his foot slipped and he fell and hurt himself. 15. As my dress is dirty, get the servant to wash it. 16. As I broke the tumbler, let me pay for it. 17. You ought to know that you shouldn't let children read a book like this. 18. What are you making that child cry for?

## EXERCISE 107.

### Reflexive Verbs ; Compound Verbs. Study 149—155.

*kogoto* : scolding.

*mari* : ball.

*yūkata* ; *yūgata* : evening.

*hosoi* : thin.

*akeppanasū* : to leave open.

*furue'ru* : to tremble.

*kake'ru* : to run.

*nage'ru* : to throw.

*tobu* : to jump ; fly.

1. *O tō-san wa Haruo no kao wo miru to ōki na koe de kogoto wo iimasū no de. Haruo wa furue nagara to no kage ni kakurete imashita* (C). 2. *Tarō wa mari wo nagete asonde iru no desū ka?* (C). 3. *Sonna hosoi eda e nobotte, eda ga oretura kega wo suru ja nai ka?* (A). 4. *Kono tori wa kega wo shite yoku tobe-nai no desū* (C). 5. *Hana-ko wa nani wo shite imasū?* (C). 6. *Tadaima kimono wo kite irasshaimasū* (D). 7. *Todana wo akeppanashite oite wa ikemasen* (A). 8. *Kinō no yūkata kowai inu ga ushiro kara kita no de, isoide kake-dashitara, ki ni butsi-katte kega wo shimashita* (C). 9. *Daibu kutabiremashita ne, asūko e koshi-kakete o yasumi nasai* (C). 10. *Yūbin-kyoku e itte dempō wo utte kite o kure, isogi da kara, kakete itte o-ide* (A). 11. *Kono tegami wa anmari imi ga hakekiri shimasen kara, kaki-naoshite kudasaimasen ka?* (C). 12. *Yatto tenki ni natta to omotte itara, mata furi-dashimashita yo* (C). 13. *Michi ga fūtatsū ni wakarete ite, dotchi wo itte ii ka to omotte komatte iru to, tōri-kakatta hito ga oshiete kuremashita* (C). 14. *Hana-ko no byōki wa yatto kono-goro naori-kakarimashita* (C). 15. *Yomi-kaketa hon wo yonde shimatte kara, hoka no wo kashite ageyō* (A). 16. *Jirō San wa densha kara tobi-orite taihen na kega wo shita sō desū* (C). 17. *Kono kugi ni bōshi wo kakete yō gozaimasū ka?* (D). 18. *Iie, soko wa bōshi wo kakeru tokoro ja arimasen ; tonari no heya ni oite kudasai* (C). 19. *Kono ko wa shira-nai hito no kao wo miru to kitto naki-dashimasū* (C). 20. *Yūbe mado wo akeppanashite netara kaze wo hiite shimatta* (B).

1. When my father saw Haruo he scolded him in a loud voice, and Haruo trembling hid himself behind the door. 2. Is Tarō amusing himself by throwing a ball about? 3. If you get on a thin branch like that, and the branch were to break, you would hurt yourself. 4. This bird hurt itself and can't fly properly. 5. What is Hana-ko doing? 6. She is dressing herself. 7. Don't leave the cupboard open. 8. Yesterday evening a fierce dog was following me, so I started to run as fast as I could ; I knocked myself against a tree and hurt myself. 9. You must be very tired, sit down there for a while and rest yourself. 10. Go to the post office and send a telegram, as the affair is urgent go there running. 11. The meaning of this letter is not quite clear, please write it again. 12. I thought that at last the weather was going to be fine, and now, it has begun raining again. 13. The road branched into two, and as I didn't know which to take, I found myself in an awkward position ; but a man who happened to pass kindly told me the way. 14. At last Hana-ko is beginning to recover from her illness. 15. When you've finished reading the book you've begun to read, I'll lend you another. 16. They say that Mr Jirō got off the tram-car while it was still in motion, and hurt himself badly. 17. May I hang my hat on this nail? 18. No, that's not the proper place to hang your hat, go and leave it in the next room. 19. Whenever this child sees a strange face, he's sure to start crying. 20. I slept last night with the window open and I've caught a cold.



The Verb *Suru*. Study 156—163.*aisatsu* : salutation.*enryo* : reserve ; regard for another's feelings.*jimon* : self-praise.*nioi* : smell.*shabon* : soap.*shōbai* : occupation.*shōchi* : consent ; knowledge.*negau* : to ask ; request.*tsükare'ru* : to get tired.

1. *Anata no yō na shōbai wo shīte iru hito wa mai-nichi san-jip-pun gurai undō wo shi-nakereba ike-nai desū* (C). 2. *Ano kyōdai wa yoku kenka wo suru ga, sono kawari sugu ni naka ga yoku naru* (B). 3. *Watanabe wa Ei-go ga hanaseru no wo taisō jiman shīte iru n' desū* (C). 4. *Yokohama e hikkosū no wa chichi ni sōdan shīte kara no koto ni shimashita* (C). 5. *Kore wa sendatte mo hanashita hanashi desū kara, go zonji no kata mo aru deshō* (C). 6. *Kono shabon wa iya desū, nioi ga shimasu kara* (C). 7. *Kesa Suzuki San ni atta kara, aisatsu shitara, shiran kao shīte itte shimatta ; tabun ki ga tsūka-nakatta no darō* (B). 8. *Zutsū ga suru nara, enryo shi-nai de nete iru ga ii* (A). 9. *Chichi wa ikura negatte mo watashi ga Amerika e iku koto wo shōchi shi-nai no de, komatte imasu* (C). 10. *Tarō no naki-goe ga shimasu ne, dō shita no ka itte goran nasai* (B). 11. *Shibaraku no aida byō-nin ni dare mo awase-nai yō ni shīte moraitai desū ; hanashi wo suru to dō shīte mo tsükaremasu kara* (C). 12. *Jiman suru no wa mittomonai mono da* (B). 13. *Nii-san no go benkyō no jama wo shīte wa ike-nai kara, naru-take nikai e ika-nai yō ni o shi nasai* (A). 14. *Kore kara o hanashi suru hanashi wa Momotarō no hanashi desū* (C). 15. *Yamada San ga go byōki no koto wa shōchi shīte orimashita ga, masaka konna ni kyū ni o nakunari nasarō to wa omoimasen deshita* (D). 16. *Shujin ga, 'anata ni go sōdan shitai koto ga aru kara, sugu o-ide kudasai' to mōshimashita* (D). 17. *Anata mo Kyōto e kembutsū ni iku nara, boku mo issho ni iku koto ni shiyō* (B). 18. *Ammari enryo suru hito wa sūki ja arimasen* (C). 19. *Ikura itakutte mo gaman suru hōka shikata ga nai* (B).

1. A man occupied like you, needs to take half an hour's exercise every day. 2. Those brothers are always quarrelling, but on the other hand they soon make it up again. 3. Watanabe is very proud of being able to speak English. 4. I've decided not to move to Yokohama until after I've consulted my father. 5. I already told this tale some days ago, so I suppose some of you will know it. 6. I don't like this soap, the scent is too strong. 7. I met Mr Suzuki this morning and I raised my hat to him, but he went by without taking any notice ; perhaps he didn't see me. 8. If you've got a headache, don't stand upon ceremony, lie down. 9. My father will not consent to my going to America, no matter how much I ask him, so I don't know what to do. 10. Tarō is crying, go and see what's the matter with him. 11. For some days I don't want the patient to see anybody ; talking is sure to tire him. 12. To go about boasting is not at all a nice thing to do. 13. You mustn't interrupt your brother while he's studying, so as far as possible don't go upstairs. 14. The tale I am about to tell you is the tale of Momotarō. 15. I knew that Mr Yamada was ill, but I never dreamt that he would die so suddenly. 16. My master says that he has something he wants to consult you about, so please come immediately. 17. If you are going on a trip to Kyōto, I'll arrange to go with you. 18. I don't care for people who stand too much upon ceremony. 19. No matter how great the pain is you must put up with it, as there's nothing else to be done.

# EXERCISE 109.

## The Verb *Naru*. Study 164.

*hi* : sun ; sunshine.

*katachi* : shape.

*yaku* : service.

*yaku ni tatsū* : to be of use.

*raku na* : easy ; comfortable.

*suppai* : sour.

*ataru* : to strike against.

*hayaru* : to be fashionable.

*mamoru* : to protect ; defend.

*yakūsoku wo mamoru* : to keep one's word.

*metta ni* (with neg.) : seldom.

*nante* : and such like things.

*sen* : former ; previous.

*yōyō* : at last.

1. *Kono o kashi wa suppaku natte imasu kara, taberaremasen* (C). 2. *Ano hito wa itsu de mo yakūsoku wo mamora-nai kara, mō iya ni natte shimatta* (B). 3. *Ocha ga nomitaku nattara, itsu de mo sō itte kudasai* (C). 4. *Hana-ko San no yō na bōshi ga hayaru sō da kara, watashi mo kaitaku natta* (B). 5. *Anata ga Amerika e irasshareba uchi no Gorō mo kitto ikitaku naru deshō* (C). 6. *Kono-goro wa kō iu katachi no bōshi wa hayara-naku natta yō desu ne, metta ni kabutte iru hito ga imasen* (C). 7. *Soko e ki wo nerareru to bokū no heya e hi ga atara-naku natte komaru no desū* (C). 8. *O Kiku ga i-naku natta 'tte? Sore wa taihen da, sugu ni hōbō sagasa-nakereba* (B). 9. *Sono kire wa atsui o yu ni nante iretara sukkari yaku ni tata-naku naru* (B). 10. *Chichi wa watakushi ga mittsu no toki ni shinde, haha wa shijū byōki de gozaimashita kara, fūtari wa gohan wo taberu koto mo dekinaku natte shimaimashita* (D). 11. *Oji kara moratta kane de shōbai wo hajimete, haha to watashi ga raku ni kuraseru yō ni natta no desū* (C). 12. *Hana wa yōyō kinō kara okite sūkoshi arukeru yō ni natta bakari desū* (C). 13. *Kuni e kaeranakereba nara-nai koto ni natta kara, rusu no aida yoku ki wo tsukete, kodomo ni kega nanzo sase-nai yō ni shite kudasai* (B). 14. *Watashi-tachi ga sen ita uchi wa uru koto ni narimashita* (C). 15. *Suzuki San wa o tō-san ga Nara e irassharu no de, issho ni iku koto ni natta sō da* (B). 16. *Watashi wa yotto Ei-go no shimbun ga yomeru yō ni natta bakari desū* (C).

1. This pudding is (has turned) sour, I can't eat it. 2. That man never keeps his promises, I'm disgusted with him, and I'll have nothing more to do with him. 3. Whenever you are thirsty, let me know. 4. They say that hats like Miss Hana-ko's are fashionable now, I also would like to buy one. 5. If you go to America, (my son) Gorō is sure to want to go also. 6. Lately hats of this shape have gone out of fashion, haven't they? You hardly ever see anybody wearing them now. 7. If you plant trees there, my room won't get the sun, and I'll be greatly inconvenienced. 8. Do you say Kiku is missing? That's very serious, we must immediately look for her everywhere. 9. If you put that cloth into very hot water or do other silly things like that, you'll spoil it entirely, and it will be good for nothing. 10. My father died when I was three, and my mother has always been sick, that is why we became so poor that we hadn't enough to eat. 11. With money my uncle gave me I opened a small shop, and now, my mother and myself can live comfortably. 12. At last Hana was able to get up yesterday and walk about a little. 13. I find I am obliged to return home, while I'm away, take great care that the children don't hurt themselves or come to any harm. 14. The house we used to live in is now for sale. 15. They say that Mr Suzuki's father is going to Nara, it has been arranged that Mr Suzuki shall go with him. 16. At last I'm able to read English newspapers.



## EXERCISE 110.

### The Verb 'To Be'. Study 165.

*akindo* : merchant.

*botchan* : polite term for little boy.

*hana* : nose.

*mekura* : blind person.

*nadakai* : famous.

*ii-tsūke'ru* : to command.

*nekasū* : to put to sleep.

*niau* : to suit; fit.

*nuke'ru* : to come off; get left out.

1. *Ano gakkō ni wa mekura no gaikoku-jin ga hitori iru* (B). 2. *Anata no gakkō ni mekura no seito ga arimasu ka?* (C). 3. *Hai, hitori gozaimasu* (D). 4. *Watashi no tomodachi ni nadakai isha ga hitori arimasu ga, ima Amerika e itte orimasu* (C). 5. *Ani wa isha ni naru tsumori deshita ga, mada gakkō ni iru uchi ni shinde shinaimashita* (C). 6. *Jochū ni watashi ga kaeru made kono heya ni iru yō ni ii-tsūkete kudasai* (C). 7. *Anata no tokoro ni kono jibiki ga gozaimashita ne? watashi no wa nukeite iru tokoro ga atte komarimashita; sumimasen ga, chotto kashite kudasaimasen ka?* (C). 8. *Nihon no onna de yōfuku wo kiru hito mo arimasu ga, dōmo naiimasen ne* (C). 9. *Botchan wa doko ni irasshaimasu ka?* (D). 10. *Nikai ni nekashite arimasu* (C). 11. *Ano imu wa nige-nai yō ni hako e irete arimasu* (C). 12. *Jū-go ni nattara, sono gurai no koto wa dekiru hazu da* (B). 13. *Gorō San ni 'nani ni naru tsumori desu?' to kiite mitara, 'akindo ni naru kangae da' to itte imashita* (C). 14. *Chichi wa nagai aida hana ga warukutte isha ni itte imashita ga, kono-goro daibu yoku narimashita* (C). 15. *Kono kinjo ni omocha wo koshiraeru hito ga aru* (B). 16. *Omocha wo koshiraeru hito ga kono kinjo ni imasu* (C). 17. *Kono gakkō ni wa seito ga go-jū-nin aru no desu ga, uchi e kaette shimatte, ima iru no wa go-nin dake desu* (C). 18. *Kono heya ni Eikoku-jin ga fūtari imasu* (C). 19. *Kono heya ni iru hito no naka ni Eikoku-jin ga fūtari aru* (B). 20. *Ano uchi ni ni-tō ni noru hito mo aru* (B). 21. *Ni-tō ni noru hito wa ano heya ni imasu* (C). 22. *Kono machi no hito no kazu wa jū-shichi-man-nin desu ga, sono uchi gaikoku-jin ga sam-byaku-nin arimasu* (C).

1. At that school there is one blind foreigner. 2. Are there any blind scholars at your school? 3. Yes, there is one. 4. One of my friends is a famous doctor, he is now in America. 5. My brother had the intention of being a doctor, but he died while he was still studying. 6. Please tell the servant to remain (*lit.* be) in this room until I come back. 7. You used to have a dictionary like this, I believe; as some pages are missing from mine, would you please lend me yours? 8. There are some Japanese ladies who wear foreign clothes, but there's no denying it doesn't suit them. 9. Where's the child? 10. He is asleep upstairs (*lit.* I put him to sleep). 11. I've shut that dog up in a box so that it can't run away. 12. As you are fifteen, you ought to be able to do a thing like that. 13. I asked Mr Gorō what he was thinking of being, and he said he was thinking of being a merchant. 14. My father went to the doctor for a long time on account of some trouble in his nose; however, he is much better now. 15. There's a man in this neighbourhood who makes toys. 16. The man who makes toys is in this neighbourhood. 17. There are fifty scholars at this school, but for the moment there are only five here as the others have returned home. 18. There are two Englishmen in this room. 19. Among the men who are in this room, two are Englishmen. 20. Among these people there are some second-class passengers. 21. The second-class passengers are in that room. 22. There are 170,000 people in this town, 300 of them are foreigners.

## EXERCISE 111.

Doubt, probability, possibility, 'perhaps', supposition, opinion, semblance, report. Study 166.

*hakujo* : confession.

*momen* : cotton.

*moyo* : pattern ; condition.

*ozei* : crowd.

*sora* : sky.

*hen na* : strange.

*mitai na* : like ; similar.

*hikaru* : to shine.

*kumoru* : to be cloudy.

*ni'ru* : to be alike.

*okkochi'ru* : to fall.

1. *Tamura San wa irassharu ka shira* (B). 2. *Irasshara-nai to mo ie-nai keredomo, kono arashi ja...* (B). 3. *Hashi no ue ni anna ni ozei hito ga iru ga, dare ka kawa e okkotta no ka shira* (B). 4. *Wake wo hanashite o negai shitara, misete kudasara-nai mono de mo arimasūmai* (C). 5. *Kono sora-moyo de wa itsu ame ga furu-mai mono de mo nai kara, kasa wo motte iku hō ga ii darō* (B). 6. *Kyū ni kumotte kinnashita ne, mata ame ga furu (no) ka mo shiremasen* (C). 7. *Hen ni attakai kara, arashi ga kuru (no) ka mo shire-nai* (B). 8. *Kaeri wa osoku naru ka mo shire-nai kara, rusu wa yoku ki wo tsukete kudasai* (C). 9. *Kono kire wa momen desū ga, hikatte, kinu mitai desū* (C). 10. *Ano futari wa amari yoku nite ite, maru de kyōdai mitai de gozaimasū ne* (D). 11. *Hana-ko San ga naite iru ; mata itazura wo shite o kā-san ni shikarareta to mieru* (B). 12. *Ano otoko wa dorobō shita no wo hakujo shita to iu hanashi desū ne ?* (C). 13. *E, sukkari hakujo shita sō desū* (C). 14. *Kono hen ni yado-ya ga ari-sō na mono da ; dare ka ni kiite miyō* (B). 15. *Mō Tarō ga kaeri-sō na mono da ga, dō ka shita no ka shira ? Jochū wo sagashi ni yatte miyō* (B). 16. *Anata wa ii ka mo shire-masen ga, watashi wa kesshite shōchi shimasen kara, sono tsumori de ite kudasai* (C). 17. *Ikura isogashii to itta 'tte, chotto tegami wo kaku gurai deki-sō na mono ga arimasen ka ?* (B). 18. *Ano hako wa taihen kirei desū ne ? O kai ni natta no ka shira ?* (C). 19. *Nan de mo jōzu na hito desū kara, tabun jibun de koshiraeta no deshō* (C).

1. I wonder whether Mr Tamura will come. 2. I can't be absolutely certain he won't come, but just consider the storm there is. 3. Just look at all those people on the bridge, I wonder if anybody has fallen into the river. 4. If you tell him the reason, I don't think he'll refuse to show it to you. 5. With the sky as it is, it may rain at any moment, so you had better take an umbrella. 6. It's become cloudy all of a sudden, I dare say it will rain again. 7. It is strangely warm (for this time of the year), I dare say we shall have a storm. 8. As it may be late before I return, be careful (about things in general) while I am away. 9. This cloth is cotton, but it shines so that it looks like silk. 10. Those two persons are so like each other they look exactly like brothers. 11. Miss Hana-ko is crying ; it looks as if she'd been up to mischief again, and got scolded by her mother. 12. They say that man has confessed his theft, don't they ? 13. Yes, they say he has confessed everything. 14. There ought to be an inn in this neighbourhood, let's inquire of somebody. 15. It's time Tarō was back, I wonder whether anything has happened to him. I'll send the servant to look for him. 16. You may think it all right for all I know, but I'll never give my consent, so make up your mind to that. 17. No matter how busy you were, you might at least have dropped me a line. 18. What a pretty box ! I wonder if he bought it ? 19. I dare say he made it himself, he's clever at everything.



## EXERCISE 112.

Certainty ; emphasis. Study 167.

*chi* : blood.  
*ii-wake* : excuse.  
*jijitsū* : fact.  
*jō* : lock.

*burei na* : rude.  
*rippa na* : splendid.  
*kurabe'ru* : to compare.  
*mochiron* : of course.

1. *Tarō wa kyō Tanaka San ni burei na koto wo itta kara, o tō-san ni okorareru ni chigai nai* (B). 2. *Anata ga Nikkō e irasshareba oku-san mo o-ide ni nari-mashō?* (D). 3. *Sore wa mochiron no koto desū* (C). 4. *Rokurō San wa isogashii kara, ashita korare-nai to itte yokoshimashita yo* (C). 5. *Sō desū ka?* *Isogashii nante ii-wake ni chigai nai, boku ni aitaku nai no desū yo* (C). 6. *Sakki kogatana de yubi wo kitte, chi ga naka-naka tomara-nai no desū ; dō shitara ii deshō?* (C). 7. *Anata no o uchi mo konna ni kirei desū ka?* (C). 8. *Boku no uchi nante, konna ni rippa ja arya shi-nai* (B). 9. *Anata no ossharu koto wa maru de jijitsū to chigatte imasū* (C). 10. *Hachirō San to boku to nichiyō ni Kamakura made aruite ikō to omou no desū ; anata no otōto san ni mo irassharu yō ni osshatte kudasaimasen ka?* (C). 11. *Are wa yōyō tōka bakari mae ni okirareru yō ni natta n' desū kara, mada sonna ni aruku koto wa totemo dekimasen* (C). 12. *Kesa deru toki tashika ni jō wo oroshita tsumori da ga, dō shite aite iru no darō?* (B). 13. *Hana-ko San no o uchi wa kore yori ōkii desū ka?* (C). 14. *Ōkii desū to mo!* *konna uchi to nante kuraberaremasen* (C). 15. *Yamada San wa Ei-go no shimbun ga yomeru deshō ka?* (C). 16. *Yomemasū to mo, Rondon ni ni-nen mo ita hito ja arimasen ka?* (C). 17. *Konna ni hidoku futcha Suzuki San wa ko-nai deshō ne?* (C). 18. *Iie, tashika ni o-ide nasaimasū yo, ano kata wa. Ame nanzo ni makete irassharu yō na hito ja arimasen mono* (C). 19. *Koko kara suteishon made ni-jikan de iku no wa naka-naka raku ja arimasen ; hidoi michi desū kara ne* (C). 20. *Kore wa anata no kasa ja arimasen ka?* (C). 21. *E, watashi no ni chigai arimasen ga, dō shite koko ni atta no deshō?* (C).

1. Tarō was rude to Mr Tanaka today, you may be sure he'll get a scolding from his father. 2. If you go to Nikkō, will your wife go with you? 3. Oh, of course. 4. Rokurō writes to say that he is busy and can't come tomorrow. 5. Is that what he says? You may be sure that's only an excuse. The fact is that he doesn't want to meet me. 6. I cut my finger just now with a pen-knife, and it won't stop bleeding; what had I better do? 7. Is your house as pretty as this one? 8. Oh, no, my house is not nearly as fine as this. 9. What you say is in complete disaccord with the facts. 10. Master Hachirō and I are thinking of walking to Kamakura on Sunday, won't you tell your brother to come with us? 11. Why, it's only ten days since he's been able to get up, so a walk like that is entirely out of the question. 12. I feel certain I locked (that door) when I went out this morning; how does it happen to be open now, I wonder? 13. Is Miss Hana-ko's house bigger than this one? 14. Of course it is. Why, you can't compare the two. 15. Can Mr Yamada read English newspapers? 16. Of course he can, why he was two years in London. 17. I don't think Mr Suzuki will come with this heavy rain. 18. Oh, yes, he's sure to come. He's not a man to be beaten by the rain or anything like that. 19. It's not an easy thing to walk to the station from here in two hours; the road is very bad. 20. Isn't this your umbrella? 21. Yes, there's no doubt about it's being mine, but I can't think how it got here.

## EXERCISE 113.

Obligation ; permission. Study 168 ; 169.

*amai* : sweet.

*futsū no* : ordinary.

*kaii* : itching.

*zonzai na* : careless.

*azukaru* : to receive in trust.

*kaku* : to scratch.

*sawaru* : to touch.

*myō-* (in comp.) : tomorrow.

1. *Kondo Takeo ni tegami wo yaru toki, anna zonzai na ji wo kaite wa ike-nai to itte yatte kudasai* (C). 2. *Yamada San no o rusu no aida kono inu wo azukatta no desū ga, uchi ni nare-nai kara, nige-nai yō ni ki wo tsukete ite kudasai* (C). 3. *Abunai kara, mado kara kao ya te wo dashite wa ikemasen* (B). 4. *Kono bin ni wa doku ga haitte iru kara, kodomo ni sawarase-nai yō ni yoku mite ite o kure* (A). 5. *Kono o tegami wa kaki-tome ni suru no de gozaimasū ka ? futsū de yoroshii gozaimasū ka ?* (D). 6. *Betsū ni daiji na tegami de mo arimasen kara, futsū de ii desū* (C). 7. *Kaku to nao kaiku naru bakari desū kara, gaman nasara-nai to ikemasen* (C). 8. *Myōasa wa shichi-ji no kisha de iku kara, go-ji ni okiru no da ; wasurete wa ike-nai* (A). 9. *Haha ga abunai to itte mairimashita kara, makoto ni sumimasen ga, dōzo futsūka o hima wo itadakitō gozaimasū* (D). 10. *Sore wa ike-nai ; ja itte o-ide* (A). 11. *Enryo shi-nai de, don-don Nihon-go wo hanasa-nai to itsu made mo jōzu ni wa nare-nai no desū ; machigatte mo kamaimasen kara* (C). 12. *Kyō wa uchi ni byō-nin ga arimasū kara, hayaku kaera-nakereba narimasen* (C). 13. *Ii o tenki da kara, minna de Ueno e ikō to omou ga, omae wa ikitaku nakereba ika-nai de mo ii* (A). 14. *Kono hon wa kashite yatte mo ii ga, mō kae-nai mono da kara, daiji ni shite, nakusa-nai yō ni shi nasai* (A). 15. *O isha san ga kono ko ni wa amari amai mono wo tabesase-nai yō ni to osshaimashita* (C). 16. *Kyū na yō ga atte, Kyōto e iku kara, myōban wa ko-nakutte mo ii* (A). 17. *Sonna rippa na kimono wo ki-nai de, fudan no wo kite o-ide nasai* (A).

1. Next time you write to Takeo please tell him that he mustn't write such a careless hand. 2. Mr Yamada asked me to take care of this dog while he was away; as the dog is not accustomed to this house, be careful he doesn't run away. 3. Don't put your head or your hand out of the window, it's dangerous. 4. There's some poison in this bottle, so take great care the children don't touch it. 5. Do you want me to register this letter, or shall I send it by ordinary post ? 6. It's not a specially important letter, so ordinary post will do. 7. If you scratch it, it will only itch the more, so bear the itching with patience. 8. As we are leaving by the seven o'clock train tomorrow morning, you must get up at five, and don't forget it. 9. I have received news that my mother is dangerously ill ; I am sorry to inconvenience you, but would you be kind enough to give me two days' leave ? 10. I am sorry to hear that (your mother is ill) ; yes, you may go. 11. Don't mind what other people think, and don't hesitate to speak Japanese ; otherwise you will never learn to speak it well ; it doesn't matter how many mistakes you make. 12. As there's somebody sick at home, I must return early. 13. As the weather is fine we are all thinking of going to Ueno ; however, you needn't go if you don't want to. 14. I don't mind lending you this book, but take great care of it and don't lose it as it (is out of print, and) can no longer be bought. 15. The doctor said that you mustn't give this child too many sweet things to eat. 16. Something unexpected has happened which obliges me to go to Kyōto, so you needn't come tomorrow evening. 17. Don't put on such good clothes ; go in your everyday things.



# EXERCISE 114.

Advice ; preference ; judging of two lines of action. Study 170.

*hana-mi* : flower-viewing.

*hiru-ne* : midday nap.

*jōdan* : joke.

*yasu-mono* : cheap article of inferior quality.

*toku* : advantage.

*yakamashii* : noisy.

*dōsari* : plenty.

*waza to* : on purpose.

1. *Ano hito wa sugu ni hara wo tateru kara, jōdan wo iwa-nai ga ii* (B). 2. *Ban ni yoku nemure-nai no nara, hiru-ne wo shi-nai hō ga ii ja arimasen ka?* (C). 3. *O kane ga aru no nara, motto jōtō no bōshi wo o kai ni nareba ii ja arimasen ka? sonna yasu-mono de naku* (C). 4. *Torarete shimatta no nara, ikura kangaete ita 'tte, shikata ga nai; hayaku shujin no tokoro e kaette, wake wo hanashite, ayamaru (hō) ga ii* (B). 5. *Abunai kara sore wa shi-nai hō ga ii deshō* (C). 6. *Taihen ii o tenki desū kara, kodomo-tachi wo tsurete, hana-mi ni o-ide ni nattara ikaga desū?* (C). 7. *Kyō wa nan da ka arukitaku nai kara ikumai* (B). 8. *O kane wo motte kite yokatta; moshi motte ko-nakareba, asūko e haire-nakatta no desū* (C). 9. *Watashi no rusu ni wa nani mo sawatte wa ike-nai to itsū mo itsū mo itte aru no ni, hito ga tometa koto wo suru. Mō ichi-do kō iu koto wo shitara, yurusa-nai yo* (A). 10. *Tōi tokoro wo waza-waza irasshaimashita no ni, o kamai mo itashimasen de, makoto ni shitsūrei itashimashita* (D). 11. *Kyō wa uchi wo akete wa ike-nai to itta no ni* (B). 12. *Yoku jikushita nashi ga dossari natte iru no ni, waza to aoi no wo totte Saburō ni yarimashita* (C). 13. *Watashi ga itara kesshite sonna koto wa sase-nakatta no ni* (B). 14. *Konna yakamashii tokoro nara, koshite ko-nai hō gā yō gozaimashita* (D). 15. *Kaeri mo densha ni noru nara, ōfuku wo kau hō ga toku deshō* (C). 16. *O kutabire de gozaimashō; sūkoshi o yasumi ni natte wa ikaga de gozaimasu ka?* (D). 17. *Ano hito no iu koto wo shinyō shi-nakattara, konna koto ni wa nara-nakatta no ni* (B).

1. You had better not joke with that man as he easily gets angry. 2. If you can't sleep at night you had better not sleep during the day. 3. If you have money enough, instead of a cheap hat like that you might buy a better one. 4. If they have stolen it (the money), thinking over it will do no good at all; you had better go back to your master quickly, tell him what has happened, and ask his pardon. 5. You had better not do that, it's dangerous. 6. As the weather is so fine, what do you say to taking the children, and going flower-viewing? 7. I don't know what's wrong with me today, but I don't feel inclined to walk; so I don't think I'll go. 8. I am glad I brought my purse with me; if I hadn't, I wouldn't have been able to go in there. 9. I've told you time after time that when I am away you are not to touch anything. What do you mean by doing what you've been forbidden? I won't forgive you next time you do it. 10. Although you have come to such an out-of-the-way place on purpose (to see me), I have offered you no entertainment, and I have been very impolite. 11. Didn't I tell you not to leave the house today? 12. Although there are plenty of ripe pears, he purposely picked a green one and gave it to Saburō. 13. If I had been there I should never have allowed such a thing to happen to you. 14. I wish I hadn't moved to such a noisy place as this. 15. If you are coming back by tram-car, it would be to your advantage to buy a return ticket. 16. You must be tired, won't you rest a while? 17. If I hadn't believed what that man said, this wouldn't have happened.

# EXERCISE 115.

Desire, wish, want, need. Study 171.

*ama-do* : outside shutters.

*furo* : hot bath.

*hantai* : opposition.

*haru* : spring.

*iri-yō* : use ; need.

*ryō-hō* : both.

*tsūben* : interpreter.

*atsui* : thick.

*hiyō na* : extraordinary ; extreme.

*usui* : thin.

*au* : to suit.

*rai*-(in comp.) : next ; coming.

1. *Watashi wa isha ni naru tsumori de benkyō shite itara, me ga waruku natte nare-nakatta kara, sono kawari ni Tarō wo isha ni shitai mono da* (B). 2. *Dōmo koko wa watashi no karada ni aimasen kara, rainen no haru kuni e kaeru yō ni shitai mono desū* (C). 3. *Michi ga warui kara, akarui uchi ni kaeru yō ni shitai mon' da* (B). 4. *Zuibun yoku furimashita ne ; desū ga, kondo wa tenki ni naru deshō* (C). 5. *Kane ga san-jū-yen hodo iri-yō desū ga, kashite kudasaimesen ka ? Misoka ni o kaeshi itashimasū* (D). 6. *Nan de mo iri-yō na mono ga attara, enryo naku sō itte kudasai* (C). 7. *Anata wa ii o koe da to kikimashita, dōka itsu ka o utai ni naru no wo kikitai mono desū* (C). 8. *Komban wa kaze ga tsuyoi kara, ama-do wo shimete moraitai* (B). 9. *Hijō ni me ga itaku natte kita no de, is'ra ni mite moraitai to omotte itara, rusu de dame datta* (B). 10. *Sore wa ikemasen desū ne. Dotchi no me ga itai n' desū ?* (C). 11. *Ryō-hō to mo itai desū* (C). 12. *Kyō wa roku-ji ni koeru kara, sugu ni furo ni haireru yō ni shite oite moraitai* (B). 13. *Atsui thick no hantai no kotoba wo oshiete itadakitai no desū* (C). 14. *Sore wa usui desū* (C). 15. *Tsūben wo tsurete o-ide ni nattara ikaga de gozaimasū ?* (D). 16. *Kono bō wa naga-sugiru kara, ni-sun bakari mijikaku shitai* (B). 17. *Ammari kutabireta kara, sū:oshi neru. Yo-ji ni okoshite moraitai* (A). 18. *Ashita wa doko ka e asobi ni iku tsumori desū kara, o bentō wo koshiraete moraitai desū* (C). 19. *O kā-san wa omae wo byōki ni shitaku nai kara, ā osshatta n' desū yo* (A).

1. I was studying to be a doctor but my eyes got bad, and I had to give it up ; so I want to make (my son) Tarō a doctor instead. 2. Somehow or other this locality does not suit my health, so I want to return to my native country next spring. 3. As the road is bad I want to return home while it is still light. 4. It has rained a great deal, hasn't it ? I hope, however, we are going to have fine weather now. 5. I'm in need of thirty yen, would you please lend it to me ? I will return it at the end of the month. 6. If you are in need of anything, please say so without standing upon ceremony. 7. I hear you have a very beautiful voice, I'd like to hear you sing some day, if possible. 8. As there's a strong wind this evening, I want to have the outside shutters closed. 9. My eyes were hurting me very much, so I went to see the doctor, but he was out. 10. I am sorry to hear you are not well. Which eye is painful ? 11. Both. 12. I shall be back today at six, and I want to have my bath as soon as I come ; (get everything ready by that time). 13. I wish you would tell me what's the opposite to *atsui* thick ? 14. It is *usui*. 15. Would you care to take an interpreter with you ? 16. This stick is too long, I want it made two inches shorter. 17. I'm so tired I'm going to sleep awhile, I want to be woken at four o'clock. 18. I'm thinking of going on a pleasure-trip tomorrow, get some lunch ready for me to take with me. 19. Your mother said that to you because she doesn't want you to get ill.



# EXERCISE 116.

Fear ; Intention. Study 172 ; 173.

*chikara* : strength.  
*hom-mono* : genuine article.  
*i-ma* : sitting-room.  
*kagi* : key.  
*kari* : debt.  
*kenyaku* : economy.  
*mama* : original condition or state.  
*matsū* : pine-tree.

*mekki* : plating.  
*nise-mono* : thing which is not genuine.  
*ryōri* : cooking ; food.  
*shokudō* : dining-room.  
*zōge* : ivory.  
*ki-kae'ru* : to change one's clothes.  
*ki ni iru* : to like.  
*oru* (trans.) : to break ; fold.

1. *Kyō wa kaeri ga osoku naru ka mo shiremasen kara, o saki e ban no gohan wo meshi-agatte kudasai* (D). 2. *Mitsū-ko San ni hoka ni nakatta no de, kono bōshi wo katte kimashita ga, o ki ni ira-nai ka to omotte, shimpai desū* (C). 3. *Ima o-ide ni natte mo ma ni awa-nai darō to omoimasū* (C). 4. *Yamada San wa kyō mise kara kaeru to damatte nete o shimai ni natta ; nani ka atta no ka mo shire-nai* (B). 5. *Matsūo wa sono hako wo motte iku hodo chikara ga arumai* (B). 6. *O tō-san ga daiji ni shite iru matsū no eda wo otta kara, okorareru darō to omotte itara, betsū ni nan to mo iware-nakatta* (B). 7. *Ikura kenyaku shite mo, rainen no uchi ni kari wo kaeshite shimau koto wa dekimai to omoimasū* (C). 8. *Ima ko-nai nara, Suzuki San wa kyō wa ko-nai to omoimasū* (C). 9. *Kono yubi-wa wa mekki ka mo shire-nai ne* (B). 10. *Kono zōge wa hom-mono ka shira?* (B). 11. *Ammari yasui desū kara, tabun nise-mono deshō to omoimasū* (C). 12. *Kisha no naka e kagi wo otoshite kita ka mo shire-nai ; hōbō mite mo nai* (B). 13. *Kimono wo ki-kaete iru to jikan ni ma ni awa-nai ka mo shire-nai kara, sono mama de o-ide nasai* (B). 14. *Yoshio wa Ginza de ryōri-ya wo hajimeru tsumori da to itte imashita* (C). 15. *Kono heya wo watashi no i-ma ni shite, asūko wo shokudō ni shiyō to omou* (B). 16. *Nagasaki e fune de irasshaimasū ka?* (D). 17. *Iie, watashi wa fune wa kowai kara, kisha de iku koto ni shimashita* (C). 18. *Mina-san o jōbu de irasshaimasū ka?* (D). 19. *Arigatō, haha ga sūkoshi netsū ga atte, nete imasū ; waruku naranakereba ii ga to omotte imasū* (C).

1. I am afraid I may be late this evening, so don't wait dinner for me. 2. I bought this hat for Miss Mitsu-ko as there was no other ; but I am afraid she may not like it. 3. I am afraid you won't be in time even if you start immediately. 4. Mr Yamada went to bed today as soon as he came back from the office, without saying anything to anybody, I am afraid something is the matter with him. 5. I am afraid Matsuo is not strong enough to carry that box. 6. As I broke a branch of the pine-tree my father is so fond of, I was afraid he would scold me, but he didn't say anything. 7. I am afraid I won't be able to pay all my debts next year no matter how much I try to reduce my expenses. 8. If Mr Suzuki hasn't come yet I am afraid he won't come today. 9. I am afraid this ring is only plated. 10. I wonder whether this is genuine ivory ? 11. As it's so cheap I am afraid that perhaps it's only imitation. 12. I am afraid I must have lost my keys in the train, I can't find them anywhere. 13. I am afraid you'll be late if you change your dress, go as you are. 14. Yoshio says he intends to start a restaurant on the Ginza. 15. I am thinking of making this my sitting-room, and that, the dining-room. 16. Are you going by boat to Nagasaki ? 17. No, I'm afraid of travelling by boat, I have decided to go by train. 18. Is everybody well at home ? 19. Thanks, my mother is in bed with a little fever, and I am afraid she may get worse.

## EXERCISE 117.

This and the following Exercises consist of anecdotes and stories. Those who have mastered the first fifty Exercises may find it profitable and interesting to try their hand occasionally at these more difficult constructions; words and phrases which are not known, may be looked up in the Vocabulary, Part III.

*Rokurō wa shio to iu mono wo shirimasen deshita. Hito ga tabe-mono ni shio wo ireru no wo mite fūshigi ni omoimashita.*

"Sankichi San, sono shiroi mono wa nan to iu mono desū?"

"Kore? Kore wa shio to iu mono desū yo."

"Hē? Soshite, sore wa ittai nan ni suru mono deshō?"

"Jōdan ja nai. Shio wa nani ni suru mono ka shira-nai nante? Anata wa yoppodo nonki na hito desū ne. Tabe-mono wo koshiraeru ni wa nakūte naranai mono ja arimasen ka? Shio wo ire-nakereba niku de mo sakana de mo oishiku nara-nai n' desū yo."

"Sō iu benri na mono desū ka? Chitto mo shirimasen deshita. Ja, dōka sūkoshi kudasaimasen ka?"

"Ē, ē, o mochi nasai. Mā, tameshite goran nasai yo."

*Rokurō wa shio wo moraimashita. Tabe-mono ni ireru to sonna ni oishiku naru mono nara, shio dake tabetara nao ūmai ni chigai nai to omotte, Sankichi ni moratta no wo hito-kuchi ni tabeyō to shite odorokimashita. Karakūtte, karakūtte, dō suru koto mo dekimasen. Taisō hara wo tatete, Sankichi no tokoro e itte mōshimashita:* "Anata wa uso-tsūki desū ne, Sankichi San."

"E? Nan desū 'tte? Burei na koto wo itte wa ikemasen. Watashi ga itsu anata ni uso wo iimashita?"

"Desū ga, sakkī watashi ni shio wa taisō ūmai mono da nante osshatta deshō? Konna iya na mono wo oishii nante, uso ja arimasen ka?"

"Ā, shio no hanashi desū ka? Anata wa baka desū ne. Mono ni wa hodo ga arimasū. Dō shite sonna ni takusan no shio wo ip-pen ni tabemashita?"

Rokurō didn't know what salt was. He thought it very strange when he saw people putting it into their food.

"I say, Sankichi, what do you call that white stuff?"

"This? Why, this is salt."

"Eh? And what do you use it for?"

"You are joking. Do you mean to say you don't know what salt is used for? Well, you are a funny fellow! It's always used in cooking, isn't it? Whether it's fish, or whether it's meat, if it has no salt, it tastes flat."

"Is it such a useful thing as that? I hadn't the slightest idea. Please let me have a little."

"Certainly! Take some. Try and see how you like it."

Rokurō took the salt with him. If salt when added to food improves the taste so much, he thought that without doubt it would be still nicer if eaten by itself. So he put into his mouth all at once the salt he had received from Sankichi, but was disagreeably surprised. It was so salty he didn't know what to do. He got very angry, he went to Sankichi's house and said: "What a liar you are, Sankichi!"

"What are you saying? Don't be rude. When did I tell you a lie?"

"Didn't you tell me a short time ago that salt had a very nice taste? And isn't it a lie to say that beastly stuff like this is nice?"

"Oh, are you referring to the salt? You are a fool. Things must be used with moderation. Why ever did you eat so much salt at one time?"



## EXERCISE 118.

*Ha no warui hito ga ha-isha ni ikimashita.*

"Konichi wa."

"Sā, dōzo kochira e o kake kudasai."

"Dōmo ha ga itamimasu kara, mite kudasaimasen ka?"

"Sō desu ka? Dotchi no hō desu?"

"Hidari no ue desu."

"Ā, kore deshō? Naruhodo warui. Kore ja itamimashō."

"Taihen warui desu ka? Dō shitara ii deshō? Ūmete itadake-nai deshō ka?"

"Sō desu nē... Kō natte wa ūmete mo dame desu. Yappari nuka-nakereba narimasen ne?"

"Sō desu ka. Ja, nuite itadakimashō. Itaku nai yō ni kūsuri wo tsukete nuite kudasai."

"E, sore wa daijōbu; chitto mo itaku nai yō ni yarimasu to mo."

Kō shite nukimashita.

"Ā, itai! Kore de mo itaku nai to ossharu n' desu ka? Ā, itakatta."

Yubi de sawatte miru to, tonari no ha ga nuite arimasu kara, taisō hara wo tate :

"Mā, zuibun hidoi ja arimasen ka? Anata wa tonari no jōbu na ha wo o nuki nas' ita n' deshō?"

"Dore? Kore wa dōmo. Machigaete, honto ni o kinodoku sama deshita. Mō ip-pon nuite agemashō."

"E? sore wa taihen!"

"Iie, o kane wa ip-pon no dai shika itadakimasen kara, go shimpai nasara-nai de kudasai."

A man went to see a dentist on account of a decayed tooth.

"Good day."

"Please sit down in this chair."

"One of my teeth is very painful. Would you kindly examine it?"

"Is that so? Which one is it?"

"One of the top teeth on the left-hand side."

"Oh, it's this one I suppose. Yes, it does look bad; it must pain you a great deal."

"Is it very bad? What had I better do? Can you stop it?"

"H'm.... This tooth is too far gone to be stopped. I'll have to draw it."

"Is that so? Well then, please draw it; but apply some medicine so that the extraction may not be painful."

"Have no fear. I'll do it so that you'll feel no pain at all."

And then he pulled out the tooth.

"Oh, how painful! Is this what you call a painless extraction? It hurt me very much."

He felt the place with his finger and found that it was the next tooth which had been drawn (and not the bad one). So he got very angry:

"Oh, that's too bad. You've gone and pulled out the next tooth which was perfectly sound."

"Let me see. Well I never! Yes, I made a mistake; I am indeed very sorry for you. I'll draw the other one."

"Oh, this is terrible!"

"You needn't be anxious. I shall only charge you for one!"

# EXERCISE 119.

*Aru mise ni kono-goro inaka kara dete kita kozō ga arimashita. Shujin ga sono kozō wo yonde :*

*"Chōmatsū, omae yūbin-bako no aru tokoro wo shitte iru ka?"*

*"Hai, shitte orimasū."*

*"Doko ni aru?"*

*"Kono ō-dōri wo migi no hō e itte, kūsuri-ya no kado wo magatte sūkoshi iku to, hidari-gawa ni gozaimasū."*

*"De wa ne, kono tegami wo dashite kite o kure ; jis-sen yaru kara, san-sen no kitte wo ichi-mai kau no da yo. T'suri wa ikura da ka shitte iru kai?"*

*Chōmatsū wa sūkoshi kangaete imashita ga :*

*"Nana-sen de gozaimasū."*

*"Sō da ; ja, machigae-nai yō ni yoku ki wo tsukete itte o-ide ; isogashii no da kara, tochū de asonde ite wa ike-nai. Wakatta ka?"*

*"Hai, wakarimashita. Itte mairimasū."\**

*Chōmatsū wa tegami to jis-sen no o kane wo motte dete ikimashita.*

*Kaette kite shujin ni :*

*"Danna sama, tadaima kaerimashita."*

*To itte, o-jigi wo shimashita. Shujin wa :*

*"Hayakatta ne ? tegami wa dashite kita kai?"*

*"Hai, tashika ni dashite mairimashita ; kore wa o t'suri to uke-tori de gozaimasū."*

*To ii nagara, nana-sen to san-sen no kitte wo ichi-mai shujin no mae ni dashimashita.*

At a certain shop there was an errand boy who had recently arrived from the country. The master of the shop called the boy :

*"Chōmatsu, do you know where the pillar-box is?"*

*"Yes, I do."*

*"Where is it?"*

*"(Going out from here) you go to the right along this big road, you turn at the chemist's shop and go a little further on ; it is on the left-hand side."*

*"Very well then, go and post this letter ; here is ten sen, you must buy a three-sen stamp. Do you know what the change will be?"*

*Chōmatsu thought a little while (and said) :*

*"Seven sen."*

*"That's right ; well then, take care and don't make a mistake. As there is a lot of work to be done, don't waste your time on the road. Do you understand?"*

*"Yes, I understand."*

*Chōmatsu went out with the letter and the ten sen.*

*When he came back (he said to his master) :*

*"Master, I am back."*

*And saying this, he bowed to him. The master (said) :*

*"You are back quickly. Did you post the letter?"*

*"Yes, certainly I posted it ; here is the change and the receipt."*

*And saying this, he gave his master seven sen and a three-sen stamp.*

\* *Itte mairimasū*, (lit. I go and come). A salutation said on leaving one's house ; it cannot be translated into English.



## EXERCISE 120.

*Aru hito ga ūma wo kai ni ikimashita. Shi-hiki katte, sono uchi no ip-piki ni jibun ga notte uchi ni kaerō to shimashita. Tochū de ūma wo kanjō shite mimasu to, sam-biki shika orimasen. Machigete sam-biki yokoshita no darō to omoi-mashita. Sore de, utta hito no tokoro e kaette ikimashita. Ūma kara orite, shujin wo yonde kō mōshimashita :*

*"Sakki watakushi wa shi-hiki dake no o kane wo huratta no ni, ūma wa sam-biki shika orimasen ; nani ka machigai ga aru no ja nai deshō ka ?"*

*Shujin wa :*

*"Sō desū ka ? Sore wa fūshigi desū ne. De wa, fūtari de kanjō shite mima-shō."*

*To itte, ūma no tokoro e ikimashita. Ip-piki, ni-hiki.....to kanjō shite mimasu to shi-hiki orimasu.*

*Katta hito wa :*

*"Ā, sore nara ii no desū."*

*To itte, mata ip-piki ni jibun de notte kaette ikimashita. Sūkoshi tatte kara, mō ichi-do kazoete mimashita ga, yappari ip-piki tarimasen. Taihen okotte, utta hito no uchi ni iku to, utta hito wa odorotte :*

*"Mata kaette o-ide nas'tta no desū ne ? Dō ka nas'ttu no desū ka ?"*

*"Dō ka nas'tta no desū ka" tte, ūma wa dō shite mo sam-biki shika i-nai ja arimasen ka ?"*

*"Sonna koto ga aru mon' desū ka ?"*

*"De mo, goran nasai ; sam-biki shika i-nai deshō ?"*

*"Iie. Jibun ga notte o-ide ni naru no wa dō shita no desū ? Sore mo issho ni kanjō nasara-nakereba ike-nai de wa arimasen ka ?"*

A certain man went to buy some horses. He bought four, got on to one of them and started for home. On the road he began to count the horses, but only found three. He thought that by mistake they had only given him three. So he went back to the house of the man who sold him (the horses). He got off the horse, called the master, and said :

"Didn't I pay just now for four horses ? nevertheless there are only three. Isn't there some mistake ?"

The man answered :

"Is that so ? That is very extraordinary ; well, let's count them both together."

And saying so, they went to the place where the horses were. "One, two....." and counting thus, they found there were four.

The buyer said :

"Oh, if that is so, it's all right."

And with these words he again got on to a horse, and went on his way. After a little while, he counted them again and found there was certainly one wanting. He got very angry ; when he got back to the seller's house, the seller was very much surprised :

"Have you come back again ? What's the matter now ?"

"What's the matter now ?" do you say ? There is no getting over it that there are only three horses."

"Don't talk nonsense."

"Well, but look ; there are only three aren't there ?"

"Oh, no. What about the horse you are riding yourself ? You must count that one, mustn't you ?"

## EXERCISE 121.

*Aru tokoro ni atama no hagete iru hito ga arimashita. Ke ga chitto mo arimasen. Dō ka shite ke ga haeru yō ni shitai mono da, to shijū shimpai shite imashita. Aru tcki tomodachi ni iimashita :*

*"Dōmo watakūshi wa atama ga hagete ite komarimasū. Dō shitara ke ga haeru deshō ?"*

*"Sō desū ne, Nakamura San ni o mise ni natte goran nasai."*

*"Nakamura San desū 'tte ? Sō iu namae no o ishu san wa hajimete kiki-mashita. Dō iu kata na no desū ?"*

*"Nakamura San wo go zonji nai no desū ka ? Zuibun nadakai o isha san desū yo."*

*"Doko ni irassharu o kata desū ? Kono machi ni desū ka ?"*

*"Iie, Kyōto ni o-ide ni natte, toki-doki kochira e irassharu no desū. Taihen erai sensei de, iro-iro fūshigi na byōki wo takusan o naoshi ni narimashita. Shi-go-nichi no uchi ni o mie ni naru hazu desū kara, hitotsū mite o morai nasai."*

*"Sō desū ka ? Sō iu jōzu na o isha san ga irassharu nara, motto hayaku mite moraeba yō gozaimashita. Ii koto wo ukagaimashita. Dōmo arigatō gozaimasū."*

*"Nakamura sensei ga o-ide ni naru to, hageta hito wa sugu ni ikimashita :*

*"Sensei, konaida tomodachi kara, sensei wa iro-iro no byōki wo taihen jōzu ni o naoshi kudasaru to iu koto wo kikimashita no de, o negai ni agarimashita. Watakūshi wa atama ga hagete komatte orimasū. Iro-iro tameshite mimashita ga, dō shite mo naorimasen. Dōzo ke ga haeru yō ni shite kudasai."*

*O isha san wa damatte, kabutte ita bōshi wo nuide :*

*"Goran no tōri watashi mo hagete imasū ; moshi, anata no atama wo naoshite agerareru nara, jibun no wo saki ni naoshitai mono desū."*

In a certain place there once lived a man with a bald head. He had no hair at all. He was always thinking of how he could manage to make his hair grow. One day he said to a friend :

"I am so bald, I am really in great trouble. What would you advise me to do to make my hair grow ?"

"Well, why don't you see Nakamura and see how you get on ?"

"Did you say Nakamura ? I don't know any doctor of that name. What kind of a man is he ?"

"What, haven't you heard of Nakamura ? He is a very famous doctor."

"Where does he live ? Does he live in this town ?"

"No, he lives in Kyōto, but he occasionally comes here. He is a very remarkable doctor and has obtained some extraordinary results. As he is due to arrive here in four or five days, just go and consult him."

"You don't say so ? If he is such a clever doctor, it's a pity that I didn't go and consult him before. You have given me a good piece of news. Thanks very much."

As soon as Dr Nakamura arrived, the bald man went to see him :

"Doctor, a friend told me a few days ago that you were very clever at curing all sorts of illnesses, that is why I have come to make a request of you. I am bald and on that account I am greatly inconvenienced. I have tried all sorts of remedies, but they have been of no use. Please do something to make my hair grow."

The doctor said nothing, but took off the cap he was wearing.

"As you see I also am bald. If I were able to cure your head, I would begin by curing my own."



## EXERCISE 122.

*Yamada San wa taihen kechi desū. Yabuketa uwa-gi wo itsū made mo kite imasu kara, musūko-tachi wa kimari ga warukutte tamarimasen.*

*"O tō-san, uwa-gi ga zuibun furuku narimashita ne? Atarashii no wo o kai ni natte wa ikaga desū?"*

*"Nāni, kore de takusan, mada kirareru yo. Ni-jū-yen kakete uwa-gi wo ichimai koshiraeru yori, sono kane wo motte iru hō ga yoppodo ii."*

*"O tō-san wa itsū de mo sō osshaimasu ga, sono kimono wa ammari hidoi ja arimasen ka? Zehi, atarashii no wo o kai nas'tte kudasai. Watashi-tachi ga hazukashikutte shiyō ga arimasen."*

*"Kimono ga furuku natta 'tte, hazukashigaru koto wa nai."*

*Musūko-tachi wa dō shite mo, uwa-gi wo ichimai kawaseyō to omoimashita. Yasūkereba kau ni chigai nai to omotte, shitate-ya ni sōdan shimashita. Soshite, ni-jū-yen no wo o tō-san ni wa shūchi-yen ni utte moratte, jū-san-yen wa jibun-tachi ga harau koto ni kimemashita.*

*"O tō-san, kyō shitate-ya ni ittara, baka ni yasui uwa-gi ga arimashita yo. Shina wa goku ii n' desū ga, wake ga atte, tokubetsū yasūku uru no desū 'tte. Dare ka katte shimau to ikemasen kara, sugu ni katte irasshai."*

*"Sō ka? yasūkutte ii no ga areba, katte mo ii ne."*

*Yamada San wa shitate-ya ni itte, sono uwa-gi wo roku-yen go-jis-sen ni make-sashite kaimashita. Keredomo uchi e kaetta toki ni wa mō sono kimono wo motte i-nai no desū.*

*"Mattaku omae-tachi no iu tōri yasūkatta, roku-yen go-jis-sen de katte kita yo."*

*"Roku-yen go-jis-sen de? Ja, doko ni aru n' desū? misete kudasai."*

*"Kaeri ni densha no naka de tomodachi ni misetara, 'jū-yen de utte kure' to iu kara, utta no sa. San-yen go-jis-sen mōkete kita."*

Mr Yamada was a miser. He used to wear his coats until they were so worn out and torn that his sons could bear the shame of it no longer.

"Father, your coat is very old, isn't it? Hadn't you better buy a new one?"

"Oh, this one will do, I can wear it still. It is a great deal better to have twenty yen than to spend it on a new coat."

"You always say that, father, but really your clothes are too awful. Do buy yourself some new ones. We all feel very much ashamed."

"Even if my clothes are old, there is no reason to be ashamed of that."

The sons thought that they must, somehow or other, make him buy a new coat. They thought he would, no doubt, buy one, if it were cheap, so they went to the tailor and talked it over. They arranged with the tailor that he should sell their father a twenty-yen coat for seven yen, and they themselves would pay thirteen yen.

"Father, we saw a very cheap coat at the tailor's today. The quality is very good, but for some reason or other, he is selling it very cheap he says. Go and buy it quickly or else somebody else may get it."

"You don't say so! I don't mind buying it if it's cheap and good."

Mr Yamada went to the tailor's and after beating the price down to six yen fifty, he bought the coat. However, when he returned home, he had not the coat with him.

"It was really as cheap as you said, so I bought it for six yen fifty."

"For six yen fifty? Well, where is it? Please show it to us."

"On my way back, I showed it to a friend in the tram-car, and as he asked me to sell it to him for ten yen, I did so. So I gained three yen fifty sen."

## EXERCISE 123.

*Jochū ga arimashita. Shijū oku-sama no o ki ni iritai mono da to omotte orimashita ga, baka desū kara dō shitara ii ka shirimasen. Aru toki tomodachi ni atte :*

*"Dō sureba oku-sama no o ki ni iru koto ga dekiru deshō?"*

*To kiite mimashita. Tomodachi wa :*

*"Sore wa nanni mo muzukashii koto ja arimasen. Oku-sama no nasaru koto wo nan de mo sono tōri mane wo sureba ii no desū. Sore ga ichiban ii shi-kata deshō."*

*"Sō desū ka? ii koto wo oshiete kudas'tte arigatō. Hītotsū yatte mimashō."*

*Jochū wa, mane wo shiyō to omoi nagara, oku-sama no nasaru koto wo ki wo tsukete mite imashita. Kono oku-sama ni wa yoku akubi wo suru kuse ga arimasū.*

*Jochū wa :*

*"A, ii koto wo mitsuketa : akubi wo suru mane gurai nara yasashii koto da. Dare ni de mo dekiru."*

*To kangaemashita. Sore kara wa, oku-sama no mae ni deru to kitto ōki na kuchi wo aite issshōkemmei ni akubi wo shimashita. Oku-sama wa fūshigi ni o omoi ni natte :*

*"Omae wa kono-goro yoku nemure-nai no kai?"*

*"Iie, betsū ni nemure-nai koto wa gozaimasen."*

*"Sore ja, naze sō tabi-tabi akubi ga deru no darō ne?"*

*"Sore wa oku-sama ne o ki ni iritai kara de gozaimasū. Nan de mo oku-sama no nasaru koto wo mane sureba ii to omoimashite....."*

*Oku-sama wa o okori ni natte :*

*"Nante omae wa baka darō. Ii koto nara ikura mane wo shīte mo ii ga..."*

There was once a servant. She was always thinking how she could please her mistress ; but as she was a silly girl she didn't know how to set about it. One day she met a friend.

*"What shall I do in order to please my mistress?"*

Thus she inquired. The friend (answered) :

*"There's no difficulty about that. Imitate your mistress in everything she does : that's the best way to please her."*

*"Is that so? Thanks very much for giving me such a good idea. I'll just try it."*

The servant, with the idea of imitating her mistress, took particular notice of all her mistress did. Now, this lady had the bad habit of yawning frequently. The servant (said to herself) :

*"Ah, I've found a good thing. To imitate yawning is easy enough ; anybody can do it."*

Thus she thought. And from that time whenever she was in the presence of her mistress, she never missed yawning, opening her mouth as wide as she could. The lady thought this very strange.

*"Aren't you sleeping well of nights lately?"*

*"Yes, I'm sleeping all right."*

*"Then, why are you always yawning?"*

*"It's because I wanted to please you, madam. I thought it would be a good thing to imitate you in everything you did....."*

The lady got angry (and said) :

*"What a fool you are! It is always a good thing to imitate something good, but... (do not imitate another person's bad habits)."*



## EXERCISE 124.

*Dorobô ga sabishii tokoro de, ki no kage ni kakurete hito no tôru no wo matte imashita. Shibaraku suru to hitori no otoko ga tôri-kakarimashita. Dorobô wa sugu ni tobi-dashite, kowai kao wo shite imashita :*

*"Motteru kane wo minna o dashi nasai."*

*"Kane wo ? aru koto wa aru ga, kanai ga byôki de nele iru no da. Kûsuri wo kattari, oishii mono de mo tabesaseyô to omotte motte kita kané da kara, totemo omae ni yaru koto wa deki-nai."*

*"Guzu-guzu iwa-nai de, arittake no kane wo minna o dashi nasai. Kanai ga byôki da nante uso ni chigai nai."*

*"Uso da to omou nara issho ni kite goran. Shiyô ga nai, sore ja, sûkoshi dake nokoshite ato wa omae ni yarô."*

*"Wakara-nai hito desu ne ? Kanai no byôki nante watashi no shitta koto ja nai. Kane wo minna o dashi nasai to itteru n' desu yo. Inochi ga oshikerya, ononashiku watashi no iu koto wo o kiki nasai."*

*Dorobô wa teppô wo mukemashita. Otoko wa tôtô kane-ire wo dorobô ni yatte :*

*"A, watashi wa nanni mo nakunatte shimatta. Sore de wa, kawari ni, sono teppô de mo kure-nai ka ?"*

*"Kane wo toreba hoka ni yô wa nai ; teppô ga hoshikereba agemasu yo."*

*Dorobô wa ikô to shimashita. Otoko no hito wa yobi-tomete :*

*"Sâ, kondo wa watashi no ban da : ima no kane wo kaesû ka, omae no inochi wo yokosû ka, dotchi ka ni o shi."*

*Dorobô wa heiki de :*

*"O kinodoku sama, sore wa kara-deppô da."*

A robber hid himself behind a tree in a lonely place waiting for people to pass. After a little time a man happened to come along. The robber immediately jumped out and with a threatening face, said :

*"Give me all the money you've got."*

*"Money ? I have some, it is true, but my wife is ill in bed. I intend with this money to buy medicine and some dainties for her to eat, and therefore, it is entirely impossible for me to give it to you."*

*"It's no use talking ; give me all the money you've got. It is sure to be a lie, your wife being ill and all that."*

*"If you think it is a lie, come with me and see. I don't know what to do ; well, I will just keep a little and give you all the rest."*

*"Will you never understand what I say ? Your wife's illness is none of my business. I've told you to give me all the money you've got. If you want to save your life, do quietly as I tell you."*

The robber aimed his gun at him. The man at last gave the robber his purse.

*"Ah, I've lost everything ! Therefore, in exchange for what I've given you, won't you at least let me have that gun ?"*

*"I've got the money and that's all I want. If you want the gun here it is."*

The robber was about to go away. The man called him :

*"Ha, it's my turn now. You'll return the money I just gave you or I'll have your life ; one of the two."*

The robber unconcernedly said :

*"I am very sorry for you, but that gun is not loaded !"*

*Mukashi, taisō ki no yowai hito ga arimashita. Sensō ga okotte, dō shite mo ika-nakereba nara-naku narimashita. Sore de, shikata nashi ni, kuroi ūma ni notte demashita. Keredomo, sensō ga kowakutte dekimasen. Soko-ira ni taorete iru hito no chi wo kao ya karada ni nuri-tsukete, kega wo shita furi wo shite nete imashita. Sono uchi ni dare ka ni ūma wo nusumarete shimaimashita.*

*Sensō ga o shimai ni natte kara, soro-soro kaerō to omoimashita ; keredomo :  
 "Moshi dare ka ni 'ūma wa dō shita' to kikaretara dō shiyō? Kore wa komatta  
 ..... A, sō da, 'ūma wa sensō shiteru uchi ni korosareta' to itte yarō. Sono shōko  
 ni wa shippo wo kittle motte ikeba ii."*

*To kangaete, soba ni shinde ita shiroi ūma no shippo wo kittle motte kaerimashita.  
 Suru to tomodachi ga :*

*"Kimi, kyō wa dō datta?"*

*"Isshōkemmei hataraita yo ; kataki no kubi wo yottsū, itsutsū totte yatta. Kono  
 tōri kega wo shite, chi-darake da."*

*"Sore wa taihen datta ne."*

*"Nāni, kono gurai no kega nante nan to mo omowa-nai. Kuni no tane ni wa  
 inochi wo sūtete mo oshiku wa nai."*

*"Toki ni, ūma wa dō shita?"*

*"Ūma kai? Kega wo shite taorete shimatta. Honto ni kawaisō na koto wo  
 shita yo. Itsu made mo wasure-nai yō ni shippo wo motte kita."*

*"Jōdan wo itcha ike-nai yo ; kimi no ūma wa kuroi ūma ja nai ka? Kyū ni  
 shiroku naru wake wa nai."*

*Ki no yowai hito wa nan to mo henji ga dekimasen deshita.*

Once upon a time, there was a very timid man. His country was at war and he was obliged to go to the war together with the others. And so, as it couldn't be helped, he set forth on a black horse. However, he was so frightened that he could not fight. He bedaubed his face and body with the blood of a man who had fallen near there ; and he pretended to be wounded and lay down. In the meantime, somebody stole his horse.

After the battle was over, he thought of returning home. However :

"Supposing somebody were to ask what has become of my horse, what shall I say ? I really don't know what to do. Ah, I have it ! I'll say that my horse was killed in the battle. And as a proof of that, it will be sufficient to take a horse's tail along with me."

And with this idea, he cut off the tail of a white horse that was lying dead near him, and started to join the others. A friend said :

"I say, how did you get on today ?"

"I've done my very best. I cut off the heads of four or five of the enemy. And as you see I have been wounded and I am all covered with blood."

"That was very brave of you."

"Oh, I think nothing of a wound like this. I don't grudge even my life in the service of my country."

"By the way, what's become of your horse ?"

"My horse ? He was wounded and fell dead. I was really sorry for him. And so I brought his tail as a souvenir."

"Don't joke. Yours was a black horse, wasn't he ? He can't possibly have turned white all of a sudden."

The coward didn't know what to answer.



O jii-san ga ūma ni notte, kodomo ga sono ato kara tsuite mairimasū to, kore wo mita hito ga : "Goran nasai, nan to iu hidoi o jii-san deshō ! Kodomo wo arukashite jibun wa ūma ni notte ikimasū yo."

O jii-san wa : "Ā, ano hito no iu koto wa dōri da. Kodomo wo nosete yaranakereba nara-nai." To kangaete, ūma kara orimashita. Soshite kodomo wo nosete yarimashita.

Shibaraku suru to : "Mā, ano musūko wa burei na yatsū desū ne ? Anna toshiyori wo arukashite, jibun wa notte iku nante, akireru ja arimasen ka ? Ano gurai ōkiku nattara, ikura de mo arukeru no ni."

Musūko wa : "Naruhodo, ano hito no iu koto wa hontō da." To omoimashita. Sore de ūma kara orite, fūtari to mo aruite ikimashita.

Sūkoshi iku to tōri-kakatta hito ga : "Baka na hito-tachi ! chotto goran nasai, ano jōbu-sō na ūma ni nanni mo nose-zu ni tada kiite iku no desū ; anna baka ga arō to wa yume ni mo omoewa-nakatta."

Fūtari wa sore mo sō da, to omoimashita. Soko de kondo wa fūtari de notte mairimashita.

Aru hito ga mite : "Ā, nan to iu fu-shinsetsū na hito-tachi darō ! Kawaisō ni, ip-piki no ūma ni fūtari noru to wa ammari da. Ūma ga maru de aruke ya shi-nai ja nai ka ?"

Oya-ko wa kore wo kiite ūma kara orimashita. Soshite ari-awasete himo de bō ni ūma no ashi wo shibatte, fūtari de motte ikimashita. Hashi no ue ni kuru to, ōzei no hito ga kono yōsū wo mite ō-sawagi wo shimashita kara, ūma wa odorote ugokimashita. Sō shite, tōtō kawa ni ochite, shinde shimaimashita.

An old man and his son were going along a road ; the old man was riding a horse, and his son was following on foot. When people saw this, they said : "Look at that cruel old man ! He makes his son walk while he himself is riding."

The old man thought : "Ah, what those people say is right. I must make the boy ride." So he got down from the horse, and he told the child to get on to it.

After a while : "Look, what a rude boy that is ! He makes an old man like that walk while he himself is riding ; it's enough to disgust anybody. As he is fairly big, he ought to be able to do any amount of walking."

The lad thought : "By Jove ! What those people say is true." So he got down from the horse and he and his father continued on foot.

After they'd gone a little distance somebody who was passing said : "What fools those men are ! Just look ! Without making use of that strong horse in any way, they are just pulling it along. I would never have dreamt such fools existed."

They felt that that was true. So now they both got on the horse.

A certain man seeing this, said : "What hard-hearted fellows those are ! It's too bad for those two men to be riding on that poor horse. Why, it can hardly walk."

Father and child when they heard this, both got down from the horse. And then with a cord which happened to be there, they tied the horse's legs to a pole, and they carried him along. When they came to a bridge, a lot of men saw this strange sight. And as they laughed and made a great noise, the horse got frightened and began to move. The result was, that it fell into the river and died.

## EXERCISE 127.

*Aru hito ga yoso no hatake ni wa mugi ga yoku dekiru no ni, jibun no uchi no wa mai-toshi sūkoshi shika toremasen kara, fūshigi ni omotte, tonari no shujin ni tazunemashita.*

“*Konnichi wa. Kyō wa sūkoshi o akagai shitai koto ga atte agarimashita. O taku no hatake kara wa itsū de mo mugi ga takusan toreru yō de gozaimasū ga, uchi de wa ikura ii tane wo maite mo dame de gozaimasū. Dō iu wake de gozaimashō?*”

“*Sono koto desū ka? Nani, betsū ni wake wa nai no desū yo.*”

“*De mo, watashi no hō wa dōmo umaku ikimasen kara, dōka hitotsū oshiete kudazaimasen ka?*”

“*Nanni mo nuzukashiku wa arimasen. Tsuchi ga katakutte wa dō shite mo mugi ga yoku haemasen kara, tsuchi wo yawaraka ni shite, soko e ii tane wo o maki nasareba, kitto yoku dekimasū.*”

“*Dōmo arigatō gozaimashita, sore de wakarimashita. Kotoshi koso wa jōzu ni yarimasū.*”

*Oshiete moratta tōri, isshōkemmei ni hatake wo hotte, tsuchi wo yawaraka ni shimashita. Keredomo, tane wo maku toki ni hitotsū komaru koto ga dekimashita.*

“*Moshi watashi ga hatake ni haitte tane wo makeba, mata tsuchi ga kataku natte, shikkaku no hone-ori ga muda ni natte shinau. Nani ka ii koto ga arumai ka?*”

*To kangaete ii kufū wo shimashita. Ūma ni notte tane wo makeba jibun no ashi de tsuchi wo fuma-nai de mo ii to omotta no desū. Soshite kangaeta tōri ni shimashita. Suru to, naruhodo, jibun no ashi wa hatake ni tsukimasen deshita ga, sono kawari ni ūma no shi-hon no ashi ga hatake wo mecha-mecha ni funde shimaimashita.*

A certain man thought it strange that other people's fields should yield good crops of corn, while every year his own should only yield a little. So he went to make inquiries of his next-door neighbour.

“Good day! I have come today because there is something I want to ask you about. It seems that you always have a good crop in your field; but I can do nothing with mine no matter how good the seed may be. I wonder what the reason is?”

“Is that all you want to know? Oh, there's no special reason.”

“Well, but as I cannot get good results, won't you please tell me what to do?”

“Oh, there's no difficulty about the matter. If the ground is hard the corn will not grow well. So loosen the soil, and if you then sow good seed you will be sure to get a good crop.”

“I am very much obliged to you; now I understand. I will be sure to go about it properly this year.”

So following the advice he had received, he dug the field as hard as he could and loosened the soil. However, when the time came to sow the seed, a difficulty arose.

“If I go into the field to sow the seed the soil will again become hard and all my labour will have been in vain. I wonder what I can do.”

And thinking over it he struck on a good plan. He thought that if he got on a horse to sow the seed, he would avoid treading the earth. So he did as he had planned. But then, though he did not as a matter of fact press the ground with his own feet, the horse trod all over the field with his four feet.



## EXERCISE 128.

"*Hanshichi San ja arimasen ka? Shibaraku desu ne, yotte o-ide nasai.*"

"*Konnichi wa. Chokichi San desu ne. Kyō wa isogimasu kara, kondo yukkuri kimashō.*"

"*Mā, chotto o yori nasaimasen ka?"*

"*Arigatō. Kyō wa mattaku isoide iru no desu. Mata kondo dete kimasu yo.*"

"*De mo ii ja arimasen ka? Waza-waza o-ide nasaru no wa taihen desu kura, tōri-kakatta tsuide ni yotte o-ide nasai yo.*"

"*Sekkaku desu ga, ato de kimashō. Ima wa honto ni isogashikutte totemo yotte wa irare-nai no desu. Sayonara.*"

"*Hanshichi San, dō ka nas'tta no desu ka? O taku ni go byō-nin de mo o ari desu ka?"*

"*Ie, sonna shimpai na koto ja nai n' desu.*"

"*Ja, ii deshō? Nagaku wa tomemasen kara....*"

"*Desu ga, kyō bakkari wa yō-ji ga atte, sugu ni kaera-nakereba narimasen kara, sumimasen ga, gomen nasai.*"

"*Dō shite sō isoide o-ide nasaru no darō? Metta ni awa-nai no desu kara, chotto yotte kudas'tte mo yosa-sō na mono desu ga.....*"

"*Go shinsensu wa arigatai desu ga, kyō wa yotte iraremasen; mata chikai uchi ni kitto kimasu yo.*"

"*Dōmo hen desu ne. Ittai dō nas'tta no desu?"*

"*Jitsū wa, ima kanai no kimono wo katte kita no desu.*"

"*Sō desu ka? Ja, nani mo isoide o kaeri nasaru wake wa nai ja arimasen ka? Hayaku kaera-nai to, oku-san ni shikarareru to de mo ossharu no desu ka?"*

"*Masaka! Hayari ni okure-nai uchi ni motte itte yaritai to omotte.....*"

"*Why, it's Mr Hanshichi, isn't it? It's quite a long time since I met you. Come in a moment.*"

"*Good day. Mr Chokichi, to be sure. As I am in a hurry today, I'll come again when I have some spare time.*"

"*Won't you come in for just a moment?"*

"*Thanks. I am really very busy today. I'll come again another day.*"

"*Oh, but you might come in. It would be a great trouble for you to come especially to see me; and as you are passing now, please come in.*"

"*It's very kind of you, I am sure. I will come later on. I am really so busy now that I cannot possibly stop. Good-bye.*"

"*Mr Hanshichi, what's the matter? Anybody ill at home?"*

"*Oh, no, nothing as serious as that.*"

"*Well then, why don't you come in? I'm not going to keep you long.*"

"*Yes, but I have some special business today, I must get back soon. I am sorry to appear uncivil, but please excuse me.*"

"*What are you in such a hurry about, I wonder? As I hardly ever meet you, I think you might stop when I do happen to see you.*"

"*I am very much obliged to you for your kindness, but I cannot stop today. I will come again in a few days without fail.*"

"*This is very strange. Tell me what's the matter with you.*"

"*The fact is, I've just bought a dress for my wife.*"

"*You don't say so? Well, that's no reason for getting back in such a hurry. Do you mean to say that your wife will scold you if you're not back soon?"*

"*Nonsense! I want to give it to her before the fashion changes!*"

## EXERCISE 129.

*Mukashi, Kichibei to iu mame-ya ga arimashita. Aru toki shinrui no hito ga nakunatte, omoi-gake naku, sono hito no nokoshite itta o kane wo hyaku-yen moraimashita. Kichibei wa hitori de kurashite imashita. O kane wo uchi ni oite shōbai ni deru wake ni wa ikimasen shi, mata, mai-nichi sonna takusan no o kane wo motte aruku koto mo dekimasen. Dō shitara yokarō, to kangaemashita. Soshite, tatami wo ichi-mai haide, sono shita ni o kane wo kakushite okimashita. Keredomo, yappari shimpai desū kara, uchi wo deru toki to, kaetta toki to wa kitto tatami wo agete miru koto ni shite imashita.*

*Tokoro ga, chōdo sono mukai ni shijū asonde iru otoko ga orimashita. Kono yōsū wo mite :*

*“Kore wa dōmo okashii. Ittai Kichibei San wa naze anna hen na koto wo mai-nichi, mai-nichi shiteru no darō? . . . . . Da ga, ano tatami no shita ni wa nani ka aru ni chigai nai. Hitotsū Kichibei San no rusu ni itte mite yarō.”*

*Kono mono-zuki na hito wa, Kichibei ga itsū mo no tōri mame wo uri ni demasū to, aru toki, sōto haditte, tatami wo agete mimashita. Suru to, hyaku-yen no o kane ga chanto kami ni tsutsunde oite arimashita.*

*“Naruhodo, kore de wakatta. Kore hodo no kane wo tada koko e oku no wa muda na koto da. Watashi ga tsukatte yarō.”*

*Namake-mono wa niko-niko shi nagara, o kane wo totte, tatami wo moto no tōri ni shiite, doko e ka nigete itte shimaimashita.*

*Rusu ni konna koto ga atta no wo yume ni mo shira nai mame-ya wa kyō mo kaette kite tatami wo agete mimashitara, daiji na, daiji na takara wa kage mo katachi mo miemasen.*

*“Ā, kore de yatto onshin shita. Kurō ga nakunatte yokatta !”*

Many years ago, there was a bean-vender called Kichibei. Once a relation of his died, and he unexpectedly received a hundred yen out of what that man left when he departed this life. Now Kichibei lived all by himself. On the one hand he couldn't go to his work and leave the money behind him. On the other, he couldn't go out every day with so much money on him. “What had I better do?” he thought; and he lifted up one of the mats, and hid the money underneath. However, as he was still anxious, before going out and after returning home, he would lift the mat to see if the money was safe.

It happened that just in front of his house, there lived a man who never had any fixed work to do. When this man saw these strange proceedings :

“This is very curious. Now, why does Mr Kichibei do such an extraordinary thing every day? . . . . . No doubt he's got something under that mat. When Mr Kichibei is out, I will just go and find out.”

One day when Kichibei went out to sell his beans, as he was accustomed to do, this inquisitive man entered the house quietly, lifted up the mat and looked underneath. When he did so, there were the hundred yen wrapped up in paper.

“Oh, now I understand. It's useless for all this money to be lying here idle. I'll use it for him.”

The idle man, smiling, took the money, replaced the mat, and made off.

The bean-vender who hadn't got a notion of what had happened during his absence, as usual, when he came back, lifted up the mat and looked underneath. When he did so, he found that nothing was left of his precious treasure.

“Ah, I can enjoy peace of mind at last! My anxiety has disappeared. What a good thing!” (he said).



## EXERCISE 130.

*O bā-san ga mekura ni narimashita. Soko de, o isha san wo yonde :*

*"Sensei, moshi anata ga watakushi no me wo naoshite, mata mieru yō ni shite kudasareba, o rei wo takusan itashimasu ; keredomo, naoshite kudasara-nakereba, nanni mo agemasen. Kō iu koto ni shite wa ikaga de gozaimashō ?"*

*To mōshimasu to, o isha san wa shōchi shimashita.*

*O isha san wa toki-doki o bā-san no uchi ni kite, me ni kūsuri wo sashite yarimashita. Soshite, kuru tambi ni o bā-san no dōgu wo hitotsu zutsu, sōtto jibun no uchi ni motte ikimashita.*

*Shibaraku tatte o bā-san wa me ga naorimashita.*

*"Sā, dō desū ? Yoku mieru deshō ? De wa, sendatte o yakusoku nas'tta o kane wo itadakimashō."*

*Keredomo, o bā-san wa mae ni atta iro-iro no dōgu ga chitto mo miemasen kara odorokimashita. Nani ka ii-wake wo shite, o isha san ni kane wo haraimasen. O isha san wa okotte :*

*"O bā-san, anata wa uso wo tsukimashita ne ? Naottara o rei wo suru to chanto osshatta ja arimasen ka ? Dō shite mo o yakusoku no tōri ni nasara-nakereba, keisatsu ni sō iimasu."*

*Keisatsu-sho de wa sugu ni o bā-san wo yonde kikumashita :*

*"Anata wa o isha ni 'byōki ga naoreba o rei wo suru' to itta sō desū ga, naze yakusoku no kane wo haraimasen ka ?"*

*"Sayō de gozaimasu ; watakushi wa tashika ni 'naoreba o kane wo takusan haraimasu ga, naora-nakereba nanni mo age-nai' to mōshimashita. Konaida o isha san ga naotta to osshaimashita ga, mae ni uchi ni atta tsukue ya, nabe ya, sara ya, naifu nanzo ga, hitotsu mo mie-nai no de gozaimasu."*

An old woman lost the use of her eyesight, so she called a doctor.

"Doctor, if you cure my eyes and make me see the same as I used to formerly, I will pay you handsomely ; however, if I do not get better I will give you nothing at all. Do you agree to this arrangement ?"

This is what she said and the doctor agreed to it.

The doctor went occasionally to the old woman's house and put some medicine in her eyes. And every time he went he took away with him, without the old woman knowing it, one of her utensils.

After some time the old woman's eyes got better.

"Well, how are you ? You can see quite well, can't you ? So please pay me what you promised."

However, the old woman was very much surprised as she could not find several of the utensils and pieces of furniture which she had before she was ill. So she made an excuse and did not pay the doctor any money. The doctor got angry :

"Old lady, you are cheating me. Didn't you expressly promise to pay me if you got well ? Anyhow, if you don't do as you promised, I will complain to the police."

The police called the old woman to the police station and questioned her :

"It seems that you promised to pay the doctor if he cured you. Well, why don't you pay what you promised ?"

"You are right ; I certainly did promise to pay a lot of money if I got well, but if I did not get well, I was to pay nothing. The doctor said the other day that I was well. However, I cannot see my desk, pots, plates, knives, and other things which were formerly in the house."

## EXERCISE 131.

*Gejo no O Take wa bonyari-mono de, shijū sara da no, koppu da no, chawan da no wo kowashimasū. Aru toki oku-san ga :*

*"Take ya, omae wa are hodo watashi ga 'setomono wa yoku ki wo tsūkete kowasanai yō ni' ite, itsū mo itte kikashite aru no ni, honto ni wakara-nai de komaru ne. Mō sūkoshi shikkari shite kure-nakucha shikata ga nai ja nai ka? Dō shite ano daiji na sara wo watte shimatta no?"*

*"Oku-san, makoto ni sumimasen. . . . Kō shite watta no de gozaimasū."*

*To i nagara, mō ichi-mai no sara wo yuka ni otoshite mecha-mecha ni watte misemashita.*

A servant called Take was very careless. She was always breaking plates, tumblers and tea-cups. One day her mistress said :

"Look here, Take, although I am always telling you to be careful not to break the crockery, you don't seem to understand, so I don't know what to do with you. Don't you see that you must really be more careful? However did you manage to break a good plate like that?"

"Madam, I am very sorry. This is how it happened."

And with these words she let fall another plate and smashed it into pieces.

*Aru hito ga tomodachi kara okuri-mono ni sūtekki wo moraimashita. Sūteki ni haikara na sūtekki desū kara, ō-yorokobi de motte aruite miru to, sūkoshi nagagimasū. Sore de kōmori-gasa wo uru mise ni itte :*

*"Konnichi wa. Kono sūtekki ga nagakutte komaru kara, sūkoshi kitte kurenai ka? Ni-sun mo mijikaku shite moraō."*

*"Irasshai. Rippa na mono de gozaimasū ne. Naruhodo, kore ja sūkoshi nagai yō de gozaimasū. Shōchi itashimashita. Tadaima sugu ni kirimasū kara, dōzo shibaraku o machi kudasai."*

*Kozō ga sūtekki no shita no hō wo kirō to shimasū to o kyaku wa bikkuri shite :*

*"Ā, kimi, nagai no wa shita no hō ja nai, ue no hō da yo."*

A certain man once received a walking-stick as a present from a friend. As it was a splendid and fashionable stick he was very pleased. But when he was going out for a walk and wished to use it, he found it was a little too long. So he called at an umbrella-shop.

"Good day. This stick is too long. Would you kindly cut a piece off? I would like it two inches shorter."

"It's a very fine article, isn't it? Yes, I see! It does seem a little too long. I will do as you wish. I will cut it immediately so just wait a moment, please."

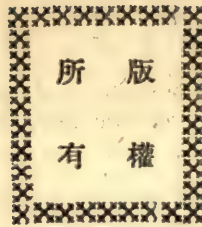
As the shop-assistant was about to cut off the lower part of the stick, the guest in a great hurry stopped him.

"I say, hold on. The long part is not at the bottom, it's at the top."

THE END.



大正五年三月九日印刷  
 大正五年三月十二日發行  
 大正五年十二月十五日訂正印刷  
 大正五年十二月十八日訂正再版發行  
 大正七年三月廿五日訂正印刷  
 大正七年三月廿八日訂正三版發行



編輯者兼  
 發行者

橫濱市本牧町箕輪下三百五十番地

アーサー、ロース、イニス

印刷者

橫濱市山下町六十一番

シー、エチ、ソーン

印刷所

同所

ボックラス、オプ、キエリオス社

發行所

橫濱市山下町七十八番

クリー、アンド、カオルシ株式会社



CONVERSATIONAL JAPANESE  
FOR BEGINNERS BY  
ARTHUR ROSE-INNES

PART II  
ELEMENTARY GRAMMAR  
OF THE  
JAPANESE SPOKEN LANGUAGE

---

NEW EDITION

---

KELLY & WALSH, LTD.

YOKOHAMA, SHANGHAI, HONGKONG and SINGAPORE.

(All rights reserved.)

The Fukuin Printing Co., Ltd., Yokohama.



# Contents.

	Page	Exercises in Part I.
<b>I WRITING AND PRONUNCIATION</b> ..	<b>5</b>	
<b>II VERBS</b> .. .. .	<b>10</b>	
Conjugation .. .. .	10	
Moods and Tenses .. .. .	12	
General remarks .. .. .	12	
Present and Probable Present or Future..	13	6, 7, 37, 90
Past and Probable Past .. .. .	14	8, 91
Gerund .. .. .	14	11, 12, 92
Imperative; commanding and requesting	16	10, 93
Conditional .. .. .	17	18, 29, 94, 95
Frequentative .. .. .	19	96
Desiderative.. .. .	20	21, 96
Second base or Stem .. .. .	20	32, 97
Infinitive .. .. .	21	98
Various Verbal Phrases .. .. .	22	32, 36, 99
Irregular Verbs .. .. .	24	22, 100
Auxiliary and Terminal Verbs .. .. .	26	25, 26, 27, 101
Transitive and Intransitive Verbs .. .. .	29	102
Passive Verbs .. .. .	30	34, 103, 104
Potential Verbs .. .. .	31	34, 35, 105
Causative Verbs .. .. .	32	40, 106
Reflexive Verbs .. .. .	34	107
Compound and Derivative Verbs.. .. .	34	38, 107
The Verbs <i>Suru</i> and <i>Naru</i> .. .. .	35	9, 37, 108, 109
The Verb 'To be' .. .. .	37	4, 5, 110
Miscellaneous Translations .. .. .	38	
Doubt, probability, possibility, 'perhaps', supposition, opinion, semblance, report	38	41, 43, 111
Certainty, emphasis .. .. .	39	112
Obligation .. .. .	40	113
Permission .. .. .	41	113
Advice, preference, judging of two lines of action .. .. .	41	39, 114
Desire, wish, want, need .. .. .	42	115
Fear .. .. .	43	116
Intention .. .. .	43	116
<b>III NOUNS</b> .. .. .	<b>44</b>	
Article .. .. .	44	51
Gender .. .. .	44	51
Number .. .. .	45	51
Derivative and Compound Concrete Nouns.	45	38, 52, 53
Derivative and Compound Abstract Nouns.	46	54
Diminutives and Augmentatives.. .. .	47	55

	Page	Exercises in Part I.
<b>IV ADJECTIVES</b> .. .. .	47	19, 20, 56
True Adjectives .. .. .	49	1, 2, 9, 19, 57, 58
Quasi-Adjectives in <i>Na</i> or <i>No</i> .. .. .	52	3, 9, 20, 41, 59
Adjectival Phrases .. .. .	54	60
Verbs used as Adjectives .. .. .	55	31, 61
Compound and Derivative Adjectives .. .. .	56	62
Comparison .. .. .	57	28, 63, 64
Superlative .. .. .	59	28, 65
<b>V NUMERALS</b> .. .. .	61	
Cardinal Numbers .. .. .	61	13, 14, 15, 66
Auxiliary Numerals .. .. .	64	14, 67
Ordinal Numbers .. .. .	65	68
Dates .. .. .	66	16, 69
Time .. .. .	67	17, 70
Various Numerical Expressions .. .. .	68	
Fractional Numbers .. .. .	68	71
Percentage .. .. .	69	71
Multiples .. .. .	69	71
Age .. .. .	69	15, 71
House Numbers .. .. .	69	71
House Storeys .. .. .	69	71
Vagueness .. .. .	69	71
<b>VI PRONOUNS</b> .. .. .	70	
Personal, Possessive and Reflexive Pronouns .. .. .	70	72
Relative Pronouns and Adverbs .. .. .	71	31, 73
Demonstrative, Interrogative and Indefinite Pronouns and Adverbs .. .. .	73	74, 75, 76, 77
<b>VII HONORIFICS AND POLITE PHRASES</b> .. .. .	75	22, 23, 24, 33, 78, 79
<b>VIII POSTPOSITIONS-PREPOSITIONS</b> .. .. .	80	80
Quasi-Postpositions .. .. .	81	80
<i>Wa</i> and <i>Ga</i> .. .. .	82	81
<i>De</i> and <i>Ni</i> .. .. .	84	20, 82
<b>IX THE OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH</b> .. .. .	85	
Adverbs .. .. .	85	83
Conjunctions .. .. .	87	84, 85
Interjections .. .. .	89	86
<b>X SYNTAX</b> .. .. .	90	
Construction of the Sentence .. .. .	90	87
Ellipses .. .. .	91	88
Negatives .. .. .	93	89
Interrogations .. .. .	94	89
Quotations .. .. .	94	29, 30, 89



*The author's thanks are due to his friend  
Dr. H. V. S. Peeke, of Saga, for many  
valuable suggestions and criticisms.*

# ELEMENTARY GRAMMAR

## OF THE

### JAPANESE SPOKEN LANGUAGE

#### CHAPTER I.

#### WRITING AND PRONUNCIATION.

1. The Japanese characters are of two kinds :

a) The *Kanji* (or *Honji*), a collection of several thousand signs or ideographs of Chinese origin. Each of these *Kanji* signs corresponds not to a sound but to an idea. Two or three thousand of these characters are known to persons of moderate education, and this number is sufficient to read the newspapers and write about everyday matters.

b) The *Kana*, a collection of signs and diacritical marks in which each sign corresponds to the sound of a syllable.

2. No signs in Japanese correspond to our notion of letters.

3. The simple syllables of the Japanese language are :

a	ka	ga	sa	za	ta	da	na	ha	ba	pa	ma	ya	ra	wa	
i	ki	gi	shi	ji	chi	ji	ni	hi	bi	pi	mi		ri		n
u	ku	gu	su	zu	tsu	zu	nu	fu	bu	pu	mu	yu	ru		(final)
e	ke	ge	se	ze	te	de	ne	he	be	pe	me		re		
o	ko	go	so	zo	to	do	no	ho	bo	po	mo	yo	ro	wo	

4. The consonant part of the syllables in each column is theoretically supposed to be the same ; and though the initial sound certainly varies, the average Japanese does not perceive the irregularity. It will be readily understood, why it is natural in a verb ending, say, in *tsu*, like *tatsu*, to find such forms as *tata-nai*, *tachitai*, *tateba*, *tatō*.

5. The syllables in italics to the right of the black-type ones in 3, are only distinguished from the latter in Japanese by diacritical marks. They are not to be considered as entirely different sounds, but only as modifications of the preceding ones. These modified sounds are called *nigori*. It is very common, especially in compound words, to pass from, say, *ta* to *da* and sometimes backwards from *da* to *ta*. Thus we have *to-dana* from *to* and *tana* ; *naru-take* from *naru* and *dake*.



6. The following syllables are written in Japanese *kana* with two characters each, but they are not really diphthongs :

<b>sha</b>	<i>ja</i>	<b>cha</b>	<i>ja</i>
<b>shu</b>	<i>ju</i>	<b>chu</b>	<i>ju</i>
<b>sho</b>	<i>jo</i>	<b>cho</b>	<i>jo</i>

7. The diphthongal syllables in Japanese are :

<b>kya</b>	<i>gya</i>	<b>nya</b>	<b>hya</b>	<i>bya</i>	<i>pya</i>	<b>mya</b>	<b>rya</b>
<b>kyu</b>	<i>gyu</i>	<b>nyu</b>	<b>hyu</b>	<i>byu</i>	<i>pyu</i>		<b>ryu</b>
<b>kyo</b>	<i>gyo</i>	<b>nyo</b>	<b>hyo</b>	<i>byo</i>	<i>pyo</i>	<b>myo</b>	<b>ryo</b>

8. *Kwa*, *kwo*, *gwa*, *gwo*, are frequently written ; but as the *w* sound in these combinations has been entirely dropped by the inhabitants of the centre of Japan, we write in this work *ka*, *ko*, *ga*, *go*.

*Ye* is practically never heard now in Tōkyō or central provinces, we therefore write *e*. The *y* has been retained, however, in the word *yen* (Japanese dollar), as it is printed so on the bank-notes and cheque forms.

*Wo* is generally pronounced *o* ; but the *w* is sometimes sounded slightly.

9. Outside the syllables above mentioned, the average Japanese cannot pronounce anything else. For instance, he can say, *ta* ; but he cannot say the English words, 'tea' or 'too'.

10. Japanese is pronounced approximately as follows :

<i>a</i>	<i>a</i> in father.	<i>i</i>	<i>i</i> in machine.
<i>ai</i>	<i>ai</i> in aisle.	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i> in more.
<i>au</i>	<i>ow</i> in cow.	<i>ou</i>	<i>ou</i> in though.
<i>ch</i>	<i>ch</i> in child.	<i>s</i>	<i>s</i> in sat.
<i>e</i>	<i>e</i> in pen.	<i>u</i>	<i>u</i> in put.
<i>ei</i>	<i>ei</i> in rein.		

*g* sometimes as in goat ; some- The other letters as in English.  
times the sound of *ng* in king.

11. The component elements of double consonants must each be given its value in pronunciation. The following are found in Japanese : *kk*, *ss*, *tt*, *nn*, *pp*, *mm* ; also : *ssh* (= *shsh*), *tch* (= *chch*), *tts* (= *tsts*). Even in English we have some words with the double consonants sounded ; book-keeper, unnatural, mis-spel, etc.

12. The long vowels (*ā*, *ē*, *ō*, *ū*) must be pronounced long. They are about equivalent to double an ordinary vowel. Thus *bā-san* is about equal to *ba-a-san* ; *Ōsaka* to *O-osaka*.

13. The *i* and *u* are often hardly audible ; they are then written in this book *ĩ*, *ũ*. With regard to these short vowels, it must be observed that, though there is in Japanese a clear and sharp distinction between an ordinary vowel and a long one, and this difference is indicated in the *kana* writing, no such clear distinction exists between an ordinary vowel and a short one. There is a gradual falling off in the length of the syllable until we reach vanishing point, and it is difficult to determine when you should begin using the short mark. Authors are not agreed on the subject and the average Japanese fails to recognize any difference at all. Note also that these short vowels are not pronounced equally short by everybody ; and that they are often lengthened on account of the following sound or for the sake of emphasis.

14. Besides the frequent changes due to *nigori*, note the following vagaries of pronunciation :

1) There is a growing tendency in Tōkyō to use double consonants :

<i>mittsũ</i>	for <i>mĩtsũ</i> .	<i>ammari</i>	for <i>amari</i> .	<i>tatta</i>	for <i>tada</i> .
<i>yottsũ</i>	„ <i>yotsũ</i> .	<i>onnaji</i>	„ <i>onaji</i> .	<i>dokka</i>	„ <i>doko ka</i> .
<i>muttsũ</i>	„ <i>mutsũ</i> .	<i>minna</i>	„ <i>mina</i> .	<i>bakkari</i>	„ <i>bakari</i> .
<i>yattsũ</i>	„ <i>yatsũ</i>	<i>nanni</i>	„ <i>nani</i> .	<i>koreppakari</i>	„ <i>kore bakari</i> .
<i>atchi</i>	„ <i>achi</i> .	<i>sakki</i>	„ <i>saki</i> .	<i>sorekkiri</i>	„ <i>sore kiri</i> .
<i>kotchi</i>	„ <i>kochi</i> .	<i>sonnara</i>	„ <i>sō nara</i> .	<i>attakai</i>	„ <i>atataakai</i> .
<i>sotchi</i>	„ <i>sochi</i> .	<i>yappari</i>	„ <i>yahari</i> .	<i>okkake'ru</i>	„ <i>oi-kake'ru</i> .
<i>dotchi</i>	„ <i>dochi</i> .	<i>yoppodo</i>	„ <i>yohodo</i> .	<i>ironna</i>	„ <i>iro-iro na</i> .

In the gerundial termination of adjectives :

–*kütte* for –*kũle*.

2) Contractions and corruptions :

a) *Ira* after *asoko*, *koko*, *soko* and *doko*, may lose the *i*, as :

*sokora* for *soko-ira*.

b) *I'ru* (and less frequently *iku* and *irassharu*) after a gerund may lose the *i*, as :

*shĩteru* for *shĩte iru*.

c) The final *e* of the gerund may be dropped when followed by the verb *oku*, as :

*kaitoita* for *kaite oita*.

d) The final *te* of a gerund followed by the postposition *wa* may be contracted to *cha*, as :

*necha* for *nete wa*.

e) The final *de* (the *nigori* of *te*) of a gerund or the postposition *de*, followed by the postposition *wa*, may be contracted to *ja* (the *nigori* of *cha*), as :

*yonja* for *yonde wa*.

f) The final syllable *te* or *de* of a gerund and the first two syllables *shima* of the verb *shimau* are contracted to *cha* or *ja*, as :



*kaichatta*            for        *kaite shimatta.*  
*shinjaimashita*    „        *shinde shimaimashita.*

g) The *a* before *ti* in the verbs *kudasaru*, *nasaru* and *irassharu*, is often dropped, as :

*nas'tte*        for        *nasatte.*

h) The termination *eba* of the conditional of verbs and adjectives is often contracted to *ya*, as :

*kurya*            for *kureba.*                      *atsükerya*            for *atsükereba.*

i) We also have :

<i>da</i> , etc.	for <i>de aru</i> , etc. (See 94)	<i>keredo</i> or even <i>kedo</i>	„ <i>keredomo.</i>
<i>watashi</i> or even		<i>kya</i>	„ <i>kiri shika.</i>
<i>atashi</i>	„ <i>watakushi.</i>	<i>mon'</i>	„ <i>mono.</i>
<i>san</i>	„ <i>sama.</i>	<i>n'</i>	„ <i>no</i> or <i>ni.</i>
<i>nan</i>	„ <i>nani.</i>	<i>o tanomōshimasū</i>	„ <i>o tanomi mō-</i> <i>shimasū.</i>
<i>fu-jū</i>	„ <i>fu-jiyū.</i>		

3) Additions, the reason for which is generally not apparent :

<i>tambi</i>	for <i>tabi.</i>	<i>yon</i>	for <i>yo.</i>
<i>karappo</i>	„ <i>kara.</i>	<i>henteke</i>	„ <i>hen.</i>
<i>okkochi'ru</i>	„ <i>ochi'ru.</i>	<i>okkotosū</i>	„ <i>otosū.</i>

4) Long vowels for short ones and vice versa :

<i>sōtto</i>	for <i>sotto.</i>	<i>nāni</i>	for <i>nani.</i>
<i>soshite</i>	„ <i>sō shite.</i>	<i>honto</i>	„ <i>hontō.</i>

5) Saying *shi* for *hi* or vice versa ; *ē* for *ei* ; also using one vowel for another :

<i>shiroi</i>	for <i>hiroi.</i>	<i>kirē na</i>	for <i>kirei na.</i>	<i>ibi</i>	for <i>yubi.</i>
<i>chigae</i>	„ <i>chigai.</i>	<i>kairu</i>	„ <i>kaeru.</i>	<i>iku</i>	„ <i>yuku.</i>
<i>iya</i>	„ <i>ie.</i>	<i>asūko</i>	„ <i>asoko.</i>	<i>igoku</i>	„ <i>ugoku.</i>

Some of these last changes are admissible, but others (especially the very common use of *shi* for *hi*) are decidedly incorrect and should be avoided. If, however, an *e* is found at the end of the first component in a compound word it often not only may, but must be changed to *a* :

*ama-mizu*        from        *ame mizu.*

6) Besides the cases mentioned above in 2), *wa* suffers contraction after many words ; the following are a few samples :

<i>nya</i>	for <i>ni wa.</i>	<i>konda</i>	for <i>kondo wa.</i>	<i>atsūka</i>	for <i>atsūku wa.</i>
<i>nā</i>	„ <i>no wa.</i>	<i>sorya</i>	„ <i>sore wa.</i>		

7) The above lists are incomplete even as regards common words ; however, they are enough to show the student what to expect, and to put him on his guard.

15. Japanese words are pronounced with an equal or almost an equal stress on each syllable. However, there is sometimes a slight accent on the syllable preceding a double consonant, and on the syllable containing a long vowel. A

short vowel makes the syllable short, and, as a consequence, often throws an accent on a neighbouring syllable.

16. It must be remembered that written explanations about pronunciation are generally of little use, and that the only way to acquire a good accent is to try to imitate a native and, if possible, forget how the word is written.

17. The Japanese have nothing to correspond to the idea of 'word' as we understand it; and in their writing, whether *kanji* or *kana*, there is no separation between the words.

18. Compound words are extremely numerous in Japanese and are to be found in all stages of coalescence. Considerable disagreement seems to exist between the best writers as to whether certain words should be written separately, joined by a hyphen or amalgamated into one word. In this work a word like *tabe-mono* (*tabe'ru* to eat, *mono* a thing) anything to eat, is written as a compound; on the other hand *kakemono* (*kake'ru* to hang, *mono* a thing) which is not any hanging thing, but is the name given to hanging scrolls only, is written in one word. The honorific *o* has sometimes entirely lost its meaning as in *onaka* (*o* honourable, *naka* inside) belly; in this case we write one word. Sometimes it still retains its meaning at least vaguely, but is almost inseparable from certain words: *o-jigi* (*o* honourable, *jigi* salutation) a bow; these words we write as compounds. In combinations like *o cha* (*o* honourable, *cha* tea) we find that the honorific is used in the majority of cases, but sometimes the word *cha* in this same meaning, is used without the *o*: in this case we write the words as separate.

19. It frequently happens that the meaning of a compound is not equal to the sum of the meanings of the components, but has a specific or proper meaning of its own. We have already seen the case of *kakemono* 'a hanging scroll'; again *aomono* 'vegetables', from *aoi* 'green' and *mono* 'thing' is not the same as *aoi mono*. A green anything would be an *aoi mono*, but not necessarily an *aomono*; on the other hand a carrot, which is reddish, is an *aomono* but not an *aoi mono*.

20. Words very frequently suffer modifications in their sound when they enter into composition. The most common case of all, is to change the first syllable of the second component into its corresponding *nigori*'ed syllable. (5).

Note also that the final *n* of the first component is pronounced *m* before *b*, *m* or *p*. The euphonic changes of the numerals are explained in 280.

21. Numerous examples of how compounds are formed may be found in nn. 151 et seq.; 181; 182; 236-245.

22. Our grammatical notions and terminology do not apply well to Japanese, any more than do the words carriage or cart correspond to a *rikisha*. This must be borne in mind throughout, when the Japanese language is explained in terms of English (or any other European) grammar.



## CHAPTER II.

### VERBS.

#### CONJUGATION.

23. Japanese verbs have no person or number.

24. Negation is not expressed as in English by adding a negative adverb; there is a complete negative conjugation in Japanese.

25. There is no form of the Japanese verb that really corresponds to our infinitive. We shall however apply this name to the inflexion by which the verb is usually named by Europeans.

26. Most verbs are capable of forming by means of certain terminations, infinitives of the passive, potential and causative voices. All these infinitives are then conjugated regularly.

27. The following is not an attempt at giving a complete or scientific conjugation of the Japanese verb; this is long and complicated. The author has only endeavoured to show the easiest way of forming those parts of the verb in most common use.

28.

TABLE I. (Bases)

1	2	3	4	5	6
<i>bu</i>	<i>bi</i>	<i>nd</i>	<i>ba</i>	<i>b</i>	<i>b</i>
<i>mu</i>	<i>mi</i>	<i>nd</i>	<i>ma</i>	<i>m</i>	<i>m</i>
<i>nu</i>	<i>ni</i>	<i>nd</i>	<i>na</i>	<i>n</i>	<i>n</i>
<i>gu</i>	<i>gi</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>ga</i>	<i>g</i>	<i>g</i>
<i>ku</i>	<i>ki</i>	<i>it</i>	<i>ka</i>	<i>k</i>	<i>k</i>
<i>su</i>	<i>shi</i>	<i>shit</i>	<i>sa</i>	<i>s</i>	<i>s</i>
<i>tsu</i>	<i>chi</i>	<i>tt</i>	<i>ta</i>	<i>t</i>	<i>t</i>
<i>au</i>	<i>ai</i>	<i>att</i>	<i>awa</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>a</i>
<i>iu</i>	<i>ii</i>	<i>itt</i>	<i>iwa</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>i</i>
<i>ou</i>	<i>oi</i>	<i>ott</i>	<i>owa</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>
<i>uu</i>	<i>ui</i>	<i>utt</i>	<i>uwa</i>	<i>u</i>	<i>u</i>
<i>aru</i>	<i>ari</i>	<i>att</i>	<i>ara</i>	<i>ar</i>	<i>ar</i>
<i>eru</i>	<i>eri</i>	<i>ett</i>	<i>era</i>	<i>er</i>	<i>er</i>
<i>iru</i>	<i>iri</i>	<i>itt</i>	<i>ira</i>	<i>ir</i>	<i>ir</i>
<i>oru</i>	<i>ori</i>	<i>ott</i>	<i>ora</i>	<i>or</i>	<i>or</i>
<i>uru</i>	<i>uri</i>	<i>utt</i>	<i>ura</i>	<i>ur</i>	<i>ur</i>
<i>e'ru</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>et</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>er</i>	<i>ey</i>
<i>i'ru</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>it</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>ir</i>	<i>iy</i>

IRREGULAR VERBS.					
<i>iku</i>	<i>iki</i>	<i>itt</i>	<i>ika</i>	<i>ik</i>	<i>ik</i>
<i>kuru</i>	<i>ki</i>	<i>kit</i>	<i>ko</i>	<i>kur</i>	<i>koy</i>
<i>suru</i>	<i>shi</i>	<i>shit</i>	<i>shi</i>	<i>sur</i>	<i>shiy</i>

AFFIRMATIVE.		NEGATIVE.
1 <i>yobu</i> .....	<b>Infinitive</b> to call	4 <i>yoba</i> -NAI
1 <i>yobu</i> .....	<b>Present</b> call, or am calling	4 <i>yoba</i> -NAI
3 <i>yonde</i> I'RU .....		3 <i>yonde</i> I-NAI
2 <i>yobimasu</i> .....		2 <i>yobimase</i> N
3 <i>yonde</i> IMASU .....		3 <i>yonde</i> IMASEN
6 <i>yobō</i> .....	<b>Prob. present and future</b> shall call, or probably call	1 <i>yobumai</i> (see 33)
3 <i>yonde</i> IYŌ .....		3 <i>yonde</i> IMAI
1 <i>yobu</i> DARŌ OT DESHŌ .....		4 <i>yoba</i> -NAI DARŌ OT DESHŌ
3 <i>yonde</i> IRU DARŌ .....		3 <i>yonde</i> I-NAI DARŌ
2 <i>yobimashō</i> .....		2 <i>yobimasumai</i>
3 <i>yonde</i> IMASHŌ .....		3 <i>yonde</i> IMASUMAI
3 <i>yonda</i> .....	<b>Past</b> called, or was calling	4 <i>yoba</i> -NAKATTA
3 <i>yonde</i> ITA .....		3 <i>yonde</i> I-NAKATTA
2 <i>yobimashita</i> .....		2 <i>yobimase</i> N DESHITA
3 <i>yonde</i> IMASHITA .....		3 <i>yonde</i> IMASEN DESHITA
3 <i>yondarō</i> .....	<b>Prob. past</b> probably called	4 <i>yoba</i> -NAKATTARŌ
3 <i>yonde</i> ITARŌ .....		3 <i>yonde</i> I-NAKATTARŌ
3 <i>yonda</i> DARŌ .....		4 <i>yoba</i> -NAKATTA DARŌ
3 <i>yonde</i> ITA DARŌ .....		3 <i>yonde</i> I-NAKATTA DARŌ
2 <i>yobimashitarō</i> .....		2 <i>yobimase</i> N DESHITARŌ
3 <i>yonde</i> IMASHITARŌ .....		3 <i>yonde</i> IMASEN DESHITARŌ
3 <i>yonde</i> .....	<b>Gerund</b> calling	4 <i>yoba</i> -NAI DE
3 <i>yonde</i> ITE .....		3 <i>yonde</i> I-NAI DE
2 <i>yobimashite</i> .....		4 <i>yoba</i> -ZU NI
2 O <i>yobi</i> .....	<b>Imperative</b> call !	1 <i>yobu</i> NA
3 <i>yonde</i> .....		4 <i>yoba</i> -NAI DE O KURE
3 <i>yonde</i> (O) KURE .....		3 <i>yonde</i> WA IKE-NAI
2 (O) <i>yobi</i> NASAI .....		4 <i>yoba</i> -NAI DE II
3 <i>yonde</i> KUDASAI .....		4 <i>yoba</i> -NAI DE KUDASAI
2 O <i>yobi</i> KUDASAI .....		2 O <i>yobi</i> KUDASAIMASU NA
5 <i>yobeba</i> .....	<b>Pres. cond.</b> if call	4 <i>yoba</i> -NAKEREBA
3 <i>yonde</i> IREBA .....		3 <i>yonde</i> I-NAKEREBA
3 <i>yondara</i> .....	<b>Past cond.</b> if called	4 <i>yoba</i> -NAKATTARA
3 <i>yonde</i> ITARA .....		3 <i>yonde</i> I-NAKATTARA
2 <i>yobimashitara</i> .....		2 <i>yobimase</i> N DESHITARA
3 <i>yonde</i> IMASHITARA .....		3 <i>yonde</i> IMASEN DESHITARA
3 <i>yondari</i> .....	<b>Frequentative</b> sometimes calling	4 <i>yoba</i> -NAKATTARI
2 <i>yobitai</i> .....	<b>Desiderative</b> wish to call	2 <i>yobitaku</i> NAI



**30.** With regard to Table I, the column 1 gives the termination of the verbs as found in the vocabularies of this work (also as in Hobart-Hampden and Parlett's *English-Japanese Dictionary*, and in the author's *English-Japanese Conversation Dictionary*).

**31.** As all verbs ending in *eru* and *iru* do not form their bases in the same way, some have been distinguished by a decimal point (*e'ru*; *i'ru*). Those which, as written in this book, end in *e'ru*, belong to the 2nd conjugation in Prof. Chamberlain's classification; and those in *i'ru*, to the 3rd conjugation. All other verbs belong to the 1st conjugation.\*

**32.** Table II shows what terminations are to be added and to which base they must be added.

**33.** The first form of the negative future is singular in that, in the case of verbs of the 2nd and 3rd conjugations, the termination *mai* is added to that part of base 1 that comes before the point: thus, we have *nemai* and not *neru-mai* for the negative future of *ne'ru*; *mimai* and not *mirumai* is the negative future of *mi'ru*.

**34.** In order to conjugate any verb, first form the bases as per Table I; and then add to the proper base the termination shown in Table II. Take the verb *yobu*, for instance. According to the first line of Table I we have as bases: 1 *yobu*, 2 *yobi*, 3 *yond*, 4 *yoba*, 5 *yob*, 6 *yob*. Now add to the proper base the termination shown in Table II.

#### MOODS AND TENSES.

**35. General remarks.** Many tenses in Japanese, have a simple form as *yobai*, corresponding to the passing act, and a compound form (composed of the gerund and the auxiliary verb *i'ru* or *oru*) as *yonde iru*, which corresponds to the continued act or state. Thus *yobu* means 'I call'; *yonde iru* 'I am calling'; *kawaku* 'to dry'; *kawaite iru* 'to be dry'. The continuative forms are used in Japanese more than in English: *wakatte iru*, I understand. (See 99).

**36.** *Yobu* and *yonde iru* have the same meanings respectively as *yobimasu* and *yonde imasu*; but the latter are more polite. In Table II (see 29), in each case in which a distinction is to be made, the polite forms are at the end of the tense. (See also 359 et seqq.).

**37.** The Japanese sometimes use the negative where we use the affirmative: *ko-nai uchi ni*, before he comes. (See also 415 et seqq.).

---

\*The verbs in *eru* or *iru* which have not this decimal point, i.e. which belong to the 1st conjugation are few. The following are the commonest:

<i>heru</i> to diminish;	<i>shimeru</i> to become	<i>hairu</i> to enter;	<i>mairu</i> to come, go;
<i>kaeru</i> to return;	damp;	<i>ijiru</i> to meddle with;	<i>negiru</i> to cheapen;
<i>keru</i> to kick;	<i>suberu</i> to slip;	<i>iru</i> to enter, need;	<i>shiru</i> to know.
<i>shaberu</i> to gossip;	<i>teru</i> to shire;	<i>kiru</i> to cut;	

**38. Present and Probable Present or Future.** The dominant idea of the Japanese present tense is the idea of certainty. It is used for the present, for general statements, and for those things in the future which are considered certain. It is also used for interrogations regarding the future of the 2nd person; sometimes also of the 3rd person.

*Arukimasu*; he walks.

*Nihon no shokujī wa tabemasen*; I don't eat Japanese food.

*Ashita Tōkyō e ikimasu*; I shall go to Tōkyō tomorrow.

*Ashita Tōkyō e irasshaimasu ka?* are you going to Tōkyō tomorrow?

**39.** The Japanese probable present or future means uncertainty, and is used when speaking of those things of the future which are considered uncertain; also when expressing or asking for an opinion and in interrogations of the 1st person future.

*Ashita wa ame ga furu deshō*; it will probably rain tomorrow.

*Mono-oki ni aru deshō*; I think there are some in the pantry.

*Watakushi ga mairimashō ka?* shall I go?

**40.** By adding *deshō* (or less politely *darō*) to the forms of the present we obtain forms of the probable present.

*Ano hito wa Ei-go ga dekiru deshō*; I expect that man can speak English.

**41.** Various forms of the probable present, especially those in *darō* or *deshō* often have a quasi-interrogative force, about equivalent to 'as you probably know' 'as you will probably agree' 'isn't that so?'

*Yūbin-kyoku no mae ni ōki na kūsuri-ya ga aru deshō? sono tonari desū*; there is a big drug-store in front of the post office, isn't there? well, it (the place I am speaking of) is next door to that.

**42.** The forms *yobō*, *yonde iyō*, *yobimashō* and *yonde imashō* when used alone refer generally to the 1st person. They are often used to announce a decision which has just been taken by the 1st person or to invite the 2nd person to co-operate with the 1st; in this latter case it corresponds to the 1st person plural imperative. *Ikō* or *ikimashō*; I'll go, or let us go.

**43.** These forms, however, followed by *to omou* or *to shīte* may refer to any person: *ikō to omou*, I (you, he, etc.) intend to go; *ikō to shīte*, being about to go.

**44.** The forms *yobu deshō* and *yoba-nai deshō* are generally used for the 2nd and 3rd persons only; however, when *deshō* has the quasi-interrogative force mentioned in 41, they are used for any person.

**45.** The forms *yonde iru darō* and *yonde i-nai darō* are used for all persons when the state and not the passing act is meant.

**46.** The following examples may serve to illustrate the difference between the Japanese present and future:

*Itō San wa ashita Tōkyō e ikimasu ka?* will Mr Itō go to Tōkyō tomorrow?



*Itō San wa ashita Tōkyō e iku deshō ka?* do you think Mr Itō will go to Tōkyō tomorrow?

In the first case I inquire about the fact of somebody who, I think, ought to know (e.g. Mr Itō's employer); in the second case I ask for an opinion.

47. A common emphatic form of speech consists of *a*) the second base, *b*) *wa* or *koso*, *c*) the verb *suru*. This idiom is especially common with *suru* in the negative; and more particularly so with *suru* in the negative present. The meaning may refer to the future, the present or even the past.

*Iki wa shi-nai*; I certainly will not go, (do not go or did not go).

48. When the negative past tense of *suru* is used, the meaning is past; *shimai* (negative future) is used in the 2nd or 3rd person in hypothetical cases.

49. Before the negative of *suru*, *wa* is often corrupted to *ya*.\*

50. The Japanese present has sometimes a past meaning:

*Shimbun wa mada mimasen*; I have not seen the newspaper yet.

*Taihen ame ga furimasu kara ikimasen deshita*; it rained so much I did not go.

See also 99.

51. The English present is often translated by the Japanese past. (See 56).

52. For the Japanese present followed by *to*, see 67.

53. **Past and Probable Past.** Just as there is a certain present and a probable present in Japanese, there is also a certain past and a probable past.

54. By adding *deshō* (or less politely *darō*) to the forms of the past tense, we obtain forms of the probable past.

55. *Deshō* (or *darō*) may again have the quasi-interrogative force mentioned in 41.

56. The certain past is often used in Japanese when we in English use the present. *Wakarimashita* may mean: 'I understood' or 'I understand'. *Bikkuri shita*; 'I was surprised' or 'I am surprised'. This is especially common with inchoative verbs, (114).

57. The first form of the past tense followed by *'tte* may be translated by 'even if': *Ame ga futta 'tte ikimasu*; I shall go even if it rains.

The corresponding construction in the negative is slightly irregular: *Ko-nakūta 'tte*; even if he doesn't come; see 200, 5, foot-note.

58. **Gerund.** The gerund is perhaps the inflexion that is in most frequent use.† (Compare 200).

1) It is used before auxiliary verbs, as: *motte iru* to be carrying; *kaite aru* it is written; (98 et seqq.).

\*Before *ya* the final *i* of the base is often dropped: *ikya shi-nai*, for *iki ya shi-nai*.

†The gerund ending in *mashite* may be used only in cases similar to those noted under 3), 4); 5); 7); 9), 10), 11), 12) and 14).

2) The first of two verbs when they do not form a compound is put in the gerund : *motte kuru* to bring. (Compare 151).

3) The verb that ends a clause, or is followed in English by 'and' is put in the gerund : *Hon wo katte kaerimashita* ; he bought a book and returned home.

4) After the translation of the gerund, we must sometimes use other conjunctions besides 'and' : *Hajime atte owaru ga nai* ; there was a beginning but there is no end.

5) It sometimes expresses instrumentality : *Kuruma wo hiite kurashimasu* ; he makes his living by pulling a riksha.

6) It may signify the reason or cause : *Ame ga futte ika-nakatta* ; as it was raining I did not go.

7) It often corresponds to 'so' in English : *Ashi ga itande shiyō ga nai* ; my feet hurt me so I don't know what to do.

8) It is sometimes translated by a preposition : *Himo wo motte iwaku* ; to tie with a string.

9) Followed by *mo* it means 'even if' 'although'\* : *Ame ga futte mo ikimasu* ; I will go even if it rains.

10) Followed by *ii*, it has a slight imperative force\* : *Tabete ii* ; eat it. *Ima itte yō gozaimasu ka?* shall I go now ? do you wish me to go now ?

11) Followed by *mo ii* it means permission, concession\* : after an affirmative gerund it may be rendered by 'may' ; after a negative gerund by 'need not'. *Kaette mo ii* ; you may return home : *ika-nakūte mo ii* ; you needn't go.

12) *Wa* following the gerund is emphatic ; it is often used in sentences that contradict what another person has said, or that express a protest, doubt, threat, regret, etc. Note that *-te wa*, *-de wa*, are familiarly contracted respectively into *-cha* and *-ja*. *Nete wa (necha) i-nai* ; oh, no, he is not asleep. *Itte wa (itcha) dō desu ka?* what do you say to going there ?

13) The affirmative gerund followed by *wa*, or the negative gerund in *nakūte* followed by *wa*, has often a sort of conditional meaning : *Yokohama e hikkoshite wa fuben de gozaimasu* ; it would be inconvenient for me (if I were) to move to Yokohama. *Ame ga futte wa komaru* ; (a) if it were to rain I would be inconvenienced ; (b) I am inconvenienced by this rain.

*Wa* after a gerund sometimes means repetition. *Itazura wo shite wa shikarareru* ; (a) if you get up to mischief you'll be scolded ; (b) he is often scolded as he is always up to mischief.

The *wa* is sometimes dropped when the meaning is repetition : *Hana wo totte komaru* ; I don't know what to do as he is (you are) always picking my flowers.

---

\*The meanings of *mo*, *ii* and *mo ii* after a gerund are not always as indicated above ; consult the words *mo* and *goi* in the Vocabulary, Part III.



14) The gerund followed by *wa* and *ike-nai*, (less often *nara-nai* or *dame*), means that it is wrong or useless to do something. It often corresponds to the negative imperative, or to 'must not'. *Sō shūte wa ike-nai*; 'you must not do that', or 'don't do that', (lit. if you do so it won't do). *Sonna ni sawaija (sawaiide wa) ike-nai*, 'don't make such a row', (lit. if you make such a row it won't do).

15) The negative gerund in *nakūte* followed by *wa* and *ike-nai* (or *nara-nai*) indicates an obligation, and may be translated by 'must': *Kaka-nakūte wa ikemasen*; you must write; (lit. if you do not write that won't do). The verb *ike-nai* (or *nara-nai*) is sometimes omitted: *Ika-nakucha*; I have to go.

16) The negative gerund, especially that in *-zu*, is often translated by 'without': *Kutsu wo tora-zu ni haitte mo ii*; you may go in without taking off your boots. *Chichi ga nokora-zu koborete shimatta*; every bit of the milk was spilt, (*nokora-zu*, without any remaining over). *Kōbe wa san-nen bakari mi-nai de iru aida ni taihen kawarimashita*; I have been three years without seeing Kōbe and during that time it has changed very much.

17) Instead of *yoba-nai de* and *yonde i-nai de* you occasionally hear the corresponding constructions in the *masū* terminations: *yobimasen de, yonde imasen de*.

18) The gerund is often used elliptically:

*To wo akete... (kure)*; open the door.

*Shitte iru no ni omae wa uso wo tsuite... ('shira-nai' to itta)*; although you know, you tell a lie... (and say you don't know).

Besides this elliptical use of the gerund, common to men and women, women have another, peculiar to themselves, in which the gerund is equivalent to the past tense.

*O tō-san wa mō o kaeri ni natte?* (= *natta ka?*); is father back already? *E, o kaeri ni natte yo!* (= *natta yo!*) oh, yes!

*Kono shōsetsū wo yonde?* (= *yonda ka?*) have you read this novel?

19) The following constructions are interesting:

*Aruite desū ka?* are you going on foot?

*Gohan wo tabete (kara) no koto ni nasai*; put it off until after dinner.

20) The use of the gerund with auxiliary and terminal verbs is shown in 98 et seqq.

21) Various contractions of the gerund are noted in 14, 2.

**59. The Imperative; commanding and requesting.** The forms shown in 29 are a selection from among the numerous ways of commanding, forbidding or requesting. The forms in *kudasai* are the only polite ones; the others, especially the first ones, savour more or less of a command and should be used only to inferiors.

The imperative is rendered still more polite by beginning the sentence by *dōka* or better still by *dōzo*. *Yonde kudasai*, is about equivalent to 'please

call.' *Dōzo yonde kudasai*, 'please be so kind as to call.'

60. An order to do and continue to do something is often expressed by the gerund followed by the imperative of *i'ru*, viz. *o-ide*, *o-ide nasai*, *i nasai* or *irasshai* according to the degree of politeness.

*Koko de matte o-ide*; wait here.

*Mizu wo motte kimasū kara sono aida kore wo motte irasshai*; please hold this while I fetch some water.

An order to continue not doing something is sometimes expressed by the negative gerund followed by the imperative of *i'ru*.

*Oki-nai de irasshai*; don't get up.

*Kono tegami ni wa shi-go-nichi henji wo dasa-zu ni o-ide nasai*; don't answer this letter for four or five days.

61. In the negative imperative *dame* is often heard instead of *ike-nai*.

*Otoishite wa dame*; don't let it drop.

62. Instead of *kudasai* children (especially girls) often say *chōdai*. *Kudasai* (or *chōdai*) by itself means, 'please give it to me', not simply 'please'. *Pan wo kudasai*; please give me some bread.

In Japanese, as in English, a request often takes the form of an interrogation: *Hon wo kashite kudasaimasen ka?* would you be kind enough to lend me your book?

63. As stated in 42 the first person plural imperative is often rendered by the Japanese future: *Dekakeyō* or *deyakemashō*; 'let us be going'. To the first of these forms is often added in familiar speech *ja nai ka?* *Dekakeyō ja nai ka?* let us be going, eh?

64. In the imperative, the special honorific verb, if there is one, is generally used instead of the corresponding simple verb: thus, practically, *o-ide nasai* or *irasshai* is the imperative of *i'ru* to be, *kuru* to come, and *iku* to go; and *goran nasai*, the imperative of *mi'ru* to look.

The expressions studied under the titles 'Obligation' 'Permission' and 'Advice' in 168, 169 and 170 are related to the present subject.

65. **Conditional.** The conditional present is often used instead of the past and vice versa. *Sūkoshi ki wo tsūkereba koware-nai no ni*; if you had been more careful it wouldn't have broken. *Dekitara motte kite kudasai*; please bring it with you if it is ready.

In Japanese the conditional and expressions equivalent to a conditional, have not only the ordinary conditional meaning, but also serve to express other relations between two events, especially that of time. *Shigoto ga sumeba nani wo shimasū ka?* what are you going to do when you have finished that work?

When two conditionals are used in Japanese the second may have the meaning of 'so long as' 'provided'. *Karita empitsū wo nakushitara, onnaji mono wo katte kaeseba ii deshō*; if you've lost the pencil you borrowed, it will be all right



provided you buy another one like it and return that.

66. The idea of the conditional is sometimes expressed in Japanese by placing *nara*\* after the present or the past (more especially after the less polite forms). *Nara* is also placed after the desiderative form of verbs, after adjectives and after nouns : *Aite iru nara kashite kudasai* ; if you have no use for it at present, please lend it to me. *Mitai nara tsurete ikimashō* ; if you wish to see it, I will take you. *Oishii nara o agari nasai* ; if you like it, please take some. *Neko nara oi-dashite o kure* ; if it is a cat, drive it away. Note also *sō nara* (corrupted to *sonnara*) 'if things are so' 'in that case' : *Sonnara ikimashō* ; if that is so, I'll go.

67. The present tense followed by *to* is about equivalent to the present conditional ; it often refers to time and may then be translated by when, while as soon as, etc. *Taberu to o kâ-san ni shikararemasū* ; if you eat it, your mother will scold you.

*Kane ga naru to kisha ga deru* ; when the bell rings, the train starts.

The above construction is especially common with the less polite forms of the present but it is sometimes used with the *masū* forms. Note that if *to* is followed by *iu* to say, *kiku* to hear, *omou* to think, etc., it serves to indicate a direct quotation and has nothing to do with the conditional. (See 427).

68. The gerund followed by *wa* has frequently a conditional meaning, see 58, 13, 14, 15.

The following expressions are therefore more or less equivalent :

<i>nomeba</i>	= <i>nomu nara</i>	= <i>nomu to</i>	= <i>nonde wa</i>
<i>noma-nakereba</i>	= <i>noma-nai nara</i>	= <i>noma-nai to</i>	= <i>noma-nakūte wa</i>

69. The past conditional, like the present, may express other relations besides that of condition ; the relation of time is especially common and the translation may then be : when, after, as soon as, while, etc.

*Kyō wa ame ga fura-nai to omottara mata futte kita* ; although I thought it wouldn't rain today, it has started to rain again.

*Aruitara kutabireta* ; I've been walking and I'm tired.

*Hi ni atetara iro ga samete shimatta* ; it has been exposed to the sun and the colour has entirely faded.

*Dekitara (sugu ni) okutte kudasai* ; please send it as soon as it is ready.

*Sore ga sundara sampo shimashō* ; when (after) you've finished let's go for a walk.

*Tsuitara sugu ame ga futte kimashita* ; he had hardly arrived when it began to rain.

70. By prefixing *moshi* to the conditional present or past we give it a distinctly hypothetical meaning : *moshi kitara* ; supposing he came.

---

\*You may say *naraba* instead of *nara* ; likewise you sometimes hear as the termination of the past conditional *-araba* for *-ara*.

71. The termination *eba* of the present conditional is sometimes contracted to *ya* in familiar speech : *Kō surya (sureba) ii* ; you had better do like this.

72. The negative present conditional followed by *ike-nai* or *nara-nai* may be translated generally by 'must' : *Kō shi-nakereba narimasen* ; it must be done in this way, (lit.: it won't do if you don't do it thus).

73. The present conditional preceded by *sae* means 'if only' 'provided'. *Ai sae sureba anshin suru* ; if I could only see him my mind would be at ease.

*Toki (ni) wa* has sometimes a hypothetical meaning : *Moshi tegami ga naku-natta toki (ni) wa dō shimashō* ? what shall I do if the letter should be lost ?

74. We have already seen that in Japanese the conditional is used in many cases in which there is no conditional in English : here are some more examples :

*Kuru to omotte yorokonde imashitara kimasen deshita* ; I was rejoicing at the idea of his coming, but it turned out that he didn't come.

*Kore wo mireba yasashii yō da keredomo honto wa taihen muzukashii* ; to look at it, it seems easy, but it really is very difficult.

*Sono toki tokei wo mimashitara jū-ji sugi deshita* ; on looking then at the clock, I found it was past ten.

*Nihon-go mo hanaseba ji mo kakemasu* ; he can not only speak Japanese but he can also write it.

*Kiite mireba rikō na hito da* ; judging from what one hears, he must be a clever fellow.

*Kikeba byōki datta sō desu* ; I hear that he has been ill.

*Ato de kiitara uso deshita* ; I inquired afterwards and it turned out not to be true.

*Nippon mo kawareba kawaru mon' da* ; how Japan has changed !

*Dō oshietara ii deshō* ; how shall I explain it to them ?

*Ikeba ikareru* ; you can go (but . . . I think you had better not).

*Mi mo shi-nakereba kiki mo shi-nai* ; I neither saw nor heard anything.

*Nedan mo yasūkereba shina mo ii* ; the price is cheap and the quality good.

*Yoku mireba miru hodo kirei desu* ; the more carefully I look at it the prettier I find it.

75. The Japanese are very fond of elliptical idioms. In these a conditional is often found. See 414, 4.

76. **Frequentative.** The frequentative form is used when acts or states occur by turns. It is frequently used in pairs, the second member being generally followed by the verb *suru*. An 'and' is often introduced between the two verbs in the English version : *Shabettari warattari shite ita de wa arimasen ka* ? weren't you talking and laughing ?

The frequentative is sometimes used when there is no repetition :

*Dō shite watashi no hana wo tottari shimasu ka* ? what do you mean by picking



my flowers?—Note that in English you use the plural (a kind of repetition) though only one flower may have been picked.

The frequentative is occasionally used in a distributive sense :

*Kodomo-tachi wa hon wo yondari, e wo kaitari, kittle wo mitari shite imasū ;* some of the children are reading books, some are drawing pictures, and some are looking at postage stamps.

**77. Desiderative.** The desiderative form is an adjective and has all the inflexions of one. (See 192 et seqq.).

**78.** Like an adjective it has also a corresponding abstract noun in *-sa* ; e.g.: from *ikitai*, 'wishing to go,' we get *ikitasa*, 'the wish to go'. This abstract noun, generally followed by *ni*, refers to the reason or cause of an action.

*O kō-san no kao ga mitasa ni tōi tokoro kara kimashita ;* I have come from very far because I was longing to see my mother.

**79.** The desiderative is not used in the 3rd. person unless followed by *to iu*, *to mōsū* or *no desū*.

The object of the desire often, but not always, becomes the subject and takes *ga* : *Kamakura ga mitaku wa arimasen ka ?* don't you wish to see Kamakura ?

**80.** By changing the final *i* to *garu* we form a verb ; e.g.: from *ikitai*, 'wishing to go', we get *ikitagaru*, 'to wish to go'.

**81. The Second Base or Stem.** The second base of a verb is very important and has to be referred to frequently : we will call it the stem.

**82.** The stem of a verb : 1) is very often used as a noun as may be seen in several of the following cases.

2) Followed by *suru* it sometimes takes the place of the ordinary inflexions of the verb : (o) *hanashi suru uchi ni* ; while we were talking.

3) Preceded by *o* and followed by certain verbs, it forms polite substitutes for the ordinary inflexions of the verb. See 359–360.

4) Followed by *wa* and *suru* it is emphatic. See 47–49.

5) Followed by *ni*, it signifies the motive or object of an action : *Tori ni kimashita* ; he came to fetch it.

6) Followed by *nagara*, it generally means that two actions are carried on simultaneously : *Warai nagara kodomo ni omocho wo yarimashita* ; laughing, he gave a toy to the child.

7) Followed by *nagara* it sometimes has an adversative sense : *Warui to shiri nagara shita* ; he did it, though he knew it was wrong.

8) Followed by *gake ni*, it means 'on the way' ; this construction is especially common in connection with the verbs *iku* to go, and *kaeru* to return : *Kaeri-gake ni yorimashita* ; I called on my way back.

9) When a sentence is composed of two or more parallel propositions, we may use the stem of the verb at the end of each member except at the end of the last one which takes an ordinary verbal inflexion : *Shiroi hana mo ari, akai*

*no mo ari, aoi no mo arimasu*; some flowers are white, some red, and some blue.

10) When the stem ends in *ri* and is followed by the verb *nasaru*, the final *ri* of the stem is sometimes changed to *n*: *o yan nasai* for *o yari nasai*, give it.

**83. The Infinitive.** There is no real infinitive in Japanese. The English infinitive is translated in a variety of ways:

1) When it is the subject or object of another verb,—by the first forms of the present or past followed by *koto*, *to iu koto*, *no* or *hō*; all these words serve to substantivize the verb:

*Hitori de iru to iu koto wa yoku nai koto desu*; it is a bad thing to live by oneself.

*Kasa wo motte iku hō ga ii*; it would be better to take an umbrella.

*Hima wo tsubusu no wa warui*; it is bad to waste time.

*Uma wo kawu-nai koto ni kimemashita*; I have decided not to buy a horse.

2) When it follows a verb of motion and signifies 'for the purpose of' or 'in order to',—by the stem of the verb and *ni*:

*Tori ni kimashita*; he came to fetch it.

3) When it follows a verb which is not of motion, and signifies 'for the purpose of' or 'in order to',—by the first forms of the present followed by *tame ni*:

*Komaraseru tame ni shimashita*; he did it to annoy me.

4) When it follows the means, instrument or agent, by the first forms of the present and (*no*) *ni*; the *no* is sometimes omitted:

*Tegami wo kaku ni kami ga iru*; I want some paper to write a letter.

*Ko-zutsumi wo iwaku no ni tsukaimasu*; I use it to tie up parcels.

*Kore wo ageru no ni tetsudatte kudasai*; help me to lift this.

5) When it is equivalent to 'for' followed by the present participle,—by the first forms of the present and (*no*) *ni*; the *no* is sometimes omitted:

*Kono nimotsu wo teishaba made motte iku no ni, ikura harattara ii deshō?* how much ought I to pay to have (for having) this parcel taken to the station?

*Mada neru ni wa hayai*; it is still too early to go to bed.

6) When it signifies 'with the intention of',—by the future and *to omotte* or *to shite*:

*Dekakeyō to omotte bōshi wo kaburimashita*; I put on my hat to go out.

7) When equivalent to a supposition and accompanied by 'it will' or 'it would',—by some construction with a conditional meaning:

*Ano hito ga okoru to ike-nai kara o yoshi nasai*; it wouldn't do to make that man angry so don't do that.

*Itte mo dame*; it is useless to go.

*Yokohama e hikkoshite wa fuben de gozaimasu*; it would be inconvenient for me to move to Yokohama.



8) After verbs of speaking as: telling, requesting, promising, advising, refusing, etc., the infinitive is translated by *to* following the direct quotation or by *yō ni* following the present:

'*Ko-nai*' *to kotowarimashita*; he refused to come.

*Ashita kuru yō ni itte kure*; tell him to come tomorrow.

9) Sentences belonging to the above class are sometimes translated by the causative, sometimes they are entirely changed before translating:

Tell Shige to call a rikisha=cause Shige to call a rikisha; *Shige ni kuruma wo yobashite kure*.

I'll get (tell) the carpenter to make one; *daiku ni koshiraesaseyō*.

Tell O Haru to come=call O Haru; *O Haru wo yonde kure*.

Tell O Haru to go=send O Haru; *O Haru wo yatte kure*.

10) After 'wish' 'want' or 'would like', the infinitive is translated by the desiderative form of the verb:

*Yobitai*; I wish to call.

11) After 'easy' or 'difficult' etc., the infinitive is translated by the stem and *yasui* or *ii* (easy), or *nikui* (difficult):

*Wakari-nikui*; difficult to understand.

*Koko wa sumi-ii tokoro desū ka?* is this a pleasant place to live in?

12) When the infinitive has the meaning of 'must' it is translated in various ways:

*Shi-nakereba nara-nai shigoto ga aru*; I have work to do (which I must do).

*Dono michi wo ikeba ii ka wakarimasen*; I don't know which road to take.

*Harai ga arimasū ka?* is there anything to pay?

13) When the meaning is intention, see 173.

14) Note the following ways of translating the infinitive:

*Kaku hima ga nai*; I have no time to write.

*Chichi wo akambō ni nomashite o kure*; give the baby some milk to drink.

*Kono heya ni hon wo oku basho ga arimasen*; in this room there's no place to put my books.

*Yomu mono ga nai*; I have nothing to read.

*Sara wo ireru hako*; a box to put plates in.

*Naki-dasū*; to begin to cry.

**84. Various Verbal Phrases.** The first forms of the present or past when followed by *koto* become substantivized and generally have a meaning in the Japanese mind akin to our infinitive, (83, 1); but they are not always to be translated by the infinitive in English:

*Kurakūte yomu koto ga dekimasen*; it is so dark I cannot read.

*Mita koto ga nai*; I have never seen it.

*Kōbe e itta koto ga arimasū ka?* have you ever been to Kōbe?

*Itta koto ga gozaimasū*; yes, I have been there.

85. The first forms of the present and past may also be made substantives by adding *mono*, *mon'* or *no*. The *no* is often equivalent to *mono* or *koto* :

*Kesa itta no wa machigai deshita* ; what I said this morning was a mistake.

It is worthy of note that *koto*, *mono* and *no* may refer not only to the act of the verb itself as in the above examples, but also to the thing which is the object or subject of the verb. Compare the following examples :

*Kyō wa isogashikutte sore wo suru koto ga dekimasen* ; I am very busy today I can't do that ; (the act of doing is impossible).

*Suru koto ga takusan arimasu* ; I have a great deal to do ; (things to do).

*Anata no tegami nanzo yomu mon' (or mono) desu ka?* I'd never dream of reading your letters.

*Yomu mono ga nai* ; I have nothing to read.

*Dare ga kita no desu?* who came ?

*Kesa kita no wa kono tegami desu* ; this is the letter that came this morning.

86. Especially common is the *no desu*, (*no deshita*, etc.) so often heard after the verb : it sometimes serves merely to round off a sentence and forms expressions the meaning of which is practically indistinguishable from that of the ordinary inflexions of the verb ; sometimes, however, it has a distinct force of its own. The following are some of the commonest combinations with suggestions for their translation.

PRESENT. *Iku no desu (or da)* : go ; shall (will) go ; am going ; should (would) go ; must go ; have to go ; am to go ; ought to go.

PROBABLE PRESENT AND FUTURE. *Iku no deshō (or darō)* : shall (will) probably go ; shall (will) probably have to go.

PAST. *Itta no desu (or da)* ; *ikimashita no desu* : did go ; should (would) have gone.

*Iku no deshita (or datta)* ; *itta no deshita (or datta)* : should have gone ; ought to have gone ; was to go ; was to have gone.

PROBABLE PAST. *Iku no deshitarō (or dattarō)* : probably did go ; probably would (should) have gone ; probably ought to have gone.

*Itta no deshitarō (or dattarō)* : probably did go.

CONDITIONAL. *Iku no deshītara (or dattara)* : if—go ; if—ought to have gone ; if I had known you were going.

Similar constructions may be formed with the compound inflexions, such as, *yonde iru no desu* ; *yonde ita no desu* ; etc.

In the case of negative verbs, the negative element may be either in the first component or in the second ; e.g. *ika-nai no desu* or *iku'no ja arimasen*, etc.

### 87. Examples :

*Otōto wa ashita Tōkyō e iku no desu* ; my (younger) brother is going to Tōkyō tomorrow ; my (younger) brother has to go to Tōkyō tomorrow.



*Kinō ame ga fura-nakereba iku no de gozaimashita* ; I would have gone yesterday, if it had not rained.

*Kimi ga iku nara boku mo itta no darō* ; if you had gone, I would probably have gone also.

*Watashi mo asūko e itta no deshita ga samui kara sugu kaetta no desū* ; I also went there, but as it was cold I soon came back.

*Kane sae areba watashi mo itta no desū* ; if I had only had money, I also would have gone.

*Ani to issho ni iku no deshita ga, kaze wo hiita no de, yameta no desū* ; I ought to have gone with my brother, but as I caught a cold I had to give up the idea.

*O kyaku no kuru no ga wakatte iru no deshita, ika-nakatta no deshō* ; if he had known that a visitor was coming, he probably would not have gone.

*Anata ga uchi e kuru no deshita, watashi wa mise e iku no ja arimasen deshita* ; if I had known you were coming to my house, I wouldn't have gone to the office.

**88.** Women often say *no* elliptically for *no desū*, *no desū ka* ? etc.

*Kippu wa aru no* ? have you got your ticket ?

*E, aru no* ; yes, I have.

**89.** On the other hand the *no* is sometimes corrupted into *n'* or even dropped altogether :

*Tōkyō e iku n' desū* ; I am going to Tōkyō.

*Soko kara mo ikeru desū* ; you can also go from there.

**90.** Verbs may sometimes, like nouns, take a postposition without the words *no*, *koto* or *mono* intervening :

*Motte kuru ga ii* ; you had better bring it.

**91.** Observe the constructions of which the following are examples :

*Hau dokoro ja nai, yoku arukimasū* or *hau no hawwa-nai no 'tte, yoku arukimasū* ; it is no case of creeping, I can tell you ; why, he walks beautifully !

*Okotta no okora-nai no ja nai, ō-okori ni okotta* ; he didn't simply get angry, he got into a towering rage.

#### IRREGULAR VERBS.

**92.** The verbs *suru*, *kuru* and *iku* form their bases irregularly as shown in **28** ; but the common inflexions of these verbs are formed regularly from the bases. However, the passive infinitives of *suru* and *kuru* are *sare'ru* and *korare'ru*, and the causative infinitives *sase'ru* and *kosase'ru* respectively. See Vocabulary, Part III : *suru* ; *kuru* ; *iku*.

**93.** The verb *aru* 'to be, to have', is especially noticeable on account of its negative forms.

AFFIRMATIVE		NEGATIVE
<i>aru</i>	<b>Infinitive</b>	<i>nai</i>
<i>aru</i> <i>arimasu</i>	<b>Present</b>	<i>nai</i> <i>arimasen</i>
<i>arō</i> <i>arimashō</i> <i>aru deshō</i>	<b>Prob. present and future</b>	<i>arumai</i> (or <i>nakarō</i> ) <i>arimasūmai</i> <i>nai deshō</i>
<i>atta</i> <i>arimashita</i>	<b>Past</b>	<i>nakatta</i> <i>arimasen deshita</i>
<i>attarō</i> <i>atta deshō</i>	<b>Prob. past</b>	<i>nakattarō</i> <i>nakatta deshō</i>
<i>atte</i> <i>arimashite</i>	<b>Gerund</b>	<i>nakūte</i> <i>nai de</i>
<i>areba</i>	<b>Cond. present</b>	<i>nakereba</i>
<i>attara</i>	<b>Cond. past</b>	<i>nakattara</i>
<i>attari</i>	<b>Frequentative</b>	<i>nakattari</i>

There are no desiderative forms.

94. The verb *aru* is frequently preceded by the postposition *de*; it is then generally contracted as follows :\*

AFFIRMATIVE		NEGATIVE
<i>de aru</i>	<b>Infinitive</b>	<i>de wa nai</i>
<i>de aru</i> = <i>da</i> <i>de arimasu</i> = <i>desu</i>	<b>Present</b>	<i>de wa nai</i> <i>de wa arimasen</i>
<i>de arō</i> = <i>darō</i> <i>de arimashō</i> = <i>deshō</i>	<b>Prob. present and future</b>	<i>de wa arumai</i> (or <i>nakarō</i> ) <i>de wa arimasūmai</i> <i>de wa nai deshō</i>
<i>de atta</i> = <i>datta</i> <i>de arimashita</i> = <i>deshita</i>	<b>Past</b> ●	<i>de wa nakatta</i> <i>de wa arimasen deshita</i>
<i>de attarō</i> = <i>dattarō</i>	<b>Prob. past</b>	<i>de wa nakattarō</i> <i>de wa nakatta deshō</i>
<i>de atte</i> = <i>de</i> ( <i>nara</i> )	<b>Gerund</b>	<i>de (wa) nakūte</i> <i>de (wa) naku</i>
<i>de attara</i> = <i>dattara</i>	<b>Cond. present</b> <b>Cond. past</b>	<i>de nakereba</i> <i>de nakattara</i>

\**De* followed by *aru* cannot always be contracted to *da*; e.g. *Tōkyō de aru hi hige no aru kuruma-ya ni aimashita*, one day in Tōkyō I saw a rikisha-man with a beard; *Tarō to Haruo ga kyōdai de aru koto wa shira-nakatta*, I didn't know that Tarō and Haruo were brothers.



95. It will be noticed that in the negative, *de* is generally followed by *wa* : *de wa* is often contracted to *ja*.

96. The polite verbs *gozaru*, *ossharu*, *nasaru*, *kudasaru*, and *irassharu* drop the letter *r* of their last syllable when the suffix *masū* is used, as it generally is : the verb *gozaru*, indeed, is practically never heard except in the *masū* inflexions. The last three verbs have as imperative *nasai*, *kudasai*, and *irasshai* ; they often drop the letter *a* before *tt* ; thus : *irash'te* for *irasshatte*, *nas'ttara* for *nasattara*. Note that in this case *irassharu* also drops one of its *ss*.

97. Causative verbs end in *-se'ru* : their 3rd base is irregular, viz. *-shīt* ; but the regular form *-set* is also sometimes used.

#### AUXILIARY AND TERMINAL VERBS.

98. The verb *i'ru* (or *oru*) following the gerund serves to form inflexions that indicate a state or a continued act. The verb *i'ru* is generally preferred in the centre of Japan, but in the provinces, *oru* is often heard. Instead of *i'ru*, the honorific verb *irassharu* or *o-ide nasaru* may be used.

*Kutabirete iru* ; I am tired.

*Naite iru* ; he is crying.

*Hon wo yonde irasshaimasū* ; he is reading a book.

The *i* of *i'ru* is often dropped colloquially after a gerund, thus : *naiteru* for *naite iru*.

The gerund of an intransitive verb followed by *i'ru* (or *oru*) is generally translated into English by means of the past participle or an adjective, sometimes however by the present participle, but in either case the English must express the idea that the subject has *reached* a certain state and *continues* in that state. 'To be moving' means that the subject has *reached* the state of motion and continues in that state, it is therefore the correct translation of *ugoite i'ru* ; but 'to be dying' means that the subject is *approaching* death, and therefore is not the translation of *shinde i'ru*, the proper translation is 'to be dead'. Likewise, 'to be lying down' means that the subject has *attained* the horizontal position and continues in that position, it is therefore the correct translation of *nete i'ru* ; but 'to be drying' means to be *approaching* the state of dryness, and therefore is not the translation of *kawaite i'ru*, the proper translation is 'to be dry'.

*Amerika e itta* and *Amerika e itte iru* both mean 'he went to America', but the second form implies that he is still there, the first form gives no information on that point.

99. It is interesting to note that a verbal phrase like *yonde iru* may mean not only 'is reading' but 'has read'.

*Ano hito wa sei'yō no shōsetsū wo takusan yonde iru* ; that man has read a great number of foreign novels.

*Ano o jii-san wa hige wo sotte iru* ; that old man has shaved off his beard.

**100.** The verb *aru* (or *gozaru*) following the gerund of a transitive verb means that the action of the verb was completed and that things remain in that state ; it can generally be translated by the passive in English.

*Furoshiki ni tsutsunde arimasu* ; it is wrapped up in a cloth.

Note also the construction of the polite gerund of an intransitive verb followed by *gozaru* : *naorimashite gozaimasu* is a very polite equivalent of *naotta* I have recovered.

**101.** When two verbs, one intransitive and the other transitive, have corresponding meanings (see **111**), the gerund of the intransitive verb followed by *iru* (or *oru*), and the gerund of the transitive verb followed by *aru* have almost identical meanings. Thus : *rampu ga kiete iru* and *rampu wo keshite aru* both mean 'the lamp is out (not lighted)'. However, *rampu ga kiete iru* may be said either when the lamp has gone out naturally (e.g. want of oil) or when it has been intentionally put out by somebody ; whereas *rampu wo keshite aru* is said only when the lamp has been put out.

**102.** *Darō* (or *deshō*) following the present tense, makes it into a probable present ; following the past tense, it makes it into a probable past. It may also have a quasi-interrogative force. See **40** ; **41** ; **54** ; **55**.

**103.** The verb *kuru*, (*irassharu*, *o-ide nasaru* or *mairu*) following the gerund, adds to the first verb the idea of motion towards the speaker or person addressed ; it is, however, often translated by 'go' in English :

*Kippu wo katte kimashō* ; I will go and buy a ticket ; (lit. I will buy a ticket and come).

The complex action of buying may be said to consist of three parts : the going, the buying, the coming back. In English you mention the first two ; in Japanese, the second and third.

Occasionally the verb *kuru* which is the second of the two verbs ought logically to be the first :

*Omoshiroi koto wo itte kita* ; he came and told me a funny story.

Besides this meaning of motion towards the place where one is speaking, *kuru* after a gerund often means 'coming into being or into existence' :

*Ame ga futte kita* ; it has begun to rain.

**104.** The verb *mi-ru* (or *goran nasaru*) following a gerund, means that an action is to be attempted ; there is a doubt as to whether the action can be accomplished or whether the result will be satisfactory :

*Mado wo akete mimashō* may mean, 'I will try to open the window (which has stuck)' or 'I will open the window and we will see whether it is more agreeable so'.

**105.** The verb *oku* following a gerund indicates the full and complete settling of a matter for the time being with a view to its future use ; it is used generally



with transitive verbs : the gerund and *oku* are sometimes contracted colloquially as explained, 14, 2, c.

*Chōmen ni tsūkeite okimashō* ; I will put it down in my note-book.

106. The verb *shimau* following a gerund indicates the completion of an action, or is merely emphatic :

*Itte shimaimashita* ; he has gone away (and will not come back).

*Tōtō byōki ni natte shimaimashita* ; 'at last he finished by falling ill', or 'at last he fell ill', not 'at last he has finished being ill'.

The last syllable of the gerund and the first two syllables of *shimau* are often contracted colloquially as explained, 14, 2, f.

107. The verb *suru* (or *itasū*) following the stem of a verb and *wa*, is merely an emphatic form of expression. See 47—49.

The verbs *naosū*, *dasū*, *kakaru*, *kake'ru* and *hanasū* after the stems of verbs have special meanings which are explained in 151.

108. The verb *morau* (or *itadaku*) following a gerund, adds the idea of 'receiving in answer to a request', and forms an idiom resembling the passive or the causative :

*Shimbun wo yonde morau* ; to have the newspaper read to one.

*Asa hayaku okoshite moraitai* ; I wish to be called early in the morning.

*Tokei wo sōji shite moraitai* ; I want to have my watch cleaned.

*Anata ni kaite itadakitai* ; I wish you would write this for me.

109. The verb *yarū*, (*age'ru*, *kure'ru* or *kudasaru*\*) following a gerund adds the idea of 'giving'. The choice of the verb will depend on the considerations governing the use of honorific and humble verbs. If the giving is the act of the 1st person to an inferior, use *yarū* ; to a superior, use *age'ru* ; if the giving is in favour of the 1st person or somebody connected with the 1st person, use *kure'ru* if the act of an inferior, *kudasaru* if the act of a superior.

*Butte yarimashō* ; I will give him a beating.

*Yonde agemashō ka* ? shall I read it to you ?

*Yonde kudasaimashita* ; he read it to me.

110. Terminal verbs sometimes retain their ordinary meanings instead of the special meanings mentioned in the above paragraphs.

*Kinō Tarō no gakkō e itte mimashita* ; yesterday I went and saw Tarō's school.

It thus happens that sentences of this kind may have more than one meaning : *katte itadaita* may mean, (a) he bought it and gave it to me, or (b) he bought it for me (as I was busy and could not go out) ; in this latter case, the favour received is not the thing itself (for which I pay) but the act of going and buying it.

You may sometimes find two terminal verbs used, the one affecting the other : *naoshite agete okimashō* I shall mend it for him (and leave that settled).

---

\**Kudasaru* is also used after the stem of a verb ; see 362.

## TRANSITIVE AND INTRANSITIVE VERBS.

111. In English the same verb is often transitive or intransitive according to circumstances ; in Japanese there are generally two different verbs with a common root ; e.g. *kaesû* (trans.) and *kaeru* (intrans.), to return.\*

*Ashita hon wo kaeshimasû* ; I will return the book tomorrow.

*Kesa kaerimashita* ; I returned this morning.

112. The gerund of the intransitive verb followed by *i'ru* has a meaning very similar to the gerund of the corresponding transitive verb followed by *aru* ; see 101.

113. Many intransitive verbs are used as potentials : especially those in which the final *u* of the transitive is replaced by *e'ru* in the intransitive. See 127.

*Kono empitsû wa yoku kakemasû* ; 'this pencil writes well', or 'you can write well with this pencil'.

*Nihon-ji ga kakemasen* ; I cannot write Japanese characters.

114. Many intransitive verbs are inchoative, i.e. they mark the beginning of a condition. Some of these are frequently translated by a quasi-passive but their primary meaning should not be lost sight of. Thus :

*Kawaku* is not properly 'to be dry', but 'to get dry'. 'To be dry' is expressed by *kawaite i'ru*.

*Kutabire'ru* is not properly 'to be tired', but 'to become tired'. 'To be tired' is expressed by *kutabirete i'ru*.

115. These verbs are often used in the past in Japanese when we, in English, employ the present ; *kawakimashita* it is dry ; *kutabiremashita* I am tired.

116. Transitive verbs sometimes have a quasi-causative meaning : *kawakasu* 'to dry' i.e. 'to cause to dry in the sun or before the fire, etc.' See 143—144.

117. Though it may seem paradoxical, some intransitive verbs take an object with the postposition *wo*. This complement with *wo* designates the locality at which or from which the action takes place. *Watasû* means 'to take (something) across' and is therefore transitive ; *wataru* means 'to go across oneself' and is therefore intransitive ; *kawa wo wataru* means 'to go across the river' or 'to cross the river'. Likewise : *kisha wo ori'ru*, to get down from a train.

118. Some Japanese intransitive verbs correspond to English reflexives : *asobu* to amuse oneself, (to play) ; *hataraku* to exert oneself, (to work).

---

\*The Vocabulary at the end of this book gives the transitive verb corresponding to an intransitive one and vice versa.



## PASSIVE VERBS.

**119.** The passive voice is formed by adding *re'ru* to the 4th base. In verbs ending in *e'ru* or *i'ru*, add *rare'ru* to the 4th base. E.g.: *korosū* to kill, 4th base *korosa*, *korosare'ru* to be killed; *tabe'ru* to eat, 4th base *tabe*, *taberare'ru* to be eaten.

**120.** The verbs *suru*, *kuru* and *oshie'ru* form the passive irregularly; thus: *sare'ru*, *korare'ru* and *osowaru*.

**121.** The passives of compound verbs and of such combinations as *motte kuru* to bring, are formed by changing only the last component. Thus: *motte korare'ru* to be brought.

**122.** The noun, which in English takes the preposition 'by' in the passive construction, is generally followed in the Japanese passive by the postposition *ni*.

**123.** It often happens that the English passive is not translated by the passive in Japanese; it is sometimes translated:

1) by an intransitive or potential verb: *odoroita*, I was astonished; *nezumi ga toreta*, a mouse is caught (in the trap).\*

2) by a transitive verb followed by *mono (desū)* or *no (desū)*: *Kore wa kogatana de kitta no (desū) ka?* *hasami de kitta no (desū) ka?* was this cut with a knife, or with scissors?

3) by an active though subjectless construction: *Risūke to iu hito*; a man called Risuke, (lit. a man they call Risuke). *Mado kara kao wo dasa-nai yō ni negaimasū*; you are requested not to put your head out of the window. *Kono kutsu wo naoshi ni yarimashō*; I'll send these boots to be mended.

4) by the gerund of an active verb followed by *aru*: *Kaite aru*; it is written.

5) by the gerund of an active verb followed by *morau*: *Hayaku okoshite moraitai*; I wish to be called early.

6) by the gerund of an intransitive verb followed by *i'ru* (or *oru*): *To ga shimatte i'ru*; the door is shut.

7) by a noun followed by *ni naru*: *O sewa ni naru*; to be assisted.

8) by the verb *deki'ru*; to be finished, made: *Asūko de setomono ga dekiru*; porcelain is manufactured there.

Note also the following examples:

*Kega suru*; to be wounded.

*Kono ji wa—to yomasemasū*; this character is read thus—(lit. we are caused or taught to read this character thus—).

All the above examples serve to prove that the English passive is often

---

\*You can also say: *nezumi ga neko ni torareta*, a mouse was caught by the cat. The intransitive construction is used when there is no reference to an outside agent, (the mouse caught itself in the trap); the passive construction, when an outside agent is referred to:

translated into Japanese by other constructions than the passive. On the other hand the Japanese often use the passive where the active would be more natural in English.

*Sō suru to o kâ-san ni shikarareru* ; if you do that your mother will scold you.

**124.** The Japanese passive construction differs considerably from the English. In English, the subject of the passive verb is the object of the transitive verb ; in Japanese, the subject of the passive verb is the person affected by the action of the verb. Thus, 'a thief stole my father's watch' becomes in the English passive construction 'my father's watch was stolen by a thief'; in Japanese we would have 'my father got his watch stolen by a thief' *chichi ga dorobô ni tokei wo nusumareta*. From this peculiarity of the Japanese construction it follows that (as in the above example) the passive verb may govern an objective case ; it also follows that intransitive verbs may be used in the passive. 'To die' is an intransitive verb and utterly incapable of being used in the passive in English : however, the dying of one person may affect another, and therefore we may have the passive construction in Japanese, *watakushi wa kyonen kanai ni shinaremashta* ; I lost my wife last year.

**125.** Besides this sense, the Japanese passive has often a potential meaning ; see **126**.

#### POTENTIAL VERBS.

**126.** The Japanese passive is often used in a potential sense. Thus *okare'ru* may mean either 'to be put' or 'to be able to put'.

**127.** Many verbs (not those ending in *e'ru*) have also another potential formed by changing the final *u* into *e'ru*.\* This potential is always intransitive and is often identical with the ordinary intransitive verb (**111**), as in the following common cases :

*kake'ru* 'to write (intr.)' or 'to be able to write'.

*kire'ru* 'to cut (intr.)' or 'to be able to cut'.

*toke'ru* 'to melt (intr.)' or 'to be able to melt'.

*tore'ru* 'to take (intr.)' or 'to be able to take'.

*ure'ru* 'to sell (intr.)' or 'to be able to sell'.

*yome'ru* 'to read (intr.)' or 'to be able to read'.

**128.** Thus, *kinu ga yoku uremasu* may be translated by the intransitive, 'silk sells well'; or by the potential, 'you can sell a lot of silk'; it may also be translated by the passive, 'a lot of silk is sold'. All three translations are not always possible in English, sometimes one, sometimes another will suit the case ; but do not forget that verbs of this kind are intransitive in Japanese.

\*Verbs ending in *-tsu*, change *tsu* into *te'ru*.



**129.** When the English potential has an objective case, this generally becomes the subject with *ga* (or *wa*) of the Japanese verb.

*Ei-go ga yomemasu* ; I can read English.

The English subject sometimes takes *ni*.

*Watashi ni wa Ei-go ga yomemasen* ; I can't read English.

**130.** The potential may also be expressed by adding *koto ga deki'ru* to the infinitive.\*

**131.** We thus see that *kake'ru*, *kakare'ru* and *kaku koto ga deki'ru* may all be used as the potential of *kaku*. There seems to be a slight tendency to prefer the intransitive potential in the sense of 'can', and the passive potential in the sense of 'may'. On the whole, the intransitive potential is decidedly the most used.

**132.** The verbs *mi'ru* to see, and *kiku* to hear, form the intransitive potential irregularly, viz. *mie'ru* and *kikoe'ru*.

**133.** *Deki'ru* by itself often has the meaning of 'can do (something)'.

*Kore ga dekimasu ka* ? can you do this ?

*Ei-go ga dekimasu* ; I can speak English.

*Dekiru koto nara* ; if it is anything I can do ; (when asked : will you do me a favour ?)

**134.** The word *totemo* is frequently placed before the negative potential in order to emphasize it.

*Totemo kore hodo wa kake-nai* ; I cannot possibly write all this.

**135.** The negative potential when used in a moral and not in a physical sense is sometimes translated by *wake ni wa ika-nai* (or *mairimasen*) :

*Isogashii kara sō hayaku iku wake ni wa ika-nai* ; as I am busy I cannot possibly go so soon.

**136.** The following emphatic construction is interesting :

*Yomeru ni wa yomeru ga...* ; I can read it but...(it is extremely difficult).

Other ways of translating the idea of moral ability or inability, 'may' and 'must not', will be found in **168** and **169**.

#### CAUSATIVE VERBS.

**137.** Causative verbs are formed by adding *se'ru* to the 4th base ; in verbs ending in *e'ru* or *i'ru* add *sase'ru* to the 4th base : *yomu* to read, 4th base *yoma*, *yomase'ru* to cause to read ; *tabe'ru* to eat, 4th base *tabe*, *tabesase'ru* to cause to eat, i.e. to feed.

**138.** Causative verbs generally form their 3rd base irregularly as mentioned in **97**.

---

\*This construction seems to be less used by the Japanese themselves than by foreigners who are beginning to speak a little Japanese.

**139.** The verbs *kuru*, *suru* and *mi'ru* form their causatives irregularly, thus : *kosase'ru*, *sase'ru* and *mise'ru* (3rd base regular, *miset*).

**140.** Some causatives may be translated by special verbs in English.

*mi'ru* to see ; *mise'ru* to cause to see, i.e. to show.

*kiku* to hear ; *kikase'ru* to cause to hear, i.e. to tell.

*shiru* to know ; *shirase'ru* to cause to know, i.e. to inform.

*tabe'ru* to eat ; *tabesase'ru* to cause to eat, i.e. to feed.

**141.** The fundamental idea of the causative is that the action is done by one person (or thing), but another person decides whether the action is to be done or not. The causative may have two meanings : (a) to cause to do ; and (b) to allow something to be done : the latter meaning is especially common in the negative imperative. The causative may generally be translated by make, let, have, get or tell.

*Sūkoshi matashite o oki nasai* ; make him wait a moment.

*Kondo Haru ni nuxase nasai* ; let Haru sew it next time.

*Watakushi no hon wo kodomo ni ijirasete wa ike-nai* ; don't let the child meddle with my books.

*Hitotsū koshiraesashite* ; have one made.

*Kono hako wa doko de koshiraesasemashita ka* ? where did you get this box made ?

*Shige ni kakase nasai* ; tell Shige to write it.

**142.** The causative is sometimes used in Japanese, when the causation is purely imaginary.

*Ashita furasetaku nai* ; I hope it will not rain tomorrow, (lit. I do not wish to make it rain tomorrow).

*Kane ga nai no de naoru byō-nin wo naosa-nai de shinashite shimatta* ; he had to let the patient die because he had no money to buy the proper remedies, (*shinase'ru* to cause to die).

*Sentaku wo sumasete uchi e kaerimashita* ; she finished her washing and returned home.

**143.** Sometimes when the idea logically corresponds to a causative, an ordinary transitive verb is used : the action of the subordinate is attributed to the principal agent, or an action which is merely allowed to happen is considered as having been positively performed.

*Uchi wo tate'ru* ; to build a house ; meaning 'to have a house built'.

*Hige wo suru* ; to shave one's beard ; meaning 'to get one's beard shaved'.

*Inu wo dashite o kure* ; put the dog out ; meaning 'let the dog go out'.

*Neko wo mono-oki ni irete o kure* ; put the cat in the pantry ; meaning 'let the cat get into the pantry'.

*Hi wo kesa-nai de o kure* ; don't put the fire out ; meaning 'don't let the fire go out'.



144. Some transitive verbs have a quasi-causative meaning. Thus, *kire wo kawakasū*, 'to dry a cloth' really means, 'to cause the sun, (fire or wind, etc.) to dry the cloth'.

145. In the case of the causative of a transitive verb, the person to do the action takes the postposition *ni*, the object upon which the action is performed takes *wo*. *Mon wo daiku ni naosasemashō* ; I will have the carpenter mend the gate.

In the case of an intransitive verb, the person who performs the action takes the postposition *wo*. *O kō-san wo nakasemashita* ; he made his mother cry.

146. The idea of the causative is sometimes rendered politely by the gerund followed by *morau* :

*Tokei wo naoshite moraitai* ; I want to get my watch mended.

147. From the causative is formed the passive of the causative, rarely met with. There is no causative of the passive.

148. The causatives of compound verbs and of such combinations as *motte kuru* to bring, are formed by changing only the last component : *motte kosase'ru*, to cause to bring.

#### REFLEXIVE VERBS.

149. There are no reflexive verbs in Japanese. English reflexives are translated :

- 1) sometimes by intransitives : *asobu*, to amuse oneself, (to play).
- 2) sometimes by compounds with *suru* : *shitaku suru*, to prepare oneself, (to get ready).
- 3) sometimes, when there is a clear action of the agent on himself, by a transitive verb : *hige wo suru*, to shave oneself ; *mi wo nage'ru*, to drown oneself.

150. When it is desired to lay stress on the 'self', the Japanese add *hitori de* or *jibun de* :

*Kodomo ga hitori de asonde iru* ; the child is amusing himself, (i.e. playing alone).

*Jibun de hige wo surimasū* ; he shaves himself, (i.e. not shaved by another).

#### COMPOUND AND DERIVATIVE VERBS.

151. A very large group of compound verbs is formed by adding one verb to the stem of another. They correspond sometimes to English prepositional verbs, or serve to express a more or less complex idea. The meaning of these verbs is generally easily understood, if the meanings of the components are known.

*tobi-agaru*, to jump up, (lit. jump-ascend).

*tobi-dasū*, to jump out, (lit. jump-put out).

*tobi-komu*, to jump in, (lit. jump-enter).

*mi-otosû*, to overlook, (lit. look-drop).

*buchi-korosû*, to beat to death, (lit. beat-kill).

*shi-naosû*, to do over again, (lit. do-mend).

**152.** Some verbs when used thus in compounds after the stem of a verb have special meanings worth while noticing :

*Dasû* means to take out or refers to the beginning of an action : *tobi-dasû* to jump out ; *furi-dasû*, to start raining.

*Hanasû* suffers certain euphonic changes and becomes *-ppanasû* ; it denotes that something has been left in a certain state : *akeppanasû*, to leave open ; *dashippnasû*, to take a thing out and leave it out.

*Kakaru* shows that an action is about to commence or else that it is accidental : *kare-kakaru*, to begin to wither ; *tôri-kakaru*, to happen to pass.

*Kake'ru* signifies the beginning of an action : *hanashi-kake'ru* to address, accost ; *yomi-kake'ru*, to begin to read.

*Naosû* means to do over again by way of bettering or correcting : *kaki-naosû* to write over again ; *kangae-naosû*, to change one's mind.

**153.** Compound verbs are also formed by a noun and a verb ; e.g. : *koshi-kake'ru*, to sit, (lit. loins, hang).

Instead of a noun we may have the stem of an adjective, which is often used as a noun, and a verb ; e.g. : *ama-sugî'ru*, to be too sweet, (*amai* sweet, *sugî'ru* to exceed).

**154.** The termination *garu* added to the stem of adjectives (or the desiderative form of verbs) or occasionally to nouns, forms a considerable number of verbs :

*kawaigaru* to pet, from *kawaii* charming.

*ikitagaru* to want to go, from *ikitai* wishing to go.

*kinodokugaru* to feel sorry for, from *kinodoku* sorrow.

**155.** The compounds of *suru* are explained in the next paragraph.

#### THE VERBS *Suru* AND *Naru*.

**156.** The verb *suru* occurs very frequently in Japanese. The primary meaning of *suru* is 'to do' 'to make' ; it governs the accusative case with the postposition *wo* :

*Shitaku wo suru* ; to make preparations.

*Jama wo suru* ; to make obstruction, i.e. to be in the way.

**157.** This accusative may be modified by an adjective or by a clause.

*Anata no jama wo suru* ; to be in your way.

**158.** The postposition *wo* is very frequently omitted, and *suru* then becomes hardly more than a suffix serving to verbalize the noun. The combination



thus formed may be transitive (with an accusative and *wo*), intransitive or passive.

*Jochū wo sewa suru* ; to procure a servant (for another).

*Shitsūrei suru* ; to be impolite.

*Kega suru* ; to be wounded.

**159.** Instead of a noun before *suru*, we may have the second base of a verb (which often acts as a noun), or an adverb.

*Nui wo suru* ; to embroider.

*Bikkuri suru* ; to be astonished.

**160.** Compounds of *suru*, whether written in one word or two,\* are conjugated like *suru*. However, not all verbs that end in *suru* are compounds of *suru* ; thus : *sassuru* is a compound of *suru* and makes *sasshimasū*, etc.; *kosuru* is not a compound of *suru* and makes *kosurimasū*, etc.

The final *ru* of *suru* is sometimes dropped in compounds ; thus : *nakusuru* or *nakusū* to lose, *yakusuru* or *yakusū* to translate.

**161.** Sometimes *suru* when used independently resembles *aru* in construction and meaning ; it takes *ga* instead of *wo*, and means 'to be' or 'to have' :

*Nioi ga suru* ; there is a smell.

*Zutsū ga suru* ; I have a headache.

**162.** A very common construction is the following. The second base of a verb, *wa*, and the verb *suru*. See **47—49**. For other uses of *suru*, see the Vocabulary, Part III.

**163.** The humble verb *itasū* may be substituted for *suru* in practically all cases in which *suru* is written as a separate word ; the corresponding honorific verb is *nasaru*.\*

**164.** *Naru* 'to become' may be considered the type of an inchoative verb (**114**). It is generally used after an adverb or an adverbial construction, and some of the combinations deserve special attention. Note in particular its use after the desiderative verbal adjective and after the negative verbal adjective. The past tense of *naru* may be translated into English by either the past or the present ; the context will indicate which is to be used.

*Atsūku natta* ; (after being cold) it turned out hot (yesterday) ; it has turned out hot (today) ; it is hot now.

*Atsūku naru deshō* ; I expect it will turn out hot.

*Ikutaku natta* ; I now wish to go (formerly I didn't care about going).

*Sono koto ga deki-naku natta* ; it is now impossible.

The use of *nara-nai* after the negative conditional has already been mentioned (**72**) ; for other uses of *naru* see the Vocabulary, Part III.

---

\*It is usual to attach *suru* to the preceding word when this consists of only one Chinese character ; as *jikusuru*, *nakusuru*. In this case *suru* cannot be replaced by the polite verb *nasaru* or the humble verb *itasū*.

## THE VERB 'TO BE'.

**165.** The verb 'to be' is translated in various ways :

1) When a noun is predicate, 'to be' is translated by *de aru*, etc., the contractions *da*, *desū*, etc. (94), or the more polite *de gozaimasū*, etc.

It was a lie ; *uso deshita*.

What is this ? *kore wa nan da ?*

2) *Aru* means properly 'there is', etc.; it is always used when referring to inanimate objects, it is also used when the simple existence of a living being is spoken of, or when we wish to pick out from a group one or more individuals who possess a certain quality.

Is there any bread ? *pan ga arimasū ka ?*

There are some cats without tails ; *shippo no nai neko ga aru*.

There are two carpenters among these men ; *kono uchi ni daiku ga fūtari aru*.

When *aru* is used attributively, it still has this meaning of 'there is', or 'there was'; it can often be translated by 'a certain': *aru hito*, a certain man, (there was a man) ; *aru hi*, a certain day, one day, (there was a day).

3) *Gozaru* takes the place of *aru* in polite speech ; it is not used attributively in the sense of 'a certain'.

4) *Iru* (less commonly *oru*) is used when speaking of animate beings that are present in a place ; they are generally conceived, at least vaguely, as having gone or come there.\*

There are many flies in Yokohama ; *Yokohama ni hai ga takusan imasū*.

5) The verb 'to be' followed by the participle signifies a continued act or state, it is translated by the gerund followed by *iru* (or *oru*). See 35.

6) *Irassharu* and *o-ide nasaru* are polite substitutes for *iru*.

7) The translation of the passive 'to be' is shown in 98-101 ; 119-124 ; 128.

8) When the Japanese predicate is a true adjective (191), the verb 'to be' need not be translated.

That flower is red ; *ano hana wa akai*.

9) *Suru* though properly 'to do' has sometimes the meaning of 'to be'. (See 161).

10) Occasionally 'to be' has a meaning of 'to become' and is translated by *naru* :

I don't think it will be much of a fire ; *ōki na kaji ni wa nara-nai deshō*.

I am going to be a doctor ; *isha ni naru tsumori desū*.

\*Things like a rikisha, a carriage, a train, a ship, the sun, the moon, etc. that appear to have proper motion, are often treated like living beings and are construed with the verb *iru* instead of *aru*.

The other rikisha is a long way behind ; *mō ichi-dai no kuruma wa zutto ato ni imasū*.

The moon is behind the pine-tree ; *tsūki ga matsu no kage ni iru*.



11) 'Isn't?' expecting 'yes' for an answer, is often translated by *de wa arimasen ka?* placed at the end of the sentence:

Isn't the doctor ill? *o isha san wa byōki ja arimasen ka?*

#### MISCELLANEOUS TRANSLATIONS.

**166. Doubt, probability, possibility, 'perhaps', supposition, opinion, semblance, report.**

1) Bare possibility with practical certainty of the contrary:

There may be a house to let in Kamakura (but I feel nearly certain there isn't); *Kamakura ni kashi-ya ga nai to mo ie-nai keredo*; (lit. I can't say there is not a house to let in Kamakura, nevertheless...).

2) Probability, etc. beginning with the least probable:

a) The first form of the present followed by *ka shira* (less commonly *ka shiran*):

I wonder whether it will rain; *ame ga furu ka shira*.

b) The negative followed by *mono de mo nai*:

It may rain; *ame ga furumai mono de mo nai*.

I don't think (but it's possible) he will refuse to show it to you if you tell him the reason; *wake wo hanashitara misete kudasara-nai mono de mo arimasūmai*.

c) *Ka mo shire-nai* or *no ka mo shire-nai* at the end of a sentence:

I dare say it will rain; *ame ga furu ka mo shire-nai*.

I dare say there has been an accident; *nani ka atta no ka mo shiremasen*.

d) *Tabun* at the beginning of the sentence and the verb in the probable present or past; *tabun* may be omitted:

Probably it will rain; (*tabun*) *ame ga furu deshō*.

e) The first form of the present followed by *to omou*:

I think it will rain; *ame ga furu to omou*.

f) *Kitto* placed at the beginning of the sentence and the verb in the future:  
It is sure to rain; *kitto ame ga furu deshō*.

3) Semblance, appearance.

a) Verb or adjective and *yō da*:

It looks like rain; *ame ga furu yō da*.

It seems to be raining; *ame ga futte iru yō da*.

These mats seem to be dirty; *kono tatami wa kitanai yō da*.

b) Quasi-adjective in *na* followed by *yō da*:

That seems to be a pretty house; *ano uchi wa kirei na yō da*.

c) Noun followed by *no yō da*:

He looks like a thief; *are wa dorobō no yō da*.

d) Adjective stem and *-sō da* :

These mats seem to be dirty ; *kono tatami wa kitana-sō desū*.

e) Stem of the verb followed by *-sō da* :

It looks like rain ; *ame ga furi-sō desū*.

f) The termination *-rashii* ; see Part III :

It seems to be finished ; *dekita-rashii*.

g) *To mie'ru* or *mitai* at the end of the sentence :

It seems to be finished ; *dekita to mieru*.

That man looks like a foreigner ; *ano hito wa seiyō-jin mitai da*.

h) Adverbial form of an adjective followed by *mie'ru* :

This spoon looks dirty ; *kono saji wa kitanaku mieru*.

4) Report, hearsay, 'they say' etc. may be expressed by :

a) *Sō da*, *sō desū* or *sō de gozaimasū* added to a verb, adjective, or quasi-adjective in *na*.

They say the mats are dirty ; *tatami ga kitanai sō desū*.

They say the mats are clean ; *tatami ga kirei da sō desū*, or *tatami ga kirei na sō desū*.

b) *To iu hanashi da* added to a verb or true adjective :

They say he is ill ; *ano hito wa byōki da to iu hanashi da*.

c) *'tte* (in this case equivalent to *to iimasū* or to *iimashita*) added to a verb or true adjective :

They say it is cheap ; *sore wa yasui 'tte*

5) Probability founded on some special reason :

a) Verb followed by *hazu da* :

He ought to be here directly now (because he said he was coming by the 5 o'clock train) ; *mō jiki kuru hazu desū*.

b) The stem of the verb followed by *-sō na mono da*.

He ought to be here directly now ; *mō jiki ki-sō na mono da*.

6) The foregoing constructions may all be used in a past sense by changing the present tense into the past ; or the future (i.e. the probable present) into the probable past.

**167. Certainty and emphasis** may be expressed by :

1) Words or phrases like, *kitto*, *tashika ni*, *ni chigai nai*, *mochiron*, *to mo*, *naka-naka*.

2) *Kesshite*, used in connection with a negative verb.

3) *Totemo*, used to emphasise the negative potential, **134**.

4) *Wa* after many words is emphatic ; two of its uses are especially important : (a) after a gerund (**58**, **12**) ; and (b) after a verbal stem (**47—49**).

5) *Koto wa nai* used after verbs and especially after adjectives is often emphatic :

*Takai koto wa nai* ; it is *not* dear.



*Deki-nai koto wa nai* ; I certainly can do it (lit. it is not a fact that I can't do it).

6) The use of the present tense when referring to a future time means certainty :

*Ame ga futte mo ikimasu* ; I shall go even if it rains.

7) *Mon' desu ka ?* is an ironical question which serves to protest emphatically against the absurdity of the sentence after which it comes.

*Tarō wa Ei-go ga wakaru deshō ne* ; I suppose Tarō can understand English. *Wakaru mon' desu ka ?* what an absurd idea ; of course he can't understand it.

### 168. Obligation.

1) Obligation to do something is expressed by :

a) The negative present conditional followed by *ike-nai*, (less often *nara-nai*) ; the verb *ike-nai* (or *nara-nai*) is sometimes omitted in familiar speech :\*

I must go ; *ika-nakereba narimasen*.

b) The first form of the negative present followed by *to* and *ike-nai* (or *nara-nai*) :

You must be careful ; *ki wo tsūke-nai to ike-nai*.

c) The negative gerund in *nakūte* followed by *wa* and *ike-nai* (or *nara-nai*) ; the verb *ike-nai* (or *nara-nai*) is sometimes omitted in familiar speech :

You must study ; *benkyō shi-nakūte wa (ike-nai)*.

d) The first form of the present followed by *no desu*.

You must change trains at Nagoya ; *Nagoya de nori-kaeru no desu*.

e) *Hazu da* at the end of the sentence ; this construction is used generally in the 2nd or 3rd person :

One ought to speak the truth ; *hito wa makoto wo iu hazu da*.

2) Obligation to abstain from doing something is rendered by :

a) The negative imperative :

Don't talk ; *hanashite wa ike-nai*.

b) The first form of the present followed by *to* and *ike-nai* (or *nara-nai*) :  
You mustn't move ; *ugoku to ike-nai*.

3) Obligation to prevent something from happening is translated by :

a) The negative verb, *yō ni*, and the imperative of *suru* :

Don't let the fire go out ; *hi ga kie-nai yō ni shi nasai*.

b) By a causative or quasi-causative construction, 141 et seqq.

Don't let the child meddle with my books ; *watakushi no hon wo kodomo ni iijirashite wa ike-nai* ; (lit. don't cause the child to touch my books).

Don't let the fire go out ; *hi wo kesa-nai de o kure* ; (lit. don't put the fire out).

---

\**Nara-nai* is used in the case of merely pointing out or stating an obligation ; *ike-nai* when the sentence partakes of the nature of a command, a scolding, a threat or a warning that something disagreeable will happen unless a certain act is performed. In a general way, *nara-nai* is commoner in the 1st person and *ike-nai* in the 2nd.

Don't let any dogs get in ; *inu wo irete wa ike-nai* ; (lit. don't introduce any dogs).

4) Negation of an obligation, i.e. the statement that no obligation exists, is translated by the negative gerund in *nakūte* followed by *mo ii* :

You need not go ; *ika-nakūte mo ii*.

#### 169. Permission.

1) Permission to do something is translated by the gerund followed by *mo ii* ; *mo* is sometimes omitted :

You may go ; *itte mo ii*.

2) Permission not to do something, by the negative gerund in *nakūte* followed by *mo ii* :

You need not wait ; *matte i-nakūte mo ii*.

3) To permit something to happen, or not to permit it, is sometimes translated by a causative or quasi-causative construction ; see 141 et seqq. ; 168, 3, b.

4) The indicating of a wish is often equivalent, in Japanese as in English, to asking permission :

*Futsūka no hima wo itadakiō gozaimasū* ; I would like to have two days' leave.

5) Permission is occasionally expressed by the potential ; see 126 et seqq.

#### 170. Advice, preference, judging of two lines of action.

1) Asking for advice is translated by the past conditional and *ii darō* (or *deshō*) :

Which road shall I take ? *dono michi wo ittara ii deshō* ?

Asking about preference may be translated as follows :

*Mizu to o yu to dotchi ga yō gozaimasū ka* ? which do you want, hot or cold water ?

*Hosoi no to fūtoi no to dotchi ga hoshii no desū* ? do you want a thin one or a thick one ?

2) Giving advice :

a) The conditional (or first forms of the present and *to*) followed by *ii* ; or the present or past of the verb or the adjective, and *hō ga ii* ; this savours of a command :

You had better take an umbrella ; *kasa wo motte ikeba ii* ; *kasa wo motte iku to ii* ; *kasa wo motte iku hō ga ii*.

b) *Ja arimasen ka* ? 'isn't that so ?' is sometimes added to the foregoing constructions :

It would be better to take an umbrella, wouldn't it ? *kasa wo motte iku hō ga ii ja arimasen ka* ?

c) Advice may be given politely by adding *deshō* to the constructions given under (a) :



Perhaps it would be better to take an umbrella ; *kasa wo motte iku hō ga ii deshō*.

d) In the above cases we have always had the idea of 'better'; other adjectives have similar constructions :

Perhaps it would be shorter to go straight on ; *massugu no hō ga chikai deshō*.

e) Advice disguised as a polite suggestion may be given by the past conditional followed by *ikaga desū ka?* or *dō desū ka?*

Would you care to take an umbrella ? *kasa wo motte ittara ikaga desū ka?*

3) Approval of past line of conduct is expressed by the gerund followed by *yokatta* :

It was a good thing you took an umbrella ; *kasa wo motte itte yokatta*.

It was a good thing you didn't take an umbrella ; *kasa wo motte ika-nai de yokatta*.

4) Disapproval of past line of conduct is rendered, besides other possible ways, by any of the following combinations, which are often but not always used elliptically :

The present, <i>hō ga</i>	}	and	{	<i>yokatta (no ni)</i>
The present conditional				<i>yokatta darō (ni)</i>
The present, <i>to</i>				<i>ii no ni</i>

You ought to have taken an umbrella ; *kasa wo motte iku hō ga yokatta*.

You ought not to have taken an umbrella ; *kasa wo motte ika-nai hō ga yokatta no ni*.

The word *hō* which appears in many of the constructions mentioned in this paragraph, though generally used, is sometimes omitted.

### 171. Desire, wish, want, need.

1) A simple desire that a thing is or will be, is translated by :

a) *Ni shītai (mono da)* following a noun :

I hope it will be fine tomorrow ; *ashita tenki ni shītai (mono da)*.

b) *Yō ni shītai (mono da)* following a verb :

I hope it will be ready tonight ; *komban dekiru yō ni shītai*.

c) *Shītai (mono da)* after the adverbial form of an adjective :

I hope it will be shorter ; *motto mijikaku shītai mono da*.

d) Some form of the future in *deshō* (or *darō*) :

I hope you will soon be better ; *jiki yoku o nari deshō*.

2) Desire coupled with doubt, fear or regret is translated by the present conditional, or present and *to*, followed by *ii* (or *yokatta* for the past). Doubt is emphasized by adding *ga* or *keredomo* ; regret by adding *no ni* :

I wish it wasn't raining ; *ame ga fura-nakereba ii no ni*.

3) Desire in the sense of 'would like to have', is translated by *hoshii* :

Tarō wants a pear ; *Tarō wa nashi ga hoshii*.

4) Desire, in the sense of 'need' 'require' is translated by *iru* or *iri-yō da*; (of business) *yō*:

I want a rikisha early tomorrow morning; *myōasa hayaku kuruma ga iru*.

5) Desire to do something is translated by the desiderative form of the verb, often followed by *mono da*:

I wish to go; *ikitai*.

6) Desire that somebody may do something for me, is translated by:

a) The gerund and *moraitai*:

I want to have my watch mended; *tokei wo naoshite moraitai*.

b) The imperative:

Please call a rikisha for me; *kuruma wo yonde kudasai*.

7) A desire may be suggested by a question:

a) The past conditional followed by *ikaga desū ka?* or *dō desū ka?*

Would you care to take an umbrella? *kasa wo motte itlara ikaga desū ka?*

b) A noun followed by *wa* and *ikaga desū ka?* or *dō desū ka?*

What do you say to a walk? *sampo wa ikaga desū ka?*

c) If the action refers to the 1st person plural, the desire may also be suggested by the interrogative future:

Shall we go for a walk? *sampo ni ikimashō ka?*

### 172. Fear.

1) In the sense of real fear, it is generally translated by means of the adjective *kowai* or the verb *kowagaru*:

Are you afraid? *kowai no desū ka?*

2) In the sense of anxiety that something disagreeable has happened or will happen, by:

a) *Shimpai suru* or *shimpai da*:

I am afraid of dirtying my dress; *kimono wo yogosū no ga shimpai desū*.

b) An elliptical construction consisting of the negative present conditional followed by *ii ga*:

I am afraid it will rain; *ame ga fura-nakereba ii ga*; (lit. if it does not rain it would be a good thing but....).

c) The probable present or probable past:

I am afraid you are tired; *kutabireta deshō*.

I am afraid he is not strong enough; *sonna ni chikara ga arimasūmai*.

d) *Ka mo shire-nai*:

I am afraid that something has happened; *nani ka aru no ka mo shire-nai*.

e) *To omou*.

I am afraid he won't come today; *kyō wa ko-nai to omou*.

I was afraid he would get angry; *ano hito ga okoru darō to omoimashita*.

173. Intention may be expressed in two ways between which there seems no practical difference:



1) The first form of the present followed by *tsumori* :

I intend to go to Tōkyō ; *Tōkyō e iku tsumori desū*.

2) The future followed by *to omou* :

I intend to go to Tōkyō ; *Tōkyō e ikō to omoimasū*.

3) When referring to an action which is about to be performed you may use *to suru* or *tokoro desū*, thus :

I was going to peel a pear when a child bumped up against me ; *nashi no kawa wo mukō to shīte itara kodomo ga butsūkatta no desū*.

I am about to start ; *dekakeru tokoro desū*.

## CHAPTER III.

### NOUNS.

#### ARTICLE.

**174.** The Japanese noun is preceded by nothing that corresponds to an article. It has in itself no gender or number ; and these circumstances are generally entirely ignored in speaking.

**175.** The English article is sometimes translated :

1) When 'a' means 'one', it is translated by the equivalent of 'one'. Please give me a pear ; *nashi wo hitotsū kudasai*.

2) When 'a' means 'each', it is sometimes translated by *ni* or *de*. Four times a month ; *tsūki (ni) yo-tabi* : how much a foot ? *shaku (de) ikura ?*

3) When 'a' or 'the' refers to a whole class, the phrase *to iu mono* is sometimes placed after the noun. The dog (or a dog) is a clever animal ; *inu to iu mono wa rikō na mono da* ; but we could also say : *inu wa rikō na mono da*.

4) The difference like that between 'a' and 'the' may sometimes be expressed by the correct use of *wa* and *ga* ; see **392**.

5) 'The—the—' e.g. 'the sooner the better' is translated by *kodo* ; see **259**.

#### GENDER.

**176.** Gender is to be found in some nouns that refer to relationship or to the occupations of men and women. E.g.: *chichi*, father ; *oba*, aunt ; *genan*, male servant ; *geisha*, singing girl.

**177.** In other rare cases, when it is necessary to call attention to the sex of an animal it may be done :

1) By prefixing *o* (or *on*) for the male, and *me* (or *men*) for the female ; thus, *o-ushi*, bull, ox ; *me-ushi*, cow ; *ondori*, cock ; *mendori*, hen. All names of animals are not capable of receiving these prefixes.

2) By prefixing *otoko no* for the male, or *onna no* for the female.

#### NUMBER.

**178.** A Japanese noun of itself is either singular or plural according to circumstances. The idea of plurality may be expressed, though it is rarely necessary to do so, by adding the suffixes *-domo*, *-tachi* or *-gata* ; the last of these is more polite.

**179.** The words *kodomo* and *tomodachi* were originally plural, but they have lost the special idea of plurality and like any other Japanese noun may be used indifferently in singular or plural. *Kodomo-tachi* may be used for the plural of *kodomo* ; *tomodachi* has no special plural.

**180.** The idea of plurality is sometimes expressed by doubling the word, thus : *hōbō* everywhere, from *hō* a side ; *kuni-guni* various countries, from *kuni* country.

#### DERIVATIVE AND COMPOUND CONCRETE NOUNS.

**181.** Many concrete nouns are derivatives or compounds :

1) The stem of a verb is very frequently used as a noun : *hanashi* a conversation, from *hanasū* to speak.

2) Compound nouns are formed of two nouns : *te-bukuro* gloves, from *te* hand, and *fukuro* bag ; *tsūki-hi* months and days, time.

3) Occasionally the words are abbreviated before forming the compound : *sak-kon*, yesterday and today, i.e. recently, from *sakujitsū* and *konnichi*.

4) The stems of two verbs : *hikidashi* a drawer, from *hiku* to pull, and *dasū* to take out.

5) Noun and stem of verb or vice versa : *mado-kake* a curtain, from *mado* a window, and *kake-ru* to hang ; *tatami-isu* a folding chair, from *tatamu* to fold and *isu* a chair.

6) Stem of adjective and noun : *aka-gane* copper, from *akai* red, and *kane* metal.

7) Stem of adjective and stem of verb : *niga-warai* a sneer, from *nigai* bitter, and *warau* to laugh.

8) The suffix *-ya* a house, added to a noun serves to form a large number of compounds that mean the names of shops, and secondarily, tradesmen. *Kū-suri-ya*, from *kūsuri* medicine, means a chemist's shop or the chemist. If we want to show clearly we are speaking of the man and not of the shop, we may



add *San* Mr. Some of these compounds in *ya* refer only to the person : *kuruma-ya* a rikisha-man.

9) Words like *-jin* man, *-go* language, *-kawa* river, *-shima* island, and many others are added to nouns to form compounds : *Igirisū-jin* an Englishman ; *Furansū-go* the French language.

10) The particle *no* placed after an adjective is equivalent to a noun with the meaning of 'one' : *chiisai no* a small one ; *akai no* the red one. See 188.

11) The word *mono* thing or person, used as a suffix serves to form a very large number of compounds :

a) It may be added to the stem of a verb : *kimono* a dress, from *ki-ru* to put on.

b) An adjective stem : *aomono* vegetables, from *aoi* green.

c) A noun : *inaka-mono* a rustic, from *inaka* the country.

d) Compounds in *mono* often have a special meaning as explained, 19.

e) *Mono* is often contracted to *mon'*, *no*, or even *n'*.

12) The adverbial form of certain adjectives is sometimes used as a noun : *hayaku kara osoku made* from early morning until late at night ; *sūteishon no chikaku ga ii* (a house in) the neighbourhood of the station would be preferable.

13) A great many Japanese nouns are merely mispronounced European words, especially English.

#### DERIVATIVE AND COMPOUND ABSTRACT NOUNS.

**182.** Abstract nouns are formed in various ways :

1) The stem of adjectives : *aka* scarlet (noun), from *akai* scarlet (adjective). *Kono moyō wa aka ga katte iru* ; there is too much scarlet in this pattern.

2) The stem of an adjective to which *-sa* is added : *nagasa* length, from *nagai* long. These nouns refer to the degree of a quality.

Occasionally the noun part of quasi-adjectives in *na* is used in this same way : *jōbusa* strength, from *jōbu na* strong.

3) The termination *-mi* added to the stem of an adjective, forms nouns that mean a tinge of a quality, or sometimes the quality itself : *akami* a tinge of red ; *amami* sweetness.

4) Two words (verbs, adjectives or nouns) meaning opposite things : *aru-nashi* is-isn't, i.e. the question of the existence of a thing ; *sūki-kirai* the question of liking or disliking.

5) An adjective followed by the postposition *no* is sometimes equivalent to an abstract noun : *Samui no wa ii ga atsui no ni wa komarimasū* ; I don't mind the cold, but I find the heat very trying. *Takai no ni wa odoroiita* ; I was astonished at the dearness of it.

6) Adjectives not followed by *no* are occasionally used as abstract nouns.  
207.

7) The stem of verbs : *itami* pain, from *itamu* to ache.

8) An adjective followed by *koto* : *hayai koto* velocity, from *hayai* rapid; This form is used as an exclamation : *hayai koto!* what velocity! It is also often used when we deny the existence of a quality : It is not dear; *takai koto wa nai*, (lit. there is no dearness).

183. *Mono* and *koto* both mean 'thing'; but *koto* always denotes an abstract idea, a fact, an act, etc., while *mono* generally refers to something concrete and tangible. Thus *onaji mono* means 'the same thing' 'the identical article', whereas *onaji koto* means 'the same sort of thing' 'something equivalent'. If somebody complains that he was given two five-sen stamps instead of one ten-sen one, we might say : *onaji koto ja arimasen ka?* 'well, isn't it the same thing?' Speaking of a picture or a book, etc., we might call it *omoshiroi mono* an amusing thing; but we would say *ryokō suru hodo omoshiroi koto wa nai*, there is nothing more amusing than travelling.

#### DIMINUTIVES AND AUGMENTATIVES.

184. Diminutives are often formed by prefixing *ko* child or small. *Ko-gatana* a penknife, from *katana* a sword; *ko-ishi* a pebble, from *ishi* a stone.

185. *Ko* is sometimes used as a prefix to form the names of the young of animals, but all animals cannot take *ko* as a prefix while they can all be followed by *no ko* with the same meaning : we may say, *ko-inu* or *inu no ko* a puppy; but speaking of the young of a fly we cannot say *ko-hai*, but only *hai no ko*.

186. Augmentatives are sometimes formed by prefixing *ō* big, less frequently *dai* (or *tai*) : *ō-kaze* a gale, from *kaze* wind; *daiji* importance, from *ji* thing.

### CHAPTER IV.

#### ADJECTIVES.

187. Japanese adjectives have no gender, number or case.

Many adjectives are used in two senses : they may refer to the objective quality of a thing or to the subjective feeling of a person. *Oishii kudamono* nice fruit; *anata no kudas'tta kudamono wo oishiku tabemashita*; I ate with pleasant feelings the fruit you kindly gave me. Likewise : *omoshiroi koto* an



amusing thing (i.e. a thing which produces amusement), and *omoshirokatta* I was amused; *arigatai koto* a thing to be grateful for (i.e. which ought to produce gratitude), and *arigatai* I am grateful.

**188.** Any adjective may be given the force of a noun by adding the particle *no* which then has the meaning of 'one'. From *chiisai* small, we have *chiisai no* a small one; from *kirei* na pretty, we have *kirei na no* a pretty one. However, if the adjective ends in *no*, another *no* is not added: *hoka no* another, *hoka no* another one. Two *no* may sometimes follow each other when the first one means 'one' and the second 'of': *chiisai no no hanashi desu*; we are talking of the small one.

A similar construction of *no* is found after verbs used attributively (**233**); *mita no* the one I saw.

*No* is also used in an inverted construction not infrequently heard. *Kitte no furui no* (lit. old ones of postage stamps) is about equivalent to *furui kitte* old postage stamps. There is a slight difference between these two expressions more easily felt than defined; the difference is something like that which exists between 'postage stamps, old ones' and 'old postage stamps'. Likewise *neko no shinda no* and *shinda neko* both mean a dead cat.

**189.** The joining of two or more adjectives will be treated later on (**406**), but we will remark here that Japanese adjectives, like the English, may sometimes follow each other without any conjunction or special construction: *Ano wakai kirei na hito*; that handsome young man, (lit. that young handsome man).

**190.** An adjective may be used in four ways:

1) As an attributive, in which case it is placed before the noun: *takai uchi* a high house.

2) As a predicate in ordinary sentences: *kono uchi wa takai*; this house is high.

3) As a predicate in polite sentences with the verb *gozaru*: *kono uchi wa takō gozaimasu*; this house is high.

4) As an adverb, when it may refer either, *a*) to the verb itself: *hayaku arukimasu* he walks quickly; *yoku mieru* I can see it well; or *b*) to a noun through the verb: *ano uchi wa ōkiku mieru* that house looks big; *kire wo akaku somemasu* I will dye the cloth red. In English, case *a*) is generally translated by an adverb (as: quickly, well), and *b*) by an adjective (as: big, red); indeed case *b*) might often be considered and called a predicate. But the two cases *a*) and *b*), though logically distinct, are included here under one heading as they correspond to one and the same form in Japanese, not only in the case of true adjectives but also in the case of quasi-adjectives in *na* or *no*, and adjectival phrases like *ki no hayai* impulsive.

**191.** There are various classes of adjectives:

1) True adjectives, these always end in *ai*, *ii*, *oi* or *ui*.

2) Quasi-adjectives formed by adding *na* or *no* to nouns, etc.

3) Adjectival phrases composed of a noun (or its equivalent), the post-position *no* and a true adjective.

4) Various tenses of verbs and verbal phrases used as adjectives.

#### TRUE ADJECTIVES.

192. True adjectives end in *ai*, *ii*, *oi* or *ui*. These terminations are changed according to the way in which the adjective is used, as shown in the following table :

attribute	<i>takai</i>	<i>yasashii</i>	<i>shiroi</i>	<i>samui</i>
predicate	<i>takai</i>	<i>yasashii</i>	<i>shiroi</i>	<i>samui</i>
predicate with <i>gozaru</i> }	<i>takō</i>	<i>yasashiū*</i>	<i>shirō</i>	<i>samū</i>
adverb	<i>takaku</i>	<i>yasashiku</i>	<i>shiroku</i>	<i>samuku</i>

193. What remains after taking away the final *i* of a true adjective is called the stem : *taka*, *yasashi*, *shiro* and *samu* are the stems of *takai*, *yasashii*, *shiroi* and *samui*. The stem is equivalent to a noun and is used sometimes alone ; it is to be found very frequently in compounds. See 181, 6, 7 ; 182, 2 ; 153 ;

154.

194. *Nai* non-existent, and its inflexions which, as we have seen (93), serve as the negative of the verb *aru* 'to be' 'to have' is in reality an adjective which is often found alone but more frequently still, is used to form the negative of adjectives. When used by itself we have the following forms :

attribute	<i>nai</i>
predicate	<i>nai</i>
adverb	<i>naku</i>

195. The negatives of true adjectives are derived from the adverbial form as follows :

attribute	<i>takaku nai</i>
predicate	<i>takaku nai</i>
adverb	<i>takaku naku</i>

Another construction of adjectives used predicatively in the negative was noted in 167, 5.

196. Ordinary negative adjectives in *nai* are not used in combination with *gozaru* ; in these polite sentences the negation is to be found in the inflexion of the verb itself :

It is not dear ; *takaku nai* or *takō gozaimasen* : never *takaku nō gozaimasū*.

However, there is no objection to using ordinary adjectives which happen to end in *nai*, as *kitanai* dirty, before the verb *gozaru* : *kitanō gozaimasū*.

\**Shiū* is pronounced *shū*.



197. We cannot say *naku nai* for the negative of *nai*; the only form that can be used is *nai koto wa nai*.

Other adjectives, however, ending in *nai*, whether compounds of *nai* or not, as *sūkunai*, *kitanai*, *mittomo-nai*, *deki-nai*, form their negatives in the ordinary way: *sūkunaku nai*, *kitanaku nai*, *mittomo-naku nai*, *deki-naku nai*.

198. True adjectives, especially when used as simple predicates (190, 2), partake of the nature of verbs and enclose in themselves the meaning of 'to be'; thus, *takai* means not only 'high', but 'is high'. It is not surprising then, that they should have a conjugation analogous to that of the verb, and behave in many ways like verbs. All the inflexions may be formed from the stem.

199.

AFFIRMATIVE		NEGATIVE
<i>takai</i>	<b>Present</b>	<i>takaku NAI</i>
<i>takakarō</i> <i>takai DARŌ</i> (OF DESHŌ)	<b>Prob. pres. and future</b>	<i>takaku NAKARŌ</i> (OF ARUMAI) <i>takaku NAI DARŌ</i> (DESHŌ)
<i>takakatta</i>	<b>Past</b>	<i>takaku NAKATTA</i>
<i>takakattarō</i> <i>takakatta DARŌ</i> (DESHŌ)	<b>Prob. past</b>	<i>takaku NAKATTARŌ</i> <i>takaku NAKATTA DARŌ</i> (DESHŌ)
<i>takakute</i> <i>takakutte</i>	<b>Gerund</b>	<i>takaku NAKUTE</i> <i>takaku NAKUTTE</i>
<i>takakereba</i> (See 71) <i>takai NARA</i>	<b>Cond. pres.</b>	<i>takaku NAKEREBA</i> <i>takaku NAI NARA</i>
<i>takakattara</i> (See 66, note)	<b>Cond. past</b>	<i>takaku NAKATTARA</i> (ARIMASEN [DESHITARA])
<i>takakattari</i>	<b>Frequentative</b>	<i>takaku NAKATTARI</i>

200. The gerundial form of the adjective has great similarity to the verbal gerund. (Compare 58, 3, 4, 6, 7, 9, 12, 13, 14, 18).

1) The adjective that ends a clause or is followed in English by 'and' is put in the gerundial inflexion: *Tegami wa nagakütte omoshiroi*; the letter is long and interesting.

2) After the translation of the adjectival gerund we must sometimes use other conjunctions besides 'and': *Nagasaki wa yasai ga takakûte sakana wa yasui*; in Nagasaki vegetables are dear but fish is cheap.

3) It may signify the reason or cause: *Omokûte ikemasen*; as it is heavy it won't do, i.e. it is too heavy.

4) It often corresponds to 'so' or 'very' in English: *Itakūte shiyō ga nai*; it is so painful I don't know what to do.

5) Followed by *mo* it means 'even if' 'although': *Yasūkūte mo kaimasen*; I won't buy it even if it is cheap.\*

6) *Wa* following the adjectival gerund is emphatic: the final *-te* of the gerund and *wa*, may be contracted to *-cha*: *takakūte wa* or *takakūtte wa* becomes *takakucha* or *takakutchā*.

7) The adjectival gerund followed by *wa* has sometimes a conditional force: *Omokucha ikemasen*; if it is heavy it won't do, i.e. it mustn't be too heavy.

8) The adjectival gerund is sometimes used elliptically by both men and women:

*Kono heya wa semakūtte...* (*iya da*); this room is so small.... (I don't like it).

Women have another elliptical use, peculiar to themselves: *Omoshirokūtte?* is it amusing? *Ē, omoshirokūtte yo!* oh, yes!†

9) The polite verb *irassharu* or *o-ide nasaru* after an adjectival gerund imitates a common verbal construction: *Sei ga takakūte irasshaimasū*; he is tall.

201. We have seen that *no* following an adjective may mean 'one'. (188).

202. When the adjective is used predicatively one may sometimes wish to employ a construction less curt than the plain adjective, but less stiff than the formal *gozaimasū*. In the negative, this can be done by substituting *arimasen* for *nai*, and *arimasen deshita* for *nakatta* in 199.

203. In the probable present and past, affirmative or negative, this result may be obtained by using *deshō* instead of *darō*.

204. In the present tense you may add to the adjective *no desū* (often abbreviated to *n' desū*, *desū* or even *no*). *Kore wa chiisai no desū*; this one is small. (Compare 86).

205. In the past tense, *no desū* may be added to the past inflexion of the adjective, or *no deshita* to the plain adjective: *Omoshirokatta no desū* or *omoshiroi no deshita*; it was amusing.

Other combinations met with are: *omoshiroi no darō* (or *deshō*); *omoshirokatta no deshita*; *omoshiroi no dattarō* (or *deshitarō*); *omoshiroi no dattara* (or *deshitara*); *omoshiroku nai no da* (or *desū*), *omoshiroi no de wa nai* (or *arimasen*); *omoshiroku nai no darō* (or *deshō*), *omoshiroi no de wa nakarō* (or *arumai*);

\*In verbs the past tense may be formed from the gerund or the gerund from the past tense, by changing the final *e* into *a* or vice versa. In adjectives this is not so: but we obtain a) a sort of past inflexion by changing the final *e* of the gerund into *a*; and b) a sort of gerund with a past meaning, by changing the final *a* of the past inflexion into *e*. The quasi-past (a), followed by *'te* has like the past tense of a verb followed by *'te*, a meaning of 'even if' (compare 57): *Yasūkūta* (or *yasūkūtta*) *'te kaimasen*; I won't buy it even if it is cheap, (from the gerund, *yasūkūte* or *yasūkūtte*). The quasi-gerund (b) is used elliptically by women like the true gerund: *Yasūkatte?* was it cheap? (from *yasūkatta*, the past inflexion); (compare 58, 18).

†See preceding foot-note.



*omoshiroku nai no datta* (or *deshita*), *omoshiroi no de wa nakatta* (or *arimasen deshita*); *omoshiroku nai no darō* (or *deshō*), *omoshiroi no de wa nakattarō* (or *nakatta deshō*); *omoshiroku nai no nara*, *omoshiroi no de nakereba*; *omoshiroku nai no dattara* (or *deshitara*), *omoshiroi no de nakattara* (or *arimasen deshitara*).

**206.** Adjectives are often used interjectionally in Japanese. *Ureshii*, *ureshii*! Oh, I am glad! (lit. joyful, joyful). *Abunai*! take care! (lit. dangerous).

**207.** True adjectives are occasionally, though very seldom, used as nouns: *Amai mo karai mo shitte iru*; he is a man who knows what's good, (lit. he knows the sweet and the pungent).

**208.** The adjectives *sukunai* scarce and *ōi* plentiful, are not used attributively.

**209.** The adjective *yoi* good, used attributively, is usually corrupted to *ii*; but all the other inflexions such as *yō*, *yoku*, *yokatta*, etc. suffer no alteration.

**210.** The two adjectives *yoi* good, and *nai* non-existent, are sometimes used colloquially in one of their literary forms, *yoshi*, *nashi*. *Nashi* is usually followed by the postposition *ni* or *de* and then means 'without'; however it is occasionally used alone.

**211.** The following idiom is worthy of note:

*Atsui no atsuku nai no 'tte*, *yake-sō deshita*; talk about heat! It seemed as if I were burning. (Compare **91**).

#### QUASI-ADJECTIVES IN *Na* OR *No*.

**212.** Many nouns and stems of verbs, followed by *na* or *no* are used attributively as adjectives: *baka na hito* a foolish man; *kin no tokei* a gold watch; *kirei na hon* a pretty book; *shimai no peiji* the last page.

**213.** In the negative, *na* (or *no*) is replaced by *de nai*: *baka de nai hito*, a not-foolish man. Sometimes *fu* not, is prefixed: *fu-shinsetsū na* unkind, from *shinsetsū* kind.

**214.** In many cases the noun may be used separately like an ordinary noun. *Kesa kōen de baka wo mita*, I saw a fool this morning in the park; *kin* gold.

**215.** In many other cases although the word is logically a noun and is treated grammatically as such, it generally has the meaning of an adjective, as *kirei* pretty.

**216.** Some nouns may take either *na* or *no*. The former makes the meaning more general, the latter more concrete: *baka na hanashi* is 'a foolish story'; but *baka no hanashi* means 'the story of a fool'. In some cases *na* or *no* may be used almost indiscriminately.

**217.** When quasi-adjectives are used predicatively, *na* (or *no*) is changed to *de* and followed by the verb *aru* or *gozaru*. *Ano hana wa kirei desū* (= *de arimasū*), *ano hana wa kirei de gozaimasū*; that flower is pretty.

In negative sentences, *wa* is put after *de*. *Ano hana wa kirei de wa nai*, *ano hana wa kirei de wa gozaimasen*; that flower is not pretty. (See 94).

**218.** When used adverbially (190, 4, a, b) *na* (or *no*) is replaced by *ni*. *Shinsetsū ni shimashita* he behaved kindly; *kirei ni mieru* it looks pretty; *baka ni mieru* he looks a fool.

In the negative, *de naku* may be substituted for *na* (or *no*); but perhaps it is more common to use *ni* and put the verb in the negative: *Baka de naku mieru* he looks anything but a fool; *baka ni mie-nai* he does not look a fool.

**219.** The quasi-adjective is used as a gerund, very much like a true adjective (200); *na* (or *no*) is then replaced by *de*. *Kono hon wa kirei de omoshiroi* this book is pretty and interesting; *sore wa ammari hade de kiraremasen* that is so showy, I cannot wear it.

In the negative, *de (wa) nakūte* or *de (wa) naku* (94) takes the place of *na* (or *no*): *kirei de nakūte mo ii* even if it is not pretty it will do; *kono hana wa kirei de nakūte nioi ga warui* this flower is not pretty nor of pleasant odour; *omae no iu koto wa burei de wa naku machigatte iru* what you say is not impolite but it is not correct.

**220.** The nouns from which quasi-adjectives are formed when used as ordinary nouns may take any postposition.

**221.** Among the quasi-adjectives formed by *na*, *yō na* is of special importance. Examples of its use will be found in the Vocabulary, Part III.

**222.** A great many quasi-adjectives in *no* are formed from the names of countries, materials, and nouns (adverbs) of time and place: *Amerika no hon* an American book; *kin no tokei* a gold watch; *kinō no tegami* yesterday's letter; *asoko no uchi* yonder house.

**223.** We have seen that the stem of a true adjective is equivalent to a noun (193). This noun-stem may sometimes be followed by the particle *na* and become a quasi-adjective. The most common cases are:

<i>ōki na</i>	big,	from	<i>ōkii</i> ;
<i>chiisa na</i>	little,	„	<i>chiisai</i> ;
<i>okashi na</i>	ridiculous,	„	<i>okashii</i> ;
<i>yawaraka na</i>	soft,	„	<i>yawarakai</i> ;
<i>attaka na</i>	warm,	„	<i>attakai</i> ;
<i>komaka na</i>	minute,	„	<i>komakai</i> ;
<i>ki-iro na</i>	yellow,	„	<i>ki-iroi</i> ;
<i>masshiro na</i>	snow-white,	„	<i>masshiroi</i> ;
<i>makka na</i>	flaring red,	„	<i>makkai</i> ;
<i>makkura na</i>	pitch dark,	„	<i>makkurai</i> ;
<i>makkuro na</i>	jet-black,	„	<i>makkuroi</i> ;
<i>massao na</i>	completely green,	„	<i>massaoi</i> ;
<i>mammaru na</i>	perfectly round,	„	<i>mammarui</i> .



Something similar is found in some compound adjectives, as :

*iji-waru na*                      bad-tempered,                      from *iji no warui*.

The first three of the above quasi-adjectives are only used attributively.

**224.** Occasionally the stem of a true adjective followed by *no* is used as a quasi-adjective. You sometimes hear *aka no* instead of *akai*, *shiro no* instead of *shiroi*, etc.

**225.** Sometimes instead of using the quasi-adjective attributively, we may place the two nouns together, forming a compound; for instance: *kara no kuruma* or *kara-kuruma* an empty rikisha; *kin no tokei* or *kin-dokei* a gold watch.

**226.** Do not confound quasi-adjectives ending in *ai*, like *zonzai na* careless,\* with true adjectives, like *kitanai* dirty. You cannot say *zonzai hito*, neither can you say *kitanai no hito*: *kirei hito* instead of *kirei na hito* a handsome man, would be altogether inexcusable as there are no true\* adjectives ending in *ei*. Beginners are very apt to make mistakes like these.

#### ADJECTIVAL PHRASES.

**227.** A great number of adjectival phrases composed of a noun (or its equivalent), the postposition *no*, and a true adjective are used attributively. E.g.: *genki no ii* means literally 'good of spirits', i.e. lively, vigorous; *genki no ii kodomo* means 'a lively child'.

**228.** When used as predicates these phrases change *no* into *ga* and they resemble ordinary sentences; e.g.: *Ano kodomo wa genki ga ii*; that child is lively, (lit. as for that child his spirits are good).

**229.** In the past tense *ii* would be changed to *yokatta*. In a polite sentence *ii* would be changed to *yō gozaimasū*. Other adjectives are treated in this same way.

The gerundial construction will be understood from the following example: *Tsugō ga warukütte ikare-nakatta*; it was so inconvenient I was not able to go.

**230.** When used adverbially (190, 4, a, b), *no* is changed to *ga* or sometimes suppressed and the adjective is put in the adverbial inflexion. *Kigen ga yoku narimashita* he is now good-tempered; *ano hito wa genki yoku hatarakimasū* that man works vigorously; *ano hito wa genki yoku mieru* that man looks vigorous.

**231.** A great many of these adjectival phrases are formed by means of the adjective *ii* good, and their opposites by means of *warui* bad, or *nai*, the negative adjective.

---

\*Other quasi-adjectives in *ai* are: *hakurai no* imported, *hantai no* opposite, *kirai na* hateful, *shimai no* last, *shimpai na* causing anxiety, *tagai no* reciprocal, common.

**232.** The number of these adjectival phrases is practically unlimited. The following are only a few of the commoner ones :

<i>un no ii</i>	lucky,	opposite	<i>warui</i> ;
<i>naka no ii</i>	intimate,	„	<i>warui</i> ;
<i>benri no ii</i>	convenient,	„	<i>warui</i> ;
<i>tsugō no ii</i>	convenient,	„	<i>warui</i> ;
<i>iji no ii</i>	good-tempered,	„	<i>warui</i> ;
<i>kigen no ii</i>	good-tempered,	„	<i>warui</i> ;
<i>genki no ii</i>	lively,	„	<i>nai</i> ;
<i>ki no hayai</i>	impulsive,	„	<i>noroi</i> ;
<i>ki no chiisai</i>	pusillanimous,	„	<i>ōkii</i> ;
<i>ki no nagai</i>	patient,	„	<i>mijikai</i> ;
<i>ame no ōi</i>	rainy,	„	<i>sūkunai</i> ;
<i>mimi no tōi</i>	hard of hearing.		

When no corresponding adjective exists in English these Japanese adjectival phrases must be translated by relative clauses.

#### VERBS USED AS ADJECTIVES.

**233.** Many verbs and verbal phrases may be used attributively in Japanese ; they are sometimes rendered into English by an adjective, sometimes by a relative clause, (see **328—330**). The following are a few examples out of a large number that may be rendered by an adjective.

*Tsumi no aru onna* ; a guilty woman.

*On wo shira-nai kodomo* ; an ungrateful child.

*Fūtotta hito* ; a fat person.

*Deki-nai shigoto* ; an impossible work.

**234.** When these adjectives are used predicatively in English, in Japanese the verb resumes its ordinary functions : *no* where it occurs, is changed to *ga*.

*Ano onna wa tsumi ga aru* ; that woman is guilty.

*Ano kodomo wa on wo shira-nai* ; that child is ungrateful.

*Ano hito wa fūtotte imasū* ; that man is fat.

The negative of negative verbal adjectives in *nai*, like *deki-nai*, *mie-nai*, etc. is formed as in **197**.

**235.** Some of these adjectives may be used adverbially in English (**190**, 4, a, b) ; but no general rule can be given as to how to treat the corresponding verb or verbal phrase in Japanese. Each case must be considered individually.

He looks guilty ; *tsumi ga aru yō ni mieru* ; *tsumi ga ari-sō da*.

To act guiltily ; *tsumi na koto wo suru*.

Negative verbal adjectives in *nai* take the adverbial form *naku* when used in



connection with the verb *naru* : *deki-naku natta* it has become impossible, it is now impossible.

#### COMPOUND AND DERIVATIVE ADJECTIVES.

**236.** Compound adjectives may be composed of :

- 1) A noun and an adjective : *nadakai* famous, from *na* name, and *takai* high.
- 2) The stem of an adjective followed by an adjective : *hoso-nagai* slender, from *hosoi* narrow, and *nagai* long.
- 3) The stem of a verb followed by an adjective : *wakari-nikui* difficult to understand, from *wakaru* to understand, *nikui* difficult.

**237.** The adjective *kūsai* malodorous, offensive, added to a noun, means that one is reminded of the noun, often in an objectionable way : *inaka-kūsai* rustic, (lit. stinking of the country).

**238.** If *ii* (occasionally *yasui*) is added to the stem of a verb, it means that the action is performed easily ; if instead, *nikui* is added, it means that the action is performed with difficulty : *wakari-ii* easy to understand ; *wakari-nikui* difficult to understand.

**239.** Nearly all verbs have a desiderative form in *-tai* which is a true adjective. (See 77).

**240.** By adding *-rashii* to a noun we get an adjective which often corresponds to our adjectives in 'ish' or 'ly'; it may sometimes be translated by 'seems to be'. E.g.: *kodomorashii* childish ; *otokorashii* manly ; *jōzurashii* seems to be skilful. (See Part III).

**241.** The termination *-ppoi* added to certain nouns, stems of adjectives or verbs, makes an adjective and generally means that the noun is in excess : *mizuppoi* watery, *okorippoi* quick-tempered.

**242.** An important group of quasi-adjectives in *na* is formed by adding *-sō* (appearance) to the stem of true adjectives or verbs, or to the noun part of quasi-adjectives : these adjectives have a meaning of probability. E.g.: *omoshiro-sō na* likely to be amusing, *furi-sō na* likely to rain, *jōbu-sō na* apparently healthy.

**243.** The adjective *yoi* good, and *nai* non-existent, are irregular when they take the *-sō* of probability ; they become *yosa-sō* and *nasa-sō*. The compounds of *nai* may either follow *nai* in this irregularity or be formed regularly.

**244.** Quasi-adjectives in *no* formed by adding *-tate* to the stem of a verb, refer to an action which has just taken place. Thus : *umi-tate no* new-laid (of eggs), from *umu* to lay.

**245.** The negative of quasi-adjectives is sometimes formed by prefixing *fu* (or *bu*) 'not': this corresponds nearly to our prefix 'un'.

From *shinsetsū na* kind, we have *fu-shinsetsū na* unkind.

From *shiawase na* fortunate, we have *fu-shiawase na* unfortunate.

## COMPARISON.

**246.** There are no inflexions of the Japanese adjective (or adverb) corresponding to our comparative and superlative degrees.

**247.** When only one of the things compared is mentioned, the sentence may be treated in various ways in Japanese :

1) The quality is merely affirmed or denied.

*Kore wa yasui* ; this is cheaper, (lit. this is cheap).

*Kore wa yasuku nai* ; this is not cheaper.

*Dan-dan ôkiku naru* ; he is growing bigger little by little.

2) The foregoing sentences are sometimes ambiguous :

*Kore wa yasui*, for instance, may mean, 'this is cheap' or 'this is cheaper' All ambiguity is dispelled by using *hō* side.

*Kono hō ga yasui* ; this is cheaper.

*Nagai hō ga sukii* ; I prefer the long one.

3) Sometimes *motto* more, is used :

*Motto ii no wo motte o-ide* ; bring a better one.

*Motto omoshiroi hon wo kashite kudasai* ; please lend me a more amusing book.

4) *Mō sukoshi* a little more, is also sometimes used.

*Mō sukoshi ôki na no ga hoshii* ; I want one a little bigger.

5) When we wish to express an intensified quality like 'still better', we may use *nao* :

*Kore wa nao ii* ; this one is still better.

**248.** Explicit comparisons, when the things compared are both named, may be of two classes : 1) the word 'than' is not used ; 2) the word 'than' is used.

1) *Hō* is generally repeated in Japanese :

*Kono hon no hō ga omoshiroi ga mō hitotsū no hō ga yasui* ; this book is more amusing but the other one is cheaper.

2) 'Than' may be translated by *gori* ; this construction is generally avoided in Japanese ; the implicit form of comparison (**247, 1, 2**) is usually preferred :

*Asama gori Fuji* (or *Fuji no hō*) *ga takai* ; Fuji is higher than Asama.

**249.** 'More' 'some more' or 'any more' is translated as follows :

1) When it means 'a greater quantity', and the amount is designated :

a) in a vague way—*motto* :

I want some more nails ; *motto kugi ga irimasū*.

b) in a definite way—*mō* :

I want six more nails ; *kugi ga mō rop-pon irimasū*.

2) When it means 'left' or 'remaining' in an affirmative sentence—*mada* :

Have you any more nails ? *kugi wa mada arimasū ka ?*

There are some more in my room ; *watashi no heya ni mada arimasū*.

3) In all negative sentences—*mō* :



I don't want any more ; *mō irimasen*.

**250.** 'A little more' is translated by *mō sūkoshi*.

Bring me a little (some) more water please ; *mizu wo mō sūkoshi motte kite kudasai*.

**251.** 'The more' may be translated by *yokei*, sometimes *takusan* :

Which box holds the more ? *dochira no hako ga yokei hairu darō ?*

**252.** 'More than' may generally be translated by *ijō* or by *yori yokei* :

It will cost more than five yen ; *go-yen ijō kakarimasū*.

It is not more than one pound ; *ik-kin yori yokei de wa nai*.

I have more pears than you ; *watashi wa anata yori nashi wo yokei motte imasū*.

This small hen lays more eggs than that big one ; *kono chiisai tori wa ano ōkai na tori yori yokei tamago wo umu*.

That is a great deal more than is necessary : *sore ja taihen yokei da*.

**253.** 'Less than' may be rendered by :

1) A negative sentence :

There is less than a pound of sugar in the bag ; *fūkuro ni aru satō wa ik-kin wa nai* ; (lit. there is not a pound of sugar in the bag).

It is less than three feet long ; *nagasa wa san-jaku wa nai*.

You will need less than five yen ; *go-yen kakara-nai deshō*.

2) *Tara-zu* :

There is less than a pound of sugar in the bag ; *satō ga ik-kin tara-zu fūkuro ni haitte iru*.

It is less than three feet long ; *nagasa wa san-jaku tara-zu desū*.

You will need less than five yen ; *go-yen tara-zu kakaru deshō*.

3) Sometimes by *yori sūkunai* :

There is less than a pound of sugar in the bag ; *satō ga ik-kin yori sūkunaku fūkuro ni haitte iru*.

It is less than three feet long ; *nagasa wa san-jaku yori sūkunai*.

**254.** The comparison of ages, as 'so many years older' or 'younger', is translated by *toshi ga ue*, *toshi ga shita*, or simply *ue*, *shita*.

*Chichi wa haha yori mitsū (toshi ga) ue desū* ; my father is three years older than my mother.

**255.** Several constructions relating to comparatives are mentioned in **170**.

The following construction is also interesting : *Tōkyō kara mireba Kyōto wa semai* ; Kyōto is small compared to Tōkyō.

**256.** When we compare A to B in regard to a certain quality, we may find that 1) A has the quality in a greater degree than B, as in the examples given in **247** and **248** ; 2) A may have the quality in a less degree than B, as : Nara is less important than Kyōto ; or 3) A and B may be equal.

**257.** In the second case the beginner had better turn the sentence into one of the first class, and say : 'Kyōto is more important than Nara'. Or a con-

struction with *hodo* may be used thus : *Nara wa Kyōto hodo ōki na tokoro de wa nai* ; Nara is not as big as Kyōto.

**258.** Comparisons of equality are often rendered by the words *onaji gurai* or *hodo* as shown in the following examples :

*O Kiku San wa O Yuki San to onaji gurai kirei desū* ; Miss Kiku is as pretty as Miss Yuki.

*Yumoto wa Ashinoyu to onaji gurai takai tokoro desū ka?* is Yumoto as high as Ashinoyu ?

*Watakushi wa anata to onaji gurai kane ga aru* ; I have as much money as you.

*Anata wa watakushi to onaji gurai sei ga takai* ; you are as tall as I.

*Tatte iru no mo kakete iru no mo nedan wa onaji* ; it is as cheap sitting as standing.

In the first four examples *to onaji gurai* may be replaced by *hodo*.

**259.** 'The—the—', may be rendered by *hodo*, thus :

*Hayai hodo ii* ; the sooner the better.

*Ōkiku naru hodo waruku naru* ; the older he grows the worse he becomes.

*Omoeba omou hodo kanashii* ; the more I think of it the more sorry I feel.

#### SUPERLATIVE.

**260.** The simple adjective in Japanese often means implicitly the superlative : *Dore ga ii?* which is the best ?

*Kore ga ii* ; this is the best.

**261.** The superlative may be rendered explicit in various ways :

1) *Ichiban* 'number one' is often placed before adjectives :

*Koko de wa nan to iu yado-ya ga ichiban yō gozaimasū ka?* which is the best inn here ?

2) By means of the words *ichi*, *-jū de* or *de*, after a noun of place :

*Nippon ichi no yama* ; the highest (most famous) mountain in Japan.

*Tōkyō ichi no hoteru* ; the best (largest, finest) hotel in Tōkyō.

*Kyōto(-jū) de no isha* ; the cleverest (most skilful, famous) doctor in Kyōto.

It will be seen that the adjectival idea is vague unless made clear by the context ; it can however be clearly stated :

*Nippon ichi no takai yama* ; the highest mountain in Japan.

3) By means of *uchi* :

*Kono uchi de no omoshiroi hon* ; the most amusing book from among these.

**262.** 'The most' meaning 'the greatest of several quantities' is translated by *yokei*, sometimes *takusan* :

Which box holds the most ? *dono hako ga yokei hairu darō?*

**263.** 'Very' when translated, may generally be rendered by *taihen* (に), *zuibun*, *taisō*, *naka-naka*, *yohodo* or *goku*. Sometimes any one of these may be



used, sometimes only one suits the case and it is not easy to know which one to select.

*Taihen ii* ; it is very good.

*Naka-naka muzukashii* ; it is very difficult.

*Goku chiisai kodomo* ; very small children.

**264.** The gerund of an adjective or verb followed by *shiyō ga nai* or *shikata ga nai* which means literally, 'there is nothing to be done' 'there is no help for it' is a very common Japanese idiom and corresponds to 'exceedingly' 'awfully':

*Atsūkute shiyō ga nai* ; it is awfully hot.

*Kutabirete shikata ga nai* ; 'I am awfully tired' or 'I am so tired I don't know what to do'.

**265.** When other negative verbal expressions follow the gerund we often have sentences with a superlative meaning which may be translated by 'so' or 'too—to'.

*Ano hito wa byōki de arukemasen* ; he is so ill he cannot walk.

*Kurakute mie-nai* ; it is too dark to see.

**266.** 'Too', followed by an adjective, after which an infinitive is not found (as it is in the last example), is translated by : a) *amari* followed by the adjective ; or b) the stem of the adjective and the verb *sugiru*.

This bottle is too big ; *kono bin wa amari ōkii*, or *kono bin wa ōki-sugimasu*.

'Too much' is translated by *yokei*, *sugiru*, or *ammari* :

This is too much ; *kore wa yokei da*.

You drink too much tea ; *anata wa o cha wo nomi-sugimasu*.

Don't drink too much tea ; *ammari o cha wo nonde wa ikemasen*.

**267.** 'As—as possible' is translated by *dekiru dake* or *naru-take* :

Run to the house as fast as you can ; *dekiru dake hayaku uchi e kakete itte o kure*.

**268.** Other expressions with a superlative meaning are to be found in the Vocabulary, Part III, under the words, *konna*, *sonna*, *anna*, *donna*, *makoto*, *jitsū*, *baka*, *dōmo*, *zutto*.

**269.** 'Not very' 'not so very' may be rendered by *amari*, *sonna ni* or *sō* with a negative verb :

It isn't very interesting ; *amari omoshiroku nai*.

He is not so very old ; *sonna ni toshiyori de wa arimasen*.

**270.** 'Fairly' 'moderately' 'rather', etc. are translated by *daibu* or *kanari*.

It is pretty cold this morning ; *kesa wa daibu samui*.

## CHAPTER V.

## NUMERALS.

## CARDINAL NUMBERS.

271. In the first ten numbers there are three different sets of numerals.

1	<i>ichi</i>	<i>hitotsū</i>	<i>hii</i>
2	<i>ni</i>	<i>fūtatsū</i>	<i>fū</i>
3	<i>san</i>	<i>mitsū</i> (coll. <i>mittsū</i> )	<i>mii</i>
4	<i>shi</i> (or <i>yo</i> or <i>yon</i> )	<i>yotsū</i> (coll. <i>yottsū</i> )	<i>yō</i>
5	<i>go</i>	<i>itsutsū</i>	<i>ii</i> or ( <i>itsū</i> )
6	<i>roku</i>	<i>muttsū</i> (coll. <i>muttsū</i> )	<i>mū</i>
7	<i>shichi</i> (or <i>nana</i> )	<i>nanatsū</i>	<i>nana</i>
8	<i>hachi</i>	<i>yatsū</i> (coll. <i>yattsū</i> )	<i>yā</i> (or <i>yawa</i> )
9	<i>ku</i> (or <i>kyū</i> )	<i>kokonotsū</i>	<i>kokono</i> (or <i>kono</i> or <i>koko</i> )
10	<i>jū</i>	<i>tō</i> ( <i>to</i> in comp.)	<i>tō</i>
11	<i>jū-ichi</i>	<i>jū-ichi</i>	<i>jū-ichi</i>
12	<i>jū-ni</i>	<i>jū-ni</i>	<i>jū-ni</i>
	etc.	etc.	etc.

20	<i>ni-jū</i>	100	<i>hyaku</i>
21	<i>ni-jū-ichi</i>	200	<i>ni-hyaku</i>
22	<i>ni-jū-ni</i>	300	<i>sam-byaku</i>
23	<i>ni-jū-san</i>	600	<i>rop-pyaku</i>
30	<i>san-jū</i>	800	<i>hap-pyaku</i>
31	<i>san-jū-ichi</i>	1000	<i>sen</i>
32	<i>san-jū-ni</i>	2000	<i>ni-sen</i>
40	<i>shi-jū</i> (or <i>yon-jū</i> )	3000	<i>san-zen</i>
50	<i>go-jū</i>	10000	<i>ichi-man</i>
60	<i>roku-jū</i>	20000	<i>ni-man</i>
70	<i>shichi-jū</i> (or <i>nana-jū</i> )	100000	<i>jū-man</i>
80	<i>hachi-jū</i>	1000000	<i>hyaku-man</i>
90	<i>ku-jū</i> (or <i>kyū-jū</i> )	0	<i>rei</i>

272. *Shi* four, is often avoided on account of its being homonymous with *shi* death. The combination *shi-nin* is particularly objectionable and is never used in the sense of four persons ;\* see 281.

The following nouns are also preceded by *yo* instead of *shi* : *ban* number,

\*However if any other numeral intervenes between *shi* and *nin*, *shi* may be used ; e.g. : *shi-go-nin*, four or five persons.



*dai* auxiliary numeral for carriages, *do* times or degrees, *ji* o'clock, *nen* year, *ri* Japanese mile. The word *rin* 1/10 *sen*, takes either *yo* or *yon*; and the word *sen* 1/100 *yen*, generally takes *yon*.

**273.** On account of the great similarity of the sounds *shi* four and *shichi* seven, *yo* (or *yon*) is often used instead of *shi*, (see **272**), and *nana* instead of *shichi* in order to avoid the possibility of a mistake: this is especially the case when speaking of money. In like circumstances, *ku* is often replaced by *kyū*, perhaps on account of its similarity with *roku*.

**274.** Remnants of the second set of numerals above ten are to be found in the words, *hatachi* twenty years, *hatsūka* the twentieth day, and *misoka* the last day of the month (lit. the thirtieth day).

**275.** The third set of numerals is used in counting over things, e.g. linen to be sent to the wash: one, two, three....*hii*, *fū*, *mii*....

**276.** In other cases the set to be used depends on the noun to which the numeral refers:

1) A few nouns take the first set without any auxiliary numeral; in this case the numeral precedes the noun: e.g. two *yen ni-yen*; fifty *sen go-jis-sen*; three o'clock *san-ji*: six hours *roku-jikan*. These nouns are all units of time, money, weight, or measure; the commonest are: *nen* year; *shūkan* week; *jikan* hour; *ji* o'clock; *fun* minute; *byō* second; *yen*; *sen*; *rin* 1/10 of a *sen*; *ri* Japanese mile; *shaku* foot; *sun* inch; *bu* 1/10 of *sun* or other units; *kin* pound (lb.); *wari* 10 per cent; *hen*, *do*, *tabi* a time; *kai* storey; *gyō* row.

2) Most nouns take the first set with an auxiliary numeral; in this case the usual order is: noun, numeral, auxiliary numeral: e.g. six men *hito roku-nin*; eight plates *sara hachi-mai*; three books *hon san-satsu*. You may also say: *roku-nin no hito*, etc.; in complete sentences the *no* may be dropped, *Ano heya ni roku-nin hito ga iru* there are six men in that room.

3) A good many nouns take the second set; the numeral is generally placed after the noun: e.g. two eggs *tamago fūtatsu*; three chairs *isu mittsu*; four boxes *hako yottsu*. You may also say: *fūtatsu no tamago*, etc.

4) A few nouns take the second set after suppressing the final *tsū*; 1 *hito*, 2 *fūta*, 3 *mi*, 4 *yo*, 5 *itsu*, 6 *mu*, 7 *nana*, 8 *ya*, 9 *kokono*, 10 *to*: the numeral comes before the noun: e.g. two nights *fūta-ban*; three boxfuls *mi-hako*; eight months *ya-tsuki*. The commonest nouns used in this way are: *tsuki* month; *ban* night; *ma* room; *fūkuro* bagful; *hako* boxful; *yama* heap; *soroi* set; *suji* line; *kumi* set; *kire* slice; *sara* plateful; *saji* spoonful; *ashi* step; *tsutsumi* packet; *hari* stitch; *shina* article; *iro* kind; *tokoro* place; *bin* bottleful; *tabi* time. Certain nouns, used figuratively like *anshin*, *kuchi*, *kurō*, *me*, etc. may take *hito*-, but never *fūta*-, *mi*-, etc.

**277.** Questions relating to number are asked in different ways according to how the numerals are used in the simple affirmative (**276**). In general when

the first set of numerals is used in the affirmative, it may be replaced by either *iku* or *nan* in the interrogation; the second set is replaced by *ikutsū*; the abbreviated second set by *iku*. Taking the same examples as above, we have: 1) *iku-yen*? how many yen? *nan-sen*? how many sen? *iku-ji*? what o'clock? *nan-jikan*? how many hours? 2) *hito iku-nin*? how many men? *sara nam-mai*? how many plates? *hon iku-satsū*? how many books? 3) *tamago ikutsū*? how many eggs? *isu ikutsū*? how many chairs? *hako ikutsū*? how many boxes? 4) *iku-ban*? how many nights? *iku-hako*? how many boxfuls? *iku-tsūki*? how many months?

**278.** Some nouns may be used in more than one way; thus: we have *hako hitotsū*, and *hito-hako*. There is, however, a slight difference in the meanings of these two expressions; the first means 'one box', the second 'one boxful'.

**279.** When a postposition is used, it comes immediately after the noun: *isu wo fūtatsū katta*; I bought two chairs.

**280.** When a numeral of the first set is followed by a noun or an auxiliary numeral (276, 1, 2), the end sound of the numeral and the first sound of the noun (or auxiliary numeral) may either or both suffer modifications as shown in the following table:

Before <i>ch, t</i> or <i>ts</i>	<i>ichi</i>	becomes	<i>it-</i>	
	<i>hachi</i>	"	<i>hat-</i>	
	<i>jū</i>	"	<i>jit-</i>	
Before <i>f</i> or <i>h</i>	<i>ichi</i>	"	<i>ip-</i> ;	the <i>f</i> (or <i>h</i> ) itself changes to <i>p</i>
	<i>san</i>	"	<i>sam-</i> ;	" " " " " " " " <i>p</i> or <i>b</i>
	<i>roku</i>	"	<i>rop-</i> ;	" " " " " " " " <i>p</i>
	<i>jū</i>	"	<i>jip-</i> ;	" " " " " " " " <i>p</i>
	<i>hyaku</i>	"	<i>hyap-</i> ;	" " " " " " " " <i>p</i>
	<i>sen</i>	"	<i>sem-</i> ;	" " " " " " " " <i>p</i> or <i>b</i>
Before <i>k</i>	<i>ichi</i>	"	<i>ik-</i>	
	<i>roku</i>	"	<i>rok-</i>	
	<i>hachi</i>	"	<i>hak-</i> (seldom)	
	<i>jū</i>	"	<i>jik-</i>	
	<i>hyaku</i>	"	<i>hyak-</i>	
<i>k</i> after	<i>san</i> or <i>sen</i>	generally changes to <i>g</i>		
Before <i>m</i> or <i>b</i>	<i>san</i>	becomes	<i>sam-</i>	
	<i>sen</i>	"	<i>sem-</i>	
Before <i>s</i> or <i>sh</i>	<i>ichi</i>	"	<i>is-</i>	
	<i>hachi</i>	"	<i>has-</i>	
	<i>jū</i>	"	<i>jis-</i>	
<i>s</i> after	<i>san</i> or <i>sen</i>	generally changes to <i>z</i>		
<i>sh</i> after	<i>san</i> or <i>sen</i>	generally changes to <i>j</i>		



For the purposes of these letter changes, *wa* is sometimes treated like an *h* as in *ichi-wa* or *ip-pa*, *sam-ba*, *rop-pa*, *jip-pa*, *hyap-pa* and *sem-ba*, from *wa* the auxiliary numeral for birds, and bundles of things tied together.

The interrogative pronoun *nan* and the word *han* half, are treated for the purposes of these letter changes like *san*.

#### AUXILIARY NUMERALS.

**281.** The following are the commonest auxiliary numerals. In each case the irregularities or special euphonic changes are noted :

**NIN** for men : 1 *hitori*, 2 *fütari*, 3 *san-nin*, 4 *yottari* or *yo-nin*, 5 *go-nin*, 6 *roku-nin*, etc., *ikutari* ? *iku-nin* ? *nan-nin* ?

**HON** for long cylindrical things, such as sticks, trees, pens, bottles, etc., also for letters : 1 *ip-pon*, 3 *sam-bon*, 6 *rop-pon*, 10 *jip-pon*, 100 *hyap-pon*, 1000 *sem-bon*, *nam-bon* ?

**MAI** for flat things such as sheets of paper, boards, coats, rugs, plates, etc.: 3 *sam-mai*, 1000 *sem-mai*, *nam-mai* ?

**HIKI** for animals : 1 *ip-piki*, 3 *sam-biki*, 6 *rop-piki*, 10 *jip-piki*, 100 *hyap-piki*, 1000 *sem-biki*, *nam-biki* ?

**WA** for birds ; also for bunches of things tied together : 1 *ichi-wa* or *ip-pa*, 3 *sam-ba*, 6 *roku-wa* or *rop-pa*, 10 *jip-pa*, 100 *hyap-pa*, 1000 *sem-ba*, *nam-ba* ?

**DAI** for jinrikishas, carriages, etc.: 4 *yo-dai*.

**CHŌ** for things with handles, knives, tools, jinrikishas, etc.: 1 *it-chō*, 8 *hat-chō*, 10 *jit-chō*.

**HAI** for glassfuls, cupfuls, etc.: 1 *ip-pai*, 3 *sam-bai*, 6 *rop-pai*, 10 *jip-pai*, 100 *hyap-pai*, 1000 *sem-bai*, *nam-bai* ?

**FUKU** for scrolls, sips of tea, whiffs of tobacco, etc.: 1 *ip-puku*, 3 *sam-buku*, 6 *rop-puku*, 10 *jip-puku*, 100 *hyap-puku*, 1000 *sem-buku*, *nam-buku* ?

**SATSU** for books : 1 *is-satsū*, 3 *san-satsū*, 8 *has-satsū*, 10 *jis-satsū*, 1000 *sen-satsū*, *nan-satsū* ?

**KEN** for houses, buildings, etc.: 1 *ik-ken*, 3 *san-gen*, 6 *rok-ken*, 10 *jik-ken*, 100 *hyak-ken*, 1000 *sen-gen*, *nan-gen* ?

**SOKU** for pairs of boots, clogs, socks, etc.: 1 *is-soku*, 3 *san-zoku*, 8 *has-soku*, 10 *jis-soku*, 1000 *sen-zoku*, *nan-zoku* ?

**TSUI** for pairs of things such as vases, etc.: 1 *it-tsui*, 8 *hat-tsui*, 10 *jit-tsui*.

**SŌ** for boats, ships, etc.: 1 *is-sō*, 3 *san-zō* or *san-sō*, 8 *has-sō*, 10 *jis-sō*, 1000 *sen-zō*, *nan-zō* ? *nan-sō* ?

**KO** (less commonly *ka*) for various things that have no special auxiliary numeral, as bundles, parcels, etc.: 1 *ik-ko*, 3 *san-ko*, 6 *rok-ko*, 10 *jik-ko*, 100 *hyak-ko*, 1000 *sen-ko*, *nan-ko* ? 1 *ik-ka*, 3 *san-ka*, 6 *rok-ka*, 10 *jik-ka*, 100 *hyak-ka*, 1000 *sen-ka*, *nan-ka* ?

**282.** The construction with the noun is usually as follows: noun, (postposition *ga*, *mo*, *wa*, or *wo*, if used), numeral, auxiliary numeral, (postposition *ka* or *yori*, if used);\* e.g.: six postcards *hagaki roku-mai*; please give me two postcards, *hagaki wo ni-mai kudasai*; I'll give him two pencils or two notebooks, *empitsū ni-hon ka chōmen (wo) ni-satsū ageyō*.

**283.** When you don't know which is the proper auxiliary numeral to use, you had better employ the second set of numerals. It may not be correct Japanese, but you will be understood; whereas if you use an incorrect auxiliary numeral you may not be understood at all. For instance, if instead of *sara ni-mai* (two plates) you say *sara fūtatsū*, it is not usual, but it is intelligible: *sara ni-hon* would be unintelligible.

#### ORDINAL NUMBERS.

**284.** Ordinal numbers are not much used in Japanese: the cardinals are often used instead.

**285.** Ordinal numbers are formed by adding *bam-me* to the first set of numerals or *me* to the second: *sam-bam-me* the third; *nanatsū-me* the seventh.

**286.** These ordinals may both be followed by postpositions: *sam-bam-me kara shichi-bam-me made* or *mitsū-me kara nanatsū-me made*, from the third to the seventh.

**287.** When the ordinal number is used before a noun, we may again classify the cases as in **276**.

In the case of the nouns that belong to classes 1) and 4), *me* is added to the noun: *roku-jikam-me* the sixth hour; *mi-hako-me* the third boxful.

In classes 2) and 3), the ordinal number derived from the first set of numerals is put first, then the postposition *no*, and after that comes the noun: e.g. *roku-bam-me no hito* the sixth man; *hachi-bam-me no sara* the eighth plate; *sam-bam-me no isu* the third chair. In the case of class 2) the auxiliary numeral is often used instead of *ban*, thus: *roku-nim-me no hito* the sixth man; *ni-kem-me no uchi* the second house. Sometimes, especially in the case of class 3), instead of using the ordinal number derived from the first set of numerals, the ordinal derived from the second set is used and followed as above by *no* and the noun; e.g. *mitsū-me no isu* the third chair.

**288.** *Ichi-bam-me no*, *ni-bam-me no*, etc., *hitotsū-me no*, *fūtatsū-me no*, etc. when not followed by a noun, mean 'the first one' 'the second one' etc. (**188**).

**289.** The following expressions are related to this subject: *hajime no* the first one; *ichi-ban shimai no* the last one; *tsugi no* the next one; *ato no* the one after; *mae no* the one before.

---

\*When the postposition is *de*, *e*, *made*, or *ni* the construction is as follows: two dogs barked at me *ni-hiki no inu ni hoerareta*.



## DATES.

**290.** Dates are expressed in Japanese by naming first the year, then the month and then the day. E.g.: 26th of July, 1917; *Taishō roku-nen, shichi-gatsū, ni-jū-roku-nichi*.

**291.** The Japanese count their years by eras which correspond to the reign of each sovereign. The present era is called *Taishō* and began on the 31st July, 1912. To pass from the Christian era to the era of *Taishō* and vice versa, subtract or add 1911. Before the *Taishō* era was the era of *Meiji*, which began in 1868 and ended at the death of the late Emperor on the 30th July, 1912. To pass from the Christian era to the era of *Meiji* or vice versa, subtract or add 1867. The year is expressed by naming first the era, then the cardinal number of the year and then the word *nen* year; thus A.D. 1917 is *Taishō roku-nen*.

**292.** In a cardinal sense we may say either *ichi-nen* or *ik-ka-nen* one year, *ni-nen* or *ni-ka-nen* two years, etc.

**293.** The months of the year (excepting January) have no proper names in Japanese: they are distinguished merely by a number. We give below the numerals combined with month (*tsūki*, *getsū* or *gatsū*) in both a cardinal and an ordinal sense.

CARDINAL			ORDINAL	
<i>Hito-tsūki</i>	or <i>ik-ka-getsū</i>	1 month	<i>shō-gatsū</i> <i>ichi-gatsū</i> <i>ichi-getsū</i>	January (1st month of the year)
<i>Fūta-tsūki</i>	or <i>ni-ka-getsū</i>	2 months	<i>ni-gatsū</i>	February (2nd)
<i>Mi-tsūki</i>	or <i>san-ka-getsū</i>	3 months	<i>san-gatsū</i>	March (3rd)
<i>Yo-tsūki</i>	or <i>shi-ka-getsū</i>	4 months	<i>shi-gatsū</i>	April (4th)
<i>Itsu-tsūki</i>	or <i>go-ka-getsū</i>	5 months	<i>go-gatsū</i>	May (5th)
<i>Mu-tsūki</i>	or <i>rok-ka-getsū</i>	6 months	<i>roku-gatsū</i>	June (6th)
<i>Nana-tsūki</i>	or <i>shichi-ka-getsū</i>	7 months	<i>shichi-gatsū</i>	July (7th)
<i>Ya-tsūki</i>	or <i>hak-ka-getsū</i>	8 months	<i>hachi-gatsū</i>	August (8th)
<i>Kokono-tsūki</i>	or <i>ku-ka-getsū</i>	9 months	<i>ku-gatsū</i>	September (9th)
<i>To-tsūki</i>	or <i>jik-ka-getsū</i>	10 months	<i>jū-gatsū</i>	October (10th)
<i>Jū-ik-ka-getsū</i>		11 months	<i>jū-ichi-gatsū</i>	November (11th)
<i>Jū-ni-ka-getsū</i>		12 months	<i>jū-ni-gatsū</i>	December (12th)

**294.** The day of the month is named as follows :

<i>ichi-nichi</i>		<i>jū-ichi-nichi</i>	11th	<i>ni-jū-ni-nichi</i>	22nd
<i>tsuitachi</i>	1st	<i>jū-ni-nichi</i>	12th	<i>ni-jū-sa(n)-nichi</i>	23rd
<i>futsūka</i>	2nd	<i>jū-sa(n)-nichi</i>	13th	<i>ni-jū-yokka</i>	24th
<i>mikka</i>	3rd	<i>jū-yokka</i>	14th	<i>ni-jū-go-nichi</i>	25th
<i>yokka</i>	4th	<i>jū-go-nichi</i>	15th	<i>ni-jū-roku-nichi</i>	26th
<i>itsūka</i>	5th	<i>jū-roku-nichi</i>	16th	<i>ni-jū-shichi-nichi</i>	27th
<i>muika</i>	6th	<i>jū-shichi-nichi</i>	17th	<i>ni-jū-hachi-nichi</i>	28th
<i>nannuka</i>	7th	<i>jū-hachi-nichi</i>	18th	<i>ni-jū-ku-nichi</i>	29th
<i>yōka</i>	8th	<i>jū-ku-nichi</i>	19th	<i>san-jū-nichi</i>	30th
<i>kokonoka</i>	9th	<i>hatsūka</i>	20th	<i>san-jū-ichi-nichi</i>	31st
<i>tōka</i>	10th	<i>ni-jū-ichi-nichi</i>	21st		

The last day of the month (whether 30th or 31st) is called *misoka* and the last day of the year *ō-misoka*.

**295.** The numerals for the days of the month are used also in a cardinal sense : thus *ichi-nichi* means 'one day'; *futsūka* 'two days'; etc. *Nan-nichi?* *iku-nichi?* or *ikka?* 'how many days?' or 'what day of the month?'

Note : you cannot say *tsuitachi* for 'one day'.

**296.** When speaking of years, months or days in an ordinal sense but without reference to date, the suffix *-me* is used ; thus : the second year *ni-nem-me* ; the third month *mi-tsūki-me* or *san-ka-getsū-me* ; the fourth day *yokka-me*. 'The first' may be translated by *hajime no*.

**297.** The week has not as much importance in Japan as it has in Europe ; the names of the days of the week are :

<i>Nichiyō(-bi)</i>	Sunday	from <i>nichi</i>	sun.
<i>Getsuyō(-bi)</i>	Monday	from <i>getsū</i>	moon.
<i>Kayō(-bi)</i>	Tuesday	from <i>ka</i>	fire.
<i>Suiyō(-bi)</i>	Wednesday	from <i>sui</i>	water.
<i>Mokuyō(-bi)</i>	Thursday	from <i>moku</i>	tree.
<i>Kinyō(-bi)</i>	Friday	from <i>kin</i>	metal.
<i>Doyō(-bi)</i>	Saturday	from <i>do</i>	earth.

#### TIME.

**298.** The time of day is rendered by means of the words *ji*, *fun*, *byō*, hour, minute, second.

*Ichiji jū-go-fun (sugi)* ; fifteen minutes past one, i.e. a quarter past one.

*Niji san-jū-go-fun* ; two thirty-five, i.e. twenty-five minutes to three.

**299.** The word *sugi* past, is used more frequently when the number of minutes is small, rarely when the number of minutes is large.



When only a few minutes are wanting to the hour we may also use a construction with *mae* before, thus : *ichi-ji go-jip-pun* or *ni-ji jip-pun mae* ; 'one fifty' or 'ten minutes to two'.

The following expression is also worthy of note : *jip-pun de ni-ji* ten minutes to two. The idea here seems to be that 'only ten minutes are wanting'.

**300.** When the time is so many minutes past twelve, the Japanese often say zero o'clock (*rei-ji*) instead of twelve o'clock (*jū-ni-ji*). Ten past twelve ; *rei-ji jip-pun* or *jū-ni-ji jip-pun*.

**301.** *Ante meridian* and *post meridian* are expressed respectively by *gozen* and *gogo*. *Asa* morning, *hiru* middle of the day, *ban* evening and *yoru* night, are also used. All these words, often followed by the postposition *no*, are placed before the number of hours.

*Gogo no shichi-ji ni-jū-go-fun* or *ban no shichi-ji ni-jū-go-fun* ; 7.25 P.M.

The expressions, *hiru mae* forenoon, and *hiru kara* or *hiru sugi* afternoon, are often used to express the time of day, but rarely when specifying the hour.

**302.** The word *fun* preceded by a numeral has the following irregularities : 1 *ip-pun*, 3 *sam-pun*, 6 *rop-pun*, 10 *jip-pun*. (See 280).

**303.** Except when speaking of a railway time-table, or such like things, instead of 'thirty minutes' you say 'half' in Japanese just as in English : *san-ji han*, 'half past three'. A 'quarter', however, is always 'fifteen minutes' *jū-go-fun*, in Japanese.

**304.** When speaking of duration, the word *kan* must be added to *ji*, *fun*, *byō* : *san-ji-kan* three hours ; *jip-pun-kan* ten minutes. *Kan* may also be added to other units of time when used in this sense : *mi-tsūki*, *mi-tsūki-kan*, *san-ka-getsū* and *san-ka-getsū-kan* all mean 'three months'.

#### VARIOUS NUMERICAL EXPRESSIONS.

**305. Fractional numbers.** The way to express fractional numbers will be understood from the following examples :

1/3	<i>sam-bun no ichi</i>
3/4	<i>shi-bun no san</i>
A/B	<i>B-bun no A</i>

**306.** The word 'half' is *han*, or *hambun* when used substantively. The following examples will illustrate how these words are used :

*han-gin*, half a pound (lb.).

*han-nichi*, half a day.

*han-jikan*, half an hour.

*ichi-jikan han*, an hour and a half.

*ichi-ji han*, half past one.

*hambun de takusan* ; half will be enough.

*bin ni mizu ga hambun arimasu* ; the bottle is half full of water.

*ano nashi wo hambun tabete, hambun tomodachi ni yarimashita* ; I ate half that pear and I gave half to my friend.

**307.** The word *bu*, when not otherwise qualified, means the tenth part of another unit.

**308. Per centage.** The Japanese unit *wari* is not a 'per cent' but a 'per ten'. Thus *ichi-wari, ni-wari*, etc. mean 'one per ten' 'two per ten', etc. i.e. 'ten per cent' 'twenty per cent', etc. The tenth part of the *wari* is a *bu* which therefore corresponds to our 'per cent'; *ichi-bu, ni-bu*, etc. is 'one per cent' 'two per cent', etc.

**309. Multiples** are expressed by the word *bai*, thus : *bai* double ; *sam-bai* three times as much ; *shi-bai* four times as much ; etc.

**310. Age.** The second set of numerals is used in speaking of ages ; exceptionally : 'twenty (years of age)' is *hatachi*.

*O ikutsu desu ka? yattsu (ni-jū-ichi) de gozaimasu* ; how old are you ? I am eight (twenty-one).

**311.** The Japanese count their ages by adding 1 on the first of January. A baby is 1 from birth until the New Year ; it becomes 2 then, even if only one day old.\*

**312.** This is the usual way of reckoning one's age ; it is called *kazoe-doshi* [*kazoe-ru* to count, *toshi* year]. If you wish to refer to complete years, in the European style, you prefix *maru* : *maru jū-roku*, sixteen (complete) years of age.

**313. House numbers.** The first set of numerals is used ; they are followed by *ban* if referring to the European part of the town, or by *ban-chi* if referring to the Japanese part.

**314. House storeys.** The storeys or floors of a house are named by means of the first set of numerals and the word *kai* ; *ni-kai* two floors, means in English 'the first floor' i.e. the floor above the ground floor ; *san-gai* is 'the second floor', etc.

**315. Vagueness** is often expressed in Japanese as in English by means of two numerals. In English these are joined by the conjunction 'or', in Japanese, as a rule, no conjunction is used. This construction is found in both the first and second set of numerals. E.g. two or three *ni-san* or *fūtatsu mitsu* ; thirty-four or thirty-five *san-jū-shi-go*.

**316.** The words 'several' and 'few' may often be translated in this way ; e.g. bring me a few pears *nashi wo mitsu yottsū motte kite kure*.

**317.** When two numerals are thus combined to indicate vagueness, the

\*The Japanese generally include the first and last units in the reckoning ; *tōka kara hatsūka* made from the tenth to the twentieth of the month is 11 days, not 10 days.



ordinary numerals often take the place of special words ; thus, although you never say *ni-nichi* for *futsūka* two days, and never *san-nichi* for *mikka* three days, you may say either *ni-san-nichi* or *futsūka mikka* for 'two or three days', etc.

**318.** 'About' before a numeral, is usually translated by *kurai*, *hodo* or *bakari* when it means approximate quantity ; by *goro* when it means approximate moment or date. E.g. about ten yen *jū-yen gurai* ; about three o'clock *san-ji goro* ; about the second of next month *raigetsū no futsūka goro*.

---

## CHAPTER VI.

---

### PRONOUNS.

---

#### PERSONAL, POSSESSIVE AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

**319.** Personal and possessive pronouns are very little used in Japanese. The use of honorific or humble words, or the context shows what person is meant.

**320.** In isolated sentences such as those found in dictionaries, grammars, etc., personal pronouns are used more freely than they are in real life.

**321.** When necessary, the personal pronouns may be translated as follows :

I : *watakūshi* (polite), frequently contracted to *watashi*, or even (by women) to *atashi* ; *boku* (used by young men and boys).

WE : (others and I) *watakūshi-domo* ; (you and I) *anata to watakūshi (to)*.

YOU : (singular) *anata* (polite) ; *kimi* (corresponding to *boku*) ; *omae san* ; *omae* (used only to one's inferiors).

YOU : (plural) *anata-gata*, *omae-tachi*, *omae-san-tachi*.

HE, SHE : *ano (o) kata* (polite) that person ; *ano hito* that person ; *ano otoko* that man ; *ano onna* that woman ; *are* that man (or woman).

IT : *are*, *kore*, *sore*.

THEY : (persons) *ano hito-tachi* ; (things) *are*, *kore*, *sore*.

In the 3rd person *kono* 'this' or *sono* 'that' (near) may be substituted for *ano* 'that' (far).

**322.** 'They say' is rendered by *sō da* or *to iu hanashi da*. See 166, 4.

**323.** Personal pronouns are nouns and may be followed by any of the post-positions.

**324.** Possessive pronouns are formed by adding *no* to the personal pronouns: they become quasi-adjectives. Thus: *anata no* means 'your'; it may also mean 'yours'. See **188**.

**325.** 'My' and 'our' are often translated by *uchi no* (lit. of the house): *uchi no inu* our dog.

**326.** The word 'self' is often not translated into Japanese (**149**). When necessary it may be rendered by *jibun* or *hitori* used as adverbs, and usually followed by *de*. In speaking respectfully to or of a person, we say *go jibun* or *o hitori*. 'Of itself' meaning 'spontaneously' may be translated by *shizen ni*:

*Shizen ni kusa ga haemashita*; the grass grew of itself, (I didn't sow any seed).

**327.** Reciprocity may be expressed when necessary by *(o) tagai*:

*O tagai ni naka yoku shimashō*; let us be on good terms with each other.

#### RELATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADVERBS.

**328.** There are no relative pronouns in Japanese.

Sentences with relative pronouns are generally translated as follows: the relative pronoun is omitted, and the relative clause is placed before the noun to which the pronoun refers. It thus becomes a verbal phrase used attributively (**233**). The subject of the relative clause, if expressed, is followed by the postposition *no* or *ga*.

*Ano yama no ue ni haete iru ōki na matsu*; the large pine-tree which grows on the top of that mountain.

*Shi-nakereba nara-nai koto desū*; it is a thing which must be done.

*Watakushi no mita hito wa*, or *watakushi ga mita hito wa*; the person that I saw.

**329.** The following examples will serve to show how to translate a relative clause preceded by a preposition:

That is the company for which I am working; *are ga watakushi no hataraitte iru kaisha desū*.

That is the town to which I am going; *sore ga watakushi no iku machi desū*.

I have read the book in which that tale occurs; *sono hanashi no kaite aru hon wo yomimashita*.

The steamer by which he sailed is the biggest of the company; *ano hito no notta fune wa sono kaisha no ichiban ōkii fune desū*.

**330.** In the relative clause only verbs in the present and past tenses are used; and of these tenses, the polite forms, i.e. those ending in *masū*, are not often met with.



**331.** The passive is not often used in Japanese in this kind of construction ; when a passive verb is found in English in a relative clause, the sentence is generally changed to avoid this construction in Japanese :

1) The passive may be changed into the active :

The tree (that was) planted by my father ; *chichi ga ueta ki*, i.e. the tree that my father planted.

2) Especially worthy of notice is the translation of 'called' or 'named' by *to iu* :

*Suzuki to iu hito* ; a man called Suzuki, (more lit. a man they call Suzuki).

3) The passive is, however, occasionally used :

*Inu wo korosareta hito wa ano hito desū* ; that is the man whose dog was killed.

*Tarō ni kowasareta koppu wa kinō katta bakari no desū* ; the tumbler which Tarō broke was the one I had only just bought yesterday.

**332.** Relative clauses are often translated in other ways, some of which are shown in the following examples :

*Mune no waruku naru hanashi* ; a story which it makes one feel sick to listen to.

*Sono meishi no kata* ; the gentleman who left that card.

*Musūme ga hitori atte O Haru to mōshimasū* ; he has one daughter whose name is O Haru.

**333.** The relative pronoun 'what', which is equivalent to 'the thing which', is translated by *koto* or *mono* (sometimes contracted to *no*) :

*Kinō mita koto* ; what I saw yesterday.

*Anata no ossharu no wa hontō desū* ; what you say is quite true.

**334.** 'Where' as a relative is often translated by *tokoro* :

Is this where we take the boat ? *koko ga fune ni noru tokoro desū ka* ?

**335.** 'When' as a relative is translated in various ways :

1) In the sense of 'at the time', by *toki* (*ni*) or *jibun* (*ni*) :

When I lived in Yokohama ; *Yokohama ni ita toki* (*ni*).

2) In the sense of 'by the time', by *made ni* :

It will be done when you come ; *o-ide nasaru made ni kitto dekite imasū*.

3) In the sense of 'after' or 'as soon as'.

a) In general statements—first form of the present and *to*.

When the bell rings the train starts ; *kane ga naru to kisha ga deru*.

b) Referring to the future—past conditional.

When you have finished come to my room ; *sundara watashi no heya ni o-ide*.

c) Referring to the past—generally by first form of the present and *to* ; sometimes by the past conditional.

When he arrived it started to rain ; *ano hito ga kuru to ame ga furi-dashita*.

When I told him what you said he got very angry ; *oshatta koto wo ittara taihen okorimashita*.

## DEMONSTRATIVE, INTERROGATIVE AND INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND ADVERBS.

336. The principal demonstrative, interrogative and indefinite pronouns and adverbs are shown in the following tables:

<i>kore</i> <i>kono</i> <i>konna</i> <i>kô ni</i> <i>kô</i> <i>koko</i> <i>kochi(ra)</i> <i>koko-ira</i>	this (noun) this (adj.) { this kind of, such as this } thus, like this here hereabouts	<i>sore</i> <i>sono</i> <i>sonna</i> <i>sô ni</i> <i>sô</i> <i>soko</i> <i>sochi(ra)</i> <i>soko-ira</i>	that (near), (noun) that (near), (adj.) { that kind of, such as that } like that there (near) thereabouts (near)	<i>are</i> <i>ano</i> <i>anna</i> <i>â ni</i> <i>â</i> <i>asoko</i> <i>achi(ra)</i> <i>asoko-ira</i> <i>anata</i>	that (far), (noun) that (far), (adj.) { that kind of, such as that } like that there (far) thereabouts (far) you	<i>dore?</i> <i>dono?</i> <i>donna?</i> <i>dô ni?</i> <i>dô?</i> <i>doko?</i> <i>dochi(ra)?</i> <i>doko-ira?</i> <i>donata?</i>	which? (noun) which? (adj.) { what kind of? what—like? } how? where? whereabouts? who? (polite)
---	--	---	--	---	---	---	--

<i>dare?</i> <i>donata?</i> <i>dore?</i> <i>dochi(ra)?</i> <i>dô?</i> <i>doko?</i> <i>doko ni?</i> <i>itsû?</i> <i>ikura?</i> <i>ikutsû?</i> <i>iku a.n.?</i> <i>nan a.n.?</i> <i>nani?</i>	who? who? (polite) which? where? which? how? where? where? when? how much? how many? how many? what?	<i>dare ka</i> <i>donata ka</i> <i>dore ka</i> <i>dochi ka</i> <i>dô ka</i> <i>doko ka</i> <i>doko ni ka</i> <i>itsû ka</i> <i>ikura ka</i> <i>ikutsû</i> <i>iku a.n.?</i> <i>nan a.n.?</i> <i>nani ka</i>	somebody or other somebody or other (polite) one or other, some one thing one or the other somehow or other somewhere or other somewhere or other some time or other - a certain amount something or other	<i>dare mo</i> <i>donata mo</i> <i>dore mo</i> <i>dochi mo</i> <i>dô mo</i> <i>doko mo</i> <i>doko ni mo</i> <i>itsû mo</i> <i>ikura mo</i> <i>ikutsû mo</i> <i>iku a.n. mo</i> <i>nan a.n. mo</i> <i>nani mo</i>	(with neg.) no- body (with neg.) no- body (polite) every one, (with neg.) none both, (with neg.) neither somehow (with neg.) no- (with neg.) no- where where any time, always any amount any number any number (with neg.) no- thing	<i>dare de mo</i> <i>donata de mo</i> <i>dore de mo</i> <i>dochi de mo</i> <i>dô de mo</i> <i>doko de mo</i> <i>doko ni de mo</i> <i>itsû de mo</i> <i>ikura de mo</i> <i>ikutsû de mo</i> <i>iku a.n. de mo</i> <i>nan a.n. de mo</i> <i>nan de mo</i>	anybody, every- body anybody, every- body (polite) either one, any one anywhere, any one anyhow anywhere, every- where anywhere, every- where any time what- ever, always any amount whatever any number whatever any number whatever anything, every- thing
---	---	--	---	---	--	---	--



**337.** The English translations given in the above tables only show very imperfectly how these pronouns are used in Japanese. The numerous examples found in the Vocabulary, (Part III), and in Exercises **74, 75, 76** and **77** (Part I), should be carefully studied. In the Vocabulary under the word *dare*, for instance, examples of the other expressions in that line, *dare ka*, *dare mo* and *dare de mo* will be found; in Exercise **75**, for instance, examples of *dare ka*, *donata ka*, and the other expressions in that column are grouped together so as to show clearly the force of *ka* in these combinations.

**338.** *Kochi*, *sochi*, *achi*, and *dochi* are generally pronounced *kotchi*, *sotchi*, *atchi*, and *dotchi*.

**339.** *Asoko* is very often corrupted to *asūko*, and *nani* is frequently contracted to *nan*.

**340.** The nouns *dore* and *dotchi* both correspond to the interrogative 'which?' but *dore* is used when referring to more than two, and *dotchi* when speaking of two things only. *Dono* is an adjective, it also means 'which?' and refers to more than two things.

*Nihon de dore ga ichiban takai yama desū ka?* which is the highest mountain in Japan?

*O cha to kōhii to dotchi ga o sūki desū?* which would you like, tea or coffee?

*Dono hon wo yondara ii deshō?* which book would you advise me to read?

**341.** Interrogatives in connection with numerals are explained in **277**.

**342.** Interrogative pronouns, when used as subject, take *ga*, never *wa*: *dare ga kimashita (ka)?* who has come?

**343.** *Kore*, *kono*, etc. refer to things near the speaker; *sore*, *sono*, etc. to things at some little distance or things connected with the 2nd person; *are*, *ano*, etc. to things still farther away. *Sore* is used when referring to something just said or done by the 2nd person.

**344.** *Kore*, *sore* and *are* may be followed by any postposition.

**345.** *Kore*, *sore* and *are* may denote time: *kore* is the present moment, so *kore kara* 'from now on' means 'in future'; *sore kara* 'after that' may refer to past or future; *are kara* 'after that' refers always to the past.

**346.** *Kono*, *sono*, *ano* and *dono* are often equivalent to *kore no*, etc.

**347.** *Kono* denotes time in the common expressions: *kono aida* (or *konaida*) 'a short time ago', (something recent, but past); *kono-goro* 'of late' (something recent which still continues).

**348.** *Kono gurai* 'about this much', *kore dake* 'this much', *kore hodo* 'so much as this', and the corresponding expressions in *sono*, *sore*, *ano*, *are*, *dono*, *dore* are often met with.

**349.** *Konna*, *sonna*, etc. used attributively, are often contemptuous. The meaning of the adverbial forms, *konna ni*, etc. is similar to a superlative and may be inferred from the following examples:

*Konna ni muzukashii shigoto wa deki-nai* ; I cannot do such difficult work as this.

*Sonna ni muzukashii no desū ka* ? is it as difficult as all that ?

*Sonna ni muzukashiku nai* ; it is not so very difficult.

**350.** *Kō* generally refers to something which is going to be said or done ; *sō* to something which has just been said or done.

*Watakushi wa kō kangaemasu* . . . ; this is what I think . . .

*Dare ga sō iimashita* ? who said so ?

*Sō shite wa ikemasen* ; don't do it like that.

**351.** *Dō* as an interrogative, can generally be, and often is, replaced by *ikaga* which is more polite.

*Ika hodo* is a polite substitute for *ikura*.

**352.** When inquiring about a place, *doko no* is generally used instead of *dono* :

*Doko no gakkō e ikimasu ka* ? to what school are you going ?

**353.** To ask the name of a thing we use *nan to* :

*Kono kudamono wa nan to iimasu ka* ? what do you call this fruit ?

## CHAPTER VII.

### HONORIFICS AND POLITE PHRASES.

**354.** The Japanese have the habit of distinguishing in their speech the actions and things of the 1st person (or related to the 1st person) to which they apply humble words, from the actions and things of the 2nd person (or related to the 2nd person) and to these they apply honorifics. They also take into account whether the act of the 1st person is related or not to the 2nd person, and whether the act of the 2nd person is related or not to the 1st. Thus, *itadaku* is 'I eat (something you have given me)'; but you would say *kesa gohan wo taberu to dekakemashita* I went out this morning immediately after eating my breakfast.

Even the relation of superiority or inferiority between the 2nd and 3rd persons is sometimes taken into consideration. Thus : *o tō-san ni o me ni kakete kudasai* please show it to your father ; but *musūko san ni misete kudasai* please show it to your son.

**355.** We may divide all verbs and nouns roughly into three classes : plain words, honorifics, and humble words.



The difference may exist in the words themselves which are depreciatory or exaltative, or in certain adjuncts which modify the meaning of the principal word.

**356.** Speaking broadly, humble words are used for the 1st person, honorifics are applied to the 2nd person and plain words are employed for the 3rd person.

Each case, however, must be judged on its merits. Thus, if a man is speaking to his own servant, he would probably use plain words for both the 1st and 2nd persons. On the other hand we often apply honorifics to the 3rd person if we want to show special respect, or if that 3rd person is present.

**357.** In this way, humble and honorific words in a great measure take the place of our personal and possessive pronouns, which, as before mentioned (**319**), are not much used in Japanese.

**358.** The following lists will give an idea of the more common humble and honorific verbs :

	HUMBLE	PLAIN	HONORIFIC
Be	<i>i'ru (oru)</i>	<i>i'ru (oru)</i>	{ <i>o-ide nasaru</i> <i>irassharu</i>
Come	{ <i>mairu</i> } { <i>agaru</i> }	<i>kuru</i>	{ <i>o-ide nasaru</i> <i>irassharu</i>
Do	{ <i>suru</i> } { <i>itasu</i> }	<i>suru</i>	<i>nasaru</i>
Drink	{ <i>itadaku</i> } { <i>chōdai suru</i> }	<i>nomu</i>	{ <i>meshi-agaru</i> <i>agaru</i>
Eat	{ <i>itadaku</i> } { <i>chōdai suru</i> }	{ <i>tabe'ru</i> } { <i>kuu</i> }	{ <i>meshi-agaru</i> <i>agaru</i>
Give	<i>age'ru</i>	<i>yaru</i>	{ <i>kudasaru</i> } (action in favour of <i>kure'ru*</i> [1st person] <i>o yari nasaru</i> (not in favour of [1st person])
Go	{ <i>mairu</i> } { <i>agaru</i> }	<i>iku</i>	{ <i>o-ide nasaru</i> <i>irassharu</i>
Inquire	<i>ukagau</i>	{ <i>tazune'ru</i> } { <i>kiku</i> }	{ <i>o tazune nasaru</i> <i>o kiki nasaru</i>
Know	<i>zonji'ru</i>	<i>shiru</i>	<i>go zonji de irassharu</i> ( <i>de aru</i> ,
Look	<i>haiken suru</i>	<i>mi'ru</i>	<i>goran nasaru</i> [or <i>de gozaru</i> ])
Meet	<i>o me ni kakaru</i>	<i>au</i>	<i>o ai nasaru</i>
Receive	{ <i>itadaku</i> } { <i>chōdai suru</i> }	{ <i>uke'ru</i> } { <i>morau</i> }	<i>o morai nasaru</i>

\**Kure'ru* is used only when speaking of the giving of an inferior, and in this sense it cannot be called an honorific ; it corresponds, however, to this column, inasmuch as it refers always to the act of the 2nd (or 3rd) person, and is never used in the 1st person.

	HUMBLE	PLAIN	HONORIFIC
Show	<i>o me ni kake'ru</i>	<i>mise'ru</i>	<i>{ o mise nasaru o mise kudasaru haiken sase'ru }</i> (action in favour of 1st p.)
Speak	<i>{ mōshi-age'ru mōsū }</i>	<i>{ iu hanasū }</i>	<i>ossharu</i>
Visit	<i>{ ukagau agaru }</i>	<i>tazune'ru</i>	<i>o tazune nasaru</i>

In the above table *nasaru* where it occurs may be replaced by *ni naru*, *de gozaru*, or, somewhat less politely, by *de aru*. The combination *goran de gozaru*, however, is not in use.

The above verbs in *nasaru* are polite but the plain imperative in *nasai* as *o-ide nasai*, *o yari nasai*, *goran nasai*, etc. is decidedly familiar. Say *kudasai* instead of *nasai*.

**359.** A plain verb may be made honorific by replacing the ordinary inflexions by the following periphrases : 1) *o*, 2) the stem of the verb, 3) *nasaru*, *ni naru* or *de gozaru* ; e.g. *mō o kaeri nasaimashita ka ?* *mō o kaeri ni narimashita ka ?* or *mō o kaeri de gozaimasū ka ?* have you already returned ?

Instead of *de gozaru*, *de aru* may be used, but the sentence is then appreciably less polite. *O dekake desū ka ?* 'are you going out ?' is, so far as politeness is concerned, about midway between *dekakemasū ka ?* and *o dekake de gozaimasū ka ?*\*

**360.** In the negative, the constructions in *de gozaru* and *de aru* are not much used ; when employed it is usual to put *wa* after the *de*.

Between the verbal stem and *de gozaru* or *de aru* you sometimes find *no hazu* or *no yō* : *o deki no hazu de gozaimasū* he ought to be able to (I expect he can) do it.

**361.** Verbal inflexions containing *i'ru* may be made honorific by changing *i'ru* to *irassharu*. *Yoku hon wo yonde imasū ne* 'you do read a lot, don't you ?' may be said more politely thus, *yoku hon wo yonde irasshaimasū ne*.†

Verbal constructions in which *suru* occurs can be made honorific by replacing *suru* by *nasaru* ; if *itasū* is put instead of *suru* they are made humble. *Benkyō suru*, *benkyō nasaru* (polite), to study ; *o hanashi suru uchi ni*, *o hanashi itasū uchi ni* (humble), while I was speaking.

**362.** When the action of the 2nd (or 3rd) person is performed in favour of the 1st person you use the honorific *o*, the stem of the verb, and the verb *kuda-*

\*A polite construction of *gozaru* after the gerund was noted in 100.

†*De irassharu* sometimes takes the place of *de gozaru* after a verbal stem or noun : *hon wo o yomi de gozaimasū ka ?* (or *de irasshaimasū ka ?*) ; *go benkyō de gozaimasū* (or *de irasshaimasū*). The polite construction of *irassharu* after the adjectival gerund was noted in 200, 9.



*saru*,\* or else, the gerund followed by *kudasaru*. *Kono tegami wo o yomi kudasaimasen ka?* or *kono tegami wo yonde kudasaimasen ka?* would you please read this letter for me?

However, if the performer of the act is one's inferior (e.g. one's servant) use the gerund followed by *kure'ru*. *Jochū ga yonde kureta*; the servant read it for me. (Compare 109).

**363.** The verb *age'ru* placed after the gerund has the result of making the verb humble; occasionally also *mōshū* is placed after *o* and the stem of a verb for this same purpose:

*Yonde agemashō ka?* shall I read it to you?

*O tanomi mōshimasū*; I request you.

**364.** The following are some of the more common humble and honorific nouns:

	HUMBLE	PLAIN	HONORIFIC
Father	<i>chichi</i>	<i>chichi</i>	<i>o tō-sama</i>
Mother	<i>haha</i>	<i>haha</i>	<i>o kā-sama</i>
Husband	<i>yado taku uchi shujin</i>	<i>{ teishu (lower class) danna (upper class) }</i>	<i>danna sama</i>
Wife	<i>kanai</i>	<i>{ kanai (lower class) o-kami-san " " oku-san (upper class) }</i>	<i>{ o-kami-san (lower class) oku-sama (upper class) }</i>
Son	<i>musūko</i>	<i>musūko</i>	<i>musūko san</i>
Daughter	<i>musūme</i>	<i>musūme</i>	<i>o-jō-san</i>
Elder } brother }	<i>ani</i>	<i>ani</i>	<i>nii-san</i>
Elder sister	<i>ane</i>	<i>ane</i>	<i>nē-san</i>

**365.** Plain nouns may be made honorific by prefixing the words *o* or *go*:

*O tegami wo uke-torimashita*; I have received your letter.

**366.** Custom has tacked the honorific prefixes on to certain nouns in such a way that the exaltative idea has become very vague: thus *o cha* tea, *o yu* hot water, etc. are generally though not always used with an honorific, whosoever the tea or the hot water may be: expressions like *o-jō-san* daughter; *o-shaberi* chatterbox, are hardly ever heard without the honorific. (See 18).

**367.** Sometimes indeed the honorific has entirely lost its meaning as in *onaka* the belly (lit. honourable inside); *omae* (lit. honourable in front), is an impolite way of saying 'you'.

**368.** The honorific *o* is sometimes placed before an adjective. *O isogashiū gozaimasū ka?* are you busy?

\**Kudasaru* may only be used after the stem of a verb, if the stem has two or more syllables.

**369.** We may also make some nouns honorific by adding the word Mr *san* (or *sama* which is more polite). Thus: *imōto* means 'my (or his) younger sister', *imōto san* will be 'your younger sister'.

**370.** In Japanese you put the surname before the personal name when calling a person by his full name.

**371.** The equivalent in Japanese of our Mr, Mrs, Master, or Miss is *Sama* generally abbreviated to *San*. It is put after the name.

**372.** Periphrases like: *Tanaka San no oku-san* Mr Tanaka's wife, *Tanaka San no musūko san* Mr Tanaka's son, are employed when the simple use of *san* might be the cause of ambiguity.

**373.** When calling a woman by her personal name *o* is generally prefixed when we wish to be polite. However the *o* must not be used if the name has more than two (Japanese) syllables: *O Yuki San* Miss Snow. *O Take San* Miss Bamboo. You cannot say: *O Sonoe San*, nor *O Kin-ko San* (*Ki-n-ko*).

**374.** Besides this use of humble words and honorifics, which serves to distinguish my things which are inferior from yours (or his) which are superior, there are certain polite inflexions of the verb which must be used when speaking to anyone to whom we owe courtesy, irrespective of the person who performs the action of the verb. If you wish to be polite always use the inflexions of the verb in *masū*, *marshita*, *marshō*, instead of those without; and what is the same, use *desū*, *deshita*, and *deshō* instead of *da*, *datta* and *darō*. By frequently replacing the verb *aru* by the verb *gozaru*, a thing which women especially are very fond of doing, we can make our conversation still more markedly polite and respectful.

**375.** The honorifics are often used in ways which at first strike the foreigner as strange. Here are a few of the more common polite phrases in which honorifics are to be found:

*Gomen kudasai*; excuse me, (lit. august pardon grant).

*O-kage sama de*; by your kind influence, (lit. by Mr honourable shade).

*O sewa sama deshita*; thanks for your kind assistance, (lit. it was Mr honourable help).

*O kinodoku sama*; I am very sorry for your sake, (lit. Mr honourable regret).

*O sasshi mōshimasū*; I deeply sympathize with you, (lit. I say honourable sympathy).

*Go-kurō sama deshita*; thanks for your trouble, (lit. it was Mr august trouble).

*O machidō sama*; excuse me for keeping you waiting so long, (lit. Mr honourable long-waiting).

*Go taikutsū de gozaimashitarō*; you must have felt bored, (lit. it probably was august tedium).

*O jama itashimashita*; excuse me for having interrupted you, (lit. I have done honourable obstacle).



*Go busata itashimashita* ; I have been sadly remiss about calling upon you, (lit. I have done august remissness).

**376.** In regard to honorifics, there are two things to be carefully avoided :

1) Never apply *San* or any other honorific to yourself.

2) Do not mix up polite and impolite turns of phrase in one sentence. Instead of *ikimashita ga dame datta*, say *ikimashita ga dame deshita*, or *itta ga dame datta*.

**377.** The question of speaking with the proper degree of politeness is of the utmost importance in Japanese, so to help the foreigner to form his judgment a letter, *A*, *B*, *C*, or *D*, has been placed after each sentence in the Exercises, Part I, and also in the Vocabulary, Part III. *A* means that the tone of the sentence is one of authority or anger, *B* familiarity, *C* ordinary politeness, *D* respect.

**378.** This classification must not be taken too literally ; however, it gives a rough idea of the subject and so may be of some help. In speaking to an ordinary acquaintance do not use style *B* and still less *A* ; in speaking to your servant, *C* would probably be too polite and *D* would be ridiculous. In case of doubt it is better to be too polite than not polite enough.

---

## CHAPTER VIII.

---

### POSTPOSITIONS—PREPOSITIONS.

**379.** The words that in Japanese serve to mark the relation of one word to another are placed after the word to which they refer and not before as our prepositions. The Japanese equivalents of our prepositions are, therefore, called postpositions.

**380.** The principal postpositions are : *de*, *e*, *ga*, *ka*, *kara*, *made*, *mo*, *na*, *ni*, *no*, *shi*, *to*, *wa*, *wo*, *ya*, *yor**i*. For the way each one is used, consult the Vocabulary, Part III.

**381.** Postpositions generally are placed after nouns or words equivalent to nouns ; they sometimes follow adverbs.

**382.** Two or even three postpositions may follow each other in Japanese. The principal of these combinations may be found in the Vocabulary, in their respective places ; see the words *de*, *made*, *ni*, *no*, *to*, *yor**i*, etc. As examples of three postpositions following each other, these may serve :

*Watashi no de wa arimasen* ; it is not mine.

*Dare ni de mo o kiki nasai* ; ask anybody.

**383. Quasi-postpositions.** Certain nouns preceded by the postposition *no* are used very much like postpositions and may therefore be called quasi-postpositions. The principal nouns used in this way are the following: *aida*, *ato*, *hoka*, *kage*, *kami*, *kawari*, *mae*, *maruari*, *mukō*, *naka*, *omote*, *saki*, *shimo*, *shita*, *soba*, *soto*, *tame*, *tsuide*, *uchi*, *ue*, *ura*, *ushiro*.

**384.** These words drop the postposition *no* after a verb or adjective. They also follow *kono*, *sono*, and *ano* without the *no*; (remember that *kono*, etc. are equivalent to *kore no*, etc. as stated in 346).

*Sō suru hoka* (or *sono hoka*) *shikata ga nai*; there is nothing else one can do; (not *no hoka*).

*Kinō furimashita kawari ni kyō wa ii o tenki de gozaimasu*; it rained yesterday but the weather is fine today; (not *no kawari*).

*Ano uchi wa semai hoka ni kitanai*; that house is small and besides it is dirty.

Sometimes the noun to which the quasi-postposition refers and the *no* are both omitted.

(*Hako no*) *naka wo goran nasai*; look inside (the box).

*Omae ga (watashi no) kawari ni ayamari ni itte o kure*; go and apologize (for me).

**385.** Here are a few examples of nouns followed by quasi-postpositions:

<i>tsūkue no ue</i> ,	on the table;
<i>mon no soto</i> ,	outside the gate;
<i>hashi no shita</i> ,	under the bridge;
<i>hako no naka</i> ,	inside the box.

**386.** Phrases like these, i.e. a noun followed by a quasi-postposition, behave very much like the nouns (e.g. *atarimae*, *asoko*, etc.) from which quasi-adjectives in *no* are formed (212 et seq.).

1) When they come before a noun they take *no*:

*ATARIMAE no kami*; ordinary paper;

*HAKO NO NAKA no kami*; the paper inside the box.

2) As predicates they take *de*:

*ATARIMAE desū* (= *de arimasū*); it is usual;

*HAKO NO NAKA desū*; it is in the box.

3) As predicates in a negative sentence they are followed by *de wa*:

*ATARIMAE de wa nai*; it is not usual;

*HAKO NO NAKA de wa nai*; it is not in the box.

4) If the verb *aru* has the meaning of 'there are', they take *ni*:

*ASOKO ni aru*; there are some there;

*HAKO NO NAKA ni aru*; there are some in the box.

5) Before other verbs they take *ni* or any other postposition according to the sense:



ASOKO *ni mieru* ; I can see it there ;

HAKO NO NAKA *ni mieru* ; I can see it in the box.

ASOKO *wo mimashita* ; I looked there ;

HAKO NO NAKA *wo mimashita* ; I looked in the box.

ASOKO *kara deta* ; it came out from there ;

HAKO NO NAKA *kara deta* ; it came out from inside the box.

**387.** As mentioned in **58**, 8, the gerunds of verbs sometimes correspond to our prepositions.

**388.** Likewise, in **151** we showed that English prepositional verbs may often be translated by Japanese compound verbs.

**389.** **Wa** and **Ga** may both be used after the subject of the verb and the problem of determining which is the correct one to use in each particular case is an ever-recurring puzzle to the foreigner.

It is doubtful whether it is worth while learning a lot of more or less complicated rules on the subject, or whether it is not better to learn a few easy rules and trust to your luck, and later on to your instinct, in the cases not determined by these rules.

The beginner may derive some consolation from the fact that there is a good deal of variety among the Japanese themselves in the use of *wa* and *ga*.

Some of the following rules or observations may prove useful.\*

**390.** *Wa* is used : 1) when it is a question of selecting a predicate i.e. the subject is known and we wish to find out or wish to inform somebody what predicate should be applied to it. The state of mind may be represented by 'A is X'. For instance, if I am taking a friend round Tōkyō to see the sights, and we come across a big building ; the subject is there before his eyes, but he does not know whether it is the Foreign Office, the Post Office or what it is. He asks :

*Kore wa nan desū ka ?* what is this ?

*Kore wa Nippon-Ginkō desū ;* this is the Bank of Japan.

2) Similar to the above is the rule that *wa* is used when the Japanese construction requires the subject to be placed by itself first, and then followed by a question in regard to it, beginning with an interrogative pronoun or adverb :

*Ano hito wa dare desū ka ?* who is that man ?

*Shio wa dono gurai mazatte imasū ka ?* how much salt is there (in this) ?

3) *Wa* has the effect of separating from the rest of the sentence what comes before it and calling especial attention to what follows. It is as if we said : 'I am speaking of A, and what I want to say (or ask) is this'.

*Nashi wa mono-oki ni arimasū ka ? iie, shokudō ni arimasū.* Are the pears

---

\*For further information see Imbrie's *Wa and Ga*.

in the pantry ? no, they are in the dining-room. (I am speaking of the pears, are they in the pantry ?)

As a consequence of this, *wa* is not used after the subject in a subordinate clause.

- 4) *Wa* is generally used when there is a contrast, at least an implied one : *Watakushi wa mairimasu* ; I shall go, (others may go or not as they please).
- 5) *Wa* is specially common in negative sentences.
- 6) *Wa* is used in elliptical interrogative sentences with only a noun, (414, 5) : *Inu wa ?* how about the dog ? or, what of the dog ?

**391.** *Ga* is used : 1) when it is a question of selecting the subject ; i.e. the predicate is known and we wish to find out, or wish to inform somebody, to which subject that predicate should be applied. The state of mind may be represented by 'X is B'. For instance, a friend may ask me to take him to the bank ; on coming to an imposing-looking building he might ask :

*Kore ga ginkō desu ka ?* is this the bank ?

He does not mean 'if this is not the bank, please tell me what it is' ; but 'if this is not the bank, please tell me which is the bank'.

*Are ga ginkō desu ;* that is the bank.

a) We may consider as a particular case of the above that interrogative pronouns, (*dare*, *donata*, *dotchi*, *dochira*, *dore*, *dono* and *nani*, who ? which ? what ?) are all followed by *ga* :

*Dare ga sō itta ka ?* who said so ?

b) Another application of the above rule is, that in sentences containing a formal comparison, the subject takes *ga*, and the thing with which the subject is compared, is generally separated off by *wa* :

*Kore yori wa are ga ii ;* that is better than this.

2) Except in the case of contrast, *ga* is used with the subject of *aru* when it has the meaning of, 'there is' 'have (got)' :

*Kane ga arimasu ka ?* have you got any money ?

3) Except in the case of contrast, *ga* is used before *deki'ru* (in the sense of 'can'), *iru* (to need), and *hoshii*.

*Nihon-go ga deki-nai ;* I cannot speak Japanese.

4) *Ga* (or *no*) is used with the subject of a subordinate clause ; see 328.

**392.** In the following examples *wa* and *ga* are contrasted.

*Ano kata wa Yamada San desu ka ?* is that gentleman Mr Yamada ? (if not, who is he ?). The answer might be : *Iie, ano kata wa Suzuki San desu ;* no, he is Mr Suzuki.

*Ano kata ga Yamada San desu ka ?* is that gentleman Mr Yamada ? (if not, which is Mr Yamada ?). The answer might be : *Iie, ano ki no shita ni tatte iru kata ga Yamada San desu ;* no, Mr Yamada is the gentleman standing under that tree.



*Kore wa ginkō desū ka?* is this a bank? (if not, what is it?).

*Kore wa ginkō desū*; this is a bank (and not a post office).

*Kore ga ginkō desū ka?* is this the bank (for which I am looking; if not, which is the bank?).

*Kore ga ginkō desū*; this (and not that building over there) is the bank.

*Kore wa ii no desū ka?* is this a good one? (or a bad one?).

*Kore wa ii*; this is a good one (not a bad one); this one is good.

*Kore ga ii no desū ka?* is this the good one? (or is the other the good one?).

*Kore ga ii*; this (not that) is the good one; this one is the best.

Some of these examples show that the difference between *wa* and *ga* may sometimes be rendered by the proper use of 'a' and 'the'.

**393. De and Ni** may both be translated by: at, in, by, of, for.

1) In the sense of 'at' or 'in', *de* refers to the place where an action is performed; *ni* to the place where a thing exists.

*Tōkyō de kaimashita*; I bought it in Tōkyō.

*Tōkyō ni takusan arimasu*; there are a great many in Tōkyō.

2) In the sense of 'by', *de* is used when speaking of the instrument, *ni* when speaking of the agent:

*Kisha de iku*; to go by train.

*Daiku ni koshiraesemashita*; I had it made by a carpenter.

3) In the partitive sense of 'of', either *de* or *ni* may be used:

*Nihon no fujin ni* (or *de*) *yōfuku wo kiru hito mo gozaimasu*; some of the Japanese ladies wear foreign clothes.

4) When speaking of price, 'for' is translated by *de* when buying is spoken of; by *ni* or *de* when we are talking of selling.

*Ni-yen de katte san-yen ni urimashita*; I bought it for two yen and sold it for three.

5) When a noun is used as a predicate or in constructions imitating a gerund, it takes the postposition *de*. (Compare 217; 219).

*Inaka de fuben da*; it is such a country place that it is not convenient.

*Ame de mo iku tsumori desu*; I intend to go even if it rains.

This *de* is often used after the *no* which serves to substantivize verbs and adjectives:

*Kono kami wa Nihon de dekita no de 'ōtō desu*; this paper was made in Japan, it is very good.

*Kyaku ga kita no de ikare-nakatta*; a visitor came to see me so I wasn't able to go.

6) When a noun is used adverbially it is followed by the postposition *ni*. (Compare 218).

*Kin ni mieru*; it looks like gold.

## CHAPTER IX.

## THE OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

## ADVERBS.

**394.** Words which in Japanese do duty as adverbs are generally derived from other parts of speech. The principal are the following :

- 1) True adjectives in their *ku* terminations. (190, 4 ; 192).
- 2) Nouns which serve to form quasi-adjectives in *na* or *no* become adverbs when they change the *na* or *no* into *ni*. (218).
- 3) In some cases the adverbial form in *ni* is in use but there is no corresponding adjective : *sugu (ni)* immediately.
- 4) Occasionally a noun followed by *de* is equivalent to an adverb : *maru de* quite.
- 5) Nouns without any postposition : *konnichi* today ; *asûko* that place, i.e. there. Like ordinary nouns, these adverb-nouns may take any postposition : *konnichi made* until today.
- 6) A few ordinary nouns may be converted into adverbs by reduplication : *hōbō* everywhere, from *hō* side ; *tabi-tabi* often, from *tabi* time ; etc.
- 7) Stems of verbs : *amari* too, from *amaru* to be in excess ; *kiri* only, from *kiru* to cut.
- 8) Gerunds of verbs : *hajimete* for the first time, from *hajime'ru* to begin ; *hokora-zu* all without exception, from *nokoru* to be left over.

**395.** There is a large class of adverbs to which *to* is sometimes added ; as : *bonyari (to)* dimly, *hakkiri (to)* distinctly.

**396.** The *to* which is found at the end of other adverbs and which forms now an integral part of the word itself, is perhaps often of the same origin : *chanto*, *chitto*, *chotto*, *jittō*, *kitto*, *motto*, *sotto*, *zutto*.

**397.** Onomatopoes form a very important class of adverbs in Japanese. They are extremely numerous, several hundreds in fact, and each one has its own special use. The beginner will not find it worth his while to learn many of them at first. They are often formed by reduplication as may be seen by the following few examples :

<i>don-don,</i>	in rapid succession ;
<i>guzu-guzu,</i>	(of loitering, or grumbling) ;
<i>magō-magō,</i>	(of being bewildered) ;
<i>mecha-mecha,</i>	(of confusion) ;
<i>niko-niko,</i>	(of smiling) ;
<i>soro-soro,</i>	slowly.



**398.** Adverbs in Japanese as in English may modify verbs, adjectives or other adverbs.

*Hayaku aruku*, to walk quickly.

*Osoroshiku warui*, dreadfully bad.

*Zuibun warui*, very bad.

*Zuibun hayaku aruku*, to walk very fast.

**399.** There is no word in Japanese which corresponds to 'yes'. The usual way of replying in the affirmative is to say, *hai*, *e* or *he* and to repeat the verb, using the humble verb when necessary :

*Go hon wa arimashita ka?* did you find your book? *E*, *arimashita*; yes, I found it.

*E wo goran nasaimashita ka?* have you seen my picture? *Hai*, *haiken shimashita*; I have seen it.

It can hardly be said that *hai*, *e* or *he* by itself means 'yes'. We get a nearer approach to 'yes' in the expression *sō desū* (or more politely, *sayō de gozaimasū*) which means 'that is so'; and which sometimes takes the place of our 'yes'.

**400.** 'No' may be translated by *iie*; but it is better to repeat the verb in the corresponding negative inflexion.

**401.** It must be borne in mind that the Japanese 'yes' or 'no' refers not to the objective fact nor to what you have said, but to what they think is in your mind. You may often hear things like this: *Doko de katta no desū ka?*—*Iie jibun de koshiratta no desū*. Where did you buy it?—No, I made it myself; i.e. your question supposes that I bought it somewhere, that is not so, I made it myself.

The result of this custom is, that when answering a negative question they often, but not always, say 'yes' *sayō de gozaimasū*, where we would say 'no', and 'no' *iie*, where we say 'yes'. Supposing you ask somebody: *Kyō ikimasen ka?* 'aren't you going today?' If he does not intend to go he will say: *Sayō de gozaimasū*, and his meaning will be: 'The suggestion implied in your negative question is correct; I am not going'. If on the other hand he does intend to go, he will answer: *Iie*, and he means: 'It is not as you suggest; I am going'. However, if the question is: *Tetsūdatte kudasaimasen ka?* won't you kindly help me? he will think you are counting on his help, and his answer may be: *E*, *tetsūdatte agemasū* to mo yes, of course I will; or *Iie*, *tetsūdaimasen* no, I won't.

Besides the case mentioned, of answering to what is in the mind rather than to the words themselves, it is well to notice that the Japanese, especially those of the lower class, say 'yes': (a) when they think you expect the answer yes; (b) when they think it impolite or inconvenient to contradict what you say or what they believe is in your mind; (c) when they haven't understood what you said and they think 'yes' is practically the safest answer to give.

**402.** When *answering* a question, therefore, the best plan is to repeat the verb in the affirmative or negative as the case may be. When *asking* a question the beginner should prefer the affirmative form ; and, when he really wants to get a true answer, avoid showing in the question what his own opinion is. However, should he use the negative form and be in doubt as to the meaning of the reply, he must try to obtain an explicit answer and not merely a *sayō de gozaimasū* or an *ie*.

*Kyō kimasen ka ?* aren't you coming today ?

*Iie* yes (?), no (?).

*Kimasū ka ? kimasen ka ?* are you coming or are you not ?

This last question will probably produce the desired result.

**403.** The interrogative adverb, 'why' is translated by *naze* or *dō shīte*. Some other adverbs were mentioned in the chapter on Pronouns ; see **334** et seqq.

#### CONJUNCTIONS.

**404.** The conjunction 'and' between nouns is translated :

1) By placing *to* after each noun ; the last *to* is generally omitted :

*Satō to, pan to, niku wo kaimashita ;* I bought some sugar, bread and meat.

2) *Ya* placed after each noun except the last, is often used especially when the list is not given as a complete one :

*Inu ya neko ga sūki ;* I am fond of dogs and cats (and other animals).

3) *Da no* or *to ka* may also be placed after each noun, including the last.

*Inu da no neko da no ga sūki* or *Inu to ka neko to ka ga sūki ;* I am fond of dogs and cats (and other animals).

4) *Mo* is placed after each noun when the idea is 'both—and' :

*Sakana mo niku mo kaimashō ;* I will buy both fish and meat.

*Tōkyō ni mo Yokohama ni mo ;* both in Tōkyō and in Yokohama.

5) *Ni* may be used in enumerations after each noun except the last ; it has the meaning of 'and also' :

*Pan ni, sakana ni, niku wo motte ikimashō ;* I will take bread, fish and also meat.

6) Between nouns which are habitually coupled together 'and' is often not expressed in Japanese : *oya-ko* parent and child ; *asa-ban* morning and evening.

**405.** The joining of verbs or clauses is effected as follows :

1) The verb or adjective at the end of each clause, except the last, is put in the gerundial form : remember that a noun followed by *de* is construed like a gerund (**393, 5**) :

*Hon wo katte tomodachi ni agemashita ;* I bought a book and gave it to my friend.



*Shina ga yoroshikûte, nedan ga yasui* ; the quality is good and the price is cheap.

2) The stem of the verb may be used at the end of each clause, except the last (82, 9).

3) *Shi* is used after verbs, and after adjectives ; the last verb or adjective does not take *shi*. This *shi* is generally used in conjunction with *mo*—*mo*, thus :

*Ano hito wa Nihon-go mo hanasû shi, ji mo kakimasû* ; that man can speak Japanese and he can also write the characters.

*Shina mo ii shi nedan mo yasui* ; the quality is good and the price cheap.

4) The conditional is used as shown in these examples :

*Kiki mo sureba mi mo shita* ; I both heard and saw.

*Shina mo yoroshikereba nedan mo yasui* ; the quality is good and the price is cheap.

5) The frequentative :

*Shabettari warattari shite ita de wa arimasen ka?* weren't you talking and laughing ?

6) After verbs like 'go' and 'come', when 'and' means purpose or object, it is translated by the stem of the verb and *ni* :

*Tori ni o-ide nasai* ; please go and fetch it.

7) Sentences may sometimes be joined by such phrases as *sô shite* (*soshite*), 'having done so', *sore ni, sono ue*, 'besides that'. These expressions are also used occasionally after clauses ending in a noun or *ni* or *to*.

8) Sometimes no conjunctival word nor special construction is used :

*Doko no, nan to iu o kata da?* where is he from, and what is his name ?

*Natsû wa suzushii, fuyu wa atatakai, jitsû ni ii tokoro da* ; it is really a very nice place, cool in summer and warm in winter.

*Kane wa nakusû, shigoto wa namakeru, to iu wake de Chôbê San sukkari bimbô ni natta* ; what with losing money and doing no work, Chôbê became quite a poor man.

**406.** 'And' between adjectives is treated as follows :

1) The gerundial form (200, 1 ; 219) is used for all the adjectives except the last.

*Shirokûte kirei* ; white and pretty.

*Kirei de shiroi* ; pretty and white.

2) It is sometimes necessary to employ two clauses in Japanese where in English we only use two adjectives coupled by 'and' :

The article is good and cheap ; *shina ga yoroshikûte nedan ga yasui*, (lit. the quality is good, and price cheap).

3) When an adjective is at the end of a clause which is not the end of a complete sentence it may be treated as above, **405.**

4) In Japanese as in English adjectives are sometimes put one after another without any conjunctive word :

*Kirei na wakai hito* ; a handsome young man.

407. 'Or' is translated :

1) generally by *ka* repeated after each noun : what is one sentence in English often becomes two or three in Japanese :

*Kore ka are ka* ; this or that.

*O taku ni neko ka inu ka ga imasū ka?* have you a cat or a dog in your house?

*Atsui no ga o sūki desū ka? tsumetai no ga yō gozaimasū ka?* do you like it hot or cold ?

*Dotchi wo goran nasatta no desū ka? ōkii no desū ka? chiisai no desū ka?* which did you see, the big one or the small one ?

2) *To ka* is sometimes put after each noun :

*Pen to ka fude to ka dotchi ka de o kaki nasai* ; write with a pen or a brush (but don't use a pencil).

3) When equivalent to 'if not', by the negative conditional, or by the negative present followed by *to* :

*Isoga-nakereba ōsoku narimasū* or *isoga-nai to ōsoku narimasū* ; hurry up or you will be late.

4) When 'or' refers to an approximate number it is generally not translated (315; 317) :

*Go-roku-nen* ; five or six years.

5) 'Either—or' 'whether—or' in the sense of 'no matter which' is translated by *mo—mo* after a gerund or construction equivalent to a gerund :

*Fune de mo kisha de mo ikaremasū* ; you can go either by boat or by train.

*O tenki ga yokūte mo warukūte mo ikimasū* ; I will go whether the weather is good or bad.

#### INTERJECTIONS.

408. As in most languages, the meaning of Japanese interjections varies considerably according to circumstances, tone of the voice, expression of face, etc. This is especially noticeable in elementary exclamations such as *a*, *e*, *he*.

409. The principal interjections may be roughly classified as follows :

Surprise, wonder, admiration : *mā*, *naruhodo*, *nani*, *are* (corrupted to *ara*), *sō desū ka*, *koto* (after a verb or adjective).

Perplexity, hesitation : *dōmo*, *ē to*, *sō desū ne*.

Assent : *hai*, *sayō*, *sō desū*, *mattaku*, *naruhodo*.

Dissent : *ii* (sometimes corrupted to *iiya*). *uso*, *nāni*.

Reprimand : *kore*, *sore* (often corrupted to *kora*, *sora*).

Calling attention : *moshi*, *moshi moshi*, *ano ne*.



Joy, exultation : *banzai*.

Protest, complaint : *masaka, mono* (generally after *desū*).

Emphasis : *dōmo, koso, ne, sa, wa*.

Final emphasis : *ne, sa, to mo, wa, yo, zo* (for threats).

**410.** Interjections like *a, e, ne, he*, etc. are pronounced sometimes long and sometimes short.

## CHAPTER X.

### S Y N T A X.

**411. Construction of the sentence.** In Japanese, qualifying words come before the word they qualify\*. Postpositions, of course, come after the word or clause to which they belong.

*Akai hon* ; the red book.

*Akai hon no* ; of the red book.

*Akai hon no nedan* ; the price of the red book.

*Kinō mita hito* ; the man I saw yesterday.

**412.** The order of a Japanese sentence is generally as follows : adverbs of time or place, or any word on which emphasis is laid ; subject, when expressed ; clauses ; dative ; accusative ; adverb ; verb : <sup>1</sup>*Komban* (<sup>2</sup>*watakūshi wa*) <sup>3</sup>*hima dattara* <sup>4</sup>*o kō-san ni* <sup>5</sup>*tegami wo* <sup>6</sup>*kitto* <sup>7</sup>*kakimashō* ; <sup>1</sup>this evening, <sup>3</sup>if I am free, <sup>2</sup>I <sup>6</sup>certainly <sup>7</sup>will write <sup>5</sup>a letter <sup>4</sup>to my mother.

When one clause depends logically on another, the dependent clause is put first and the principal verb last. You do not say 'I cannot go because I am busy' but 'as I am busy I cannot go' ; *isogashii kara ikaremasen*. The regular order is, however, often inverted and then the dependent clause partakes of the nature of an afterthought : *ikaremasen, . . . isogashii kara* ; I can't go, . . . I'm busy.

**413.** The Japanese subject takes the postposition *ga* or *wa*, (**389-392**), occasionally *de*. Sometimes, however, these words are not used ; this is particularly the case when the subject is qualified by a word like *mo* also, *dake* only, etc.

*Sore de takusan* ; that is enough.

*Ginkō de katta* ; the bank bought it.

\*Adjectives are sometimes placed in an order which sounds strange to Western ears ; thus you may hear both *kono onaji hako* and *onaji kono hako* this same box ; likewise, *anata no daiji na o-jō-san* and *daiji na anata no o-jō-san* your daughter, of whom you take such great care.

*Takusan arimasu* ; there is plenty.

*Futari kimashita* ; two persons came.

*Watashi mo ikimasho* ; I'll go also.

*Watashi dake ikimashita* ; only I went.

In verbal phrases used attributively, the subject takes *ga* or *no* (328). *Ganku no* (or *ga*) *kaita e* a picture painted by Ganku.

The object in Japanese takes the postposition *wo*, in cases of contrast occasionally *wa* ; these however, are omitted if the object is qualified by such words as *mo* also, *dake* only, etc.

*Tamago wa kaimashita ga, niku wa arimasen deshita* ; I bought some eggs but there was no meat to be had.

The English objective case often becomes the subject in Japanese. The following are the principal cases in which this happens :

1) The accusative of a potential verb. See 129 ; 133.

2) The accusative of a desiderative form often, but not always, becomes the subject in Japanese.

*Kamakura ga mitaku wa arimasen ka* ? don't you wish to see Kamakura ?

3) The verbs *wakaru* to understand, *iru* to need ; and the words *hoshii* desirous, *suki* fondness for anything, and *kirai* dislike.

*Ei-go ga wakaru* ; I understand English.

*Kane ga irimasu* ; it takes money ; I need money.

*Tarō wa nashi ga hoshii* ; Tarō wants a pear.

*Kudamono ga suki* ; I like fruit.

*Tabako ga kirai* ; I dislike tobacco.

4) See also *suru* used independently, 161.

In the above cases the English subject, when expressed, takes *wa*, *ni*, or *ni wa* in Japanese.

*Kimi ni fune ga dekiru* ? can you make a boat ?

*Watashi ni wa Ei-go ga wakarimasen* ; I don't understand English.

**414. Ellipses** are very frequently met with in Japanese.

1) Personal and possessive pronouns, whether as subject or otherwise, are very often omitted in Japanese.

*Sō iimashita* ; he said so.

*Kanai ga byōki da* ; my wife is ill.

2) In answering a question, the words of the question are often not repeated.

*Kore wa dare no hon desu* ?—*Watakushi no* ; whose book is this ?—mine.

3) The suppression of the final verb.

*Sore wo goran (nasai)* ; look at that.

*Ika-nakute wa (narimasen)* ; I must go.

*Shibaraku (o me ni kakarimasen deshita)* ; (it is) a long time (since we met).

*Watashi no bōshi wa doko (ni arimasu ka)* ? where is my hat ?



*Sonna baka na koto ga (dekiru mono ka)?* I'm not going to do such a silly thing as that.

*Nani! ano hito ga shinda to (iu no desū ka)?* what! is that man dead?

*Makoto ni o kinodoku sama de (gozaimashita);* I am very sorry for your sake.

*Dōzo O Kin San ni yoroshiku (mōshi-agete kudasai);* please remember me kindly to Miss Kin.

*Moshi, nē-san chotto (o-ide nasai);* I say, waitress, just come here a moment.

*Kimi no tokoro wa doko (desū ka)?* where do you live?

*Achira e (o iki nasai);* go away.

The following construction is also worthy of note:

*Ano kata ga ikeba watashi wa ika-nakatta no desū;* if I had known that man was going, I wouldn't have gone; (*ikeba=iku to wakareba*).

4) Japanese sentences often break off after *keredomo, ga, no ni, ni, or mono wo*, which is the same as if we finished an English sentence with a word like 'but' or 'nevertheless'—etc. (See 75; 166, 1; 170, 4; 171, 2; 172, 2, b).

*Sore wa sō desū keredomo...*; what you say is true no doubt, but (there is a great deal to be said against it).

*Areba yō gozaimasū ga...*; I wish there were some but (I hardly think there are).

*Kō sureba dekiru no ni or kō sureba dekiru mono wo;* you could do it in this way if you tried but (you haven't tried, although you ought to have done so).

*Tenki ga yokereba iku no deshita ga;* I would have gone if the weather had been fine but (it was raining).

5) A noun followed by *wa* may be used elliptically in an interrogative sense.

*Inu wa?* how about the dog? what of the dog?

This may mean: 'where is the dog?' 'has the dog recovered?' 'will you bring the dog along with you?' or almost anything according to circumstances.

6) *Desū ka?* is used elliptically after a noun (followed or not by a postposition), an adverb, the adverbial form of an adjective, or a gerund. The difference between this construction and the one just mentioned in 5) is, that the construction in *wa* serves to introduce a new subject of conversation about which we want information, whereas *desū ka?* serves to supplement or complete our knowledge which is imperfect.

If you meet a child on the road you might ask: *Gakkō desū ka?* I see you are going somewhere; is it to school?

Somebody might say to me: *Sō shītara iya deshō?* if I do such and such a thing, it would probably be disagreeable. I might answer: *Watashi desū ka?* are you referring to me?

*Sono nimotsū wo iwaite kure* tie up that parcel. *Kitsūku desū ka?* do you want it tied up tightly?

*Ashita Ueno e iku* I am going to Ueno tomorrow. *Aruite desū ka?* Are you going to walk there?

The reader will notice that these questions have an Irish flavour about them: Is it to school (that you're going)? Is it myself (you're speaking of)? Is it tightly (that you want it tied)? Is it on foot (that you're going)?

7) The gerund is often used elliptically; see 58, 18; 200, 8. Remember that a noun followed by *de* is often equivalent to a gerund; 393, 5.

*Sore wa ammari yoku nai koto de...* (*arimasū*); I don't think you ought to have done that.

8) It is worthy of note that when the Japanese say certain polite set phrases, they begin by pronouncing clearly, but finish with an unintelligible mumble entirely lost in the profundity of the bow with which they accompany the words. The result cannot be represented properly in print:

*Senjitsū wa dōmo arigatō gozaimashita*; thanks very much for your kindness the other day.

**415. Negatives.** There are no negative pronouns in Japanese: instead, the verb is put in the negative and the pronoun in the positive:

*Nanni mo shira-nai*; I know nothing, (lit. I don't know anything, or I ignore everything).

The negative of combinations like *motte kuru* to bring, is always obtained by putting the second verb in the negative and leaving the first one as it is. Thus 'he did not bring it' is *motte ko-nakatta* (lit. carrying it, he did not come), though logically we often might expect *mota-nai de kita* (lit. not carrying it, he came). The result is that these negative sentences are sometimes ambiguous. The above example may mean, according to circumstances, (a) he did not come at all, or (b) he came but did not bring it.

**416.** In Japanese as in English two negatives destroy one another or are equivalent to an affirmative.

*Deki-nai koto wa nai*; I can do it (but it is difficult), (lit. it is not a fact that I cannot do it).

**417.** Double negatives are employed very frequently. The commonest construction of all is a verb in the negative present conditional followed by *ike-nai* or *nara-nai*. This conveys a meaning of obligation and may generally be translated by 'must'.

*Kō shi-nakereba narimasen*; it must be done in this way, (lit. it won't do not to do thus).

**418.** You may even find three negatives in Japanese:

*Shi-nakereba nara-nai koto de wa nai*; it is not an obligatory thing, (lit. it is not a fact that it is a thing which it won't do not to do).

**419.** An English affirmative sentence is sometimes translated by the negative in Japanese: *Ko-nai uchi ni*; before he comes, (lit. during his not coming).



**420. Interrogations** are formed by adding *ka* at the end of the sentence. However if the sentence contains an interrogative pronoun or adverb, *ka* is not necessary at the end :

*Samui desū ka?* is it cold?

*Dare ga kita?* who came?

In familiar speech *kai* or *kae* is sometimes used instead of *ka*.

**421.** Various interrogative pronouns and adverbs are mentioned in **336** et seqq. ; **403.** Questions regarding numbers are explained in **277**.

**422.** In Japanese as in English, a request is often made in the form of a question.

*Hon wo kashite kudasaimasen ka?* 'would you be kind enough to lend me your book?

**423.** What is one question in English may become two or three in Japanese. **407, 1).**

**424.** Negative interrogations which in English expect for answer 'yes' are sometimes made, in familiar Japanese, by putting the principal verb in the affirmative and adding *ja nai ka?* isn't that so? (**165, 11 ; 63**).

**425.** *Ne* which is often heard at the end of a sentence, especially in the speech of women, frequently has a quasi-interrogative force and may often be translated by 'isn't that so?'

**426.** Women sometimes ask questions by finishing the sentence with a gerund pronounced with a rising inflexion of the voice. (**58, 18 ; 200, 8**).

**427. Quotations.** The repetition of another's words or the expression of one's own thoughts is generally done in Japanese in the form of a direct quotation.

A direct quotation is expressed by *to*, *kō*, or *sō*, and a verb like *iu*, *hanasū*, *kiku*, *omou*, etc. *To* is used always after, *kō* generally before, and *sō* generally after, the words quoted.\*

*'Nichiyō made ni kaeru' to iimashita* ; he said : 'I shall be back on Sunday'.

*O tenki darō to omoimasū* ; I think it will be fine.

*Yamada San ni, 'sugu ni o-ide kudasai' to itte kite o kure* ; go and ask Mr Yamada to come immediately.

*Yokohama no densha ni kō kaite arimasū* : 'Mado kara kao ya te wo dasa-nai yō ni negaimasū' ; the Yokohama tram-cars have this notice : 'You are requested not to put your head or your hands out of the window'.

*'Jibun no nimotsū wa minna jibun de motte iku hō ga ii'* ; *watashi wa sō omoimasū* ; 'Everyone had better take his own parcel' ; that's what I think.

The words quoted, however, are not necessarily the very words of the original speaker. The person who is quoting will change, if needs be, the

\* Sometimes none of these words are used : *'Fune ga tsukimashita ka?' kiite goran nasai*, go and ask if the boat has arrived. On the other hand a pleonastic construction with both *to* and *ō* is sometimes employed : *Suzuki San wa, 'doyō-bi ni kaeru' to sō iimashita*, Mr Suzuki said he would return on Saturday.

honorifics and humble words into plain words or vice versa, and pronouns may be used instead of a proper name, etc.

A servant will say to her mistress : *Danna sama wa 'Tōkyō e irrassharu'* to *osshaimashita* the master said 'I am going to Tōkyō'; although the actual words were *Tōkyō e iku*.

*Yamada San ga 'anata ni o hanashi ga aru' to itte kimashita* Mr Yamada came and said he wished to speak to you, (lit. Mr Yamada came and said 'I wish to speak to you'). Mr Yamada's actual words were perhaps *Danna sama ni o hanashi shitai koto ga gozaimasu* I wish to speak to your husband.

The colloquial *'tte* which is often equivalent to *to imasu* or *to imashita*, is used frequently after a quotation.

*Kirei desū 'tte* ; he says 'it's pretty'.

**428.** An indirect quotation is sometimes rendered by means of *yō ni* 'so that' :

*Ashita kuru yō ni (sō) itte kure* ; tell him to come tomorrow, (lit. tell him in such a way so that he will come tomorrow).

**429.** Although indirect quotations are occasionally employed, the Japanese generally prefer not to use them, and turn the sentence in such a way as to avoid them :

Tell O Haru to come here=call O Haru ; *O Haru wo yonde kure*.

Tell Shige to call a rikisha=cause Shige to call a rikisha ; *Shige ni kuruma wo yobashite kure*.

---



大正五年一月二十九日印  
 大正五年二月一日發  
 大正六年三月十六日訂正印刷  
 大正六年三月十九日訂正再版發行  
 大正七年八月十五日訂正再版發行  
 大正八年七月二十一日四版發行

版 權 所 有

編輯者兼  
發行者

印刷者

印刷所

發行所



橫濱市本牧町箕輪下三百五十番地

アーサー、ロース、イニス

橫濱市太田町五丁目八十七番地

村岡平吉

橫濱市山下町百〇四番地

福音印刷合資會社

橫濱市山下町七十八番

クリー、アンド、ウオルシ株式會社

CONVERSATIONAL JAPANESE  
FOR BEGINNERS BY  
ARTHUR ROSE-INNES

PART III

VOCABULARY

OF

COMMON JAPANESE WORDS

WITH

NUMEROUS EXAMPLES & NOTES.

---

NEW EDITION

---

KELLY & WALSH, LTD.

YOKOHAMA, SHANGHAI, HONGKONG and SINGAPORE.

(All rights reserved.)



## List of Abbreviations.

---

a. n., auxiliary numeral	interj., interjection
abb., abbreviation, abbreviated	interr., interrogation, interrogative
acc., according, accusative	irreg., irregular
act., active	lit., literal(ly)
adj., adjective(s), adjectival	n., noun(s)
adv., adverb(s), adverbial	neg., negative, negation
aff., affix, affixed, affirmative	nom., nominative
attr., attributive, etc.	num., numeral, numerical
aux., auxiliary	pass., passive
caus., causative	pers., person(al), etc.
cogn., cognate	phr., phrases
comp., composition, compound(s)	pl., plural
cond., conditional	ppn., postposition
conj., conjunction, conjugation	pol., polite
contr., contraction, contracted	pot., potential
corr., corruption, corrupted	prec., preceding (word)
dat., dative	pred., predicate, etc.
der., derivative(s)	pref., prefix, prefixed
desid., desiderative	pres., present
ell., ellipsis, elliptical(ly)	prob., probable
Eng., English	pron., pronoun, pronounce, pronunciation
esp., especial(ly)	q., quasi-
excl., exclamation	q. adj., quasi-adjective
expr., expressing	q. ppn., quasi-postposition
f., from	refl., reflexive
fem., feminine, used by women	rel., relative
fig., figurative, etc.	sing., singular
fol., following (word), followed	subj., subject
freq., frequent(ly), frequentative	suf., suffix, suffixed
gen., generally, genitive	sup., superlative
hon., honorific	t., transitive
hum., humble	term., termination, terminal
i., intransitive	usu., usual(ly)
impol., impolite	v., verb
ind., indicative	v.i., verb intransitive
inf., infinitive	v.t., verb transitive
infl., inflexion	w., with

Black-face numbers refer to the paragraphs of Part II.

The letter A, B, C or D, found after each example gives an idea of the degree of politeness: 'A' sentences should be used to inferiors only; 'B' are familiar; 'C' are polite in an ordinary way; and 'D' are somewhat formally polite.

# VOCABULARY

**A, ā.** Interj. expr. surprise, admiration, sorrow, pain, dislike, etc.

**ā.** Like that.

*ā iu* ; *ā iu fū na* ; *ā iu yō na* : that kind of ; that sort of ; like that.

**abekobe.** The wrong way ; the other way about.

**abunai.** Dangerous

*abunai koto wo suru* : to do something dangerous or risky.

*abunai koto deshita* (C) : it was a narrow escape.

*abunai koto wa nai* (B) : there is no danger.

*ano byōki wa abunai* (B) : that illness is very serious.

*abunai me ni au* : to be exposed to danger.

*abunai tenki* : doubtful weather.

*abunai hanashi* : a doubtful story.

*abunai (yo)* : take care ! look out !

**abura.** Fat ; oil ; grease.

*abura wo uru* : to waste time.

*abura wo toru* : to expose a person's faults (as before others) ; to mortify ; to tease.

**Comp.**

*abura-e* : an oil painting.

*abura-kami* : oil-paper.

*abura-jimi* : grease-spot, [*shimi* a stain].

*aburakko* : greasy (of taste), [*koi* thick].

**achi, achira,** (*achi* is gen. pron. *atchi*). There.

*atchi e o iki nasai* (B) : get away ; be off.

**Comp.** : *a(t)chi-ko(t)chi* : here and there.

**achi-kochi,** (pron. also *atchi-kotchi*), [*achi* there, *kochi* here]. Here and there ; every where.

*achi-kochi wo sagasu* : to seek everywhere.

*achi-kochi ni aru* : found everywhere.

**agaru,** v.i. [cogn. w. *ageru* v.t.].

1) To rise ; go up ; ascend.

*agattari-sagattari suru* : to move up and down.

2) To enter a house. (The Japanese mats are higher than the level of the ground, so you ascend when you go in).

*o agari nasai* (B) : please come in (into the house).

3) Used humbly when speaking of one's own going to another's house.

*kinō agarimashita ga o rusu de gozaimashita* (D) : you were out when I called yesterday.

4) Used politely when speaking of eating, drinking or smoking of the 2nd person.

*o agari nasai* (B) : please help yourself ; (drink or eat what has been served you).

*nani ka o agari nasaimasen ka ?* (D) : may I offer you some refreshment ?

5) To be completed ; be finished.

*ame ga agarimashita* (C) : the rain has stopped and the weather has cleared up.

6) Various.

*shōko ga agara-nai* (B) : they can find no proof.

*te ga agaru* : to make progress (in manual accomplishments).

*gakkō e agaru* : to enter school (said of child who goes for first time).

*kome ga agarimashita* (C) : rice has gone up (in price).

*ikura de agaru ?* (B) : how much would cover the expenses ?

**Comp.**

*meshi-agaru* : like 4) but more polite still ; said of eating and drinking.

*deki-agaru* : to be completed.

*tobi-agaru* : to jump up.

**ageru,** v.t. [cogn. w. *agaru* v.i.].

1) To raise ; lift up.

*agetari-sagetari suru* : to move up and down.

2) Used humbly of the giving of the 1st person ; used also of the giving of the 2nd and 3rd persons, but not if the gift is to me or mine.

*nani ka agemashō ka ?* (C) : may I offer you anything ?

*dare ni agemashita ka ?* (C) : to whom did you give it ?

3) Used humbly after a gerund when an action is performed in favour of another.

*yonde agemashō ka ?* (D) : shall I read it to you ?

4) To finish ; complete.

*shigoto wo ageru* : to finish the work.

5) Various.

*nedan wo ageru* : to raise the price.

*koe wo ageru* : to raise the voice.

*kami wo ageru* : to do up one's hair.

*nedoko wo ageru* : to put away a bed.

**Comp.**

*ageru-mono* : a gift.

*mōshi-ageru* : to tell.

*mochi-ageru* : to lift up.

*yobi-ageru* : to call out.

*kaki-ageru* : to finish writing.

*shi-ageru* : to finish doing.

**aida,** q. ppn.

1) Interval of time or space ; between ; while ; during.

*go to roku no aida* : between five and six.

*yoru no aida ni shinimashita* (C) : he died during the night.

*jūta-tsūki no aida* : for two months.

*mikka no aida byōki deshita* (C) : I was ill for three days.

*jūtari no aida ni kenka ga okotta* (B) : a quarrel has arisen between the two.

*jūtari no aida ni kodomo ga hitori mo arimassen deshita* (C) : they (a married couple) had no children.

*tomodachi no aida ni* : among friends.



*Yamakita to Gotemba no aida wa yama no keshiki ga naka-naka ii* (B): between Yamakita and Gotemba the mountain scenery is very fine.

*kodomo-tachi wa ki no aida ni kakureta* (B): the children hid themselves among the trees.

*kisha ga deru made ni wa mada san-jip-pun mo* (or *no*) *aida ga arimasu* (C): it still wants thirty minutes for the train to leave.

2) Used without *no* after a verb: while.

*ō suru aida*: while he was doing so.

*Amerika ni ita aida ni*: while I was in America.

3) Various.

*nagai aida*: for a long while; for a long distance.

*sūkoshi no aida*; *chotto no aida*: a little while.

*sono aida*: in the meanwhile; during that time.

Comp.

*aida-gui*: eating between meals, [*kuu* to eat].

*kono-aida*; *ai-no-ko*; q.v.

*ainiku*, [a interj., *nikui* odious]. Unfortunately.

*ainiku no ame*: a rainy day coming just when it is not wanted.

*o ainiku sama!* (C): that was very unfortunate!

*ai-no-ko*, [*ai(da)* between, *no of*, *ko child*]. A Eurasian; a half-caste.

*aisatsu*. Salutation; greeting.

*aisatsu suru*: to salute; greet.

*aifu*, [past of *aku* to open]. Vacant; empty.

*aji*. Taste; flavour.

*aji no nai*: flavourless.

*aka*, n. 182. [*akai*, adj. red]. Red.

*aka-gane*, [*akai* red, *kane* metal]. Copper.

*akai*, adj. Red.

*akaku naru*: to blush.

Comp. and der.

*aka*, n.: red.

*aka-gane*, q.v.

*makkai*, see *ma2*.

*akabō*: railway porter, [*hōshi* cap; porters wear red caps].

*akambō*, [*akai* red]. Baby.

*akari*, n. [*akarui*, adj. bright]. A light.

*akari wo kesu*: to put out the light.

*akari wo tsukeru*: to light the light.

*akari wo miseru*: to show a light.

*akarui*.

1) Bright; clear.

*sukkari akaruku narimashita* (C): it is already broad daylight.

*rampu wo akaruku suru*: to turn up the wick of a lamp.

2) Clever.

*ano hito wa Nihon-go ni akarui* (B): he is very learned in Japanese.

Der. *akari*, q. v.

*akeppanasu*, [*akeru* to open; *hanasu* to leave]. To leave open.

*akeru*, [cogn. w. *aku* v. i.].

1) v. t. To open.

*to wo akete kure* (A): open the door.

*bin no kuchi wo akeru*: to open a bottle.

*nimotsu wo akeru*: to open a bag, (trunk, parcel, etc.); to unpack.

*ana wo akeru*: to make a hole.

2) v. t. To empty; make vacant.

*tēburu wo akeru*: to clear the table.

*—no tame ni basho wo akeru*: to make room for—

*michi wo akeru*: to make room on the road; to open a new road.

*mi-suji zutsu akete kaku*: to write on one line and leave three in blank.

*ie wo akeru*: to leave a house empty.

*bin no mizu wo akeru*: to empty the water out of a bottle.

3) v. i. To be over.

*yo ga akeru*: the day dawns, (lit. the night is over).

Comp.

*akeppanasu*: to leave open, [see *-ppanasu*].

*yo-ake*: dawn, [*yo* night].

*aki*. Autumn.

*aki*, [f. *aku* to open]. Empty; open.

*aki-bin*: an empty bottle.

*aki-ma*: an unoccupied room.

*aki-ya*: an unoccupied house.

*aki-iso*: an empty chair.

*aki-chi*: unoccupied ground

*aki-mekura*: a man with eyes open but blind; an illiterate person.

*akindo*. A merchant; trader.

*akippoi*, [f. *akiru* to get tired of, *-ppoi* q. v.]. Soon wearied of; changeable; fickle.

*akire-ru*. To be astonished; surprised.

*akiru*, v. i. 114. To get tired of.

*sore ni akimashita* (C): I am tired of it.

*ano hito ni hanasu no ni akite shimatta* (B): I am tired of telling him.

Comp.: *akippoi*, q. v.

*aku*, v. i. 114, [cogn. w. *akeru*, v. t.].

1) To open.

*nan-ji ni akimasu ka?* (C): at what o'clock does the door open?

*kuchi wo aite* (or *akete*) *goran nasai* (C): open your mouth; (note the exceptional use of *aku* as a v. t.).

2) To become vacant.

*kono heya wa ashita akimasu* (C): this room will be vacant tomorrow.

*kono hon wa akimashita ka?* (C): have you done with this book?

3) *Aite iru*: to be open; be vacant.

*aite iru heya*: an empty room.

*bin wa aite imasu* (C): the bottle is empty.

*koko wa aite imasu ka?* (C): is this seat engaged? is this place taken?

*kono hon wa aite iru ka?* (B): are you using this book?

4) Various.

*ima wa te ga aite imasu* (C): I have a little spare time now.

*omae no kimono ni ana ga aite iru* (A): there is a hole in your dress.

Der.

*aite*; *aki-*; q. v.

**akubi**, [f. *akiru* to get weary]. A yawn.

*akubi (wo) suru*; *akubi ga de-ru*: to yawn.

**amai**, [f. *amai* of nice taste].

1) Sweet.

2) Deficient in salt.

*mada shio ga amai* (B): it is not salty enough.

3) Soft; weak; stupid.

*omaku suru*: to spoil (a child).

*onna ni amai hito*: a man easily led by women.

*amai yatsū*: a silly, weak person; a soft.

4) *Amai mo karai mo shitte iru*: he is a man who knows what's good.

Der.

*amasa*: (degree of) sweetness, [-*sa* q. v.].

*amami*: sweetness, [-*mi* q. v.].

**amari**, (gen. pron. *ammari*); [f. *amaru* to be in excess].

1) Before an adj.: (far) too.

*kore wa ammari takai* (B): this is (far) too dear.

*ammari takusan*: (far) too much (many).

*ammari sukunai*: (far) too little (few).

2) Before gerund or noun: so; too—to.

*ammari benkyō shite byōki ni narimashita* (C): he studied so much he fell ill.

*ammari kirei da kara dō shite mo kaimashō* (C): it is so pretty I really must buy it.

*kono kimono wa ammari furukūte kiraremasen* (C): these clothes are too old to wear.

3) After a quantity: at least; more than.

*go-yen amari kakarimasu* (C): it will cost at least five yen.

4) Followed by a neg.: not very; not many; not much.

*ammari yoku nai*: not very good.

*gyūnyū wa ammari sūki de wa arimasen* (C): I don't like milk much.

*kono-goro ammari aimasen* (C): I have met him but seldom lately, (not very often).

*sō iu hito wa ammari nai* (B): hardly any one says so, (not many people); there are not many people like that.

*ammari mita koto wa nai* (B): I hardly ever see any, (not many times).

**amaru**. To be in excess; be over.

*kane ga amarimasu* (C): the money is more than is wanted.

*ano kodomo wa watakushi no te ni amaru* (B): that child is too much for me, (beyond my control).

*amaru hodo*: more than enough.

**ambai**.

1) The seasoning or taste of food as the result of artificial preparation.

*o sakana no ambai wa ikaga de gozaimasu ka?* (D, fem.): how does the fish taste?

2) Condition; way; manner.

*dō iu ambai ni shimashō?* (C): how shall I do it?

*kono ambai de itara yokarō* (B): I hope things will continue as they are.

*ambai wa dō desu ka?* (C): how are you feeling?

*o yu no ambai wa ikaga desu?* (C): how is the bath? (is it hot enough?)

*chōdo ii ambai desu* (C): it is just right.

*ii ambai deshita* (C): that was a good thing.

Der.

*shio-ambai*: same meaning as 1).

**ame**. Rain.

*ame ga furu*: to rain.

*ame ga furu deshō ka?* (C): do you think it will rain?

*ame ga futte kimashita* (C): it has begun to rain.

*ame ga fura-nakereba ii* (B): I hope it won't rain.

*ame ga futte mo, kaze ga fuite mo, ashita Tōkyō e iku* (B): rain or fine, no matter what happens, I shall go to Tōkyō tomorrow.

*ame futte ji kataku naru*: after rain the ground gets hard, (after a quarrel friendship becomes deeper).

*ame ga yamu*: to stop raining.

*ame wo yokeru*: to shelter oneself from the rain.

*ame no ōi kuni*: a rainy country.

Comp.

*ō-ame*: heavy rain, [ō- big].

*ame-furi*: rainy weather, [furu to fall].

*ama-do*: outside shutters, [tol door].

*ama-gasa*: Japanese umbrella, [kasa umbrella].

*ama-mizu*: rain-water, [mizu water].

**Amerika**. America; United States of America.

*Amerika-jin*: an American, [-jin man].

**ammari**, usu. pron. of *amari*, q. v.

**ana**. Hole; pit; cave.

*ana wo akeru*: to make a hole.

*ana wo horu*: to dig a hole.

**anata**. You, sing. (polite).

*anata-gata*; *anata-tachi*: you, pl. [-gata; -tachi; q. v.].

**ane**. Elder sister.

*ane-musume*: the eldest daughter, [musu-me daughter].

**ani**. Elder brother.

**anna**, [contr. of *ano yō na*]. That kind of; such as that; like that; so.



1) Used attr. immediately before a noun. it often has a contemptuous sense.  
*anna hon wa yonde wa ike-nai* (A) : don't read a (silly) book like that.

*anna koto!* (B) : don't mention it, (a little thing like that!); (said after being thanked).

2) Has a sup. sense before an adj. or its der.; *anna* *ni* also has this sense.

*anna ureshii koto wa nakatta* (B) : I was never so pleased in my life.

*anna ni nagaku Nihon ni ite mo mada chitto mo Nihon-go ga wakara-nai* (B) : although he has been in Japan such a long time, he can't understand a word of Japanese.

**anna**. Guide; invitation.

*annai suru* : to guide.

*anata wa koko-ira wa yoku go annai deshō* (C) : I suppose you are familiar with this neighbourhood.

Comp.

*annai-jō* : letter of introduction; written invitation, [*jō* letter].

*fu-anna* : ignorance, [*fu-* neg.].

**ano**, adj. [often=*are no*]. That (referring to things far off; 336; 343).

*ano* (o) *kata* ; *ano hito* : he ; she.

*ano otoko* : he.

*ano onna* : she.

*ano hito-tachi* : they.

*ano naka* : inside that, (*ano*=*are no*).

*ano* is sometimes used at the beginning of a sentence when the speaker feels rather embarrassed or wishes to introduce a new subject.

*ano ne!* (B) : (used to call attention); I say ; look here.

**anshin**. Peace of mind.

*anshin suru* : to be free from care ; not to be anxious ; not to worry ; not to feel uneasy.

*anshin sase-ru* : to relieve somebody's mind.

*anshin o shi nasai* (C) : don't worry ; put your mind at ease.

*anshin shimashita* (C) : that is a great relief ; I am much relieved to hear it.

*naka-naka anshin wa deki-nai* (B) : I cannot help worrying about it.

*ammari anshin wa narimasen yo* (B) : don't be too sure.

*anshin no deki-nai hito* : a person one cannot have confidence in.

*kore de yatto hito-anshin* (B) : well, I'm relieved at last of that anxiety.

**ao**, n. 182. [*aoi*, adj. green]. Blue ; green.

**aoi**, adj. Blue ; green ; inexperienced ; unripe ; (of the face) pale.

Comp. and der.

*ao*, n. : blue ; green.

*aomono* : vegetables, [*mono* thing].

*ao-zora* : blue sky, [*sora* sky].

*massaoi* ; *massao na* : sup. of *aoi*, [see *ma*²].

**arai**. Coarse ; rough ; violent.

Der.

*arappoi* : see -*ppoi*.

*arashi* : storm.

*are-ru* : to become rough.

**arashi**, [f. *arai* violent]. A storm ; tempest.

**arau**. To wash.

*moto wo arau* : to investigate somebody's past.

**are**, n. That (referring to things far off ; 336 ; 343) ; that person (impol.) ; he ; she ; it ; they.

*are!* interj. of wonder, gen. corr. to *ara!*

*are kara* : after that (time, in a past sense only).

**are-ru**, v.i. 114, [*arai* rough]. To be rough ; stormy ; laid waste.

*umi ga arete imasu* (C) : the sea is rough.

*niwa ga arete iru* (B) : the garden is neglected.

**ari-ai**, [*aru* to be ; *ai* to meet]. Happening to be present ; incidental presence.

*uchi ni ari-ai de ii* (B) : whatever there may happen to be in the house will do.

**ari-awase-ru**, [*aru* to be ; *awase-ru* to join]. To happen to have ; happen to be.

*ari-awasete, bō* : a stick which happened to be there.

*ima ari-awase wa kore shika nai* (B) : this is all that I have now.

*uchi ni ari-awase no mono* : what one has in the house.

**arigatai**, [*aru* to be ; *katai* hard, difficult : kindness is rare, we are thankful therefore when we find it]. Thankful ; grateful.

*arigatai to omou* ; *arigataku omou* : to feel grateful.

*arigatai koto da* (B) : it is a thing to be grateful for.

*arigatō (gozaimasu)* (C) : thank you ; see *fall*.

**arigatō**, [pol. pred. form of *arigatai*]. Thank you.

*dōmo arigatō gozaimasu* (D) ; *ōki ni arigatō gozaimasu* (D) : thank you very much.

*senjitsu wa arigatō gozaimashita* (D) : thanks for your kindness (present) the other day.

*arigatō to itte kudasai* (C) : please give him my best thanks.

**ari-sō** (na), adj. [*aru* to be ; -*sō* q.v.].

Probable ; likely to be (exist) ; appearing to be.

*ari-sō mo nai* : unlikely ; improbable.

**aru**. The subject of *aru* takes the ppn. *ga*.

The neg. of *aru* is irreg. *nai* ; see 93. *De aru* etc. is gen. contr. to *da* q.v. ; see also *de*³) and 94. A polite substitute for *aru* is *gozaru*.

1) There is ; have (got) : this idea is contained in all the following examples al-

though the translation may be, find, get, happen, last, etc.

*pan ga arimasu ka?* (C): have you any bread?

*o to-san ga arimasu ka?* (C): is your father alive? (have you a father?)

*sei no takai Nihon-jin mo aru* (B): some Japanese are tall (although most are short).

*boshi ga arimasen* (C): I haven't got a hat; I can't find my hat.

*arimashita* (C): I've found it; here it is.

*tsukue no ue ni aru deshō* (C): you will probably find it on the desk; I think it is on the desk

*anata no boshi wa koko ni arimasu* (C): your hat is here.

*pan wa doko ni arimasu ka?* (C): where can I get some bread?

*rusu ni nani ka kawatta koto ga atta ka?* (B): has anything happened in my absence?

*donna koto ga atte mo*: whatever happens.

*moshi, dare ka o kyaku ga attara*: if a visitor should come.

*atte mo nakute mo*: with or without; whether there is any or not.

*nan-nichi gurai aru deshō ka?* (C): how many days will it last?

*mada arimasu ka?* (C): are there any left?

*jibiki ga o ari desu ka?* (C): have you got a dictionary?

*ushi ni (wa) tsuno ga aru* (B): cows have horns; (note that the Eng. subj. takes *ni* like a dative in Jap.: horns belong to cows).

2) *Aru* still has the meaning of 'there is' when used as an adj.: it can be translated by, certain, one.

*aru hito*: a certain man. (there was a man).

*aru hi*: a certain day; one day.

3) After the gerund of transitive verbs it refers to a completed act and may often be translated by a passive idiom.

*furoshiki ni tsutsunde arimasu* (C): it is wrapped up in a cloth.

*hon ni kaite arimasu* (C): it is written in the book.

4) *Aru* in the neg., after the adv. infl. of a true adj., gen. means 'to be.'

*tsuyoku arimasen* (C): he is not strong.

When *aru* means to last, it may be used in both the aff. and neg. with the adv. infl. of a true adj.

*kono shabon wa nagaku arimasu* (C): this soap has lasted a long time.

*sonna ni nagaku arimasen* (C): it doesn't last very long (time); it isn't very long (length).

5) —*koto ga aru*: sometimes; once.

—*koto ga aru ka?* ever?

—*koto ga nai*: never.

*Nagasaki ni itta koto ga arimasu ka?* (C): have you ever been to Nagasaki?

*itta koto ga arimasu* (C): I have been there (sometimes).

*itta koto ga arimasen* (C): I have never been there.

*Kagoshima de mo yuki no furu koto ga arimasu* (C): it does snow sometimes also in Kagoshima.

*amari mita koto ga nai* (B): I have seldom seen any.

6) *De wa arimasen ka?* see de 4).

Comp. and der.

*ari-ai*; *ari-awase ru*; *ari-sō*; q.v.

*aru-nashi*: the question of the existence of a thing, [*nashi* non-existent].

*aritake*=*aru dake*, see *dake*

*da*=*de aru*, see *da*.

**aruku.** To walk.

*aruite skimasu* (C): I will go on foot.

*aruite ni-jikan kakarimasu* (C): it is a two hours' walk.

*niwa wo arukimashita* (C): I walked about the garden.

*shijū aruite imasu* (C): I am always travelling.

Comp.

*aruki-mawaru*: to walk round; walk about, [*mawaru* to turn].

*aruki-kata*: manner of walking, [*kata* manner].

*aruki-kata ga haya-sugimasu* (C): you walk too fast.

**asa.** Morning.

*asa kara ban made*: from morning till evening.

*kinō no asa*: yesterday morning.

Comp. and der.

*kesa*: this morning, [*kono* this; *asa*].

*myōasa*: tomorrow morning, [see *myō*].

*asa-ne*: sleeping late in the morning, [*neru* to sleep].

*asa-han*; *asa-meshi*: breakfast, [*han* food; *meshi* rice].

*asa-oki*: early rising; an early riser, [*okiru* to rise].

*asa-ban*; *asa-yū*: morning and evening, [*ban*2; *yū*2; evening].

**asai.** Shallow.

*dekite kara hi ga asai* (B): it was only finished a short time ago.

**asatte.** The day after tomorrow.

**ase.** Perspiration.

*ase ga de-ru*: to perspire.

Comp.

*hiya-ase*: cold perspiration, [*hiyasu* to cool].

*ase-darake*: covered with perspiration, [see *-darake*].

**ashi.**

1) Leg; foot.

2) Used after the abb. 2nd set of numerals (276, 4): step.



## 3) Phrases.

*sam-bon ashi no tēburu* : a three-legged table.

*ashi no ura* : the sole of the foot.

*ashi no hayai hito* : a quick walker.

*ashi ga tsuku* : to be tracked.

*ashi ga bō no yō ni naru made arukimashita*

(C) : I walked so much I could no longer move my legs.

## Comp.

*doro-ashi* : muddy feet, [*āoro* mud].

*ryō-ashi* : both legs, [see *ryō*].

*kata-ashi* : one leg, [see *kata*].

*ashi-ato* : footprint, [*ato* after].

*ato-ashi* : hind leg, [*ato* after].

*mae-ashi* : foreleg, [*mae* before].

*ashi-kake* : used of incomplete units of time (years, months).

*ashi-kake san-nen* : three years (not complete; e.g. from November 1914, to March 1916; the first and last are not complete years).

*ashi-moto* ; *muda-ashi* ; q.v.

**ashi-moto**, [*ashi* foot; *moto* origin]. The place where one steps or is standing.

*ashi-moto ni ki wo o tsuke nasai* (C) : take care where you step.

**ashita**. Tomorrow.

*ashita no hyaku yori kyō no go-jū* : fifty to-day is better than a hundred tomorrow; a bird in hand is worth two in the bush.

**asobi**, n. [*asobu* to play]. Play; a game.

**asobu**.

1) To play; amuse oneself; visit (for pleasure).

*asobi ni iku* : to go somewhere for pleasure.

*Suzuki San no uchi e asobi ni ikimashita*

(C) : I went to visit Mr Suzuki.

*chitto o asobi ni irasshai* (C) : come and see me now and then.

*kōden de asonde kimashita* (C) : I have been for a stroll in the park.

2) *Asonde i-ru* : to be idle; be out of work.

*asonde aruku* : to gad about.

Der.

*asobi*, n.: play, a game.

**asoko**, (gen. pron. *asūko*). There; that place;

336; 343.

*asūko wa doko desu ka?* (C) : what place is that?

Der.

*asoko-ira* : about there; thereabouts, [see *-ira*].

**assarī**. Plainly; simply.

*assari shita* : plain, simple.

**asūko**, see **asoko**.

**atama**. Head.

*atama ga itai* (B) : I have a headache.

*atama wo itaku suru* : to rack one's brains.

*atama ni haira-nai* (B) : I cannot understand it, (get it into my head).

*atama no ii hito* : a clever man.

*atama no nai hito* : a silly man.

*atama kara ashi no saki made* : from head to foot.

*jibun no atama no hai wo oi nasai* : frighten the flies off your own head; mind your own business.

*atama kakushite shiri kakusa-zu* : to hide the head but not the body.

**atarashii**. Fresh; new.

*atarashii tamago* : fresh eggs.

**atarimae** (no or na). Usual; ordinary; proper.

**ataru**, v.i. [cogn. w. *ate ru* v.t.].

1) To strike against; to hit the mark.

*watakushi no itta koto ga atatta* (B) : my words have come true.

2) To warm oneself.

*hi ni ataru* : to warm oneself at a fire; to remain in the sun.

*hi ni ataru to kuroku naru* (B) : if you remain in the sun you will get sunburnt.

3) Various.

*kesa tabeta sakana ga atatta* (B) : the fish I had this morning has disagreed with me.

*ano hito wa anata no nani ni atarimasu ka?* (C) : what relation is he of yours?

*bachi ga ataru* : to be punished by heaven.

*jochū ni hidoku ataru* : to maltreat a servant.

*Shina wa Nihon no nishi ni ataru* (B) : China is to the west of Japan.

Der.: *hi-atari*, q.v.

**atashi**. Abb. of *watakushi* (q.v.), used esp. by women.

**atatekai**, (gen. pron. *ataikai*). Warm.

Der. and comp.

*ataka* (na) : warm.

*ataka-sugi-ru* : to be too warm, [see *sugi-ru*].

*attamaru*, v.i.: to get warm.

*attame-ru*, v.t.: to make warm.

**atchi**, see **achi**.

**ate**, [*ate-ru* to hit]. Expectation; aim; purpose.

*ate ni narimasen* (C) : he is not to be depended upon.

*ate ni suru* : to rely on.

*ate ni shite wa ikemasen* (C) : you mustn't count upon me.

*ate ni naru*, adj.: reliable.

*ate ni nara-nai*, adj.: unreliable.

Comp.

*ate-na* ; *na-ate* : an address, [*na* name].

**ate-ru**, v.t. [cogn. w. *ataru*, v.i.].

1) To hit; strike; touch.

*atsui ka, tsumetai ka, te wo atete goran* (B) : touch and see whether it is hot or cold.

2) To expose to heat.

*kimono wo hi ni atete kawakashite o kure* (A) : dry my dress at the fire.

3) To guess.

*atete goran nasai* (C) : guess what it is.

Der.: *ate*, q.v.

ato.

1) Mark ; impression ; place.

*kore wa inu no kami-tsuita ha no ato desu*

(C) : this is the mark left by a dog's bite.

*tēburu wo katazuketete sono ato e isu wo o oki**nasai* (B) : put away the table and put a

chair in its place.

2) After ; behind.

*anata no ato ni mairimashita* (C) : I came

after you.

*ato kara ikimashō* (C) : I will go later on.*ichiban ato no dempō* : the latest telegram.*tōka ato ni* : ten days after ; ten days from

now (either before or after).

*ato no* : the one after ; the remaining one.*shokuji wo shita ato ni kyaku ga kimashita*

(C) : after we had eaten, visitors came.

*sonna ni ato kara oshite wa ike-nai* (A) :

don't push from behind like that.

3) A successor.

*watakushi no ato wa mada kimarimasen* (C) :

my successor has not yet been appointed.

4) The remainder ; what is left.

*sore de wa ato no mono ga komaru* (B) : that

would put those remaining behind in a

difficulty.

*ato ni-hon kaka-nakereba nara-nai* (B) : I

have still two (letters) to write.

5) Various.

*ato wo katazuke-ru* : to clear away things.*ato wo tsūke-ru* : to follow in another's track.

Comp.

*ashi-ato* : footprints.*yubi-ato* : finger-marks.*kizu-ato* : scar.*ato-ashi* : hind legs.*ato-oshi*, q.v.**ato-oshi**, [ato behind ; *osu* to push]. A man

who pushes behind any vehicle ; a rikisha

push-man ; a backer.

*ato-oshi wo suru* : to push (behind a

vehicle) ; (fig.) to incite.

**atsui**. Hot.*kyō no atsui koto* ! how hot it is today !*atsukite shiyō ga nai* (B) : it is awfully hot.*atsuku suru* : to heat.

Der. and comp.

*atsūsa* : heat, [see -sa].*atsū-sugiru* : to be too hot.**atsui**<sup>2</sup>. Thick ; cordial.*atsuku o rei wo mōshimasu* (D) : thank you

very much.

Der. and comp.

*atsūsa* : thickness, [see -sa].*atsū-sugiru* : to be too thick.**atsumaru**, v.i. [cogn. w. *atsume-ru* v.t.]. To

assemble.

**atsume-ru**, v.t. [cogn. w. *atsumaru* v.i.]. To

assemble ; collect.

*atama wo atsumete sōdan suru* : to consult

together (said of several).

**ataikai**, see *ataitakai*.**attamaru**, v.i. [f. *ataitakai* warm ; cogn. w. *attame-ru* v.t.]. To become warm.**attame-ru**, v.t. [f. *ataitakai* warm ; cogn. w. *attamaru* v.i.]. To warm.**au**, v.i. [cogn. w. *awase-ru* v.t.].1) To meet ; see. *Au* is a plain verb : the corresponding humble verb is *o me ni kakaru* (358).*shujin ni aitai* (B) : I wish to see your master.*itsū Tanabe San ni aemasu ka* ? (C) : when can I see Mr Tanabe ?*itsū o ai nasaimashita ka* ? (D) : when did you see him ?*au wa wakare no hajime* : the meeting is the beginning of the separation.

2) To fit ; suit ; agree.

*kono kutsu wa watakushi no ashi ni awa-nai*

(B) : these boots do not fit me.

*Nihon no o cha wa watakushi ni aimasen*

(C) : Japanese tea does not agree with me.

*kono tokei wa atte imasu* (C) : this clock is right.*kamjō ga awa-nai* (B) : these accounts do not agree.

3) Various.

*hidoi me ni au* : to be treated cruelly.*ma ni au* : to be in time.

Comp.

*ari-ai* : happening to be there.*deki-ai* : happening to be made ; ready-made.*hanashi-au* : to talk together.*niau*, q.v.**awase-ru**, v.t. [cogn. w. *au* v.i.]. To join ; unite.*awase-mono wa hanare-mono* : things which have been artificially united are easily separated ; (said of husband and wife who disagree).

Various.

*ima jibun awaseru kao ga nai* (B) : I am now ashamed to show my face.*iro wo awase-ru* : to match colours.*tokei wo awase-ru* : to put a clock right.Note.—*Awaseru* is a quasi-causative of *au* to meet ; the 3rd base is gen. *awashite*, sometimes *awasete*.In comp. *awase-ru* gen. has the meaning of 'together' or 'happen to.'*maze-awase-ru* : to mix together, [*maze-ru* to mix].*nuu-awase-ru* : to sew together, [*nuu* to sew].*kiki-awase-ru* : to make inquiries, [*kiku* to ask].*ari-awase-ru* : to happen to have, [*aru* to have].*i-awase-ru* : to happen to be present, [*iru* to be].*tōri-awase-ru* : to happen to pass by, [*tōru* to pass].**ayamaru**. To apologize ; beg pardon.



**ayashii.** Suspicious; questionable; doubtful.

**azukaru**, v.t. [cogn. w. *azukeru* also v.t.]. To receive in deposit; take charge of; be responsible for.

*kaeru made kore wo azukatte kudasai* (C): please take charge of this till I come back.  
*kono kenka wa watakushi ga azukatte okimashō* (C): leave this quarrel for me to settle.

**Comp.**

*azukari-kin*: money received in deposit.

*azukari-mono*: thing received in deposit.

*azukari-nin*: person with whom a thing is deposited.

**azuke'ru**, v.t. [cogn. w. *azukaru*, also v.t.].

To (give in) deposit; entrust.

*teishaba ni azukemashita* (C): I left it in the cloak-room at the station.

**Comp.**

*azuke-mono*: thing given in deposit.

*azuke-nin*: depositor.

**ba.** Place; room.

*sono ba de*: in the very act; on the spot; then and there.

**Comp.**: *baai*; *basho*; *furoba*; *teishaba*; q.v.

**baai**, [ba place; ai to meet]. Circumstances; case.

*baai ni yotte*; *baai ni yoru to*: according to circumstances.

*sore wa baai ni yorimasu* (C): that depends on circumstances.

*masaka no baai ni*: in case of need.

*kono baai ni wa yaku ni tata-nai* (B): it is of no use in this case.

*baai wo kangae-nakereba nara-nai* (B): you must take the circumstances into account.

*donna baai ni mo uso wo itte wa ike-nai* (A): under no circumstances must you tell a lie.

**bachi**, [batsu punishment]. Punishment (inflicted by heaven).

*bachi ga atatta no da* (A): it serves you right.

**bai.** Double; twice as much.

*bai no ōkisa*; *bai hodo ōkii*: twice as big.

*bai ni suru*: to (make) double.

*san-nen no* (or *wo*) *bai no roku-nen ni shimashō* (C): let's make it six years, the double of three.

*bai ni naru*: to (become) double.

*sam-bai*: three times as much.

**baka.** A fool.

*baka na*: foolish.

*baka na hanashi*: a foolish tale.

*baka no hanashi*: the tale of a fool.

*baka na koto wo itte wa ike-nai* (A): don't talk nonsense.

*sore hodo baka ja nai* (B): I know better than that; I'm not such a fool as all that.

*ammari baka ni shite iru* (A): you are making a fool of me; you are cheating me.

*ano hito wo baka ni suru*: to make a fool of him.

*baka ni sareru no wa iya desu* (C): I don't like to be made a fool of.

*baka ni suru nara shite goran nasai* (A): I am not to be trifled with.

*nan to iu baka darō!* (A): what a fool he is!

*baka na mane wo shite wa ike-nai* (A): don't be a fool; don't play the fool.

*ammari atsui no de atama ga baka ni natta* (B): I feel half silly in this hot weather.

*ashi ga baka ni natta* (B): my leg is asleep.

*sō baka ni shita mono de mo nai* (B): it is not quite such a trifling thing as you imagine.

*baka ni nomitai* (B): I am awfully thirsty.

*baka ni osoroshii mono nashi*: fools rush in where angels fear to tread.

*baka ni tsukeru kūsuri wa nai*: there is no medicine can cure a fool.

**Der.**

*takarashii*: ridiculous; foolish, [see *-rashii*].

**bakari**, (often placed after verb).

1) Only; just; (gen. pron. *bakkari*).

*kore wa onna no gakkō de bakari tsūkau hon desu* (C): this is a book used only in girls' schools.

*koko ni wa onna no gakkō bakari de, otoko no wa arimasen* (C): there is only a girls' school here, there is no boys' school.

*sore ga dekiru no wa ano hito bakari da* (B): he alone can do it.

*kore bakari wa agerare-nai* (B): this is the one thing I cannot give you.

*tomodachi ga byōki de aru bakari de Kōbe e kimashita* (C): I have come to Kōbe only because my friend is ill.

*kinō tsuita bakari desu* (C): I only arrived yesterday.

*gohan wo taberu bakari ni shite okimashita* (C): dinner is quite ready, (the only thing wanting is the eating of it).

*anata wa mada imashita ka? watakushi wa mō uchi e kaette shimatta koto to bakari omotte ita no ni* (C): what, are you still here? I made sure you had already gone back home, (that was the only thing I thought, the only supposition I thought possible).

2) About.

*mi-tsuki bakari aimasen* (C): I have not seen him for about three months.

*hyaku-nin bakari no seito ga ita* (B): there were about a hundred scholars.

3) —*bakari de naku*—*mo*: not only—but also—.

*mita bakari de naku tabeta koto mo arimasu* (C): I have not only seen it (e.g. that kind of fruit), but I have eaten it.

**bakkari**, see *bakari* 1).

**bakkin**, [batsu punishment; kin money]. A fine.

**bam-me**, suffix added to the first set of cardinal numbers to form the ordinals; see 271; 285-288.

**ban<sup>1</sup>**. A guard; watchman.

*ban wo suru* : to keep watch.

Comp.

*ban-nin* : a watchman, [*nin man*].

*rusu-ban* : care-taker of a house during master's absence, [*rusu* absence].

*yo-ban* : night-watchman, [*yo<sup>2</sup> night*].

**ban<sup>2</sup>**. Evening; night.

*ashita no ban* : tomorrow evening.

*iku-ban tomarimashita* ? (C) : how many days did you stay there ?

Comp.

*komban* : this evening, [see *kono<sup>2</sup>*].

*myōban* : tomorrow evening, [see *myō*].

*sakuban* : yesterday evening, [see *saku*].

Note. *Ban* is used in connection with the abb. 2nd set of num. 276, 4).

**-ban<sup>3</sup>**. A num. suf. used after the first set of numerals.

1) Number : turn.

*o mae no denwa wa nam-ban desu ka* ? (C) : what is the number of the telephone in your office ?

*san-zen nana-hyaku jū-hachi-ban desu* (C) : three thousand seven hundred and eighteen.

*watakushi no ban da* (B) : it is my turn.

2) *-ban* is used after the number of a house if in the foreign part of the town; if in the Japanese part *banchi* (q.v.) is used instead.

3) Followed by the suf. *-me* (*-bam-me*), it is used for forming certain ordinal numbers; see 285-288.

4) *Ichiban* (q.v.) is gen. used in a sup. sense.

Comp.

*kawari-ban* : by turns, [*kawaru* to change].

Note. Before *ban*, *yo* (four) is gen. used instead of *shi*.

**banchi**. Number (of a house in the Japanese part of a town; see prec.).

*banchi ga chigatta tegami* : a wrongly addressed letter.

**banzai**. Excl. of salutation, triumph, joy : long live; hurrah !

**bā-san**, [*haha* mother; *san* Mrs.].

1) Old woman; (the honorific *o* is often prefixed).

2) Grandmother; (the honorific *o* is almost always prefixed).

**basha**, [*ba* horse; *sha* carriage]. Carriage; coach.

**basho**, [*ba* place]. Space; place; room.

*koko ni basho ga arimasu* (C) : there is room here.

*basho ga nai* (B) : there is no room.

*basho wo toru* : to take up room.

— *no tame ni basho wo akeru* : to make room for—.

**batsu**. Punishment.

Der. and comp.

*bassuru* : to punish, [*suru* to do].

*bachi*; *bakkiri*; q.v.

**Bei-koku**, [*-koku* country]. United States of America.

*Beikoku-jin* : a citizen of the United States, [*jin man*].

**benkyō**. Learning; assiduity.

1) *Benkyō suru* : to study.

*benkyō desu* (C) : he is studying; he is diligent.

2) *Benkyō suru* : to sell cheap.

*yoso yori benkyō itashimasu* (D) : I sell cheaper than elsewhere.

**benri**. Convenience.

*benri no tame* : for convenience' sake.

*benri na* : convenient.

*benri no ii* : convenient.

*benri no warui* : inconvenient.

**ben-tō**. Lunch; light refreshments usu. enclosed in a box.

**betsū** (no or na).

1) Different; another; other.

*sore wa betsū na koto desu* (C) : that is another thing; that is not the point.

*betsū no mondai* : a different question.

2) *Betsū ni* : especially; used also elliptically as a neg. answer to a question.

*kutabiremashita ka* ?—*betsū ni* (*kutabiremasen*), (C) : are you tired ?—nothing to speak of.

*kore wa betsū ni harau no desu ka* ? (C) : is this charged for extra ?

*betsū ni nani mo arimasen deshita ka* ? (C) : have you any news ?

*betsū ni wake wa gozaimasen* (D) : I have no particular reason.

*betsū na kotoba de ieba* : in other words.

Comp.

*betsū-ma* : a separate room, [*mai* room].

*betsū-mondai* : a different question, [*mon-dai* question].

*betsū-mono* : a different thing, [*mono* thing].

*betsū-betsū*; see foll.

**betsū-betsū** (no or na), [f. prec.]. Separate.

*betsū-betsū ni ikimashō* (C) : let us go one by one.

*betsū-betsū ni uremasen* (C) : they are not sold separately.

**bijin**, [*jin* a human being]. A pretty woman.

**bikkuri**. Surprise.

*bikkuri suru* : to be surprised, astonished.

*bikkuri shimashita* (C) : I am (was) astonished; you frightened me.

*bikkuri aseru* : to surprise.

**bimbō**. Poverty.

*bimbō na* : poor.

*bimbō suru* : to be badly off.

*bimbō hima nashi* : poor people have no spare time.



Comp.

*bimbō-nin* : a poor person. [*nin* man].

*bimbō-nin no ko takusan* : poor people have many children.

**bin.** Bottle.

Comp.

*ō-bin* : a big bottle, [*ō-* big].

*ko-bin* : a small bottle, [*ko-* small].

*aki-bin* : an empty bottle, [*aki-* empty].

*tetsubin* : a kettle, [*tetsu* iron].

Note.—used after the abb. 2nd set of num. (276, 4), *bin* means a bottleful.

**bō.** Stick.

**boku.** I : (used principally by young men and boys).

**bon.** Tray ; (the honorific *o* is gen. pref.).

**bonyari.** Dully ; dimly ; distractedly.

*bonyari shita* : dull ; dim ; absent-minded.

*bonyari shite iru* : to be dull ; dim ; absent-minded.

*bonyari shite yoku mie-nai* (B) : as it is getting dark I can't see.

*san-jikan mo bonyari matasareta* (B) : they made me wait like a fool for three hours.

*yūbe hito-ban-jū okite ita no de atama ga bonyari shita* (B) : I am not feeling very bright as I was up all night.

*fune ga tōku ni bonyari mieru* (B) : I can see a ship dimly in the distance.

Comp.: *bonyari-mono* : an absent-minded person, [*mono* person].

**bōshi.** A hat.

*bōshi wo toru* ; *bōshi wo nugu* : to take off one's hat.

Comp.: *akabō* : railway porter, [*akai* red ; porters wear red caps].

**botan.** [f. Spanish or Portuguese]. Button.

**botchan.** [*chan* Mr.]. A respectful term for a little boy ; your son.

**bu.** [cogn. w. *bun*].

1) Part.

*sam-bu wa mizu, ichi-bu wa shio* : three parts of water, one part of salt.

2) One tenth part of another thing.

*koppu ni mizu wo shichi-bu irete kure* (A) : fill the glass seven tenths (three quarters) full of water.

3) Especially one tenth of the *wari* (10%), therefore : per cent, 308.

Note.—*bu* is preceded by the 1st set of num.

Comp.: *gobu-gobu* : equality of two things ; half and half ; six of one and half-a-dozen of the other, [*go* five].

**bu-**. Neg. pref., a modified pron. of *fu*, q.v.

**bu-enryo** (na), [*bu-* neg.; *enryo* reserve].

Unreserved ; bold.

**buji**, [*bu-* neg.; *ji* thing]. Free from accident ; peace

*buji na* : safe ; happy.

*go buji de* (C) : a pleasant journey to you.

*go buji ni itte irasshai* (C) : I wish you a pleasant journey.

*mina-san go buji desu ka ?* (C) : are they all well at home ?

**bun**, [cogn. w. *bu*].

1) Part ; share.

*watashi no bun wa dore hodo desu ka ?* (C) : what is my share ?

*jutsūka bun* : enough for two days.

2) Used for expressing fractions.

*shi-bun no san* : three quarters.

*hachi-bun-me* : eight parts out of ten.

3) Kind ; quality.

*kono bun wo mitsū okutte kudasai* (C) : please send me three of this kind.

Comp.: *hambun* ; *jūbun* ; q.v.

**burei** (na) ; [*bu-* neg.; *rei* politeness]. Impolite ; rude.

*burei na koto wo iu* : to use rude language.

**busata.** Neglecting to write or visit ; (seldom used without the honorific pref. *go*).

*go-busata itashimashita* (C) : I have been sadly remiss about calling upon you.

**bushō** (na). Lazy and dirty ; slovenly.

Comp.: *de-bushō* : a stay-at-home, [*de-ru* to go out].

**butsu**, [corr. of *utsu*, q.v.]. To beat (men or animals) ; strike ; knock.

Comp.

*buchi-komu* : to knock in, [*komu* to put into].

*buchi-korosu* : to beat to death ; kill ; [*korosu* to kill].

*buchi-kowasu* : to knock to pieces, [*kowasu* to break].

*buchi-waru* : to break by a blow, [*waru* to split].

**butsūkaru**, (sometimes pron. *buttsūkaru*), v.i. [*butsu* to strike ; *tūkuru* to touch ; cogn.

w. foll.]. To hit, strike, bump against.

**buttsūkeru**, (sometimes pron. *buttsūke-ru*), v.t. [*butsu* to strike ; *tūkuru* to apply ;

cogn. w. *pre.*]. To throw (acc.) at (dat.) ; knock (acc.) against (dat.).

**byō.** Second (of time). *Byō* is preceded by the 1st set of num.

**byō-**. Illness ; sickness.

Comp.

*byōki*, q.v.

*byō-nin* : a sick person, [*nin* man].

**byōki**, [*byō-* illness ; *ki* spirit]. Illness ; sickness.

*go byōki de irasshaimasu ka ?* (D) : are you ill ?

*byōki desu* (C) : I am ill.

*chotto shita byōki desu* (C) : it is only a slight indisposition.

*byōki no furi wo suru* : to feign illness.

*byōki de uchi ni iru* : to remain at home on account of illness.

*byōki de nete iru* : to remain (be) in bed on account of illness.

- utsuru byōki* : an infectious disease.  
**cha.** Tea ; (the honorific *o* is gen. pref.).  
*o cha hitotsū ikaga de gozaimasū ka ?* (D) :  
 may I offer you a cup of tea ?  
*o cha wo ireru* : to make tea.  
*hito wo cha ni suru* : to make a fool of  
 somebody ; slight a person.  
**Comp.**  
*cha-iro* : light brown, [iro colour].  
*cha-ya* : a tea-house, [yal house].  
*chawan* : a tea-cup.  
**chan.** [corr. of *san*]. Mr ; Mrs ; etc. ; (used  
 especially by and of, little children, par-  
 ticularly girls).  
**Comp.** *botchan*, q.v.  
**chanto.** In good order ; perfectly ; correctly ;  
 exactly.  
*chanto shita*, adj. : serious ; correct.  
*kore wo chanto shimatte kure* (A) : put this  
 away in its proper place.  
*chanto o shi nasai* (A) : do it properly.  
*chanto o ii nasai* (A) : tell me frankly.  
*mō chanto shitaku ga dekita* (B) : the prep-  
 arations are all complete.  
*chanto wakatte iru* (B) : I understand it  
 perfectly.  
*kono tokei wa chanto atte iru* (B) : this clock  
 is exactly right.  
*sore wo chanto kaite itadakitai* (B) : I should  
 like to have that clearly put down in  
 writing.  
**chi<sup>1</sup>.** Blood.  
*chi ga deru* : to be bleeding.  
*chi ga tomaru* : to cease bleeding.  
*chi wo tomeru* : to stop the bleeding.  
**Comp.** : *chi-suji* : pedigree.  
*hana-ji* : blood from the nose, [hana nose].  
**chi<sup>2</sup>.** Ground.  
**Comp.**  
*aki-chi* : unoccupied ground, [aki empty].  
*ji* ; *jimen* ; *jishin* ; q.v.  
**chichil.** Milk ; the breasts.  
*ushi no chichi* : cow's milk.  
*chichi wo nomu* : to suck the breast.  
*nama no chichi* : fresh milk, (not boiled).  
*wakashita chichi* : boiled milk.  
*ano hito wa mada chichi kūsai* (B) : he is  
 very green, (inexperienced).  
**Comp.** : *chichi-ya* : a dairy ; the milk-man,  
 [see *yal*].  
**chichi<sup>2</sup>.** A non-polite word for father (364) ;  
 my father.  
**chigae-ru**, v.t. [cogn. w. *chigau* v.i.]. To  
 make different ; mistake.  
**Comp.** : *kiki-chigae-ru* : to misunderstand,  
 [kiku to hear].  
**chigai**, [f. foll.]. Difference.  
*sore ni chigai nai* (B) : there is no doubt  
 about it.  
*totta (no) ni chigai arimasen* (C) : there is  
 no doubt he took it.  
*ano hito wa dō ka shita ni chigai nai* (B) :

- there must be something the matter with  
 him.  
*hanto ni chigai nai* (B) : it must be true.  
*kono hon ni wa ji no chigai ga takusan aru*  
 (B) : there are a great many misprints in  
 this book.  
*maru de yuki to sumi to no chigai* (B) : as  
 different as black and white.  
**chigau**, v.i. [cogn. w. *chigae-ru* v.t.]. To be  
 different ; be mistaken ; be wrong.  
*sore wa chigau* (B) : that is a different mat-  
 ter ; that is not the question.  
*sūkoshi mo chigawa-nai* (B) : it is exactly  
 the same.  
*watakushi no kangae wa chigaimasū* (C) : I  
 think differently.  
*maru de chigaimasū* (C) : it is altogether  
 wrong.  
*basho ga chigau* : out of its place.  
*chigau no* : the wrong one.  
*chigatta bōshi wo kabutte iru* : to have on a  
 different hat.  
*shall to will to wa dō chigaimasū ka ?* (C) :  
 what is the difference between shall and  
 will ?  
*anata wa ki de mo chigatta no desū ka ?* (C) :  
 have you taken leave of your senses ?  
**Comp.** and **der.**  
*chigai* : difference ; see *prec.*  
*kangae-chigai* : misunderstanding. [kan-  
 gae-ru to think].  
*iki-chigai* : passing each other on the road,  
 [iku to go].  
*kichigai* : madness, [ki<sup>2</sup> spirit].  
*machigau* q.v. : to make a mistake.  
*tori-chigae-ru* : to take by mistake, [toru  
 to take].  
*kiki-chigae-ru* : to hear incorrectly, [kiku  
 to hear].  
**chiisai ; chiisa na ; (223).** Little ; small.  
*chiisai koe* : a low voice.  
*chiisai toki* : when I was little.  
*kokoro no chiisai* : timid.  
**Note** :—the q. adj. *chiisa na* is only used  
 attributively.  
**chika-goro**, [chikai near ; koro about the  
 time]. Recently ; lately ; now.  
**chikai.** Near ; close by.  
*chikai shinrui* : a near relation.  
*chikai uchi ni* : soon ; before long.  
**Note** :—the adverbial form *chikaku* behaves  
 at times like a noun and may be foll. by  
 a ppn. ; compare *tōi*.  
*kaji wa chikaku desū ka ?* (C) : is the fire  
 near here ?  
**Comp.**  
*chika-michi* ; *chikai michi* : a shorter road ;  
 a short cut.  
*chika-goro*, q.v.  
**chikara.** Power ; strength.  
*chikara ga nuketa* (B) : his strength failed  
 him.



*chikara no aru* : powerful.  
*chikara no nai* : powerless.  
*jitsū ni chikara no aru shōsetsū de gozaimasu* (D) : it is really a powerful novel.  
*ano hito wa sore wo yaru chikara ga nai* (B) : he has no ability to do it.  
*chikara no tsuyoi* : strong.  
*chikara no yowai* : weak.  
*hito no chikara wo kari-ru* : to be assisted by somebody.  
*chikara wo tsūke-ru* : to encourage.  
*chikara wo otosū* : to lose heart.  
*sazo o chikara otoshi de gozaimashō* (D) : you must be feeling very down-hearted, (said as an expression of condolence).  
*chikara ni suru* : to depend, rely upon.  
*chikara ni naru* : to become the support.  
 Comp.: *chikara-shigoto* : rough work, [shigoto work].

-*chin*. Hire ; fare.

Comp.

*yachin* : house rent, [ya<sup>1</sup> house].

*unchin* : charge for transportation.

*chirakaru*, v.i. (I14), [cogn. w. *chirakasū* v.t.]. To get in disorder ; get scattered about.

*chirakatte iru* : to be in disorder ; scattered about.

*chirakasū*, v.t. [cogn. w. *chirakaru* v.i.]. To disarrange ; scatter.

*chisō*. Banquet ; feast ; entertainment ; ( seldom used without the honorific pref. *go*).  
*go-chisō sama deshita* (C) ; *makoto ni go-chisō sama de gozaimashita* (D) : thank you, (after partaking of any food or refreshment).

*nani ka go-chisō itashimashō* (C) : allow me to offer you something.

*chito* ; *chitto* ; (gen. pron. in this latter way).

A little ; bit ; few.

*chitto o asobi ni irasshai* (C) : come and see me now and then.

*chitto mo kamaimasen* (C) : it doesn't matter a bit.

Note.—*chitto* is practically synonymous with *sūkoshi* q.v.

*chōl*. Head ; principal.

Comp.

*senchō* : captain of a ship, [sen<sup>4</sup> ship].

*shichō* : mayor of a town, [shil town].

*chō2*. A. n. used for things with handles ; knives, tools, rikishas, etc.

Note.—1 *it-chō* ; 8 *hat-chō* ; 10 *jit-chō*.

*chōdai*. Please ; please give me ; (used thus by itself it is a childish substitute for *kudasai*).

*chōdai suru* : synonymous with *itadaku* q.v.

*chōdo*. Exactly ; just.

*chōdo ii* : just right.

*chōdo onaji* : exactly the same.

*chōdo hachi-ji de gozaimasu* (D) : it is exactly eight o'clock.

*chōdo ima kaerimashita* (C) : I have just returned.

*chōdo hoshii to omotta mono desū* (C) : it is the very thing I wanted.

*chōdo dekakeyō to suru tokoro deshita* (C) : I was on the point of going out.

*chōdo ni shite o oki nasai* (B) : please make it a round sum.

*choito*. Same as *chotto* (q.v.) but less common.

*chōmen*. An account book ; note book.

*sore wa chōmen ni tsukemashita* (C) : I put it down in my account book.

*Chōsen*. Korea.

*chotto*, (sometimes pron. *choito*). A short time ; just ; (used as an exclamation for calling attention) I say ; just a moment.  
*chotto o-ide nasai* (B) : just come here a moment.

*chotto matte kudasai* (C) : just wait a moment please.

*chotto o henji ga dekimasen* (C) : I cannot give you an answer at once.

*chotto no koto de kisha ni nori-okureta* (B) : I just missed the train.

*chotto no ma ni taisō ōkiku natta* (B) : how tall he has grown in this short time.

*chotto shita koto kara futari no naka ga waruku natta* (B) : the two men fell out over a trifling affair.

*chū*.

1) Middle.

*chū no shina-mono* : an article of medium quality.

2) During ; in the course of.

*shokuji chū itazura wa shite wa ike-nai* (A) : you must behave properly during meals.

*denwa wa ima o hanashi chū desū* (C) : the telephone is engaged at present.

Comp.

*chūtō* : middle class ; second class ; [tō2 class].

*tochū* : on the way.

In its *nigori*'ed form *jū*, it is used as a suf. and has the meaning of 'entire' ; see *-jū*.

*chūmon*. An order (for goods).

*chūmon suru* : to order ; give an order.

*chūmon wo tori-kesū* : to cancel an order.

*chūmon shite koshiraesae-ru* : to have made to order.

*chūmon de koshiraeru* : to make to order.

*konna mono chūmon shi ya shi-nai* (B) : I didn't order this.

*ima made anata no tokoro ni chūmon shita mono wa minnau okatta* (B) : the articles you have made for me have always been satisfactory until now.

*are wa anata no chūmon no tōri ni mairimashita* (C) : that matter has been settled according to your wishes.

*watakushi ni mo chūmon ga arimasu* (C) : I too have a request to make.

Comp.: *chūmon-dōri* : according to order.

**chūtō**, [chū middle ; tō2 class]. Middle class ; second class.

**da**, [contr. of *de aru*]. To be ; (for conjugation see 94).

1) *De aru* may gen. be substituted for *da*, and it is somewhat more polite. However, occasionally as in 7), see below, this substitution cannot be made.

2) *Desū*, a corr. of *de arimasu*, is used very much like *da* ; it is somewhat more polite. *Desū* is, however, used sometimes where *da* would be inadmissible : see below, 4), 6), 8), also under the word *no* 14). On the other hand *desū* cannot always take the place of *da* : see below 7).

3) *Da*, *desū*, etc. are gen. used after a noun which is a predicate ; occasionally they are used after the stem of a verb.

*uso deshita* (C) : it was a lie.

*kirei da* (B) : it is pretty.

*sunda koto nara yame da* (B) : let us stop if it is already done.

4) *No desū*, (see under *no* 14) is often used after verbs and true adj. : the *no* is sometimes dropped.

*soko kara mo ikeru desū* (C) : you can also go from there.

*kore wa akai desū* (C) : this one is red.

5) *Darō* or *deshō* gen. conveys the idea of uncertainty or probability. They are added to the present and past of verbs, and also to adj. ; they sometimes have a quasi-interrogative force ; 40 ; 41 ; 54 ; 55.

6) *Desū* after a verbal stem preceded by an honorific, forms an alternative for the ordinary verbal inflexions, (359).

*o dekake desū ka ?* (C) : are you going out ?  
*Suzuki San wa o-ide desū ka ?* (C) : is Mr Suzuki here ?

7) *Da* *no* is used in enumerations, especially when the list is not given as a complete one.

*neko da no, inu da no ga sūki* (B) : I am fond of cats and dogs, (and other animals).

8) *Desū ka ?* is used elliptically after a noun, an adverb, or a gerund, (414, 6). On meeting a child on the road you might ask, *gakkō desū ka ?* (i.e. *gakkō e iku no desū ka ?*) are you going to school ?

9) Various.

*da kara* : therefore.

*da ga* : nevertheless ; still ; and yet.

*-dachi*, [nigori'ed form of *-tachi* q.v.].

**dai1**.

1) A stand ; pedestal.

2) A.n. for jinrikishas, carriages, etc.

Comp.

*daidokoro*, q.v.

*nedai* : a bedstead, [ne'ru to sleep].

Note.—Before *dai*, *yo* (four) is gen. used instead of *shi*.

**dai2**. Price.

*dai wo harau* : to pay the price.

*hon (no) dai wo mō haraimashita* (C) : I have already paid for the book.

Comp.: *kuruma-dai* : rikisha fare.

**dai-**, (sometimes *tai*). Pref. meaning large, big.

Note :—*dai* has the meaning of 'very much', before *sūki* to like, and *kirai* to dislike.

Comp.: *daiibu* ; *daijōbu* ; *daiji* ; *taigai* ; *taihen* ; *taishō* ; *taishō* ; *taigō* ; q.v.

**daibu**, [*dai-* great ; *bu* part]. Much ; a good deal ; a good many ; pretty ; fairly.

*kyō wa daibu kimochi ga ii* (B) : I feel much better today.

*mada daibu nokotte iru* (B) : there still remains a good deal.

*kesa wa daibu samui* (B) : it is pretty cold this morning.

**daidokoro**, [*dai* a stand ; *tokoro* place]. Kitchen.

**daiji** (na), [*dai-* great ; *ji* thing]. Important ; serious ; precious.

*daiji de nai* : unimportant.

*daiji ni* : carefully ; like something important.

*o daiji ni nasai* (C) : take care of yourself.

*daiji ni suru* : to take care of.

*kaji ga daiji ni nara-zu ni sunda* (B) : the fire was put out before it became serious.

*sore wa ichi-daiji da* (B) : that is a serious matter.

**daijōbu** (na), [*dai-* great ; *jōbu* strong].

1) Safe ; all right ; requiring no anxiety.

*daijōbu desū* (C) : it is all right ; you needn't be anxious ; you can depend upon it.

*anata ga koko ni irasshareba daijōbu desū* (C) : I shall feel quite safe if you are here.

2) *Daijōbu* without a ppn. is sometimes used adverbially.

*daijōbu gozaimasu* (D) : there are sure to be some.

*kisha ni wa daijōbu ma ni aimasu* (C) : we shall certainly be in time for the train.

**daiku**, [*dai-* big]. Carpenter.

**dake**.

1) Only.

*hitotsu dake* : only one.

*kore dake* : only this (one) ; this much.

*kondo dake* : only this once.

*jitaru dake de ikimashita ka ?* (C) : did you two go all by yourselves ?

*kore dake desū ka ?* (C) : is this all ?

*sore dake desū* (C) : that's all.

*pan dake shika nai* (B) : I have only got some bread.

*sore no aru no wa Tōkyō dake desū* (C) : it is to be found only in Tōkyō.

*o cha dake de naku satō mo o kai nasai* (B) :



buy not only some tea but also some sugar.

—to *dake kaite arimasu* (C); —to *kaite dake desu* (C): that was all that was written.

2) At least.

*watakushi dake wa*: I at least; as far as I am concerned.

*shitaku dake wa shite oite kure* (A): make at least preparations.

*sore dake wa tashika desu* (C): that much is certain.

*ano uchi wo kau dake de ii* (B): if I could only buy that house that would be enough.

3) That much; (sometimes not translated).

*abura wo jis-sen dake katte o-ide* (A): go and buy (as much as) ten sen's worth of oil.

*is-sun dake watakushi yori sei ga takai* (B): he is an inch taller than I.

*hito-tsuki dake Rondon ni ita* (B): I was in London one month.

*kore dake itte kikaseru no ni mada wakari-masen ka?* (B): don't you understand yet after having explained it to you so much?

*are dake yatte areba takusan daro* (B): as I have given him that much I think it will be enough.

*ano otoko ni wa sore dake no kane wa nai* (B): he is not rich enough.

4) The—the.

*takakereba takai dake shina ga yoku nari-masu* (C): the dearer the article the better it is.

*kakeba kaku dake jōzu ni naru* (B): the more you write the better you'll do it.

*benkyō suru dake omoshiroku natte kuru* (B): the more I study it the more interesting I find it.

5) As—as.

*dekiru dake hayaku o kaeri nasai* (B): come back as quickly as you can.

*iru dake o tori nasai* (B): take as much as you want.

*aru dake* (or *arittake*) *tsukatte shimaishita* (C): I used all I had.

*sagaseru dake sagashite miyō* (B): I'll try my best to find it.

*yomitai dake o yomi nasai* (B): read as much as you like.

6) But; on the other hand; therefore.

*takai dake atte shina mo ii* (B): it is expensive but it is good.

*kane mo tsūkau dake (ni) shigoto mo suru* (B): he spends money but he works (and earns it himself).

*nagaku Igririsu ni ita dake atte, dōmo Ei-go ga ūmai* (B): as he has been in England so long, he naturally speaks English very well.

Note:—*dake* sometimes has the sound *take*, as *naru-take* (q.v.) and *arittake* (= *aru dake*).

**daku**. To hold in the arms; embrace; (of a hen) sit on eggs; brood.

**damakasū**, corr. of *damasū* q.v.

**damaru**, [tomaru to stop]. To be silent; hold one's tongue.

*o damari nasai* (A): hold your tongue.

*damatte itte shimaimashita* (C): he left without saying anything.

*hito no heya e damatte haitte wa ike-nai* (A): you mustn't enter people's rooms without leave.

**damasū**, (often corr. to *damakasū*). To deceive; cheat; mislead.

*damasareru no wa iya da* (B): I don't like to be cheated.

**dame** (na). Useless; wrong.

*dame desu* (C): it's no use.

*minna dame deshita* (C): it was all in vain.

*sō shite wa dame da* (B): it's no use doing it like that; you mustn't do it so.

*dame ni naru*: to become useless; to come to nothing.

*watakushi wa mō dame desu, uchi e kaerimashō* (C): as I can continue no longer (doing my work), I'll go back home.

*byō-nin wa mō dame desu* (C): there is no more hope for the patient.

**dan**. A step.

Comp.

*dan-dan*, q.v.: step by step.

*hashigo-dan*: a staircase, [hashigo ladder].

**dan-dan**, [dan a step]. By degrees; gradually; little by little; step by step.

**danna**. Master (of a house); husband.

*danna sama wa irasshaimasu ka?* (D): is your master at home?

**dara**, [corr. of Eng.]. Dollar.

**-darake**. All over; covered with; full of; (gen. used in a bad sense).

Comp.

*chi-darake*: all over blood, [chi blood].

*doro-darake*: covered with mud, [doro mud].

*ana-darake*: full of holes, [ana a hole].

*ishi-darake*: stony, [ishi a stone].

etc.

**dare**.

1) Not foll. by ppn.

*kono hito wa dare da?* (B): who is this man?

*dare da ka sei-yō-jin ga anata no rusu ni kimashita* (C): some foreigner or other came while you were out.

2) *Dare ga*.

*dare ga kesa kimashita ka?* (C): who came this morning?

*dare ga ii to omou?* (B): whom do you recommend?

*dare ga nan to itte mo kamawa-nai* (B): I don't mind what anybody says.

3) *Dare no*.

*kore wa dare no desu ka?* (C): whose is this?

*dare no kakari desu ka?* (C): whose duty is it?

- 4) *Dare ni*; *dare ni*—*mo*.  
*kono tegami wa dare ni kita no desu ka?* (C): to whom is this letter addressed?  
*dare ni kore wo yaru no desu ka?* (C): to whom must I give this?  
*dare ni itta ni shite mo yoku nai* (B): whom-ever you may have told it to you did wrong.  
*dare ni kiite mo sô in hanashi desu* (C): such is the story ask whom you will.
- 5) *Dare ka*; *dare ka no*; *dare ka ni*.  
*dare ka soko ni orimasu* (C): somebody or other is there.  
*dare ka kimasen deshita ka?* (C): hasn't anybody come?  
*mata dare ka kimashita* (C): somebody else has come.  
*koko ni dare ka no chōmen ga aru* (B): here is somebody's note book.  
*jitatsu aru kara hitotsu dare ka ni agemashō* (C): as I have two I'll give one away.
- 6) *Dare mo*; *dare* ppn. *mo*; *dare* ppn.—*mo*.  
*dare mo shira-nai* (B): nobody knows.  
*dare mo shira-nai mono wa nai gurai desu* (C): hardly anybody ignores; practically everybody knows.  
*dare mo shinji-nai deshō* (C): people won't believe it.  
*hoka ni wa dare mo tsurete itte wa ikemasen* (B): besides that person you mustn't bring anybody else.  
*dare mo kangae mo onaji koto desu* (C): everybody else's opinion is just the same.  
*dare ni mo aimasen* (C): I met nobody.  
*dare ni mo hanashite wa ikemasen* (B): you mustn't tell (it to) anybody.  
*dare kara mo waruku omowarete imasu* (C): everybody has a bad opinion of him.
- 7) *Dare de mo*; *dare*—*de mo*.  
*dare de mo kane ga sukui desu* (C): all men love money.  
*dare de mo sô iimasu* (C): everybody says so.  
*dare de mo haireru no desu ka?* (C): is this open to the public?  
*dare de mo kite ii* (B): any one at all may come.  
*dare no de mo ii kara hitotsu kashite kudasai* (B): never mind whose it is lend me one.  
*kongetsu jū wa dare ni de mo misemasu* (C): during this month it will be shown to anybody.  
*dare ga o tōri de mo kamawa-nai* (B): I don't care who passes by.
- 8) Various.  
*dare-dare* is a kind of plural of *dare*.  
*dare-dare ga kita ka shirabete kudasai* (B): please find out the names of those who came.  
*dare mo ka mo*: everybody.  
*uchi no kodomo wa dare mo ka mo kaze wo*

*hiite imasu* (C): every one of the children has (got) a cold.

Note—*donata* is a polite substitute for *dare*.

*dashippanasu*, [*dasu* to take out; *hanasu* to leave]. To leave out.

*dasu*. To take out; put out; expose; produce; send; send away; let out.

*tansu kara kimono wo dashite kure* (A): get my dress out of the chest-of-drawers.

*Ei-koku wa erai hito wo takusan dashita* (B): England has produced many great men.

*mō tegami wa dashimashita ka?* (C): has the letter already gone?

*inu wo dashimashō ka?* (C): shall I let the dog out?

*ano hon wa doko de dashimasu ka?* (C): where is that book published?

*ikura o dashi nasaimasu ka?* (D): what do you offer? how much are you prepared to pay? (compare the slang, fork out).

*tegami wo dasu*: to send a letter (by post).  
*cha wo dasu*: to bring in tea.

*chikara wo dasu*: to put forth strength.

*mise wo dasu*: to open a shop.

*te wo dasu* (lit.) to put out one's hand; (fig.) to try one's hand at or start some new work.

*yatoi-nin wo dasu*: to discharge an employee.

*shippo wo dasu*: to reveal unintentionally one's true (bad) character.

*ni-ban kara hi wo dashita* (B): a fire broke out at number two.

*o kyaku sama ni o kashi wo dashimashita* (C): he set some cakes before the guest.

In comp. it often refers to the beginning of an action as in some of the foll.

*furi-dasu*: to start raining, [*furu* to rain].

*ii-dasu*: to begin to speak, [*iu* to speak].

*kake-dasu*: to run out; start running, [*kake-ru* to run].

*naki-dasu*: to start crying, [*naku* to cry].

*nige-dasu*: to run away, [*nige-ru* to run away].

*omoi-dasu*: to recollect, [*omou* to think].

*uke-dasu*: to ransom, [*ukeru* to receive].

*mochi-dasu*: to carry away, [*motsu* to carry].

*tobi-dasu*: to jump out, [*tobu* to jump].

*oi-dasu*: to drive away, [*ou* to pursue].

*hikidashi*: a drawer, [*hiku* to pull].

*dashippanasu*: to leave out, [*hanasu* to leave].

*datte*, [corr. of *da to itte*, or *de atte mo* after dropping the *mo*], often equivalent to *de mo*, see de 7).

*dō datte, watakushi wa kamawa-nai* (B): let it be how it will I don't care.

*ā itai! nan datte hito wo butsū n' da* (A): oh, you hurt me! why do you bump up against people like that.



*datte, sonna hazu wa nai* (B) : but that cannot be.

*datte sa, isogashikatta n' desu mono* (B, fem.) : yes, but I was so busy.

*kimono datte, obi datte, ima aru dake de takusan da* (B) : you've got quite enough dresses and sashes (without buying any more).

*watashi datte dekimasu* (C) : even I can do it ; I can do it also.

*watashi datte sono kūsuri ga areba sugu agemasu ga* (C) : if I had that medicine I'd soon let you have some.

See also 'te.

de. (See 393 for a comparison between the uses of *de* and *ni*).

1) A ppn. showing the relation of situation, position, cause, reason, means, instrument, condition, circumstance, measure, value, time, etc.; it may be translated by : at, by, in, for, with, of, on, from, etc. *o taku de* : at your house.

*onaji nedan de* : at the same price.

*o tanomi de* : at your request.

*koko de setomono wo yaku no desu ka?* (C) : do they make pottery here (at this place)?

*fune de* : by boat.

*yūbin de* : by post.

*jikan de yatoitai* (B) : I want to engage you by the hour.

*Tōkyō de shinimashita* (C) : he died in Tōkyō.

*Ei-go de itte kudasai* (C) : say it in English please.

*ni-yen de katta* (B) : I bought it for two yen.

*kore wa tō de ikura desu ka?* (C) : what is the price for ten of these ?

*himo de shibaru* : to tie with a string.

*empitsu de kaku* : to write with a pencil.

*Nihon no fujin de yōfuku wo kiru hito mo gozaimasu* (D) : some of the Japanese ladies wear foreign clothes.

*ano hashi wa tetsu de dekite imasu* (C) : that bridge is made of iron.

*michi de* : on the way.

*hito no kimochi wa kao-iro de wakaruru* (B) : men's feelings can be told from their looks.

*shaku de ikura?* (B) : how much a foot ?

*it-tō de o-ide desu ka?* (C) : are you going first class ?

*fūtari de kimashita* (C) : they came both together.

*ni-fun de hachi-ji* : two minutes to eight.

*itōka de ichi-nen ni naru* (B) : in ten days it will be one year (since that happened).

*de, asa hayaku dekakemashita* (C) : and so he set out early in the morning.

*watakushi wa watakushi de ikimashita* (C) : I went of my own accord (nobody forced me).

*maru de* : entirely ; quite.

2) A noun foll. by *de* often becomes the subject in English ; but in the Japanese mind it is conceived as the means whereby, or the place in which the action or state occurs.

*mitsu de takusan* (B) : three will be enough.

*yasui no de ii* (B) : a cheap one will do. (No here means 'one'; do not confound this *no de* with *no de* meaning 'because'; see no 19).

*ano jimen wa ginkō de kaimashita* (C) : the Bank bought that plot of land.

3) *De* may indicate the predicate of the verb *aru* or *gozaru*. Remember that *de aru*, etc. is usually contracted ; see 94. In neg. sentences *de* is usu. foll. by *wa* ; not so, however, in adj. phr. *De wa* is freq. contr. to *ja*.

*koko de arimasu* (or *desu*) (C) : this is the place.

*san-ji han de gozaimasu* (D) : it is half past three.

*sayō de gozaimasu* (D) : that is so.

*kirei de wa arimasen* (C) : it is not pretty.

*sō ja nai* (B) : that isn't so.

*anata ja nai. O Kei San wo yonda no desu* (B) : it was Miss Kei I called, not you.

*jōbu de aritai* (B) : I wish I were healthy.

*o isha san wa byōki ja arimasen ka?* (C) : isn't the doctor ill ?

*baka de nai hito* : a not-foolish man.

*de wa sayonara* (C) : well then, good bye.

*de wa gozaimasu ga* — : that is so no doubt, however—

*De* foll. by *aru* cannot always be contracted to *da* ; for instance :

*Tarō to Haruo to ga kyōdai de aru koto wa shira-nakatta* (B) : I didn't know that Tarō and Haruo were brothers.

4) *De wa arimasen ka?* is often used at the end of a question that expects the answer 'yes'.

*o isha san wa byōki ja arimasen ka?* (C) : isn't the doctor ill ?

*omae wa chitto mo shira-nai ja nai ka?* (A) : isn't it a fact that you know nothing at all about it ?

*kasa wo motte ikeba ii ja arimasen ka?* (C) : hadn't you better take an umbrella ?

*ikō ja arimasen ka?* (C) : let's go.

*De wa arimasen* in constructions like the foll. has an emphatic force :

*aru no de wa arimasen* (= *arimasen*) : there is not.

*yomu no de wa nai* (= *yoma-nai*) : I (ho) do not read ; you must not read.

5) *De* after the neg. pres. forms the neg. gerund ; it may often be translated by without (58, 16, 17).

*nanni mo iwa-nai de itte shimatta* (B) : he went away without saying a word.

- 6) *De* following a noun, may mark the end of a clause which is not the end of a sentence: it is often translated by 'and', and resembles several gerundial constructions; it may be considered as the contraction of *de atte*. In the neg. it becomes: *de (wa) nakūte*; *de (wa) naku* or *de (wa) nai*.

*kono hen wa shizuka de ii tokoro desū* (C): this neighbourhood is quiet and nice.

*Tarō wa tō de Jirō wa yattsū desū* (C): Tarō is ten and Jirō is eight years old.

*ame de (or ame ga futte) dekakeru no wo nobashita* (B): I have postponed my departure on account of the rain.

*sore wa ammari hade de kiraremasen* (C): that is so showy I cannot wear it, (58, 7).

*watashi no haratta no wa ni-yen de wa nai san-yen datta* (B): it was three yen that I paid and not two.

*kō iu hon ga yome-nai yō de wa Aoyama gakkō ni haire-nai* (B): if your education is not sufficient to enable you to read books like this you cannot enter Aoyama college; (remember that a gerundial construction foll. by *wa* has often the force of a conditional).

- 7) *De mo* has several meanings: a) a concessive force which may be often translated by 'even'; b) qualified satisfaction, a make-shift; c) vagueness, which may be translated by 'not exactly', 'such a thing as' or not translated at all. (Compare 58, 9-11).

*iya de mo shikata ga nai* (B): even if you don't like it, it can't be helped.

*ima de mo kikoeru* (B): I can hear it even now.

*ame de mo iku tsumori desū* (C): I intend to go even if it rains.

*de mo sonna hazu wa nai* (B): still that cannot be.

*de mo, mada roku-ji ni nara-nai* (B): well, but it's not six o'clock yet.

*Nihon de mo yōfūku wo kiru hito ga dandan ōku natte kimashita* (C): in Japan also, the number of people who wear foreign clothes is gradually increasing.

*dare ga o tōri de mo kamawa-nai* (B): I don't care who passes by.

*minna deki-nakereba hambun de mo haratte kudasai* (B): at least pay half, if you can't pay all.

*empitsū de mo ii* (B): a pencil will do, (though I'd prefer a pen).

*kaette kara de mo ii* (B): it will be time enough when you come back, (though I'd prefer it sooner).

*machidō desū kara cha de mo nomimashō* (C): as he is a long time coming, let's take tea.

*deki-nai koto de mo nai* (B): it's not exactly an impossible thing.

*sō de mo nai* (B): it's not exactly so.

*sake de mo nonde iru no darō* (B): I suppose he is again drinking sake (or something of the kind).

*hon de mo mimashō* (C): I'll read a book.

*ano hito de mo itsu kane-mochi ni narumai mono de mo nai* (B): it is not exactly impossible that even that man may some day become rich.

*nani ka okotte de mo iru no darō ka?* (B): I wonder if he is put out about anything.

- 8) *De mo—de mo* in parallel clauses has the meaning of 'whether—or', 'either—or' in aff. sentences; 'not—nor' in neg.

*Nihon-jin de mo gaikoku-jin de mo*: every one whether Japanese or foreigner.

*kore wa kin de mo gin de mo arimasen* (C): this is not gold nor silver.

*tōka de mo hatsūka de mo asonde o-ide* (A): take ten day's or a fortnight's rest.

- 9) For *de mo* after *dare*, *donata*, *dore*, *dochira*, *dō*, *doko*, *itsū*, *ikura*, *ikutsū* and *nan*, see these words.

- 10) *De wa kika-nai*: more than.

*jik-kin de wa kika-nai*: more than ten pounds.

*de-bushō*, [*de-ru* to go out; *bushō* lazy]. A stay-at-home.

*de-guchi*, [*de-ru* to go out; *kuchi* mouth, opening]. The way out; exit.

*de-iri*, [*de-ru* to go out; *iru*2 to go in]. Going in and out; receipts and payments; used of incomplete units of time, same as *ashi-kake*, see *ashi*.

*de-iri wo suru*: to go or come frequently to a house.

Comp.: *de-iri-guchi*: a door used for entrance and exit.

*dekake-ru*, [*de-ru* to go out; *kake-ru* q.v.]. To go out; start.

*itsū o dekake de gozaimasu ka?* (D): when do you start?

*deki-agaru*, [*deki-ru* to be made; *agaru* to be finished]. To be completed; be finished.

*deki-ai* (no), [*deki-ru* to be made; *au* to meet]. Ready-made.

*deki-ai no kutsu*: ready-made boots.

Comp.: *deki-ai-mono*: ready-made things.

*deki-ru*, [*de-ru* to go out; *kuru* to come].

Lit.: to come out; forthcome.

- 1) To be made, done, finished, ready.  
*mada dekimasen ka?* (C): isn't it ready yet?

*mō dekimashita* (C): it's ready.

*ano hashi wa tetai de dekite imasu* (C): that bridge is made of iron.

*asoko de setomono ga dekiru* (B): porcelain is manufactured there.

*dekite iru no ga arimasu ka?* (C): have you any ready-made?



## 2) To be able; can.

*dekireba* : if I can; if possible; as far as possible.

*roku-ji ni shokuji ga dekimasu ka?* (C) : can I have my dinner at six o'clock?

*kore ga dekimasu ka?* (C) : can you do this?  
*kyō wa agaru koto ga dekimasen* (D) : I cannot go to see you today. (See *koto* 5).

## 3) To speak (can speak); know.

*Ei-go ga dekimasu ka?* (C) : can you speak English?

*Nihon-go wa sūkoshi shika dekimasen* (C) : I only speak a very little Japanese.

4) *Dekiru dake* has a superlative meaning.

*dekiru dake yoku nasai* (A) : do it as well as you can.

*dekiru dake hayaku henji wo shite kudasai* (B) : please let me have an answer as soon as possible.

*dekiru dake itashimashō* (D) : I will do my utmost.

## 5) As a verbal adj.

*dekiru* : possible.

*deki-nai* : impossible.

*dekiru koto nara nan de mo itashimasu* (D) : I will do anything that is in my power.

*deki-nai koto wa nai* (B) : it is not an impossible thing.

*sore wa dekiru koto desu ka?* (C) : is it possible to do it?

*Ei-go no dekiru hito* : a man who can speak English.

## 6) Various.

*o kuni de wa kome ga dekimasu ka?* (C) : does rice grow in your country?

*ano fujin wa sengetsu kodomo ga dekima-shita* (C) : that lady had a baby last month.

*Ei-go no deki wa dō desu ka?* (C) : how is he getting on in English?

*kodomo ga dekiru* : to give birth to a child; be with child.

*kari ga dekiru* : to get into debt.

Note:—the subject of *deki-ru* gen. takes the ppn. *ga*; this subject is often the object of the English potential verb.

## Comp.

*deki-agaru* : to be finished, [*agaru* to be finished].

*deki-sokonau* : to be a failure, [*sokonau* to fail].

*deki-ai* : ready-made, [*au* to meet].

**dempō**, [den- electricity]. A telegram.

*dempō wo kakeru*; *dempō wo utsu* : to send a telegram.

*byōki da to in dempō ga kita* (B) : I received a telegram saying he is ill.

**den-**. Electricity.

Comp.: *dempō*; *denki*; *densha*; *denwa*; q.v.

**denki**, [den- electricity; *ki* spirit]. Electric-ity; electric light.

**densha**, [den- electricity; -*sha* carriage].

Electric car; tram-car.

**denwa**, [den- electricity].

*denwa e yonde kudasai* (C) : please call him to the telephone.

*Tanabe San, denwa de gozaimasu* (D) : Mr Tanabe, you are wanted on the telephone.

*o rusu ni Yamada San kara denwa ga kakarimashita* (C) : while you were out a telephone call came from Mr Yamada.

*denwa wo kakeru* : to telephone.

**deru**.

1) To go out; come out.

*ima deru tokoro desu* (C) : I am just about to go out.

*ano hon wa raigetsu demasu* (C) : that book will come out (be published) next month.

2) To leave; start.

*kisha wa nan-ji ni demasu ka?* (C) : at what o'clock does the train start?

*kesa Kōbe wo demashita* (C) : I left Kōbe this morning.

3) *Deru* has sometimes a humble meaning.

*ō-sama no mae ni demashita* (C) : he came into the presence of the King.

*negatte de-ru* : to make a request of a person constituted in authority.

*mōshi-de-ru* : to say something to a person in authority.

4) Various.

*koko wo ikaba teishaba e demasu ka?* (C) : does this road go to the station?

*ashita gakkō e demasu ka?* (C) : are you going to school tomorrow?

*kari wa daidokoro kara deta sō desu* (C) : it seems that the fire began in the kitchen.

*abunai! koko ni kugi ga dete iru* (B) : how dangerous, there is a nail sticking out here.

*chi ga de-ru* : to bleed.

*ase ga de-ru* : to perspire.

*namida ga de-ru* : to cry.

*seki ga de-ru* : to cough.

*shimbun ni de-ru* : to appear in a newspaper.

*dete kuru* : to come out; appear; be found.

## Comp.

*de-guchi* : the way out, [*kuchi* mouth, opening].

*de-bushō* : a stay-at-home, [*bushō* lazy].

*hi-no-de* : sunrise, [*hi* sun].

*de-iri* q.v.

**desū**, see *da*.

**detarame**. Nonsense; random; haphazard.

*detarame wo iu* : to talk at random.

*detarame na*, adj.: random; nonsensical.

*detarame ni henji suru* : to answer at random.

**do**.

1) Degree.

*nani-goto mo do wo sugite wa ike-nai* (B) : you must not go to excess in anything.

*anata no megane wa nan-do desū ka?* (C):

what is the number of your spectacles?

2) Times.

*ichi-do*: once.

*san-do ni ichi-do*: once in three times.

*ni-do-me*: the second time.

*ichi-do mo* (with neg.): not even once.

*ichi-do mo mimasen* (C): I have never seen it, not even once.

*iku-do mo*: any number of times; very often.

*ichi-do Nikkō e itte mitai* (B): I would like to see Nikkō; (compare *hitotsū* 2).

*mō ni-do to Kichiza ni au koto wa dekimasen* (C): she would never be able to see Kichiza again.

Comp.

*kondo*: this time; next time; [see *kono* 2].

*mai-do*: every time, [mai every].

Note:—*do* is preceded by the 1st set of num.; before *do*, *yo* (four) is used instead of *shi*.

dō1. Copper.

dō2. Interr. pron.

1) How? what?

*dō suru no desū ka?* (C): how do you do it?

*dō shimashō?* (C); *dō sureba ii deshō?* (C);

*dō shītara ii ka?* (B): what shall I do? what had I better do?

*dō suru no darō?* (B): what shall I do? how is he to proceed?

*dō shimasū ka?* (C): what do you propose to do?

*dō sureba ii no desū?* (C): what do you advise me to do?

*anata ga i-nakereba dō shimashō?* (C): what should I ever do without you?

*dō suru koto mo deki-nai* (B): I can't prevent it.

*Hakone e wa dō iku no desū ka?* (C): how can you get to Hakone?

*gakkō wo dete kara dō nasaru o kangae desū ka?* (C): what do you mean to do when you leave school?

*yoku kiite miru to dō darō?* (B): and when I questioned her, what do you think she said?

*kyonen wa kotoshi yori atsui to omoimasū ga, dō deshō?* (C): it seems to me that it's hotter this year than last, however I may be wrong.

2) *Dō desū ka?* (C): how are you?

*koko wa dō desū ka?* (C): how do you like this place?

*heitanai wa dō desū ka?* (C): how do you like being a soldier?

*issō ni itte wa dō desū ka?* (C): what do you say to going with me?

3) *Dō shita?*

*dō shita no desū?* (C): what has happened? what is the matter?

*dō shita no deshō?* (C): I wonder what has happened? I wonder how it happened?

*dō nasaimashita ka?* (D): what is the matter with you?

*kodomo wa dō shita no desū ka?* (C): what has happened to the child?

*watashi no bōshi wa dō shita ka?* (B): what has become of my hat?

*dō shita mon' darō?* (B): what shall I do?

*dō shita no ka shira-nai* (B): I don't know how it happened.

*dō shita hito desū?* (C): what kind of a man is he?

*sore wa dō shita wake desū?* (C): what is the reason of that?

*dō shita wake ka o-kami-san ga byōki ni narimashita* (C): somehow or other his wife fell ill.

*dō shita koto ka hitori ga ashi wo suberasete ochimashita* (C): somehow or other one of them slipped and fell down.

4) *Dō shite.*

*dō shite kyō ikimasen deshita ka?* (C): why didn't you go today?

*dō shite deshō?* (C): I wonder how that happened?

*dō shite sō natta no desū?* (C): how did that happen?

*dō shite omae wa watakushi no tometa koto wo shimasū ka?* (A): how dare you do what I have forbidden?

*dō shite ii ka wakarimasen* (C): I am at a loss to know what to do.

*Hakone e dō shite iku no desū ka?* (C): how can you get to Hakone?

5) *Dō shite mo.*

*dō shite mo dekimasen* (C): it is absolutely impossible.

*dō shite mo dekakemasen* (C): in any case I shall not go out.

*dō shite mo ike-nai* (B): that won't do at all.

*dō shite mo ashita de kake-nakereba narimasen* (C): it is absolutely necessary for me to leave tomorrow.

*Kōmoto San wa dō shite mo jōzu da* (B): there is no denying Mr Kōmoto is very clever.

*dō shite mo kō shite mo dō mo nara-nakereba, kono kane wo agemashō* (C): if there is absolutely no other way out of the difficulty I'll give you this money.

6) *Dō mo*; *dō* (gerund) *mo*; *dō ni mo*; (see also *dōmo*).

*ō-kaze ga fukimashita ga uchi wa dōmo narimasen* (C): a gale blew but nothing happened to my house.

*dō mite mo ano hito wa Nihon-jin da* (B): whichever way you look at him he is a Japanese.

*dō natte mo kamaimasen* (C): I don't care what happens.



*dō ni mo naru* (B) : it can be turned any way.

*dō mo kō mo shiyō ga nai* (B) : it really can't be help.

*butarete mo naki mo dō mo shi-nakatta* (B) : although he got a beating he didn't cry or do anything like that.

7) *Dō ka* ; *dō ni ka* ; (see also *dōka*).

*dō (ni) ka dekimasen ka* ? (C) : can't you manage it some way ?

*dō (ni) ka shīte o kure* (A) : attend to it please.

*sono uchi ni dō (ni) ka narimashō* (C) : sooner or later it will come to some satisfactory conclusion.

*ano hito no tokoro-gaki wo dō (ni) ka shīte shiritai mono desū* (C) : I wish I could find out his address somehow or other.

*dō ka suru to aku no desū ga dō suru no da ka wakarimasen* (C) : this must open somehow or other but I don't know how.

*dō ka shīta no desū ka* ? (C) : is anything the matter with you ?

*dō ka shīte kawa no mukō e ikitai* (B) : I wish I could manage somehow to get to the other side of this river.

*omae wa kyō wa yoppodo dō ka shīte iru* (A) : there's no doubt about it, you are not yourself today, (something has happened to upset you).

8) *Dō de mo* ; *dō ni de mo*.

*dō (ni) de mo o shi nasai* (B) : do it anyhow.  
*dō de mo yō gozaimasū* (D) : any way will do ; it doesn't matter how it is.

*anata no kangae de dō de mo narimasū* (C) : either of the things you suggest will do.

9) *Dō iu* ; *dō iu fū na* ; *dō iu yō na* : what kind of.

*dō iu hito desū* ? (C) : what kind of a man is he ?

*sore wa dō iu wake desū* ? (C) : what is the reason of that ? what do you mean by that ?

*dō iu wake ka kesa shinbun ga osoku kima-shita* (C) : for some reason or other the newspaper came late this morning.

10) Various.

*dō itashimashite* (C) : not at all (after being thanked) ; don't mention-it.

*dō ka kō ka* ; *dō ni ka kō ni ka* : somehow or other.

*dō (ni) ka kō (ni) ka shimashō* (C) : I will do it somehow or other.

*dō no kō no* : something or other.

Note :—*ikaga*, a polite substitute for *dō*, can be used in many of the examples in 1, 2 and 3.

**dōbutsū**. Animal.

**dochi** ; **dochira** ; (*dochi* is gen. pron. *dotchi*).

1) Where ?

*dotchi e o-ide ni narimasū ka* ? (D) : where are you going ?

*dochira kara o-ide nasaimashita ka* ? (D) : where do you come from ?

2) Which (of two) ?

*dochira ga o sūki desū ka* ? (C) : which do you prefer ?

*mizu to o yu to dotchi ga yō gozaimasū ka* ? (D) : is it cold water or hot water that you want ?

*shina-mono wo watasū ka, kane wo harau ka, dotchi ka o shi nasai* (A) : either hand over the goods or pay the money.

3) *Dotchi no* ; *dochira no*.

*dochira no michi wo ikimashō ka* ? (C) : which road shall we take ?

*dotchi no hō* ? (B) : in which direction ? in what part (of the town) ?

4) *Dotchi ka* ; *dochira ka*.

*dotchi ka agemashō* (C) : I will give you one of these (two).

*kono uchi dochira ka o ki ni irimasū ka* ? (D) : will either of these suit you ?

*dotchi ka to ieba machi yori inaka no hō ga sūki desū* (C) : if I must choose between the two, I think I prefer the country to living in town.

5) *Dotchi mo* ; *dochira mo*.

*dotchi mo onaji da* (B) : they are both alike.

*dochira mo ira-nai* (B) : I want neither.

*dotchi mo yoku nai* (B) : neither is good.

6) *Dotchi de mo* ; *dochira de mo*.

*dochira de mo ii* (B) : either will do.

*sono kami nara dotchi de mo daijōbu darō* (B) : either of those pieces of paper would be strong enough.

7) *Dotchi ni shite mo* : in either case.

**dōgu**. Tool ; instrument ; (piece of) furniture.

Comp. : *furu-dōgu* : second-hand furniture, tools, [furu old].

**Doitsū**, [corr. of the German]. Germany.  
*Doitsū no*, adj. : German.

Comp.

*Doitsū-jin* : a German, [jin man].

*Doitsū-go* : the German language, [—go speech].

**dōka**, [see *dō ka* under *dō*]. The original meaning is 'somehow or other' ; but it sometimes is about equivalent to 'please'.  
*dōka kore wo kaite kudasai* (C) : please write this.

**dokeru**, v.t. [cogn. w. *doku* v.i.]. To remove ; take out of the way.

**dokka**, [contr. of *doko ka*, see *doko*].

**doko**, [dono which ; tokoro place].

1) Where ? which ?

*o taku wa doko desū ka* ? (C) : where do you live ?

*koko wa doko desū ka* ? (C) : what is the name of this place ?

*doko ga ietiban ii hoteru deshō* ? (C) : which is the best hotel ?

are wa doko no hito desu ka? (C): what nationality is he?

doko no kata ka shirimasen (C): I don't know who the man is.

doko no gakkō e ikimasu ka? (C): what school do you go to? (352).

doko ni aru no darō? (B): I wonder where it is.

doko e itta ka shirimasen (C): I don't know where he has gone.

kore wa doko e iku michi desu ka? (C): where does this road go to?

doko kara ikimasu ka? (C): by which road are you going?

doko made ikimashita ka? (C): how far did you go?

doko de katta no? (B, fem.): where did you buy it?

2) Doko ka (often abb. to dokka); doko, ppn. ka; doko ka, ppn.

doko ka (dokka) kono kinjo ni sunde iru (B): he lives somewhere in this neighbourhood.

doko ka no otoko no ko ga uchi no nashi wo torimashita (C): some boy I don't know, stole some of our pears.

doko ni ka (or ka ni) aru deshō (C): it must be somewhere; there must be some somewhere.

doko e ka (or ka e) ikō ja arimasen ka? (B): let's go somewhere.

mizu ga doko kara ka (or ka kara) morimasu (C): there's a leak somewhere.

doko made ka ikimashō (C): I'll go part of the way.

3) Doko mo; doko, ppn. mo.

doko mo shirimasen (C): I don't know any of those places.

kinō doko mo o warui yō de wa arimasen deshita (C): there seemed to be nothing the matter with him yesterday.

doko ni mo gozaimasen (D): there are none anywhere.

kyō wa doko e mo ikimasen (C): I'm not going out today.

kesa wa yūbin ga doko kara mo kimasen (C): I haven't received a letter from anywhere this morning.

doko made mo ikimashita (C): I went ever so far.

doko made mo shinsete na hito desu (C): there is no limit to his kindness.

4) Doko de mo; doko, ppn. de mo.

doko de mo ii (B): anywhere will do.

doko de mo arimasu (C): you can get it anywhere.

Tōkyō de wa doko no mise de mo denki ya gasu wo tsūkaimasu (C): in Tōkyō every shop is lit by electricity or gas.

doko ni de mo itte irasshai (B): go wherever you like.

doko e de mo o oki nasai (B): put it anywhere.

doko kara de mo kimasu (C): they come from all parts.

doko made de mo o tomo itashimashō (D): I'll go with you as far as you like.

5) Doko, ppn., gerund, mo.

doko ni ite mo tabako wo nonde imasu (C): he smokes wherever he is.

doko e o-ide ni natte mo sō yasuku wa arimasen (C): go where you will you won't get it so cheap.

doko kara mite mo: whichever way you look at it.

doko made itte mo yama bakari desu (C): no matter how far you go there are only mountains.

doko e iku toki de mo inu wo tsurete ikimashita (C): he used to take the dog with him whenever he went anywhere.

Comp.

doko-doko is a kind of plural of doko.

doko-doko e irasshaimashita ka? (D): to what places did you go?

doko-ira? whereabouts? [see -ira].

dokoro, nigori'ed form of tokoro q.v.

doku<sup>1</sup>. Poison; something bad for the health.

doku na: poisonous.

doku ni naru: to prove injurious to health.

doku ni mo kūsuri ni mo nara-nai (B): it is neither good nor bad.

doku kueba sara made mo: in for a penny in for a pound; one may as well be hanged for a sheep as a lamb; (lit.: if you take poison, eat the plate also).

doku<sup>2</sup>, v.i. [cogn. w. dokeru v.t.]. To get out of the way; move aside.

o doki nasai (A): get out of the way.

-domo, [tomo companion]. Suff. used for forming the plural of nouns, (178).

dōmo, [dō how; mo even; see dō2 6]. Has a vague sup. meaning or serves to emphasize a word.

dōmo nani wo o suru ni mo nagaku kakaru (B): how long he takes about everything!

dōmo kono-goro hima ga nakute komarimasu (C): I have so little time now-a-days, I don't know how to manage.

dōmo o kinodoku sama desu ne (C): I am indeed very sorry for you.

osoroshiku dōmo michi ga warui (B): what an awfully bad road!

dōmo shiyo ga nai (B): there is really no help for it.

sore wa dōmo (C): that is really too bad; that is very unexpected.

donata, [dono which; kata person]. Who; a polite substitute for dare q.v., esp. used in the 2nd person.

donata de gozaimasu ka? (D): whom have I the honour of addressing?

don-don, (397). Rapidly; noisily.

donna, [corr. dono yō na what kind of].



1) What kind of ? how ?

*donna hon ga irimasu ka ?* (C) : what kind of book do you want ?

*donna deshita ka ?* (C) : how did you like it ?

*donna ka mitai* (B) : I would like to see how it looks.

2) *Donna ni, donna gerund mo*, have a sup. meaning or a meaning of 'absolutely without exception.'

*donna ni ureshii ka shiremasen* (C) : I cannot tell you how very pleased I am.

*donna ni itte mo* : whatever you may say.

*donna koto ga atte mo* : whatever may happen.

*donna hito de mo hairaremasu* (C) : absolutely anybody may enter.

*donna uchi ni de mo gozaimasu* (D) : it is to be found in every house.

dono.

1) Which ?

*dono hon ?* which book ?

*dono michi wo iku ga chikakarō ?* (B) : which is the nearest road to take ?

2) *Dono gurai* : about how much ? what quantity ?

*dono gurai no ōkisa ni shimashō ka ?* (C) : what size shall I make it ?

*dono gurai kakarimasu ka ?* (C) : about how long will it take ?

3) *Dono*—mo : universality.

*dono michi wo itte mo* : by whichever road one goes.

*dono isu mo tsukatte iru* (B) : every chair is occupied.

*dono bin ni mo ippai haitte iru* (B) : every bottle is full.

dore.

1) Which ? (of more than two).

*dore ?* which one ? let me see it.

*dore ga ii ?* (B) : which is the best ?

2) *Dore ka*.

*dore ka kaimashō* (C) : I shall buy one (some) of them.

*dore ka o ki ni irimashita ka ?* (C) : is any of them to your taste ?

3) *Dore mo*.

*kore wa dore mo ikemasen ka ?* (C) : won't any of these do ?

*dore mo kowarete iru* (B) : they are all broken.

4) *Dore de mo*.

*dore de mo ii* (B) : any one will do.

*dore de mo ki ni iru darō* (B) : any of these I think will please him.

5) *Dore* is used as a more or less meaningless interj. at the beginning of an action.

*dore, kaerō* ! (B) : well, I'll go back home.

6) Various.

*dore mo kore mo kowarete iru* (B) : every single one is broken.

*dore dake ? dore hodo ?* how much ?

*Jirō wa dore hodo shikatte mo kika-nai* (B) : Jirō doesn't take any notice no matter how much I scold him.

*dōri*, [ ? tōri road].

1) Reason ; right.

*wa'takūshi ni dōri ga aru* (B) : I am in the right.

*dōri de mie-nai* (B) : no wonder he is not to be seen.

*kono-goro wa o tenki ga warui kara sakana no takai no mo dōri desu* (C) : as we have had such bad weather lately fish is naturally dear.

2) *Nigori* 'ed form of *tōri* q.v.

*doro*. Mud.

*hito no kao ni doro wo nuru* : to bring disgrace upon somebody.

Comp.: *doro-ashi* : muddy feet, [*ashi* feet].

*dorobō*. Robber ; thief.

*dorobō wo suru* : to rob.

*dorobō ni au* : to be robbed.

*doru*, [corr. of Eng.]. Dollar.

*dōse*. After all ; anyhow.

*dōse kono kisha wa okureru* (B) : this train is sure to be late anyhow.

*dossari*.

*anata wa dossari hon wo o mochi desu ne* (C) : what a lot of books you've got.

*dotchī*, see *dochi*.

*do-yō, do-yō-bi*, [see *yō-bi*]. Saturday.

*dōzo*. Please ; a polite way of granting a request ; most certainly ; you are welcome to it.

*dōzo irasshai* (C) : please come in.

*ei*.

1) Place : to ; towards ; at ; into.

*doko e ikimasu ka ?* (C) : where are you going to ?

*koppu e mizu wo ireru* : to pour water into a glass.

*Tōkyō e tsūku* : to arrive at Tōkyō.

*ginkō e yotte iku* : to call at the Bank on the way.

*Teikoku Hoteru e tomaru* : to stop at the Imperial Hotel.

*tana e ageru* : to put on the shelf ; fig. to be oblivious of.

*Nagoya e chūmon suru* : to order from Nagoya.

2) Time.

*soko e* : at that moment.

*saki e mairimasu* (D) : excuse me for going first.

Note —*ni* may practically always be used instead of *e* ; but *e* only sometimes may take the place of *ni*.

*ez*. Handle.

*es*. Picture.

*e no yō na* : picturesque.

*e wo kaku* : to draw (paint) a picture.

Comp.

*e-kaki* : an artist, [*kaku* to write, paint].

*e-hagaki*: a picture postcard, [*hagaki* postcard].  
*abura-e*: an oil painting, [*abura* oil].  
**ei**; *ē*; interj. Has various more or less vague meanings; surprise; approval: yes, all right, very well; it may indicate you are following what the other man is saying: yes, I see.  
*ē to*: let me see (when considering a question).  
**eda**. A branch.  
 Comp.: *eda-michi*: a branch-road, [*michi* road].  
**Ei**. In comp. England.  
*Ei-go*: English (language), see foll.  
*Ei-koku*: England, [*-koku* country].  
*Eikoku-jin*: an Englishman, [*jin* man].  
**Ei-go**, [*Ei* England; *-go* speech]. The English language.  
*Ei-go ga deki-ru*: to speak (know) English.  
*Ei-go no dekiru hito*: a man who can speak English.  
*Ei-go de hanasū*: to say in English.  
*Ei-go ni yaku suru*: to translate into English.  
*Ei-go de wa* book to *imasū* (C): in English we say 'book'.  
**empitsū**. A lead-pencil.  
*empitsū wo kezuru*: to sharpen a pencil.  
**engawa**. Veranda.  
**enryo**. Reserve; regard for another's feelings.  
*enryo suru*: to stand upon ceremony.  
*dōzo go enryo naku* (C): please do not stand upon ceremony.  
*amari enryo suru no ni mo komaru* (B): excessive formality and etiquette make us feel uncomfortable.  
 Comp.  
*bu-enryo na*: not bashful; inconsiderate; [*bu-* neg.].  
*enryo-bukai*: careful; scrupulous; [*fūkai* deep].  
**erabu**, [practically the same as *eramu*]. To choose; pick out; select.  
*kono uchi kara erande kudasai* (C): please choose from among these.  
**eral**. Great; remarkable. A term of praise applied to anything which excites our admiration and approval; even such things as, a little girl who takes good care of her little baby brother; a hen feeding her chicks. Although generally used in a good sense it may be applied to a storm, wind, rain, etc.  
*erai*! bravo! well done!  
*are dake wakattara erai mon' da* (B): he would be a remarkable man if he knew as much as that.  
**eramu**, see *erabu*.  
**eri**. Collar; neck-band.  
*fu-*, (in its *nigori*-ed form *bu-*). A neg. pref.  
*fuben na*, q.v.: inconvenient.

*fu-anna*: ignorant, [*anna* a guide].  
*fu-shinsetsū na*: unkind, [*shinsetsū* kind].  
*fu-shiawase na*: unfortunate, [*shi-awase* fortunate].  
*fu-soroi na*: not equal or uniform, [*soroi* to be arranged in order].  
*kono chawan wa fu-soroi da* (B): these tea-cups are all odd ones.  
*fu-jiyū na*, (often pron. *fujū na*): not free, [*jiyū* free].  
*burei na*: rude, [*rei* politeness].  
*buji*: free from accident, [*ji* thing].  
*bu-enryo na*: not bashful, [*enryo* reserve].  
**fū**<sup>1</sup>. Way; manner; customs.  
*kō ru jū ni suru hō ga ii* (B): you had better do it this way.  
*dō iu jū ni sureba ichiban ii deshō?* (C): which do you think would be the best way to do it?  
*chigatta fū ni*: in a different way.  
*Nihon-fū (seiyō-fū) wo mane suru*: to imitate Japanese (European) customs.  
*sore wo kiite taihen ni odorita yō na fū wo shimashita* (C): when he heard that he pretended to be greatly surprised.  
**fū**<sup>2</sup>, [*jūtatsu* two]. Two (in the 3rd set of num.; see 271, 275).  
**fuben na**, [*fu-* neg. pref.; *ben(ri)* convenience]. Inconvenient.  
*sore wa wataikishi ni fuben desū* (C): that is inconvenient for me.  
**fuchi**. A rim; border; edge.  
*kawa no fuchi*: banks of a river.  
*megane no fuchi*: spectacle frame.  
*fuchi wo nuu*: to hem.  
**fuda**. A countersign; label.  
*fuda wo tsuke-ru*: to label.  
**fudan no**. Everyday; usual.  
*fudan no tōri de arimashita* (C): it was as usual.  
*fudan no kimono*: everyday clothes.  
**fude**. Writing brush; pen.  
*ano hito wa yoku fude ga tatsu* (B): he is a good writer.  
*kore wa Tamaki San no fude desū* (C): this is a picture (writing) by Mr. Tamaki.  
*Kōbō ni mo fude no ayamari*: even Kōbō's brush sometimes makes a mistake; even Homer nods at times; (Kōbō was a celebrated learned man).  
**fūfu**. A married couple; husband and wife.  
*Tanabe San ga fūfu*: Mr and Mrs. Tanabe.  
 Comp.  
*fūfu-wakare*: divorce, [*wakareru* to separate].  
*fūfu-genka*: a quarrel between husband and wife, [*kenka* quarrel].  
*fūfu-genka wa iuu mo kuwa-nai*: not even a dog takes any interest in a quarrel between husband and wife.  
**fui no**. Sudden.  
*fui ni*: suddenly; all at once.



**fujin**, [jin human being]. Woman; lady.  
*Tanaka fujin*: Mrs Tanaka.

**fūkai**. Deep.

*kiri ga fūkai* (B): the fog is thick.

*imi no fūkai*, adj.: expressive.

Comp.

*fūkasa*: depth, [see -sa].

*enryo-bukai*: careful, [enryo reserve].

**fūkui**. Clothes.

Comp.

*fuyu-fūku*: winter clothes, [fuyu winter].

*natsū-fūku*: summer clothes, [natsū summer].

**fūku2**. A.n. used for scrolls, sips of tea, whiffs of tobacco, etc.

Note:—1 *ip-puku*; 3 *sam-buku*; 6 *rop-puku*; 10 *jip-puku*; 100 *hyap-puku*; 1,000 *sem-buku*; *nan-buku*?

See *ip-puku*.

**fūku3**. To blow.

*kaze ga fuite imasu* (C): the wind is blowing.

Comp.

*fūki-dasū*: to burst out laughing.

*fūki-kesū*: to blow out.

**fūku4**. To wipe.

**fūkureru**. To swell; be inflated; be sulky.  
*naze fūkurete iru no da?* (A): what are you sulking about now?

**fūkuro**, [? *fūkureru* to swell]. A bag.

*fūkuro no kuchi wo shimeru*: to tie the strings of a bag; to have control of money.

*fūkuro no naka no nezumi*: caught like a mouse in a trap.

Comp.

*jō-bukuro*: envelope, [jō letter].

*te-bukuro*: gloves, [te hand].

Note:—used after the abb. 2nd set of num. (276, 4), *fūkuro* means a bagful.

**fumu**. To step; tread on.

*hito no ashi wo funde wa ike-nai* (A): don't tread on people's feet.

*ammari chirakatte iru no de ashi no fumi-dokoro ga nai* (B): the place is in such disorder I cannot find a spot to step on.

**fun**. Minute.

*ichi-jū jū-go-fun*: a quarter past one.

*iku-fun? nam-pun?* how many minutes?

Note:—*fun* is preceded by the 1st set of num., (276, 1); see 298 et seq. The foll. irregularities occur: 1 *ip-pun*; 3 *sam-pun*; 6 *rop-pun*; 10 *jip-pun*.

**fune**. Ship; vessel; boat.

*fune de iku*: to go by boat.

*fune ni noru*: to get on board.

*fune wa o kirai desū ka?* (C): don't you like the sea?

*watashi wa fune ni tsuyoi* (B): I am a good sailor.

*Amerika ni iku fune wa itsū demasu ka?* (C): when does the boat for America sail?

**furi**. Manner.

*furi (wo) suru*: to pretend.

*shira-nai furi (wo) suru*: to feign ignorance.  
*byōki no furi (wo) suru*: to pretend to be sick.

**furo**. A (hot) bath.

*furo ni hairu*: to take a hot bath.

*furo wa nan-ji ni wakimasu ka?* (C): when will the bath be ready?

Comp.: *furoba*: bath-room, [ba place].

**furoshiki**, [furo bath; shiku to spread; originally a cloth spread in the bath-room to step on]. A cloth used to wrap up parcels.

*furoshiki ni tsumumu*: to wrap in a *furo-shiki*.

**furu1**. To fall; come down.

*(hidoku) ame ga furu*: to rain (heavily).

*yuki ga furu*: to snow.

*myōōasa shimo ga furu ka mo shire-nai* (B): I think we will have frost tomorrow morning.

*futte mo, tette mo mairimasu* (C): rain or shine, I will go.

*futari tetsuri iga na tenki da* (B): now raining, now stopping, what beastly weather!

Comp.: *furi-dasū*: to start raining, [dasu, (in comp.) to begin].

**furu2**, v.t. [cogn. w. *furueru* v.i.]. To shake; swing.

*bōshi wo furu*: to wave one's hat.

*atama wo furu*: to shake one's head.

*ō-de wo fute aruku*: to walk swinging one's arms; swagger; [ō-big; te arm].

*inu ga shippo wo futte iru* (B): the dog is wagging his tail.

Comp.: *furi-muku* v.i.: to turn; face to-wards; [muku to turn].

**fururu**, v.i. [cogn. w. *furu* v.t.]. To shake; tremble; shiver.

**furu1**. Old.

*furu1 tomodachi*: an old friend.

Comp.

*furu-dōgu*: second-hand articles, [dōgu instrument].

*furu-hon*: a second-hand book, [hon book].

**fūshigi**. A marvel; wonder.

*fūshigi ga areba o kiki nasai* (B): if you don't believe it, ask him.

*fūshigi na*: marvellous; strange.

*fūshigi ni omou*: to think (that something is) strange.

*fūshigi na koto ni wa sakura no sakari ni yuki ga futa* (B): the wonder of it was that snow fell while the cherry-trees were in bloom.

**fūta**, [? *fūtatsu* two]. A lid; cover.

*fūta (wo) suru*: to cover with a lid.

*fūta wo toru*: to uncover.

Comp.

*hirobuta*: a tray, [hiro wide].

*mabuta*: eye-lid, [me eye].

**fūta-**, [fūtatsu two]. Two; abb. 2nd set of num. (276, 4); see *fūtatsu*.

**futari**, [fütatsü two; *oru* to be]. Two persons.

**fütari de ikimashö** (C): let's both of us go.

**fütatsü**. Two.

**fütatsü ni suru**; **fütatsü ni wake-ru**: to divide in two.

**küsuri wo nomu ka byōki de iru ka no fütatsü ni hitotsü** (B): either you take the medicine or you remain ill, one of the two.

**kono kurai no mono wa Tōkyō-jū sagashite mo fütatsü to wa nai deshō** (C): I don't think you could find two like this if you searched all Tōkyō.

In comp. **fütatsü** is abb. to **fūta**; see 276, 4.

**fūta-go**: twins, [ko child].

**fūta-oya**: both parents, [oya parent].

Der.: **futsūka**: two days, [see -ka].

**fūtoi**. Thick; big; large.

**fūtoi koe**: a deep voice.

**fūtoi kangae**: wicked thoughts.

**fūtoi yatsū**: an audacious rascal.

Der.

**fūtoza**: thickness, [see -sa].

**fūtoru**: to grow large or fat.

**fūton**. Bed-clothes; a quilt; mattress; cushion.

**fūton wo shiku**: to make a bed (Japanese).

**fūtoru**, [fūtoi thick]. To grow large or fat

**fūtotta**, adj.: fat.

**fūtsū**. A usual occurrence.

**fūtsū shimbun wa shichi-ji ni kimasu** (C): as a rule the newspaper comes at seven o'clock.

**fūtsū no**, adj.: general; usual; ordinary.

**fūtsū no hito**: an ordinary man (not an official).

**futsūka**, [fütatsü two; -ka q.v.]. Two days; second day of the month.

**fuyu**. Winter.

Comp.

**fuyu-fuku**; **fuyu-gi**; **fuyu-mono**: winter clothes, [fuku clothes; *ki-ru* to put on: *mono* thing].

**fuyu-muki no**, adj.: for winter use, [*muku* to suit].

**ga**<sup>1</sup>, ppn.

1) Sign of the nominative. For a comparison between the use of *ga* and *wa*, see 389-392.

**sensei ga miemashita** (C): the teacher has come.

2) *Ga* gen. takes the place of *no* in adj. phr. used pred. (228; 234).

**sei no takai kodomo**: a tall child.

**tsumi no aru hito**: a guilty man.

**ano kodomo wa sei ga takai** (B): that child is tall; (*lit.* as for that child, his stature is high).

**ano hito wa tsumi ga aru** (B): that man is guilty; (*lit.* as for that man guilt exists).

Note:—in these two last examples *sei* and *tsumi* may be considered to be subjects.

3) Before the verbs *aru*, *suru*, *wakaru* and *iru* (to need), and before potential verbs, the noun foll. by *ga* often becomes in English the object or pred.

**kane ga aru** (B): he has money.

**zutsū ga suru** (B): I have a headache.

**nioi ga suru** (B): there is a smell.

**Ei-go ga wakarimasu** (C): I understand English.

**akai enpitsū ga irimasu** (C): I need a red pencil.

**sore ga dekimasu ka?** (C): can you do that?

**Nihon-ji ga yomemasu** (C): I can read Japanese characters.

4) *Ga* is used before *sūki*, *kirai* and *hoshii*, also before the desid. adj.

**tabako ga sūki desu** (C): I like smoking; I am fond of smoking.

**juyu ga kirai** (B): I don't like winter.

**mizu ga hoshii** (B): I would like to have some water.

**sono hon ga yomitai** (B): I would like to read that book.

**ga**<sup>2</sup>, conjunction.

1) *Ga* is gen. adversative: but; yet.

**ikimashita ga dame deshita** (C): I went but it was no use.

**da ga** (at the beginning of a sentence): nevertheless; still; and yet.

2) *Ga* is sometimes merely connective.

**kore de san-do Shanghai e mairimashita ga shi-awase ni iten mo umi ga shizuka de go-zaimashita** (D): this is the third time I make the trip to Shanghai and I have been lucky enough each time to have the sea smooth.

**keza shimbun wo mite imashita ga fui ni hen na koto wo mitsukemashita** (C): I was reading the newspaper this morning when I suddenly came across a strange piece of news.

**ko-nai ga dō shiyō ka?** (B): he hasn't come so what shall I do?

3) Sentences often finish elliptically by *ga*. **ano hito ga kyō kuru to ii ga...** (B): I wish he would come today but... (I am afraid he will not be able to).

4) **Ga—ga**: whether—or; either—or. **ikō ga yosō ga watashi no katte da** (B): whether I go or not is no one's business but my own.

**gaikoku**, [gai outside; -oku country]. Foreign countries; abroad.

Comp.: **gaikoku-jin**: a foreigner, [jin man].

**-gake**. On the way; whilst; suff. added to stems of verbs, especially those meaning coming and going.

**mise e iki-gake ni tomodachi ni aimashita** (C): I met a friend as I was going to the office.

**kaeri-gake ni**: on my way back home.

See *omoi-gake*.



## gakkari.

- 1) Tired; dejected; disappointed  
*ammari aruita no de gakkari shita* (B): I am quite tired out as I have walked a long way.  
*hitori-musiko wo nakushite gakkari shite iru* (B): he is very sad as he has lost his only son.
- 2) Relieved from anxiety; agreeably surprised.  
*kono shigoto ga sundara zuibun gakkari suru darō* (B): it will be a great relief when this work is finished.

## gakkō. School.

- gakkō ni agaru*: to enter school.  
*gakkō wo sageru*: to leave school.

## gaman. Patience; fortitude.

- gaman no nai hito*: a man wanting in fortitude.  
*mō sukoshi gaman wo nasai* (B): be patient a little longer.  
*gaman suru*: to endure with patience; contain oneself.  
*watakushi wa sore de gaman shimashō* (C): I will make the best of it.  
*chisai keredomo gaman suru yori hoka wa nai* (B): it is very small nevertheless there is nothing to be done but to put up with it.  
*dō shite mo gaman ga deki-nai* (B): I absolutely cannot stand it.

## gara. Kind; quality; pattern.

- ano ko wa gara ga ōkii* (B): that child is of a big build.

## garasū, [corr. of Eng.]. Glass.

## -garu. Suf. used for forming verbs.

- 1) Added frequently to the stem of adj. or desiderative form of verbs.  
*kawaigaru*: to pet, [*kawaii* charming].  
*ikitagaru*: to wish to go, [*ikitai* wishing to go].  
 etc.
- 2) Added to a few nouns.  
*kinodokugaru*: to feel sorry for, [*kinodoku* sorrow].  
*iyagaru*: to have an aversion for, [*iya* repugnance].

## Der.

- atsugari no*: of a person sensitive to heat.  
*samugari no*: of a person sensitive to cold.  
 Note:—these verbs in -garu have also passive and causative forms.

Gasshū-koku, [-koku country]. United States of America; see also *Bei-koku*.

## gasū, [corr. of Eng.]. Gas.

- gasū wo tsukeru*: to light the gas.  
*gasū wo kesu*: to put out the gas.  
*gasū ga hiite arimasu ka?* (C): is there gas laid on (in the house)?

## -gata, [kata person]. Suf. used for forming the plural of nouns, (178).

gatsū, [cogn. w. *getsū*]. Month.

*shō-gatsū*; *ni-gatsū*; etc.: January; February; etc. see 293.

## ge. Inferiority; low class.

Comp.: *gehin*; *gejo*; *genan*; *getu*; q.v.

—*ge*. *Nigori*'ed pron. of -*ke* q.v.

*gehin na*, [ge inferior; *hin* sort]. Vulgar; inferior quality.

## geisho. A singing girl.

*gejo*, [ge inferior; jo woman]. Maid-servant.

*gekkyū*, [getsū month]. Monthly wages.

*genan*, [ge inferior]. Male servant.

## genki. Vigour; spirit.

*genki na*; *genki no ii*; vigorous; high-spirited.

## geta, [ge inferior]. Clogs.

*geta wo haku*: to put on clogs.

getsū, [cogn. w. *gatsū*]. Month.

## Comp.

*ichi-getsū*: January, [*ichi* one].

*kongetsū*: this month, [see *kono*2].

*mai-getsū*: every month; monthly; [*mai*-every].

*raigetsū*: next month, [see *rai*-].

*saraigetsū* the month after next, [see *sarai*-].

*sengetsū*: last month, [see *sen*-].

*getsuyō*; *getsuyō-bi*: Monday, [see *yō-bi*].

gin. Silver; (compare *kin* gold).

Comp.: *gin-zaiku*: anything made of silver. [see -*zaiku*].

## ginkō. A bank.

girl. *Nigori*'ed pron. of *kiri* q.v.

gol. Honorific pref. It may be placed before a great number of nouns; it usually is found before *hōbi* and *kurō*; it practically always is placed before *busata* and *chisō*; it forms part of the words *gohan*, *gomen*, *goran* and *gozaru*.

## go2. Five.

## -go. A word; language; speech.

## Comp.

*zoku-go*: the colloquial language, [*zoku* common].

*Ei-go*: the English language, [*Ei* England].

*Nihon-go*: the Japanese language, [*Nihon* Japan].

## etc.

*gobu-gobu* (no), [go five; bu parts]. Evenly matched; six of one and half-a-dozen of the other.

*go-busata*, see *busata*.

*go-chisō*, see *chisō*.

*gofuku*. Cloth; drapery; dry goods.

Comp.: *gofuku-ya*: a draper.

*go-gatsū*, [go five; *gatsū* month]. May.

*gogo*. Afternoon.

*gohan*, [go honourable; han food]. A meal; boiled rice.

*gohan wo taku*: to cook rice.

*go hōbi*, see *hōbi*.

*gōjō*. Obstinacy.

*gōjō wo haru*: to be obstinate.

*gōjō mo ii kagen ni o shi nasai* (B): don't be so obstinate and listen to reason.

*gōjō na*: obstinate; stubborn.

*gōjō ni mo ayamara-nakatta* (B): he stubbornly refused to apologize.

**goku.** Very.

*goku chīsai kodomo*: very small children.

**go kurō,** see *kurō*.

**gomakasū.** To deceive; to take in.

*ēdo nan-do mo gomakashī ga kiku to omou ka?*  
(A): do you think you can fool me time after time?

*sonna koto de gomakasareru mono desū ka?*

(B): I am not to be hoodwinked in that way.

**gomen,** [go honourable; men pardon]. Pardon; excuse.

*gomen kudasai*: excuse me; I beg your pardon: (used also for calling attention) I say.

*sono sōdan nara gomen desū* (C): if that is what you want to consult me about, I beg to be excused.

**gomi.** Dirt; rubbish.

**gomu,** [corr. of Spanish or Portuguese *goma* india-rubber, gum]. India-rubber; gum.

Comp.: *keshi-gomu*: india-rubber (for erasing), [*kesu* to extinguish].

**goran,** [go honourable; ran look].

1) Used pol. of the looking of the 2nd (or 3rd) person. The corresponding plain verb is *mi-ru* q.v.

*goran no tōri ashi ni kega wo shimashita* (C): as you see I have hurt my leg.

*goran ni ireru*: to show (to the 2nd person). *Goran* behaves like a verbal stem preceded by an honorific (359):

*goran ni naru*; *goran nasaru*; *goran de aru* (less polite): to look (of the 2nd person).

*goran kudasaru*: to look (of the 2nd person, when the action is in favour of the 1st person).

*goran nasai* (C); *goran* (A): please look: see here.

*nani wo goran nas'tte irasshaimasū ka?* (D): what are you looking at?

*shimbun wa mō goran desū ka?* (C): have you finished with your newspaper?

2) After gerund: to try. See *mi-ru* 2).

*atsui ka tsumetai ka te wo atete goran (nasai)* (B): touch it and see whether it is hot or cold.

*nonde goran (nasai)* (B): drink it and see (whether you like it or not).

*mado wo akete goran (nasai)* (B): open the window and let's see (if it is nicer like that).

**goro.** *Nigori*'ed form of *koro* q.v.

**gozaru,** [go honourable;—; aru to be]. A pol. form of the verb *aru* to be, which it can gen. replace; and, as *da* is equal to *de aru*, in its place we may put *de gozaru*;

see *aru* and *da*. *Gozaru* is used only in the *masu* inflexions; the *r* is almost always dropped, (96). When true adj. are pred. of *gozaru*, they take special terminations, (192). The neg. adj. *nai* is not used with *gozaru*; instead, *gozaru* itself is put in a neg. inflexion, (196). A plain verb may be made honorific by putting *o* before the stem and *de gozaru* after it, (359). It is also used very politely after the gerund in *--mashite*, (100).

*sayō de gozaimasū* (D): that is so.

*ikaga de gozaimasū (ka)?* (D): how are you?

**gozen.** Morning; forenoon.

**guai.** The working of the different parts of an apparatus; state of one's health; condition.

*kono tokei wa guai ga warui* (B): something is wrong with this clock.

*amado no guai ga warui* (B): the sliding-doors do not fit well into their grooves.

*watashi wa konaida kara guai ga warui* (B): I have been feeling unwell for some days past.

*kono-goro daibu guai ga yoku natta* (B): he is now quite well off.

*kono tsūkie wa taihen guai ga yō gozaimasū* (D): this desk is very convenient.

*kono isu wa guai ga warui* (B): this chair is very uncomfortable.

*ima-goro sonna koto wo iu no mo guai ga warui ne* (B): it would be very inconvenient to say such a thing now.

**gurai.** *Nigori*'ed pron. of *kurai*2 q.v.

**guzu-guzu,** (397).

1) Slowly (in a bad sense).

*guzu-guzu suru*: to hesitate; dawdle.

*guzu-guzu shite iru hima wa arimasen* (C): there is no time to hesitate.

*sugu dekiru koto wo itsu made mo guzu-guzu shite iru* (B): he is dawdling over a thing that can be done in no time.

2) Complainingly.

*guzu-guzu iu*: to complain; grumble.

*itsu made mo guzu-guzu iu nara jūma wo yobu zo!* (A): if you continue bothering me I'll call a policeman.

*nani wo guzu-guzu iteru n' desū ka?* (B): what are you grumbling about?

**gyō.** A row; a line (as of writing or printing).

Note:—*gyō* is preceded by the 1st set of num.

**gyōgi.** Conduct; behaviour; manners.

*gyōgi no ii (warui), adj.*: well- (badly-) behaved.

*omae wa gyōgi ga warui* (A): you behave very badly.

**gyūniku,** [*gyū* cow; *niku* meat]. Beef.

**gyūnyū,** [*gyū* cow; *nyū* milk]. Cow's milk; see *chichū*.



ha<sup>1</sup>. Leaf; blade.

ha<sup>2</sup>. Tooth; edge (of knife, etc).

ha wo migaku : to brush the teeth.

ha wo nuite morau : to have a tooth drawn.

Comp.

ha-isha : a dentist, [isha doctor].

ha-migaki : tooth-powder, [migaku to polish].

mae-ba : the front teeth, [mae before].

oku-ba : the back teeth, [oku interior].

haba. Breadth; width; authority.

ano hito wa naka-naka haba ga kiku (B) : he has great influence.

hachi. Eight.

hachi no ji wo yoseru : to frown, (the wrinkles of the forehead make the figure eight 八).

Note :—hachi in comp. before *ch*, *t*, or *ts*, becomes *hat*; before *k*, *hak*; before *s* or *sh*, *has*.

hachi-gatsū, [hachi eight; gatsū month]. August.

hadaka, [hada skin; akai red]. Nakedness.

hadaka no : naked.

hade (na), [hai leaf; de-ru to come out]. Gay; bright; showy.

haeru. To grow; spring up.

pan ni kabi ga haeta (B) : the bread has grown mouldy.

hige no haeta otoko : a man with a moustache.

hagaki, [hai leaf; kakui to write]. Postcard; when not otherwise qualified, it means a 1½ sen postcard.

Comp.: e-hagaki : picture postcard, [e3 picture].

hagane, [? ha<sup>2</sup> edge; kane metal]. Steel.

hageru, v.i. [cogn. w. hagu v.t.]. To be stripped of; become bald; fade.

ano hito wa atama ga hagate kimashita (C) : he has become bald.

kono kimono wa iro ga hageta (B) : the colour of this dress has faded.

hagu, v.t. [cogn. w. hageru v.i.]. To peel off; strip.

haha. A non-polite word for mother, (364); my mother.

hai<sup>1</sup>. Ashes.

hai<sup>2</sup>. A fly.

hai<sup>3</sup>. In answer to a call, it may mean : I have heard, I am coming, what is it? In answer to a question, it has a meaning of assent to what is implied in the question and corresponds to yes, when in answer to an aff. question; and must gen. be translated by no, when the question is in the negative : see 399.

hai<sup>4</sup>. A.n. for glassfuls, cupfuls, etc.

Note :—1 *ip-pai*; 3 *sam-bai*; 6 *rop-pai*; 10 *jip-pai*; 100 *hyap-pai*; 1,000 *sem-bai*; *nam-bai*?

Comp.: *ippai* q.v. : full.

haikara (na), [corr. of Eng. high collar]. Smart; up-to-date; elegant in dress with foreign tendencies.

haiken. A humble word used for expressing the looking of the 1st person at something belonging to the 2nd person : the plain verb is *mi-ru* q.v.

haiken suru (D) : to look; see.

haiken saseru (D) : to show (to me).

haiken (B); haiken sasete kudasai (D) : please show it to me.

haiken shimashita (D); haiken itashimashita (D) : I have seen it.

hairu. To enter; get in; go in.

o hairi kudasai (D) : please come in.

me ni nani ka haite iru kai? (B) : is there anything in my eye?

kore ni minna haite iru no deshō (C) : I suppose this (charge) includes everything.

ano hako ni dono gurai hairu ka? (B) : how much will that case contain?

sono naka ni nani ga haite imasu ka? (C) : what is there inside?

mō hitotoki hairimasu (C) : there is room for one more.

hito no heya e damatte haite wa ike-nai (A) : you must not enter people's rooms without leave.

haite mo yō gozaimasu ka? (D) : may I come in?

dono hako ni mo heitai ga ippai haite imashita (C) : all the (railway) carriages were crammed full with soldiers.

te ni hairu : to secure to oneself; succeed in getting; obtain.

haij<sup>1</sup>, [nigori<sup>1</sup> ed pron. of hashi<sup>2</sup> which is less common]. End; extremity; border.

haij<sup>2</sup>. Shame.

haji wo shira-nai : shameless.

hito no mae de haji wo kakusareta (B) : I was put to shame in the presence of others.

sonna baka na koto wo shitara watashi no haji ni naru (B) : if you do a silly thing like that it will be a disgrace to me.

sore wo haji to wa omowa-nai ka? (A) : aren't you ashamed of it?

hajimaru, v.i. [f. hashi<sup>2</sup> the beginning; cogn. w. hajimeru v.t.]. To begin.

hajime, [stem of hajimeru, f. hashi<sup>2</sup> the beginning]. The beginning.

hajime no : the first one.

hajime ni : at first.

ichiban hajime : at the very beginning; the very first.

hajime kara Tōkyō ni sunde irasshaimasu ka? (D) : have you always (since your arrival in Japan) lived in Tōkyō?

ano hito ga ichiban hajime da (B) : his turn comes first.

hajime ga areba owari ga aru : every beginning has an ending.

**hajime'ru**, v.t. [f. *hashi*<sup>2</sup> the beginning; cogn. w. *hajimaru* v.i.]. To begin.

*ima hajimeru tokoro desū* (C) : I am just going to begin.

*hayaku hajimete o kure* (A) : hurry up and set about it.

*shōbai wo hajime'ru* : to set up in trade.

Der.: *hajime*; *hajimete*; q.v.

**hajimete**, [gerund of *hajime'ru*; f. *hashi*<sup>2</sup> the beginning]. For the first time.

*Fuji-san ni noboru no wa kondo ga hajimete desū* (C) : this is the first time that I am going up Mount Fuji.

*kore ga kotoshi no hajimete no yuki desū* (C) : this is the first snow of the year.

*hajimete wakarimashita* (C) : I'd never understood it until now.

*Nihon de hajimete seiyō e itta no wa dare darō?* (B) : I wonder who was the first Japanese to go abroad.

*hajimete o me ni kakarimasū* (D) : I am going up to make your acquaintance.

**hakari**, [*hakaru* to weigh]. A pair of scales; balance.

*hakari ni kakete mimashō* (C) : I will weigh it in the balance (and find out how much it weighs).

*ano mise wa hakari ga ii* (B) : they give good weight at that shop.

**hakaru**. To calculate; estimate; weigh; measure.

*nan-jaku aru ka hakatte goran nasai* (C) : please measure it and see how many feet it is.

*hashi wo kakete hito-bito no benri wo hakatta* (B) : they considered the convenience of the people and built a bridge.

Der.: *hakari* : a pair of scales.

**hakkiri**. Clearly.

*hakkiri o ii nasai* (A) : speak distinctly.

*ano hito wa kuru ka dō ka hakkiri wakari-masen* (C) : I don't know for certain whether he will come or not.

*Ei-go de wa jibun no kangae wo hakkiri hanasemasen* (C) : I find it difficult to express myself in English.

*hakkiri shita*, adj.: distinct; clear.

*hakkiri shita henji* : a plain answer.

**hako**. Box; case; chest; railway carriage.

Comp.

*aki-bako* : an empty box, [see *aki*-].

*hon-bako* : a bookcase, [*hon* book].

*yūbin-bako* : a letter-box, [*yūbin* post].

Note :—used after the abb. 2nd set of num.

(276, 4), *hako* means a boxful.

**haku**<sup>1</sup>. To sweep.

**haku**<sup>2</sup>. To put on; wear; (refers to legs or feet, as boots, trousers).

**hakuboku**. Chalk (for black-board).

**hakujo suru**. To confess; own.

**hakurai** (no). Imported; foreign-made.

**hama**. The sea-coast; beach; shore; used

by some Japanese of Tōkyō district as an abb. of Yokohama.

**hamaru**, v.i. [cogn. w. *hame'ru* v.t.]. To fit.

**hambun**, [*han*<sup>2</sup> half; *bun* part]. Half.

*hambun de takusan* (B) : half is enough.

*bin ni mizu ga hambun arimasū* (C) : the bottle is half full of water.

*ano nashi wo hambun tabete, hambun tomoudachi ni yarimashita* (C) : I ate half that pear and gave half to my friend.

*omoshiro hambun* : half in fun.

Note :—*hambun* is only used as a noun; the corresponding adj. is *han*<sup>2</sup> q.v.

**hame'ru**, v.t. [cogn. w. *hamaru* v.i.]. To fit into; insert.

**han**<sup>1</sup>. A seal; stamp; block for printing.

*han wo osū* : to stamp.

**han**<sup>2</sup>. Half.

*han-jikan* : half an hour.

*ichi-jikan han* : an hour and a half.

*ichi-ji han* : half past one.

*han-nichi* : half day.

Note :—*han* is used as an adj. and refers to a definite unit; the corresponding noun is *hambun* q.v.

**han**<sup>3</sup>. Food; meal.

Comp.

*gohan* : food; boiled rice; [*go* honourable].

*asa-han* : breakfast, [*asa* morning].

*hiru-han* : midday meal, [*hiru* midday].

*yū-han* : evening meal, [*yū* evening].

**hana**<sup>1</sup>. Flower; blossom.

*hana ga saku* : to blossom.

*hana wo ikeru* : to arrange flowers in a vase.

Comp.

*hana-ike* : a flower-vase, [*ikeru* to keep alive].

*hana-mi* : flower-viewing, [*miru* to see].

**hana**<sup>2</sup>. Nose.

*hana saki ni* : under one's nose.

*hana ni kake'ru* : to talk through the nose; to give oneself airs.

*hana ga aku* : to be greatly astonished.

*hana no takai hito* : a man with a prominent nose; a proud man.

*hana wo takaku suru* : to be boastful, proud.

*hana wo oru* : to humble another.

Comp.

*hana-ji* : blood from the nose, [*chi* blood].

*hana-ji ga demasū* (C) : my nose is bleeding.

**hanare'ru**, v.i. [cogn. w. *hanasū* v.t.]. To part from; get loose.

*uchi wo hanare'ru* : to leave one's home.

(117).

**hanashi**, [*hanasū* to speak]. A tale; story; what is said.

*hanashi dake da* (B) : it is only talk.

*kore ga o hanashi no hon desū ka?* (C) : is this the book you referred to?

*ano hito no hanashi ni wa* : according to him.



ano kata wa Beikoku-jin da to iu hanashi da (B) : they say he is an American.

ii kagen na hanashi : a made-up story.  
ryokô no hanashi wo suru : to talk about travelling.

hanashi ga tsûku : to come to terms.  
mi no ue banashi wo suru : to talk of oneself.  
dômo o hanashi ni narimasen (C) : it is a thing I really cannot talk about, (it is too silly, too terrible).

Comp.

muda-banashi : idle talk, [muda useless].  
naisho-banashi : something told in secret, [naisho secret].

hanashi-au, [hanasû to talk ; au to meet].  
To talk together.

hanasû. To tell ; speak ; talk ; say.  
ano hito no hanasû no ni : according to him.

kore wa tabi-tabi hanashite oita (A) : I have told you this several times.

sô (itte) hanashite o kure (A) : tell him so.  
hontô no koto wo o hanashi nasai (B) : speak the truth.

sukoshi hanashitai koto ga aru (B) : there is something I want to tell you.

hanasû made mo nai keredomo— : I need not say that—.

Der. and comp.

hanashi q.v. : a story.  
hanashi-au : to talk together, [au to meet].  
hanashi-kake-ru : to address ; accost ; [see kake-ru].

Note :—*Hanasû* is a plain verb ; the corresponding humble verb for the 1st person is *môshi-ageru* or *môsû* ; the exaltative verb for the 2nd person is *ossharu*. *Iu* q.v. is practically synonymous with *hanasû* and is perhaps more used.

hanasû<sup>2</sup>, v.t. [cogn. w. *hanare-ru* v.i.]. To separate ; let go ; set free.

kore wa hanasû no wa iya da (B) : I don't like to part with this.

ima chotto te ga hanasaremasen (C) : I can not leave it (the work) at present.

mo sukoshi aida wo hanashitara ii deshô (C) : you had better leave a little more space between.

Comp.

akeppanasû : to leave open, [ake-ru to open].

dashippanasû : to leave out, [dasû to take out].

okippanasû : to put a thing somewhere and leave it there, [oku to put].

hane. Feather ; wing.

hankechi, [corr. of Eng.]. Handkerchief.

hantai. Opposition ; contradiction.

long no hantai wa nan desû ka ? (C) : what is the contrary of long ?

hantai desû ka ? (C) : do you object to it ?

hantai de nakereba : if you don't object.

hantai no hito wa itte kudasai (C) : those who object, please let me know.

hantai suru : to oppose.

hara. Belly ; abdomen.

hara ga tatsû ; haru wo tate-ru : to get angry.

hara de warau : to laugh in one's sleeve.

hara ga au : to be of the same mind.

hara ga haru : to have a swollen belly ; to be sated with food.

hara ga hetta (B) : I am hungry.

ano hito no hara wa yoku wakatte iru (B) : I know his intention very well.

hara ni nani ka aru ni chigai nai (B) : I am sure he has got something up his sleeve.

sore to naku ano hito no hara wo kiite miyô (B) : I will sound him in a casual way.

hara no nai hito da (B) : he is a poor-spirited man.

hara no kuroi yatsû : a scoundrel.

Comp. : hara-kiri : suicide by cutting open the abdomen, [kiru<sup>2</sup> to cut].

harau.

1) To clear ; sweep away.

yôfuku no hokori wo haratte kure (A) : brush my clothes.

hataki de tsûkue no hokori wo haratte kure (A) : get a duster and dust the desk.

jama wo haratte anshin shita (B) : my mind is at ease now that I have removed the obstacles.

2) To pay.

kono kanjô wa mō haraimashita (C) : this bill is already paid.

kore wa haratta tsumori da (B) : I think I have paid for this.

taku e todokete moratte kara haraimasû (C) : I will pay at home on delivery.

Comp.

saki-harai, q.v.

harai-zumi : settling an account, [sumu<sup>2</sup> to end].

hare-ru. To swell.

harete iru : to be swollen.

hari. Needle ; thorn ; the sting of an insect.

hari hodo no koto wo bô hodo ni iu : to speak of a needle as if it were a pole ; to make a mountain of a mole-hill.

hari no ana kara ten nozoku : to look at the heavens through the eye of a needle, (refers to a narrow-minded person).

Comp.

hari-gane : wire, [kane metal].

hari-shigoto : needlework, [shigoto work].

Note :—used after the abb. 2nd set of num. (276, 4), *hari* means a stitch.

haru<sup>1</sup>. Spring ; beginning of the year.

Comp. : haru-gi : spring clothes, [kiru<sup>1</sup> to put on].

haru<sup>2</sup>, v.t. and i. Meanings vague and difficult to classify.

1) To stretch ; spread over ; stick on.

*kono kōkoku wo kabe ni hatte kure* (A) : stick this advertisement on the wall.

*kono tegami ni kitte wo hatte dashite o kure* (A) : put a stamp on this letter and post it.

*kesa wa atsui kōri ga hatte imashita* (C) : this morning there was a thick coating of ice.

*kire wo haru* : to stretch a piece of cloth (gen. on a board).

*ki wo haru* : to exert oneself intellectually.

2) To be swollen or distended.

*hara ga haru* : to have a swollen belly ; to be satiated with food.

*kore wa chitto ni ga harimasu* (C) : this package is a little too heavy.

*ippai mizu wo hatte kudasai* (B) : please fill it with water.

3) To display ; exhibit.

*mise wo haru* : to keep up appearances.

*mise wo haru* : to expose one's goods for sale.

*mai-ban Ogawa-machi no kado e mise wo harimasu* (C) : I keep a stall every evening at the corner of Ogawa-machi.

4) Various.

*atama wo haru* : to squeeze (money).

*iji wo haru* : to be obstinate.

*ii mono wa nidan ga haru* (B) : better articles are more expensive.

*ki ga hatte shigoto wo shite ita kara jikan no tatsū no wo shira-nakatta* (B) : as I was intent on my work I did not notice how quickly the time had passed.

Der.

*hipparu* : to pull, [*hiku* to pull].

*shibaru* : to tie, [*shimeru* to tie].

**hasamaru**, v.i. [cogn. w. *hasamu* v.t.]. To be pressed, squeezed or pinched between two things.

*oku-ba ni mono ga hasamatta yō na mono no ii-kata wo suru hito da* (B) : he is a man who hasn't got a frank and open way of speaking his mind.

**hasamu**, v.t. [cogn. w. *hasamaru* v.i.]. To place, squeeze or pinch between two things ; to cut with scissors.

*hon no aida ni hasamu* : to place (something) between the pages of a book.

Der.: *hasami* : scissors.

**hashi**. Bridge ; chopsticks (a bridge from the dish to the mouth).

*hashi wo wataru* : to cross a bridge.

**hashi**2, (usu. pron. *haji*). End : extremity ; border ; beginning.

**hashigo**, [ ? *hashi*1 bridge ; *ko* child, small]. Ladder.

*hashigo wo noboru* : to climb a ladder.

Comp.: *hashigo-dan* : a staircase, [*dan* a step].

**hata**. A flag.

Comp.: *hata-bi* : a feast day, [*hi* day].

**hatachi**, [cogn. w. *hatsūka* twenty days].

Twenty years of age.

**hatake**. A field.

**hataku**. To dust.

*sumi-zumi wo yoku hataite kure* (A) : dust the corners carefully.

*kane ire wo hataite mo kore dake shika arimasen* (C) : even if you turned my purse inside out you wouldn't find any more money.

Der.

*hataki* : a duster.

*hataki wo kakeru* : to dust.

**hataraku**. To work.

Comp.: *hataraki-mono* : an industrious person, [*mono* person].

**hatoba**, [*ha* waves ; *to* door ; *ba* place]. Pier ; wharf.

**hatsūka**, [cogn. w. *hatachi* twenty years of age ; see *-ka*]. Twenty days ; the twentieth day of the month.

**hatsuon**. Accent ; pronunciation.

**hau**. To crawl ; creep.

**hayai**. Quick ; fast ; early ; soon.

*o hayō (gozaimasu)* (C) : good morning.

*hayaku* ! (A) : make haste ; hurry up.

*dekiru dake hayaku* : as soon (early) as possible.

*asa hayaku okiru* : to get up early in the morning.

*hayaku ieba* : in a word.

*hayaku oboeru mono wa hayaku wasureru* : what is soon learnt is soon forgotten.

*ki no hayai hito* : a quick-tempered man.

*ashi no hayai hito* : a fast walker.

*mimi no hayai hito* : a man who has a sharp ear.

Der.: *hayasa* : speed, [see *-sa*].

**hayari**, [*hayaru* to be fashionable]. Fashion.

*hayari wa chotto no aida no mono desu* (C) : fashions last but a short while.

*ima wa sore ga ō-hayari desu* (C) : that is very fashionable at present.

**hayaru**, [*hayai* quick]. To be in great demand ; popular ; fashionable.

*kono iro wa ima taihen hayarimasu* (C) : this colour is very fashionable.

*asoko de wa warui byōki ga daibu hayaru ō da* (B) : they say there is a dreadful epidemic there.

*ano mise wa taihen hayaru* (B) : that shop is largely patronized.

Der.: *hayari* : fashion.

**hayashi**. Forest ; wood.

**hazu**. Obligation ; fitness : reasonable expectation ; conviction.

*komban roku-ji ni deru hazu desu* (C) : he is to leave at six this evening.

*hito wa makoto wo iu hazu da* (B) : one ought to speak the truth.

*ame ga futta* 'the kuru hazu desu' (C) : even if it did rain you ought to have come.



*nan-ji ni kisha wa tsūku hazu desū ka?* (C): at what time is the train due?

*iware-nai de mo suru hazu da* (A): you should do these things without having to be told.

*mō tsuite iru hazu da* (B): it ought to have arrived by this time.

*mō sugu kuru hazu da* (B): he ought to be here directly.

*sō suru hazu no mono desū* (C): we ought to do so.

*byōki ni naru hazu da* (B): it was only to be expected that he would get ill.

*sonna koto wo shite morau hazu de wa nakata* (B): I ought not to have been treated like that.

*ima koko ni oita mono ga hitori de nakunaru hazu wa nai* (B): I don't see how a thing that I put here only a moment ago could disappear of itself.

*deki-nai hazu wa nai* (B): there is no reason why it cannot be done.

*aru hazu da* (B): there ought to be some.

*arō hazu wa nai* (B): there ought not to be any.

*yūbe Yamada ga tsuita hazu de gozaimasū* (D): I understand Yamada arrived last night.

*o tō-san no mae de sonna koto wo ieru hazu ga nai* (A): you wouldn't dare say such a thing if my father were present.

*sore wa sono hazu desū* (C): that is a matter of course.

*anata ga ichiban yoku shitte o-ide no hazu desū* (C): you ought to know better than anybody.

*kore wa Tarō no empi'sū no hazu da* (B): this must be Tarō's pencil.

*kyō wa doko de mo yasumi no (or na) hazu da* (B): you will find all the shops closed today.

**hazukashii**, adj. [*haji*2 shame]. Ashamed; shameful.

*o hazukashii hanashi desū ga...* (C): I am ashamed to say that...

**he**; **hē**; **hei**; **interj.** Various meanings: assent; yes; I have heard; surprise.

**hei**. A fence; wall.

**heiki** (na). Undisturbed; unconcerned; indifferent; calm.

*heiki na kao wo shite iru*: not to betray one's feelings by the expression of the face; not to show in one's face that one has any knowledge of a certain thing; an expression of face as if nothing extraordinary had happened.

*kono gurai no kaze wa heiki da* (B): a wind like this is a common occurrence, (leaves me undisturbed).

*heiki no Heizaemon*: as cool as a cucumber.

**heikin**. Average.

*heikin no nedan*: the average price.

*heikin shite ichi-nichi jū-go-nin no o kyaku sama ga gozaimasū* (D): we have on an average fifteen customers a day.

**heitai**. Soldier.

**hen**1. Region.

*kono hen ni yūbin-kyoku wa gozaimasū ka?* (D): is there a post office hereabouts?

**hen**2. Num. for times.

*ip-pen yatte mimashō* (C): I'll just try; (compare *hitotsū*2).

*sora de oboeru made nam-ben de mo yonde goran* (A): read it again and again until you know it by heart.

Note:—1 *ip-pen*; 3 *sam-ben*; 6 *rop-pen*; 10 *jip-pen*; 100 *hyap-pen*; 1,000 *sen-ben*; *nam-ben*?

**hen**3 (na), (often corr. to *henteke*). Strange; peculiar; odd; queer; singular.

*hen na hito da* (B): he is a strange fellow.

*hen da keredomo...* (B): strange to say...

*nani ga hen da?* (A): what is there wrong?

*ano hito wa ki ga hen ni natta* (B): his mind has become unhinged.

**henji**. Answer.

*henji (wo) suru*: to answer.

*tegami de henji wo shite kudasai* (C): please give me a written answer.

*hakkiri shita henji wo shite o kure* (A): I want a plain answer.

*shirabete kara henji shimasū* (C): I will answer after inquiry.

*go henji wa watakushi no kiite yatta koto no henji ni natte imasen* (C): your reply is not an answer to my question.

**herasū**, v.t. [cogn. w. *heru* v.i.]. To diminish; reduce; decrease.

**heru**, v.i. [cogn. w. *herasū* v.t.]. To diminish; reduce; decrease.

*karada no mekata ga daibu heta* (B): I have lost a great deal in weight.

*hara ga heta* (B): I am hungry.

**heta** (na). Incompetent; a bad hand at; inexpert; clumsy.

*anata wa heta na koto wo shimashita* (B): you have made a mess of it.

*ano sensei wa oshie-kata ga heta da* (B): he is a poor teacher.

*heta ni nurimashita* (C): I am out of practice.

**heya**. Room.

*aita heya*: a vacant room.

**hi**1.

1) Sun.

*hi ga deru*: the sun rises.

*hi ga hairu*; *hi ga iru*; *hi ga kakureru*; *hi ga ochiru*: the sun sets.

*hi ga teru*: the sun shines.

*hi ga atari*: the sun shines on—

*hi no hikari*: sunlight.

2) Day.

*kono tegami ni wa hi ga kaite nai* (B): this letter has no date.

*sono hi no kurashi ni mo komatte iru* (B): he is hard up and lives from hand to mouth.  
*hi no tatsu no wa hayai mono da* (B): time flies.

*hi wo okuru*: to pass one's days.

Comp. and der.

*hi-atari*: sunshine, [ataru to strike].

*hi-no-de*: sunrise, [de-ru to come forth].

*hi-gasa*: a parasol, [kasa umbrella].

*hata-bi*: a feast day, [hata flag].

*hi-zuke*: date (of letter, document, etc.).

[tsuke-ru to write down].

*hi-nichi*: hinata; hiruru; hima; yō-bi; q.v.

hi2, [? hi sun]. Fire; flame.

*hi wo taku*; *hi wo taki-tsuke-ru*: to make a fire.

*hi wo tsuke-ru*: to set on fire.

*hi ga tsuku*: to catch fire.

*abura-gami ni hi ga tsuku yō ni*: as quick to

catch fire as oiled paper, (irascible).

*hi wo okosu*: to make a fire blaze up.

*hi wo kesu*: to put out a fire.

*hi ga kieta* (B): the fire has gone out.

*hi ga kieta yō ni shizuka ni natta* (B):

everything became as still as death.

*hi ni ataru*: to warm oneself at the fire.

*hi wo kudasai* (C): please give me a light, (for a cigar).

*ni-ban kara hi wo dashita* (B): a fire has broken out at num. 2.

*hi no nai tokoro ni kemuri agara-zu*: there is no smoke without a fire.

Comp.: *hi-keshi*: a fireman, [kesu to put out].

*hi-atari*, [hi sun; ataru to strike]. Sunlight; exposure to the sun.

*hi-atari no ii heya*: a nice sunny room.

*hidari*. Left; left-hand side.

Comp.: *hidari-giki*: left-handed, [kiku to be efficacious].

*hidol*. Cruel; severe; violent.

*ame ga hidoku futte imasu* (C): it is raining hard.

*hidoi atsusa ja nai ka?* (B): isn't it awfully hot?

*hidoi yatsū*: a rascal.

*hidoi me ni au*: to be treated with cruelty.

*hidoi me ni awase-ru*: to treat with cruelty.

*higashi*. East.

*hige*, [ke hair]. Beard; moustache.

*hige wo soru* (or *suru*): to shave the beard.

*hi2*, [hitotsū one]. One (in the 3rd set of

num.; see 271; 275).

*hi2ō* (na). Extraordinary; extreme.

*hi2ō na ame da* (B): it is raining very hard.

*hikari*, [hikaru to shine]. Light; rays.

*miyaku to hikari ga deru* (B): it shines when polished.

*hito no hikari wo kawa ni kabutte ibatte iru* (B): he gives himself airs under the shelter of another's influence; he struts about in borrowed plumes.

*hikaru*. To shine.

Der.: *hikari*: see pree.

*hiki*. A.n. used for animals.

Note:—1 *ip-piki*; 3 *sam-biki*; 6 *rop-piki*; 10 *jip-piki*; 100 *hyap-piki*; 1,000 *sem-biki*; *nam-biki*?

*hiki-uke-ru*, [hiku to pull; uke-ru to receive].

To undertake; be responsible for.

*anata wa sore wo hiki-uketa ja nai ka?* (B): didn't you undertake to do it?

*ano hito wo hiki-ukeru koto wa dekimasen*

(C): I cannot be responsible for him.

*hikizuru*, [hiku to pull; zuru as in kosuru to rub]. To drag along.

*hikkakaru*, v.i. [hiku to pull; kakaru to hang; cogn. w. *hikkake-ru* v.t.]. To get hooked; get caught.

*inaka-mono ga Tōkyō e dele kuru to tabi-tabi kuruma-ya ni hikkakatte kane wo terareru*

(B): when country people come to Tōkyō they are often cheated by the rikishamen.

*hikkake-ru*, v.t. [hiku to pull; kake-ru to hang; cogn. w. *hikkakaru* v.i.]. To suspend; hook on anything; defer payment intentionally.

*hōbō de hito wo hikkakete kane wo totte nige-mashita* (C): he cheated people all round and ran away.

*ano otoko wa hōbō no kanjō wo hikkakete yonige shita* (B): that man ran away one night leaving all his bills unpaid.

*hikkomu*, v.i. [hiku to pull; komu q.v.]. To move; draw back; retire.

*jimen ga hikkonda* (B): the ground has sunk.

*ano hito wa shōbai wo yamete inaka e hikkomimashita* (C): he has retired from business and gone to live in the country.

*sonna ni hikkonde bakkari iru to byōki ni narimasu* (C): you'll be ill if you stay indoors like that.

*omae no kuchi wo dasu tokoro ja nai, hikkonde o-ide* (A): this is no business of yours, shut up.

*hikkosu*, v.i. [hiku to pull; kosu to cross over].

To change one's residence.

*hikkoshi san-do ni kaji ichi-do*: three removals are as bad as a fire.

*hikkuri-kaeru*, v.i. [kaeru to return; cogn. w. *hikkuri-kaesu* v.t.]. To overturn; tumble down.

*basha ga hikkuri-kaerimashita* (C): the carriage has upset.

*hikkuri-kaesu*, v.t. [kaesu to give back; cogn. w. *hikkuri-kaeru* v.i.]. To overturn; upset.

*hiku*.

1) To pull; drag; draw; lead.

*hito-me wo hiku*: to attract attention.

*suji wo hiku*: to draw a line.

*uma wo hiku*: to lead a horse.

*te wo hiku*: to lead by the hand.



## 2) To withdraw; reduce; diminish.

go kara, san wo hakeba, ni ga rōkoku (B):  
three from five leaves two.

mō go-sen hikimashō (C): I will come down  
another five sen.

kesa wa kawa no mizu ga yohodo hikimashita  
(C): this morning the water in the river is  
very low.

ato e hika-nai: not to withdraw; to hold  
to an opinion.

## 3) Various.

kaze wo hiku: to catch a cold.

ji wo hiku: to find a word (in a dictionary).

kashi wo hiku: to hand round cakes.

mise wo hiku: to shut up shop.

densha ni hikareru: to be run over by a  
tram-car.

denki ga hiite arimasu ka? (C): is there  
electricity laid on (in the house)?

## Comp.

hikidashi: a drawer, [dasu to take out].

jibiki; hikkuri-kaeru; hikkuri-kaeru; hiki-  
uke-ru; hikizuru; hikkakaru; hikkakaru;  
hikkomu; hikkosū; hipparu; q.v.

In some of these comp. hiku is pleonastic or  
at most serves to intensify the meaning  
of the foll. word.

## hikui. Low; short.

hikui koe: a low voice.

sei no hikui hito: a man short of stature.

atama no kihui hito: a servile, obsequious  
person.

## hima, [hi day; ma interval].

## 1) Time; spare time; leisure; opportunity.

hima ga dekitara: when I have time.

ima wa hima desu (C): I am free now.

o hima no toki ni: at your leisure.

hima ga nai (B): I haven't time.

hima ga kakaru, (or toeru): to take time.

hima wo tsubusu: to waste time.

kono-goro wa shōbai ga hima de komarimasu  
(C): at present, trade is so dull, I don't  
know what to do.

hima na hito; hima na karada: a person of  
leisure.

## 2) Cessation from occupation.

hima wo dasu, (or yaru): to discharge from  
service.

hima wo morau, (or toru): to have one's  
resignation from office accepted; to be  
allowed to leave one's occupation.

dōka o hima wo itadakitai desu (C): I wish  
to leave your service.

jutsūka o hima wo itadakitō gozaimasu (D):  
I beg to ask you for two days' leave.

## himo. Cord; string.

himo wo shime-ru (or musubu): to tie a  
string.

himo wo hodoku: to untie a string.

himo de shibaru: to tie with a string.

## hin. Quality; kind.

hin no ii: high-class; refined; superior.

hin no nai: undignified.

hin no warui: low-class; inferior.

nan da ka hin no nai hito da (B): somehow  
or other he doesn't look a gentleman.

hin ga ochita (B): the quality has deterio-  
rated.

hin ga tsuku: to improve in quality or ap-  
pearance.

## Comp.

gehin: low-class, [ge inferior].

jōhin: high-class, [jō<sup>2</sup> superior].

hinata, [hi sun]. Sunny place.

hinata de hosu: to dry in the sun.

hi-nichi, [hi day; nichi day]. Day; date.

hi-nichi wa dono gurai kakaru? (B): how  
many days will it take?

kono tegami wa hi-nichi ga nai (B): this let-  
ter has no date.

hipparu, [hiku to pull; haru to stretch]. To  
pull; make taut; stretch.

junsu ni hippatte ikaremashita (C): he was  
taken into custody by a policeman.

hirobuta, [hiroi large; futa lid]. A tray.

hirogaru, v.i. [hiroi broad; -garu q.v.: cogn.  
w. hiroge-ru v.t.]. To spread.

sono hyōban ga sugu hirogarimashita (C):  
the rumour spread rapidly.

hiroge-ru, v.t. [hiroi broad; cogn. w. hirogaru  
v.i.]. To spread out; enlarge.

michi wo hiroge-ru: to widen a road.

hiroi. Wide; broad; large.

ano hito wa kokoro ga hiroi (B): that man  
is magnanimous.

Comp. and der.: hirobuta; hirogaru; hiro-  
ge-ru; q.v.

hirou. To pick up.

hiru, [hi day; aru to be]. Noon; day-time;  
lunch.

hiru kara: afternoon.

hiru mo yoru mo: day and night.

mō jiki hiru ni narimashō (C): it will soon  
be noon.

mō o hiru ni shimashō (C): let us have  
lunch now.

## Comp.

hiruma: day-time, [ma interval].

hiru-han; hiru-meshi: midday meal. [han<sup>3</sup>  
meal; meshi meal].

hiru-mae: forenoon, [mae before].

hiru-sugi: afternoon, [sugi past].

hiru-ne: midday nap, [ne-ru to sleep].

## hito.

## 1) Man; person.

hito ni naru: to reach manhood.

hito ni suru: to make a man of somebody.

shira-nai hito: a stranger, (not known to  
me).

Yamada San wa Kyōto no hito desu (C): Mr  
Yamada is a native of Kyōto.

## 2) People; somebody; I.

hito wa nan to iu darō? (B): what will  
people say?

*hito wa dō itte mo kamawa-nai* (B) : I don't care what people say.

—*to iu hito mo aru* : some people say—

*hito no kuchi ni to wa taterare-nai* : you cannot close people's mouths.

*hito ni hito-kūse* : everyone has his peculiarities.

*hito no shiri ni tsūku* : to follow somebody about ; play second fiddle to somebody.

*kore wa hito no mono desū* (C) : this belongs to somebody.

*hito to hanashi wo shite imashita* (C) : he was speaking with somebody.

*yoku mo hito wo baka ni shita ne* (A) : what do you mean by making a fool of me like that ?

*ā itai ! nan datte hito wo butsi n' da ?* (A) : oh, you hurt me ! why do you bump up against people (me) like that ?

### 3) Personal disposition.

*ano hito wa hito ga warui* (B) : he is a bad-natured man.

*inaka ni wa hito no ii hito ga takusan arimasu* (C) : in the country there are a great many good-natured people.

*hito-*, [*hitotsū* one]. One ; abb. 2nd set of num. (276, 4) : see *hitotsū*.

### hito-me.

1) Attention ; notice ; [*hito* people ; *me* eye].

*hito-me wo hiku* : to attract attention.

*hito-me wo nusumu* : to do something on the sly, unobserved.

2) A glance, [*hitotsū* one - *me* eye].

*hito-me de sore to shitta* (B) : he took in the situation at a glance.

*hitori*, [*hitotsū* one ; *aru* to be].

1) One person ; each.

*tatta hitori kimashita* (C) : only one person came.

*hitori* (or *hitori-hitori*) *ni fūtatsu zutsu o yari nasai* (B) : give two to each.

*hitori no otoko* : a man.

2) *Hitori* de : alone ; by oneself.

*hitori de wa dekimasen* (C) : I can't do it by myself.

*o hitori de o sabishii zo aimashō* (D) : I suppose you must feel lonesome being all by yourself.

*ima koko ni oita mono ga hitori de nakunaru hazu wa nai* (B) : I don't see how a thing that I put here a moment ago could disappear by itself.

*hitori de ni naorimashita* (C) : I got better all by myself (without taking any medicine).

*kono omocha wa omae hitori no ja nai* (A) : this toy is not for you only.

*kodomo ga hitori de asonde iru* (B) : the child is amusing himself.

### Comp.

*hitori-mono* : a single (unmarried) person, [*mono* person].

*hitori-musūko* : an only son, [*musūko* son].

*hitori-musūme* : an only daughter, [*musūme* daughter].

*hito-tōri*, [*hitotsū* one ; *tōri* way]. In a general way.

*hito-tōri wa shitte imasu* (C) : I have a general knowledge of it.

*hito-tōri o hanashi kudasai* (D) : please give me a general idea of it.

*hito-tōri no ningen* : an ordinary person.

*Ei-go mo hito-tōri wa naratte iru* (B) : I have gone through the usual course in English.

*sono kurushisa wa hito-tōri ja nakatta* (B) : the agony was something extraordinary.

### hitotsū.

1) One ; same.

*fūtatsu no uchi hitotsū* : one of two things.

*tatta hitotsū ; hitotsū dake* : only one.

*hitotsū-hitotsū* : one by one.

*hitotsū oki* : every other one.

*hitotsū mo arimasen* (C) : there is not a single one.

*hitotsū mo deki-nai* (B) : I can do nothing.

*hitotsū kisha ni norimashita* (C) : we came by the same train.

*mo hitotsū* : another one.

*mo hitotsū no* : the other one.

2) The meaning is sometimes vague.

*o cha wo hitotsū o agari nasai* (C) : please take a cup of tea.

*hitotsū kaite mimashō* (C) : I will just write and see.

In comp. *hitotsū* is abb. to *hito-* ; see 276, 4 for the list of nouns that take this abb. num.

*hito-me ; hito-tōri* ; q.v.

*hito-anshin ; hito-honeori ; hito-kuchi ; hito-kurō* : see *anshin* ; *hone-ori* ; *kuchi* ; *kurō*.

*hiyasū*, v.t. To cool.

Der. : *o-hiya* : cold water, (fem.), [*o* honorific].

### hō.

1) Direction ; side.

*dochi no hō ni ?* on which side ?

*kotchi no hō ni* : on this side.

*ginkō no hō ni* : in the direction of the bank ; in the neighbourhood of the bank.

2) When two or more things or actions are considered simultaneously and one is chosen or compared to the others, *hō* has a meaning of 'one', 'way', 'manner'.

*shiroi hō wo motte irasshai* (C) : take the white one.

*kasa wo motte iku hō ga ii* (B) : you had better take an umbrella.

*sono hō ga ii* (B) : that would be better.

*sono hō ga suki desū* (C) : I like that better.

*ii hō wo o tori nasai* (C) : take whichever you please.

*kono hō ga yasui* (B) : this one is cheaper.

*sakunen kara shōbai no hō ga sukkari dame ni narimashita* (C) : since last year business is very bad.



## Comp.

*katappo* : one of a pair, [*kata* one].

*ryōhō* : both, [*ryō*- both].

**hōbi**. Reward ; prize ; (the honorific *go* is gen. pref.).

*go hōbi wo moraimashita* (C) : I won a prize.

**hōbō**, [*hō* side ; repeated so as to signify universality]. On all sides ; everywhere.

*hōbō no mise wo tazunemashita ga arimasen deshita* (C) : I asked at several shops but I could not get it.

**hodo**.

1) Approximate quantity : about.

*san-ka-getsū hodo* : about three months.

*go-kin hodo kaimashō* (C) : I shall buy about five pounds.

*hari hodo no koto wo bō hodo ni iu* : to speak of a thing about the size of a needle as if it were about as big as a stick ; to make a mountain of a mole-hill.

2) Quantity ; price ; much.

*dore hodo ?* how much ? (quantity).

*ika hodo ? nani hodo ?* how much ? (price or quantity).

*sore hodo ira-nai* (B) : I don't need as much as that.

*kore hodo itte kikaseru no ni mada wakaranai ka ?* (A) : can't you understand yet after having heard it explained so much ?  
*sore hodo made ni shi-nakute mo ii* (B) : you needn't go to that extent.

3) Comparisons of equality : as—as.

*anata wa watashi hodo sei ga takai* (B) : you are as tall as I.

*Yumoto wa Ashinoyu hodo kirei na tokoro desū ka ?* (C) : is Yumoto as pretty a place as Ashinoyu ?

4) Neg. comparisons.

*sore hodo waruku nai* (B) : not so bad as that.

*Yokohama e wa sen hodo tabi-tabi ikimasen* (C) : I do not go to Yokohama as often as I used to.

*anata no omou hodo yasashiku wa nai* (B) : it is not as easy as you think.

*anata wa toshi hodo ni wa mie-nga* (B) : you don't look your age.

5) An individual is compared to all the other individuals of the same kind.

*kisha hodo benri na mono wa nai* (B) : there is nothing so convenient as a train.

*ano hito hodo zurui hito wa ōkunai* (B) : there are few men as cunning as he.

6) So—(that).

*ugoke-nai hodo dossari tabeta* (B) ; *dossari tabeta ugoke-nai hodo datta* (B) : he ate so much (that) he could not move.

*shinu ka to omou hodo kurushinimashita* (C) : the pain was so great I thought I would die.

*ureshikūte, ureshikūte, dō shite ii ka wakaranai hodo deshita* (C) : he was so happy he didn't know what to do.

7) Enough.

*raiharu made tsūkanu hodo sekitan ga gozaimasu ka ?* (D) : have you enough coal to last till next spring ?

*amaru hodo* : more than enough.

*iku hodo yoku arimasen* (C) : I don't feel well enough to go.

*iu hodo no bijin de mo nai* (B) : she is not pretty enough to be talked about.

8) The—the.

*ōi hodo ii* : the more the better.

*ōkiku naru hodo waruku naru* (B) : the older he grows the worse he becomes.

*omoeba omou hodo kanashii* (B) : the more I think of it the more sorry I feel.

9) Moderation ; limit.

*baka ni suru ni mo hodo ga aru* (A) : there are limits to be observed even when you make a fool of people (but you overstep those limits).

*mi no hodo wo shira-nai yatsū da* (B) : he is a fellow who doesn't know his own position.

10) Time.

*hodo naku kaette kuru darō* (B) : he will, I think, return before long.

*saki-hodo mairimashita* (C) : he arrived a short time ago.

11) Various.

*hodo no ii hito desū* (C) : he has a good address.

*ii hodo ni aisatsu shite oita* (B) : I gave a vague answer.

*homerareru hodo no hito de wa nai* (B) : he is not a man who deserves praise.

*kane-mochi to iu hodo de wa arimasen deshita* (C) : he wasn't exactly what you would call a rich man.

*iya to iu hodo butai* : to give (somebody) a good beating.

*sakura no hana wa iya to iu hodo mimashita* (C) : I've seen cherry-blossoms until I'm sick of them.

## Comp.

*saki-hodo* : a short time ago, [*saki* before].  
*yohodo*, q.v.

**hoderu**, v.i. [eogn. w. foll.]. To get untied ; come undone.

**hodoku**, v.t. [eogn. w. prec.]. To untie ; undo.  
**hoka**.

1) Different ; other ; another.

*hoka no iro* : a different colour.

*omoi no hoka* : differently from what I expected.

*hoka no wa is-shūkan de dekimasu* (C) : the others will be done in a week.

*hoka de mo nai anata no o tanomi desū kara hone wo otte mimashō* (C) : as the request comes from you and no other, I will do my best.

*hoka no hito nara tonikaku*— : however it may be with others—

2) Besides: except; else.

*kono hoka ni wa nani mo nai* (B): I have nothing but this.

*sō suru hoka shikata ga nai* (B): there is nothing else to be done.

*kono hoka mada takusan arimasu* (C): there are a great many besides these.

*hoka de mo nai ga*—: what I want to say is only this—

*iku yori hoka wa nai* (B): there is nothing for it but to go.

*hoka ni nani ga irimasu ka?* (C): what else do you want?

*sono hoka iro-iro*: and so forth.

*chūsai nimotsu no hoka wa minna motte o kure* (A): take all the luggage except the small parcel.

*hoka ni dare mo i-nakatta* (B): there was nobody else there.

**hōki.** A broom.

**hokori.** Dust.

*hokori wo harau*: to (clean off the) dust.

*hokori ga tatsū*: the dust rises.

*tsūkue no ue ni hokori ga tamatte iru* (B): my desk is quite dusty.

**home-ru.** To praise.

*ammari hometa hanashi de wa nai* (B): it is not a thing to be highly commended.

**hon<sup>1</sup>.** Book.

Comp.

*hon-bako*: bookcase, [*hako* box].

*hon-dana*: book-shelf, [*tana* shelf].

*hon-ya*: bookseller, [*ya* q.v.].

*furui-hon*: second-hand book, [*furui* old].

**hon<sup>2</sup>.** A.n. used for long cylindrical things, such as sticks, trees, pens, bottles, etc., also for letters.

Note:—1 *ip-pon*; 3 *sam-pon*; 6 *rop-pon*; 10 *ip-pon*; 100 *hyap-pon*; 1,000 *sem-pon*; *nam-pon*?

**hon<sup>3</sup> (no),** [*hontō* truth]. True: mere.

*hon no jōdan*: merely a joke.

*hon no yasui-mono*: merely cheap stuff.

Comp.

*hon-nin*: the man himself, (not a representative), [*nin* man].

*hon-mono*: a genuine article, (not imitation), [*mono* thing].

*hon-gin*: solid silver, (not plated), [*gin* silver].

**hone.** Bone.

1)

*hone to kawa bakkari*: nothing but skin and bones.

*hone wo tsugu*: to set a bone.

*kasa no hone*: the ribs of an umbrella.

*hone desu* (C): it is very arduous work, (an elliptical construction, see foll.).

2) *Hone wo oru*: to strive hard; make a strenuous effort: (lit.: to break the bones).

*hone ga ore-ru*: to need great efforts.

*hone wo otte mimashō* (C): I will try my best.

Comp.: *hone-ori*, see foll.

**hone-ori,** [*hone* bones: *oru* to break: see prec. 2)]. Effort; labour.

*hone-ori ga muda ni narimashita* (C): my efforts were in vain.

*hito-honori deshita ne* (C): thank you very much for your trouble.

*honeori-zon no kutabire-mōke*: it was so much labour lost.

**hontō (no); honto (no).** True.

*hontō no hanashi*: a true story.

*hontō no zōge desu ka? uso no desu ka?* (C): is it real ivory or imitation?

*hontō desu ka?* (C): is it true? are you in earnest?

*hontō ka, uso ka, wakara-nai* (B): I don't know whether it is true or false.

*honto wa*: to tell you the truth.

*honto ni*: in fact; indeed; upon my word: as a matter of fact; has also a sup. meaning.

*honto ni kirei na musūme wo mimashita* (C): I saw such a pretty girl.

*hontō ni sō nara*: if it really proves to be so.

*dare mo sonna koto wo honto ni shi-nai* (B): nobody believes such a thing.

*hontō de mo uso de mo*: whether it is true or false.

Der.

*hon<sup>3</sup> q.v.*

*hontorashii*: apparently true, [see *rashii*].

**horu.** To dig; carve; engrave.

Der. and comp.

*hori*: a ditch; moat.

*hori-mono*: a carving, [*mono* thing].

**hoshi,** (sometimes *o hoshi sama*). Star.

**hoshii,** adj. Desirous of having; want.

*Tarō wa nashi ga hoshii* (B): Tarō wants a pear.

*hoshii no desu ka?* (C): would you like some?

*chōdo hoshii to omotte ita mono desu* (C): it is just what I wanted.

Der.: *hoshigaru*: to desire, [see *-garu*].

**hosoi.** Thin (of cylindrical things); fine.

Comp.: *hoso-nagai*: slender, [*nagai* long].

**hosu.** To dry; air; drain off.

*hinata de (or ni) hosu*: to dry in the sun.

*kimono wo hosu*: to air clothes.

*hi de hosu*: to dry at a fire.

**hoteru,** [corr. of Eng.]. Hotel.

**hotondo.** Almost; nearly; about.

*hotondo dekimashita* (C): it is almost ready.

*hotondo hyaku arimasu* (C): I have nearly a hundred.

**hyaku.** A hundred.

Note:—100 *hyaku*; 300 *sam-hyaku*; 600 *rop-pyaku*; 800 *hap-pyaku*. One often hears also: 400 *yon-hyaku* for *shi-hyaku*;



700 *nana-hyaku* for *shichi-hyaku*; 900 *kyū-hyaku* for *ku-hyaku*.

**hyōban.** Opinion; reputation; rumour.

*hyōban no ii hito* : a man who has a good reputation.

*ano hito wa hyōban ga warui* (B) : that man has a bad name.

*hyōban no rikō mono desū* (C) : he is supposed to be a very clever person.

*hyōban ni naru* : to be talked about.

*ano hito no hyōban ga (chi ni) ochita* (B) : his reputation has fallen (to the ground).

**i-awase·ru**, [*i·ru* to be : *awase·ru* to join].

To happen to be present.

*i-awaseta hito* : a person who happened to be there.

**ibaru.** To be proud; give oneself airs.

*ibatte aruku* : to swagger.

*ano mise wa ima de wa ibatta mono da* (B) : that shop is doing very well now.

**ibi**, common but less correct form of *yubi* q.v.

**ichi.**

1) One.

*ichi-nichi* : one day.

*ichi-nichi-jū* : all day long.

2) Superlative.

*Nippon ichi no (takai) yama* : the highest mountain of Japan.

3) Various.

*ichi ka bachi* (corr. of *hachi*) *ka* : at a venture.

*ichi ka bachi ka yatte miyō* (B) : I will chance it.

*ichi mo ni mo naku shōchi shimashita* (C) : he agreed without hesitation.

*ichi mo tora-zu, ni mo tora-zu* : chasing two hares and getting neither.

*ichi wo kiite jū wo shiru* : to know all from hearing one.

Note :—*ichi* in comp. before *ch*, *t* or *ts*, becomes *ik-*; before *f* or *h*, *ip-*; before *k*, *ik-*; before *s* or *sh*, *is-*. *Ichi* is always omitted before *hyaku* hundred, and generally omitted before *sen* thousand; but always used before *man* ten thousand, for numbers between 10,000 and 20,000.

Comp.

*ichi-ichi* : one by one.

*ichi-ichi miru koto wa deki-nai* (B) : I cannot look at every one of them.

*ichiban*; *ippai*; *ip-puku*; *it-tō*; q.v.

**ichiban**, [*ban*<sup>3</sup> number].

1) Number one.

*Yokohama, Yamashita-chō, ichi-ban* : number 1, Settlement, Yokohama.

*ichi-ban-me* : the first.

2) Superlative.

*kore ga ichiban (ii no desū)* (B) : this is the best.

*kore ga ichiban sūki desū* (C) : I like this best.

*Kōbe de ichiban kirei na musūme* : the prettiest girl in Kōbe.

*dono hako ni ichiban hairimasū ka?* (C) : which box holds the most?

*Yamada San ga ichiban ni kimashita* (C) : Mr. Yamada came first.

*ichiban hajime kara* : from the very beginning.

*ichiban kisha* : the first train.

*nani wo suru ni mo karada ga ichiban da* (B) : in everything health should be the first consideration.

**ichi-gatsū**; **ichi-getsū**; [*gatsū*, *getsū* month]. January.

**ie.** House; (see *uchi*).

**ie·ru**, [potential of *i·ru* to say]. To be able to say.

**Igirisū**, [corr. of English]. England.

Comp.: *Igirisū-jin* : an Englishman, [*jīn* man].

**ii1**, [*itsutsu* five]. Five (in the 3rd set of num.: see 271, 275).

**ii2**. Common form of *yoi* good, when used attributively: see *yoi*.

**ii-dasū**, [*iul* to speak; *dasū* q.v.]. To begin to speak; say.

*ichi-do ii-dashita kara ni wa ato e wa hika-nai* (B) : after I have said something I never go back on my words.

*ima ni natte sonna koto wo ii-dashite mo shi-kata ga nai* (B) : it is no use speaking of such things now.

**iiē**, (sometimes corr. to *iiya*). The true meaning is 'no'; but, as the Japanese when answering neg. questions often say 'no' where we would say 'yes', *iiē* must frequently be translated by 'yes': see 401.

*ika-nai no desū ka?*—*iiē*, *iku no desū* (C) : aren't you going?—yes, I am.

*kore wa Yokohama de o kai ni narimashita ka*, (B) *de o kai ni narimashita ka?* (D)—

*iiē*, *Tōkyō de kaimashita* (C) : did you buy this in Yokohama or in Kōbe?—in neither, I bought it in Tōkyō.

*iiē chigaimasū* (C) : no, it is not so; you are mistaken.

*iiē* (after being asked pardon or thanked) : don't mention it.

**ii-sugi·ru**, [*iul* to speak; *sugi·ru* to exceed]. To speak too much; say things you ought not to.

**ii-tsuke·ru**, [*iul* to speak; *tsuke·ru* to apply].

1) To order; command.

*naze ii-tsuketa tōri ni shi-nai ka?* (A) : why don't you do as I order you?

2) To speak ill of somebody; tell tales. *sensei ni ii-tsukemasū* (B) : I'll tell the teacher about you.

3) To be accustomed to say.

Der.

*ii-tsuke* : an order.

- dare no ii-tsuke de shimashita ka? (B): by whose order did you do it?
- ii-wake, [iul to speak; wake reason: i.e. a reason that consists only of words]. An excuse: see wake.
- iiya. Corr. of iie q.v.
- iji. Temper.
- iji no ii: good-tempered.
- iji no warui: bad-tempered.
- iji no kitanai: greedy (of food).
- iji wo haru: to be stubborn.
- iji ni naru: to become obstinate.
- kō nareba iji da (B): if things come to this pass, it is a question of obstinacy.
- ijime'ru, [? cogn. w. foll.]. To tease; vex; annoy.
- ijiru. To touch; handle; meddle with.
- ijō, [jō<sup>2</sup> above]. Above; beyond; more than; over; after.
- go-yen ijō wa dasemasen (C): I will not give more than five yen.
- makeaseta ijō wa kawa-nakereba narumai (B): as you have come down in the price I suppose I must buy it.
- kita ijō wa shira-nai to wa ie-nai (B): now that I have heard it I cannot pretend I do not know.
- ikaga. How? what?
- ikaga desu ka? (C): how do you do?
- kore wa, ikaga itashimashō? (D): what shall I do with this?
- kore wa, ikaga desu ka? (C): what do you say to this? how would this suit you?
- o cha wa, ikaga de gozaimasu ka? (D): may I offer you a cup of tea?
- kasa wo motte itara, ikaga desu ka? (C): would you care to take an umbrella?
- Note:—ikaga may always be replaced by dō which is however less polite; on the other hand dō may often be changed into ikaga as noted at the end of dō<sup>2</sup> q.v.
- ika-hodo, [ikaga how; hodo about?]. How much?
- kore wa ika-hodo desu ka? (C): how much is this?
- Note:—instead of ika-hodo you may say ikura (less polite).
- ike-nai; ikemasen; [neg. present of ike'ru], potential of iku to go. The real meaning is 'I (you, etc.) cannot go'; it is gen. used to indicate disapproval, 'that won't do'.
- 1) After the neg. present conditional, the neg. gerund in nakute and wa, or the neg. present and to, it is often translated by 'must' or 'ought'.
- ki wo tsuke-nakereba ike-nai (A): you must be careful; (lit. if you are not careful that won't do).
- benkyō shi-nakute wa ikemasen (A): you ought to study.
- noma-nai to ike-nai (A): you must drink it.

- 2) After the gerund and wa, or the present and to, ike-nai often means 'must not' or 'don't'.
- hanashite wa ike-nai (A); hanasu to ikemasen (C): you mustn't speak; (lit. if you speak that won't do).
- 3) The present foll. by to and ike-nai is not usually translated by 'must not' when it occurs in a subordinate clause.
- sensei ni mirareru to ike-nai kara o yoshi nasai (B): leave off or your teacher will see you; (lit. as it wouldn't do if you were seen by your teacher, leave off).
- iru to ikemasen kani motte ikimashō (C): I will take it with me in case I need it.
- osoku naru to ikemasen kara, densha de ikimashō (C): as it wouldn't do to arrive late, let's go by tram-car.
- koko de wa dare ka otosō to ike-nai (B): somebody may knock it down here (so put it somewhere else).
- 4) Ike-nai after the gerundial form of an adj. may often be translated by 'too'.
- shirokute ike-nai (B): it is too white.
- Compare: shirokute wa ike-nai (B): if it is white it won't do.
- otoko no ko wa itazura de ikemasen (C): boys are a nuisance, they are always up to mischief.
- 5) As an adj.
- sore wa ike-nai koto desu ne (C): I am sorry to hear that.
- ike-nai koto wo shita (B): you have made a blunder.
- ike-nai koto ga arimasu ka? (C): is anything wrong with it?
- ike-nai ko: a mischievous child.
- byōki ga dan-dan ike-naku narimasu (C): the illness is getting more serious little by little.
- 6) Various.
- sore wa ike-nai (B): that won't do.
- sore de wa ike-nai (B): that one won't do.
- ike-nai kara yoshimasu (C): I will leave off as it is of no use.
- kaze ga fuku kara ike-nai (B): as it is windy I cannot go, (this is the original meaning of ike-nai); you mustn't do that on account of the wind.
- Note:—ika-nai (do not go) is sometimes heard in the place of ike-nai.
- ike'ru, [potential of iku to go]. To be able to go.
- ike-nai; ikemasen; see prec.
- ikeru<sup>2</sup>, [iki'ru to live]. To keep alive.
- Comp.: hana ike: a flower-vase, [hana flower].
- iki, [iki'ru to live]. Breath.
- iki wo suru; iki wo tsuku: to breathe.
- iki ga kire'ru: to be out of breath.
- mada iki ga arimasu (C): he is still alive.
- Der.: naga-iki: a long life, [nagai long].



**iki-chigai**, [iku<sup>1</sup> to go; chigau to be different].  
Passing each other on the way; a mutual misunderstanding.

*iki-chigai ni naru*: to miss or fail to meet somebody.

*ano hito wa Ei-go ga wakara-nai kara iki-chigai ga dekita* (B): as he does not know English very well there was a misunderstanding.

**iki-ru**. To live; survive.

*mada ikite imasu ka?* (C): is he still living?  
*watakushi no ikite iru aida wa*: as long as I live.

Der.: *ikeru*<sup>2</sup>; *iki*; q.v.

**ikka**, [iku<sup>2</sup> what; -ka day]. What day of the month?

*kyō wa ikka desu ka?* (C): what day of the month is it?

**iku**<sup>1</sup>, [corr. of *yuku*]; irreg. verb, see 28.

1) To go.

*atchi e o iki nasai* (B): go away.

*itte kimasu* (C): I am going but I'll come back again; a common salutation said on leaving one's own house, and in other cases where a return is intended soon.

*ittari-kitari suru*: to walk up and down.

*Nagasaki iki no fune*: a ship bound for Nagasaki.

*iki wa densha de kaeri wa arukimashō* (C): I shall go by tram and come back on foot.

*kore wa doko e iku michi desu ka?* (C): where does this road go to?

*mō gakkō e iku jikan desu* (C): it is time now to go to school.

*michi wo iku hito*: a man passing on the road.

*itsu mo iku tokoro*: the place I usually go to.

*yobarete iku*: to go in answer to an invitation.

2) *Ni iku*:- to go, foll. by infinitive; to go for, and.

*bōshi wo tori ni ikimashō* (C): I am going to fetch my hat; I am going for my hat.

*isha wo yobi ni ikimashita* (C): he went to call the doctor.

*mi ni ikimashō* (C): let us go and see.

3) Potential, passive and causative: *ikeru*<sup>1</sup>; *ikareru*; *ikaseru*.

*ikereba ii* (B): I wish I could go.

*kyō wa ikaremasen* (C): I can't go today.

*ikasete o yari nasai* (B): let him go; allow him to go.

*oji kara moratta kane de shōbai wo hajimete raku ni kurashite ikeru yō ni natta no desu* (C): with the money I received from my uncle I opened a shop and was thus able to live in comfort.

*ikare-naku narimashita* (C): I am prevented now from going.

See also *ike-nai*.

Note:—*Yaru* to send, is gen. used as caus. of *iku*.

4) *Ika-nai* (or *ikimasen*) sometimes means 'cannot'; notice especially, (*wake*) *ni wa ikimasen* used for forming the neg. potential.

*sō wa ikimasen* (C): that is impossible.

*omou yō ni wa ikimasen mono desu* (C): you can't always have things as you would wish.

*dō shite mo hakurai no yō (na wake) ni wa ikimasen* (C): in any case it cannot be equal to a foreign-made article.

*isogashii kara sō hayaku iku wake ni wa ika-nai* (B): as I am busy I cannot possibly go so soon.

5) Various.

*ano hito wa nan de kutte iku ka?* (A): what does he do for a living?

*toshi ga iku*: to grow in age.

*rippa ni kurashite iku*: to live in splendid style.

*iku-do kaite mo omou yō ni ika-nai* (B): I can't get it to my liking no matter how often I re-write it.

Note:—the humble form of *iku*, (polite for the 1st person) is *mairu*, occasionally *agaru* (q.v.); the honorific forms (polite for the 2nd person) are *irassharu*, *o-ide nasaru*, *o-ide ni naru*, *o-ide de gozaru*, and *o-ide kudasaru*. The imperative of *iku* is gen. taken from one of the honorific forms.

Comp.

*iki-chigai*, q.v.

*iki-gake*, see *-gake*.

**iku**<sup>2</sup>: *ikutsū*. *Iku* in questions takes the place occupied in ordinary aff. sentences by the first set of num. or the abb. second set (276, 1, 2, 4); *ikutsū* takes the place of the second set of num. (276, 3).

1) How many?

*iku-do?* how often?

*empitsu iku-hon?* how many pencils?

*iku-tsuki?* how many months?

*izu ikutsū?* how many chairs?

*o ikutsū desu ka?* (C): how old are you?

2) *Iku*—*ka*; *ikutsū ka*: a good many.

*Yokohama e wa iku-tabi ka mairimashita ga yoku zanjimasen* (D): I have been to Yokohama several times but I don't know it well.

*hako wa ikutsū ka arimasu ga minna chiisayugimasu* (C): I have a good many boxes but they are all too small.

3) *Iku*—*mo*; *ikutsū mo*: any number; a great many.

*empitsu ga iku-hon mo arimasu* (C): I have any number of pencils.

*iku-do mo ikimashita* (C): I have been (there) any number of times.

*tamago wa ip-pen ni ikutsū mo kotte wa ikemasen* (C): don't buy so many eggs at a time.

4) *Iku—de mo ; ikutsū de mo* : any number whatever.

*iku-shaku de mo iru-dake o tsūkai nasai* (C) : use as many feet (of this cloth) as you need.

*nashi nara ikutsū de mo goraimasū* (D) : if it were pears (you were in need of) I have any number.

Cogn. words : *ikka ; ikura ; ikutari* ; q.v.

**ikura**, [cogn. w. *iku*<sup>2</sup>].

1) How much ?

*(minna de) ikura desū ka ?* (C) : how much is it (all together) ?

*ichi-nichi ikura desū ka ?* (C) : what is the price per day ?

2) *Ikura ka* : a certain amount.

*ikura ka shitteru* (B) : I know it a little.

*ikura ka o yari nasai* (B) : give him something (a little money).

*ikura ka ano hito no on ni natte imasū* (C) : I am under some obligation to him.

3) *Ikura mo* : any amount ; a great amount.  
*hagaki wa hikidashi ni ikura mo aru* (B) : there are any amount of postcards in the drawer.

*ikura mo nokotte i-nai* (B) : there is hardly any left.

4) *Ikura*, gerund, *mo* : however much.

*ikura takakutte mo* : however dear it may be.

*ikura benkyō shite mo* : however diligent one may be.

*ikura itte kikashite mo dame da* (B) : however much I explain it to him it is no use.

*ikura nan to itte mo shiyō ga nai* (B) : no matter what you say, it's no use.

*ikura watashi ga baka de mo sonna koto wo shi ya shi-nai* (B) : I may do silly things sometimes, but I would never do a thing like that.

5) *Ikura de mo* : any amount whatever.

*hima ga ikura de mo aru* (B) : I have plenty of spare time.

*ikura de mo ii kara motte o-ide* (A) : bring as much as you please.

Note :—*ika-hodo* is more polite than *ikura* and may take its place sometimes.

**ikutari**, [*iku*<sup>2</sup> how many ? cogn. w. *fūtari* and *yottari* two persons, four persons]. How many persons ?

**ikutsū**, see *iku*<sup>2</sup>.

**ima**. Now.

1) The present ; the near past ; the near future.

*ima Kōbe ni itte imasū* (C) : he is at present in Kōbe.

*sore wo yaru no wa ima desū* (C) : this is the time to do it.

*ima wa kore de ii* (B) : this will do for the present.

*ima de wa Nihon de mo yōfuku wo kiru hito ga takusan arimasū* (C) : now-a-days there

are a great many Japanese who wear foreign clothes.

*ima no hito wa taigai shimbun wo yomu* (B) : people now-a-days generally read newspapers.

*ima koko ni kite ita* (B) : he was here just now.

*ima dekimasū kara matte kudasai* (C) : please wait as it will be ready in a moment.

*ima (kuru) ka, ima (kuru) ka to matte imasū* (C) : I am expecting him every moment.

2) *Ima made* : hitherto.

*ima made nani wo shite ita no desū ?* (C) : what have you been doing ?

*ima made nita uchi de kore ga ichiban ii* (B) : this is the best I have seen so far.

3) *Ima kara* : in future.

*ima kara isshōkemmei benkyō shimasū* (C) : in future I will study as hard as I can.

*ima kara is-shūkan mo tateba naorimasū* (C) : he will completely recover in about a week's time.

4) *Ima ni* : gen. refers to some future indefinite time.

*ima ni kuru ka mo shire-nai* (B) : I dare say he will come later on.

*ima ni kowasū deshō* (C) : he will end by breaking it.

*ima ni mo furi-dashi-sō da* (B) : it threatens to rain immediately.

*ima ni natte sonna koto wo ii-dashite mo shikata ga nai* (B) : it is no use speaking of such things now (that it is too late).

Comp. : *ima-goro ; tadaima* ; q.v.

**i-ma**, [*i-ri* to be ; *mai* room]. Sitting-room.

**ima-goro**, [*ima* now ; *koro* about]. About this time.

*chōdo sakunen no ima-goro deshita* (C) : it was just about this time last year.

*ashita no ima-goro made ni wa dekimasū* (C) : it will be finished by this time tomorrow.

*Fumi San wa ima-goro nani wo shite iru darō ?* (B) : I wonder what Miss Fumi is doing now.

**imi**. Meaning.

*imi ga wakarū* : to understand the meaning.  
*dō iu imi desū ka ?* (C) : what do you mean ?

*imi wo tori-chigaueru* : to mistake the meaning.

**imo**. Potato.

**imōto**. A younger sister.

**inabikari**, [*ine* rice in the field ; *hikaru* to shine ; lightning was supposed to be beneficial to rice]. Lightning.

**inaka**. The country ; rural parts.

*inaka no hito ; inaka-mono* : a peasant.

**inki**, [English]. Ink.

**inochi**, [*i(ki)* breath : *no of* ; *uchi* inside]. Life.

*inochi wo sūteru* : to sacrifice one's life.



*inochi wo hirou* : to escape from death (great danger).

*inochi no oya* : the preserver of one's life.  
*inochi no sentaku* : recreation, (lit. washing one's life).

*inochi ni kakete mo* : even at the risk of my life.

*inochi ni kaeru takara nashi* : no treasure can be compared to life.

*inochi atte no mono-dane* : things can be done only if we have life, [mono things; tane seed].

*nagai tsuki-hi ni mijikai inochi* : time is long but life is short.

**inoru.** To pray.

**inu.** Dog.

*inu ni kamare'ru* : to be bitten by a dog.

*inu wo kau* : to keep a dog.

*kui-inu ni te wo kamare'ru* : to be bitten by your own dog.

*inu mo arukeba bō ni ataru* : even a dog if he roams about will come across something worth having; if you give yourself pains you will always derive some advantage.

*inu wa mikka kawareru to san-nen wasurenai* : feed a dog for three days and he won't forget it for three years.

**ip-pai**, [ichi one; hai<sup>4</sup> a.n.].

1) A glassful; bottleful; cupful.

*mizu ip-pai* : a glass of water.

*ip-pai hito sake wo nomi, ni-hai sake sake wo nomi, san-bai sake hito wo nomu* : at the first bottle the man absorbs the wine, at the second the wine absorbs the wine, at the third the wine absorbs the man.

2) **Ippai** : full.

*ippai ni suru* : to fill, (transitive).

*ippai ni naru* : to fill, (intransitive).

*ano bin wa ippai desū* (C) : that bottle is full.  
*hokori ippai* ; *ippai no hokori* : full of dust ; covered with dust.

*chikara ippai ni hippatta* (B) : I pulled with all my strength.

*kono bin ni mizu wo ippai irete o kure* (A) : fill this bottle with water.

*ruinen ippai kakarimasū* (C) : it will take all next year.

*ippai kuwasareta* (B) : I was completely taken in.

**ip-puku**, [ichi one; fūku<sup>2</sup> a.n.].

1) One dose of medicine; one sip of tea; one whiff of tobacco.

*kono kūsuri wo ip-puku nonde goran nasai* (C) : take a dose of this medicine.

2) The idea of 'one' may be lost.

*ip-puku o agari nasai* (B) : have a smoke; take a cup of tea; just rest a while.

**-ira.** A suf. used after *asūko*, *doko*, *koko*, *soko* ; it adds the idea of vagueness.

*asūko-ira* : whereabouts.

*doko-ira* : whereabouts.  
*koko-ira* : whereabouts.

*soko-ira* : whereabouts.

The *i* is sometimes dropped : *asūkora* ; *dokora* ; etc.

**irassharu**, [corr. of *iraserare'ru*, the pot. of the caus. of *iru* to enter]. An honorific verb, used politely of the 2nd person; (358). It has a few irregularities: it drops the final *r* before the *masū* terminations; the imperative is *irasshai*; one *s* and the *a* after the *h* are often dropped before terminations beginning with *te*, thus *irash'te* for *irasshatte*.

1) To be; come; go.

*donata de irasshaimasū ka* ? (D) : who are you ? whom have I the honour of addressing ?

*irasshai* (C) : come here ; welcome.

*mata irasshai* (C) : please come again.

*yoku irasshaimashita* (D) : I am pleased to see you.

*dōzo watashi ni wa kamawa-zu ni irash'te kudasai* (D) : please take no notice of me and go on with what you are doing.

*Tōkyō de irasshaimashita ka* ? (D) : did you go to Tōkyō ?

*go shujin wa irasshaimasū ka* ? (D) : is your master in ?

*ima shimbun wo yonde irasshaimasū* (D) : he is reading the newspaper now.

2) Verbal inflexions which contain the auxiliary verb *iru*, may be made honorific by changing *iru* into *irassharu*.

*nani shimbun wo totte irasshaimasū ka* ? (D) = *totte imasū ka* ? (C) = *totte iru ka* ? (B) : which newspaper do you take ?

*matte irasshai* (C) : please wait a moment.

3) *Irassharu* is used after the gerundial form of true adj. although in this case *iru* to be cannot be used, (200, 9).

*atama ga itakūte irasshaimasū* (D) : he has a headache.

*anata wa sei ga takakūte irasshaimasū* (D) : you are tall.

4) *Irassharu* is sometimes used instead of *gozaru* or *aru* in cases like the foll.

*hon wo o yomi de irasshaimasū ka* ? (D) : is he reading a book ?

*o dekake de irasshaimasū ka* ? (D) : are you going out ?

*shinsetsu de irasshaimasū* (D) : he is kind.

*go benkyō de irasshaimasū ne* (D) : I see you are studying.

*o ikutsu de irasshaimasū* ? (D) : how old are you ?

*ikaga de irasshaimasū* ? (D) : how are you ?

**ire-kae'ru**, [*iru* to put into; *kae'ru*<sup>2</sup> to change]. To replace; substitute.

*atarashii no to ire-kaete kudasai* (C) : please replace it with a new one.

*kore kara wa kitto kokoro wo ire-kaete benkyō itashimasū* (D) : I will turn over a new leaf and henceforth study hard.

**ireru**, v.t. [cogn. w. *iru*<sup>2</sup> v.i.]. To put into; allow to come in.

*kore wo kanjō ni irete kudasai* (C): please

put this down to my account.

*watashi mo irete*: including myself.

*hito no koto ni kuchi wo irete wa ike-nai* (A):

don't interfere in other people's affairs.

*abura wo ireru mono ga hoshii* (B): I want

something to-put oil in.

*dare mo irete wa ike-nai* (A): don't let any-one come in.

*o cha wo ire'ru*: to make tea.

*negai wo ire'ru*: to accede to a request.

*kaze wo ire'ru*: to ventilate.

*nen wo ire'ru*: to pay attention.

Comp.

*kane-ire*: a purse, [kane money].

*ire-kaeru*, q.v.

**iri-guchi**, [*iru*<sup>2</sup> to enter; *kuchi* mouth], opening]. Entrance; way in.

**iri-yō**, [*iru*<sup>3</sup> to need; *yō*<sup>2</sup> use]. Use; need.

*kore wa o* (or *go*) *iri-yō de gozaimasu ka?*

(D): do you need this?

*iri-yō dake o mochi nasai* (C): take what you need.

*sukoshi kane no iri-yō ga dekita* (B): I find I need some money.

*go* (or *o*) *iri-yō no toki wa itsu de mo o tsukai kudasai* (D): please make use of it whenever you need it.

**iro**.

1) Colour.

*usui iro*: a light colour.

*koi iro*: a dark colour.

*kono iro wa kawarimasu ka?* (C): does this colour fade?

*kono iro wa aratte mo daijōbu desu ka?* (C): does this colour wash well?

*shimpai wo iro ni mo dasa-nai* (B): his face does not betray his anxiety.

*iro wo tsūkeru*: to colour (transitive).

2) Quality; kind.

*hito-iro shika arimasen ka?* (C): have you only one quality?

*jū-nin to iro*: ten men, ten opinions.

Comp.

*iro-iro*; *ki-iro*; q.v.

*nezumi-iro*: grey, [nezumi mouse].

*cha-iro*: light brown, [cha tea].

*kao-iro*: the colour of the face; countenance; [kao face].

Note:—*iro* is used in connection with the abb. 2nd set of num. (276, 4).

**iro-iro** (no or na), (when used attrib., some times corr. to *ironna* or *irennā*); [*iro* kind, repeated so as to signify plurality]. Various.

*ano hito wa iro-iro no koto wa shitte imasu* (C): he knows all sorts of things.

*iro-iro yatte mimashita ga dame deshita* (C): I tried several things but it was all useless.

*iro-iro go mendo na koto wo negaimashita* (C): I have put you to a great deal of trouble.

*iro-iro na no wo misete kudasai* (C): please show me several.

**iru**.

1) To be in a place (said of men or animals); live; dwell.

*gō shujin wa imasu ka?* (C): is your master in?

*uchi ni imasu* (C): he is at home.

*anata wa ima doko ni imasu ka?* (C): where are you living now?

*ku-gatsu made Kyōto ni imashō* (C): I shall probably remain in Kyōto until September.

*Yokohama ni hai ga takusan imasu* (C): there are many flies in Yokohama.

*hōbō sagashimashita ga imasen* (C): I have looked everywhere but I can't find him.

*hoka no kuruma wa zutto ato ni imasu* (C): the other rikisha is a long way behind. (on account of its motion the rikisha is treated like a living being 165, 4).

2) *I-ru* after a gerund indicates a state or a continued action, (see 98, 99 and 60). The *i* is often dropped colloquially.

*shimbun wo yonde imasu* (C): he is reading the newspaper.

*netemasu* (C): he is sleeping.

*kite imasu* (C): he has come (and the action continues as he is still here). Compare *kimashita* he came: nothing is said about his being here now.

*ima Kōbe ni itte imasu* (C): he is at present in Kōbe.

*nan da ka ki ga isoide jitto shite irare-nai* (B): somehow I feel flurried and cannot remain quiet.

*ano hito wa sei'yō no shōsetsū wo takusan yonde iru* (B): that man has read a great number of foreign novels.

*koko de matte i nasai* (A): wait here.

*sukkari naoru made oki-nai de i nasai* (A): don't get up till you have completely recovered.

Note:—*iru* is a plain verb; the corresponding honorific verb, polite in the 2nd person, is *irassharu*, *o-ide nasaru*, *o-ide ni naru*, and *o-ide de gozaru*. The imperative of *iru* is gen. taken from one of the honorific forms.

Comp.: *i-awaseru*; *i-ma*; q.v.

**iru**<sup>2</sup>, v.i. [cogn. w. *ire'ru* v.t.]. To enter.

Comp.: *de-iri*; *iri-guchi*; *hairu*; q.v.

**iru**<sup>3</sup>. To need.

*kore wa mada o iri ni narimasu ka?* (D): do you still require this?

*kore wa irimasen* (C): I don't need this.

*hima ga iru*: to take time.

*te ga iru*: to be in need of help.

Comp.: *iri-yō*, q.v.



**isha.** Doctor; physician.

*o isha wo mukae-ru* : to send for a doctor.  
*hyaku-nin korosa-nakereba ii isha ni nare-nai* : you can't become a good doctor until you have killed a hundred men : practice makes perfect.

Comp.

*ha-isha* : a dentist.  
*me-isha* : an oculist.

**ishī.** A stone.

*ishi wo nage-ru* : to throw stones.

**isogashii**, [*isogu* to hurry]. Busy; urgent.  
*ima wa taihen isogashii* (B) : I am very busy now.

*o isogashiku arimasen ka?* (C) : are you engaged?

*o isogashii tokoro wo o jama itashimashita* (D) : excuse me for having interrupted you when you were so busy.

*isogashii shigoto ga dekita* (B) : a pressing business has turned up.

**isogi**, [stem of *isogu* to hurry]. Haste; hurry.

*watashi wa ō-isogi desū* (C) : I am in a great hurry.

*isogi no shigoto* : pressing business.

**isogu.** To hasten; hurry.

*isoga-nakereba osoku narimasū* (C) : make haste or you will be late.

*betsū ni isogimasen* (C) : there is no particular hurry.

*isoide* : in a hurry; quickly.

*isoide iku* : to go quickly.

*isogeba koto wo shi-sokonau* : if you hurry too much you will spoil it.

*o isogi nasai* (C) : hurry up.

Der.: *isogashii*; *isogi*; q.v.

**issaku-**, [*itsi* one; *saku* preceding]. One before the preceding one; the one before last : (used only in comp.).

*issakuban* : the night before last.

*iesakujitsu* : the day before yesterday.

*issakunen* : the year before last.

**issho**, (gen. used as an adv., occasionally otherwise).

1) Adv.: *issho ni* : together with.

*go issho ni ikimashō* (C) : I will accompany you; let us go together.

*issho ni suru* : to put together.

2) Otherwise.

*go issho desū ka?* (C) : am I to go together with you?

*issho no kisha de kimashita* (C) : he came in the same train as I did.

**isshōkemmei**. With all one's might and main; with concentrated attention.

*isshōkemmei (ni) shite imasū* (C) : I am doing my very best.

*isshōkemmei matte iru* : to wait eagerly.

**isu.** Chair.

Comp.: *aku-isu* : an empty chair, [see *aku*].

**ita.** A board.

Comp.

*ita-gami* : pasteboard.

*ita-basami* : between the devil and the deep sea, [*hasamu* to squeeze].

**itadaku.** *Itadaku* is a humble verb, used politely in the 1st person.

1) To receive; to eat or drink something received from another.

*sensei ni itadaita no desū* (C) : my teacher gave it to me; (lit. I received it from my teacher).

*itadaita no mo onaji desū* (C) : I am as grateful as if you had given it to me.

*itadakimasū* (C) : thanks, I will take some; (said when offered food).

*itadakimasen* (C) : no thank you, I won't take any; (said when offered food).

2) *Itadaku* after a gerund shows that the action is performed in favour of the 1st person, in answer to his request : see 108.

*kaite itadakimashita* (D) : he kindly wrote it for me.

*watakushi ga ikemasen kara Itō San ni itte itadakimashita* (D) : as I was unable to go I got Mr Itō to go for me.

*me wo mite itadakitō gozaimasū* (D) : I would like you to examine my eyes.

*sore wo oshiete itadakitai no desū* (C) : I wish you would explain that to me.

3) *Itadakimashō* whether after a gerund or not, often means to ask, request.

*asūko no uchi de mizu wo sūkoshi itadaki mashō* (D) : I will ask for some water at that house.

*sensei ni yonde itadakimashō* (D) : I will ask my teacher to read it for me.

Note :—the plain verbs corresponding to *itadaku* are : *morau* to receive; *taberu* to eat; *nomu* to drink; see these words.

**itai**, [*itamu* to hurt]. Painful.

*mimi ga itai* (B) : I have an ear-ache.

*itai, itai!* (B) : it hurts; I am in pain.

*itai tokoro* : a painful place.

*itaku suru* : to hurt oneself.

**itami**, [stem of *itamu* to hurt]. Pain.

*itami ga tomatta* (B) : the pain has left me.

*mune no itami* : (lit.) a pain in the breast; (fig.) a deep grief.

*kokoro no itami* : a deep grief.

**itamu**, v.i. To hurt; pain; get injured.

*doko ga itamimasū ka?* (C) : where is the pain?

*sonna koto wo sureba itamimasū* (C) : if you do that you will injure it.

*itande iru* : to be injured.

*doko ga itande iru no desū ka?* (C) : show me where the damage is.

Comp.: *itai*; *itami*; q.v.

**itasū.** To do.

*dō itashimashite* (C) : don't mention it; not at all; you are welcome.

*tsui shitsûrei itashimashita* (D) : excuse me, I didn't do it on purpose.

Note:—*itsû* is a humble verb used politely in the 1st person; the plain verb is *suru* q.v.

**itazura.** Mischief.

*itazura na* : mischievous ; naughty.

**ito.** Thread ; string.

*hari ni ito wa tôsû* : to thread a needle.

*ito no yô na koe de imashita* (C) : she spoke in an almost inaudible voice.

Comp.

*momen-ito* : cotton thread, [*momen* cotton].

*kinu-ito* : silk thread, [*kinu* silk].

**itoko.** Cousin.

**itoma,** see *o-itoma*.

**itsûl.**

1) *Itsû* : at what time.

*itsû dekimasu ka* ? (C) : when will it be ready ?

*itsû da ka yoku oboemasen* (C) : I don't quite recollect when it was.

*itsû kuru ka mo shire-nai* (B) : he may come at any moment.

*gejo wa itsû no ma ni ka sôto dete ikimashita* (C) : the maid went out quietly no one knows when.

2) *Itsû kara* : from what time.

*itsû kara Nippon ni irasshaimasu ka* ? (D) : how long have you been in Japan ?

*gakkô wa itsû kara hajimarimasu ka* ? (C) : when does your school begin ?

3) *Itsû ka* : some time or other.

*itsû ka atta koto ga arimasu* (C) : I have seen him once before.

*itsû ka kaette shimaimashita* (C) : he went back I don't know when.

*itsû ka raigetsu no uchi ni* : some day next month.

4) *Itsû mo* : always ; usual.

*itsû mo to onaji* : the same as usual.

*itsû mo no tôri ni* : in the usual way.

*itsû mo no yôfuku de ii* (B) : your ordinary clothes will do.

*itsû mo yori hayaku* : quicker than usual.

*itsû mo ki no ue ni kakete oku* (B) : I always leave it hanging on a tree.

*itsû mo nara* : judging by the usual way things happen.

5) *Itsû*, gerund, *mo* : however often.

*itsû itte mo imasen* (C) : whenever I go he is out.

*ano shibai wa itsû mite mo omôshiroi no desu* (C) : however often I see that play I always find it amusing.

6) *Itsû de mo* : always ; whenever.

*itsû de mo shichi-ji ni okimasu* (C) : I always rise at seven.

*kongetsu nara itsû de mo ii* (B) : any time this month will do.

*watashi ga iku toki wa itsû de mo rusu desu* (C) : whenever I go he is out.

*isogashiku nakereba itsû de mo o-ide nasai* (C) : if you are not busy come and see me frequently.

7) *Itsû made ni* : by what time. *Itsû made mo* : always ; never.

*itsû made irassharu o tsumori desu ka* ? (C) : how long do you intend to stay here ?

*itsû made ni dekimasu ka* ? (C) : when will it be ready ?

*itsû made mo Nihon ni iru tsumori desu* (C) : I intend to settle in Japan for good.

*soko de wa itsû made mo atsuku narimasen* (C) : (if you put it) in that place, it will never get hot.

*uchi no jochû wa itsû made mo inaka-kûsai* (B) : my servant's countrified manners and appearance are still just as bad as ever.

Comp.: *itsû-goro*, q.v.

**itsû2**, [*itsutsû* five]. Five (in the 3rd set of num.; see 271 ; 275).

**itsû-goro**, [*itsûl* when ; *koro* about]. About what time.

*itsû-goro uchi ni iru deshô ka* ? (C) : about what time will he be in ?

**itsûka**, [*itsutsû* five ; -*ka* q.v.]. Five days ; fifth day of the month.

See also *itsûl*, 3.

**itsutsû.** Five.

In comp. *itsutsû* is abb. to *itsû* ; see 276, 4. Der.: *itsûka*, q.v.

**ittai.**

1) Properly speaking ; really.

*ittai dô shite sô natta no desu* ? (C) : how did that really happen ?

2) On the whole.

*ittai ni karada ga chiisai* (B) : they have generally small bodies.

3) Exclamation of wonder.

*ittai dô iu imi da* ? (A) : what in the world do you mean ?

*ittai doko ni ima made kakurete ita no da* ? (A) : where on earth have you been hiding all this time ?

*ittai dotchi no hō ni itta no darō* (B) : I wonder in which direction he has gone.

**it-tō**, [*ichi* one ; *tō2* class]. First class.

*Kyōto no it-tō ichi-mai* : one first-class ticket for Kyōto.

*kore wa it-tō no shina-mono de gozaimasu* (D) : this is a first-class article.

*kore ga ittō kirei da* (B) : this one is the prettiest.

**iu**, (pronounced *yū*).

1) To say ; speak ; tell ; call.

*Ei-go de itte kudasai* (C) : please say it in English.

*dō imashita ka* ? (C) : what did you say then ?

*naze kite imasen deshita ka* ? (C) : why didn't you come and tell me ?



—*sō itte hanashite o kure* (A): say this:—  
*dare de mo sō imasu* (C): everybody says so.

*iu made mo nai koto da* (B): it goes without saying.

*iware-nai de mo suru hazu da* (A): you should do these things without having to be told.

*ima hanashita koto wo O Ei San ni itte ku-dasai* (B): please tell Miss Ei what I have just told you.

*kuruma-ya ni kuru yō ni itte o kure* (A): tell my rikisha-man to come.

*sore wo suru yō ni dare ga imashita ka?* (C): who told you to do this?

*sonna koto wo itta oboe wa nai* (B): I don't remember having said so.

*itta no wa watashi de wa arimasen* (C): it was not I who said it.

*ima itta tōri*: as I have just said.

*anata no iu tōri ni shimashō* (C): I will do as you say.

2) *Iu koto*: something which is or has been said; commands.

*anata no iu koto ga yoku wakarimasen* (C): I don't quite understand what you mean.

*naze anata wa sonna ni iu koto wo kika-nai no desū ka?* (B): why are you so disobedient?

*anata ni iu koto ga aru* (B): there is something I want to say to you.

3) *Iu* is used in Japanese in cases in which if rendered literally into English it would look as if we doubted somebody's word.

*o kō-san wa?—zutsū ga suru to itte nete imasu* (C): where is your mother?—she is in bed with a headache.

*ikura isogashii to itte mo hagaki de henji gurai yokoshitara ii deshō* (C): no matter how busy you were, you might at least have sent me a postcard in reply.

4) Phrases.

*sō ieba sō da* (B): from your point of view you are right no doubt.

*uso wo iu*: to tell lies.

*itte yaru*: to send word.

—*no koto wo iu*: to speak of—

*Yamada San no koto wo waruku iu*: to speak ill of Mr Yamada.

5) *To iu* see to2, 1, 4-7.

*to ka iu* see to2, 1, 16.

*ā iu*; *dō iu*; *kō iu*; *sō iu*; see *ā*; *dō*; *kō*; *sō*.

Note:—The potential of *iu* is *ieru*. *Iu* is a plain verb: the corresponding humble verbs, polite for the 1st person, are *mōsū* and *mōshi-ageru*; the honorific verb, polite for the 2nd person, is *ossharu*. Comp.: *ii-dasū*; *ii-sugiru*; *ii-tsūkeru*; *ii-wake*; q.v.

iu2, (pron. *yū*). To dress (as the hair); do up. *kami* (or *atama*) *wo iu*: to do up the hair.

*iwae-ru*; *iwaku*. To bind; tie up.

*iwau*. To celebrate; congratulate.

Der.: *iwai*: celebration.

*iya* (na), [*ie*, no].

1) Disagreeable; disgusting.

*iya na o tenki da* (B): it is disagreeable weather.

*iya na mono wo muri ni to wa iwa-nai* (B): I don't want to force you to do anything against your will.

*iya da, o yoshi nasai* (B, fem.): I don't like it, leave off.

*iya de mo yara-nakereba nara-nai* (B): even if you don't like it, you must do it.

2) *Iya* is used as a corruption of *ie* in the sense of 'no'.

Der.: *iyagaru*: to dislike, [see *-garu*].

ja. Contr. of *de wa*; see *de*, 3.

jama. Obstruction; hindrance.

*kore wa jama desū ka?* (C): is this in your way?

*jama wo suru*: to inconvenience another; obstruct another.

*jama wo shi-nai de o kure* (A): don't bother me.

*shigoto no jama wo suru*: to interrupt another's work.

*hito no jama wo shite wa ike-nai* (A): don't get in people's way.

*jama ni naru*: to be in the way.

*o jama shimashita* (C): excuse me for having troubled you.

*o isogashii tokoro wo o jama itashimashita* (D): excuse me for having interrupted you when you were so busy.

*o jama ni agarimashita* (D): I have come to pay you a visit.

*ano musume ga watashi wo jama ni shite imasu* (C): that girl considers that I'm in her way.

ji1. Letter; character; word.

*ji wo hiku*: to look for a word (in a dictionary).

Comp.: *jibiki*; *Rōma-ji*; q.v.

ji2. Hour.

*nan-ji* (or *iku-ji*) *desū ka?* (C): what time is it?

*ichi-ji han*: half past one.

*yo-ji utta bakkari desū* (C): it has just struck four.

Note:—*ji* is preceded by the 1st set of num. (276, 1); see also 298 et seqq. *Yo-ji*, four o'clock, is always used instead of *shi-ji*.

Comp.: *jikan* q.v.

ji3, [*chi*2]. Ground.

Comp.: *jimen*; *jishin*; q.v.

ji4. Affair; thing; (used only in comp.).

Comp.: *buji*; *daiji*; *jijitsu*; *kaji*; *shokuji*; *yō-ji*; q.v.

jibiki, [*ji*1 word; *hiku* to extract]. A dictionary.

**jibun**<sup>1</sup>, [jɪ2 hour; bun part]. Time.

*mō kaeri-sō na jibun desū* (C) : it is time he came back

*watashi wa kodomo no jibun Kyōto ni imashita* (C) : I lived in Kyōto when I was a child.

*ima jibun nani shi ni kita?* (A) : what have you come for now?

*ima jibun yuki ga furu to wa mezurashii koto da* (B) : it is a rare thing for it to snow at this time of the year.

*kita no wa san-ji jibun deshita* (C) : it was about three o'clock when I arrived.

**jibun**<sup>2</sup>. Self; oneself.

*jibun de tsūkai no desū* (C) : it is for my own personal use.

*jibun de o iki nasai* (B) : go yourself.

*jibun de hige wo surimasū* (C) : he shaves himself.

*ano hito wa jibun de ko-nakereba ikemasen* (C) : he must come in person.

*anata ga go jibun de nasaimashita ka?* (D) : did you do it yourself?

*jibun no koto wo iu* : to speak about oneself.

*jibun no ni irimasū* (C) : I need it myself.

*jibun no atama no hai wo o oi nasai* (A) : frighten the flies off your own head; mind your own business.

*ano hito wa jibun no koto wo tana ni agete, hito no koto wo iu* (B) : he is fond of finding fault with others but he forgets his own failings.

Comp.: *jibun-gatte*, q.v.

**jibun-gatte**, [*jibun*<sup>2</sup> self; *katte* convenience].

Consulting one's own convenience; selfishness.

*jibun-gatte wo shiyō to suru* : to try to get one's own way.

*jibun-gatte na yatsū desū* (C) : he is a very selfish fellow.

**jigi**, see *o-jigi*.

**jii-san**, [*chichi*<sup>2</sup> father; *san*<sup>1</sup> Mr.].

1) Old man; (the honorific *o* is often prefixed).

2) Grandfather; (the honorific *o* is almost always prefixed).

**jijitsū**, [*ji*<sup>4</sup> affair; *jitsu* fact]. Fact.

*jijitsū da* (B) : it is a matter of fact.

*jijitsū atta koto ka mo shire-nai* (B) : as a matter of fact it may have happened.

*sonna koto wa jijitsū aru hazu ga nai* (B) : such a thing is, as a matter of fact, impossible.

**jikan**, [*ji*<sup>2</sup> hour; *kan*<sup>2</sup> interval]. An hour; time.

*june nara iku-jikan* (or *nani-jikan*) *kakarimasū ka?* (C) : how many hours does it take if you go by steamer?

*san-jikan* : three hours.

*jikan ga gozaimasen* (D) : there is no time.

*mō jiki jikan desū* (C) : it will soon be time.

*jikan ni narimashita* (C) : it is time now.

*jikan ni tsukimasū ka?* (C) : shall we arrive on time?

*sūkoshi jikan ga hayakatta* (B) : it was a little too early.

*jikan wo muda ni suru* : to idle away time.

*jikan de gatus* : to hire by the hour.

*jikan ni okure-ru* : to be late.

*jikan wo mamoru* : to be punctual.

Note:—*jikan* is preceded by the first set of num. (276, 1). You say *yo-jikan* instead of *shi-jikan* four hours.

**jika** (ni), [corr. of *jiki* immediately]. Without intermediary; directly; personally.

*anata kara jika ni hanashite kudasai* (C) : please speak to him you yourself.

**jiki**. Immediately; soon; directly.

*jiki* (ni) *dekimasū* (C) : it will be ready immediately.

*jiki* (ni) *kaerimasū* (C) : I will be back soon.

*jiki chikai* : quite near.

*gakkō no jiki soba* : just by the school.

*jiki soba no gakkō* : the school in the immediate neighbourhood.

*jiki roku-ji ni narimasū* (C) : it is close upon six o'clock.

Der.: *jika ni*, q.v.

**jikō**. Season; climate; weather.

*yoi jikō ni narimashita* (C) : the weather has turned out fine.

**jiku**. Stalk; stem; axis.

Comp.: *pen-jiku* : a penholder.

**jikusu**(ru). To become ripe.

*jikushite iru* : to be ripe.

*jikushita kudamono* : ripe fruit.

**jiman**. Self-praise.

*jiman* (wo) *suru* : to be proud of; boast.

*sonna koto wo shita gurai de wa jiman ni mo nara-nai darō* (B) : there is nothing to boast of in doing such a thing.

**jimen**, [*ji*<sup>3</sup> ground]. Ground; lot of ground; land.

**jimi** (na). Plain; not gay or ornamented.

*jimi ni kurasū* : to live simply (without ostentation).

**jīn**, (used only in composition). Man; person.

Comp.

*Amerika-jin*; *Eikoku-jin*; etc.: see *Amerika*; *Ei*; etc.

*bijin*; *fujin*; *onjin*; *shujin*; q.v.

**jirettai**. Provoking; irritating; you fidget me.

**jishin**, [*ji*<sup>3</sup> earth]. Earthquake.

**jitsū**. A fact.

*jitsū wa* : as a matter of fact.

*anata wa jitsu ga nai* (B) : you are unkind.

*jitsu no oya* : one's real parents.

*kyō wa jitsu ni attakai* (B) : it is very warm today.

Comp.: *jijitsū*, q.v.



jitsu<sup>2</sup>, (used only in composition). Day.

Comp.: *sakujitsu*; *senjitsu*; q.v.

jitto. Firmly; fixedly.

jitto *shite irasshai* (B): please be still.

jitto *mi-ru*: to look fixedly.

jiyū. Freedom; liberty.

jiyū *ga kika-nai* (B): I am not at liberty (to do so).

jiyū *na*: free.

itte *mo ika-nakūte mo jiyū da* (B): I am free to go or not.

jiyū *ni shite mo ii* (B): do as you like.

jiyū *ni sasete o oki nasai* (B): let him do as he likes.

go *jiyū ni* (C): make yourself at home.

ano *hito wa jiyū ni Ei-go wo hanashimasū* (C): he speaks English fluently.

naka-naka *jiyū ni nara-nai* (B): I cannot manage him at all.

Der.: *fu-jiyū na*, (often pron. *fujū na*): not free, [*fu-* neg. pref.].

jo, (used only in composition). Woman.

Comp.: *gejo*; *jochū*; q.v.

jō<sup>1</sup>. Lock.

jō *wo kake-ru*; jō *wo orosu*: to lock.

jō *wo ake-ru*: to unlock.

jō<sup>2</sup>. Upper side; above; best.

jō *no shina*: a superfine article.

jō *no jō de wa arimasen keredomo ii shina-mono de gozaimasū* (D): although it is not of the very best quality nevertheless it is a good article; (compare: *crème de la crème*).

Comp.: *ijō*; *jōhin*; *jōtō*; *jōzu*; q.v.

jō<sup>3</sup>, (used only in composition). Letter.

Comp.

annai-jō: letter of introduction; written invitation; [*annai* guide].

jō-bukuro: envelope, [*fukuro* bag].

jōbu (na). Strong; solid; robust; healthy.

jōbu *de nai*: not strong; weak.

mada *jōbu ni narimasen* (C): I am still weak.

go *jōbu de gozaimasū ka?* (D): are you well?

jōbu *ni koshiraete kudasai* (C): make it strong please.

Comp.: *daijōbu*, q.v.

jochū, [*jo* woman; *chū* middle]. Maid-servant.

jōdan. Fun; joke; jest.

hon *no jōdan*: nothing but a joke.

jōdan (*suru na*) *wa o yoshi nasai* (B): don't play jokes.

jōdan *ni imashita* (C): I said it in fun.

jōdan *deshō* (C): you are joking surely.

jōdan *da to omotta* (B): I took it for a joke.

jōdan *hambun ni kuite mimashita* (C): I asked him half in fun.

jōhin (na), [*jō* best; *hin* quality]. Refined; high-class.

jōhin *na mono no ii-kata*: a refined way of speaking.

jōki. Steam.

Comp.: *jōkisen*: steamer, [*sen*<sup>4</sup> ship].

jō-san, see *o-jō-san*.

jōtō (no or na), [*jō* best; *tō* class]. First-class; best quality.

ichiban *jōtō*: the very best.

jōzu (na). A good hand at; good at; skilful. ano *hito wa nan de mo jōzu desū* (C): he is good at everything.

ano *hito wa Ei-go ga jōzu da* (B): he speaks English very well.

Kōmoto *San wa dō shite mo jōzu da* (B): there is no denying Mr Kōmoto is very clever.

jōzu *no te kara mizu ga moru*: even the wisest make mistakes; even Homer sometimes nods; (*lit.* even from the hand of the expert water leaks).

jōzu *wo tsūkau*: to flatter.

jū. Ten.

jū-nen *hito-mukashi*: ten years is a long lapse of time (and brings about many changes).

jū-nin *to-iro*; *jū-nin to-hara*: ten men, ten opinions.

Note:—*jū* in comp. before *ch*, *t* or *ts*, becomes *jūt*—; before *f* or *h*, *jīp*—; before *k*, *jik*—; before *s* or *sh*, *jis*—. One often hears: *yon-jū* for *shi-jū*, forty; *nana-jū* for *shichi-jū*, seventy; and *kyū-jū* for *ku-jū*, ninety.

—jū, [*chū* (q.v.) middle]. The whole; all; entire; also used to form the superlative.

ichi-nichi-jū: all day long.

nen-jū: all the year round.

kongetsū-jū: the whole of this month.

sekai-jū: the whole world.

karada-jū: the whole body.

seito-jū *de* (*kore ga*) *ichiban rikō desū* (C): this is the cleverest of all the students.

Kyōto-jū *de no isha desū* (C): he is the cleverest doctor in Kyōto.

Kyōto-jū *no isha*: every doctor in Kyōto.

jūbun, [*jū* ten; *bun* parts: the Japanese think in tens; *jūbun* therefore means ten parts in ten, i.e. 100 per cent: compare 308].

Enough; sufficient: full.

jūbun *na kane*: enough money.

kore *de jūbun desū* (C): this is enough.

jūbun (*ni*) *Ueda San wo shiniyō shitemasū* (C): I have full confidence in Mr Ueda.

mada *jūbun (ni) yoku arimasen* (C): I am not quite well yet.

jū-gatsū, [*jū* ten; *gatsū* month]. October.

jū-ichi-gatsū, [*jū-ichi* eleven; *gatsū* month]. November.

jun. Proper order or sequence.

jun *ga chigaimasū* (C): they are out of order. hon *wo jun ni narabete kudasai* (C): please arrange the books in order.

sei *no jun ni narande kudasai* (C): please arrange yourselves according to height.

Comp.: *junjo*; *jun-jun ni*; q.v.

jū-ni-gatsu, [jū-ni twelve; gatsu month].  
December.

junjo, [jun proper order]. Proper order or sequence.

Note:—*junjo* is not used as an adv.

jun-jun ni, [jun proper order]. One after the other in proper order.

jūnsa. A policeman.

ka<sup>1</sup>. Mosquito.

Comp.: *ka-ya*: mosquito net, [*ya* house].

ka<sup>2</sup>. Abb. of *kare* that person.

*dare mo ka mo*: everybody (see *dare*).

*nani mo ka mo*: everything (see *nani*).

*nani ya ka ya yō-ji ga arimasu* (C): I am very busy what with one thing and another.

ka<sup>3</sup>.

1) Interrogative: if the sentence contains another interrogative word *ka* is generally omitted.

*arimasu ka?* (C): is there any?

*watakushi ka?* (B): is it I?

*dare ga kita (ka)?* (B): who came?

*attakai ja arimasen ka?* (C): it's warm, isn't it?

2) The interrogation is sometimes merely rhetorical or ironical: this is especially the case in the phrases *mono desu ka*, *mono ka*, *aru mono ka?* (A): *aru mon' desu ka?* (B): who in his senses would ever believe that such a thing exists?

*harau mon' desu ka?* (B): pay? how can you say such an absurd thing?

3) Doubt or uncertainty.

*aru ka to omou* (B): I think there may be some.

*mata yuki ga furu ka to omoimasu* (C): I think it may snow again.

*ano hito ga tatta ka tata-nai ni watakushi wa tsukimashita* (C): he had scarcely left when I arrived. (In this case the interval between his departure and my arrival is so short, that I pretend there is doubt as to whether he had left or not when I arrived).

Uncertainty is also found in such combinations as *to ka*, *dare ka*, *dō ka*, *dochi ka*, *itsu ka*, *nani ka*, etc.: see *to*, *dare*, *dō*, *dochi*, *itsu*, *nani*, etc.

4) *Ka shira*, *ka shiran* or *ka mo shire-nai* frequently heard at the end of a sentence also expresses doubt: *ka mo shire-nai* is never used after the future, (166, 2, a, c). These expressions are often preceded by *no*.

*ame ga furu ka shira* (B): I wonder whether it will rain.

*ikō ka shiran* (B): I think I'll go.

*ame ga furu ka mo shire-nai* (B): I dare say it will rain.

*nani ka ata no ka mo shire-nai* (B): I am afraid something has happened.

*inu (da) ka mo shire-nai* (B): I believe it is a dog.

5) *Ka* or *ka-ka* in parallel clauses means: or; whether—or; either—or.

*ano hito wa Kamakura ka Enoshima e iku deshō* (C): he will go either to Kamakura or to Enoshima.

*ikimasu ka, ikimasen ka?* (B): will you go or not?

*ano hito wa kuru ka ko-nai ka shirimasen* (C): I don't know whether he will come or not.

*anata ka watakushi ka ika-nakereba nari-masen* (C): either you or I must go.

*dekiru ka dō ka wakarimasen* (C): I don't know whether it is feasible or not.

Note:—*kae* or *kai* is sometimes used familiarly for *ka* in real interrogations.

ka<sup>4</sup>. A. n.

1) Months and years.

*ik-ka-getsū*; *ni-ka-getsū*; etc.: one month: two months; etc.

*nan-ka-getsū?* how many months?

*ni-ka-nen*: two years.

2) Used for various things that have no special a.n. as bundles, parcels, etc.

Note:—1 *ik-ka*; 6 *roh-ka*; 8 *hak-ka*; 10 *jik-ka*; 100 *hyak-ka*.

—*ka* (used only in composition). Day.

*futsuka*; *mikka*; etc.: two days; three days; etc.: second day; third day; etc.: see 294; 295.

*ikka?* how many days? on what day of the month?

kaban. A travelling bag; portmanteau; trunk.

kabe. Wall.

*kabe ni mimi ga aru*: walls have ears.

Comp.: *kabe-tsuchi*: plaster, [*tsuchi* earth].

kabi, [stem of foll.]. Mould; mildew.

*natsu wa mono ni kabi ga haeru* (B): in summer things become mouldy.

kabi-ru. To become mouldy. (Compare: *sabi-ru* to become rusty).

Der.: *kabi*: mould.

kaburu. To put or wear on the head.

*bōshi wo kaburu*: to put on a hat.

Comp.: *nekotkaburi*, q.v.

kado. Corner (from the outside).

*kado wo magatte ni-kem-me*: the second house after turning the corner.

*kado no toreta hito*: a person with all his sharp angles taken off; a person easy to get on with.

*sonna koto wo iu to kado ga tatsū* (B): that would sound harsh.

*me ni kado wo tatete shikaru*: to scold with angry eyes.

kac. Familiar substitute for *ka* in real interrogations; see *kai*<sup>3</sup>.

kaeri, [stem of foll.]. The return.



*kaeri wa nan-ji desū ka?* (C): at what o'clock will you return?

*kaeri ni shinbun wo katte kudasai* (B): please buy a newspaper on your way back.

See also foll.

**kaeru**<sup>1</sup>, v.i. [cogn. w. *kaesū* v.t.]. To return; go or come back.

*kaette kuru*: to come back.

*kaette iku*: to go back.

*uchi e kaerimasū* (C): I am going back home.

*ku-ji ni kaerimasū* (C): I shall be back by nine.

*te wo hanasū to moto no basho e kaeru* (B): if you let it go, it goes back to its former position.

*o kaeri nasai* (C): welcome back home; go back home.

*mō o kaeri ni narimasū ka?* (D): are you already going back?

Der. and comp.

*kaeri*; *kaette*; *hikkuri-kaeru*; q.v.

*kaeri-gake*, see *-gake*.

**kaeru**<sup>2</sup>, v.t. [cogn. w. *kawaru* v.i.]. To change; alter.

*kane wo kaeru*: to change money.

*te wo kaeru*: to try another means of doing.

Comp.

*ire-kaeru* (q.v.): to replace, [*ire-ru* to put into].

*ki-kaeru*: to change one's clothes, [*ki-ru* to put on clothes].

*nori-kaeru* (q.v.): to change carriages, [*noru* to ride].

*tori-kaeru*: to exchange, [*toru* to take].

**kaeru**<sup>3</sup>, [potential of *kaeru*<sup>1</sup> to buy].

**kaesū**, v.t. [cogn. w. *kaeru*<sup>1</sup> v.i.]. To send or give back; overturn; hatch.

*on wo kaesū*: to repay a kindness.

*tamago wo kaesū*: to hatch eggs.

Comp.

*yobi-kaesū*: to call back, [*yobu* to call].

*hikkuri-kaesū*: to overturn.

*ura-gaesū*: to turn inside out, [*ura* the in side surface].

**kaette**, [gerund of *kaeru*<sup>1</sup> to return]. On the contrary; rather.

*kaette waruku shite shimatta* (B): we have, on the contrary, made it worse.

*noru yori aruku hō ga kaette ii* (B): I would rather walk than ride.

*kūsuri wo nondara kaette waruku narimashita* (C): I took the medicine but I got worse.

**kagami**, [kage reflection; *mi-ru* to look].

Looking-glass; mirror.

*kagami ni utsuru*: to be reflected in a mirror.

*kagami wo mi-ru*: to look at oneself in a looking-glass.

**kage**. Reflection; shade; shadow; shelter; behind; the other side.

*mizu ni Fuji-san no kage ga utsutte imasu* (C): Mount Fuji is reflected in the water.

*ki no kage ni natte hakkiri mie-nakatta* (B): I could not see it clearly as it was partly hidden by a tree.

*anō yama no kage ni wa fūkai tani ga aru* (B): there is a deep ravine on the other side of that mountain.

*kono-goro kage mo katachi mo miemasen* (C): one sees nothing of him now-a-days.

*kage de waru kuchi wo iu*: to speak ill of a person behind his back.

*kage wo kakusū*: to conceal oneself.

*kage ni naru*: to get in one's light.

*o-kage sama de*: by your kind influence, (see *o-kage*).

Comp.

*kage-guchi*: backbiting, [*kuchi* mouth].

*kage-guchi wo iu*: to backbite.

**kagen**. State or degree of anything; state of one's health.

*o yu no kagen wa ikaga desū ka?* (C): how is the bath? (is it too hot?).

*chōdo ii kagen na jikō da* (B): this is the nicest season of the year; the weather is just right.

*kagen ga warui* (B): I don't feel well.

*kagen (wo) suru*: to regulate (so as to suit one's purpose).

*netsū ga demashita kara kūsuri wo kagen shite kudasai* (C): please modify the medicine as I am feverish.

*ii kagen ni shite o oki nasai* (B): do things with moderation.

*ii kagen na hanashi*: a made-up story.

*dō iu kagen deshō?* (C): I wonder what the reason is.

Comp.: *shio-kagen*: the degree of saltiness; flavouring; [*shio* salt].

**kagi**. Key.

*kagi wo kakeru*: to lock.

*kore wa kagi no kakaru tokoro e shimatte oite kudasai* (C): please put this under lock and key.

*kagi no ana*: key-hole.

**kago**. Basket; cage.

**kagu**, v.t. To smell.

**kai**<sup>1</sup>. Shell.

**kai**<sup>2</sup>, [ ? *kai*<sup>1</sup> shell: in olden times shells were used as money]. Benefit; advantage; use.

*kai ga aru*: to be worth while.

*kai ga nai*: not to be worth while.

*mattaku mi ni itta kai ga arimasū* (C): it was really worth while going to see.

*zuibun issōkōmei ni yatta ga sono kai ga nakatta* (B): we did our best but it was no use.

**kai**<sup>3</sup>. Familiar substitute for *ka*<sup>3</sup> in real interrogations.

*sō kai?* (B) : is that so ?

*hontō kai?* (B) : really ?

**kai**<sup>1</sup>. Floor ; storey (of a house).

*nī-kai* : first floor, i.e. the floor above the ground floor.

*san-gai* : second floor.

*jōchū wa nī-kai ni orimasu* (C) : the servant is upstairs.

**kaigan**. The sea-shore.

Comp.: *kaigan-dōri* : the bund, [tōri street].

**kai**, [ ? *kaku*<sup>2</sup> to scratch]. Itching.

*itaku mo kaiku mo nai* : to be utterly indifferent to.

*kai tokoro e te ga todoka-nai yō* : like wanting to scratch a place one cannot reach  
*kai tokoro e te ga todoku yō ni yoku ki ga tsūku hito desu* (C) : he is so attentive to one's wants that he leaves nothing to be desired.

**kai-mono**, [*kai*<sup>1</sup> to buy ; *mono* thing]. Things bought ; purchase.

*kai-mono ni iku* : to go shopping.

*takusan kai-mono wo itashimashita* (D) : I have made many purchases.

**kaisha**. A company (commercial).

**kaji**, [*ka* fire ; *jī*<sup>4</sup> thing]. A fire ; conflagration.

*ki wo tsūke-nai to kaji ni narimasu* (C) : if you are not careful you will set the house on fire.

*kaji wa furoba kara deta* (B) : the fire began in the bath-room.

**kakari**, [stem of foll.]. One's duty or charge in an occupation.

*sore wa dare no kakari desu ka?* (C) : whose duty is it to attend to this ?

*kore wa anata no kakari ni suru* (B) : I put you in charge of this.

*kakari no hito wa mō sagarimashita* (C) : the man in charge has already left (e.g. the office).

*jū-nin-gakari no shigoto* : a work requiring ten persons.

**kakaru**, v.i. [cogn. w. *kake-ru* v.t.]. Meanings vague and difficult to classify.

1) To hang ; be able to hang.

*sono mado ni wa kono mado-kake ga kakaru no desu* (C) : this curtain is to be hung over that window.

*ano kugi ni kakarimasen ka?* (C) : can't you hang it on that nail ?

2) To cover ; go over ; go across.

*kumo ga tsūki ni kakatte imasu* (C) : the moon is hidden by a cloud.

*ame ga kakuru to dame ni naru* (B) : that will be spoilt if it is caught in the rain.

*kondo asūko ni hashi ga kakarimasu* (C) : they are going to build a bridge there soon.

3) To take, cost, need, or require, as regards money, time or trouble.

*dono gurai kakarimasu ka?* (C) : how much will it cost ? how long will it take ?

*amari kane ga kakarimasu* (C) : it costs too much.

*ichi-nichi kakarimasu* (C) : it takes a whole day.

*dōmo nani wo suru ni mo nagaku kakaru*

(B) : how long he takes over everything !

*te ga kakaru* (B) : it requires much labour.

4) To begin.

*shigoto ni kakaru* : to begin a work.

5) Various.

*o me ni kakaru* : to meet ; (a humble verb, used politely in the 1st person).

*hajimete o me ni kakarimasu* (D) : this is the first time I have the honour of meeting you ; very pleased to make your acquaintance.

*mada o me ni kakatta koto wa arimasen* (C) : I have not had the honour of meeting him yet.

*ki ni kakaru* : to make one anxious.

*uno koto ga dōmo ki ni kakaru* (B) : that matter is worrying me a great deal.

*hito no te ni kakaru* : to be deceived by somebody.

*sonna te ni kakatte wa tamara-nai* (B) : it is dreadful to be caught by such a trick.

*hito-de* (i.e. *te*) *ni kakatte shinda* (B) : he met his death at another's hand.

*hito ni utte kakaru* : to attack somebody.

*hito ni kakaru* : to be dependent on another for support.

*isha ni kakaru* : to consult a doctor.

*byōki ni kakaru* : to be attacked by an illness.

*o rusu ni Yamada San kara denwa ga kakarimashita* (C) : while you were out Mr Yamada called you up on the telephone.

In comp. *kakaru* often shows that an action is about to commence or else that it is accidental.

*kare-kakaru* : to begin to wither.

*ki-kakaru* : to happen to come.

*tōri-kakaru* : to happen to pass.

*hikkakaru* : to get hooked, [*hiku* to pull].

*kakari* q.v. : duty.

**kake-dasu**, [*kake-ru*<sup>3</sup> to run ; *dasu* to take out]. To run out.

**kake-ru**, v.t. [cogn. w. *kakaru* v.i.]. Meanings vague and difficult to classify.

1) To hang.

*kugi ni kakete aru* (B) : it is hanging on the nail.

*watashi no mono wo asūko ni kakete o kure* (A) : hang my things up there.

2) To put on ; pour on ; sprinkle on.

*megane wo kake-ru* : to put on spectacles.

*mizu wo kake-ru* : to pour water (on something).

*sātō wo kake-ru* : to sprinkle sugar.

3) Various.

*o me ni kake-ru* : to show ; (a humble verb, used politely in the 1st person).



o me ni kakemashō ka? (D): shall I show it to you?

dōzo o kake kudasai (D): please take a seat.  
koshi (wo) kake'ru: to sit.

mekata wo kake'ru; hakari ni kake'ru: to weigh.

kagi wo kake'ru; jō wo kake'ru: to lock.

hashi wo kake'ru: to build a bridge.

hashigo wo kake'ru: to put up a ladder.

kotoba wo kake'ru: to speak to.

koe wo kake'ru: to call out.

oya ni kurō wo kake'ru: to give trouble to one's parents.

shimpai wo kake'ru: to cause worry.

ki ni kake'ru: to worry.

kokoro ni kake'ru: to bear in mind.

dempō wo kake'ru: to send a telegram.

denwa wo kake'ru: to speak by telephone.

hima wo kake'ru: to spend much time in making.

kane wo kake'ru: to spend money; bet.

kondo no uchi wa yohodo kane wo kaketa yō da (B): he seems to have spent a lot of money on his new house.

inochi ni kakete mo: even at the risk of my life.

kono byōki wa isha ni kakete mo naorimasen (C): this disease cannot be cured even if it be treated by a doctor.

haru kara natsū e kakete nete imashita (C): I was ill in bed from the spring all through the summer.

tsūkue ni kire wo kake'ru: to spread a cloth on the desk.

hito ni me wo kake'ru: to look in a friendly manner upon another.

hana ni kake'ru: to talk through the nose; to give oneself airs.

#### Comp.

mado-kake: a curtain, [mado window].

mae-kake: an apron, [mae before].

koshi-kake'ru: to sit, [koshi loins].

After the stem of a verb it often signifies the beginning of an action.

dekake'ru: to go out; start; [deru to go out].

hanashi-kake'ru: to address; accost; [hanasū to speak].

yomi-kake'ru: to begin to read, [yomu to read].

kake'ru<sup>2</sup>. To run.

Note:—one sometimes hears kakette instead of kakete for the gerund.

#### Comp.

kake-dasū: to run out, [dasū to take out].

oi-kake'ru; okkake'ru: to run after, [ou to pursue].

kake'ru<sup>3</sup>, v.i. [cogn. w. kakul v.t. to which it also serves as potential]. To write; be able to write.

kaki-tsūke'ru, [kakul to write; tsūke'ru to put down]. To write down; make a note of.

komakaku kaki-tsūkete o ōki nasai (B): write it down in detail.

#### Der.

kaki-tsūke: a document; bill.

kaki-tsūke ga nakereba kane wo watasarenai (B): I cannot hand you over the money without a written order.

#### kakkō.

1) Shape; form.

san-jū kakkō no hito da (B): he is a man who looks about thirty.

2) Moderate in price.

kakkō no nedan: a moderate price.

kakul<sup>1</sup>, v.t. [cogn. w. kakera<sup>3</sup> v.i. which also serves as potential]. To write; draw; paint.

#### Comp.

kaki-naosū: to re-write (so as to correct).

[naosū to put right].

kaki-sokonau: to make a mistake in writing, [sokonau to fail].

kaki-otosū: to omit (accidentally) in writing.

kaki-tome: writing down; registration; [tome'ru to stop].

tegami wo kaki-tome ni suru: to register a letter.

kaki-tome no tegami: a registered letter.

kaki-toru: to write from dictation, [toru to take].

kaki-tsūke'ru (q.v.): to write down, [tsūke'ru to put down].

kanjō-gaki: written account, [kanjō calculation].

tokoro-gaki: written address, [tokoro place].

oboe-gaki: memorandum, [oboe memory].

uwa-gaki: address written on an envelope, [ue exterior].

kaki-dashi: a bill, [dasū to take out].

e-kaki: a painter, [e picture].

hagaki q.v.

kaku<sup>2</sup>. To scratch; to rake away.

atama wo kaku: to scratch the head (as from shame or because it itches).

kaku<sup>3</sup>. Angle; corner.

san-kaku: a triangle.

shi-kaku: a square.

kakure'ru, v.i. [cogn. w. kakusū v.t.]. To hide oneself.

kakusū, v.t. [cogn. w. kakure'ru v.i.]. To hide; conceal.

watashi ni kakushite iru koto ga aru darō (B): there is something you are keeping concealed from me.

sugata (or kage, or mi) wo kakusū: to conceal oneself.

Der.: kakushi: a pocket.

kamau. To trouble oneself with; mind; care; matter; (gen. used in neg.).

(watakushi wa) kamaimasen (C): it doesn't matter (to me).

*watakushi wa dō de mo kamaimasen* (C): any way will do for me.

*sūkoshi gurai nara kamaimasen* (C): I don't mind if it is only a little.

*kamawa-nai de kudasai* (C): please don't trouble yourself about me.

*ano hito no koto wa mō kamawa-nai* (B): I shall no longer trouble myself about him.

*mado wo akete mo kamaimasen ka?* (C): do you mind if I open the window?

*kane ni kamawa-nai de*: regardless of money.

*kamawa-nai hō ga yokatta* (B): it might have been better not to pay any attention to it.

*sonna koto ni kamatte irare-nai* (B): I can't trouble about it.

*sonna koto ni kamawa-nai de ikimasu* (C): that shall not prevent me from going.

*kamau koto wa nai* (B): it isn't a thing that matters.

*watakushi no kamau koto de nai* (B): it is none of my business.

*abunakute mo kamau mono ka?* (B): who cares even if it is dangerous?

*kamawa-nai de kudasai* (C): please do not trouble; leave me alone please.

*o kamai mo itashimasen deshita* (C): excuse me for not having been attentive to you.

*dōzo o kamai naku* (C): don't let me disturb you; please do not trouble yourself.

**kamban.** A sign-board.

*kamban wo dasu*: to put up a sign-board; to open a shop.

**kami1.** Upper side; god (in which case you say *kami-sama*); the government (in which case you say *o-kami*); your wife (*o-kami-san* q.v.); head; hair of the head.

*hashi no kami*: above the bridge.

*kami wo iu*: to do up the hair.

Comp.

*kaminari*: thunder, [*kami1* god; *naru3* to make a noise].

*kamisori*; *kamisuri*: a razor, [*kami* hair; *soru*, *suru2* to shave].

**kami2.** Paper.

Comp.

*abura-kami*: oil-paper, [*abura* oil].

*maki-gami*: Japanese letter-paper, [*maku* to roll up; Japanese letter-paper is in rolls].

*sui-tori-gami*: blotting-paper, [*sui* to sip, (*sui* water, may serve as a mnemonic); *toru* to take].

**kaminari**, [*kami1* god; *naru3* to make a noise]. Thunder.

*kaminari ga naru*: the thunder rolls.

**kamisori**; **kamisuri**: [*kami1* hair; *soru*, *suru2* to shave]. A razor.

**kamu.** To bite.

Comp.

*kami-tsuku*: to bite (as an attack), [*tsuku1* to be in contact].

*kami-korosu*: to kill (by biting), [*korosu* to kill].

**kan1**, [it is probably a mere coincidence that the sound and meaning are almost the same as the English 'can'; compare the English 'typhoon' which comes from the Arabic with the Japanese *taifu*; the English 'bone' and the Japanese *hone* or in its *nigori* ed form *bone*; the French 'ouate' and German 'watte', 'cotton wool' and the Japanese *wata*; the Spanish 'tanto' 'so much' and the Japanese *tanto*; etc.]. A can; a tin.

Comp.: *kanzume*: tinned provisions, [*tsu-meru* to put in].

**kan2.** Interval of time or space.

*itsuka-kan*: during five days.

*Tōkyō Yokohama kan no michi*: the road between Tōkyō and Yokohama.

Comp.: *jikan*; *shūkan*; q.v.

**kanai.** Wife; (*kanai* is a humble word therefore) my wife.

**kana-mono**, [*kane* metal; *mono* thing]. An article made of metal.

**kanari.** Moderately; fairly; rather.

*kanari yoku dekita* (B): it is pretty well done.

*kanari ōzei*: a good many people.

**kanashii.** Sad; sorrowful.

**kane**, [*katai* hard; *nei* root: metals are dug out from the earth]. Metal; money; a bell.

*kane de koshiraeta mono*: a thing made of metal.

*kane ga kakaru*: to be expensive.

*kane ni naru shigoto da* (B): it is a work in which money can be made.

*kane ga mōkarimasu* (C): there is money in it.

*kane wo mōkeru*: to make money.

*kane wo son suru*: to lose money.

*kane ga nai* (B): I have no money.

*kane no mochi-awase ga arimasen* (C): I have no money about me.

*kane ni komaru*: to be hard up for money.

*kane wo tameru*: to save up money.

*kane wo tsugō suru*: to raise money.

*kane wo make-ru*: to spend money; bet.

*kane wo kakete ie wo tatemashita* (C): he built a house at a great cost.

*kane wo tsūkau*: to spend money.

*kane wo yu-mizu no yō ni tsūkau*: to spend money like water.

Comp.

*kane-ire*: a purse, [*ire-ru* to put into].

*kane-mochi*: a rich man, [*motsu* to own].

*kane-mochi na* (or *no*): rich.

*kana-mono*: an article made of metal, [*mono* thing].

*akagane*: copper, [*akai* red].

*bagane*: steel, [ ? *ha2* edge].

*harigane*: wire, [*hari* needle].



*megane* : spectacles, [*me eye*].  
**kangae**, [stem of *kangaeru* to think].  
 Thought ; idea ; opinion.  
*anata no kangae wa dō desū ?* (C) : what is your opinion ?  
*watakushi no kangae de wa* : in my opinion.  
*hito ni yotte kangae ga chigau* (B) : opinions differ.  
*betsu ni kangae wa arimasen* (C) : I have no opinion on the subject.  
*kore wa nan to mo kangae ga tsūka-nai* (B) : I cannot come to any conclusion in this matter.  
*raigetsū Amerika e iku kangae desū* (C) : I am thinking of going to America next month.  
**kangae-chigai**, [*kangaeru* to think ; *chigau* to be mistaken]. A misunderstanding.  
*sore wa anata no kangae-chigai desū* (C) : it is a misapprehension on your part.  
**kangaeru**. To think ; reflect.  
*yoku kangaete kudasai* (C) : please consider it well.  
*kangaete mimashō* (C) : I will think it over.  
*dōzo mō ichi-do kangaete kudasai* (C) : please reconsider the matter.  
*kangaeru made mo nai* : self-evident, (because it is so simple or because it is so absurd) ; utterly impossible.  
 Der. and comp.  
*kangae* q.v. : a thought.  
*kangae-chigai* q.v. : a misunderstanding, [*chigau* to be mistaken].  
*kangae-naosū* : to change one's mind, [*naosū* to mend].  
*kangae-tsūku* : to call to mind, [*tsūku* to be in contact].  
**kanjō**. Reckoning ; calculation ; account ; bill.  
*kanjō (wo) suru* : to calculate ; reckon ; make out an account ; pay an account.  
*kanjō wo shite kudasai* (C) ; go *kanjō wo negaimasu* (D) : please settle the account ; please make out your bill.  
*kanjō ga chigau* (B) : there is a mistake in the account.  
*kanjō ni machigai wa arimasen ka ?* (C) : have you not made a mistake in the account ?  
*kanjō wo shimeru* : to close an account.  
*kanjō wo toru* (or *morau*) : to collect a bill.  
*kanjō wo harau* (or *yaru*) : to pay a bill.  
*kore wo kanjō ni irete kudasai* (C) : put this down to my account.  
*kanjō wa ikura desū ka ?* (C) : what does it come to ?  
*kono kanjō ni minna haite imasu ka ?* (C) : does this bill include everything ?  
*kono kanjō wa mada sunde imasen* (C) : this account is still owing.  
*kirei ni kanjō wo suru* : to settle definitely an account.

Comp. : *kanjō-gaki* : a bill, [*kaku* to write].  
**kanshin**. Admiration.  
*kanshin suru* : to admire.  
*kanshin na* : praiseworthy.  
**kao**. Face ; features.  
*kowai kao wo suru* : to express anger in the face.  
*nigai kao wo suru* : to express displeasure in the face ; frown.  
*kao wo ukaku suru* ; *kao ga akaku naru* : to blush.  
*ōki na kao wo suru* : to look proudly.  
*shiran kao wo suru* : to pretend ignorance.  
*shira-nai kao bakari da* (B) : they are all strangers to me.  
*kokoro wa kao ni deru* (B) : his face betrays his feelings.  
*kore de kao ga sorotta* (B) : now we are all here.  
*dono kao sagete watashi no tokoro e kita no da ?* (A) : I don't know how you have the face to come here.  
*awaseru kao ga arimasen* (C) : I am too much ashamed to see him.  
*ano hito wa naka-naka kao ga urete iru* (B) : he is very widely known.  
 Comp.  
*kao-iro* : looks, [*iro* colour].  
*kao-iro ga o warui yō desū* (C) : you don't look well.  
*mono-shiri-gao* : a knowing look.  
**kara**.  
 1) After a noun (or its equivalent), *kara* gen. means from, since, after. The noun usually denotes a person, place or time.  
*kono hon wa chichi kara moraimashita* (C) : this book is a present from my father.  
*kuni kara kita tegami desū* (C) : it is a letter from home.  
*hajime kara* : from the beginning.  
*asa kara ban made* : from morning till night.  
*hiru kara* : afternoon.  
*nanatsu kara Tōkyō ni imasu* (C) : I have lived in Tōkyō since I was seven.  
*sakki kara* : since some time ago.  
*sore kara* : after that.  
 2) *Kara* after nouns is sometimes translated in other ways.  
*anata kara hanashite kudasai* (C) : please speak to him yourself.  
*ano hito kara yoroshiku* (B) : he sends you his kind regards.  
*hito kara kiita no desū* (C) : somebody told me.  
*yane kara ochita* (B) : he fell off the roof.  
*taiyō wa higashi kara deru* (B) : the sun rises in the east.  
*Shimbashi kara wakaremashita* (C) : I parted from him at Shimbashi.  
*hikidashi karu kagi wo o dashi nasai* (B) : take the key out of the drawer.  
*yakimochi kara* : out of jealousy.

*kono ana kara kaze ga kimasu* (C): a draught comes through this hole.

*ushiro kara kuru hito wa dare desu ka?* (C): who is that man walking behind us?

*nanatsu kara gakkō e agarimashita* (C): I entered school when I was seven.

*todana kara satō ga haitte iru tsubo wo motte o-ide* (A): bring me the sugar-jar which is in the cupboard.

*jū-gatsu ichi-nichi kara*: on and after the 1st of October. (*Kara* is always inclusive).

*hachi-ji kara hajimaru* (B): it commences at eight o'clock.

*kore kara*: henceforth; now.

*itsu kara Nihon ni irasshaimasu ka?* (D): how long have you been in Japan?

3) After a gerund, *kara* means after, since..

*gohan wo tabete kara dekakemashō* (C): I will go out after I have had my dinner.

*Yokohama e kite kara sukoshi yoku narimashita* (C): since I came to Yokohama I feel somewhat better.

*kaette kara de mo ii* (B): it will be time enough when I come back.

4) After verbs, not in the gerund, and after adjectives, *kara* means because, as, since.

*ame ga futte iru kara dekakemasen* (C): as it is raining I shall not go out.

*ano hito ga kimasen deshita kara gakkari shimashita* (C): to my great disappointment he did not come.

*ikaremasen, isogashii kara* (C): I can't go, I am busy.

*ichi-do ii-dashita kara ni wa ato e wa hikanai* (B): after I have said something I never go back on my words. (Note the exceptional use of *kara* which follows the past tense and has nevertheless the meaning of after).

5) In examples like the foll. *kara* indicates not the cause of the action but what makes the action possible.

*todana ni satō no haitte iru tsubo ga aru kara, motte o-ide* (A): the sugar-jar is in the cupboard, bring it.

*tsukue no ue ni ichi-yen aru kara, motte kite o kure* (A): there is one yen on the desk, bring it.

*hon-ya de Tarō San ni aimashita kara, ni-chiyō ni kuru yō ni imashita* (C): I met Tarō at the bookseller's, so I asked him to come on Sunday.

*kara* (no), (often corr. to *karappo*) [? f. prec.]. Empty.

*kono bin wa kara desu* (C): this bottle is empty.

*tamago no kara*: an empty egg-shell.

Comp.: *kara-te*: empty-handed.

*karada*. Body.

*karada ga warui* (B): I feel ill.

*karada ni ii*: good for the health.

*karada no tsuyoi hito*: a man of robust health.

*karada no kagen*: the state of one's health.

*raku na karada ni naru*: to become a man of leisure.

*nani wo suru ni mo karada ga ichiban da* (B): in everything health should be the first consideration.

*karai*. Said of tastes like salt and mustard.

Comp.: *shio-karai*: salty, [shio salt].

*kare*, (sometimes abb. to *ka2* q.v.), [cogn. w. are that]. That person.

*kare wa sensō de shinda no desu* (C): he died in the war.

*kare kore shiteru uchi ni kuraku narimashita* (C): while I was doing one thing and another it became dark.

*mō kare kore hiru ni narimashō* (C): it must be close upon noon.

*kare-ru*. To wither; dry up.

*koe ga kare-ru*: to become hoarse.

*kari*, [stem of foll.]. Debt; loan.

*anata wa watashi ni go-yen kari ga aru* (B): you are owing me five yen.

*kari wo kaesu*: to pay a debt.

*kari wo taosu*: not to pay one's debts.

*kari ga deki-ru*: to get into debt.

*kari no*: temporary.

*kari ni*: temporarily; for a time.

*kari-ru*, v.t. [cogn. w. *kasu* also v.t.]. To borrow; rent (as a house).

*te wo kari-ru*: to obtain help.

Der.: *kari*, q.v.

*karui*, [*karu2* empty]. Light; not heavy; not serious.

*karui kara sukoshi meshi-agatte goran nasai* (C): just try a little (of this food), it is very light.

*byōki wa karui* (B): the illness is not serious.

*kuchi no karui otoko da* (B): he is a glib-tongued fellow.

*kasa*. Umbrella; Japanese head-wear.

*kasa no hone*: the ribs of an umbrella.

*kasa wo asu*: to open, put up an umbrella.

*oya no namae wo kasa ni kite wagamama wo suru* (B): he makes use of his father's reputation to get his own way.

Comp.

*ama-gasa*: a Japanese umbrella, [ame rain].

*hi-gasa*: a Japanese sunshade, [hi sun].

*kōmori-gasa*: a foreign-style umbrella, [kōmori a bat].

*kā-san*. Mother: (the honorific *o* is gen. pref.: *o kā-sama* is more polite than *o kā-san*).

*kasamaru*, v.i. [cogn. w. *kasane-ru* v.t.]. To become piled or heaped up.

*shigoto ga kasannatte iru* (B): business (work) has accumulated.

*kasane-ru*, v.t. [cogn. w. *kasamaru* v.i.]. To place one upon another; pile up; heap up.



*kasaneite konna koto wo shíte wa ike-nai* (A) : don't do such a thing again.

**kashi.** Sweetmeats; cakes; (the honorific *o* is gen. pref.).

**kashira.** The head; chief.

**kasû**, v.t. [cogn. w. *kari-ru* also v.t.]. To lend; rent.

*kashíte agemashô* (C) : I will lend it to you.

*te wo kasû* : to lend a hand; help; assist.

*mimi wo kasû* : to listen to.

Comp.

*kashi-ma* : a room to let, [mal room].

*kashi-ya* : a house to let, [yal house].

**kata.**

1) Side; direction.

*kata wo motsû* : to take the side of.

*kata wo tsûke-ru* : to put in order; settle.

*kata ga tsûku* : to be put in order, settled.

2) Person.

*ano o kata wa Takada San desû* (C) : that gentleman is Mr Takada.

Comp.

BEFORE A NOUN—one of two.

*kata-ashi* : one leg, [ashi leg].

*kata-me* : one eye, [me eye].

*katappo* q.v. : one side, [hō side].

*kata-te* : one hand, [te hand].

AFTER THE STEM OF A VERB—way or manner of doing.

*koshirae-kata ga warui* (B) : the workmanship is bad.

*kono ji no yomi-kata wo oshiete kudasai* (C) : please teach me how to read this character.

*sono shi-kata de wa totemo dame da* (B) : it's not the slightest use doing it like that.

see also *shikata*.

OTHER COMP.

—*gata*; *katazuke-ru*; *katazuku*; *yûgata*; *yûkata*; q.v.

**katachi.** Figure; shape; form.

*katachi wa minikui ga kokoro wa ii* (B) : she is not good looking but she has a good disposition.

*katachi dake no koto desû* (C) : it is a mere form.

**katai.** Hard; solid; strict; upright (moral-ly).

*kataku shinjite imasû* (C) : he believes it firmly.

*kataku ni tsûke-ru* : to order strictly.

**kataki.** Enemy.

*kataki wo toru*; *kataki wo utsû* : to avenge; revenge oneself.

**katana.** Sword.

Comp.: *ko-gatana* : a penknife, [kol small].

**katappo**, [kata one; hō side]. One side; one of a pair.

*katappo bakari warui no ja arimasen* (C) : it is not the one side only that is to blame.

*katappo no kutsu ga yabuketa* (B) : one of my boots has a hole in it.

**katazuke-ru**, v.t. [kata side; tsûke-ru to join : cogn. w. *katazuku* v.i.]. To put away (in its place); put in order; settle.

*kono hon wo katazukete o kure* (A) : put this book away in its place.

*ato wo katazuke-ru* : to clear away things.

*kono heya wo katazukete o kure* (A) : put this room in order; do this room.

*shigoto wo katazuke-ru* : to finish a work.

*mustime wo katazuke-ru* : to marry off a daughter.

**katazuku**, v.i. [kata side; tsûku<sup>1</sup> to be in contact : cogn. w. *katazuke-ru* v.t.]. To be put in order; be settled.

*kirei ni katazuite imasû* (C) : they are all nicely arranged.

*katazuite i-nai* : to be in disorder.

*ano shigoto wa yōyō katazukimashita* (C) : that work has at last been disposed of.

**katō**, [tō2 class]. Lower class; third class.

*katō na yatsû* : a common fellow.

**katsû.** To win; conquer.

*sensō ni katsû* : to win a battle.

*kono moyō wa aka ga katte iru* (B) : there is too much red in this pattern.

*katsû mo makeru mo un shidai* : winning or losing is a question of luck.

Der.: *katte* q.v.

**kattarui.** Tired; weary.

**katte**, [gerund of *katsû* to win]. Convenience; one's own convenience.

*katte na koto wo suru* : to act according to one's fancy.

*katte ni suru* : to have one's own way.

*katte ni sase-ru* : to let somebody have his own way.

*katte ni o shi nasai* (B) : do as you like.

*hito no mono wo katte ni tsûkatte wa ike-nai* (A) : you mustn't make use of other people's things without leave.

*dō shiyō to kimi no katte da* (B) : it is for you to decide what to do.

*iku to mo yosû to mo watashi no katte da* (B) : whether I go or whether I don't is nobody's business but mine.

Comp.: *jibun-gatte*, q.v.

**kau<sup>1</sup>**, [kau<sup>2</sup> to change]. To buy; purchase. *omotta yori yasûku kaimashita* (C) : I bought it cheaper than I expected.

*ikura de katte kudasaimasû ka?* (D) : how much will you give for it?

*kenka wo kau* : to interfere and take the part of one of the disputants in a quarrel.

Comp.

*kai-mono*; q.v.

*kai-te* : the buyer.

**kau<sup>2</sup>**. To keep; feed; rear.

*inu wo kau* : to keep a dog.

**kaw<sup>1</sup>**, [kawaru to change]. River.

*kawa no kishi* : the banks of a river.

*kawa mukō no kaji* : a fire the other side of the river; no concern of mine.

Comp.: *ko-gawa* : a stream, [kol small].  
**kawa<sup>2</sup>**. Side ; row.

*jūta-kawa ni narabu* : to arrange in two rows.

Comp.

*ryō-gawa* : both sides, [ryō- both].

*mukai-gawa* ; *mukō-gawa* : the opposite side (of the road), [mukai, mukō opposite].

**kawa<sup>3</sup>**, [ ? *kawa<sup>2</sup>* side : the skin is on the outside]. Skin ; leather.

*hone to kawa bakari ni narimashita* (C) : he is reduced to skin and bones.

**kawaii**. Charming ; lovely ; darling ; (gen. refers only to little or childish persons or things).

*kawaii ko* : a lovely little child.

*anata no kawaii o-jō-san* : your daughter whom you are so fond of ; your charming daughter.

Der.

*kawaiigaru* : to treat kindly, fondly ; pet ; [-garu q.v.].

*kawairashii* : same meaning as *kawaii*, [-rashii q.v.].

*kawaiisō* q.v.

**kawaiisō**, (na), [*kawaii* charming ; -sō apparent-ly : the meaning has somehow changed]. Exciting pity.

*kawaiisō na hito* ! poor fellow !

*kawaiisō ni tōtō shinimashita* (C) : at last the poor man died.

*inu wo sonna ni ijimete wa kawaiisō da* (B) : it is cruel to tease a dog so.

**kawakasū**, v.t. [cogn. w. *kawaku* v.i.]. To dry ; desiccate.

**kawaku**, v.i. [cogn. w. *kawakasū* v.t.]. To become dry ; be thirsty.

*kawaite iru* : to be dry.

*mada kawaite imasen* (C) : it is not dry yet.

*nodo ga kawakimashita* (C) : I am thirsty.

**kawari**, [stem of *kawaru* to change]. Altera-

tion.

*o kawari wa gozaimasen ka* ? (D) : is every-

thing all right with you ?

*kawari ga nai* (B) : there is no change.

*anata no kawari ni ikimasu* (C) : I will go instead of you.

*ryōri-nin no kawari ga mada arimasen ka* ? (C) : have you not yet found anyone to take your cook's place ?

*kawari wo yarimashita* (C) : I sent a proxy.

*o kawari wo agemashō* (D) : let me give you another helping.

*sono kawari ni* : (lit.) instead of that ; (fig.) on the other hand.

*chīsai kawari ni nedan ga yasui* (B) : it is small but on the other hand it is cheap.

*kinō futta kawari ni kyō wa o tenki* (B) : it rained yesterday but on the other hand it is beautiful weather today.

Comp.: *kawari-gawari* ; *kawari-ban* : by turns, [-ban<sup>3</sup> turn].

**kawaru**, v.i. [cogn. w. *kaeru<sup>2</sup>* v.t.]. To change ; vary.

*ano hito wa chitto mo kawara-nai* (B) : that man hasn't changed a bit.

*kaze ga kawatte ame ni natta* (B) : the wind changed into rain.

*o tsūkare deshō, sūkoshi kawarimashō* (C) : you must be tired, let me take your place a little while.

*kawatta koto ga nai* (B) : nothing unusual has happened.

*kyō wa nani ka kawatta kudamono wo katto-ide* (A) : buy some other kind of fruit today.

Der.: *kawari* q.v.

**kayō** ; **kayō-bi** ; [see *yō-bi*]. Tuesday.

**kazaru**. To ornament ; adorn ; display.

Der.: *kazari* : an ornament.

**kaze**.

1) Wind.

*kaze ga fuku ne* (B) : doesn't the wind blow ?  
*kaze ga demashita* (C) : the wind has begun to blow.

*kaze ga kimasu* (C) : there is a draught.

*kono heya ni kaze wo yoku tōshite o kure* (A) : ventilate this room well.

*doko wo kaze ga fuku to iu yōsū wo shite iru hito* : a man apparently unconcerned.

2) A cold.

*kaze wo hiku* : to catch a cold.

Comp.: *ō-kaze* : a gale, [ō- big].

**kazoe-ru**, [kazu number]. To count ; reckon.

Comp.: *kazoe-doshi* : age, [toshi year] ; see 311.

**kazu**. Number.

*kazu no ōi* : numerous.

*kazu ga tari-nai* (B) : there are some wanting.

*kazu aru naka de* : amongst a great many.

*seito no kazu wa san-zen ni chikai* (B) : the number of students is close upon three thousand.

Der.: *kazoe-ru*, q.v. : to count.

**ke**. Hair ; fur.

*ke ga haemasu* (C) : the hair grows.

*ke ga nukemasu* (C) : the hair falls.

*ke no fūkai* : hairy.

Comp.: *ke-ori nō* : woollen (of cloths), [aru to weave].

-ke.

1) Added to nouns and adj. stems, it forms abstract nouns gen. referring to taste.

*shioke* : a salty taste, [shio salt].

*shibuke* : an astringent taste, [shibui astringent].

2) In its *nigori*-ed form, -ge, it is added to nouns or stems of verbs or adj. and means look, appearance or probability.

*otona-ge* : like an adult, [otona adult].

*ureshi-ge* : appearance of pleasure, [ureshi joyful].

*ari-ge* : probably existing, [aru to be].



**kechi** (na). Stingy; used also to express disapproval in other senses.

*kechi na hito* : a stingy man; a nasty, disagreeable man.

**kedo**, contr. of *keredo* which is itself a short form of *keredomo*.

**kega**. Wound.

*kega (wo) suru* : to hurt oneself; get wounded.

*kega wo saseru* : to hurt or injure somebody.

*ashi ni kega wo shimashita* (C) : I have hurt my leg.

*o kega wa arimasen ka?* (C) : did you hurt yourself?

**keiko**. Exercise; practice; lesson.

*keiko ga wakaru* : to know one's lesson.

*Nihon-go no keiko wo suru* : to take lessons in Japanese.

**keisatsu**. Police.

Comp.: *keisatsu-sho* : police-station.

**kekkō** (na). Splendid; fine; excellent.

*sore wa kekkō desū* (C) : that's very good; I am very pleased to hear it.

*kekkō desū* (C) : it is splendid, delicious; that will do nicely.

*karada ga jōbu de kane ga areba konna kekkō na koto wa nai* (B) : if you have health and money what more can you wish for?

*Nikkō wo mi-zu ni kekkō to itte wa ike-nai* : don't use the word 'splendid' until you have seen Nikkō.

**kekkon**. Marriage.

*kekkon (wo) suru* : to marry.

**kembutsū**. Sight-seeing.

*kembutsū suru* : to go about sight-seeing.

*kembutsū ni iku* : to go (to some place) to see the sights.

*Kyōto ni wa kembutsū suru tokoro ga takusan gozaimasu* (D) : in Kyōto there are many sights to see.

*Nara wo kembutsū ni ikimasu* (C) : I am going to Nara to see the sights.

*shibaraku tomatte kembutsū nasai* (C) : stay for a few days and see the sights.

**kemono**, [ke hair; *mono* thing]. A quadruped; beast.

**kemu(ri)**. Smoke.

*hi no nai tokoro ni kemuri wa agara-nai* : there is no smoke without fire.

**ken**. A.n. for houses, buildings, etc.

Note: 1 *ik-ken*; 3 *san-gen*; 6 *rok-ken*; 10 *jik-ken*; 100 *hyak-ken*; 1000 *sen-gen*; *nan-gen*?

**kenka**. A quarrel; fight.

*kenka (wo) suru* : to quarrel.

*ano hito to kenka suru* : to quarrel with that man.

*kenka wo kau* : to interfere and take the part of one of the disputants in a quarrel.

*kodomo no kenka ni oya ga deru* : parents

take part in children's quarrels (and they always side with their own children).

**kenyaku**. Economy.

*kenyaku suru* : to economize.

**keredo**(mo). Although; however; nevertheless; but: often used in elliptical sentences.

*ame ga furu keredomo ikō* (B) : although it is raining I shall go.

*sore wa sō desū keredomo...* (C) : what you say is true no doubt, but...(there is a great deal to be said against it).

Sometimes *keredo*(mo) is hardly more than a copulative particle.

*ano hito wa sakkī kara asūko ni tatte iru keredo, nani wo mite iru no darō?* (B) : that man has been standing there some time, I wonder what he's looking at.

**keru**, (more correctly but less commonly *keru*). To kick.

**kesa**, [*kono* q.v. this; *asa* morning]. This morning.

**keshiki**. Landscape; view; scenery; expression of the face.

*kono kinjo ni keshiki no ii tokoro ga arimasu ka?* (C) : are there any fine views here?

*okotta keshiki wa nakatta* (B) : he did not appear to be angry.

*okori-nō na keshiki wa nakatta* (B) : he didn't look as if he were going to get angry.

**kesshiite**, (foll. by neg.). Never; by no means; certainly.

*mō kesshiite itashimasen* (D) : I will never do it again.

*kesshiite sonna koto wa imasen* (C) : I never said such a thing.

*kesshiite machigaemasen* (C) : I am sure I have made no mistake.

*kesshiite go shimpai nasara-nai de kudasai* (D) : you needn't have the slightest anxiety.

*kesshiite o takō gozaimasen* (D) : I assure you the price is not too dear.

**kesū**, v.t. [cogn. w. *kie*ru v.i.]. To extinguish; put out; cancel; erase.

*kanjō ga sumimashita kara chōmen wo keshiite kudasai* (C) : as the account is settled please cancel it in your books.

Comp.

*hi-keshi* : fireman, [*hi*2 fire].

*tori-kesū* : to cancel, [*toru* to take].

**ketto**, [f. English (blanket)]. A blanket; rug.

*ketto wo kakeru* : to cover with a blanket; put a blanket on.

**kezuru**. To plane; sharpen; scrape.

**ki1**. Tree; wood.

*ki no kawa* : the bark of a tree.

*ki wo ueru* : to plant a tree.

**ki2**. Spirit; steam.

*ki ni iru* : to like.

*o ki ni irimasu ka?* (D) : do you like it? does it suit you?

*ki ni ira-nai hito* : a man I don't like.  
*ki wo tsûke-ru* : to take care; pay attention.  
*ki wo tsûkete kure (A)* : take care; look out.  
*hi wo ki wo tsûke nasai (A)* : be careful about the fire.  
*ki ga tsûku* : to notice; observe.  
*ki ga tsûkimasen deshita (C)* : I did not think of it; I didn't notice it.  
*sonna ki wa nai (B)* : I have no such desire.  
*ki ga suru* : to have a feeling; be under the impression; believe; think.  
*mô futsûka itai yô na ki ga suru (B)* : I feel much inclined to stay two days more.  
*doko ka de atta yô na ki ga suru (B)* : I have an idea that I have met him somewhere.  
*mono wo ki ni suru* : to take things to heart.  
*ki ni naru* : to be anxious, concerned.  
*undô suru ki ni nare-nai (B)* : I have no inclination to take exercise.  
*ano hito wa ki ga hen ni narimashita (C)* : his mind has become unhinged.  
*kari wo haratta no de ki ga raku ni natta (B)* : I feel easy now that I have paid my debts.  
*ki ga tôku naru* : to faint.  
*ki ga chigau* : to go mad.  
*anata wa ki ga chigatte iru (A)* : you are out of your senses.  
*ki ni sawaru* : to get angry.  
*ki wo mawasû* : to be suspicious.  
*nan da ka ki ga isoide jitto shite wa irare-nai (B)* : somehow I feel flurried and cannot remain quiet.  
*ki ga au* : to get on well together.  
*are to wa ki ga awa-nai (B)* : I don't get on well with him.  
*ki ga tatsû* : to be excited.  
*ki ni kakeru* : to take to heart.  
*ki ni kakaru* : to cause anxiety.  
*sore ga ki ni kakatte neraremasen (C)* : it weighs on my mind so that I cannot sleep.  
*ki ni kuwa-nai yatsû* : a disagreeable fellow.  
*ki no kiita hito* : an attentive, wide-awake man.  
*ki no kika-nai hito* : an inattentive, dull-witted man.  
*ki no kiita fû* : a smart appearance.  
*nan no ki mo naku* : without any special intention.  
*ki no ôkii* : generous.  
*ki no chisai* : timid.  
*ki no hayai* : excitable.  
*ki no mijikai* : quick-tempered.  
*ki no nagai* : patient.  
*ki no yowai* : timid.  
*ki no muzukashii* : hard to please.  
*ki no kawari-yasui* : changeable; fickle.  
 Comp.  
*kichigai*; *kimochi*; *kinodoku*; *kiraku*; *kisen*; *kisha*; q.v.  
*kidoru* : to put on airs, [toru to take].

*ki3*, noun. Yellow.  
 Comp.: *ki-iro* q.v.; yellow, [iro colour].  
*kibi*. Corr. of *kimî3* q.v.  
*kichigai*, [ki2 spirit; *chigau* to be wrong].  
 Madness; a lunatic.  
*kichigai ni naru* : to go out of one's mind.  
*ryokô kichigai* : mad on (very fond of) travelling.  
*kie-ru*, v.i. [cogn. w. *kesû* v.t.]. To go out; become extinguished; melt away.  
*hi ga kiemashita (C)* : the fire has gone out.  
*yuki ga mada kie-nai (B)* : the snow has not yet thawed.  
*sono hyôban mo shizen ni kiemashita (C)* : that rumour died out of itself.  
*kifujin*, [fujin woman]. A lady.  
*kigen*. Temper; feeling; state of one's health.  
*kigen no ii hito* : a good-tempered man.  
*kesa wa kigen ga warui (B)* : he is in a bad temper this morning.  
*kigen wo toru* : to humour.  
*kigen no tori-nikui hito da (B)* : he is a difficult man to get on with.  
*kigen wo ukagau* : to inquire after another's health.  
*go kigen ikaga desu ka? (C)* : how are you?  
*go kigen yô (C)* : I wish you good luck.  
*itsu mo go kigen yokute kekkô desu (C)* : I am pleased to hear you are keeping well.  
*ki-iro (na)*, [ki3 yellow; iro colour]. Yellow.  
*ki-iroi*, [i. prec. by adding i and thus forming a true adj.]. Yellow.  
*ki-iroi koe* : a thin, high-pitched voice.  
*kikai*. Tool; instrument; apparatus.  
*kikoeru*, v.i. [cogn. w. *kikui* v.t. to which it also serves as potential]. To be able to hear; be heard; be audible.  
*o kotoba ga kikoemasen (D)* : I cannot hear you.  
*zuibun kikoeta hito da (B)* : he is a very well-known man.  
*sore wa hen ni kikoemasu (C)* : that sounds strange.  
*kikui*, v.t. [cogn. w. *kikoeru* v.i. which also serves as potential].  
 1) To hear; listen.  
*ano hito ga byôki da to kikimashita (C)* : I heard that he was ill.  
*wake wo kika-nai (B)* : he will not listen to reason.  
*ikura itte mo kikimasen (C)* : nothing I could say would move him.  
*kikeba Amerika e itta sô da (B)* : I hear that he has gone to America.  
 2) To ask; inquire.  
*sûkoshi o kiki shitasu no desu ga... (C)* : I would like to ask you something.  
*kiite mimashô (C)* : I will inquire about it.  
*kuchi de kikimashita ka, mimi de kiita no desu ka? (C)* : do you mean that you asked about it or simply that you heard it?



## 3) Various.

*iu koto wo kiku* : to obey.

*kuchi wo kiku* : to speak.

*negai wo kiku* : to grant a request.

*kikase-ru*, (sometimes corr. to *kikasū*) : to tell.

*yonde kikase-ru* : to read to another.

Note:—the potential of *kiku* is *kikoeru*, sometimes *kikeru* or *kikareru*.

## Comp.

*kiki-awase-ru* : to make inquiries, [*awase-ru* to join].

*kiki-chigae-ru* : to misunderstand, [*chigae-ru* to make different].

*kiki-chigai* : a misunderstanding, [*chigau* to be wrong].

*sore wa anata no kiki-chigai deshō* (C) : that is probably a misunderstanding on your part.

*kiki-nare-ru* : to be accustomed to hear, [*nare-ru* to get accustomed].

*kiki-wake-ru* : to tell the difference by hearing; understand (of a child), [*wake-ru* to separate].

*Tōkyō to Kyōto no kotoba wo kiki-wakeraremasū ka?* (C) : can you tell the difference between the Tōkyō and the Kyōto ways of speaking?

**kiku**<sup>2</sup>, [? f. prec.]. To be efficacious.

*yoku kiku kūsuri da* (B) : it is a very efficacious remedy.

*naka-naka yoku ki ga kiku* (B) : he is a very sharp-witted fellow.

*kono kagi wa kika-nai* (B) : this key won't open the lock.

*te ga kiku* : to be handy.

*watashi wa hidari no te no hō ga yoku kiki-masū* (C) : I am left-handed.

*me ga kiku* : to be sharp-sighted.

*ano hito wa naka-naka haba ga kiku* (B) : he has great influence.

—*de wa kika-nai* : more than—.

*is-shaku de wa kika-nai* : more than one foot.

**kiku**<sup>3</sup>. Chrysanthemum.

**kimari**, [stem of *kimaru* to be settled]. Settling upon; regularity; disposition.

*mada kimari ga tsuka-nai* (B) : it is not yet settled.

*kimari no ii uchi* : a well-managed family.

*kimari no nai* : irregular.

*kimari ga nai* (B) : there is no fixed rule.

*sore wa o kimari no ii-wake da* (A) : that's your usual pretext.

*kimari ga warui* (B) : I feel confused, shy.

**kimaru**, v.i. [cogn. w. *kimaru* v.t.]. To be settled, fixed, decided.

*mada kimarimasen* (C) : I have not decided yet.

*sore de kimatta* (B) : that settles it.

*totta to omowareru ni kimatte iru* (B) : people are certain to think I took it.

Der.: *kimari* q.v.

**kimaru**, v.t. [cogn. w. *kimaru* v.i.]. To decide; fix; settle.

*hi wo kimemashō* (C) : let us fix the day.

*kō kimete okimashō* (C) : let us decide on this.

*iku yō ni kimemashita* (C) : I decided to go.

**kimi**<sup>1</sup>. You; (*kimi* is familiar; it corresponds to *boku* q.v.).

**kimi**<sup>2</sup>, [*ki*<sup>3</sup> yellow; *mi* meat]. Yolk of an egg.

**kimi**<sup>3</sup>, (sometimes corr. to *kibi*). Feeling.

*kimi ga warui* (B) : it makes me shudder.

*ii kimi da* (A) : I am glad it happened; it serves you right.

**kimo**. The liver; spirit; courage.

*kimo wo tsubusū*; *kimo ga tsubure-ru* : to be frightened out of one's wits.

*kimo no jitōi yatsū* : a courageous (or audacious) fellow.

**kimochi**, [*ki*<sup>2</sup> spirit; *motsu* to have]. Feeling.

*ii kimochi* : a pleasant feeling.

*kyō wa sūkoshi kimochi ga warui* (B) : I don't feel quite well today.

*kimochi wa dō desū ka?* (C) : how do you feel?

*kimochi wo waruku suru* : to hurt somebody's feelings.

**kimono**, [*ki*<sup>2</sup> to put on; *mono* thing].

Clothes (especially one particular Japanese garment).

**kin**<sup>1</sup>. Gold; money; (compare *gin* silver).

## Comp.

*azukari-kin* : money received in deposit, [*azukaru* to receive in deposit].

*bakkin* : a fine, [*batsu* punishment].

**kin**<sup>2</sup>. A Japanese pound, (about equal to 1 1/3 lb.).

Note:—*kin* is preceded by the 1st set of num.: 1 *ik-kin*; 3 *san-gin*; 6 *rok-kin*; 10 *jik-kin*; 100 *hyak-kin*; *nan-gin*?

**kinjo**. Neighbourhood.

*kono kinjo* : hereabouts.

**kinō**. Yesterday.

*kinō ga kyō no koto ja nai* (B) : it is not a thing of recent occurrence.

**kinodoku**, [*ki*<sup>2</sup> spirit; *no* of; *doku* poison].

Feeling sorrow or concern for others.

*o kinodoku sama* : I am very sorry for you.

*ano hito wa hontō ni kinodoku desū* (C) : he is much to be pitied.

*o kinodoku desū ga chotto te wo kashite kudasai* (C) : I am sorry to trouble you but would you please help me a moment?

*o kinodoku desū ga ashita made ni wa dekimasen* (C) : I am sorry but I cannot possibly let you have it by tomorrow.

Der.: *kinodokugaru* : to feel sorry for, [*-garu* q.v.].

**kinu**. Silk.

**kinyō**; **kinyō-bi**; [see *yō-bi*]. Friday.

**kippari**. Plainly; clearly.

*kippari (to) kotowaru* : to flatly refuse.  
*kippari mono wo iu* : to speak distinctly.

**kippu.** Ticket.

Comp.

*ōfuku-gippu* : return ticket, [ōfuku going and returning].

*norikae-kippu* : a transfer, [nori-kaeru to ride in another carriage].

**kirai.** Dislike.

*kirai na* : hateful.

*ano hito wa tabako ga kirai desū* (C) : that man dislikes tobacco.

*uso-tsūki wa dai-kirai desū* (C) : I hate liars.  
*ano hito wa kirai da* (B) : he dislikes it ; I dislike him.

Note :—the Japanese construction does not distinguish clearly between the subj. and the obj. of the dislike ; however if both the subj. and the obj. are expressed, the subj. gen. takes *wa* and the obj. *ga* ; the obj. sometimes takes *wo*.

*Yamada San wa Tanaka San ga kirai desū* (C) : Mr Yamada doesn't like Mr Tanaka.

**kiraku.** [kiru<sup>2</sup> spirit ; raku ease]. Ease of mind ; freedom.

*kiraku na hito* : a man who takes life easy.

**kire.** [kiru<sup>2</sup> to cut]. Cloth ; slice ; piece.  
*pan no hito-kire* ; a slice of bread.

Note :—*kire* in the sense of slice or piece is used in connection with the abb. 2nd set of num. (276, 4).

**kirei (na).**

1) Pretty ; handsome ; beautiful.

*kirei na keshiki* : a fine view.

2) Clean.

*amari kirei de wa nai yō desū* (C) : they do not look very clean.

*nawa wo kirei ni sōji o shi nasai* (A) : sweep and tidy the garden nicely.

3) Completely.

*kirei ni kanjō wo suru* : to settle definitely an account.

*kirei ni yaite shimatta* (B) : it was completely burnt.

Comp. : *kirei-zuki* : fond of cleanliness, [suki like].

**kire-ru.** v.i. [cogn. w. kiru<sup>2</sup> v.t. to which it also serves as potential].

1) To cut ; can cut.

*kono katana wa yoku kiremasū* (C) : this sword cuts well.

*kitte mo kire-nai naka da* (B) : they are too fond of each other ever to be separated.

*hanashiteru uchi ni demwa ga kirete shimatta* (B) : while I was talking the telephone was cut off.

*kirete iru* : to be cut or broken.

*ito ga fūtatsu ni kirete iru* (B) : the string is broken in two.

*kimono no sode ga kirete imasū* (C) : the sleeve of your dress is torn.

2) To terminate ; end ; exhaust.

*kore wa ima kirete imasū* (C) : this article is now out of stock.

*iki ga kire-ru* : to be out of breath.

Comp. are formed with the stem of another verb.

*uri-kire-ru* : to be sold out, [uru to sell].

*sono tsuchi wa totemo sono ana e wa hai-ri-kire-nai* (B) : you will never be able to get all that earth into that hole.

*kazoe-kire-nai hodo takusan arimasū* (C) : there are too many to be counted.

**kiru<sup>1</sup>.** Fog ; mist.

*kiri ga tatte iru* : to be foggy.

**kiru<sup>2</sup>.** [stem of kiru<sup>2</sup> to cut].

1) End.

*kore ni wa kiri ga arimasen* (C) : there is no end to this.

*baka ni wa kiri ga nai* (B) : stupidity has no limits.

2) Only ; except ; besides. In this sense it is sometimes *nigori*'ed ; it is often foll. by *shika* which re-inforces its meaning. *Kiri shika* is sometimes contracted to *kya*.

*ano hito wa te ga katappo kiri (shika) nai* (B) : that man has only one arm.

*kono koto wa watakaushi kiri (shika) dare mo shirimasen* (C) : nobody knows about this except me.

*chūmon shita hambun kya kimasen* (C) : only half the quantity I ordered has come.

*kami ga kore kiri desū ka ?* (C) : is this all the paper there is ?

*kore kiri desū ; kore kiri arimasen* (C) : there is only this ; this is all there is.

*mō kore kiri iwa-nai* (B) : I'll tell you once for all.

*neko wa sore kiri miemasen* (C) : after that the cat was seen no more.

*O Hisa ga asa deta kiri kaette ko-nai* (B) : Hisa went out this morning (giving no indication of anything unusual) and has not returned.

*O Hisa Chan ni wa ichi-do ka ni-do atta kiri de, yoku shirimasen* (C) : I don't know Miss Hisa very well as I have only met her once or twice.

Note :—*kore kiri*, *sore kiri*, etc. are sometimes pronounced *korekkiri*, *sorekkiri*, etc.

**kiru<sup>1</sup>.** v.t. [cogn. w. kire-ru also v.t.]. To put on ; wear.

*uwagi wo kiru* : to put on a coat.

*tsumi wo kiru* : to be charged with a crime.

*oya no namae wo kasa ni kite wagamama wo shimasū* (C) : he makes use of his father's reputation to get his own way.

Comp.

*ki-kacru* : to change one's dress, [kacru<sup>2</sup> to change].

*kimono* : clothes, [mono things].

*fuyu-gi* : winter clothes, [fuyu winter].

*haru-gi* : spring clothes, [haru spring].

*shita-gi* : underclothes, [shita under].



*uwa-gi* : coat, [ue above].

*nemaki* : night-dress, [ne-ma bedroom].

**kīru**<sup>2</sup>, v.t. [cogn. w. *kire-ru* v.i. which also serves as potential]. To cut.

In comp. it indicates totality.

*kai-kīru* : to buy up all, [kai<sup>1</sup> to buy].

*omoi-kīru* : to cease to think about, [omou to think].

*wakari-kitta* ; *shire-kitta* : obvious, [wakaru to know ; *shire-ru* to be known].

See also comp. of *kire-ru*.

**kisen**, [ki<sup>2</sup> steam ; sen<sup>4</sup> vessel]. A steamer.

**kise-ru**, v.t. [cogn. w. *ki-ru*!]. To dress somebody, (as a little child).

**kīsha**, [ki<sup>2</sup> steam ; sha carriage]. A railway train.

*nan-ji no kīsha de dekakemasū ka?* (C) : by what train are you leaving ?

*Kyōto yuki no kīsha* : the train for Kyōto.

*kīsha no hako* : a railway carriage.

*kīsha ni noru* : to enter the train.

*kīsha wo ori-ru* : to get off the train.

Comp.

*kudari-kīsha* : down train, [kudaru to descend].

*nobori-kīsha* : up train, [noboru to ascend].

*ichi-ban-kīsha* : the first train, [ichi-ban number one].

*yo-gīsha* : the night-train, [yo<sup>2</sup> night].

**kīshi**. A bank ; shore.

**kisoku**. A rule ; regulations.

*kisoku dōri ni* : according to rule.

*kisoku wo mamoru* : to observe the rules.

*kisoku wo yaburu* : to break the rules.

**kita**. North.

**kitanai**. Dirty ; filthy.

*iji no kitanai* : greedy.

*hara no kitanai* : foul-minded.

**kitsui**. Strong ; strict ; narrow.

*ano sensei wa kitsui no desū* (C) : that master is very strict.

*kono kutsu wa kitsui* (B) : these boots are too tight.

*motto kitsūku kosutte o kure* (A) : rub harder.

**kitte**. A postage stamp ; ticket.

*tegami ni kitte wo haru* : to stick a stamp on a letter.

Comp. : *yūbin-kitte* : a postage stamp, [yūbin post].

**kitto**. Positively ; surely.

*kitto sō da* (B) : it is surely so.

*kitto oboete o-ide* (A) ; *kitto wasurete wa ikenai* (A) : mind you don't forget.

**kizu**. A wound ; damage.

*kizu ga aru* : to be damaged.

*kizu ga tsūku* : to get damaged.

*kizu wo tsūke-ru* : to damage.

*oshii koto ni kono hana-ike ni wa kizu ga arimasū* (C) : what a pity this flower-vase is chipped.

*sake wo nomi-sugiru no ga kizu da* (B) : his one defect is that he is too fond of drink.

Comp. : *kizu-ato* : a scar, [ato after].

**ko**<sup>1</sup>. Child.

*ko wo umu* : to give birth to a child.

*o ko san wa iku-nin gozaimasū ka?* (D) : how many children have you ?

*ko wo motte shiru oya no on* : only when we have children of our own do we understand our own parents' love.

*neko no ko* : the young of a cat ; kitten.

Note :—The preceding construction may be used for any animal ; in this same sense *ko* may also be used as a prefix before the names of certain animals ; a few examples will be found below.

In comp. *ko* means child or little.

*jūta-go* : twins, [jūtatsu two].

*take-no-ko* : bamboo sprout, [take bamboo].

*ai-no-ko* : Eurasian, [aida between].

*ko-inu* : a puppy, [inu dog].

*ko-neko* : a kitten, [neko cat].

*ko-ushi* : a calf, [ushi cow].

*ko-gatana* : a penknife, [katana sword].

*ko-gawa* : a stream, [kawa<sup>1</sup> river].

*ko-gire* : a little piece of cloth, [kire cloth].

*ko-michi* : lane ; path, [michi road].

*ko-mugi* : wheat, [mugi corn].

*ko-yubi* : little finger, [yubi finger].

*ko-zutsumi* : a small parcel (gen. for the post), [tsutsumi a parcel].

*ko-zutsumi de okuru* : to send by parcel-post

*kodomo* ; *kogoto* ; q.v.

**ko**<sup>2</sup>. A.n. for various things that have no special a.n. as bundles, parcels, etc.

Note :—1 *ik-ko* ; 6 *rok-ko* ; 10 *jik-ko* ; 100 *hyak-ko*.

**kō**. Thus ; in this manner. *Kō* gen. refers to something which is going to be said or done. Compare *sō* 1).

*kō skite kudasai* (C) : please do thus.

*kō suru to ii* (B) : you had better do it thus.

*watashi wa kō kangaemasū* (C) : this is what I think.

*kō iu* ; *kō iu fū na* ; *kō iu yō na* : this kind of ; this sort of ; like this.

*kō iu (fū na) hito ga sūki desū* (C) : this is the kind of person I like.

*kō iu wake desū* (C) : this is the reason.

**kobore-ru**, v.i. [cogn. w. *kobosū* v.t.]. To get spilt.

*tsūkue no ue ni o cha ga koborete iru* (B) : somebody has spilt some tea on the desk.

**kobosū**, v.t. [cogn. w. *kobore-ru* v.i.]. To spill ; pour out.

*mizu wo kobosa-nai yō ni nasai* (B) : take care not to spill any water.

*namida wo kobosū* : to shed tears.

*nani ka isshōkemmei koboshite ita* (B) : he was grumbling very much over something or other.

**kōbu**. A bump ; swelling ; wen.

*me no ue no kōbu* : a kill-joy.

**kochi**; **kochira**; (*kochi* is gen. pron. *kotchi*). Here; this place.

*kochira e* (C): come here; show him in.

*kochira e irasshai* (C): please come in.

*Yamada San wa kochira desu ka?* (C): does Mr Yamada live here?

*kotchi ga warukatta* (B): I was wrong.

**kodomo**, [kol child; -domo plural suf.: the original meaning was children]. Child; children.

*kodomo wo umu*: to give birth to a child.

*kodomo ga dekiru*: to give birth to a child; be with child.

*kodomo wo sodateru*: to bring up a child.

*kodomo-tachi*: children.

**koe**. Voice.

*oki na koe*: a loud voice.

*chiisai koe*: a low voice.

*futai koe*: a deep voice.

*ki-iroi koe*: a thin, high-pitched voice.

*togatta koe*: a shrill voice.

*koe wo ageru*: to raise the voice.

*hito no koe ga shimasu* (C): I hear somebody calling.

*koe ga kareta* (B): I am hoarse.

*koe wo kaketa ga kikoe-nakatta* (B): I called out to him but he did not hear.

**kōen**. Public garden; park.

**kogasū**, v.t. [cogn. w. *kogeru* v.i.]. To scorch; char.

**kogeru**, v.i. [cogn. w. *kogasū* v.t.]. To get scorched.

Comp.: *koge-kūsai*: smell or taste as if burnt, [see *kūsai*].

**kogoto**, [? kol small; *koto*(ba) word]. A scolding.

*kogoto wo iu*: to scold.

*kogoto wo kuu*: to get a scolding.

**kōhii**, [corr. of Eng.]. Coffee.

**koi**. Thick; dense in consistency; deep or dark in colour.

*iro ga koi* (B): the colour is dark.

*o cha ga koi* (B): the tea is strong.

Comp.: *aburakoi*: greasy (of taste), [*abura* fat].

**kojiki**. A beggar.

*kojiki wo mikku sureba yamerare-nai*: if you beg for three days (instead of working), you will never be able to leave it off.

**kōkai**. Repentance; regret.

*kōkai suru*: to repent; regret.

**koko**. This place.

*koko ga yō gozaimasu* (D): this place will do.

*koko ni imasu ka?* (C): is he here?

Der.: *koko-ira*: hereabouts, [see -*ira*].

**koko**<sup>2</sup>, [*kokonotsū* nine]. Nine (in the 3rd set of num.: see 271; 275).

**kōkoku**. Advertisement.

*kōkoku suru*; *kōkoku wo dasu*: to advertise.

**kokono**, [*kokonotsū* nine]. Nine (in the 3rd set of num. and also in the abb. 2nd set: see 271; 275; 276, 4).

**kokonoka**, [*kokonotsū* nine; -*ka* q.v.]. Nine days; ninth day of the month.

**kokonotsū**. Nine.

In comp. *kokonotsū* is abb. to *kokono*: see 276, 4.

Comp.: *kokonoka* q.v.

**kokoro**. The heart; mind.

*kokoro kara*: with all my heart.

*kokoro aru hito*: a person with common sense.

*ano hito wa kokoro ga kimara-nai* (B): that man does not know his own mind.

*kokoro ga ugoita no da* (B): his resolution was shaken.

*kokoro wo ire-kae-ru*: to turn over a new leaf.

*kokoro no ōkii hito*: a generous man.

*kokoro no chiisai hito*: a timid man.

*kokoro ni kakaru*: to cause anxiety.

*kokoro ni kake-ru*: to bear in mind.

*kokoro wo kiku*: to inquire into the sentiments or intentions of a person.

Comp.: *kokoro-mochi* q.v.

**kokoro-mochi**, [*kokoro* mind; *mochi* to have]. Feeling.

*ii kokoro-mochi*: a pleasant feeling.

*nan to mo ie-nai iya na kokoro-mochi da* (B): I have a disagreeable feeling I cannot describe.

*kokoro-mochi ga yoku nai* (B): I don't feel well.

*kokoro-mochi no ii*: comfortable; pleasant.

*kokoro-mochi no warui*: uncomfortable; unpleasant.

*kokoro-mochi nagaku* (or *ōkiku*, etc.) *suru*: to make it a shade longer (or larger, etc.).

-**koku**, (used only in comp.). Country.

Comp.

*Ei-koku*: England.

*Bei-koku*; *Gasshū-koku*: the United States of America.

*gaikoku*: foreign countries.

**kokuban**. Black-board.

**komakai**; **komaka na**; (223). Small; fine; minute.

*komaka ni kaku*: to write in small letters; to write out in detail.

*komakaku ki wo tsukete o kure* (A): pay close attention.

*komakai no ga arimasen* (C): I have no small change.

**komaru**. To be troubled, distressed, inconvenienced, perplexed, in a fix, in difficulties; not to know what to do.

*kane ni komaru*: to be hard up for money.

*byōki de komaru*: to suffer from illness.

*henji ni komaru*: to be at a loss for an answer.

*komatta mon' da* (B): how annoying; that's very awkward.

*kono sensō ni wa minna komatte shimaimashita* (C): everybody is in great difficulties on account of the war.



*kono ko ni wa komarimasu* (C): I don't know what to do with this child.

*atsükutte komarimasu* (C): I feel much distressed by the heat.

**komban**, [*ban*2 night; see *kono*2]. Tonight; this evening.

*komban wa* (C): good evening.

**kome**, [*ko*1 small; *mi* fruit]. Rice (before it is cooked); (the honorific *o* is gen. pref.).

**kōmori**. A bat.

Comp.: *kōmori-gasa*: a European style umbrella or sunshade, [*kasa* umbrella; the shape of a European umbrella resembles the wings of a bat].

**komu**. To be crowded or huddled together.

Comp.

*hikkomu*: to draw back, [*hiku* to pull].

*buchi-komu*: to knock in, [*butsu* to knock].

*omoi-komu*: to be under the impression; set one's heart upon; [*omou* to think].

*kangae-komu*: to be absorbed in thought; brood over; [*kangae-ru* to think].

*shimai-komu*: to put away, [*shimau* to put away].

*tobi-komu*: to jump in, [*tobu* to jump].

**kona**, [*ko*1 small]. Flour; powder.

**konaida**, [*kono-aida* q.v.].

**kondo**, [*do* time; see *kono*2]. This time; next time; the immediate past.

*kondo dake*: this once only.

*kondo wa yoku yarimasu* (C): I will do it well this time.

*kondo wa nani wo shimashō?* (C): what shall we do next?

*kondo tabeta nashi wa imakatta* (B): that last pear I had was very nice.

Note:—*kondo wa* is sometimes contr. to *konda*.

**kongetsū**, [*getsū* month; see *kono*2]. This month.

**konna**, [contr. of *kono yō na*]. This kind of; such as this; like this; so.

1) Used attrib. immediately before a noun, it often has a contemptuous sense.

*konna hon nara ira-naï* (B): if this is the kind of book, I don't want it.

*konna koto ni narō to wa omowa-nakatta* (B): I never thought things would come to such a pass.

*konna tansu wa doko de kaemasu ka?* (C): where can you buy cabinets like this?

2) Has a sup. sense before an adj. or its der.: *konna ni* has also this sense.

*konna kirici na hana wo mita koto ga arimasu ka?* (C): have you ever seen such beautiful flowers as these?

*konna samusa ni wa atta koto ga nai* (B): I have never seen such cold weather as this.

*konna ni takusan arimasu* (C): look, there is all this!

**konnichī**, [*nichi* day; see *kono*2]. Today; this day.

*konnichī wa* (C): good day; (sometimes used to call attention as when you go into a shop and there is no attendant).

**kono**1, [*kokonotsu* nine]. Nine (in the 3rd set of num.: see 271; 275).

**kono**2, [often=*kore no*]. This.

*kono gurai*: about this much.

*kono hoka ni*: besides this.

*kono mama (or tōri) ni shite oku no kai?* (A): do you mean to leave it like this?

*kono ni-san-nichi wa taisō atakai* (B): it has been very warm these last two or three days.

Comp.

*kono-aida*; *kono-goro*; *konna*; q.v.

In the foll. words the sound and the meaning seem to point to their being derived from *kono*, but the character with which they are written means 'now' and not 'this'. *Kono*, however, may serve as a mnemonic.

*komban* this evening; *kondo* this time; *kongetsū* this month; *konnichī* this day, today; *konshū* this week; *kotoshi* this year; all of which see.

**kono-aida**, (sometimes contr. to *konaida*), [*kono*2 this; *aida* interval]. Recently; lately; some days ago; a short time ago.

*tsui kono-aida*: a few days ago.

*kono-aida Nakamura San kara kikimashita* (C): I heard about it lately from Mr Nakamura.

**kono-goro**, [*kono*2 this; *koro* time]. Now-a-days; lately; recently; (gen. refers to something not entirely past).

*kono-goro wa hidoku samui* (B): it has been very cold of late.

*kono-gorō ano hito wa nani shite imasu ka?* (C): what is he doing now?

*kono-goro Tanaka San ni o ai desu ka?* (C): have you met Mr Tanaka lately?

**konshū**, [*shū* week; see *kono*2]. This week.

**konya**. Tonight; this evening.

**konzatsū**. Confusion; disorder.

**koppu**, [Spanish, *copa* a tumbler]. Glass; tumbler.

**korare-ru**. Passive of *куру*.

**kore**. This one; (refers also to the present moment).

*kore kiri* (sometimes pron. *korekkiri*); *kore dake*: only this one.

*kore wa ike-naï* (B): this won't do.

*kore wa yoku irasshaimashita* (D): oh! I am very pleased to see you, (said to a visitor).

*kore de o shimai* (B): and that is all; this completes it.

*kore de o wakare itashimasu* (D): well I must be going.

*kore kara*: from now on.

*kore kara hajimemasu* (C): I am just going to begin.

*kore kara nani wo shimasu ka?* (C): what are you going to do now?

*kore made*: until now.

*kore!* (often corr. to *kora!*): an interj. (used to call attention, often as a reminding).

*kore wa* (sometimes *korya*): interj. meaning surprise.

*kore to iu koto wa nai* (B): not anything you could call important.

**kōri**, [stem of *kōru* to freeze]. Ice.

*kawa ni kōri ga harimashita* (C): the river is frozen over.

*kōri ga tokemashita* (C): the ice has melted.

**koriru**. To be warned by a previous experience; get a good lesson.

*korimashita* (C): this will be a lesson for me.

**koro**, (often *nigori*'ed to *goro*). Time; about the time.

*hana-mi mo mō ii koro da* (B): now is the season for flower-viewing.

*go-jō goro o-ide nasai* (B): come here at about five o'clock.

Comp.: *chika-goro*; *ima-goro*; *itsū-goro*; *kono-goro*; q.v.

**korobasu**, v.t. [cogn. w. *korobu* v.i.]. To knock down; roll.

**korobu**, v.i. [cogn. w. *korobasu* v.t.]. To fall down; roll.

*nana-korobi ya-oki*: (lit.) if you fall seven times get up eight; get up every time you fall; never say die; if at first you don't succeed, try, try again.

*koronde mo tada wa oki-nai*: he does not get up after having fallen, without making some profit.

**koroppū**, [corr. of English]. Cork.

Comp.: *koroppū-nuki*: a corkscrew, [*nuku* to pull out].

**korosū**, [? *kare-ru* to wither; ? *korobasu* to knock down]. To kill; murder.

Comp.

*buchi-korosū*; *uchi-korosū*: to beat to death [*butsū*, *utsū* to beat].

*kami-korosū*: to kill by biting, [*kamu* to bite].

**kōru**. To freeze.

Der.: *kōri*: ice.

**kosae-ru**. Causative of *kuru*.

**koshi**. The loins.

*bikkuri shite koshi wo nukashita* (B): he was so startled he was not able to move.

Comp.: *koshi-kake-ru*; *koshi wo kake-ru*: to sit, [*kake-ru* to hang].

**koshirae-ru**, (sometimes corr. to *kosae-ru*).

To make; prepare.

*nan de koshirae-ru no desu ka?* (C): what is it made of?

*kane wo koshirae-ru*: to make money.

*daiku ni koshiraeasemashō* (C): I will have it made by a carpenter.

**koso**. An emphatic particle.

1) The ordinary use.

*anata koso iku hazu da* (B): you at least ought to go.

*sore koso baka na koto da* (B): well that is a stupid thing.

*sore de koso Nihon-jin da* (B): that is the stuff the Japanese are made of.

*anata no tame wo omoeba koso iya na koto mo iu no desu* (C): it is just because I think it is for your good that I say such unpleasant things.

*kore koso to omou shina mo nai* (B): there is not a single article I care for.

2) A special use of *koso* is when it comes after the stem of a verb and is foll. by the verb *suru*. This construction is very like that with *wa* mentioned under *suru* 7).

*sūte koso shi-nai ga ira-nai mono da* (B): I didn't throw it away though it is a thing I don't need.

**kosū**.

1) To cross over; move; change one's abode.

*kawa wo kosū*: to cross a river.

*ano hito wa Hongō e koshita* (B): he has moved to Hongō.

2) To be above.

*sore ni koshita koto wa arimasen* (C): there is nothing preferable to that.

Comp.: *hikkosū* q.v.

**kosuru**. To rub.

**kotchi**. See *kochi*.

**koto**. An abstract thing; action; fact; (for difference between *koto* and *mono* see 183).

1) Not preceded by anything, or preceded by an adj. or q. adj. in *na* or *no*—the idea of 'thing' is gen. there though not always expressed in English.

*koto ni yoru to Yokohama e iku* (B): according to circumstances (according as things turn out), I may go to Yokohama.

*koto naku sunda* (B): it was concluded without a hitch.

*baka na koto wo iu*: to say silly things.

*onaji koto desu* (C): it's the same thing.

*kuwashii koto wa ato de hanashimasu* (C): I will tell you the details (detailed things) later on.

*donna koto ga atte mo*: whatever may happen.

*tashika na koto wa shirimasen* (C): I don't know for certain.

*ano koto wa dō narimashita ka?* (C): what has become of that affair?

*sore wa kinō no koto desu* (C): that took place yesterday.

*gohan wo tabete (kara) no koto ni nasai* (B): put it off till after dinner.

*tabi-tabi no koto desu* (C): it is a thing that happens frequently.

*kane no koto wo jiman suru*: to boast about one's money.



*anata no koto wo hanashite imashita* (C): he was talking about you.

- 2) An adj. (or q. adj.) foll. by *koto* is sometimes equivalent to an abstract noun.  
*hayai koto*: velocity, [hayai quick].

*takai koto wa nai* (B): it is not dear, (lit.: there is no dearness).

*konna ureshii koto wa nai* (B): nothing could give me greater pleasure than this.  
*omoshiroi koto wa omoshiroi ga...* (B): it is amusing as far as that goes but...; (lit.: as for amusement it is amusing but...).

- 3) After a verb *koto* may refer: a) to the thing acted upon by the verb, or, b) to the act or fact of the verb itself. The following examples correspond to a).

*ano hito no iu koto wa hontô desu* (C): what that man says is true.

*suru koto ga takusan arimasu* (C): there are many things to be done.

*sore wa watakushi no suru koto desu* (C): that is my business.

- 4) In the case of b) when *koto* after a verb refers to the act or fact of the verb itself, it sometimes corresponds to the infinitive.

*ima wo kawa-nai koto ni shimashita* (or *kimemashita*) (C): I have decided not to buy a horse.

*Kôbe e iku koto ni narimashita* (C): it has become necessary for me (or him) to go to Kôbe.

*sukoshi ageta koto wa agemashita* (C): it's true I did give him a trifle.

*Nagasaki ni itta koto ga arimasu ka?* (C): have you ever been to Nagasaki?

*itta koto ga gozaimasu* (D): yes, I have been there.

*mita koto ga nai* (B): I have never seen it. See *aru*, 5).

- 5) A particular case of the above is when *koto* is followed by *ga dekiru* or *ga dekinai*; it may then be rendered by the potential.

*iku koto ga dekiru* (B): I can go.

*kurakute yomu koto ga dekimasen* (C): it is so dark I cannot read.

- 6) At the end of a sentence after a verb, an adj. or a q. adj. in *na*, *koto* gen. has an exclamatory force.

*ano ko no naku koto!* (B): how that child does cry!

*hayai koto!* oh, how quick! what velocity!  
*kirei na koto!* how pretty!

- 7) The foll. examples are worthy of study; the words *koto* *wo*, or *no koto* may be suppressed.

*'uso-tsuki da' nante koto wo watashi ni ieru hazu ga nai* (B): he had no right to call me a liar (or say anything like that).

*o ba-an wa onna no koto desu kara, kono hanashi wo kiite yokei kanashigarimashita*

(C): when the old woman heard what had happened, being a woman, she was even more sorry (than the old man).

*Tarô no koto desu kara teinei ni shimasu* (C): as it is Tarô (who is making them, and he has a reputation of being such a good worker), of course they will be very carefully made.

**kotoba.** Language; speech; word.

*ano kata no kotoba wa hitotsu mo wakari-masen* (C): I don't understand a single word he says.

In comp. *kotoba* often loses its final syllable: see *kogoto*, *kotozuke-ru*.

**kotoshi**, [*toshi* year; see *kono* 2]. This year.

**kotowaru**, [*koto* thing; *waru* to divide].

1) To inform beforehand.

*mae kara o kotowari shite arimasu* (C): I warned you in advance.

*mô kotowara-nai de uchi wo dete wa ike-nai* (A): you mustn't go out again without asking permission.

2) To refuse.

*sô suru no wa kotowarimashita* (C): I refused to do so.

*kippari kotowaru*: to flatly refuse.

*kotowari no tegami wo yaru*: to send a letter of refusal.

*tegami no go sôdan wa o kotowari desu* (C): I cannot discuss this matter by mail, (I must have a personal interview).

**kotozuke-ru**, [*kotoba* word; *tsuke-ru* to apply]. To send a message; send by somebody.

*tomodachi ni tegami wo kotozuke-ru*: to request a friend to carry a letter.

**Der.**  
*kotozuke*: a message.

*kotozuke wo suru*: to send a message.

**kowagaru**, [*kowai* fearful; *-garu* q.v.]. To be afraid of.

*ano ko wa taisô kaminari wo kowagarimasu* (C): that child is very much afraid of thunder.

**kowai.**  
 1) Fearful; alarming; feeling fear; causing fear.

*kowai no desu ka?* (C): are you afraid?

*june ni noru no wa kowai* (B): I am afraid of travelling by boat.

*kowai kao wo suru*: to frown.

*kowai hito da* (B): he is a terrible man.

2) Hard; stiff.

**Der.**: *kowagaru* q.v.

**koware-ru**, v.i. [cogn. w. *kowasu* v.t.]. To break; be broken or ruined.

*kinô koware mashita* (C): it broke yesterday.

*kore wa kowarete imasu* (C): this one is broken.

**Comp.**: *koware-yasui*: fragile. [*yasui* easy].

**kowasu**, v.t. [cogn. w. *koware-ru* v.i.]. To break; destroy.

*Tarō ga kowashita no desū* (C): Tarō broke it.

Comp.: *buchi-kowasu*: to knock to pieces, [butsū to knock].

*kozō*, [kol small]. A servant boy; errand boy.

*ku*, (sometimes pron. *kyū*, 273). Nine.

*kū*. See *kuu*.

*kubi*. Neck; head.

*kari de kubi ga mawara-nai* (B): he is up to his ears in debt.

*kubi wo ageru* (B): I'll bet you anything.

*kubi ni suru*: to turn somebody out (of a situation).

*dorobō shita no de kubi ni saretā* (B): as he was caught stealing they turned him out.

*kubi wo nagaku shite matsu*: to wait with a craned neck; wait eagerly.

*kubi wo toru*: to behead.

Comp.

*te-kubi*: wrist, [te hand].

*ashi-kubi*: ankle, [ashi foot].

*kuchi*.

1) Mouth; opening.

*kuchi wo ire-ru*; *kuchi wo dasu*: to speak without being asked; interfere in what doesn't concern one.

*kuchi ni au*: to suit one's taste.

*kuchi wo suru*: to cork.

*kuchi wo ake-ru*: to uncork; open the mouth.

*kuchi wo kiku*: to speak.

*aimashita ga kuchi wo kikimasen deshita* (C): I saw him but didn't speak to him.

*kuchi to kane-ire wa shimeru ga toku*: it is better to keep your mouth and your purse closed.

*chotto kuchi ni iware-nai* (B): I can't for the moment think of the word.

*kuchi to kokoro to chigaimasu* (C): he is not sincere in what he says.

*kenka no kuchi*: the beginning of a quarrel.

*kuchi de*: by word of mouth.

*hito no kuchi ni to wa taterare-nai*: you cannot close people's mouths.

*kuchi ga subette itte shimatta* (B): (lit. my tongue slipped and I said it); I carelessly let the cat out of the bag.

*kuchi no warui hito*: a man coarse in speech.

*kuchi no karui hito*: a man who talks without thinking; a chatterbox.

*kuchi no omoi hito*: a man who weighs his words.

*kuchi no katai hito*: a man reserved in his speech.

*kuchi no ūmai hito*: a man who can talk people over and get round them.

2) Situation; employment.

*kuchi wo kake-ru*; *kuchi wo tanomu*: to apply for a situation.

*kuchi wo sagasu*: to look for a situation.

3) Article.

*sono kuchi wa ima gozaimasen* (D): that article is now out of stock.

*kono kuchi no shina wa kireta* (B): there are no more goods of this quality.

Comp.

*de-guchi*: exit, [*de-ru* to go out].

*iri-guchi*: entrance, [*iru* to enter].

*kage-guchi*: backbiting, [*kage* shade].

*muda-guchi*: idle talk, [*muda* useless].

*waru-kuchi*: evil speaking, [*warui* bad].

*mōke-guchi*: an opportunity for making money, [*mōke-ru* to gain money].

*ure-kuchi*: sale, [*ure-ru* to sell].

*hito-kuchi*: a mouthful, [*hitotei* one].

*hito-kuchi ni ieba*: in a word.

*kuda*. Pipe; tube.

*kudamono*. Fruit.

*kudari*, [stem of *kudaru* to descend]. Descent.

*kore kara kudari ni naru kara raku desū* (C): as we go downhill now it will be easy.

Comp.

*kudari-zaka*: a road going downhill, [*saka* an inclined road].

*kudari-kisha*; *kudari no kisha*: down train, i.e. from Tōkyō, [*kisha* train].

*kudaru*, v.i. [cogn. w. *kudasaru* v.t.]. To go down; descend.

*kawa wo kudaru*: to go down a river.

*kudara-nai mono*: an insignificant thing.

Der.: *kudari* q.v.

*kudasai*, [irreg. imperative of *kudasaru* q.v.].

1) When not following a gerund or verbal stem—please give me.

*pan wo kudasai* (C): please give (got) me some bread.

2) After a gerund or verbal stem—please.

*itte kudasai* (C): please tell me.

*kudasaru*, v.t. [cogn. w. *kudaru* v.i.]. An honorific verb used politely of the 2nd person, sometimes of the 3rd. It has a few irregularities: it drops the *r* before the *masu* terminations; the imperative is *kudasai* (q.v.); the second *a* is often dropped before terminations beginning with *tt*, thus *kudas'ita* for *kudasatta*. *Kudasaru* always refers to an action done directly or indirectly in favour of the 1st person.

1) Not following a gerund or verbal stem—to give.

*matchi wo kudasaimasen ka?* (C): could you favour me with a match?

*sensei ga otōto ni kudasaimashita* (C): the teacher gave it to my younger brother.

2) After a gerund or verbal stem—please; do the favour.

*kasa wo o kashi kudasaimasen ka?* (C): would you please lend me your umbrella?

*itte kudasaimasu ka?* (C): will you do me the favour to go?



*sō shite kudasareba kekkō desū* (C): if you would kindly do so, that would suit me very well.

*katte kudasaimashita* (D): he did me the favour of buying it for me; he bought it and gave it to me; see 110.

Note.—The construction with the stem cannot be used unless the stem has at least two syllables; the honorific *o* is always placed before the stem.

**kuern**, [potential of *kuu* to eat]. To be able to eat.

*naka-naka kue-nai otoko da* (B): he is a very sharp fellow, (not easily taken in).

**kufū**. Plan; scheme.

*kufū suru*: to arrange a plan; take measures.

*hitotsū kufū wo shite mimashō* (C): I will try and see what (plan) I can arrange.

*dōmo kufū ga tsūka-nai* (B): I cannot arrange the matter any way.

*ii kufū da* (B): it is a good scheme.

**ku-gatsū**, [*ku* nine; *gatsū* month]. September.

**kugi**. Nail; peg.

*kugi wo utsū*: to drive a nail.

**kūki**. Air.

**kumi**. A set.

Note:—*kumi* is used in connection with the abb. 2nd set of num. (276, 4).

**kumō1**. A cloud.

Der.: *kumoru*: to become cloudy.

**kumō2**. Spider.

*kumo no su*: a spider's web.

**kumoru**, [*kumō1* cloud]. To become cloudy.

**kumu**. To draw (water or other liquid).

*kawa no mizu wo kunde o-ide* (A): go and get some water from the river.

**kuni**. Country; province; one's native country.

*o kuni wa doko desū ka?* (C): from what country are you?

*kuni kara kita tegami*: a letter from home.

*kuni e kaeru*: to return to one's own country.

**kura**. A godown; storehouse; warehouse.

**kuraberu**. To compare.

*kyōnen ni kuraberu to kotoshi no hō ga atsui* (B): it is hot this year compared to last.

*kurabete mi-nakereba dochira ga ii ka wakarimasen* (C): I cannot tell which is the better until I see them both together.

*kurabe-mono ni nara-nai* (B): there is no comparison between them.

**kurai1**, [f. *kuroi* black]. Dark; obscure.

*kuraku nara-nai uchi ni*: before it gets dark.

*akari ga kurakute yome-nai* (B): the light is so bad I cannot read.

Comp.: *makkurai*: pitch-dark, [see *ma2*].

**kurai2**, (very often used in its *nigori*'ed form *gurai*).

1) Approximate quantity.

*dono gurai?* how much?

*kono gurai*: about this much.

*jū-yen gurai kakarimasū* (C): it will cost about ten yen.

*ni-jikan gurai*: about two hours.

*Nara made dono gurai arimasū ka?* (C): how far is it to Nara?

*O Shichi wa kinjo de shira-nai mono ga nai gurai no bijin deshita* (C): Miss Shichi was so pretty that there was practically nobody in the neighbourhood who hadn't heard of her beauty.

2) Degree.

*ima gurai hayai*: about as quick as a horse.

*sono gurai no koto nara watashi ni mo dekimasū* (C): if it is no more difficult than that, even I can do it.

*sagasū kurai nara watashi (ni) mo dekimasū* (C): if it is only a question of looking for it, I also can do that.

*ano gurai ii hito wa ammari nai* (B): there are very few such good-natured fellows as he.

*ayamaru gurai wa suru hazu da* (A): the least you can do is to apologize.

*te gurai aratte o-ide* (A): at least wash your hands before you come.

*Kamakura e kite Daibutsū wo mi-nai de kaeru gurai nara o-nakereba yokatta* (B): it would have been better not to have come to Kamakura at all, if I have to go back without seeing the Daibutsu.

3) Small difference.

*kotchi no hō ga ōkii gurai* (B): this one is slightly bigger.

*ano fūru wa o-kami-san no hō ga sei ga takai gurai desū* (C): of that married couple, the wife is slightly the taller.

**kurasu**. To pass the time; live.

*raku ni kurasū*: to lead an easy life; live in comfort.

*asonde kurasū*: to live in idleness.

*hi wo kurasū*: to spend one's time; pass the day.

*sono hi gurashi wo suru*: to live from hand to mouth.

*dō shite kurashite iru no deshō* (C): I wonder how he manages to live.

*Kagoshima de fuyu wo kurashimashita* (C): I spent the winter in Kagoshima.

*rippa ni kurashite iku*: to live in splendid style.

**kure**, [imperative of *kure-ru* q.v. to give].

*Kure* is used only to one's inferiors; the honorific *o* is frequently prefixed and makes it somewhat less curt.

1) Not following a gerund—give.

*mizu wo ip-pai (o) kure* (A): give me a glass of water.

2) After a gerund it is used in commands.

*hon wo motte kite (o) kure (A)*: bring the book.

*kuruma ga yonde (o) kure (A)*: call a rikisha.

**kure<sup>ru</sup>**. This verb is impolite when speaking of the act of the 2nd person and familiar when referring to the act of the 3rd person. It is used, therefore, when speaking to one's inferiors or of some intimate friend or inferior. The imperative is *kure* q.v. *Kure<sup>ru</sup>* gen. refers to an act done directly or indirectly in favour of the 1st person.

1) Not following a gerund—give.

*uchi no Tarō ga kuremashita (C)*: my son (brother) Tarō gave it to me.

*boku ni kureru no kai?* (B): do you give it to me?

*neko ni kudamono wo kurete wa ike-nai (A)*: don't give fruit to the cat.

*kojiki ni kure nasai (B)*; *kojiki ni kurete o yari nasai (B)*: give it to a beggar, (not used when referring to 1st person).

*o kun nasai* (corr. of *o kure nasai*, not used) (B): give it to me, (not used when referring to 3rd person).

2) After a gerund—for me.

*chichi ga kaite kuremashita (C)*: my father wrote it for me.

*ashita wa sūkoshi hayaku okite kure-nai to komaru (A)*: if you don't get up earlier (on my account) tomorrow morning, I shall be much inconvenienced.

**kuro**, n. 182, [*kuroi* adj. black]. Black.

**kurō**. Trouble; labour; anxiety; (when used in set polite phrases it is always preceded by the honorific *go*).

*oya ni kurō wo kakeru*: to cause one's parents great concern.

*kurō shita ningen de nakute wa yaku ni tatanai (B)*: a man is useless unless he has gone through hardships.

*kore wo sagasu no ni zuibun kurō shita (B)*: I took great trouble looking for this.

*haha ga byōki ni natta no de hito-kurō desū (C)*: my worries have increased now that my mother is ill.

*go-kurō sama deshita (B)*: thanks for your trouble; (said gen. to inferiors).

*go-kurō desū ga kore wo motte itte kudasai (B)*: I am sorry to trouble you but please take this with you.

**kuroi**. Black.

*ano hito wa iro ga kuroi (B)*: he is dark.  
*ano hito wa hara ga kuroi (B)*: he has a vicious heart.

Comp.

*makkuroi*: jet-black, [see *ma2*].

*kurai* (q.v.): dark.

**kurōto**, [*kuroi* black; *hito* person: compare *shirōto*]. A skilled person; expert; adept.

*sono koto ni kakete wa ano hito wa kurōto da (B)*: in such matters he is quite an expert.

**kuru**; irreg. verb, see 28; *o-ide* (q.v.) is gen. used as the imperative of *kuru*.

1) To come.

*dare ga kesa kimashita ka?* (C): who came this morning?

*nani ka watashi ni kimashita ka?* (C): has anything come for me?

*mata gogo ni kimasu* (C): I will call again this afternoon.

*watakushi ga kuru toki ni wa mada kaerimasen deshita* (C): he hadn't returned when I left.

*ano hito wa kinō kara kite iru* (B): he has been here since yesterday.

*mukō kara kuru densha wa Shimbashi yuki desu* (C): the tram-car coming over there, goes to Shimbashi.

2) When *ni kuru* follows the stem of a verb it signifies purpose or object and may be translated by 'come for' or 'come to'.

*tokei wo tori ni kimashita* (C): I have come for the clock (to take away the clock).

*kore wo shirase ni kimashita* (C): I have called to let you know this.

3) After a gerund *kuru* signifies motion towards the speaker though the translation in English is sometimes 'go'. The gerund and *kuru* often represent one complex action and not two separate ideas.

*aruite kimashita* (C): I walked here.

*mite kimashō* (C): I will go and see (and come back).

*hanashite o-ide* (A): go and tell him (and come back).

*Koyama San ga Hakone de kaite kita e wa jitsū ni yoku dekite iru* (B): the picture which Mr Koyama painted at Hakone is really very well done, (he is now back here).

*'jibiki wo kudasai' to itte kimashita* (C): he came to ask me for my dictionary, (*kite imashita* would seem more logical).

*motte kuru*: to bring.

*totte kuru*: to fetch.

*kaette kuru*: to come back.

4) The idea of coming, enclosed in *kuru*, is sometimes very indistinct; and *kuru* seems to refer more to 'coming into being' than to 'coming towards the speaker'.

*ame ga futte kita* (B): it has begun to rain.

*mō iya ni natte kimashita* (C): I have grown tired of it.

*yatto chichi ga naotta to omottara kondo wa haha no byōki to kimashita* (C): at last my father got better (and I thought my troubles were over), then my mother fell ill.

5) To send word.



*nan to mo itte kimasen kara, wakarimasen* (C): as he hasn't sent any message I don't know.

—*to tegami de itte kimashita* (C): a letter came saying—

6) *Kita* is added to other words used as excl.

*yoshi kita* / all right.

*sora kita* / here you are! there he is!

*dore kita* / let's begin.

7) *To kitara*; *to kite wa* = *to ieba*.

*Doitsū-go to kitara watashi wa maru de dame desū* (C): as for German, I don't know a single word.

Note.—The passive of *kuru* is *korare-ru*: the causative *kosase-ru* is little used, the verb *yokosū* is used instead. The neg. future is generally *komai* or *kimai*, but *kumai* and the regular form *kurumai* are sometimes heard. The humble form of *kuru* (polite for the 1st person) is *mairu*, occasionally *agaru*: the honorific forms (polite for the 2nd person) are *irassharu*, *o-ide nasaru*, *o-ide ni naru*, *o-ide de gozaru*, and *o-ide kudasaru*. The imperative of *kuru* is gen. taken from one of the honorific forms.

Comp.: *ki-kakaru*: to happen to come, [see *kakuru*].

**kuruma.** Wheel; carriage (esp. rikisha).

*kuruma ni noru*: to ride in a rikisha.

*kuruma wo mō ichi-dai yonde kure* (A): call another rikisha.

*kuruma wo hiku*: to pull a rikisha.

*kuruma ga mawara-nai* (B): the wheel won't turn.

Comp.

*kuruma-ya*: a rikisha-man.

*ni-guruma*: a hand-cart, [n<sup>2</sup> package].

**kurushii**, [f. *kurushimu* to suffer pain].

Agonizing; painful.

*ā kurushii*! (B): oh, how painful!

*kurushii toki no kami-danomi*: in distress we turn to God, [tanomu to request].

**kurushime-ru**, v.t. [cogn. w. *kurushimu* v.i.].

To persecute; torment; worry.

**kurushimi**, [f. *kurushimu* to suffer pain].

Pain; suffering; ache.

**kurushimu**, v.i. [cogn. w. *kurushime-ru* v.t.].

To suffer pain; worry.

*nani wo hitori de sonna ni kurushinde iru no ka?* (A): what are you worrying about all by yourself?

**kūsa.** Grass; weeds.

*kūsa wo toru*: to weed.

**kūsai.** Malodorous; evil-smelling.

*kūsai, kūsa!* what a smell!

*kūsaku naru*: to go bad (and emit an evil smell).

*kūsai mono ni wa fūta wo suru*: to cover a stinking object; to hide things or facts of which one is ashamed.

*kūsai mono ni hai ga yoru*: flies collect round evil-smelling things.

*ano otoko ga kūsa yō da* (B): that man looks suspicious to me.

In comp. after a noun, *kūsai* means that one is reminded of the noun, generally in an objectionable way.

*kabi-kūsai*: apparently mouldy.

*koge-kūsai*: smell or taste as if burnt, [kogeru to get scorched].

*inaka-kūsai*: rustic.

*ano hito wa mada chichi-kūsai* (B): he is still very green.

**kūsaru**, [f. *kūsai* malodorous]. To decay; become rotten.

*kūsatta sakana wo tabete wa ike-nai* (A): you mustn't eat stale fish.

**kūse.**

1) Peculiarity of manner; habit.

*kūse wo tsūke-ru*: to form a habit.

*warui kūse wa tsūki-yasui* (B): bad habits are easily acquired.

*kūse wo naosu*: to correct a bad habit.

*nani ka kūse no nai mono wa nai* (B): there is no one without some peculiarity.

*nakite nana-kūse*: one has at least seven peculiarities.

*hito wo waruku iu no ga kūse da* (B): he has a habit of always speaking ill of people.

2) No *kūse* ni after a noun, or *kūse* ni after a verb or adjective is gen. contemptuous.

I *otoko no kūse ni ki ga chiisai* (B): he is timid though he is a man.

*akodomo no kūse ni tabako wo nonde, iya na yatsu da* (B): what a nasty boy to be smoking though he is only a child.

Comp.

*te-kūse*: habit of pilfering.

*ano hito wa te-kūse ga warui* (B): he has a bad habit of pilfering.

**kūsuri.** Drug; medicine; something good for the health.

*kūsuri wo nomu*: to take medicine.

*kūsuri ni naru*: to be good for the health.

*undō wa kūsuru desū* (C); *undō wa kūsuru ni naru* (B): exercise is good for the health.

*kono kūsuru wa kika-nai* (B): this medicine has no effect.

*sonna mono wa kūsuru ni shitakute mo nai* (B): it is not to be got for love or money.

*kono chichi ni wa nani ka kūsuru ga haitteru yō da* (B): they must have put some drugs in this milk.

Comp.: *kūsuri-ya*: a chemist; druggist.

**kutabire-ru.** To become tired; (said only of human beings).

*kutabiremashita* (C): I am tired.

*kutabire ga nuketa* (B): I have recovered from the fatigue.

**kutsu.** Boots; shoes.

*kutsu wo haku*: to put on one's boots.

*kutsu wo nugu*: to take off one's boots.

*kutsu wo migaku* : to clean or polish the boots.

Comp.: *kutsu-shita* : socks (European); stockings.

**kuttsūke-ru**, v.t. [? *kuu* to bite; *tsūke-ru* to join: cogn. w. *kuttsūku* v.i.]. To stick; join.

*gohan de kuttsūke nasai* (B) : stick it on with rice.

**kuttsūku**, v.i. [? *kuu* to bite; *tsūku* to join: cogn. w. *kuttsūke-ru* v.t.]. To stick; adhere.

*sumi ga kao ni kuttsuite imasū* (C) : your face is smudged with ink.

**kuu**. To eat; bite.

*shimatte oita no de mushi ni kuwareta* (B) : as it had been put away, it was eaten by moths.

*ano hito wa nan de kutte iru no da?* (A) : what does he do for a living?

*kui ka kuwa-zu ni imasū* (C) : he can hardly keep the wolf from the door.

*kutte iku dake no kane wa hairimasū* (C) : I earn just enough to keep body and soul together.

*ko-goto wo kui* : to be scolded.

*kuwa-zu girai* : to dislike a thing before having tried it.

*sono te wa kuwa-nai* (B) : you won't catch me with that dodge.

*ip-pai kuwasareta* (B) : I was completely taken in.

Comp.

*kui-tsūku* : to bite (as an attack).

*inu ni kui-tsūkaremasū* (C) : I was bitten by a dog.

*aida-gui* : eating between meals.

**kuwashii**. Minute; detailed.

*kuwashiku hanashimashita* (C) : he told me in detail.

*ano hito wa e no koto ni kuwashii* (B) : he is a connoisseur in paintings.

**kuyashii**. Regrettable; irritating; annoying.

*konna kuyashii koto wa nai* (B) : I was never so mortified in my life.

**kya**. Abb. of *kiri shika*; see *kiri*.

**kyaku**. A visitor; guest; customer.

*ima kyaku ga aru kara ato de o ide nasai* (B) : as I have company just now please come later on.

*o kyaku sama de gozaimasū* (D) : a visitor has come.

Comp.: *kyaku-ma* : drawing-room.

**kyō**. Today.

*kyō wa nani yō-bi desū ka?* (C) : what day of the week is it?

Comp.: *kyō-jū* : some time today.

**kyōdai**. Brothers and sisters.

*go kyōdai wa o ikutari de gozaimasū ka?* (D) : how many brothers and sisters have you?

**kyonen**, [nen1 year]. Last year.

**kyōsō**. Competition; rivalry; a race.

*kyōsō suru* : to compete; run a race.

*kyōsō ni katsu* : to win a race.

**kyū**, [occasionally said instead of *ku* nine, 273]. Nine.

*kyū-sen* : nine sen; nine thousand.

**kyū<sup>2</sup>** (na or no). Sudden; steep.

*saka wa kyū desū ka?* (C) : is the hill steep?

*kyū ni* : suddenly.

*kyū ni dekakeru koto ni natta* (B) : something unexpected has happened which obliges me to go out; something has happened which obliges me to set out immediately.

Comp.: *kyūkō-ressha* : an express train, [*hō* to go; *retsū* a row; *sha* carriages].

**ma<sup>1</sup>**.

1) Interval of time or space.

*ma ni au* : to be in time; serve the purpose.

*ma ni awaseru* : to get (something) ready in time; make serve the purpose.

*chōto ma ni aimashita* (C) : I was just in time.

*anna hito de wa ma ni awa-nai* (B) : that sort of man won't suit me.

*ashita made ni ma ni awasemasū* (C) : I will get it ready by tomorrow.

*kore de ma ni awasemashō* (C) : I will make this do.

*ma mo naku* : soon; in a little while.

*kisha wa ma mo naku demasū* (C) : the train will leave in a few minutes.

*ma ga nukete iru* : to appear foolish.

*hanashi no tane ga nakunatte sūkoshi ma ga nuketa* (B) : as we had exhausted the subjects for conversation there was an awkward silence.

*rusu no ma ni hikkoshita no darō ka?* (B) : I wonder if they've moved while I was away.

*dorobō wa shira-nai ma ni tokei wo nusunda* (B) : a thief stole my watch I don't know when.

*o jii-san wa itsu no ma ni ka sono hanashi wo kikimashita* (C) : the old man some time or other heard that tale.

2) A room.

Note:—*ma* in the sense of 'room' is used in connection with the abb. 2nd set of num. (276, 4).

Comp.

*hima* : spare time, [hi1 day].

*hiruma* : day-time.

*tema* : time spent in doing any work.

*aki-ma* : an unoccupied room.

*ne-ma* : a bedroom, [*ne-ru* to sleep].

*i-ma* : a sitting-room, [*i-ru* to be].

*kashi-ma* : a room to let, [*kasu* to rent].

*kyaku-ma* : a drawing-room.

*betsu-ma* : a separate room.

**ma<sup>2</sup>**. Truth.

*ma ni uke-ru* : to take as true.



ano hito no hanashi wa ma ni ukeraremasen (C) : you cannot rely on what he says.

In comp. it emphasizes and acts as an intensifier.

*makoto* : truth.

*mannaka* : the very centre, [*naka* inside].

*mammari* : exactly round, [*marui* round].

*masshikaku* : exactly square, [*shi-kaku* square].

*massugu* : perfectly straight, [*sugu* directly].

*masshirai* : snow-white, [*shiroi* white].

*makkuroi* : jet-black, [*kuroi* black].

*makkurai* : pitch-dark, [*kurai* dark].

*makkai* : flaring red, [*akai* red].

*massaoi* : very green, [*aoi* green].

*mappadaka* : stark naked, [*hadaka* naked].

**mā**. An interjection meaning sometimes surprise or admiration, and sometimes almost nothing.

*mā odoroi!* (B fem.) : well I am surprised ! only fancy ! dear me !

*mā akai!* (B fem.) : why, you are red !

*mā o machi kudasai* (C) : just wait a moment please.

**mabuta**, [*me* eye ; *futa* lid]. Eyelid.

**machi**. A town ; street.

**machidō**, [*matsū*<sup>2</sup> to wait ; *tōi* far]. Waiting a long time.

*o machidō sama deshita* (C) : excuse me for keeping you waiting so long.

**machigae**, [stem of *machigae-ru* to mistake]. Same meaning as *machigai* q.v.

**machigae-ru**, v.t. [*mal* interval ; *chigae-ru* to mistake : cogn. w. *machigau* v.i.]. To mistake.

*gomen kudasai, machigaemashita* (D) : excuse me I made a mistake.

*michi wo machigae-ru* : to take the wrong road.

*A wo B to machigaemashita* (C) : I mistook A for B.

*dare ka jibun no to machigaete motte itta no deshō* (C) : perhaps somebody has taken it by mistake for his own.

Der.: *machigae*.

**machigai**, (sometimes *machigae*), [*f. machigau* to be wrong]. A mistake ; blunder ; accident.

*machigai ga arimashita* (C) : there was a mistake ; there was an accident.

*watashi no machigai deshita* (C) : it was my mistake.

*nani ka machigai deshō* (C) : there is some mistake no doubt.

*dare ni de mo machigai ga aru* (B) : anybody can make a mistake.

*machigai no nai* : correct.

*machigai naku kimasu* (C) : I will not fail to come.

**machigau**, v.i. [*mal* interval ; *chigau* to be different : cogn. w. *machigae-ru* v.t.]. To be different ; be mistaken ; be wrong.

*kore wa machigatte imasu* (C) : this is wrong. *shitsurei desu ga anata ga machigatte irasharu yō desu* (C) : I beg your pardon but I believe you are mistaken.

Der.: *machigai* q.v. : a mistake.

**mada**. Yet ; still ; (often dropped in the translation).

*mada okiku narimasu* (C) : he is still growing.

*mada kimasen* (C) : he has not yet come.

*mada desu* (C) : not yet.

*mada shokujī ga deki-nai ka?* (A) : isn't dinner ready yet ?

*mada mitsū ni natta bukkari desu* (C) : he is only in his third year (yet).

*mada kodomo desu* (C) : he is only a child.

*mada fune ni notta koto ga nai* (B) : I have never been on board a ship.

*watakushi ga dekakeru toki ni wa mada kaerimasen deshita* (C) : he hadn't returned when I left.

*mada arimasu ka?* (C) : have you any more ?

*watashi no heya ni mada arimasu* (C) : there are some more in my room.

*neko wa dai-kirai, inu nara mada ii keredo* (B) : I hate cats, dogs are not quite so bad.

**made**.

1) Until ; till ; as far as ; to ; even.

*watakushi ga kuru made o machi nasai* (B) : wait till I come.

*ima made* : hitherto.

*ima made wakarimasen deshita* (C) : I never understood it before.

*sore made* : till that time ; in the meanwhile.

*sore made gaman o shi nasai* (B) : be patient until then.

*sore made no koto ni itashimashō* (D) : don't let us think of it any more ; let us put it off till the Greek Calends.

*natsu-yasumi wa ku-gatsu no tōka made desu* (C) : the summer holidays last until the 10th of September, (school begins on the 11th : *made* is always inclusive).

*shinu made* : until death.

*shinu made wasuremasen* (C) : I'll remember it all my life.

*kyō made no kanjō wo shimashō* (C) : I'll make out the account to date.

*doko made o-ide nasaimashita ka?* (D) : how far did you go ?

*kono basha ni wa roku-nin made wa noremasu* (C) : this carriage will hold as many as six persons.

*kimono made mo yaketa* (B) : even my clothes were burnt.

*kodomo ni made baka ni sareru* (B) : even children make a fool of him.

*go-ji made shimbun wo yomimasu* (C) : I read the newspaper until five o'clock.

sore wa iu made mo nai (B): that goes without saying.

2) Made ni: by; before.

go-ji made ni shimbun wo yomimasu (C): I shall have read the newspaper by five o'clock.

ashita made ni dekimasu (C): it will be ready by tomorrow.

3) Doko made mo: see doko, 3). Itsu made: see itsu, 7).

mado, [ma<sup>1</sup> interval; to<sup>1</sup> door]. Window.

Comp.: mado-kake: a curtain for the window, [kake<sup>ru</sup> to hang].

mae.

1) As a q. ppn. referring to place—before; in front of.

mise no mae ni tatte imashita (C): he was standing before the shop.

o taku no mae wo toirimashita (C): I passed (the front of) your gate.

fujin no mae de sonna koto wo itte wa shitūrei desū (C): it is impolite to talk like that in the presence of ladies.

ano tokei-ya no mae de tomete o kure (A): stop at that watch-maker's.

2) When referring to time, the no is gen. dropped: it may be translated by: ago; before.

hachi-ji mae ni wa ikaremasen (C): I cannot be there before eight o'clock.

san-ji jip-pun mae: ten minutes to three.

san-nen mae: three years ago.

kono mae itta toki: the last time I went.

go-roku-nichi mae kara Tōkyō ni imasu (C): he has been in Tōkyō for the last five or six days.

3) After a verb, no is dropped: mae ni is used when an affirmative verb follows, mae wa when a negative verb follows.

shimbun wo mi-nai (or miru) mae ni shitte imashita (C): I knew it before I saw it in the newspaper.

ikru (or ika-nai) mae wa shirimasen deshita (C): I didn't know before I went.

4) As a q. adj. mae no means previous, front. mae no tōri: the previous way; the same as before.

sonna ni mae no koto de wa nai (B): it was not so long ago.

ichiban mae no basho ni kakete imasu (C): he is sitting in the front seat.

mae no o kata wa bōshi wo totte kudasai (C): will the gentlemen in front please remove their hats?

5) As an adv. mae ni means: previously; already; before.

kore wa mae ni (mo) kiita koto ga aru (B): I have already heard it.

mae ni hanashita tōri: as I said before.

6) mae motte, mae kara: beforehand.

mae motte kotowarimashita (C): I warned you beforehand.

7) Portion; share.

hitori mae: portion for one man.

meshi go-nin mae: rice for five men.

hiru no shokujī wa hitori-mae ichi-yen desū (C): the price of lunch is one yen each.

Comp.

mae-ashi: front legs.

mae-ba: front teeth, [ha<sup>2</sup> tooth].

mae-kake: an apron, [kake<sup>ru</sup> to hang].

hiru-mae: forenoon, [hiru midday].

magaru, v.i. [cogn. w. mage'ru v.t.]. To bend; become bent.

magatte i-ru: to be bent, crooked.

ano o jii-san wa koshi ga magatte imasu (C): that old man is bent with age.

kokoro ga magarimashita (C): his mind became perverted.

mage'ru, v.t. [cogn. w. magaru v.i.]. To bend; distort; yield.

mage<sup>te</sup> o-ide kudasai (D): please do come.

mago-mago. In a confused or bewildered way.

mago-mago suru: to be bewildered; to potter about.

mai. A.n. used for flat things such as sheets of paper, boards, coats, rugs, plates, etc.

nam-mai-me desū ka? (C): on what page is it?

Note:—3 sam-mai; 1000 sen-mai; nam-mai? mai-. Every; each; (used only in comp.).

Comp.: among others, the following:

mai-asa: every morning.

mai-ban: every night.

mai-do: every time.

mai-getsū: monthly; every month.

mai-nen: yearly; every year.

mai-nichi: daily; every day.

mai-shū: weekly; every week.

mai-toshi: yearly; every year.

mai-tsuki: monthly; every month.

mairu. To come; go.

o mairi ni iku: to go to pray at a temple.

Note.—Mairu is a humble verb, polite in the 1st person. The corresponding ordinary verbs are kuru (q.v.) to come, and iku (q.v.) to go.

majime (na). Serious; earnest.

majime desū (C): I am in earnest.

makaru, v.i. [cogn. w. make'ru v.t. to make cheaper]. To become cheaper; be able to cheapen.

sūkoshi makara-nai ka? (B): cannot you make it a little cheaper?

makasu, v.t. [cogn. w. make'ru v.i. to lose]. To defeat; beat down.

makeru.

1) To lose; v.i. [cogn. w. makasu v.t.].

makemashita (C): I have lost.

makeru ga kachi: to stoop to conquer.

2) To reduce the price; v.t. [cogn. w. makaru v.i.]; (the object of the verb is often not expressed).



nedan wo make'ru : to reduce the price.

go-sen o make mōshimashō (D) : "I will come down five sen.

takusan kaeba (nedan wo) makemasu ka? (C) : if I buy several, will you make it cheaper?

motto o make nasai (B) : please make it cheaper.

Der.: o-make ni : besides that.

**makkai**; **makka na**; (223); [ma<sup>2</sup> q.v.; akai red]. Flaring red.

**makkurai**; **makkura na**; (223); [ma<sup>2</sup> q.v.; kurai dark]. Pitch-dark.

**makkuroi**; **makkuro na**; (223); [ma<sup>2</sup> q.v.; kuroi black]. Jet-black.

**makoto**. Truth.

makoto no : true; real.

makoto ni : truly; in fact; really; (it sometimes has the force of a superlative).  
ano onna wa makoto ni kirei da (B) : that woman is very pretty.

**makul**. To roll up; wrap round; wind.

tokei wo maku : to wind a clock.

Comp.: maki-gumi : Japanese letter-paper (in rolls), [kami<sup>2</sup> paper].

**maku<sup>2</sup>**. To sow; sprinkle; scatter.

maka-nai tane wa hae-nai : seed which is not sown does not grow; one only reaps what one sows.

tōri e mizu wo maite kure (A) : water the street.

**makura**, [makul to roll up]. A pillow.

makura wo takaku shite nerare-nai (B) : I cannot sleep in peace (from anxiety).

**mama**.

1) Original condition or state.

tatta mama de iru : to remain standing.

sono mama : as it is.

sono mama ni shite oku ; ari no mama ni shite oku : to leave a thing as it is.

kiita mama wo o hanashi nasai (B) : tell it to me just as you heard it.

kutsu no mama de haite mo yō gozaimasu (D) : you may go in just as you are, with your boots on.

hako no mama de sūte o kure (A) : throw it away box and all.

iru wa neta mama yonde mo ko-nai (B) : the dog has settled himself down to sleep and won't come here though I call him.

iru wa kesa deta mama kaette ko-nai (B) : the dog went out this morning and has not come back.

2) Doing as one pleases.

watashi wa ano hito no suru mama ni nari-masu (C) : I am at his mercy.

**mame**. Beans; peas.

**mamamarui**; **mammaru na**; (223); [ma<sup>2</sup> q.v.; marui round]. Perfectly round.

**mamoru**. To protect; defend.

yakusoku wo mamoru : to fulfil a promise.

**man**. Ten thousand.

ichi-man : ten thousand; see *ichi*.

man ichi (or man ni hitotsū) sonna koto ga attara taihen da (B) : it would be terrible if by (a 10,000 to 1) chance such a thing were to happen.

**mane**. Imitation; mimicry.

mane wo suru : to imitate; mimic; take off.

Comp.: hito-mane : mimicking another person.

**mannaka**, [ma<sup>2</sup> q.v.; naka inside]. The very middle.

**manzoku**. Satisfaction.

manzoku suru : to be satisfied.

manzoku saseru : to satisfy.

manzoku ga deki-nai (B) : I cannot consider it satisfactory.

**maru**, [f. marui round]. A ball.

maru wo tsuku : to play at ball.

**maru**, [f. marui round]. A whole; a circle.

maru ichi-nen : a whole year.

maru jū-roku : sixteen years of age; see 311.

maru jūshika : two full days.

maru de : completely; entirely.

maru kiri; marukkiri : completely; entirely.

maru de shira-nai hito : an utter stranger.

maru de seiyō-jin no yō ni mieru (B) : he looks just like a foreigner.

**marui**. Round.

inu ga maruku natte iru (B) : the dog is sleeping curled up like a ball.

marui koe : a nice, agreeable voice.

Der.: *maru*; *maru*; *manmarui*; q.v.

**masaka**.

1) Used as a protest when hearing an absurd statement; used also to introduce an absurd supposition.

masaka! hardly! not likely! what nonsense!

masaka tabe-zu ni mo iraremai (B) : it is absurd to suppose we can live without eating.

masaka to omotte ga hontō deshita (C) : I thought it very unlikely, but it was true.

2) The critical time.

masaka no toki ni ; masaka no baai ni : in time of need.

**massaoi**; **massao na**; (223); [ma<sup>2</sup> q.v.; aoi green]. Perfectly green.

**masshikaku na**, [ma<sup>2</sup> q.v.; shi-kaku square]. Exactly square.

**masshiroi**; **masshiro na**; (223); [ma<sup>2</sup> q.v.; shi-roi white]. Snow-white.

**massugu na**, [ma<sup>2</sup> q.v.; sugu directly]. Perfectly straight.

massugu na ningen : an honest man.

massugu ni hakujō shi nasai (A) : confess frankly; own up.

**mata**. Again; another time; in addition.

mata mairimashō (D) : I will call again.

mata o me ni kakarimashō (D) : I will see you again.

*de wa mata...* (B) : well, I'll see you again.  
*mata irasshai* (C) : please come again.  
*sore wa mata dô iu wake desû?* (C) : what is the reason of that? (*Mata* has here an excl. force, indicating surprise).

**matchi**, [f. English]. Match.

*matchi wo suru* : to strike a match.

**matsu**<sup>1</sup>. Pine-tree.

**matsu**<sup>2</sup>. To wait.

*sûkoshi matte kudasai* (C) : please wait a moment.

*mô matte iraremasen* (C) : I cannot wait any longer.

*nani wo matte imasû ka?* (C) : what are you waiting for?

*sûkoshi o matase shite o kure* (A) ; *sûkoshi matsû yô ni itte o kure* (A) : tell him to wait a moment.

*o machi môshimashô* (D) : I shall expect you.

*machi ni matte iru keredomo ko-nai* (B) : I'm waiting and waiting for him, but he doesn't come.

Comp.

*machidô*, q.v.

*machi-kutabire-ru* : to get tired of waiting.

**mattaku**. Perfectly ; entirely.

*mattaku shirimasen* (C) : I don't know at all.

*mattaku da* (B) : quite so ; that is so.

*sore wa mattaku no koto desû* (C) : that is a true fact.

**mawari**, [stem of *mawaru* to turn round]. A turn ; circumference ; surroundings.

*kôen wo hito-mawari suru* : to take a turn in the garden.

*no mawari ni* : around.

*uchi no mawari ni ki ga uete arimasû* (C) : there are trees planted round the house.

**mawaru**, v.i. [cogn. w. *mawasû* v.t.]. To turn round.

*Nihon-jû hôte mawarimashita* (C) : I have been all round Japan.

*me ga mawaru* : to be surprised, startled ; to faint.

*me ga mawaru hodo isogashii* : busy enough to make one faint.

*shita ga mawaru* : to be very talkative.

*te ga mawaru* : to be active ; smart in doing things.

Der. : *mawari*, q.v.

**mawasû**, v.t. [cogn. w. *mawaru* v.i.]. To turn round.

*tegami wa hikkoshita tokoro e mawashite kudasai* (C) : please forward the letters to my new address.

*ki wo mawasû* : to suspect ; be jealous.

*me wo mawasû* : to be surprised, startled ; to faint.

*te wa mawasû* : to search for ; inquire after secretly.

**mazaru**, v.i. [cogn. w. *maze-ru* v.t.]. To become mixed.

*mazatte i-ru* : to be mixed.

*kono kome ni wa suna ga mazatte imasû* (C) : there is sand in this rice.

**maze-mono**, [mazeru to mix ; mono thing]. A mixture.

*maze-mono wo suru* : to adulterate.

*kono gyûnyû ni wa nani ka maze-mono ga shite aru ni chigai nai* (B) : I feel sure this milk is adulterated.

**maze-ru**, v.t. [cogn. w. *mazaru* v.i.]. To mix.  
*chichi ni mizu wo maze-ru* : to put water into the milk.

Comp.

*maze-awase-ru* : to mix (as by stirring or grinding together).

*maze-mono*, q.v.

**mazui**. Of nasty, insipid, disagreeable, bad taste ; (in the lit. and in the artistic sense).

**me**, [f. *mi-ru* to see]. Eye.

*Nihon-jin no me kara mireba* : from the Japanese point of view.

*me de mono wo iu* : to speak with the eyes.

*me wa kuchi hodo ni mono wo iu* : the eye speaks as much as the mouth.

*me de shirase-ru* : to wink at or make a sign with the eyes.

*me no mae ni aru* : to have something right in front of one's eyes.

*kiku ni wa me ga nai* (B) : he is awfully fond of chrysanthemums.

*o me ni kakaru* : to meet (somebody) ; (a humble verb, used politely in the 1st person).

*o me ni kake-ru* : to show (to somebody) ; (a humble verb, used politely in the 1st person).

*me wo kake-ru* : to treat kindly.

*hajimete o me ni kakarimasû* (D) : I am pleased to make your acquaintance.

*mata o me ni kakarimashô* (D) : I hope to see you again.

*me ni tsûku* : to strike the eye.

*me wo tsûke-ru* ; *me ga tsûku* : to notice.

*me ni tomaru* : to attract attention.

*me ni sawaru* : to try (tire) the eyes.

*hidoi me ni au* : to be treated cruelly.

*kurushii me ni au* : to undergo great suffering.

*hidoi me ni awase-ru* : to treat cruelly.

*me ga same-ru* : to wako.

*me wo nemuru* : to close the eyes.

*me ga tsubure-ru* : to lose one's eyesight.

*me wo nusumu* : to do something on the sly.

*me wo mawasû* ; *me ga mawaru* : to be surprised, startled ; to faint.

*me ni tatsû* : to be conspicuous.

*me wo odorokasû* : to surprise people.

*me wo maruku suru* : to be surprised ; to stare with wide-open eyes.

*ano junsu wa yoku me ga todoku* (B) : nothing escapes the vigilance of that policeman.



*me ni kado wo tatete okoru* : to get very angry and glare at somebody.

*e ni wa naka-naka me ga kiku* (B) : he is a very good judge of pictures.

*sūkoshi mo me wo hanasemasen* (C) : I cannot allow him out of my sight for a moment.

*me kara hana e nuke-ru* : to be exceedingly or abnormally clever.

*watashi no me no kuroi uchi wa sonna koto wa sase-nai* (A) : while I am alive you shall never do such a thing.

*me kara hi ga deru yō ni hidoku atama wo utta* (B) : he struck my head so hard he made me see stars.

*me no ue no kobu* : a kill-joy.

*me ga hayai* : to be observant, wide-awake.

Comp.

*medatsū* : to be conspicuous, [*tatsū* to rise].

*mekura* (q.v.) : a blind person, [*kurai* dark].

*megane* (q.v.) : spectacles, [*kane* metal].

*mabuta* : eyelid, [*futa* lid].

*hito-me* (q.v.) : attention ; glance.

*me-ue* : a superior.

*me-shita* : an inferior.

**me-**. A pref. meaning female ; it sometimes becomes *men-*, (177, 1) ; all names of animals do not admit this pref.

Comp.

*me-ushi* : cow.

*me-inu* : bitch.

*mendori* : hen, [*tori* bird].

*mei* ; *musume* ; *yome* ; q.v.

**-me.** Particle used for forming ordinal numbers ; see 285-288.

*sam-bam-me* : the third.

*nanatsū-me* : the seventh.

*roku-jikan-me* : the sixth hour.

*kyō kara tōka-me ni* : in ten days (on the tenth day) from today.

*kono byōki wa jikō no kawari-me ni okoru no desū* (C) : this illness breaks out at the change of season.

**mecha-kucha** (na) ; **mecha-mecha** (na). In confusion ; in disorder.

*mecha-kucha ni suru* : to break to pieces ; disarrange.

*mecha-kucha ni naru* : to go to pieces ; get in disorder.

**medetai.** Joyful ; happy.

*medetai koto* : a happy event.

*o-medetō gozaimasū* (D) : I congratulate you.

*o ko san ga o ūmare ni natte o-medetō gozaimasū* (D) : I congratulate you on the birth of your son.

**megane**, [*me* eye ; *kane* metal]. Spectacles ; eye-glasses.

*megane wo kake-ru* : to put on spectacles.

Comp.

*megane-goshi* : looking over one's spectacles, [*kosu* to cross over].

*megane-goshi ni mi-ru* : to look over one's spectacles.

**mei**, [*me-* female ; compare *oi* nephew]. Niece.

**mei2.** Name ; fame : (used only in composition).

Comp.

*meibutsū* : the famous production of a locality, [*butsū* thing].

*meishi* : a visiting-card.

*yūmei* : famous.

**mekata.** Weight.

*kono mekata wa dono gurai deshō* ? (C) : how much does this weigh ?

*mekata de uru* : to sell by weight.

**mekkaru.** See *mitsukaru*.

**mekke-ru.** See *mitsuke-ru*.

**mekki.** Plating.

**mekura**, [*me* eye ; *kurai* dark]. A blind person.

*sono yō na koto ni wa hontō ni mekura de gozaimasū* (D) : I am quite ignorant in such matters.

*mekura sen-nin me-aki sen-nin* : for every thousand blind people there are a thousand who can see, (and therefore it isn't worth while troubling because one man criticizes, another will be sure to approve).

Comp. : *aki-mekura* : a man with eyes open but blind ; an illiterate person.

**mendō.** Trouble ; bother.

*mendō wo mi-ru* : to take trouble.

*kodomo no mendō wo miru no wa haha no kakari desū* (C) : it is a mother's duty to look after her children.

*go mendō nagara sūkoshi tetsudatte kudasaimasen ka* ? (C) : will you be so kind as to help me a moment ?

*go mendō wo kakete makoto ni sumimasen* (D) : I am sorry to trouble you.

*mendō na* : troublesome.

*sūkoshi mo mendō na koto wa gozaimasen* (D) : it is not the least trouble.

*mendō na koto wo iu* : to raise difficulties.

**mendō-kūsai**, [*mendō* trouble ; *kūsai* q.v.]. Troublesome ; tiresome.

*ā, mendō-kūsai !* what a bore !

**mendori**, [*me-* female ; *tori* bird]. A hen.

**meshi**, [stem of *mesu* to eat]. Boiled rice ; a meal.

*meshi wo taku* : to cook rice.

Comp.

*asa-meshi* : breakfast.

*hiru-meshi* : midday meal.

*yū-meshi* : evening meal.

*meshi-agaru* : to eat ; drink ; (an honorific verb, used politely of the 2nd person).

**metta** (na). Raah ; reckless.

*metta ni* : rarely ; seldom ; (with neg.).

*metta ni aimasen* (C) : I see him but seldom.

*konna koto wa metta ni nai* (B) : such a thing rarely happens.

**mezurashii.** Rare; strange; singular.

*mezurashii koto wa arimasen* (C): it is not an unusual thing.

*kore wa o mezurashiū* (D): this is indeed an agreeable surprise; you are quite a stranger.

**mi.**

1) Body; self.

*mi no tame*: for one's own benefit.

*mi wo omou*: to think of one's own or somebody else's welfare.

*mi wo hiku*: to withdraw oneself.

*mi wo tateru*: to establish oneself in the world.

*mi no hodo wo shira-nai yatsū da* (B): he is a fellow who doesn't know his own position.

*mi no nageru*: to throw oneself into the water and drown oneself.

*mi ni oboe no nai koto desū* (C): I know absolutely nothing about the matter.

*mi wo irete shigoto wo suru*: to throw oneself into one's work.

*mi kara deta sabi da* (A): it is a misfortune you have brought on yourself; it serves you right.

*mi no ue banashi wo suru*: to talk of oneself.

2) Meat; flesh; fruit.

*sakana no mi*: the flesh of a fish.

*mi ga naru*: to bear fruit.

*niku mo taberu hō ga mi ni naru* (B): it is more nutritious to eat meat.

Comp.

*kimi*: yolk of an egg, [*ki* yellow].

*shiromi*: white of an egg, [*shiroi* white].

**mi-**, [*mitsū* three]. Three; abb. 2nd set of num. (276, 4); see *mitsū*.

**-mi.** Suffix added to the stem of adj.: it forms nouns that mean a tinge of a quality or sometimes the quality itself.

*akami*: a tinge of red, [*akai* red].

*amami*: sweetness, [*amai* sweet].

*amami ga usū gozaimasū* (D): it isn't quite sweet enough.

**michi.** Road; way.

*gakko e iku michi de asonde wa ike-nai* (A): you mustn't play on your way to school.

*michi ga tōi* (B): it is a long way.

*futsūka no michi desū* (C): it is a two days' journey.

*michi wo oshieru*: to show the way.

*michi wo machigaueru*: to lose one's way.

*dono michi ano hito ni wa chikai uchi ni aimasū* (C): anyway I shall see him shortly.

*michi-kūsa wo kuu*: to loiter about on the road.

Comp.

*ko-michi*: a lane.

*chika-michi*: a short cut.

*tsukai-michi* (q.v.): way of using.

*saka-michi*: a road up a hill.

**mie-ru**, v.i. [cogn. w. *mi-ru* v.t. to which it also serves as potential; and w. *miseru* v.t.].

1) To be able to see; be visible; come; appear.

*konnichi wa dare ka mieru deshō* (C): somebody will probably come today.

*mete kuru*: to come in sight; become visible.

*bōshi ga mie-nai* (B): I can't find my hat. *mie-nai*: invisible.

*mie-naku naru*: to become invisible; lose. *kasa ga mie-naku narimashita* (C): I have lost my umbrella.

2) To look; seem; appear.

*watakushi ni wa sō miemasū* (C): it seems so to me.

*dekita to mieru* (B): it appears to be finished.

*ōkiku miemasū* (C): it looks big.

*ano hito wa seiyō-jin no yō ni miemasū* (C): that man looks like a foreigner.

**migaku.** To polish; clean.

*ha wo migaku*: to clean the teeth.

*kutsu wo migaku*: to clean the boots.

*ude wo migaku*: to endeavour to improve (in manual work).

Comp.: *ha-migaki*: tooth-powder.

**migi.** The right-hand side.

*migi no hō*: on the right.

*ano sensei no migi ni deru mono wa nai* (B): that teacher has no superior.

**mihon**, [f. *mi-ru* to look; compare *tehon*]. A sample; model; pattern.

*mihon no tōri*: according to pattern.

*mihon yori ochite iru*: to be below sample.

*mihon-dōri de aru*: to be up to sample.

**miī**, [*mitsū* three]. Three (in the 3rd set of num.; see 271; 275).

**mijikai.** Short.

*ki no mijikai*: quick-tempered.

**mikka**, [*mitsū* three; -*ka* q.v.]. Three days; third day of the month.

**mimi.** Ear.

*chotto mimi wo kashite kure* (A): just listen a moment.

*mimi wa kazari-mono ka?* (A): are you deaf? (ironically); (lit. are your ears ornaments?).

*mimi ni mo tome-nai*: to pay no attention.

*mimi ni hairu*; *mimi ni hasamu*: to over-hear.

*mimi ni sawaru*: to offend the ears.

*mimi ni tsuku*: to arrest attention; obstruct sleep.

*mimi wo osaeru*: to stop the ears.

*ne-mimi ni mizu*: like having water dropped into the ear when sleeping; said of something that happens quite unexpectedly.

*mimi no tōi*: hard of hearing.

*kire no mimi*: aelvaige.



Comp.: *mimi-kosuri*; *mimi-uchi*: whispering in the ear.

**mina**, (often pron. *minna*). All.

*mina wa wakarimasen* (C): I don't understand it all.

*minna wakarimasen* (C): I don't understand it at all.

*mina kaeba ikura?* (B): how much would you take for the lot?

*minna de ikura desu ka?* (C): how much does it come to all together?

*Nihon no uchi wa mina chiisai no desu ka?* (C): 'are all Japanese houses small?

*minna ake-nakereba narimasen ka?* (C): must I open every one?

*uchi no kodomo wa minna kaze wo hikkimashita* (C): every one of the children has a cold.

Comp.

*mina-san*: every one (persons).

*mina-san wa ikaga desu?* (C): how are all your people?

**minami**. South.

**minato**, [*mizu* the water; *no* of; *toi* door]. Harbour; port.

**minikui**, [*miru* to see; *nikui* hateful]. Ugly.

**mi-nikui**, [*miru* to see; *-nikui* difficult]. Difficult to see.

**minna**. See *mina*.

**mi-okuru**, [*miru* to see; *okuru* to see off]. To see off; accompany a guest to some distance on his departure.

*chotto Tanaka san wo de-guchi made o mi-okuri shite o kure* (A): just accompany Mr Tanaka to the door (to show him out).

**miru**, v.t. [cogn. w. *mi-eru* v.i. which serves as potential, and with *mi-eru* v.t. which serves as quasi-causative].

1) To see; look at; read.

*ato de mimashō* (C): I will see it afterwards.  
*kodomo yo chotto mite ite kudasai* (B): please see to the child a moment.

*kono kinjo de miru tokoro wa doko desu ka?* (C): what is there to be seen here?

*miru yō na mono*: a thing worth seeing.

*doko kara mite mo*: from whichever side we look at it.

*Nihon-jin (no me) kara mireba*: from a Japanese point of view.

*Tōkyō kara mireba Kyōto wa semai* (B): Kyōto is small compared to Tōkyō.

*mita tokoro de wa byōninrashiku nai* (B): to look at him he doesn't appear an invalid.  
*tansū wo mita keredomo nakatta* (B): I looked in the chest of drawers but it wasn't there.

*miru miru uchi ga yakete shimatta* (B): while I was looking on (before my very eyes) the house was burnt.

*shimbun wo miru*: to read the newspaper.

*ori wa miru*: to watch for an opportunity.  
*isha ni mite morau*: to consult a doctor.

*itte mimashō* (C): let us go and see.

*itte mitara mon ga shimatte imashita* (C): I went and found the gate closed.

2) After a gerund *miru* generally (not always as may be seen in the last example) means that an action is to be attempted; there is doubt as to whether the action can be accomplished or whether the result will be satisfactory.

*yatte miru*: to try to do.

*hōtotsu yatte mitara dō desu?* (C): what do you say to having a try at it?

*mite mimashō* (C): I'll look and see what there is.

*musūko wa kami wo sagashite mimashita ga, arimasen deshita* (C): the lad looked for the paper but he couldn't find it; (not 'he tried to look for' but 'he looked for and tried to find').

*o tō-san ni hanashite mitara ii ja nai ka?* (B): hadn't you better tell your father? (perhaps he may be able to help you).

*watakushi no kangae wo itte mireba kō desu* (C): my opinion may be expressed in this way.

*mado wo akete mimashō* (C): I will try to open the window (which has stuck); I will open the window and we will see whether it is more agreeable so.

*kinō Tarō no gakkō ni itte mimashita* (C): yesterday I went and saw Tarō's school.

Note. In the imperative, the honorific verb *-goran nasaru* is gen. used instead of *miru*. *Goran nasai* may serve in most ordinary cases; to an inferior *goran* will do.

Der. and comp.

*mi-eru* (q.v.): to show.

*mi-obo*: recollection of having seen.

*mi-sokonau*: to overlook.

*mi-wake-ru*: to tell the difference by seeing.

*mi-okuru*; *minikui*; *mitai*; q.v.

**mise**, [*mi-eru* to show]. A shop; store; office.

*mise wo dasu*: to open a shop.

*mise wo haru*: to expose one's goods for sale.

*mise wo shimau*: to put away goods exhibited for sale; to give up one's business.

**mi-eru**, v.t. [cogn. w. *mi-eru* v.i.: it serves as quasi-causative of *miru* to see]. To show; exhibit.

*chotto miete kudasai* (C): please show it to me.

Der. and comp.

*mise* (q.v.): a shop.

*mise-mono*: a show; a thing shown for money.

**misoka**, [*mitsu* three; *tō* ten; *-ka* day]. The last day of the month (whether 30th or 31st).

Comp.: *ō-misoka*: the last day of the year.

**mitai** (na), [*mita* seen ; yō3 as if]. Like.  
*watakushi mitai na hito* : people like myself.  
*mitsū*, (gen. pron. *mitsū*). Three.

Note :—in comp. *mitsū* is abb. to *mi-*; see 276, 4.

**mitsūkaru**, (sometimes *mekkaru*), v.i. [cogn. w. *mitsūkeru* v.t.]. To become found; be found.

*nakunatta kane-ire ga mitsūkarimashita* (C) : the purse I had lost has been found.  
*mō jochū ga mitsūkarimashita ka?* (C) : have you found a servant yet?

**mitsūkeru**, (sometimes *mekkeru*), v.t. [*mi-ru* to see; *tsūkeru* q.v.: cogn. w. *mitsūkaru* v.i.]. To find; discover.

*kore wo mitsūkemashita, dare no desū ka?* (C) : I have found this, whose is it?

*nusunde iru tokoro wo mitsūkerareta* (B) : he was caught stealing.

*sono uchi kara ii no wo mitsūkete kudasai* (C) : please pick out the best from among these.

**mitsūmori**, [*mi-ru* to see; *tsūmori* calculation]. An estimate.

**mittomonal**, [*mitai* wishing to see; *mo* even; *nai* neg.]. Offensive to the sight; improper; shocking.

**mitsū**. See *mitsū*.

**miya**, [*mi* honourable; *ya* house]. A *shintō* shrine; (the honorific *o* is gen. pref.).

**miyage**. A present (gen. a souvenir from some place); (the honorific *o* is gen. pref.).

**miyako**. The capital; city.

**mizo**, [*mizu* water]. Ditch; drain.

**mizu**. Water (cold).

*mizu wo kumu* : to draw water.

*ueki ni mizu wo yaru* : to water plants; (*lit.* give water).

*nichi ni mizu wo maku* : to water the road.

*umi no mizu* : sea-water.

Comp. and der.

*ō-mizu* : a flood.

*shio-mizu* : salt water.

*mizu-umi* : a lake.

*mizuppoi* : watery, [see *-ppoi*].

*minato*; *mizo*; q.v.

**mo**.

1) Also; too.

*kore mo yatte kudasai* (C) : please send this also.

*yappari omae mo ikare-nai* (A) : you can't go either.

*naka ni wa ii no mo aru* (B) : some of them are all right; there are also some good ones among them.

*ashita mo Tōkyō e irasshaimasū ka?* (D) : are you going to Tōkyō again tomorrow?

2) Even.

*izu mo nai* : not even a chair.

*ichi-do mo mimasen* (C) : I have never seen it (not even once).

*kimono made mo yaketa* (B) : even my clothes were burnt.

*chitto mo kawara-nai* : just the same as ever; (*lit.* not changed even a little).

*watakushi mo dekimasen* (C) : I myself can't do it.

*hitotsū mo gozaimasen* (D) : there is not a single one.

*hitotsū mo nokorimasen* (C); *hitotsū mo nakunarimashita* (C) : there's not a single one left.

*kiku no mo kowai koto da* (B) : it is dreadful even to hear of it.

*ichi-nichi mo hayaku o kaeri nasai* (B) : please come back again as soon as you possibly can; don't delay a single day longer than you can help.

*atsūkute soba e mo ike-nai* (B) : it's so hot you can't even go near it.

*osoku mo* : at the latest.

*osoku mo jū-jī ni wa kaerimashō* (C) : I'll come back at the latest by ten o'clock.

3) Approximate quantity.

*ichi-nichi ni ni-ri mo arukeba takusan desū* (C) : if you walk five miles (two *ri*) or so a day that would be enough (e.g. for your health).

*ni-jū-yen mo areba kaeru* (B) : you could certainly buy it for twenty yen or so.

4) After the gerundial form of a verb or adj.—even if; although.

*ame ga fute mo ikimasū* (C) : I will go even if it rains.

*yasūkute mo kaimasen* (C) : I won't buy it even if it is cheap; although it is cheap I'll not buy it.

*sore ni shite mo* : even allowing that.

*ite mo kamaimasen* (C) : you may go if you like; (*lit.* even if you go it doesn't matter).

*chotto aruite mo tsūkaremasū* (C) : even if I only walk a little I get tired.

*ano hito wa kane ga takusan atte mo kin no tokei wo motte imasen* (C) : although that man has a lot of money, he hasn't got a gold watch.

*Tanaka San ni ni-do mo tegami wo dashite mo mada henji ga ko-nai* (B) : although I've written twice to Mr Tanaka, he hasn't answered yet.

*sonna koto wo itte mo watashi wa isogashikutte shiyō ga nai* (B) : I am sorry to hear that, but I am so busy I can't help you.

*chotto kangae mo wakaru deshō* (C) : if you think a moment you will understand it.

*osokute mo* : at the latest.

*ōkute mo* : at most.

*takakute mo go-yen to wa kakara-nai deshō* (C) : at the most it ought not to cost five yen.

The meaning of *mo* after a gerund is sometimes vague or equivalent to *wa*.



*omae no yō ni chiisakūte mo fu-jiyū da ne* (A) : it must be very inconvenient to be as small as you are.

*ammari asonde ite mo ike-nai* (B) : it won't do to remain here too long.

See also de 7).

- 5) *Mo ii* after an aff. gerund means permission, 'may'; after a neg. gerund it may be rendered by 'need not'.

*itte mo ii* (A) : you may go.

*ika-nakūte mo ii* (A) : you need not go.

*asonde imasū kara, o taku e agatte utatte mo yoroshiū gozaimasū* (D) : (not only can I sing in my own house but) as I have nothing to do I can even go and sing at yours (if you wish it).

*henji gurai yokoshite mo ii no ni* (B) : you might at least have answered my letter.

- 6) *Mo—mo* : a) in aff. sentences when *mo* follows nouns—'both—and'; when *mo* follows verbs or adj.—'whether—or'—'either—or'; b) in neg. sentences—'neither—nor'.

*sakana mo niku mo kaimashō* (C) : I will buy both fish and meat.

*ano hito wa Nihon-go mo hanasū shi, ji mo kakemasū* (C) : that man can not only speak Japanese but he can write the characters.

*shina mo ii shi nedan mo yasui* (B) : the quality is good and the price cheap.

*atte mo nakūte mo onaji koto desū* (C) : it doesn't matter whether it is there or not.  
*o tenki ga yokūte mo warukūte mo ikimasū* (C) : I shall go whether the weather is good or bad.

*densha ni noru koto mo aruku koto mo dekimasū* (C) : you can either go by tram-car or you can walk.

*densha ni noru koto mo aruku koto mo arimasū* (C) : sometimes I go by tram and sometimes I walk.

*pen mo empitsū mo arimasen* (C) : there is neither a pen nor a pencil.

*yomu koto mo kaku koto mo dekimasen* (C) : he can neither read nor write.

*mi mo shi-nakereba kiki mo shi-nai* (B) : I neither saw nor heard anything.

*ite mo i-nakūte mo kamaimasen* (C) : it doesn't matter whether he is there or not; neither his presence nor his absence matters.

- 7) Various : sometimes the meaning of *mo* is vague and need not be translated.

*onna mo arō ni anna mono wo moratta* (B) : with so many girls to choose from he went and married that creature.

*nai koto mo gozaimasen* (D) : it cannot be said that there are none; there are certainly some.

*dō suru koto mo deki-nai* (B) : it can't be helped.

*hana-mi mo mō ii koro da* (B) : now is the season for flower-viewing.

*waruku mo nai* (B) : that's not bad.

*ari-sō mo nai hanashi da* (B) : it's an improbable story.

*nan no kangae mo naku kiita mama hanashi-mashita* (C) : without thinking I said just what I had heard.

*naze ?—naze de mo* (B) : why ?—I don't know, don't wish to say or discuss the reason.

*mo sūkoshi* : a little more.

*mo hitotsū no* : the other one.

In examples like these last two, *mo* is a corruption of *mō* q.v.

- 8) *Doko mo* ; *doko—mo* ; *itsū mo* ; *itsū—mo* and such like expressions, see *doko*, *itsū*, etc.

*de mo*, see de 7, 8).

*ka mo shire-nai*, see ka<sup>3</sup> 4); *to mo see to* 20); *moshi mo*, see *moshi*.

## mō.

- 1) When referring to nouns of quantity, distance or time—more.

*kuruma wo mō ichi-dai yonde kure* (A) : call one more rikisha.

*mō mitsū shika arimasen* (C) : there are only three left.

*mō is-sen mo nai* (B) : I have not another sen left.

*kutabiremamashita kara mō arukemasen* (C) : I can go no further, I am too tired.

*mō tamara-nai* (B) : I can't stand it any longer.

*mō sūkoshi* : a little more.

*mō sūkoshi matte kudasai* (C) : wait a little longer.

*mō sūkoshi ōki na no ga hoshii* (B) : I want one a little bigger.

*mō sūkoshi de* : almost ; soon ; near.

*hon wa mō sūkoshi de yonde shimaimasū* (C) : I have almost finished the book.

*mō hito-tsūki de go-nen ni narimasū* (C) : in one month more it will be five years (since something happened).

*mō hitotsū* : one more.

*mō hitotsū no* : the other one.

*mō hitotsū no hako wo motte kite o kure* (A) : bring the other box.

*mō ichi-do* : once more ; again.

*mō ichi-do hanashite kudasai* (C) : please repeat what you said; please say it once more.

*mō (ni-do to) shite wa ike-nai* (A) : don't do it again.

- 2) When modifying a verb *mō* may refer to the present, the past or immediate future; it may be translated by: now, already, about to; it sometimes is not translated at all.

*mō shikata ga nai* (B) : there is no help for it now.

*mō jiki desū* (C) : it is quite near now ; it is only a little further ; it will soon be time.  
*mō dame desū* (C) : there is no help for it now ; it is no use to try now ; it is too late to remedy now.

*mō sen kara shitte imasū* (C) : I knew that long ago.

*mō kisha ga deru kara kippu wo o kai nasai* (B) : buy your ticket as the train is about to start.

*mō tsuita darō* (B) : he has probably arrived by now.

*o uchi wa mō taitei dekita deshō* (C) : your house must be about finished now.

*mō kisha ga demashita* (C) : the train has already left.

*mō yoku narimashita ka?* (C) : are you quite well again ?

### 3) Various.

*mō takusan* (B) : that is enough.

*mō kore kiri* (B) : once for all ; never after this time ; this is all there is.

*mō ii* (B) : that will do ; no more thank you.

*mō o shimai* (B) : that is all (the last) ; it is all over.

*mō sore dake naraba* : if there is nothing else.

**mochiron.** Of course ; certainly.

*sore wa mochiron no koto desū* (C) : that is a matter of course.

**moe'ru**, v.i. [cogn. w. *mosū* v.t.]. To burn.

**mōkaru**, v.i. [cogn. w. *mōkeru* v.t.]. To be earned (of money) ; be profitable.

*kane ga mōkarimasū* (C) : there is money to be made in it.

**mōkeru**, v.t. [cogn. w. *mōkaru* v.i.]. To gain, earn, make money.

*ichi-nichi ni ikura mōkemasū ka?* (C) : how much do you earn a day ?

*shichi-jis-sen mōkeru darō* (B) : you will make seventy sen.

*mōke-guchi ga dekita* (B) : an opportunity for making money has presented itself.

**mokuroku.** A catalogue ; list.

**mokuyō**, **mokuyō-bi** ; [see *yō-bi*]. Thurs. day.

**momen.** Cotton ; cotton cloth.

Comp.: *momen-ito* : cotton thread.

**mon.** A gate.

Comp.: *ura-mon* : the back-gate.

**mon'**. Abb. of *mono* q.v.

**mondai.** The question ; matter in discussion.

*mondai ni nara-nai koto* : something about which there is no question ; something out of the question.

*ikiru ka shinu ka no mondai desū* (C) : it is a question of life and death.

Comp.: *betsū-mondai* : a different question.

**mono**, (sometimes abb. to *mon'* or *no* ; see no 12, 13). Thing ; (for difference between *mono* and *koto* see 183).

1) Generally refers to concrete and material things.

*watashi no mono wa minna heya ni motte itte o kure* (A) : take all my things up to my room.

*sonna mono wa arimasen* (C) : there is no such thing.

*anna mono!* (B) : it is a mere trifle.

*kore wa taihen henri na mono desū* (C) : this is a very useful thing.

2) *Mono* often refers to persons (impolite) or animals.

*anna mono no iu koto wa ate ni narimasen* (C) : you can't rely on what that person says.

3) *To iu mono*—a (thing) called.

*yakurō to iu mono wo kaimashita* (C) : I bought a thing called a *yakurō*.

*Tarō to iu mono ga kimashita* (C) : a man called *Tarō* came.

4) *Mono* has an abstract meaning akin to *koto* in this number and all the following.  
*sonna mon(o) deshō* (C) : that's just about it.

*mono ni natta* (B) : there was some result.  
*sono mono no ii-kata wa nan desū ka?* (A) : what do you mean by speaking to me like that ?

*mono mo ii-yō de kado ga tatsu* : much depends on how you say a thing.

*mono wa tameshi da* (B) : it is worth while trying.

5) *Mono* serves sometimes to substantivize verbs or adjectives.

*tenki ga tsuzuita mono da kara kawa no mizu ga heta* (B) : as we've had nothing but fine weather lately the water in the rivers has diminished.

*ano ko wa amari naku mono desū kara o kō-san ni butaremashita* (C) : as that child was crying so much, his mother beat him.  
*kore wa empitsū de kaita mono darō* (B) : this must have been written with a pencil.

*Nippon mo kawareba kawaru mon' da* (B) : how Japan has changed !

*naka-naka rikō na ko mo aru mono da* (B) : well, some boys are clever, and no mistake.

*ashita furō mono nara taihen da* (B) : it would be extremely inconvenient should it happen to rain tomorrow.

*da mon' desū kara ; da mon' de* : therefore.  
*amari nedan ga takai mono desū kara, dare mo kau hito ga arimasen deshita* (C) : as the price was so high, there was no buyer.

*mō kaeshi-sō na mono da* (B) : he ought to have returned it by now.

*anna onna wa sō aru mono ja nai* (B) : there are not many women like her.

*dekiru mono nara* : if possible.

*naku mono ja nai* (A) : don't cry.



- 6) After the first form of the present (aff. or neg.), *mon(o) desū ka* or *mon(o) ka* is a denial of, or a protest against, an absurd statement.

*tamaru mono ka?* (A): you don't expect me to stand that, do you?

*abinakite mo kamau mono desū ka?* (B): who cares even if it is dangerous?

*anata no tegami nanzo yomu mon' desū ka?* (C): I'd never dream of reading your letters.

*Tarō wa Ei-go ga wakaru deshō ne—wakaru mon' desū ka?* I suppose Tarō can understand English—what an idea, of course he can't understand it.

- 7) After the first form of the present, *mon(o) da* has an exclamatory force.

*okashi na hito mo areba aru mono da!* (B): what a strange man!

*ken na koto ga areba aru mon' da!* (B): what singular things do happen sometimes!

*omou yō ni wa ikimasen mono desū* (C): things don't always go as one thinks they will.

- 8) *Mon(o) da* is sometimes used after the desiderative without adding materially to the meaning.

*mizu ga nomitai mon' da* (B): I would like some water to drink.

*komban dekiru yō ni shitai mono desū* (C): I hope it will be ready tonight.

- 9) After the first form of the neg. future, *mono de mo nai* means bare possibility.

*ame ga furumai mono de mo nai* (B): it may rain (though I don't think it will).

- 10) *Mono wo* is sometimes used elliptically at the end of a sentence.

*kō sureba dekiru mono wo* (B): you could do it in this way if you tried (but you haven't tried although you ought to have done so).

- 11) *Mono* at the end of a sentence sometimes resembles an interjection and signifies a protest or complaint: this construction is commoner among women.

*de mo warui no desū mono* (B): yes, but it is a bad one.

*ikitai (desū) mono* (B): yes, but I'd like to go.

*sei'yō-jin desū mono* (C): well, he's a foreigner, (an explanation of his way of acting).

- 12) *Mono* no has sometimes the meaning of but; however; nevertheless.

*kanashiku nai to wa iu mono no yappari kanashii darō* (B): you say you do not feel sad but I think you must.

*yomi wa yonda mono no uwakari wa shimai* (B): he read it but I don't think he understood it.

- Comp. *Mono* serves to form an immense number of compounds: it may mean either person or thing; and, with a few

exceptions, it is always the second component. It is gen. added to the stems of verbs or adj. or to nouns. The following are some of the commonest compounds.

*mono-oki*: a store-room.

*mono-zuki*: inquisitiveness, [sūki like].

*inaka-mono*: a peasant.

*hitori-mono*: a person who is not married.

*namake-mono*: an idle person.

*bonyari-mono*: an absent-minded person.

*hataraki-mono*: an industrious person.

*kemono*: a quadruped.

*uri-mono*: a thing for sale.

*nu-mono*: sewing (things to be sewn).

*taki-mono*: fuel; firewood.

*otoshi-mono*: a thing dropped.

*maze-mono*: a mixture.

*mise-mono*: a thing exhibited.

*hori-mono*: a carving.

*kai-mono*: a purchase.

*kimono*: a dress.

*morai-mono*: gift received.

*nise-mono*: an imitation article.

*nomi-mono*; *nomu-mono*: something to drink.

*okuri-mono*; *ageru-mono*: a present (to give to another).

*tatemono*: a building.

*wasure-mono*: something forgotten.

*yakimono*: pottery.

*tabe-mono*: food.

*azukari-mono*: something received in deposit.

*azuke-mono*: something given in deposit.

*sentaku-mono*: things for the wash.

*juyu-mono*: winter clothes.

*kana-mono*: things made of metal.

*takara-mono*: something precious.

*yasumono*: a cheap article of inferior quality.

*aomono*: vegetables.

*betsū-mono*: a different thing.

*hon-mono*: a genuine article.

Note the difference between *mono* as 1st or 2nd component in the foll. couples.

*mono-morai*: a receiver of things, i.e. a beggar.

*morai-mono*: a thing received, i.e. a gift.

*mono-wasure*: the forgetting of facts; forgetfulness.

*wasure-mono*: a thing (e.g. an umbrella) left behind, forgotten.

*monosashi*, [mono thing: *sasu* to measure]. A foot-rule.

*morau*, is a plain verb and must not be used when speaking of an act done in favour of the 1st person by the 2nd person, unless the 2nd person is an inferior.

- 1) To receive.

*dare ni moratta no desū ka?* (C): whom did you receive it from? who gave it to you?

*kore wo moraimashō* (C) : I will take (buy) this one.

*yome wo morau* : to marry (said of the man when the bride comes to his house to form part of his family).

*muko wo morau* : to marry (said of the woman when the bridegroom comes to her house to form part of her family).

- 2) *Morau* after a gerund shows that the action is performed in favour of the 1st person, and generally in answer to his request : this construction often resembles the passive or the causative.

*jōbu ni koshiraeite moraitai* (B) : I want it made strongly.

*nēsan ni tegami wo kaite moraimashita* (C) : my (elder) sister wrote the letter for me.

*ano hito ni itte moraimashō* (C) : I shall get him to go.

*asa hayaku okoshite moraitai* (B) : I wish to be called early.

*isha ni mite morau* : to consult a doctor.

*Tanaka San de san-nen hatarakasete moraimasu* (C) : Mr Tanaka has consented to engage me for three years.

*oji san ni omoshiroi hanashi wo kikasete moraimashita* (C) : my uncle told me an interesting story.

*tabeshashite morau* : to receive food from another.

*kono negai wo kiite moraeru ka shira?* (B) : I wonder whether he will accede to my request.

*anata ni tegami wo kaite moraeru to itagō ga ii* (B) : if you could manage to write the letter for me it would suit me very well.

- 3) In the imperative and future, whether after a gerund or not, *morau* often means to ask or request.

*mizu wo ip-pai moratte o kure* (A) : ask for a glass of water.

*dare ka ni naoshite moraimashō* (C) : I will ask somebody to correct it for me.

Note.—The humble verb corresponding to *morau* is *itadaku* ; in the sense of receiving, you may also say *chōdai suru*.

Comp.

*mono-morai* : a beggar.

*morai-mono* : a gift.

*morai-mono nara natsū de mo wata-ire* : if it is a question of receiving a gift, one is glad to receive a padded garment even in summer.

**moru.** To leak.

*ame ga furu to yane ga morimasu* (C) : when it rains the roof leaks.

**moshi.** Supposing ; if ; (*moshi* is foll. by a conditional or a construction equivalent to a conditional).

*moshi sonna koto ga areba* : supposing that should happen.

*moshi mo ; moshi ka ; moshi ya* ; are used when the supposition is considered highly improbable.

*moshi mo ame ga futtara dō shimasu ka?* (B) : supposing (though the weather is so fine now) it were to rain, what would you do ?

*moshi ka shitara komban wa kaette kimasen* (C) : it may happen (though very improbable) that I shall not return tonight.

*Tasuke ni moshi mo no koto ga areba* : supposing anything were to happen to Tasuke.

**moshi<sup>2</sup>**, [corr. of the stem of *mōsū* to speak]. Exclamation used to draw attention ; I say ; look here ; (often repeated *moshi, moshi*).

**mōshi-wake**, [*mōsū* to speak ; *wake* reason]. An excuse ; see *wake*.

**mosū**, v.t. [cogn. w. *moeru* v.i.]. To burn.

*hi wo mosu* : to light a fire.

**mōsū**. To speak ; say.

*kore wa nan to mōshimasu ka?* (C) : what is this thing called ?

*sakki mōshita tōri* : as I said before.

*chichi wa Tōkichi to mōshimasu* (D) : my father is called Tōkichi.

Note : *mōsū* is a humble verb and is practically never used in the 2nd person ; the corresponding plain verb is *iu* or *hanasu*.

Comp.

*mōshi-age-ru* : same meaning as *mōsū*, but still more humble.

*mōshi-wake* : an excuse ; see *wake*.

*Mōsū* is also placed after *o* and the stems of certain verbs : it has the effect of making the verb humble ; e.g. *o tanomi mōshimasu* ; *o sasshi mōshimasu* ; *o machi mōshimasu* ; *o age mōshimasu* ; *o hanashi mōshimasu* ; *o make mōshimasu*.

**moto.**

- 1) Origin ; basis ; foundation.

*machigai no moto* : the origin of a mistake.

*moto kara no koto desu* (C) : it is a thing which has been so from the first.

*moto no tokoro ni shimatte oite kure* (A) : put it back in its old place.

*moto yori no koto desu* (C) : of course, that's only natural.

- 2) Capital.

*ano shōbai wa yoppodo moto ga kakaru* (B) : that business requires a large capital.

- 3) Formerly.

*ano hito wa moto wa heitai deshita* (C) : he was formerly a soldier.

*moto wa kisha to iu mono ga nakatta* (B) : formerly there were no such things as trains.

Comp. : *ashi-moto* : the place where one steps or is standing.

**motsū.**

- 1) To hold (in the hand) ; have.



*nani wo motte iru no deshō?* (C): what has he got there (in his hands)?

*kane wo motte imasū ka?* (C): have you any money with you?

*kanai wo motsū:* to have a wife.

*ko wo motsū:* to have a child.

*uchi wo motsū:* to keep a house.

*mise wo motsū:* to keep a shop.

*motte kuru:* to bring; take to my place.

*motte iku:* to carry; take.

*motte kaeru:* to bring back; take back.

*dare ga watakushi no hon wo motte ikimashita ka?* (C): who has taken my book?

*himo wo motte iwaku:* to tie with a string.

2) To last; endure.

*kono kutsu wa naka-naka nagaku motsū* (B): these boots wear very well.

*kono tenki wa nagaku mota-nai deshō* (C): I don't think this fine weather will last long.

*kore wa mochi ga ii* (B): this wears well.

Comp.

*mochi-ageru:* to lift up.

*mochi-dasū:* to carry away.

*mochi-mono:* things carried by or on one; property.

*kanemochi:* a rich man.

**motto.** More; still; comparative inflexion of an adj.

*motto kugi ga irimasū* (C): I want some more nails.

*motto takusan:* still more.

*motto sūkunai:* still less.

*motto ii:* better.

*motto benkyō shi-nakereba ikemasen* (A): you must be more industrious.

*motto ushiro e:* further back.

**moyō.**

1) Pattern; design.

*kono moyō de wa ōki-sugimasū* (C): this pattern is too big.

2) State; condition.

*ima no moyō de wa ame ga furi-sō desū* (C): it looks like rain now.

Comp.: *sora-moyō:* the appearance of the sky.

**mu-**, [mutsū six]. Six; abb. 2nd set of num. (276, 4); see *mutsū*.

**mū**, [mutsū six]. Six (in the 3rd set of num. see 271; 275).

**muchū** (de or ni). Absent-mindedly; absorbed in anything; full of one idea and unconscious of all else.

**muda** (na). Useless; unavailing.

*muda ni suru:* to waste.

*jikan wo muda ni suru:* to waste time.

*hone-ori ga muda ni narimashita* (C): my efforts were in vain.

*itte mo muda darō* (B): even if I tell him it will be useless.

Comp.

*muda-banashi;* *muda-guchi:* idle talk, [ha-nashi talk; *kuchi* mouth].

*muda-ashi;* *muda-bone;* *muda-zukai;* q.v.

**muda-ashi**, [muda useless; *ashi* legs].

*muda-ashi wo suru:* to go on a useless errand.

**muda-bone**, [muda useless; *hone* bone: compare *hone-ori*].

*muda-bone wo oru:* to make vain efforts.

**muda-zukai**, [muda useless; *tsūkau* to spend]. Useless expenses.

*muda-zukai wo suru:* to throw away one's money.

**mugi.** Corn; cereal.

Comp.

*ō-mugi:* barley.

*ko-mugi:* wheat.

**muika**, [mutsū six; -ka day]. Six days; sixth day of the month.

**mujaki** (na). Innocent; simple.

**mukae-ru**, v.t. [? *mukau* to face]. To go out to meet; welcome.

*teishaba made mukae ni ikimashita* (C): I went to the station to meet him.

*jochū wa mō O Kyō San wo mukae ni ikimashita ka?* (C): has the servant gone to fetch Miss Kyō (e.g. from school)?

*o isha wo mukae-ru:* to send for a doctor.

**mukai**, [mukau to face]. The opposite side.

*ginkō no mukai:* opposite the bank.

Comp.: *mukai-gawa:* the opposite side of the road.

**mukashi.**

1) Ancient times; a long time ago.

*mukashi wa kisha to iu mono ga nakatta* (B): in olden times there were no such things as trains.

*mukashi kara shōjiki na hito de atta* (B): he always has been an honest man.

*mukashi wa mukashi, ima wa ima:* things have changed now; other times, other customs.

2) A period of ten years; (in this meaning it takes the abb. 2nd set of num. 276, 4; but is hardly ever used with any num. above one).

*jū-nen hito-mukashi:* ten years are a very long time (things may have changed since then).

**mukau**, v.i. [cogn. w. *mukul* v.i. and *muke-ru* v.t.]. To face; stand opposite to.

*sono uchi ni mukatte migi no hō ni arimasū* (C): it is on your right as you face that house.

Der.: *mukai;* *mukō;* q.v.

**muke-ru**, v.t. [cogn. w. *mukul* v.i. and *mukau* v.i.]. To turn.

*kao wo watakushi no hō ni mukemashita* (C): he turned his face towards me.

**muke-ru**<sup>2</sup>, v.i. [cogn. w. *muku*<sup>2</sup> v.t.]. To peel off; come off.

**muki**, [mukul to face]. The direction or frontage.

*kono uchi wa muki ga warui* (B) : this house has a bad aspect.

*muki wo kaeru* : to turn (something) round.

*Tarō to Jirō to wa jūtari to mo rikō desū ga muki ga chigaimasū* (C) : Tarō and Jirō are both clever but in a different way.

*inaka muki* : suitable for the country.

*omote muki* : in appearance ; seemingly.

**muko.** Son-in-law ; husband of a daughter of the house who has become a member of his wife's family and taken her name ; compare *yome*.

**mukō**, [mukai opposite].

1) The other side.

*mukō no kishi* : the opposite bank.

2) The other person or party.

*mukō ga iya to ieba shikata ga nai* (B) : if the other party refuses, there is nothing to be done.

*kuru yō ni to itta ga, mukō de dō shite mo korare-nai to iimasū* (C) : I told him to come but he said it was absolutely impossible for him to do so.

3) Beyond ; yonder ; over there.

*hashi no mukō ni* : beyond the bridge.

*mukō ni mieru uchi* : the house you see over there.

*mukō kara kuru densha wa Shinagawa yuki desū* (C) : the tram-car coming over there, goes to Shinagawa.

*jū-san nichi kara mukō yokka-kan* : on the 13th and the three (not four) following days.

Comp.: *mukō-gawa* : the opposite side (as of a river), [kawa<sup>2</sup> side].

**mukū**, v.i. [cogn. w. *mukau* v.i. and *mukeru* v.t.].

1) To turn ; face.

*kono uchi wa umi ni muite imasū* (C) : this house looks on the sea.

2) To be in request ; be suitable.

*kono shina-mono wa inaka ni mukimasū* (C) : this article is suitable for the country. *sono yō wa shigoto ni wa mukimasen* (D) : he is not suited for such work.

Comp.: *furi-muku* : to turn ; face towards.

**mukū<sup>2</sup>**, v.t. [cogn. w. *mukeru<sup>2</sup>* v.i.]. To peel.

*kawa wo muku* : to skin or peel off the rind.

**mune.** Breast ; chest ; mind.

*mune ga warui* : to have a sickly feeling in the stomach.

*onna wa mune ga semai mono da* (B) : women are weak-spirited creatures.

*mune wo kogasū* : to be deeply in love.

**mura.** A village.

**murasaki** (no or na). Purple.

**muri.** Unreasonableness ; injustice ; violence.

*muri na* : unreasonable ; unjust.

*sore wa muri desū* (C) : that is unreasonable.

*muri na koto wo shite wa ike-nai* (A) : don't do anything unreasonable ; don't use force.

*sūkoshi mo muri na koto wa mōshimasen* (D) : I am not saying anything unreasonable.

*sonna muri na shigoto wo suru to byōki ni naru* (B) : you will make yourself ill if you work like that beyond your strength.

*okotta no mo muri wa nai* (B) : it is no wonder that he got angry.

*muri ga tōreba, dōri hikkomu* : when violence passes by, reason withdraws itself.

**mushi.**

1) Insect ; vermin.

*ki ni mushi ga tsuita* (B) : the tree is infected by insects.

2) Various.

*mushi ga shirasete no deshō* (C) : I suppose it must have been a presentiment.

*mushi wo osae-ru* : to restrain one's anger.

*mushi ga okoru* : to become fretful (of a child).

*mushi no ii hito* : a man full of self-confidence.

**musubu.** To tie ; knot ; complete.

*himo wo musunde kure* (A) : tie the string.

*are wa yōyō ni wo musunda* (B) : he has succeeded at last.

*nashi mo yōyō ni wo musubimashita* (C) : the pear-tree at last is bearing fruit.

Der.: *musubine* : a knot.

*musubime ga kodoketa* (B) : the knot has come undone.

**musuko**, [kol child]. A son ; boy.

Comp.: *hitori-musuko* : an only son.

**musūme**, [mo- female]. A daughter ; girl.

Comp.: *hitori-musūme* : an only daughter.

**mutsum**, (gen. pron. *muttsū*). Six.

Note :—in comp. *mutsum* is abb. to *mu-* ; see 276, 4.

**muzukashii.** Difficult ; hard.

*muzukashii hito* : a person hard to get on with.

*muzukashii kao wo shiteru* (B) : he has a sour face.

*ashita no o tenki wa muzukashii yō desū* (C) : the weather tomorrow seems doubtful to me.

*ano hito no byōki wa muzukashii* (B) : his illness is very serious.

**myō-**, (used only in comp.). Tomorrow.

*myōnichi* : tomorrow.

*myōasa* : tomorrow morning.

*myōban* : tomorrow evening.

*myōgonichi* : the day after tomorrow, [go after].

**myōji.** Family name ; surname.

**n'**

1) Contraction of *no* q.v.

*nani wo suru n' desū?* (A) : what are you doing ?



*doko e iku n' da?* (A): where are you going?

2) Occasional contraction of *ni*.

*iya n' narimashita* (B): it has become distasteful to me.

**nal.** Name.

*sō iu na no hito wa shirimasen* (C): I don't know anybody of that name.

*watakūshi no na de karite kudasai* (C): please borrow it in my name.

*Yokohama de ikura ka na no aru hito da* (B): he is a man of some reputation in Yokohama.

*na no ureta hito*: a well-known person.

*na wo age-ru*: to become famous.

*na wo toru*: to get a (good or bad) name.

*na wo tsuke-ru*: to name.

**Comp.**

*na-ate*; *ate-na*: an address, [ate purpose].

*nadakai*; *namae*: q.v.

**na2.**

1) A particle added to nouns to form q. adj. (212 et seqq.).

2) Used to form the neg. imperative.

*sonna koto wo suru na* (A): don't do that.

3) Used after the stem of a verb in aff. imperative sentences; also, by women, after such words as *kudasai*, *chōdai*, *irasshai*, *nasai*.

*o tabe na* (A): eat it.

*kudasai na* (B): please give it to me.

4) Used as an interj. about equivalent to *ne* q.v.

5) *Na no* after a noun: a) may be a q. adj. foll. by *no* meaning 'one', or b) may have nothing to do with a q. adj. but serve merely to make the sentence less curt or slightly emphatic: in this latter sense (b) it is often foll. by *de* (or the contr. *da*, *desū*, etc.) and it may then be contr. to *nan*.

*kirei na no*: a) a pretty one; b) it is pretty.

*suki na no*: a) the one I like; b) I like it.

*asūko wa Ise-ya no jimen na no da* (B): that site over there belongs to Ise-ya.

*mezurashii yoi ima na no de, minna hoshigarimashita* (C): as it was such a very good horse, everybody wanted to have it.

*kore deshō ka?*—*a!* *sore nan desū* (C): is this it?—*ah!* yes, that is it.

*ano hito no ōki na koe na no ni odorita* (B): I was surprised at the loudness of his voice.

**nā.**

1) Interj. about equivalent to *nē* q.v.

2) Contr. of *no wa*.

**nabe.** A pot; saucpan.

**nadakai**, [nal name; takai high]. Famous; celebrated.

**nagai.** Long (distance or time).

*anata wa nani wo shite mo nagaku kakari-*

*masi* (B): you take a long time over everything you do.

*ki no nagai hito*: a patient man.

*nagaku suru*: to lengthen.

**Comp.**

*naga-i*: staying long, [iru to be].

*naga-i suru*: to remain long (on a visit).

*nagasa*: length, [see -sa].

*naga-iki*: a long life, [iki-ru to live].

*hosonagai*: slender, [hosoi thin].

**nagara.**

1) After the stem of a verb, it gen. means that two actions are carried on simultaneously; while; during; as.

*mise e iki nagara yomimashō* (C): I will read it as I go to the office.

2) After the stem of a verb it sometimes, after a noun it always, has an adversative sense: although; nevertheless.

*warui to shiri nagara shita* (B): he did it though he knew it was wrong.

*go mendō* (or *kurō*) *nagara sūkoshi tetsudatte kudasaimasen ka?* (C): I am sorry to trouble you, but will you be so kind as to help me a moment?

*shitsūrei nagara...*: pardon me, but...

*o kinodoku nagara...*: I am very sorry for you, but...

**nageru.** To throw.

*ishi wo nage-ru*: to throw a stone.

*mi wo nage-ru*: to throw oneself into the water (so as to drown oneself).

*saji wo nage-ru*: to give up a case as hopeless; throw up the sponge.

**nagusame-ru.** To comfort.

**nai** is in reality an adjective meaning 'non-existent' (194); it serves to form the neg. of adj. (195-197; 213; 231; 232; 235): it serves also as negative to the verb *aru* to be, to have, (for conjugation, see 93; 94). The following are some typical examples of its use.

1) Simple negation.

*kono hon wa yoku nai* (B): this book is not a good one.

*hima ga nai* (B): I have no time.

*watakūshi ja nai* (B): not I.

*sore ja nai* (B): that is not it.

*sō ja nai* (B): that is not the way (to do it); that is not so; I deny it.

*sō de nai to omoimasū* (C): I doubt it.

*isu mo nai* (B): there is not even a chair.

*sūkoshi mo nai* (B): there is absolutely none at all.

*sore hodo waruku wa nai* (B): not so bad as that.

*sore ja nai, sono tonari no desū* (C): not that one, the next one to it.

*aru ka, nai ka, shiritai* (B): I want to know whether there are any or not.

*hōka de mo nai ga ano hito no tame ni ikare-*

- nakatta no desū* (C) : I should have gone but for him.
- iku yori hoka wa nai* (B) : there is nothing for it but to go.
- ko-nai uchi ni* : before he comes, (*lit.* during his not coming).
- nai hō ga ii* (B) : better without it.
- nai gurai da* (B) : there is hardly any.
- iu made mo nai koto da* (B) : it goes without saying.
- nai mono wa ageraremasen* (C) : I can't give you what I haven't got.
- watakushi wa kesshite anata wo shikaru no de wa nai* (B) : I am far from blaming you.
- Double negatives are common in Japanese and even three are sometimes met with. Besides the three examples given here, see several others under 2) and 3).
- nai koto wa nai* (B) : there is some; (*lit.* it is not a fact that there is none).
- nai nara nai de ii* (B) : if there is none, very well.
- shi-nakereba nara-nai koto de wa nai* (B) : it is not an obligatory thing, (*lit.* it is not a fact that it is a thing which it won't do not to do).
- 2) The gerund serves to form several interesting idioms; among others, a) *nakūte wa ike-nai* (or *nara-nai*) means 'must' (58, 15; 168, 1, c); b) *nakūte mo ii* signifies the neg. of an obligation, or permission not to do something (168, 4).
- kaka-nakūte wa ikemasen* (B) : you must write.
- kane ga nakūte wa ike-nai* (B) : you must have money.
- ika-nakūte mo ii* (B) : you needn't go.
- nakūte mo ii* (B) : I can do without it.
- nakūte wa shiyō ga nai* (B) : I cannot do without it.
- nakūte nana-kūse* : one has at least seven faults.
- shigoto ga nai de komarimasu* (C) : I am hard up, as I have no work to do.
- shigoto wo shi-nai de ichi-nichi nete imasu* (C) : instead of doing his work he sleeps all day.
- shabera-nai de hataraku hazu da* (A) : you ought to work and not talk.
- iware-nai de mo suru hazu da* (A) : you should do these things without having to be told.
- kono tegami wa kette wa hara-nai de kima-shita* (C) : this letter came without a stamp.
- 3) The most important idiom of the neg. conditional is that in which *nakereba* (or *nai to*) is foll. by *ike-nai* (or *nara-nai*) : it may gen. be translated by 'must' (168, 1, a). Examples of this and other constructions of the neg. conditional are given here.

- kōri ga nakereba ikemasen* (B) : you must have some ice.
- ika-nakereba narimasen* (C) : I must go.
- shizuka ni shi-nakereba atchi e o-ide* (A) : you must either be quiet or go away.
- mi mo shi-nakereba kiki mo shi-nai* (B) : I neither saw nor heard anything.
- tegami wo kaku hō ga ii, de nakereba ko-nai* (B) : you had better write or else he will not come.
- kisha de nakereba ikemasen* (C) : it must be by train (that you send the goods; that I go; etc.).
- moshi kaze ga ōkikereba koko-ira wa minna yakete shimawa-nakereba nara-nai* (B) : if there had been a strong wind all this neighbourhood would certainly have been burnt down.
- ashita de nai to deki-nai* (B) : a) I can only do it tomorrow (not today, not the day after tomorrow); b) I can't do it before tomorrow.
- nareta hito de nai to sō hayaku dekimasen* (C) : unless it's a man accustomed to the work it can't be done so soon.
- 4) Some uses of the adv. form are shown in the following examples :
- nokori naku* : without exception.
- watakushi naku shujin no tame ni hataraita* (B) : he served his master disinterestedly.
- kore bakari de naku sore mo irate o kure* (A) : put in not only this but also that.
- nan no kangae mo naku kitta mama hana-shimashita* (C) : without thinking I said just what I had heard.
- ano hito wa doko to naku jōhin na tokoro ga aru* (B) : there is something refined about him (though I can't say what it is).
- densha de naku kuruma de ikō* (B) : instead of going by tram-car, let's go by riksha.
- ma mo naku* : soon; in a little while.
- iu made mo naku sore wa watashi no mono da* (B) : it goes without saying that this thing is mine.
- sore to naku* : in a casual way.
- nan to naku* : without any special reason; not knowing why or how.
- 5) *Koto ga nai*.
- Nagasaki ni itta koto ga nai* (B) : I have never been to Nagasaki.
- amari mita koto ga nai* (B) : I have seldom seen any.
- 6) Note the foll. construction :  
*aru no de wa nai=nai*.  
*yomu no de wa nai=yoma-nai*.
- 7) *De wa nai ka?* see 4).  
*ni chigai nai*, see *chigai*.
- Der.  
*nairashii* : apparently not, [see *-rashii*].  
*nasa-sō* q.v.
- Note. *Nai* as an independent word can gen. be replaced politely by *arimasen*



or still more politely by *gozaimasen*. It cannot however be replaced in cases like *yoma-nai*, *nai koto*, etc.

**naifu**, [corr. of English]. Knife.

*kire-nai naifu* : a blunt knife.

*naifu wo togu* : to sharpen a knife.

**naisho**. A secret.

Comp.

*naisho-banashi* : something said in secret ; whispering ; [*hanasû* to say].

*naisho-banashi wo suru* : to tell a secret ; whisper.

*naisho-goto* : a private, secret matter ; [*koto* thing].

*naisho-goto wo shi-nai de o kure* (A) : you mustn't do things behind my back.

**naka**.

1) The interior ; inside.

*naka ni ire-ru* : to put inside.

*naka ni hairimasu ka?* (C) : are you going inside ?

*naka ni wa ii no mo aru* (B) : there are also some good ones among them.

*hako no naka wa kara da* (B) : (the interior of) the box is empty.

2) No *naka*, q. ppn.: inside ; in ; among ; between.

*hako no naka ni arimasu* (C) : it is in the box.

*tansu no naka kara dashte kudasai* (C) : please take it out of the chest of drawers.

*hayashi no naka wo tôtte iku* : to pass through a wood.

*tomodachi no naka ni* : among friends.

*shi-gatsu no naka goro* : about the middle of April.

*hito naka de* : in company ; before people.

3) *Naka* is sometimes qualified by an adjective or adjectival phrase.

*isogashii naka wo kite kurete arigatô* (B) : thanks for coming when you were so busy.

*zuruu akindo no ôi naka ni ano hito dake wa shôjiki desu* (C) : among so many tradesmen who are cheats, he is the only one who acts honestly.

4) Friendship.

*naka no ii* : intimate.

*kitte mo kire-nai naka da* (B) : they are too fond of each other ever to be separated.

*naka ga warui* (B) : they are on bad terms with each other.

Comp.

*mannaka* ; *naka-naka* ; q.v.

*yo-naka* : midnight.

**naka-naka**, [*naka* inside]. Has an emphatic or superlative meaning.

*naka-naka muzukashii* (B) : it is very difficult.

*naka-naka kimasen* (C) : he will not come (although I have sent for him several times ; although he knows I need him).

*naka-naka makemasen deshita* (C) : he wouldn't give in (in spite of all I said).

**naku**. To cry ; sing (of a bird).

Comp.: *naki-dasu* : to burst out crying ; begin to sing ; [see *dasu*].

**nakunaru**, v.i. (114), [*nai* non-existent ; *naru* to become : cogn. w. *nakusu*(ru) v.t.]. To become lost ; die.

*nimotsu ga nakunarimashita* (C) : the parcel is lost.

*chichi ga nakunarimashita* (C) : my father is dead ; the milk is all gone.

*itami ga nakunarimashita* (C) : the pain has disappeared.

*sato ga mô nakunatta* (B) : the sugar is already all gone.

**nakusu**(ru), v.t. [*nai* non-existent ; *suru* to do] (160) : cogn. w. *nakunaru* v.i.]. To lose.

*kodomo wo fûtari to mo nakushita* (B) : I have lost both my children.

*nani ka nakushimashita ka?* (C) : have you lost anything ?

**nama no**. Raw ; not cooked.

*nama no gyûnyû* : fresh milk, (not boiled).

**namae**, [*na* name ; *mae* in front]. Name.

*o namae wa?* (C) : what is your name ?

**namake-ru**. To be idle ; neglect.

Comp.: *namake-mono* : an idle person, [*mono* person].

**nameru**. To lick ; taste.

*namete mitara nigakatta* (B) : I tasted it and found it bitter.

*ano hito wa iro-iro no kurushimi wo nameta hito desu* (C) : he is a man who has had a lot of disagreeable experiences.

**nami**. A wave.

**namida**, [*naku* to cry ; *mizu* water ; *tare-ru* to drip]. Tears.

**nan**, contr. of *nani* q.v. : also contr. of *na no*, see *na2* 5).

**nana**, [*nanatsu* seven]. Seven, (3rd set of num. 271 ; 275 ; also abb. 2nd set of num. 276, 4 ; see foll. ; also used occasionally instead of *shichi*, 273.).

**nanatsu**. Seven.

*nana-korobi ya-oki* : never say die ; try, try again ; get up every time you fall down.

In comp. *nanatsu* is abb. to *nand* : see 276, 4. Der.: *nanuka*, q.v.

**nani**, (often contr. to *nan* : always contr. before the ppn. *de*, *to*, *ni*). There are two principal meanings, 'what?' and 'how many?'; numbers 1-7, 12, 13 may be referred to 'what?' and 8-11 to 'how many?'

1) A noun: what?

*kore wa nan desu ka?* (C) : what is this ?

*nan deshita ka?* (C) : what was it ? what happened ? tell us all about it.

*nan da ka kyô wa guai ga warui* (B) : somehow I don't feel well today.

*kono kane wa nan da ka sūkoshi hen da ga moratte okimashō* (C): it seems somehow a strange thing to do but I'll keep this money.

*sono hanashi wa nan no koto desū ka?* (C): what is all that talking about?

*nan no go yō desū ka?* (C): what do you want? what can I do for you?

*nan no kangae mo naku kiita mama hanashimashita* (C): without thinking, I said just what I heard.

*kore wa nan ni tsūkau no desū ka?* (C): what is this (used) for?

*kore wa nan de koshiraeta no desū ka?* (C): what is this made of?

*nani wo shite imasū ka?* (C): what is he doing?

*nani wo itte mo shinjimasen deshita* (C): he refused to believe anything I said.

*nan de is* is sometimes equivalent to *naze*; why.

2) An adj.: what?

*nani hon wo o kai ni narimashita ka?* (D): what book did you buy?

*are wa nani yama desū ka?* (C): what mountain is that?

*are wa nani mono desū?* (C): what kind of a fellow is that man?

3) *Nan to*.

*nan to naku*: without apparent cause.

*ano hito wa nan to naku jōhin' na tokoro ga aru* (B): there is something refined about him (though I can't say what it is).

*nan to mo iwa-nakatta* (B): he said nothing.

*nan to mo iemasen* (C): I can't say; it may be; I don't know.

*nan to mo ii-yō ga nai* (B): I am at a loss for words.

*watashi wa nan to mo omotte i-nai* (B): the matter is already entirely forgotten.

*nan to mo nai* (B): it makes no difference to me.

*me ga akaku natte iru ka?*—*ie*, *nan to mo nai yo* (B): is my eye red?—no, there's nothing the matter with it.

*kaiku mo nan to mo nai* (B): I don't feel any itch or anything; to be utterly indifferent to.

*kore wa nan to iu mono desū ka?* (C): what is this called?

*kore wa Nihon-go de nan to iimasu ka?* (C): what do you call this in Japanese?

*nan to itta no desū ka?* (C): what did you say?

*nan to itte mo shinjimasen deshita* (C): he refused to believe anything I said.

*nan to itte mo ano hito wa erai* (B): say what you will, he is a great man.

*honto ni nan to o rei wo mōshite ii ka wakari-masen* (D): I really don't know how to thank you.

*daiku ga kite ashita wa korare-nai ka mo shire-nai to ka nan to ka imashita* (C): the carpenter came and said something about his not being able perhaps to come tomorrow.

*nan to iu baka darō* (B): what a fool he is! As an excl. *nan to iu* may be replaced sometimes by *nante* q.v.

4) *Nani ka*: something or other.

*me ni nani ka haite imasū ka?* (C): is there anything in my eye?

*nani ka ochita no de me ga sameta* (B): something fell down and woke me.

*kudamono ka nan ka o agari nasai* (C): take some fruit or something.

*Suzuki to nan ka hanashi wo shite imashita* (C): he was talking with Suzuki about something or other.

*kari ya nani ka kirei ni katazuketamashita* (C): he settled all his debts.

See *nanka*.

5) *Nani mo* (gen. pron. *nanni mo*), with neg.: nothing.

*nanni mo nai* (B): there's nothing.

*mō nanni mo irimasen* (C): I don't need anything more.

*nanni mo iwa-nai hō ga ii* (B): you had better not say anything.

*nani mo anata no shitta koto de wa nai* (B): anyhow, it is none of your business.

*nanni mo sō fūshigigara-nai de mo ii no desū* (C): there's nothing to be so surprised about.

*sonna mono wa nan ni mo nara-nai kara o sūte nasai* (A): as that thing can be of no use throw it away. (This example belongs to 1); *nan ni* are two words).

6) *Nani mo ka mo*: everything.

*sono koto nara, nani mo ka mo shitte iru* (B): if you are talking of that, I know all about it.

*nani mo ka mo hitori de yaru no de shigoto ga taihen da* (B): it is heavy work as I do everything myself.

7) *Nan de mo*: anything; everything.

*nan de mo ii* (B): anything will do.

*anata wa nan de mo shimasu ka?* (C): are you willing to do everything?

*nan de mo yawarakai ki de ii* (B): any soft wood will do.

*nan de mo sūki na mono*: whatever you like.

*nan de mo nai (koto da)* (B): it is nothing at all.

*nan de mo jibun de itta yō desū* (C): anyhow it seems that he went himself.

*nani ga nan de mo*: under no circumstances.

8) In questions relating to number, *nani*, gen. contr. to *nan*, is used in the place to be occupied in the answer by a num. of the 1st set, (277).



*nan-do ikimashita ka ?* (C) : how often have you been ?

*nan-ji desu ka ?* (C) : what o'clock is it ?

*nan-jikan kakarimasu ka ?* (C) : how many hours does it take ?

*kuruma ga nan-dai irimasu ka ?* (C) : how many rikishas do you want ?

9) *Nan—ka* : a good many.

*Yokohama e wa nam-ben ka mairimashita ga yoku zanjimasen* (D) : I have been to Yokohama several times but I don't know it well.

10) *Nan—mo* : any number.

*empitsu ga nam-bon mo arimasu* (C) : I have any amount of pencils.

*nam-ben mo ikimashita* (C) : I have been (there) any number of times.

11) *Nan—de mo* : anything ; everything.

*nan-jaku de mo iru dake o tsukui nasai* (C) : use as many feet (of this cloth) as you need.

*kuruma nara, nan-dai de mo gozaimasu* (D) : if it is rikishas you want, there are any number.

12) Interjection.

*nāni, kamau mon' ka ?* (A) : oh ! who cares ?  
*nani, ano hito ga shinda to ?* (B) : what ! is that man dead ?

13) Various.

*sono tame ni fufu-wakare wo suru da no nan da no to imasu* (C) : on account of that they are talking of getting divorced and what not.

*nani kara nani made ki ga tsuku* (B) : there is nothing that escapes his attention.

*nani ya ka ya yōji ga arimasu* (C) : I am very busy what with one thing and another.

*nani yori ii* (B) : nothing could be better.  
*kore wa nani yori...* (B) : *nani yori kekkō na o shina wo arigatō gozaimasu* (D) : thanks for your splendid present (more-splendid-than-anything present).

Note : —*nan* becomes *nam* before *b*, *m*, or *p*.

*nani-goto*, [*nani* what ; *koto* thing]. What ; anything ; everything.

*nani-goto desu ka ?* (C) : what has happened ?

*nani-goto ka aru ka ?* (B) : is anything the matter ? what news ?

*nani-goto mo shōjiki ni o shi nasai* (A) : do everything honestly.

*nani-goto de mo ishōkemmei ni shi-nakereba narimasen* (C) : no matter what your occupation, you must always strive to do it the best you can.

*ō, nani-goto mo yume da !* (B) : ah, all is a dream !

*nanka*, [*nani* what ; *ka* interr.]. And such like things ; and so forth ; et cetera ; often has practically no meaning.

*neko nanka chitto mo sūki ja nai no desu*

(C) : I don't at all care for cats and such like things.

See *nani* 4).

*nanni*. An emphatic way of pronouncing *nani* before *mo* ; not the same as *nan ni* ; see *nani* 5).

*nante*, [corr. of *nan to itte*, *nan to iu* or *nan to*, see 'tte 3), 5), 6)].

1) And such like things ; and so forth ; et cetera ; often has practically no meaning.  
*watashi nante dekimasen* (C) : I and people like myself can't do that.

*o seji nante kirai* (B) : I hate flattery and such like things.

*sagasu nante koto wa deki-nai* (B) ; *sagasu koto nante deki-nai* (B) : I can't look for it (or help you in any way).

2) An interj.

*nante kirei deshō !* how beautiful !

*nante ii o tenki deshō !* what fine weather it is !

3) An interr.

*kore wa nante hana deshō ?* (C) : I wonder what this flower is called ?

*ano hito wa nante iu deshō ?* (C) : I wonder what he'll say ?

*nanuka* (often pron. *nanoka*), [*nanatsu* seven ; —*ka* q.v.]. Seven days ; the seventh day of the month.

*nanzo*. Used like *nante* 1).

*nao*. Still.

*kore wa nao ii* (B) : this one is still better.

*naoru*, v.i. [cogn. w. *naosu* v.t.]. To get well ; become mended ; recover (from illness).

*Suzuki San wa mō naorimashita* (C) : Mr Suzuki is already well again.

*konaide no tokei wa naorimashita ka ?* (C) : have you mended the watch I brought the other day ? (*it*. has the watch recovered, become mended ?).

*ano futari wa naka ga naorimashita* (C) : those two friends have made it up.

*kise wa naka-naka naoru-nai mono da* (B) : a habit is a difficult thing to get rid of.

*mō kigen ga naorimashita* (C) : he has got over his fit of bad temper by now.

*naoru byōki* : a disease which can be cured.

*naosu*, v.t. [cogn. w. *naoru* v.i.].

1) To mend ; repair ; put to rights ; heal.

*tokei wo naoshite moraitai* (B) : I want to get my watch mended.

*kore wo naosu no ni wa dō shitara ii deshō ?*

(C) : what can be done to remedy this ?

*naosasete o kure* (A) : have it mended.

*kore wo naosu no ni wa dono gurai kakarimasu ka ?* (C) : what would it cost to mend this ?

*sono kūsae wo naosa-nakereba ike-nai* (A) : you must break yourself of that habit.

*kigen wo naoshite kudasai* (B) : please put away your ill humour.

## 2) To translate.

*Nihon-go wo Ei-go ni naosu* : to translate from Japanese into English.

In comp. after the stem of a verb *naosu* means to do over again by way of bettering or correcting.

*kaki-naosu* : to write over again.

*kangae-naosu* ; *omoi-naosu* : to change one's mind.

*shi-naosu* : to do over again.

**nara(ba)**. If ; if it is.

*Nara(ba)* is used after the present, past and desiderative forms of verbs, adjectives, nouns and adverbs.

*kimi ga iku nara boku mo ikō* (B) : if you go I shall go too.

*warau nara warawashite o oki nasai* (B) : let them laugh if they like.

*itte shimatta nara mō shikata ga nai* (B) : if he has gone then it can't be helped.

*ikitai nara* : if you wish to go.

*isogashii nara* : if you are busy.

*oishii nara o agari nasai* (B) : if you find it tastes nice, please take some.

*watakushi nara sō wa shimasen* (C) : if I were you, I would not do it (so).

*rusu nara dō shimashō?* (C) : if he is out, what shall I do?

*sonna koto nara yasashii* (B) : if that is all, it is easy enough.

*ā, kore nara ii* (B) : oh, this will be just right.

*ima nara go-sen de kaeru* (B) : nowadays you can buy it for five sen.

*yado-ya nara gozaimasu ga hoteru wa gozaimasen* (D) : there are native inns, but there are no foreign-style hotels ; (if your question were about native inns, I could answer there are, etc.).

*sara nara sara, chawan nara chawan to betsu na hako ni o ire nasai* (B) : put the plates and the tea-cups in separate boxes. *sō nara* (often pron. *sonnara*) : if that is so. *sō nara, o yoshi nasai* (B) : well then, don't do it.

**Note.** The ppn. *no* is sometimes introduced between the verb or adj. and *nara(ba)*.

*o kaeri nasai to iu no nara kaerō* (B) : if you tell me to go away, I will.

*kimete shimatta no nara shikata ga nai* (B) : if you've already made up your mind, there's nothing to be done.

*hitori de sabishii no nara issho ni itte ageyō* (B) : if you find it lonesome by yourself, I'll go with you.

**naraberu**, v.t. [cogn. w. *narabu* v.i.]. To place in a row ; arrange.

*minna soko e narabete o kure* (A) : place them all in a row there.

*ano hito no warui tokoro wo ichi-ichi narabeta* (B) : he enumerated his faults one by one.

*kaki-kata de wa ano hito ni kata wo naraberu mono ga nai* (B) : as far as handwriting goes, nobody can be compared to him.

**narabu**, v.i. 114. [cogn. w. *naraberu* v.t.]. To become arranged in a row.

*narande iru* : to be in a row.

*futari narande goran nasai* (C) : you two stand side by side.

**narasu**, v.t. [cogn. w. *narus* v.i.]. To cause to sound ; ring.

*rin wo narasu* : to ring a bell.

**narau**. To learn ; study.

*Nihon-go wo naratte imasu* (C) : I am studying Japanese.

*narau yori nareru hō ga ii* (B) : practice is better than theory.

**nare:ru**, (114). To become accustomed.

*narete iru* : to be accustomed.

*nareta* : tame ; experienced.

*nareta tori* : a tame bird.

**Comp.**

*tabe-nare:ru* : to be accustomed to eat.

*watashi wa Nihon no gohan wo tabe-narete imasen* (C) : I am not used to Japanese food.

*tsūkai-nare:ru* : to be accustomed to use.

*fude wa tsūkai-narete imasen* (C) : I am not accustomed to using a writing-brush.

*kiki-nare:ru* : to be accustomed to hear.

**naru**.

1) To come into being ; become ; turn out.

This idea is present in all the foll. examples though the translations are various. *Naru* gen. follows an adverb or adverbial construction.

*isha ni naru tsumori desu* (C) : I am going to be a doctor.

*hayaku kuraku narimasu* (C) : it becomes dark very early.

*akaku naru* : to turn red ; blush.

*samuku naru* : to get cold.

*yoku naru* : to be better ; improve.

*jiki ni yoku o nari deshō* (D) : I hope you will soon be better.

*dame ni narimashita* (C) : it is useless now ; it is out of order.

*o tenki ni narimashita* (C) : the weather has turned out fine.

*shi ni go wo tasu to ku ni naru* (B) : four and five make nine.

*atsui to byōki ni narimasu* (C) : the hot weather makes me ill.

*sono mama ni natte iru* : to remain in the same state.

*isha ni natte imasu* (C) : he became (and is) a doctor.

*kisaku natte imasu* (C) : it has turned (and is) sour.

*hanashi no tane ni naru* : to afford a topic for conversation.

*kisuri ni naru* : to be wholesome.

*doku ni naru* : to be unwholesome.



*tame ni naru* : to be profitable.

*Yamada San no iu tōri ni naru* : to do what Mr Yamada says.

*iya ni natte shimatta* (B) : I am thoroughly disgusted.

*jū-go ni nattara sono gurai no koto wa dekiru hazu da* (B) : as you are fifteen, you ought to be able to do a thing like that.

*jū-go ni naru onna no ko ga arimasu* (C) : I have a daughter of fifteen.

*jū-go ni natta onna no ko ga arimasu* (C) : I have a daughter who is now fifteen, (said at the beginning of the year).

*konda jū-go ni naru onna no ko ga arimasu* (C) : I have a daughter who will be fifteen next year, (said at the end of the year).

*ano koto wa dō narimashita ka?* (C) : what has become of that affair?

*dō shite sō natta no desu ka?* (C) : however did that happen?

*ō-kaze ga fukimashita ga uchi wa dō mo narimashita* (C) : a gale blew but nothing happened to my house.

*okashiku natta* (B) : I felt inclined to laugh; (lit. I became amused).

- 2) The neg. present conditional foll. by *nara-nai*; the first form of the neg. present foll. by *to nara-nai*; and the neg. gerund in *nakute* foll. by *wa nara-nai* have a meaning of obligation or necessity and may often be translated by 'must'.

*ika-nakereba nara-nai* (B) : I must go.

*nakereba narimasen ka?* (C) : is it necessary?

*kūsuri wo noma-nakereba narimasen* (C) : I must take some medicine.

*shi-nakereba nara-nai yōji ga aru* (B) : I have some business which I must do.

*hachi-ji ni uchi wo de-nai to narimasen* (C) : we must leave the house at eight o'clock.

*motto benkyō shi-nakute wa nara-nai* (B) : I must study more.

*Kyōto e ika-nakereba nara-nai koto ni narimashita* (C) : something has happened which obliges me to go to Kyōto.

*moshi kaze ga ōkikereba koko-ira wa minna yakete shimawa-nakereba nara-nai* (B) : if there had been a strong wind, all this neighbourhood would certainly have been burnt down.

- 3) The gerund foll. by *wa nara-nai*; and the 1st form of the present foll. by *to nara-nai* mean that it is wrong or useless to do something: they may often be translated by 'must not'.

*sō shite wa narimasen* (A) : you mustn't do (like) that.

*ugoku to nara-nai* (A) : you mustn't move.

- 4) *Naru* in the past tense may be translated, according to circumstances, by the past or present in English. In the latter case

the word 'now' may often be used in the English.

*dame ni natta* (B) : it became useless; it's no use now.

*atsuku natta ne* (B) : it's hot (now), isn't it?

- 5) *Naru* is often used after the desiderative adj. and after the neg. verbal adj.

*Tōkyō e ikitaku natta* (B) : I feel inclined now to go to Tōkyō.

*deki-naku natta* (B) : it is now impossible.

*Kyōto e ika-nakereba nara-naku natta* (B) : something has happened which obliges me to go to Kyōto.

- 6) *Naru* is sometimes rendered by the passive in English.

*sewa ni naru* : to be assisted.

*go chisō ni naru* : to be entertained.

- 7) *Naru* is sometimes translated by 'be' though the idea of 'become' is there.

*ōki na kaji ni wa nara-nai deshō* (C) : I don't think it will be much of a fire.

*mō hitotsu dake ni natta* (B) : there is only one left.

*kōkoku ni naru* : to be a good advertisement.

- 8) The honorific *o* foll. by the stem of a verb and *ni naru*, forms a polite substitute for the ordinary inflexions of the verb, (359).  
*o yomi ni narimashita ka?* (D) = *yomimashita ka?* (C) = *yonda ka?* (B) : have you read it?

*o nari ni naru* (D) = *naru* (B) : to become.

- 9) *Yō ni naru* see *yō* 5).

*naru*<sup>2</sup>, [ ? f. prec.]. To bear fruit.

*naru*<sup>3</sup>, v.i. [cogn. w. *narasu* v.t.]. To make a noise; ring; sound.

*rin ga natte imasu* (C) : the bell is ringing.

*kaminari ga naru* (B) : it thunders.

*naruhodo*. An interj. that may indicate a mild form of surprise, wonder or admiration, but is chiefly used by a person who is listening to another's narrative and shows by an occasional *naruhodo* that he is taking a polite interest in what is being said. It may be translated by: 'really!'; 'I see'; etc.

*naru-take*, (often pron. *naru dake*), [*naru*<sup>1</sup> to become; see *dake* 5)]. As—as; as much as possible.

*naru-take hayaku* : as quickly as possible.

*naru-take ugoku-nai yō ni shite kudasai* (C) : please keep as still as you can.

*nasai*. Imperative of *nasaru*; not polite.

*nasaru*. To do. An honorific verb, used politely of the 2nd and 3rd persons. It has a few irregularities: it drops the *r* before the *masu* terminations; the imperative is *nasai*; the 2nd *a* is often dropped before terminations beginning with *u*, thus *nas'itara* for *nasattara*.

- 1) *nani wo nasaimasu ka?* (D) : what are you doing?

*dō nasaimashita ka?* (D): what has happened to you?

*anata no ii yō ni nasai* (B): do as you please.

*go benkyō nasaimasū ka?* (D): are you going to study?

- 2) The honorific *o*, foll. by the stem of a verb and the verb *nasaru* forms a polite substitute for the ordinary inflexions of the verb, (359).

*o yomi nasaimashita ka?* (D)=*yomimashita ka?* (C)=*yonda ka?* (B): have you read it?

Note. Although *nasaru* is a polite verb, the imperative *nasai* is not polite, neither when used by itself nor when it follows a verbal stem. The polite imperative of *nasaru* is *nas'ite kudasai*.

*nasa-sō* (na), [*nai* non-existent; *-sō* probably]. Seeming not to be.

*sonna koto wa nasa-sō da* (B): that doesn't seem likely.

*nashi*<sup>1</sup>. Pear.

*nashi*<sup>2</sup>, [literary form of *nai*, used sometimes in colloquial]. Not; without. *Nashi* is used after a noun and is often foll. by the ppn. *ni* or *de*.

*kane nashi ni* (or *de*) *wa nanni mo dekimasen* (C): you can't do anything without money.

*kasa nashi de* (or *ni*) *mairimashita* (D): I came without an umbrella.

*jurushi nashi ni demashita* (C): he went out without permission.

*nori-kae wa?*—*nashi* (B): are you going to change cars?—no; (*nori-kae nashi*).

*o bā-san wa shikata nashi ni jibun de dete ikimashita* (C): as there was no help for it the old woman went herself.

*nashi*<sup>3</sup>, [*nai* non-existent; *shi*<sup>4</sup> ppn.]. Not. This *nashi* is always used after *wa* and can be replaced by *nai shi*.

*karada wa yowai shi, kane wa nashi, honto ni kawai-sō desū* (C): bad health and want of money, he is greatly to be pitied.

*watashi ga shinde mo naku hito hitori aru wake ga nashi...* (C): even if I die nobody will miss me.

*natsu*. Summer.

Comp.: *natsu-fuku*: summer clothes.

*naze*. Why.

*naze deta ka?* (A): why did you go out?

*naze sonna koto wo omou no deshō* (C): I wonder why you think so.

*naze da ka shirimasen* (C): I can't tell you why.

*naze to ieba; naze 'tteba; naze naraba*: the reason is; I'll tell you why. (A sentence that begins with these words in Japanese, often ends with *kara desū*).

*natsu wa umi yori yama ga sūki, naze 'tteba yama no hō ga suzushii kara desū* (C): in

summer I prefer the mountains to the sea-shore and I'll tell you why, it is cooler up on the mountains.

*ne*<sup>1</sup>. Root.

*ki no ne*: the roots of a tree.

*ne no nai hyōban*: a rumour without any foundation.

*ne wa ii hito da* (B): he is a good fellow at heart.

*ne hori ha hori kiku*: to inquire too minutely.

*ne kara ha made kikumashita* (C): he inquired about everything even the minutest details.

*tsumara-nai koto wo ne ni motte kenka wo shite iru* (B): they are quarrelling over a trifling affair.

*ne*<sup>2</sup>. Price.

*ne ga agarimashita* (C): the price has risen.

*ne wo make-ru*: to reduce the price.

*ne wo tsukeru*: to value; estimate the value of.

*ne ga ii* (or *takai*) (B): the price is dear.

Comp.: *nedan*; *negiru*; *neuchi*; q.v.

*ne*<sup>3</sup>, *nē*. Interj. especially used by women and children: men often use *na*, *nā* instead of *ne*, *nē*.

1) At the end of a sentence it has gen. (but not always) an interrogative force: isn't that so?

*kirei desū ne?* (C): it is pretty, isn't it?

*konaida tokei wo katta no desū ne?* (C): you bought a watch the other day, didn't you?

*ā iu fū ni shi-nakereba nara-nai no da kara ne* (B): that is how it ought to be done, you see.

2) Scattered over a sentence, at the end of each little clause, it has a mild emphatic force, and serves to prevent the hearer's attention from going astray. It is often foll. by a short pause during which the hearer shows he understands what is said, by answering *e* or giving a sort of grunt.

*ima ne...* [e]... *Kudan-zaka-shita wo tōttara ne...* [s]... *hito ga ōzei atsumatte ita kara ne...* [e]... *nozoite mita no sa* (B): just now, as I was passing at the bottom of Kudan-zaka, there was quite a crowd collected, so I went to see what it was.

3) Various.

*ano ne*: serves to call attention or to begin a sentence: I say!

*sō desū ne*: a polite agreeing with what another says; also used when one is perplexed and is considering what answer he had better give; let me see.

*nedan*, [*ne*<sup>2</sup> price; *dan* a step]. Price.

*nedan wo oshiete kudasai* (C): please tell me the price.

*negai*. See *o-negai*.



**negau.** To ask; request.

*o-ide wo negaimasū* (D) : I request you to come.

*o negai mōshimasū* (D) : I entreat you.

*mō sūkoshi o shizuka ni negaimasū* (C) : please don't make so much noise.

*mado kara kao ya te wo dasa-nai yō ni negaimasū* (C) : you are requested not to put your head or hands out of the window.

Comp.: *o-negai*, q.v.

**negiru**, [*ne2* price; *kiru2* to cut]. To beat down the price; haggle; bargain.

**nekasū**, v.t. [cogn. w. *neru* v.i.]. To put to sleep; lay down.

**neko**, [*neru* to sleep; *ko1* child]. Cat.

*neko wo kaburu* : to assume an air of modesty or innocence; play the hypocrite.

Comp.

*ko-neko* : kitten, [*ko1* child].

*nekokaburi* : hypocrite, [*kaburu* to put on (as a mask)].

**nemuru**, [*neru* to lie down, sleep]. To sleep.

Der.

*nemutai*, [corr. of *nemuritai*] : sleepy; wishing to sleep.

*nemui* : sleepy.

**nen<sup>1</sup>**. Year. *Nen* is preceded by the 1st set of num. (276, 1).

*iku-nen?* how many years?

*roku-nen* : six years.

Comp.

*kyonen* : last year.

*mai-nen* : yearly; every year; [*mai-* every].

*rainen* : next year, [see *rai-*].

*sakunen* : last year, [see *saku-*].

*sarainen* : the year after next, [see *sarai-*].

*nen-jū* : all the year round, [see *-jū*].

*nen-nen* : year after year.

Note —Before *nen*, *yo* (four) is gen. used instead of *shi*.

**nen<sup>2</sup>**. Mind; attention.

*nen no tame ni* : by way of precaution.

*nen wo ire-ru* : to do or act with care.

*nen wo irete shite moraitai* (B) : I want it done carefully.

*nen ni wa nen wo ire nasai* (A) : be as careful as you possibly can.

*go nen no itta koto de gozaimasū* (D) : you have taken very great care over it.

*nen wo osū* : to call attention especially or repeatedly to something; to repeat the same thing over and over again to prevent any mistake.

*onna no ichi-nen wa osoroshii mono da* (B) : what a powerful thing is a woman's wish!

**neru**, v.i. [cogn. w. *nekasū* v.t.].

1) To lie down; sleep; go to bed.

*kutabireta kara nemasū* (C) : as I am tired I'll go to bed.

*hito-ban-jū neraremasen deshita* (C) : I have not slept the whole night.

*ne-mimi ni mizu* : like water in the ear of a man asleep; quite unexpected.

2) To be ill in bed.

*chichi wa kinō kara nete imasū* (C) : my father is ill in bed since yesterday.

Comp.

*nedoko* : bed; bed-room; [*tokoro* place].

*ne-mu* : bed-room, [*mal* room].

*nemaki* : night-dress, [*mal* room; *ki-ru* to put on].

*nedai* : a bedstead, [*dai* a stand].

*nemuru* : to sleep.

*asa-ne* : sleeping late in the morning, [*asa* morning].

*hiru-ne* : midday nap, [*hiru* midday].

**nē-san**, [*ane* elder sister; *san* Miss]. Elder sister (polite); a familiar style of addressing young women such as maids in hotels.

**netsū**. Heat; fever.

*netsū ga deta* (B) : fever has developed.

*netsū wo toru* : to cure a fever.

**neuchi**, [*ne2* price; *utsu* to strike]. Valuation; value; price.

*sore wa go-yen no neuchi ga aru* (B) : it is worth five yen.

*nan no neuchi mo nai* (B) : it is not worth anything at all.

**nezumi**, [*neru* to sleep; *nusumu* to steal]. A rat; mouse.

*nezumi toru neko tsume kakusū* : the cat that is after a mouse hides its claws.

Comp.: *nezumi-iro* : grey, [*iro* colour].

**nīl**, (for comparison between *ni* and *de*, see 393). A ppn. which has very many varied uses; among other things it serves to indicate the following :

1) Situation or place where something exists —at; in; on.

*Tōkyō ni arimasū* (C) : there are some in Tōkyō; it is in Tōkyō.

*o kō-san wa uchi ni irasshaimasū ka?* (D) : is your mother at home?

*hon wa tana ni arimasū* (C) : the book is on the shelf.

*mukō ni tatte iru no ga Nakamura San desū* (C) : the gentleman standing over there is Mr Nakamura.

2) Subject of possession.

*ushi ni tsuno ga aru* (B) : oxen have horns.

*tori ni hane ga aru* (B) : birds have wings.

*kono neko ni wa shippo ga nai* (B) : this cat has no tail.

*ano uchi ni mon ga arimasū* (C) : that house has a gate.

3) Final point of a given action or motion.

*hako ni ire-ru* : to put into a box.

*yama ni noboru* : to ascend a mountain.

*taiyō wa nishi ni kakureru* (B) : the sun sets in the west.

*Nihon-go ni yakusuru* : to translate into Japanese.

*tana ni noseru* : to place on a shelf.

*Kôbe ni tsûku* : to arrive at Kôbe.

4) Indirect object.

*ano hito ni yatte o kure* (A) : give it to that man.

*Yamada San ni tegami wo dashimashita* (C) : I wrote a letter to Mr Yamada.

*kono ko ni wa kinodoku da* (B) : I am sorry for this child.

*dôzo watashi ni wa kamawa-nai de kudasai* (C) : please take no notice of me ; leave me alone please.

5) Price at which a thing is sold.

*roku-yen ni uru* : to sell for six yen.

*go-sen ni mittsu* : three for five sen.

6) Aim, purpose or result.

*kai-mono ni demashita* (C) : he has gone to make some purchases.

*kore wa nani ni tsûkaimasu ka ?* (C) : what do you use this for ?

*nani ni shimasu ka ?* (C) : what will you do with it ?

*hanashi no tane ni naru* : to become a topic of conversation.

*sore wa makura ni nara-nai* (B) : that won't do for a pillow.

*ko-nai yô ni hanashite kure* (A) : tell him not to come.

7) Similar to the above is the use of *ni* after the stem of a verb, foll. by a verb meaning coming or going ; it means 'in order to'.

*mi ni itta* (B) : I went to see.

*jochû ga kai ni ikimashita* (C) : the servant has gone to buy some.

*Ueno no sakura wo mi ni ikitai* (B) : I want to go to see the cherry-blossoms at Ueno.

8) The honorific *o* foll. by the stem of a verb and *ni naru* forms a polite substitute for the ordinary inflexions of the verb, (359).

*o yomi ni narimashita ka ?* (D) = *yomimashita ka ?* (C) = *yonda ka ?* (B) : have you read it ?

9) After the present or past tense of a verb or after an adj. *ni* has no longer the special meaning illustrated in 7) : it is often preceded by *no*.

*michi ga warukûte aruku* (no) *ni hône ga oremasu* (C) : the roads are so bad it is fearfully hard walking.

*mada neru* (no) *ni wa hayai* (B) : it is still too early to go to bed.

*aru ni wa aru ga sùkunai* (B) : there are some it is true, but they are scarce.

*totta* (no) *ni chigai nai* (B) : there is no doubt he took it.

*totta to omowareru ni kimatte iru* (B) : people are certain to think I took it.

*ano hito no hanasu* (no) *ni wa* : according to what that man says.

*takai* (no) *ni wa odorôta* (B) : I was astonished at the dearthness of it.

*dare ni itta* (no) *ni shite mo yoku nai* (A) :

whomsoever you may have told it to, you did wrong.

*ie wo kau* (no) *ni wa kane ga irimasu* (C) : it requires money to buy a house.

*kono hon wo kau* (no) *ni kane ga irimasu* (C) : I need some money to buy this book.

10) The foll. examples are somewhat different :

*iu ni ware-nai* (B) : I really can't tell you (I feel so ashamed of myself).

*iku ni ikare-nai* (B) : I am too ashamed to go.

11) Agent, especially in passive, causative, and potential constructions.

*inu ni kamareta* (B) : he was bitten by a dog.

*daiku ni koshiraesasemashô* (C) : I will have it made by the carpenter.

*kodomo ni made baka ni sareru* (B) : even the children make a fool of him.

*kono ko ni wa komarimasu* (C) : I don't know what to do with this child ; I am inconvenienced by this child.

*omae ni fune ga dekiru ka ?* (A) : can you make a boat ?

*watashi ni wa wakarimasen* (C) : I don't understand it ; (*wakaru* is corr. from *wakerareru*).

12) Instrument.

*hi ni hosu* : to dry in the sun.

*me ni miru mono* : what one sees with one's eyes.

13) 'Among' ; 'some'.

*neko ni wa shiroi no mo kuroi no mo arimasu* (C) : among cats some are white and some black.

*kono shina ni ii no mo warui no mo arimasu* (C) : some of these articles are good and some are bad.

*Nihon no fujin ni yôfuku wo kuru hito mo gozaimasu* (D) : some of the Japanese ladies wear foreign clothes.

14) Comparison.

*ano kodomo wa haha ni nite iru* (B) : that child resembles its mother.

*kono mihon no yô ni koshiraete kudasai* (C) : make it like this sample.

*ano hito no hanashi ni wa ; ano hito no oesharu ni wa* : according to what that man says.

*ik-kin ni tari-nai* : less than one pound.

15) *Ni shite wa* and *ni totte* (wa) may both generally be translated by 'for' ; but they are not always interchangeable in Japanese.

*kodomo ni shite wa yoku kaite arimasu* (C) : it is well written for a child.

*kono jikô wa Tôkyô ni shite wa atsui de wa arimasen ka ?* (C) : isn't this weather very hot for Tôkyô ?

*ano hito ni totte wa taihen na kane da* (B) : for him it is a large sum.



*sore wa watakushi ni totte (wa) taihen shi-awase na koto desu* (C): that is a very fortunate thing for me.

- 16) *No ni* may serve to contrast two statements, of which the 2nd is rather unexpected, unreasonable, or unjust, given the 1st.

*tanomareta no ni kotowatta* (B): although they asked him he refused.

*kore hodo itte kikaseru no ni mada wakaranai ka?* (A): can't you understand it yet after having had it explained so clearly?  
*ame ga furu no ni kasa wo mota-nai de itta* (B): although it was raining he went without an umbrella.

*kono atsui no ni boshi wo kabura-nakereba byōki ni naru* (B): if you don't put on a hat in hot weather like this you'll get ill.

- 17) *No ni* may signify regret and is then often used elliptically.

*ano hito ga kyō kuru to ii no ni* (B): I wish he'd come today, but... (I fear he can't).  
*kasa wo motte iku hō ga yokatta no ni* (B): you ought to have taken an umbrella.  
*ichiban ii no datta no ni* (B): it was my best one too.

- 18) 'And'; 'besides the foregoing'.

*hari ni ito ni hasami wo motte kite kudasai* (C): please bring me a needle, thread and scissors.

*kono hon no hoka ni nani ka kakimashita ka?* (C): has he written anything else besides this book?

- 19) After the neg. gerund in *-zu* —without.  
*gohan mo tabe-zu ni kimashita* (C): he came without even having his dinner.

*kutsu wo tora-zu ni haitte mo ii* (B): you may go in without taking off your boots.

- 20) Time.

*ban no jū-ji ni*: at ten o'clock in the evening.

*nanatsu no toki ni*: when I was seven.

*tsuki ni san-do*: three times a month.

*kaeri ni yorimashō* (C): I will call on my way back.

- 21) Added to nouns, *ni* forms adverbs.

*teinei ni o kaki nasai* (A): write it carefully.

*jōzu ni dekita* (B): it is well made.

*shōjiki ni hatarakimasu* (C): he works conscientiously.

- 22) Various.

*san-jaku ni jis-shaku*: ten feet by three.

*kono hako ni tegami ga tsuite kimasen deshita ka?* (C): didn't a letter come with this box?

*kaette kara ni shiyō* (B): I will leave it till after my return.

*gohan wo tabete kara no koto ni nasai* (B): leave it till after dinner.

*oshii koto ni wa kizu ga arimasu* (C): it is a pity it is chipped.

*Oda no jochū ni O Kiyo to iu mono ga ima-*

*shita* (C): among Ōda's servants, there was a girl called Kiyo.

*taiyō ni mukau*: to turn towards the sun.

*oya ni wakareru*: to part with a parent.

*ame-furi ni kaeru*: to return in spite of the rain.

- 23) For *dare ni mo, doko ni mo*, etc., see *dare, doko*, etc.

*ni naru* see *naru* 1); *ni suru* see *suru* 11).

- ni<sup>2</sup>. Package; baggage; luggage; goods.

*are ga ni ni natta* (B): that became a burden.

Comp.

*ni-guruma*: a hand-cart, [*kuruma* vehicle].

*nimotsū*, q.v.

- ni<sup>3</sup>. Two.

Comp.

*nikai*, q.v.

*ni-tō*: second class, [*tō* class].

- niau, [*ni*-ru<sup>2</sup> to resemble; *au* to suit]. To suit; fit.

*kore wa watashi ni naimasu ka?* (C): does this suit me?

*kodomo ni niau gami da* (B): this pattern is suitable for children.

*yōsū ni niawa-nai yasashii hito desu* (C): although he doesn't look it, he is a very good-natured man.

*Nihon-jin ni niawa-nai ō-otoko da* (B): he is such a big man he doesn't look like a Japanese.

- nichi. Day; (as regards num. in connection with this word, see 294; 295).

*ichi-nichi kakarimasu* (C): it takes a day.

*ichi-nichi ni ni-do*: twice a day.

Comp.

*mai-nichi*: every day, [*mai*-every].

*myōnichi*: tomorrow, [see *myō*-].

*myōgonichi*: the day after tomorrow.

*kon'nichi*: today, [see *kono*<sup>2</sup>].

*hi-nichi*, q.v.

*Nihon*, q.v.

*nichiyō*; *nichiyō*(-bi): Sunday, [see *yō-bi*].

- nie-ru, v.i. [cogn. w. *ni-ru* v.t.]. To be cooked by boiling.

*sakana ga niemashita* (C): the fish is boiled (and ready to eat).

Comp.: *nie-yu*: boiling water.

- nigai. Bitter.

*nigai kao*: a sour face.

- nigasū, v.t. [cogn. w. *nigeru* v.i.]. To let escape; send away.

*ni-gatsū*, [ni<sup>3</sup> two; *gatsū* month]. February.

- nigeru, v.i. [cogn. w. *nigasū* v.t.]. To escape; run away.

*nigeru ga kachi*: to win by running away; he that fights and runs away may live to fight another day.

Comp.: *nige-dasu*: to run away, [see *dasu*].

- nigiyaka (na). Crowded; bustling; lively.

Nihon, (also pron. *Nippon*), [*nichi* sun; *hon* origin: the East]. Japan.

*Nihon ni dono gurai imasū ka?* (C): how long have you been in Japan?

Comp.

*Nihon-go*, q.v.

*Nihon-jin*: a Japanese, [*-jin* man].

*Nihon-go*, [*Nihon* Japan; *-go* language]. The Japanese language.

*Nihon-go ga dekiru*: to speak (know) Japanese.

*kore wa Nihon-go de nan to iimasū ka?* (C): what do you call this in Japanese?

*ni-san*, [*ani* elder brother; *san*! Mr.]. Elder brother (polite).

*nikai*, [*ni*<sup>3</sup> two; *kai*<sup>4</sup> floor]. First floor, (i.e. the floor above the ground floor); upstairs.

*jochū wa nikai ni orimasū* (C): the servant is upstairs.

Comp.: *nikai-ya*: a two storied house, [*ya* house].

*niko-niko*. Smilingly.

*niko-niko suru*: to smile.

*niku*. Flesh; meat.

Comp.: *gyūniku*: beef, [*gyū* a bovine animal].

*nikui*<sup>1</sup>. Hateful; odious.

*nikui yatsū da* (A): he is a disagreeable fellow.

Comp.

*nikurashii*: disagreeable; nasty; [see *-rashii*].

*minikui*: ugly, [*mi-ru* to look at].

*niku*, q.v.

*nikui*<sup>2</sup>. Difficult; (added to the stem of verbs, forms compounds).

*mi-nikui*: difficult to see.

*shi-nikui*: difficult to do.

*tsukai-nikui*: difficult, inconvenient to use.

*wakari-nikui*: difficult to understand.

*yomi-nikui*: difficult to read.

*nimo tsū*, [*ni*<sup>2</sup> package]. Package; luggage; baggage; goods.

*nimotsū ga mittsū arimasū* (C): I have three pieces of luggage.

*kono nimotsū wo azuketai* (B): I want to check this luggage; I want to leave this parcel in the cloak-room.

*nin*. Man; a.n. for counting human beings (281); be careful never to say *shi-nin* for four persons (272).

It serves to form numerous compounds.

*ningen*; *ninsoku*; q.v.

*byō-nin*: a sick person, [*byō-* illness].

*ban-nin*: a watchman, [*ban*! guard].

*bimbō-nin*: a poor man.

*azukari-nin*: person with whom a thing is deposited.

*azuke-nin*: depositor.

*ryōri-nin*: a cook.

*shi-nin*: a dead man.

*shōbai-nin*: a merchant.

*shoku-nin*: workman.

*yatoi-nin*: employee.

*ningen*, [*nin* man]. Human beings; the human race.

*ninsoku*, [*nin* man; *soku* feet]. Coolie.

*niol*. Smell; scent.

*niol ga suru*: there is a smell.

*matsū no ki no niol ga shimasū* (C): it smells like a pine-tree.

*Nippon*=*Nihon* q.v.

*niramu*. To glare at.

Comp.: *nirami-tsūkeru*: to glare at.

*ni-ru*<sup>1</sup>, v.t. [cogn. w. *nie-ru* v.i.]. To boil; cook (in boiling water with salt or sugar, etc.).

Comp.: *ni-zakana*: boiled fish.

*ni-ru*<sup>2</sup>, v.i. [cogn. w. *niseru* v.t.]. To resemble; be alike.

*kono shashin wa anata ni yoku nite imasū* (C): this portrait is very like you.

*nitari yottari no koto*: six of one and half a dozen of the other.

Comp.: *niau*, q.v.

*niseru*, v.t. [cogn. w. *ni-ru*<sup>2</sup> v.i.]. To imitate. *kore ni niseite koshiraete kuadai* (C): please make one imitating this.

Comp.: *nise-mono*: an imitation; thing which is not genuine.

*nishi*. West.

*ni-tō*, [*ni*<sup>3</sup> two; *tō*<sup>2</sup> class]. Second class.

*niwa*. Garden; courtyard (open or covered).

Comp.: *niwa-tori*: domestic fowl.

*no*, ppn. *No* may often be considered as an abb. of *mono* thing, person; in certain uses it is frequently shortened to *n'*. *No wa* is sometimes contracted to *nā*.

1) *No* may mean real possession.

*chichi no bōshi*: my father's hat.

*dare no hon desū ka?* (C): whose book is it?

*watakushi no desū* (C): it is mine.

2) *No* may mean quasi-possession or other relations.

*kinō no hanashi*: yesterday's conversation.

*tsūkie no ashi*: the legs of the table.

*Aki no Miyajima*: Miyajima in Aki.

*hana no hon*: a book on flowers.

*Fuji no yuki*: the snow on Fuji.

*zutsū no kūsuri*: medicine for a headache.

*nodo no kūsuri*: medicine for the throat.

*rampu no abura*: oil for the lamp.

*ano uchi no takai koto!* (B): what a tall house! (*lit.* the tallness of that house).

3) One possessive may sometimes depend on another.

*tsūkie no ashi no iro*: the colour of the legs of the table.

*imōto no tomodachi no taku*: my younger sister's friend's house.

*Yoritomo no kodomo no toki no atama no katachi dōri* (C): it is the shape of Yoritomo's head when he was a child; (*lit.* the shape of the head of the time of the childhood of Yoritomo).



- 4) A noun foll. by *no* is often equivalent to an adj.: see 212-226.

*Igirisū no fune* : an English ship.

*ki no saji* : a wooden spoon.

- 5) Nouns in apposition are often joined by *no* in Japanese.

*musūko no Tarō* : my son Tarō.

*Ryūkyū no shima* : the Islands of Luchu ; Luchu Islands.

*yattsū no Teru-ko* : my eight-year-old daughter Teru-ko.

- 6) *No* is often used between a num. expression and the corresponding noun, especially in the case of ordinal numbers.

*roku-ban-me no hito* : the sixth man.

*mittsū-me no isu* : the third chair.

*jū-yen no satsū* : a ten yen note.

- 7) Phrases placed attributively before a noun are usually connected to it by *no*.

*kuni kara no dempō* : a telegram from home.

*katta bakari no shina* : something I have only just bought.

*inochi atte no mono-dane* : things can be done only if we have life.

*toko-ga de no hanashi ni* : according to what I heard at the barber's shop.

*gohan wo tabete kara no koto ni nasai* (B) : leave it till after dinner.

- 8) If the attributive phrase itself consists of a noun foll. by a verb or adj. used predicatively, the noun is connected to this verb or adj. by *no* : see 227 ; 233 ; 328.

*un no ii hito* : a lucky man.

*Ganku no kaita e* : a picture painted by Ganku.

*tsumi no nai kodomo* : an innocent child.

*tabako no kirai na hito* : a man who dislikes tobacco.

*kao no kirei na onna* : a woman with a pretty face.

- 9) By putting *no* after an adj., an adj. phrase, or a verbal phrase used as an adj., we may turn it into a concrete noun : no has then the meaning of 'one'. If the adj. ends in *no* a second *no* is not added.

*warui no* : a bad one, [warui bad].

*kirei na no* : a pretty one, [kirei na pretty].

*hoka no* : another one, [hoka no another].

*tane no sūkunai no ga hoshii* (B) : I would like one with few seeds.

*shimi ga aru no wa iya desū* (C) : I don't want one which is soiled.

*kesa kita no wa kono tegami desū* (C) : this (one) is the letter that came this morning.

- 10) This substantive *no* may be foll. by any ppn. : it even happens sometimes that we thus get two *no* following.

*chiisai no no mimashita* (C) : I saw the small one.

*chiisai no no hanashi desū* (C) : we are

talking of the small one, [the first *no* is 'one'; the second 'of'].

*kono hō wa watashi no ni shiyō* (B) : this one shall be mine.

- 11) *No* after an adj. sometimes converts it into an abstract noun.

*samui no wa ii ga atsui no ni komarimasū* (C) : I don't mind the cold but I find the heat very trying.

- 12) A verb may be made a noun by adding *no* which then has often the meaning of 'thing', 'act' or 'fact'; (85).

*kesa itta no wa machigai deshita* (C) : what I said this morning was a mistake.

*iku no wa tōka ni nobaskimasū* (C) : I shall put off my departure until the tenth.

*hima wo tsubusū no wa warui* (B) : it is bad to waste time.

*to iu no wa* : the assertion that ; the expression ; what is called.

*Nihon-jin no tsuyoi to iu no wa hontō desū ka ?* (C) : is it true that the Japanese are strong ?

*aru no de wa nai = nai*.

*yomu no de wa arimasen = yomimasen*.

- 13) *No* as a noun may also mean person.

*watashi no mīa no* (or *hito*) *wa* : the person that I saw.

*watakushi ga* (or *no*) *yatotta no* (or *onna*) *wa* 'ii jochū desū' (C) : the servant I engaged turned out to be a very good one.

- 14) *No desū*, *no deshita*, etc. or the neg. *no de wa nai*, etc. are often added to verbs or adj. at the end of a sentence. *No desū* and *no da* often serve merely to round off the sentence or make it more polite and may be suppressed without changing the meaning. Sometimes however they have a meaning of their own. *Desū*, etc. may usually, but not always, be changed to *da*, etc. *No* is often corrupted to *n*. (86-89 ; 204 ; 205).

*kore wa chiisai n' desū* (C) : this is small.

*Ōfuna de nori-kaeru no desū ka ?* (C) : must I change at Ōfuna ? (*no desū* may not be suppressed nor changed into *no da*).

*kore wa ko-gatana de kitta no desū ka ?* (C) : was this cut with a knife ?

*nani wo suru no desū ?* (B) : what are you doing ?

*ko-nai no darō* (B) : I suppose it is that he won't come.

*dō shite anna ni yaseta no darō to omottara*,

*byōki data no desū* (C) : I was wondering why he was so thin and the reason was he has been ill.

- 15) *Desū* in the above constructions is sometimes suppressed.

*kippu wa aru no ka ?* (B) ; *kippu wa aru no ?* (B. fem.) : have you the tickets ?

*ē, aru no* (B. fem.) : yes, I have.

*suki desū ka ?* (C) : do you like it ?

*dai-sūki na no* (B. fem.): I like it very much indeed.

- 16) Though the desiderative as a rule refers only to the 1st or 2nd person; it may refer to the 3rd person when followed by *no desū*.

- 17) *No* is used in certain ways of expressing the superlative: see 261, 2.

*Tōkyō ichi no hōteru*: the best hotel in Tōkyō.

*Kyōto-jū de no isha*: the cleverest doctor in Kyōto.

- 18) *No* is sometimes an enumerative: (for *da no see da*).

*o kashi no kudamono no 'tte taberu koto bakari kangae iru* (B): not only does he eat cakes and fruit, he thinks of nothing but eating.

*kimi ga warukatta no osoroshikatta no 'tte jitsū ni hidoi me ni atta* (B): talk of being alarmed and frightened, why it was a terrible experience.

*atsui no atsuku nai no 'tte yake-sō deshita* (C): talk about heat! why I was simply burning.

*itai no itaku nai no 'tte shinu ka to omotta* (B): the pain was so great I thought I was dying.

- 19) *No de* at the end of a clause is equivalent to a gerundial construction (393, 5); it may indicate the cause or merely serve to continue the sentence.

*kono kami wa Nihon de dekita no de hakurai yori yasui* (B): this paper was made in Japan, it is cheaper than the foreign article.

*ame ga futta no de ikimasen deshita* (C): as it rained I did not go.

*kyō wa ammari samui no de sampo ni dekakemasen deshita* (C): as it is so cold today I did not go out for a walk.

- 20) *No wo may* mean regret, and in this sense is often used elliptically at the end of a sentence.

*kō sureba dekiru no wo...* (B): you could do it in this way if you tried (but you haven't tried although you ought to have done so).

- 21) The following uses of *no* are analogous to those given under 9), though somewhat different.

*daiku no ōi no wa Kanda desū* (C): Kanda is the place where there are most carpenters: (*no=tokoro*).

*Onoechō to iu no wa dono hen darō?* (B): whereabouts is Onoechō? (*no=tokoro*).

*ame no ōi no wa roku-gatsu desū* (C): June is the most rainy month of the year; (*no=toki*).

- 22) *No* after verbs has a very indefinite meaning in examples like the following.

*o kane de mo motte kite kudasaru no ka mo*

*shiremasen* (C): his object perhaps may be to bring some money.

*tonari no o jū-san wa okotta no okora-nai no ja nai, ō-okori ni okotta* (B): the old man from next door flew into a rage.

- 23) *No* is sometimes used to form inverted constructions.

*ano Yamada no yokubari=ano yokubari no Yamada.*

*kitte no furui no=furui kitte.*

*neko no shinda no=shinda neko.*

*ippai no hokori=hokori ippai.*

*ii kakkō no karada=kakkō no ii karada.*

*san-nin no kodomo=kodomo ga san-nin.*

*ōzei no kodomo=kodomo ga ōzei.*

*hankechi no jōtō=jōtō no hankechi.*

- 24) For *no* ni see ni 9, 16, 17; for *no mo* see mo 1, 2; for *na no* see na<sup>2</sup> 5. For the q. ppn. (383), *no aida*, *no ato*, etc., see *aida*, *ato*, etc.

*nobasū*, v.t. [cogn. w. *nobiru* v.i.]. To stretch; put off; postpone.

*te wo nobasū*: to stretch out a hand.

*iku no wo tōka ni nobashimasū* (C): I shall put off my departure until the tenth.

*kami wo nagaku nobashite iru* (B): he wears his hair long.

*sake wo nobasū*: to dilute the wine.

*hana-ge wo nobasū*: to be fascinated or deceived (by women); (lit. to lengthen the hair in the nostrils).

*nobiru*, v.i. [cogn. w. *nobasū* v.t.]. To stretch; grow; become long.

*nobi wo suru*: to stretch oneself.

*kono ko wa sakunen kara miru to ni-san bakari nobimashita* (C): this child has grown two inches since last year.

*kyō wa ashita wa to itte ima made nobimashita* (C): it has been put off from day to day until now.

*nobori*, [stem of foll.]. Ascent.

Comp.

*nobori-zaka*: uphill, [*saka* an inclined road].

*nobori-kisha*; *nobori yō kisha*: up train, (i.e. towards Tōkyō).

*noboru*. To ascend; go up.

*yama ni noboru*: to climb a mountain.

*ano hito no kari wa sen-yen no ue ni nobotte iru* (B): that man's debts exceed a thousand yen.

Comp.: *nobori*, q.v.

*nodo*, [nomu to drink; to gate]. Throat.

*nodo ga kawaku*: to be thirsty.

*nohara*. A field; meadow.

*nokoru*, v.i. [cogn. w. *nokosū* v.t.]. To remain; be left over.

*ku kara roku wo hiite san ga nokoru* (B): six from nine leaves three.

*mada sūkoshi nokotte iru* (B): there is still a little left.

*nokotte iru shigoto wo hayaku katazuke na*



*sai* (A): hurry up and finish the remaining work.  
*watakushi wa o shimai made nokotte ita* (B): I remained to the last.  
*omoi ga nokoru*: to feel regret.  
*nokora-zu*: not one remaining; without one being left over.  
*ichi-ji nokora-zu*: word for word.  
*nokora-zu shirabeta ga mitsukarimasen* (C): I have searched everywhere but I cannot find it.  
**nokosû**, v.t. [cogn. w. *nokoru* v.i.]. To leave; keep back.  
*watashi hitori wo nokoshite minna itte shimatta* (B): they all went away and left me behind.  
*kane wo nokosû*: to save up money.  
*o tegami no shimai ni sūkoshi basho wo nokoshite oite kudasai* (C): please leave a little room at the end of your letter.  
**nomu**. To drink; swallow.  
*mizu ga nomitai* (B): I want some water to drink.  
*kûsuri wo nomu*: to take medicine.  
*tabako wo nomu*: to smoke.  
*hajime kara nonde kakatta no wa watakushi no machigai deshita* (C): it was my mistake to have made light of it from the beginning.  
 Comp.  
*nomi-mono*; *nomu-mono*: a drink; something to drink.  
*sake-nomi*: a person fond of sake.  
**nonki** (na). Easy-going; happy-go-lucky.  
*asonde iru to nonki de ii* (B): it is jolly to be idling about like a man with no cares.  
**nori-kae'ru**, [nori to ride; kae'ru<sup>2</sup> to change]. To change carriages.  
*Aoyama ni iku ni wa doko de nori-kaeru no desu ka?* (C): where must I change for Aoyama?  
*Nara e wa nori-kae nashi ni ikaremasu ka?* (C): can I go to Nara without changing carriages?  
 Comp.: *norikae-kippu*: a tram-car transfer ticket.  
**noroi**. Slow, (gen. in a bad sense).  
*omae wa amari noroi* (A): you are too slow.  
*ano hito wa ashi ga noroi* (B): he is a slow walker.  
*ano hito wa onna ni noroi* (B): he is easily captivated by a woman.  
 Comp.: *noro-noro*, q.v.  
**noro-noro**, [noroi slow]. Slowly, (in a bad sense).  
*sonna ni noro-noro aruite wa kuraku natte shimau* (B): if you walk so slowly, it will be dark before we arrive.  
**noru**, v.i. 114, [cogn. w. *noseru* v.t.]. To get on; ride.  
*notte iru*: to be (placed) on.

*tana ni notte imasu* (C): it is on the shelf.  
*uma ni noru*: to ride on horseback.  
*kuruma ni noru yori densha no hō ga hayai* (B): it is quicker to go by tram than by rikisha.  
*sōdan ni notte kure-nai ka?* (B): won't you give me your advice?  
*mōkaru shigoto nara watashi mo sōdan ni noritai* (B): if there is money in that affair, I also would like to be in it.  
*ni-san-nichi mae no shimbun ni notte imashita* (C): it appeared in the newspaper two or three days ago.  
 Comp.  
*nori-kae'ru*, q.v.  
*nori-okure'ru*: to be late for (train, steamer, etc.).  
*tobi-noru*: to jump on to.  
**noseru**, v.t. [cogn. w. *noru* v.i.]. To place on; lay on.  
*isu no ue ni noshimashita* (C): I put it on the chair.  
*kono fune wa o kyaku wa noshimasen* (C): this steamer does not take passengers. (The subject of this sentence is *fune*; *kyaku* is the object; it takes *wa* and not *wo* on account of the implied contrast, 'this steamer takes goods but not passengers'.)  
*kono hanashi wa shimbun ni noseru kangae desu* (C): I intend to publish this affair in the newspaper.  
*watashi wa ano hito ni noserareta no ga kuyashii* (B): I am much annoyed at having been deceived by him.  
**nozoku**. To peep.  
**nozomi**, [stem of foll.]. Hope; desire.  
*nani ka o nozomi ga aru nara osshatte kudasai* (C): please tell me if you have any preference.  
*nozomi no aru ko da* (B): he is a child of great promise.  
*o nozomi-dōri ni shite agemashō* (C): I will do as you wish.  
*minna ano hito ni nozomi wo kakete iru* (B): everyone puts his hopes in that man.  
*hōbi wa nozomi shidai* (B): I will give you whatever reward you wish for.  
**nozomu**. To wish; hope.  
*sonna koto wo nozonde wa ike-nai* (A): you must not wish for such things.  
*isha ni narō to nozonde iru* (B): he intends to be a doctor.  
 Der.: *nozomi*, q.v.  
**nū**. See *nuu*.  
**nugu**, v.t. [cogn. w. *nuke'ru* v.i.]. To take off (as clothes, hat, etc.).  
**nukasu**, v.t. [cogn. w. *nuke'ru* v.i.]. To leave out.  
*muzukashii tokoro wa nukashimashita* (C): he left out the difficult parts.  
**nuke'ru**, v.i. [cogn. w. *nugu* v.t., *nukasu* v.t., and *nuku* v.t.]. To come off; come out;

pass through a hole or narrow way; get left out; serves also as potential to *nuku*: can take out.

*kono kimono no shimi wa naka-naka nuketai* (B): the stains on this dress won't come off.

*mada kaze ga nuke-nai* (B): I have not yet got rid of my cold.

*chikara ga nuketa* (B): my strength fails me.

*koshi ga nuke'ru*: to feel one's legs give way beneath one; be powerless to move.

*daiji na koto ga nukete iru* (B): you have left out something important.

*abunai tokoro wo yōyō nukete kita* (B): I have just managed to escape from a great danger.

*kono bin no koroppu ga nukemasen* (C): I cannot draw the cork of this bottle.

*ana wo nuke'ru*: to pass through a hole.

*ana ga nuke'ru*: the hole passes through (to the other side).

*kono kabe no ana wa mukō-gawa e nukete iru* (B): this hole goes right through to the other side of the wall.

*kono ko-michi wo nukete iku to chikai* (B): it will be shorter if we take (go through) this by-street.

**nuku**, v.t. [cogn. w. *nuke'ru* v.i.]. To take out; pull out.

*kugi wo nuku*: to pull out a nail.

*zuibun te wo nuite shigoto da* (B): it is a work on which labour has been badly shirked.

**nurasu**, v.t. [cogn. w. *nure'ru* v.i.]. To wet; moisten.

*kasa ga nai no de kimono wo nurashita* (B): as I had no umbrella I got my clothes wet.

*te wo nurasa-nai de*: without exerting oneself.

**nure'ru**, v.i. 114, [cogn. w. *nurasu* v.t.]. To get wet.

*nurete iru*: to be wet.

*jimen ga nurete iru kara zōri de wa derarenai* (B): you cannot go out in slippers as the ground is wet.

**nuru**. To paint; plaster; smear.

*doro wo nuru*: to plaster with mud.

*sabi-nai yō ni abura wo nutte kure* (A): smear it with oil for it not to get rusty.

*haji no ue ni mata haji wo nutta* (B): he has added shame to shame.

*hito no kao ni doro wo nuru*: to bring disgrace upon somebody.

Comp.

*nuri-tsūke'ru*: same meanings as *nuru*.

*tsumi wo hito ni nuri-tsūke'ru*: to lay the blame on another.

**nurui**. Tepid; lukewarm.

**nusumu**. To steal; rob.

*hima wo nusunde maisimashita* (C): I stole time to come here.

**nuu**. To sew; embroider.

Der. and comp.

*nui*: embroidery.

*nui-mono*: sewing; things to be sewn.

*nui-awase'ru*: to sew together.

*nui-tsūke'ru*: to sew on.

o. An honorific prefix. It is used before ordinary nouns; before the names of women of less than three syllables (373); before the stems of verbs (359; 363); sometimes before adjectives. In certain compounds like: *onaka*; *omae*; *oashi*; the honorific meaning has entirely disappeared, (367). There are many words that are practically never heard without the honorific *o*, at least in one of their meanings; the following may be mentioned: *o-hayō*; *o-ide*; *o-hiya*; *o-kage*; *o-itoma*; *o-jigi*; *o-medetō*; *o-shaberi*; *o-share*; *o-hito-yoshi*; *o-jii-san*; *o-jō-san*; *o-kami*; *o-kami-san*; *o-nagai*; *o-bō-san*. Other words again, though generally preceded by the honorific *o* are sometimes used without, thus: (o) *bon*; (o) *cha*; (o) *rei*; (o) *seji*; (o) *kashi*; (o) *kome*; (o) *kure*; (o) *miya*; (o) *sewa*; (o) *tagai ni*; (o) *tenki*; (o) *tera*; (o) *teuri*; (o) *yu*; (o) *miyage*; (o) *machidō*; (o) *tsukai-mono*; (o) *kā-san*; (o) *tō-san*. In all the above cases the honorific idea is very vague; but before ordinary nouns, *o* has the force of an honorific, and is used, therefore, to show that the noun refers to the second person: it thus often takes the place of our possessive pronouns.

*o tegami wo uke-torimashita* (C): I have received your letter.

*O Hana San*: Miss Hana (Flower).

*o isogashiū gozaimashō* (D): I suppose you are very busy.

o-. A pref. meaning male; it sometimes becomes *on-*, (177, 1); all names of animals do not admit this pref.

Comp.

*o-ushi*: bull; ox.

*o-inu*: dog (male).

*ondori*: cock.

*oi*, q.v.

ō-, [ōki big]. A pref. meaning big. It is found in such words as:

*ō-ame*: heavy rain.

*ō-bin*: a large-size bottle.

*ō-chigai*: a great difference.

*ō-dōri*: main street, [tōri way].

*ō-kaze*: a gale.

*ō-misoka*: last day of the year, [misoka last day of the month].

*ō-mizu*: a flood.

*ō-mugi*: barley, [mugi corn].

*ō-sama*: a king.

*ō-sawagi*: a great disturbance.

*ōya*: landlord, [yal person].



Note : the polite predicative form of *ōi* (q. v.) is also pron. *ō*.

**oashi**, (often pron. *owashi*), [o honorific; *ashi* feet : compare the English word, currency]. Money; (used mostly by women).

**oba**, [*haha* mother]. Aunt.

**o-bā-san**. See *bā-san*.

**obi**. Belt; girdle; sash.

**oboeru**.

1) To remember.

*chitto mo oboete imasen* (C) : I haven't the slightest recollection of it.

*sonna koto wo itta oboe wa nai* (B) : I don't recollect saying so.

2) To learn; understand.

*oboe ga warui* : slow to learn; to have a bad memory.

*sora de oboeru* : to learn by heart.

*naka-naka oboe-nai ga itsu made mo wasurenai ko desu* (C) : he is a child who learns with great difficulty but never forgets (a thing once he has learnt it).

Comp.

*mi-obo* : recollection of having seen.

*oboe-gaki* : a memorandum, [*kaku* to write].

**obusaru**, v.i. [cogn. w. *obuu* v.t.]. To get on another's back.

**obuu**, v. t. [cogn. w. *obusaru* v.i.]. To carry (somebody) on the back.

*akumbō wo obuu* : to carry a child on the back.

**ochi-ru**, (frequently corr. to *okkochi-ru*, when the meaning is 'to fall' in a physical sense; the 3rd base of this is, regularly, *okkochi*, but is often corr. to *okkott*), v.i. [cogn. w. *otosu* v.t.]. To fall down (from a height).

*ishi ga chi ni okkochita* (B) : a stone fell to the ground.

*mihon yori ochite iru* (B) : it is below sample.

*shimi wa ochimashita ka?* (C) : has the stain come off?

*koko ni ji ga hitotsū ochite iru* (B) : a word is missing here.

*soko ni nani ka okkotte imasu yo* (C) : I say, there is something (which has fallen down) lying over there.

*ima no kaminari wa doko ka e okkochita ni chigai nai* (B) : I am sure that lightning has struck something.

*sonna koto wo suru to hin ga ochiru* (B) : if you do such a thing your good name will suffer.

*niku ga ochi-ru* : to lose flesh; become thin.

*kubi ga ochi-ru* : to be beheaded.

*mune ni ochi-ru* : to comprehend.

Comp.: *ochi-tsuku*, q.v.

**ochi-tsuku**, [*ochi-ru* to fall down; *tsuku* to adhere]. To settle down (in one's residence); become calm, composed.

*kono-goro no ii o tenki ni wa uchi ni ochi-*

*tsuite irare-nai* (B) : we are having such fine weather that I cannot remain quietly at home.

*ochi-tsuite mono wo ii nasai* (A) : be careful and think what you are saying.

*ki ga ochi-tsuita* (B) : he has calmed down.

**odokasu**, v.t. [? f. foll.: cogn. w. *odoroku* v.i.]. To frighten; startle; surprise; astonish.

**odorokasu**, v.t. [cogn. w. prec. also v.t.; and with foll. v.i.]. To astonish; surprise; startle; frighten.

**odoroku**, v.i. 114, [cogn. w. *odokasu*, v.t. and *odorokasu* v.t.]. To be surprised, astonished, startled, frightened.

*mā! odoraita* (B. fem.) : well, I am astonished.

*sono kirei na no ni wa odoraita* (B) : I was surprised at its beauty.

**odoru**. To dance.

*wreshikatte mune ga odorimashita* (C) : my heart jumped for joy.

**ōfuku**. Going and returning; there and back. *yūbin-kyoku made ōfuku ikura desu ka?* (C) : how much is it to the post office and back?

*Kyōto no ni-tō ōfuku ichi-mai kudasai* (C) : one second-class return to Kyōto, please.

Comp.: *ōfuku-gippu* : return-ticket, [*kippu* a ticket].

**o-hayō**, [o honorific; *hayai* early]. Good morning.

**o-hito-yoshi**, [o honorific; *hito* man; *yoshi* good]. A silly, weak person; a soft.

**o-hiya**, [o honorific; *hiyasu* to cool]. Cold water, (used mostly by women).

**oi**, [o- male : compare *meil* niece]. Nephew.

**ōi**. (Too) many; (too) much; numerous.

*Ōi* is not used attributively except when forming part of an adj. phrase as *ishi no ōi yama*, 'a stony mountain', and even in this case *ōi* may be considered as the predicate of *ishi*, 'a stones-are-many mountain' : *ōku no* is sometimes used attributively instead of *ōi*. The polite form of the predicate used before the verb *gozaru* is logically *ōo* or *ōō*; but it is gen. pron. *ō*. The adv. form is *ōku* and refers to number or quantity; the form *ōi ni* refers to degree: on account of its form, *ōi ni* is mentioned here but it probably is a corr. of *ōki ni*; see *ōkii*, *ōki na*.

*isu ga ōi* (B) : there are a great (too) many chairs.

*kono sakana wa hone ga ō gozaimasu* (D) : this fish has a lot of bones.

*Tōkyō de ichiban seito no ōi gakkō wa doko desu ka?* (C) : which school in Tōkyō has the largest number of pupils?

*ōku mieru* (B) : it seems a lot (very many).

*oi ni ame ga futte iru* (B) : it is raining very heavily.

*ōku no* : many.

*ano hito wa ōku no kodomo ga arimasu* (C) : that man has many children.

*ōku wa* : for the most part.

Comp.

*ō-sugiru* : to be in excess.

*satō ga ō-sugiru* (B) : there is too much sugar (in it).

**oi-dasu**, [ou to pursue; *dasu* to take out]. To drive away.

**o-ide**, [o honorific; *ide-ru* original form of *de-ru* to go out]. *O-ide* behaves like a verbal stem, (therefore a noun), preceded by an honorific, (359).

1) *O-ide nasaru*, *o-ide ni naru*, and *o-ide de gozaru*, are polite substitutes for *iru* to be; and used, therefore, of the being of the 2nd (or 3rd) person.

*Itō San wa o-ide nasaimasu ka?* (D) : is Mr Itō at home?

*sukkari naoru made oki-nai de o-ide nasai* (C) : don't get up till you have completely recovered.

*nani shimbun wo totte o-ide nasaimasu ka?* (D) : what newspaper do you take?

2) *O-ide nasaru*, *o-ide ni naru*, *o-ide de gozaru*, and *o-ide kudasaru* are polite substitutes for *kuru* and *iku*; and used, therefore, of the coming and going of the 2nd (or 3rd) person : *o-ide kudasaru* supposes that the act is performed in favour of the 1st person.

*mata o-ide nasai* (B) : please come again.

*Tanaka San mo issho ni o-ide kudasaimasu ka?* (D) : is Mr Tanaka also going with us?

3) *O-ide* is sometimes foll. by the contr. verb *desu*, etc.: it may have the meaning of being, coming or going, but is less polite than the expressions given in 1) and 2). *O-ide* by itself, as an imperative, is impolite.

*Itō San wa o-ide desu ka?* (C) : is Mr Itō at home?

*Tanaka San mo issho ni o-ide desu ka?* (C) : is Mr Tanaka also going with us?

*chotto matte o-ide* (A) : wait a moment.

*o-ide* (A) : come here.

4) *O-ide nasaru* is used after the gerundial form of true adj. although in this case *iru* to be, cannot be used, (200, 9).

*atama ga itakūte o-ide nasaimasu* (D) : he has a headache.

*anata wa sei ga takakūte o-ide nasaimasu* (D) : you are tall.

5) The fact that *o-ide* is a noun is clearly seen in the foll. example :  
*anata ga kura wo tateyō to shite o-ide no jimen wa doko desu?* (C) : where is the plot of land on which you are thinking of building a godown?

We might say *shite iru jimen* or *shite o-ide nasaru jimen*, as a verbal adj. used attributively is placed directly before the noun (233); but a quasi-adj., i.e. a noun used as an adj., is always connected with the noun by the ppn. *na* or *no*, (212).

6) Various.

*konaide o-ide no toki ni niwa wo goran deshita ka?* (C) : when you were here a few days ago did you see my garden?

*Tōkyō e o-ide no toki ni hon wo katte kite kudasai* (C) : when you go to Tōkyō please buy me a book.

*o-ide wo negaimasu* (D) : please come to see me.

*o-ide o-ide wo suru* : to beckon.

**oi-kake-ru**, (frequently corr. to *okkake-ru*, [ou to pursue; *kake-ru* q.v.]. To run after.

**oishii**. Pleasant to the taste.

*undō suru to tabe-mono ga oishii* (B) : if you take exercise you will enjoy your meals.

**o-itoma**, [o honorific]. Leave; discharge.

*mō o-itoma wo itashimashō* (D) : I will now take my leave.

*o-itoma mōshimashō* (D) : I think I must be going.

**oi-tsūku**, [ou to pursue; *tsūku* to adhere]. To overtake.

**oji**, [*chichi*: father]. Uncle.

**o-jigi**, [o honorific]. A bow; salutation.

*o-jigi wo suru* : to bow.

**o-jii-san**. See *jii-san*.

**o-jō-san**, [o honorific; *jō* girl; *san* Miss]. Polite expression for daughter; your daughter.

*Yamada San no o-jō-san* : Miss Yamada.

**oka**. Land (as distinguished from water); shore.

**o-kage**, [o honorific; *kage* shade]. Influence; assistance.

*tomodachi no o-kage* : thanks to my friend.

*o-kage sama de* : by your kind influence.

*o-kage sama de buji ni sumimashita* (D) : by your favour the matter was concluded without a hitch.

*o-kage sama de hidoi me ni attu* (B) : thanks to you I was very badly treated, (ironical).

**o-kami**, [o honorific; *kami* upper]. The government.

**o-kami-san**, [o honorific; *kami* upper; *san* Mrs; compare *gejo* servant, *lit.* lower woman]. Wife (of the low class people).

**okashii**; **okashi na**; (223). Laughable; ridiculous; strange.

*okashii!* how funny!

*okashiku natchatta* (B) : I felt inclined to laugh.

Note:—*okashi na* is only used as an attr.

**oki**, [stem of *okul* to leave]. Omitting.

*hitotsū oki* : every other one.

*futatsu oki* : every third day.



**ōki**; **ōki na**; (223), [ōi many]. Large; big; great.

*ōki hako*: a big box.

*ōki na koe*: a loud voice.

*ōkiku naru*: to grow.

*ōkiku suru*: to make bigger.

Note. The polite form of the predicate of *ōki* is *ōkiu*: *kiu* is not pron. in two syllables *ki-ū*, but is a diphthong and pron. as if written *kyū*. The q. adj. *ōki na* is never used predicatively; it is, however, sometimes, found in the adverbial form *ōki ni*, especially in certain really polite or ironically polite expressions. *Ōi ni* (see *ōi*) is probably a corruption of *ōki ni*.

*ōki ni arigatō* (B): thanks very much; (if said ironically) thanks for nothing.

*ōki ni go-kurō* (A): many thanks for your trouble.

*ōki ni o sewa sama deshita* (B): many thanks for your kind assistance.

*kyō wa ōki ni yoku narimashita* (C): I am much better today.

Der.

*ō- q.v.*

*ōkisa*: size, [see -sa].

**okippanasu**, [oku<sup>1</sup> to put; hanasū<sup>2</sup> to let go]. To put a thing somewhere and leave it there.

**oki-ru**, v.i. [cogn. w. *okosu* v.t.]. To get up; awake.

*okite-ru*: to be up.

*mada okimasen* (C): he is not up yet.

Comp. *asa-oki*: early rising; an early riser.

**okkake-ru**. See *oi-kake-ru*.

**okkochi-ru**. See *ochi-ru*.

**okkotosu**. See *otosu*.

**okorippoi**, [okoru to get angry; -ppoi q.v.]. Quick-tempered.

**okoru**, v.i. [cogn. w. *okosu* v.t.].

1) To happen.

*nani ga okotta* ? (B): what has happened ?  
*dō shite okotta no desu* ? (C): how did that happen ?

*sono kenka wa dō iu koto kara okotta no desu* ? (C): what was the cause of the quarrel ?

2) To get angry.

*okotte imasen* (C): I am not angry.

*zuibun okorimashita* (C): he got very angry.

3) Various.

*kono byōki wa jikō no kawari-me ni okoru no desu* (C): this illness breaks out at the change of season.

*mata sen no byōki ga okorimashita* (C): I have an attack of my old complaint again.

*hi ga okotte iru* (B): the fire is bright.

Der.: *okorippoi*: quick-tempered, [see -ppoi].

**okosu**, v.t. [cogn. w. *oki-ru* v.i. and *okoru* v.i.]. To raise up; wake.

*taoreta ki wo okoshite kure* (A): raise up the tree that has fallen.

*roku-ji ni okoshite moraitai* (B): I want to be woken at six o'clock.

*hi wo okosu*: to make a fire become bright.

oku<sup>1</sup>.

1) To put; place; lay.

*tana no ue ni okimashō* (C): I'll put it on the shelf.

2) After a gerund it means: a) that the thing is done beforehand as it will be needed afterwards; or b) the complete settling of a matter. The final *e* of the gerund is frequently dropped.

*kore wo totte oite o kure* (A): put this away.

*kangaetoite kudasai* (B): please think the matter well over.

*chōmen ni tsukete okimashita* (C): I put it down in my note-book.

*tonikaku jikan wo kimete okimashō* (C): anyhow let's settle the hour.

*sono mama ni shite oite kure* (A): leave it as it is.

*dare ka kitara matashite o oki nasai* (A): if anybody comes ask him to wait.

*sūtete oku*: to leave alone.

*doko e oite okimashō ka* ? (C): where shall I put it ?

*koko e oitoite kudasai* (C): please put it down here: (*oitoite*=*oite oite*).

3) Various.

*jōchū wo fūtari oite imasu* (C): I keep two servants.

*hito-tsuki oite*: after one month.

Comp.

*mono-oki*: a store-room.

*okippanasu*: to put something in a place and leave it there, [see -ppanasu].

*oki-wasure-ru*: to mislay.

**oku<sup>2</sup>**. Innermost part of anything; part of the house reserved for family use.

*oku kara shujin ga dete kita* (B): the master of the house came out from an inner room.

*oku e annai sareta* (B): I was shown into a private room.

*jōchū wa oku no chawan wo tsukatte wa ikenai* (A): the servants must not use the tea-cups used by the family.

*oku no te wo dasu*: to display one's full skill.

Comp.

*oku-sama*, q.v.

*oku-ba*: the back teeth, [*ha<sup>2</sup>* tooth].

**okure-ru**, v.i. 114. To be late, behind time. *kono tokei wa okurete imasu* (C): this watch is slow.

*kisha wa okuremasu* (C): the train is late.

*minna ni okure-nai yō ni o isogi nasai* (B): make haste so as not to be behind the rest.

*hayari ni okure-ru*: to be out of date or fashion.

*hito ni okure'ru* : to be inferior to another (person).

Comp.: *neri-okure'ru* : to be late for (train, steamer, etc.).

## okuru.

1) To send.

*shina-mono wo Tōkyō e okutte kudasai* (C) : please send the goods to Tōkyō.

2) To see off ; accompany a guest part of the way on his departure.

*teishaba made okurimashō* (C) : I will go to the station to see him off.

3) To pass (time).

*hi wo okuru* : to pass one's days.

*muda ni hi wo okutte imasu* (C) : he passes his life in idleness.

*bimbō ni sono hi wo okutte iru* (B) : he lives like a poor man from hand to mouth.

Comp.

*okuri-mono* : a gift.

*mi-okuru*, q.v.

**oku-sama**, (*oku-san* less polite), [*oku*<sup>2</sup> interior; *sama* Mrs.]. Polite term for wife ; your wife ; mistress of the house.

**omae**, [o honorific ; *mae* in front : the honorific meaning has been entirely lost]. You ; (familiar term, used only to inferiors).

*omae-san* is a shade more polite : you.

*omae-tachi* : you (plural).

**o-medetō**, [o honorific ; *medetai* q.v.].

**omo** (*na*), [*omoi* heavy]. Principal.

**omocha**. Toy.

**omoi**<sup>1</sup>. Heavy ; important ; serious.

*omoi ishi* : a heavy stone.

*omoi byōki* : a serious illness.

**omoi**<sup>2</sup>, [stem of *omou* to think]. Thought ; idea.

*kurushii omoi wo suru no wa doku desū* (C) : anxiety is bad for the health.

**omoi-gake**, [*omou* to think ; *-gake* whilst].

It is always followed by a neg.

*omoi-gake nai* : unexpected.

*konna tokoro de o me ni kakarō to wa omoi-gake mo nai koto deshita* (C) : I never expected to meet you here.

**omoshiroi**. Amusing ; interesting ; pleasant.

*omoshiroi hanashi* : an amusing story.

*omoshiro hambun* : half in jest.

*dōmo kono shōbai wa omoshiroku nai* (B) : there is certainly not much money to be made in this business.

*sakujitsū kara byōki ga omoshiroku nai* (B) : since yesterday his illness has taken a bad turn.

Comp.: *omoshirogaru* : to feel interested in, [see *-garu*].

**omote**. The external surface ; front side of a thing ; outside ; out of doors ; the right side (of cloth).

**omou**. To think ; consider.

1)

*anata wa dō omoimasū ka?* (C) : what do

you think ? what is your opinion ?

*omotta yori yoku dekimashita* (C) : it is better than I expected.

*omoeba omou hodo hara ga tatsū* (B) : the more I think it over the more angry I feel.

*watashi no omou ni wa* : in my opinion.

*yosa-sō ni omoimasū ; yosa-sō da to omoimasū* (C) : it seems to me as if it would do.

*samui no wa nan to mo omowa-nai* (B) : I don't mind the cold at all.

*yo no naka no koto wa omou yō ni wa nari-masen* (C) : things in this world will not always happen according to our wishes.

*waruku omou* : to take in bad part.

*ano hito no koto wo waruku omou* : to think ill of that person.

2) For *to omou* see to 1), 8), and 9).

3) The passive of *omou* is *omoware'ru*. Like most passives it may be used as such or as a potential, (126) : in this latter case it means 'to be inclined to think'.

*hito ni yoku omowareru hito desū* (C) : he is a person well thought of by others.

*ano hito wa amamari iro ga shirokute Nihon-jin to wa omoware-nai* (B) : that man's complexion is so fair I am inclined to think he is not a Japanese.

Comp.

*omoi*<sup>2</sup>, q.v.

*omoi-chigai* : a misunderstanding.

*omoi-dasū* : to call to mind ; recollect.

*omoi-kiru* : to cease to think over ; abandon all hope.

*omoi-komu* : to set one's heart upon ; be under the impression.

*omoi-naosū* : to reconsider ; change one's mind.

**on**. Favour ; kindness ; benefaction.

*on wo shira-nai hito* : an ungrateful person.

*kesashite go on wa wasuremasen* (D) : I will never forget your kindness.

*on wo uke'ru ; on ni azukaru* : to receive favours.

Comp.: *onjin* : benefactor, [*jin* man].

**onaji**, (sometimes corr. to *onaji*). Same : equal. The original form was *onaji* from the stem of which the q. adj. *onaji na* was formed. When used predicatively or adverbially it behaves like a q. adj. : attributively the *na* is dropped and *onaji*, the stem of the original adj., is placed immediately before the noun without any postposition intervening. Adverbially *onajiku* is sometimes heard besides the commoner *onaji ni*.

*onaji hito* : the same man.

*onaji koto desū* (C) : it is all the same.

*mae to onaji* : just the same as before.

*nihon to onaji* : the same as sample.

*onaji yō na mono* : the same kind of thing.



*kore to sore to wa onaji de wa arimasen* (C) : this is not the same as that.

*nedan wa onaji de ôkisa ga chigau* (B) : the price is the same but the size is different.  
*kore wo onaji ni* (or *onajiku*) *mitsû ni wakete o kure* (A) : divide this into three equal parts.

**onaka**, [o honorific; *naka* inside]. Belly; abdomen; a person's inside; (used mostly by women).

*onaka ga sûkimashita*; *onaka ga herimashita* (C) : I am hungry.

**ondori**, [o- male; *tori* bird]. Cock.

**o-nagai**, [o honorific; *negau* to request]. A petition; request; (used mostly by women).

*o-nagai ga gozaimasu* (D) : I have a request to make.

*o-nagai desû kara o-ide kudasai* (C) : I entreat you to come.

**onaku**. Music.

**onna**. Woman; a female.

*onna no* : female.

*onna no ko* : a girl.

*onna no neko* : a she-cat.

*ano onna* : that woman; she.

*onna ni naru* : to reach womanhood.

*onna wo oku* : to hire a maid.

Der.: *onnarashii* : womanish, [see *-rashii*].

**onnaji**. See *onaji*.

**oreru**, v.i. 114, [cogn. w. *oru* v.t. to which it also serves as potential]. To break; be able to break.

*orete iru* : to be broken.

*ki no eda ga oremashita* (C) : the branch of the tree broke (is broken).

*kono dai wa fûtatsu ni oremasu* (C) : this stand can be folded in two.

*hidari e oreru* : to turn to the left (as on the road).

*kono shigoto wa hone ga oremasu* (C) : this work demands a great deal of labour.

**ori**. Opportunity; occasion.

*chôdo ii ori da kara ikimashô* (C) : as this is a good opportunity, let us go.

*ori wo mi'ru* : to watch for an opportunity.

*ii ori wo matsu* : to wait for a good opportunity.

**ori-ru**, v.i. [cogn. w. *orosû* v.t.]. To descend; go down; alight.

*saka wo ori-ru* : to go down a hill.

*kisha wo orimashita* (C) : he got off the train.

*dotechi kara oriru no desû i-a?* (C) : which side do we get out?

Comp.: *tobi-ori-ru* : to jump off; jump down.

**orosû**, v.t. [cogn. w. *ori-ru* v.i.].

1) To take down; put down.

*tana kara hako wo orosû* : to take down a box from a shelf.

*ûna no ni wo orosû* : to unload a horse.

2) To wear or put on for the first time, (the article is thus lowered from *ew* to used).  
*atarashi kutsu wo oroshite mo ii* (A) : you may put on your new boots.

**oru**<sup>1</sup>. To be; practically equivalent to *iru* (q.v.), but much less used in the centre of Japan: when used, generally in *-masû* terminations.

**oru**<sup>2</sup>. To weave.

Comp.: *ke-ori no* : woollen (of cloth).

**oru**<sup>3</sup>, v.t. [cogn. w. *oreru* v.i.]. To break; bend; fold.

*bô wo oru* : to break a stick.

*yubi wo otte kazoeru* : to count by bending the fingers.

*kami wo mitsû ni oru* : to fold a paper in three.

Comp.: *hone-ori*, q.v.

**osae-ru**, v.t. [cogn. w. *osû* also v.t.].

1) To press upon; keep down.

*atama wo osae-ru* : to humble a person.

*mushi wo osae-ru* : to restrain one's anger.

*mimi wo osae-ru* : to stop the ears (with the fingers).

2) To catch.

*ano imu wo osae ite o kure* (A) : keep back that dog.

*junsu ni osarereta* (B) : he was caught by a policeman.

**o-shaberi**, [o honorific; *shaberu* to gossip]. A babbler.

**o-share**, [o honorific; *share-ru* to be stylish]. A stylish, well-dressed person.

**oshie-ru**. To teach; instruct; point out; show.

*hito ni oshiete morau* : to be instructed by a person.

*michi wo oshie-ru* : to show the way.

Note: the passive, *oshierare-ru*, is gen. corrupted to *osowaru*.

Der.

*oshie* : teaching; instruction.

*oshie wo uke-ru* : to be taught.

**oshigaru**, [*oshii* deplorable; *-garu* q.v.]. To deplore; grudge.

*jikan wo oshigaru* : to grudge one's time.

*wakare wo oshigaru* : to be unwilling to part.

**oshii**. Deplorable; regrettable; much esteemed.

*oshii koto da* (B) : what a pity!

*naku hodo oshii koto de mo nai* (B) : it is not worth while crying about.

*ano hon wo hito ni yatta ga ima de wa oshikute tamara-nai* (B) : I gave away that book and now I am very sorry I did so.

*oshii hito* : a much-esteemed man; a man we can ill spare.

*inochi no oshii koto* : love of life; instinct of self-preservation.

Der.: *oshigaru*, q. v.

**osoi**. Late; slow.

*osoku mo roku-ji made ni* : at six at the latest.

*osoku naru ka mo shiremasen* (C) : I am afraid we shall be late.

*ushi no osoi hito* : a man who walks slowly.

*osokute mo* : even if late ; at the latest.

*osoku made* : until late.

**osoroshii**. Fearful ; dreadful ; awful.

*osoroshii koto ni atta* (B) : I met with an awful experience.

*osoroshiku dōmo michi ga warui* (B) : how awfully bad the road is !

*osoroshii* (or *osoroshiku*) *takai shina* : an awfully dear article.

**osowaru**, [corr. of *oshierareru*, passive of *oshieru* q.v.].

**ossharu**. An honorific verb used politely of the 2nd, sometimes of the 3rd person : it drops the *r* before the *-masū* terminations.

*anata no ossharu koto wa waruku arimasen*

(C) : what you say is not wrong.

*nan to osshaimasū ka ?* (D) : what do you say ?

**osū**, v.t. [cogn. w. *osaeru* also v.t.]. To push ; press.

Comp.: *ato-oshi*, q.v.

**oto**. Noise ; sound.

**otoko**. Man ; a male person.

*otoko no* : male.

*otoko no ko* : a boy.

*otoko no neko* : a tom-cat.

*otoko ni naru* : to reach manhood.

*otoko wo tateru* : to act manfully.

Der.: *otokorashii* : manly, [see *-rashii*].

**otona**, [ō-big ; *hito* man ; *na* name]. A grown-up person.

Der.: *otonarashii* : like a grown-up person.

**otonashii**, [corr. of *otonarashii* like a grown-up person]. Quiet ; gentle ; well-behaved.

**otosū**, (often corr. to *okkotosū* when the meaning is 'to drop' in a physical sense), [cogn. w. *ochi-ru* v.i.]. To let fall ; drop ; omit.

*otosa-nai* (or *okkotosa-nai*) *de o kure* (A) : don't let it drop.

*ji wo hitotsū otoshita no de imi ga wakaranai* (B) : I cannot make out the meaning as a word has been left out.

*chikara wo otosū* : to lose heart.

*sonna ni chikara wo otosa-nai de mo ii* (A) : you need not be so down-hearted.

*hin wo otosū* ; *na wo otosū* : to lower one's good name ; damage one's reputation.

*namida wo otosū* : to shed tears.

*tsumi ni otosū* : to charge a person with a crime.

*shimi wo otosū* : to remove a stain.

Comp.

*otoshi-mono* : a thing dropped by mistake.  
*tsūki-otosū* : to push or knock down, [*tsūku* to strike].

*yomi-otosū* : to omit (accidentally) in reading.

*kaki-otosū* : to omit (accidentally) in writing.

**otōto**. A younger brother.

**ototot**. The day before yesterday.

**ototoshi**, [*toshi* year]. The year before last.

**ou**. To pursue ; run after.

*inu wo ou* : to chase a dog.

*uchiwa de ka wo otte kure* (A) : drive away the mosquitos with a fan.

*jibun no atama no hai wo oi nasai* : frighten the flies off your own head ; mind your own business.

*jun wo otte* : in proper order.

Comp.

*oi-dasū* : to drive away.

*oi-kakeru* : to run after.

*oi-tsūku* : to overtake.

**owari**. The end.

*kongetsū no owari* : at the end of the month.

**oya**. Parents.

*oya no kokoro ko wa shira-zu* : a child does not fully understand his parents' heart.

Comp.

*jūta-oya* : both parents, [*jūtatsu* two].

*oya-ko* : parent and child.

**ōya**, [ō big ; *ya* person]. Landlord.

**oyogu**. To swim.

**ōzei**, [ō-big]. A crowd ; great number of people.

*sō omou hito wa ōzei arimasū* (C) : there are many who think so.

*Nagasaki ni wa seiyō-jin ga ōzei imasen* (C) : there are not many foreigners living in Nagasaki.

**pan**, [Spanish, pan]. Bread.

**peiji**, [corr. of English]. Page.

**pen**, [English]. Pen.

Comp.: *penjiku* : penholder, [*jiku* stalk].

**-ppanasū**, [f. *hanasū* to let go]. Used after the stem of a verb to make compounds :

e.g.:

*akeppanasū* : to leave open, [*akeru* to open].

*dashippanasū* : to take a thing out and leave it out, [*dasū* to take out].

*okippanasū* : to put a thing somewhere and leave it there, [*okui* to put].

**-ppoi**. Suffix added to certain nouns, stems of adj. or verbs : it forms adjectives that usually (but not always) mean that the noun or quality is in excess ; they are gen. used in a bad sense.

*mizuppoi* : watery, [*mizu* water].

*arappoi* : rough ; coarse ; [*arai* rough].

*yasuppoi* : cheap ; of little value ; [*yasui* cheap].

*akippoi* : fickle ; changeable ; [*aki-ru* to get tired of].

*okorippoi* : quick-tempered, [*okoru* to get angry].



*shimeppoi* : moist ; damp ; [*shimeru* to get damp].

*wasureppoi* : forgetful, [*wasure-ru* to forget].

*shiroppoi* : whitish ; no esp. bad meaning ; [*shiroi* white].

*kuroppoi* : blackish ; no esp. bad meaning ; [*kuroi* black].

**pocketto**, [corr. of English]. Pocket.

**rai-**. Coming ; next ; (used only in composition).

*raigetsū* : next month.

*raiharu* : next spring ; the beginning of next year.

*rainen* : next year.

*raishū* : next week.

*sarai-* q.v.

**raku (na)**. Easy ; comfortable.

*raku ni kurasu* : to lead an easy life.

*raku na shigoto da* (B) : it is an easy piece of work.

*shigoto wa omotta yori raku desu* (C) : the work is easier than I thought.

*o raku ni* (C) : pray be at your ease ; make yourself comfortable ; make yourself at home.

*kono mondai wa raku ni tokemasu* (C) : this problem is easily solved.

*raku ni narimashita* (C) : I am no longer in pain ; I am no longer hard up ; I am now free from pain or financial difficulties.

Comp.: *kiraku*, q.v.

**rambō (na)**. Disorderly ; unruly ; violent.

**rampu**, [corr. of English]. Lamp.

*rampu wo tsukeru* : to light the lamp.

*rampu wo kesu* : to put out the lamp.

**rasha**, [Dutch, Laken rassen]. Woollen cloth.

**-rashii**. Suff. added to nouns, the noun component of quasi-adjectives, present or past of verbs, and, sometimes, to true adjectives and adverbs ; it means similarity or probability : it often corresponds to the termination -ish or -ly in English or may be translated by 'seems', 'like', 'apparently', 'said to be'. Sometimes it hardly makes any difference in the meaning especially when added to the stem of an adj. The following are only a few examples out of an immense number.

*bakarashii* : foolish, [*baka* a fool].

*kodomorashii* : childish, [*kodomo* a child].

*otokorashii* : manly, [*otoko* a man].

*onnarashii* : womanly, [*onna* a woman].

*otonarashii* : like a grown-up person, [*otona* a grown-up person].

*usorashii* : seems to be a lie, [*uso* a lie].

*hontorashii* : seems to be true, [*hontō* the truth].

*iku-rashii* : likely to be going, [*iku* to go].

*dekita-rashii* : seems to be done, [*deki-ru* to be done].

*irashii* : seems to be good, [*ii* good].

*waruirashii* : seems to be bad, [*warui* bad].

*nairashii* : seems to be none, [*nai* non-existent].

*sōrashii* : seems to be so, [*sōi* thus].

*kitanairashii* : seems to be dirty, [*kitanai* dirty].

*kitanarashii* : dirty, [*kitanai* dirty].

*kawairashii* : charming ; lovely ; [*kawaii* charming].

*nikurashii* : disagreeable ; nasty ; [*nikui* disagreeable].

*mezurashii* : rare ; strange ; [*mezuru* to be found].

**rei**<sup>1</sup>. Politeness ; salutation ; thanks ; a present made in return for some favour ; (the honorific *o* is often pref.).

*rei wo shira-nai* : to be ignorant of the common rules of politeness.

*o rei wo suru* : to make a present as an acknowledgement of thanks ; to bow.

*nani ka o rei wo shi-nakereba narimassen* (C) : we must offer some thing in return.

*atsūku kinō no o rei wo mōshi-agemasu* (D) : I beg to tender you my best thanks for your kindness yesterday.

Der.: *burei* ; *shitsūrei* ; q.v.

**rei**<sup>2</sup>. Zero ; nought.

*hyaku rei shi* : one hundred and four.

**renga**. Brick.

**retsū**. Row ; file ; line ; rank.

**ri**. A Japanese mile = 2.44 English miles.

*Ri* is preceded by the 1st set of num. (271 ; 276, 1). Before *ri*, *yo* (four) is gen. used instead of *shi*.

**rikō (na)**. Clever.

**rin**<sup>1</sup>. The tenth part of a *sen* and of certain other small units of measure. *Rin* is preceded by the 1st set of num. (271 ; 276, 1). Before *rin*, *yo* or *yon* (four) is gen. used instead of *shi*.

**rin**<sup>2</sup>, [the English, to ring, may serve as a mnemonic]. A handbell.

Comp.: *yobi-rin* : a small bell (as for calling a servant).

**rippa (na)**. Splendid ; grand ; magnificent.

**rōka**. Corridor ; passage.

**roku**. Six.

Note :—*roku* in comp. before *j* or *h* becomes *rop-* ; before *k*, *rok-*.

*roku-gatsu*, [*roku* six ; *gatsu* month]. June.

**rōma-ji**, [*ji* a letter ; character]. Roman letters or type: this term is applied loosely to practically all forms of letters used in writing or printing English, (French, Spanish, Italian, etc.) ; not, however, to Gothic, Russian or Greek letters ; especially, Japanese written in European characters.

**rōsoku**. A candle.

Comp.: *rōsoku-tate* : a candlestick, [*tate-ru* to set up].

**rōya**, [*yai* house]. A prison.

**rusu.** Absence.

*rusu desu* (C) : he is absent.

*rusu ni nani ka kawatta koto ga atta ka?*  
(B) : has anything happened during my absence?

*rusu wo tsūkai* : to pretend to be out.

*rusu no aida iro-iro o sewa deshita* (B) : you were very kind in various ways during my absence.

Comp.: *rusu-ban* : care-taker of a house during master's absence.

**ryō.** Both ; (used mostly in compounds).

*ryō-san* : two or three.

*ryō-ashi* : both legs.

*ryō-gawa* : both sides, [*kawa*<sup>2</sup> side].

*ryō-te* : both hands.

*ryō-hō* : see foll.

**ryō-hō**, [*ryō* both ; *hō* side]. Both.

*ryō-hō hoshii* (B) : I want both.

*ryō-hō to mo shi-nakutcha nara-nai* (A) : you must do both.

**ryōji.** A consul.

Comp.: *ryōji-kan* : the consulate.

**ryokō.** A journey ; travelling.

*ryokō suru* : to travel.

*shōbai no tame ni ryokō shite imasu* (C) : I am travelling on business.

*ryokō chū* : during a journey.

**ryōri.** Cooking ; food.

*ryōri suru* : to cook.

*iro-iro no ryōri wo tabemashita* (C) : I ate several kinds of eatables.

Comp.

*ryōri-nin* : a cook.

*ryōri-ya* : a restaurant.

**sa-**, [contr. of *sai* twice]. Again ; (used only in compounds).

*saraigetsū* : the month after next.

*sarainen* : the year after next.

**-sa.** Suff. added to the stem of adjectives to form abstract nouns, which refer to the degree of a quality ; e.g.:

*atsūsa* : heat ; the degree of heat ; [*atsu*il hot].

*fūtosa* : thickness, [*fūto*i thick].

*nagasa* : length, [*nagai* long].

*ōkisa* : size, [*ōkii* big].

*samusa* : the cold, [*samui* cold].

*takasa* : height, [*takai* high].

**sa ; sã.** Interj. used at the end of a sentence to give emphasis ; at the beginning to urge, hurry or defy.

*kore kara iku (no) sa* (B) : now we'll go along.

*sayō sa ; sō sa* : of course ; yes ; that is so.

*sã ! o-ide nasai* (B) : come along, hurry up !

**sabi**, [stem of foll.]. Rust.

*sabi ga de-ru* : to become rusty.

*mi kara deta sabi da* (B) : it is a misfortune you have brought on yourself ; it serves you right.

**sabi-ru.** To get rusty. (Compare : *kabi-ru* to become mouldy).

*kore wa sabite iru* (B) : this one is rusty.

Der.: *sabi*, q. v.

**sabishii.** Lonely ; solitary.

*hitori de sabishii* (B) : I feel lonely all by myself.

*ano mise wa sabishii* (B) : that shop has very few customers (or goods).

**sae.**

1) Even.

*watakushi de sae dekimasen* (C) : not even I can do it.

*suki na mono sae tabe-nai de imasu* (C) : he refrains from eating even things of which he is fond.

*kodomo de sae dekiru no ni anata wa dekimasen ka?* (B) : can't you do it when even a little child can?

2) Foll. by the conditional—only ; provided.

*ai sae sureba anshin shimasu* (C) : if I could only see him my mind would be at ease.

*iki sae sureba shikarareru* (B) : whenever I go, I get scolded.

*sore ga wakari sae sureba ii* ; *sore sae wakareba ii* (B) : if you only understood that much, that would do.

**sagaru**, v.i. [cogn. w. *sageru* v.t.]. To descend ; go down ; hang down.

*kome ga sūkoshi sagatta yō desu* (C) : the price of rice seems to have gone down.

*gakkō wa kyōnen sagarimashita* (C) : I left school last year.

*te ga sagaru* : to lose one's skill in some manual accomplishment.

**sagasu.** To look for ; search.

*nani wo sagashite imasu ka?* (C) : what are you looking for?

Comp.: *sagashi-dasu* : to find.

**sage-ru**, v.t. [cogn. w. *sagaru* v.i.].

1) To lower ; let down ; suspend.

*sūkoshi sageta hō ga ii* (B) : you had better lower it a little.

*atama wo sage-ru* : to give in ; humble oneself.

*juda wo sage-ru* : to paste a note ; attach a label.

2) To clear away (dishes, etc.) ; withdraw.

*koppu wo o sage nasai* (A) : take away the glass.

**saiku.** Fine work ; workmanship ; ware.

Comp.

*gin-zaiku* : silverware.

*take-zaiku* : things made of bamboo.

**saisoku.** Urging.

*saisoku suru* : to urge ; press ; remind.

**saji.** Spoon.

*saji wo nage-ru* : to throw up the sponge ; give up a case as hopeless.

*isha wa saji wo nageta* (B) : the doctor has given up the patient.



Note: used after the abb. 2nd set of mun.  
(276, 4), *saji* means a spoonful.

**saka.** An inclined road; ascent; descent; hill.

*sonna ni hayaku saka wo oricha abunai*  
(B): don't go so fast down hill, it is dangerous.

*ano hito wa roku-jū no saka wo koshite iru*  
(B): he is on the wrong side of sixty.

Comp.

*kudari-zaka*: a road going down hill.

*nobori-zaka*: a road going up hill.

*saka-michi*: a hilly road.

**sakana.** Fish; solid food taken with wine, etc.

*sakana wo toru*: to fish (with net).

*sakana wo tsuru*: to fish (with line).

*biiru nō sakana wa nani ni itashimashō?*

(D): what may I offer you to eat together with your beer?

Comp.

*ni-zakana*: boiled fish, [*niru* to boil].

*yaki-zakana*: baked fish, [*yaku* to bake].

**sakasama.** Upside-down; topsy-turvy.

**sake.** An alcoholic drink made from rice.

*ō-zake to asa-ne wa bimō no moto*: drink and laziness are the causes of poverty.

Comp.: *sake-nomi*; *sake-zuki*: a *sake* drinker; drunkard; [*suki* fond].

**saki.**

1) The foremost part of anything; point; tip.

*empitsu no saki*: the point of a pencil.

2) Position in front; ahead.

*dōzo o saki e* (C): please go first.

*o saki e gomen kudasai* (D): excuse me for going first.

*ginkō no saki*: beyond the bank.

*is-sun saki wa makkura da* (B): in front of us all is darkness.

*saki ni tatsū*: to go in advance.

*kono saki wa doko desū?* (C): what is the next (station)?

*iku saki wa doko desū?* (C): which is your destination?

*kono saki no hashi wa narishite imasū* (C): they are mending the bridge ahead of us.

3) Distance apart.

*ichi-ri saki kara*: from a distance of one mile.

*zutto saki*: far away.

4) The other party.

*saki no kokoro ga shiremasen* (C): the mind of the other party can't be known.

*saki no iu koto ga wakarimasen* (C): I can't understand what the other party says.

5) Time, past. (When referring to short time, always pron. *sakki*).

*kondo wa sakki yori yoku dekita* (B): you have done it better this time than the last.

*ima kara jū-nen bakari saki ni*: ten years ago.

6) The first of two.

*saki ni hataite ato de haite kure* (A): first dust and then sweep.

*saki no hanashi*: the first of (those) two tales.

7) Time, future.

*anata wa mada saki ga nagai* (B): you have still a long future before you.

*saki no tame ni suru*: to do anything for the sake of the future.

*ima kara jū-nen saki wa*: ten years hence.

*chichi ga shinda saki wa dō shite itara yōharō ka?* (B): how shall we manage after father is dead?

Comp.

*saki-barai*, q.v.

*saki-hodo*: a short time ago.

**saki-barai**, [*saki* the other party; *harau* to pay]. Payment on delivery; prepayment.

Note:—Japanese dictionaries like Ōtsuki's *Genkai*, Kanazawa's *Jirin* and others only give the first of these meanings; Japanese-English dictionaries like Brinkley's, Inoue's, etc. usually give the second with or without the first.

**sakki**, [corr. of *saki*]. A short time ago.

*sakki no hito wa dare desū?* (C): who is that man who was here just a moment ago?

**saku.** To bloom.

Comp.: *saki-sorou*: to be in full bloom.

**saku-**. Preceding; (used only in compounds).

*sakuban*: last night; yesterday evening.

*sakujitsu*: yesterday.

*sakunen*: last year.

See *issaku*-.

**sakura.** A cherry-tree.

**sama**, (often abb. to *san*1, less polite). An honorific used after the names of persons, nouns meaning relationship, and certain nouns used in polite set phrases.—Mr, Mrs, Master, Miss.

*Tanabe Hachijirō Sama* (D): Mr Hachijirō Tanabe.

*Tanabe Sama no oku-sama* (D): Mrs Tanabe.

*o tō-sama* (D): father.

*o sewa sama*; *o-kage sama*; *o kinodoku sama*; etc.: see *sewa*; *kage*; *kinodoku*; etc.

**samasū**1, v.t. [cogn. w. *sameru*1 to wake, v.i.]. To wake; arouse.

*me wo samasū*: to wake.

*yoi wo samasū*: to make sober after intoxication.

**samasū**2, v.t. [? f. *samui* cold; cogn. w. *sameru*2 to cool, v.i.]. To cool anything.

**sameru**1, v.i. [cogn. w. *samasū*1 to wake, v.t.]. To wake.

*me ga same'ru*: to wake.

*me ga same'te iru*: to be awake.

*yoi ga same'ru*: to recover from intoxication.

**same'ru**<sup>2</sup>, v.i. [? f. *samui* cold; cogn. w. *samasu*<sup>2</sup> to cool, v.t.]. To cool; fade.  
**sampo**. A walk.

*sampo suru* : to take a walk.

**samui**. Cold (of the weather).

*kyō wa samui* (B) : it is cold today.

*soto wa samukūte iki ga kōru yō da* (B) : it seems cold enough outside to freeze one's breath.

Der.: *samusa* : the cold; the degree of cold; [see -sa].

**san**<sup>1</sup>, [corr. of *sama*]. Meanings and uses the same as *sama* (q.v.), but less polite. By children or of children, often corr. to *chan*.

**san**<sup>2</sup>. Three.

*san-do ni ichi-do* : occasionally; sometimes.

Note.—In comp. before the sounds *b*, *p* or *m*, *san* is changed to *sam*. The *n* is occasionally dropped as in *jū-sa(n)-nichi* : thirteen days; the thirteenth day of the month.

Comp.

*san-gai* : second floor (i.e. third floor counting the ground floor).

*san-tō* : third class.

*san-kaku* : a triangle.

**san-gatsū**, [*san*<sup>2</sup> three; *gatsū* month]. March.

**sara**. Plate; saucer; dish.

Note.—used after the abb. 2nd set of num. (276, 4), *sara* means a plateful.

**sarai**—, [*sa* again; *rai* next]. The one after next (as regards time); (used only in comp.).

*saraigetsū* : the month after next.

*sarainen* : the year after next.

**sare'ru**, [passive of *suru*<sup>1</sup>]. To have something done to one.

*itazura wo sareru kara o nige nasai* (B) : run away or they (those bigger boys) may play some trick on you.

*sonna koto wo sarete wa komaru* (B) : if you treat me like that you will put me in a difficult position.

**sase'ru**, [causative of *suru*<sup>1</sup>]. To cause to do; have something done; used also as a termination for forming certain causative verbs, 137.

*ano hito no sūki na yō ni sasemashō* (C) : I'll let him do as he likes.

*jochū ni sasemashita* (C) : I had it done by the servant.

Note.—the 3rd base, *saset*, is used, but *sashite* is commoner.

*haiken sashite* (or *sasete*) *kudasai* (D) : please show it to me.

**sashi-tsūkai**. Obstacle; inconvenience.

*sashi-tsūkai ga nakereba* : if you can do it without inconvenience.

*nani ka sashi-tsūkai ga atta no desū ka?* (C) : did anything prevent you?

*hanashite mo sashi-tsūkai nai* (B) : there is no objection to your speaking of it.

*kyō wa sashi-tsūkai ga atte ikare-nai* (B) : as I have an engagement today I shall not be able to go.

**sassuru**. To guess; judge; sympathize.

*mita tokoro kara sassuru to baka na hito da* (B) : judging from his acts he seems to be a foolish man.

*watashi no kokoro mo sūkoshi sashite kudasai* (C) : just try to put yourself in my place a little.

*o sashii mōshimasū* (D) : I deeply sympathize with you.

**sasū**.

1) To point out.

*na wa sasū* : to mention by name.

*nani wo sashite itta no darō?* (B) : what does he allude to?

2) To hold up so as to screen oneself.

*kasa wo sasū* : to open and put up an umbrella.

3) To measure.

*kono kire wo sashite kudasai* (C) : please measure this cloth.

4) To pierce; prick.

*ka ni sasare'ru* : to be bitten by a mosquito.

5) To put into.

*mizu wo sasū* : to pour water into.

*koppu ni hana wo sashite kudasai* (C) : please put the flower in a tumbler.

*hana wo atama ni sasū* : to stick a flower in one's hair.

*kikai ni abura wo sasū* : to oil a machine.

6) To shine; strike.

*ano mado ni hi ga sashite imasū* (C) : the sun is shining on that window.

Comp.: *yubi-sasū* : to point out (with the finger).

**satō**. Sugar.

**satsū**<sup>1</sup>. A bank-note.

*ichi-yen (no) satsū* : a one-yen note.

**satsū**<sup>2</sup>. A.n. used for books.

Note : 1 *is-satsū*; 8 *has-satsū*; 10 *jis-satsū*.

**sawagu**. To make a noise, disturbance.

*mune ga sawagu* : to be agitated.

Comp.: *ō-sawagi* : a great disturbance.

**sawaru**. To touch; affect.

*sawatcha ike-nai* (A) : you mustn't touch it.

*ki ni sawaru* : to put out; annoy.

*yoru osoku made benkyō suru to karada ni sawaru* (B) : if you study until late at night you will injure your health.

*jikō no sawari mo arimasen ka?* (C) : I hope this weather hasn't affected you at all.

*yoru to sawaru to sono hanashi desū* (C) : they talk of it whenever they meet.

**sayō**. Yes; that is so; it is as you say.

*sayō de gozaimasū* (D) : that is so.

**sayonara** : sayōnara; [*sayō* that is so : *naru* if]. Good-bye.

**sazo**. How—must be.

*sazo go shimpai deshō* (C) : how anxious you must be.



**sei**. Stature.

*sei no takai hito* : a tall man.

**sei2**. Deed ; fault.

*dare no sei desu?* (C) : who is to blame ?

*tenki* (or *jikō*) *no sei ka mo shire-nai* (B) : it may be due to the weather (the time of the year).

*hito no sei ni suru* : to lay the blame on somebody.

*watakushi no sei ni shite oki nasai* (B) : lay the blame on me.

*ano bimbo wa sake no sei da* (B) : the poverty was the result of his drunkenness.

**seifu**. The government.

**seito**. Pupil ; scholar.

**seiyō**. Occident ; the West ; Europe.

*seiyō no* : foreign.

**Comp.**

*seiyō-fū* : foreign style.

*seiyō-jin* : a foreigner ; a European, American.

*seiyō-ryōri* : European food.

**seiji**. Generally preceded by the honorific *o*.

1) Politeness ; civility.

*o seji no ii hito* : a courteous person.

*o seji no nai hito* : a person who doesn't strive to be courteous.

2) Flattery ; empty compliments.

*o seji ni itta no de wa arimasen* (C) : I did not say it out of flattery.

*o seji ga jōzu na no desu kara sono tsumori de irasshai* (C) : I warn you that he is very insincere in what he says.

**sekai**. The earth ; world.

**Comp.** : *sekai-jū* : all the world over.

**seki**. Cough.

*seki ga de-ru* : to cough.

**seki-**. Stone ; (used only in compounds).

**Comp.** : *sekitan* ; *sekiyū* ; *sekkon* ; q.v.

**sekitan**, [seki- stone ; tan charcoal]. Coal.

**sekiyū**, [seki- stone ; yū oil]. Petroleum ; kerosene oil.

**sekkaku**. With special pains or difficulty ; expressly ; at last.

*sekkaku osharu kara itadakimashō* (D) : as you so kindly have taken the trouble to make the offer, I will accept it.

*sekkaku o tazune kudasaimashita no ni rusu de o kinodoku de gozaimashita* (D) : I am very sorry that I was absent, after you took so much trouble to come to see me.

*sekkaku motte kimashita no desu kara dōzo o uke-tori kudasai* (D) : as I have expressly brought it for you, please accept it.

*gūbe sekkaku o tenki ni natta no ni kesa wa mata jutte iru* (B) : after the weather had at last cleared up yesterday evening, it is raining again this morning.

*sekkaku o daiji ni nas'ite kudasai* (D) : please take special care of yourself.

**sekken**, [seki- stone ; ken lye]. Soap.

**semai**. Narrow.

*kangae no semai hito* : a narrow-minded man.

**semete**. At least.

*semete hambun de mo kudasaimasen ka?*

(C) : wouldn't you give me at least half ?

**sen1**. Former ; previous.

*sen no shujin* : my former master.

*sen wa* : formerly.

*sen wa sō shite imashita* (C) : I used to do it.

**Comp.**

*sengetsū* : last month.

*senshū* : last week.

*sendatte* ; *senjitsū* ; q.v.

**sen2**. A sen ; 1/100 yen.

**Note**. *Sen* is preceded by the 1st set of num. (271 ; 276). The foll. irregularities occur :

1 *is-sen* ; 8 *has-sen* ; 10 *jis-sen*. One often hears also : 4 *yon-sen* for *shi-sen* ; 40 *yon-jis-sen* for *shi-jis-sen* ; 7 *nana-sen* for *shichi-sen* ; 70 *nana-jis-sen* for *shichi-jis-sen* ; 9 *kyū-sen* for *ku-sen* ; and 90 *kyū-jis-sen* for *ku-jis-sen*. *San-sen* means three sen ; *san-zen* means three thousand.

**sen3**. Thousand.

**Note** : 1000 *sen* ; 3000 *san-zen* ; 8000 *has-sen*. One often hears also : 4000 *yon-sen* for *shi-sen* ; 7000 *nana-sen* for *shichi-sen* ; 9000 *kyū-sen* for *ku-sen*.

**sen4**. Vessel ; ship ; (used only in compounds).

**Comp.** : *kisen* ; *sendō* ; *senchō* ; q.v.

**senaka**. The back (of the body).

**senchō**, [sen4 ship ; chō1 head]. Captain (of a merchant ship).

**sendatte**, [sen1 former ; tatsū to pass, elapse].

A few days ago ; lately.

**sendō**, [sen4 ship]. Boatman.

*sendō okūte june yama ni noboru* : too many boatmen will take the ship on to a mountain ; too many cooks spoil the broth.

**sengetsū**, [sen1 former ; getsū month]. Last month.

**senjitsū**, [sen1 former ; jitsū2 a day]. The other day.

*senjitsū wa dōmo arigatō gozaimashita* (D) : thank you for your kindness the other day.

*senjitsū wa shitsūrei itashimashita* (D) : excuse me for my rudeness the other day.

**sensei**. Teacher ; a respectful title used in addressing a learned person.

**senshū**, [sen1 former ; shū week]. Last week.

**senso**. A battle ; war.

*senso ni katsu* : to win a battle.

**sensu**. A folding fan.

**sentaku**. Washing.

*sentaku suru* : to wash.

*sentaku ni yaru* : to send to the wash.

*inochi no sentaku* : recreation, (lit. washing one's life).

**Comp.**

*sentaku-ya* : laundry ; washerman.

*sentaku-mono* : linen, etc. to be washed or that has been washed.

*sentaku-mono ga kimashita ka?* (C): has the linen come from the wash?

**setomono**, [*Seto* a town near Nagoya; *mono* thing]. Porcelain; earthenware.

**sewa**. Assistance; (the honorific *o* is frequently prefixed).

*sewa (wo) suru*: to render assistance.

*sewa ni naru*: to receive assistance.

*sewa wo yaku*: to be officious; trouble oneself about another.

*nan no sewa de mo shite kuremasu* (C): he will help you in every way.

*jochū wo sewa shimasu* (C): I will find you a servant.

*o sewa sama deshita* (C): thanks for your kind assistance.

*ōki na o sewa da* (A): much obliged to you for nothing.

*inu wo moratte mo sewa wo suru hito ga nai* (B): even if I got a dog there would be no one to look after it.

*ano hito no uchi ni ichi-nen bakari o sewa ni narimashita* (C): I was living at his house about a year.

*taihen o sewa ni narimashita* (C): you have done me a great service.

Comp.: *sewa-zuki*: a person fond of rendering assistance; an officious, meddling person; [*suki* fond].

**-sha**. Carriage; (used only in compounds).

Comp.: *basha*; *densha*; *kisha*; *kyūkō-ressha*; *teishaba*; *q.v.*

**shaberu**. To chatter; gossip; talk without thinking.

*ano hito wa tate-ita ni mizu wo nagasu yō ni shaberimasu* (C): he chatters as fast as water runs off an upright board.

Comp.: *o-shaberi*: a chatterbox, [*o* honorific].

**shabon**, [Spanish *jabon* or French *savon*]. Soap.

**shaku**. A foot (measure).

Note. *Shaku* is preceded by the 1st set of num. (271; 276, 1). The foll. irregularities occur: 1 *is-shaku*; 3 *san-jaku*; 8 *has-shaku*; 10 *jis-shaku*.

**share-ru**. To be stylish, elegant.

Comp.: *o-share*: a stylish person, [*o* honorific].

**shashin**. Photograph.

*shashin wo toru* (or *utsusu*): to take a photograph; have one's photograph taken.

*kesa shashin wo tori ni ikimashita* (C): I went to have my photograph taken this morning.

**shatsu**, [English, *shirt*]. Shirt.

**shi**. City; town of over 25,000 inhabitants; municipality.

Comp.: *shichō*: mayor (of a city), [*chō* head].

**shi<sup>2</sup>**, [*shinu* to die]. Death.

Comp.

*shi-nin*: a dead man.

*shi-nin ni kuchi nashi*: dead men tell no tales.

**shi<sup>3</sup>**. Four (in the 1st set of num. 271).

Note: *yo* or *yon* is often used instead of *shi*; 273.

Comp.: *shi-kaku*: square; rectangle; a four-cornered figure.

**shi<sup>4</sup>**, ppn. This word has a sort of enumerative force; it is used after the present, past or future of verbs, also after adjectives; it is often found in combination with *mo*—*mo*. It may sometimes be translated by: and; so.

*ano hito wa Nihon-go mo hanasu shi, ji mo kakemasu* (C): that man can speak Japanese and he can also write the characters.

*kiki mo shita shi, mi mo shita* (B): I not only heard but I saw it also.

*ip-piki wa shinda shi, mō ip-piki wa nigete shimatta* (B): one (of two animals) died and the other ran away.

*shina mo ii shi, nedan mo yasui* (B): the quality is good and the price is cheap.

*natsu wa suzushii shi, fuyu wa atakai shi, jitsu ni ii tokoro da* (B): it is cool in summer and warm in winter, so it's really a very nice place.

*uchi ni ireba taikutsu da shi, soto ni deru koto wa deki-nai shi, dō shitara yokarō?* (B): I'm bored if I stay indoors and I can't go out, so what am I to do?

*hajimete kani no de wa arumai shi, taigai no nedan wa shite iru* (B): it's not the first time I buy (this kind of thing), so I know the proper price.

Note. The final *i* of the adj. is sometimes dropped before *shi*.

*karada wa yowashi, kane wa nashi, honto ni kawaiō desu* (C): bad health and want of money, he is greatly to be pitied.

**shi-awase**, [*suru* to do; *awaseru* to join]. Fortune; luck; accident; chance.

*shi-awase na*; *shi-awase no ii*: lucky; fortunate.

*o shi-awase desu ne* (C): that is very fortunate (for you).

*shi-awase to ii o tenki deshita* (C): luckily the weather was fine.

Der.: *fu-shiawase na*: unfortunate.

**shibai**. Theatre; theatrical play.

**shibaraku**. A short while; a long while.

*shibaraku o machi kudasai* (D): please wait a little.

*shibaraku o me ni kakarimassen deshita* (D): it is a long time since I had the pleasure of seeing you.

*shibaraku shite*: after some time.

**shibaru**, [cogn. *v. shime-ru* to close]. To tie (with a cord).

*kono nimotsu wo shibatte kudasai* (B): please tie up this parcel.

*junsu ni shibarareta* (B): he was arrested by a policeman.



**shibui.** Astringent (in taste); plain but of good taste (of dress, works of art, etc.).

*shibui kao* : a sour face.

**shichi.** Seven (in the 1st set of num. 271).

Note: —*nana* is occasionally used instead of *shichi*, 273.

**shichi-gatsū**, [*shichi* seven; *gatsū* month]. July.

**shidai.**

1) Condition; circumstance; reason.

*kane shidai da* (B) : it is simply a question of money.

*nan de mo o nozomi shidai* (B) : whatever you please.

*go katte shidai* (B) : just as you please.

*kō in shidai de osoku narimashita* (C) : this is the reason why I am late.

2) As soon as.

*deki shidai okurimasu* (C) : I will send it as soon as it is ready.

*konnichi gakkō ga sumi shidai ikimashō* (C) : I will go today as soon as the school closes.

**shi-gatsū**, [*shi* four; *gatsū* month]. April.

**shigoto**, [*suru* to do; *koto* thing].

1) Work; labour.

*shigoto wo suru* : to work.

*shigoto ga isogashii* (B) : I am very busy.

*shigoto ga hima da* (B) : I have little work to do.

2) Speaking of women, needlework.

*ano onna wa shigoto ga dekimasen* (C) : she can't do needlework.

Comp.

*hara-shigoto* : needlework.

*chikara-shigoto* : rough work demanding strength.

**shijū.** Always; the whole time without interruption.

*shijū itamimasu ka?* (C) : are you always in pain?

*ano hito wa shijū uchi ni iru* (B) : that man is always at home.

*Kimura San no kaite mono wa shijū yonde orimasu* (C) : I read all Mr Kimura writes; I always read what Mr Kimura writes.

**shika**, (sometimes corr. to *shikya*). Only; but.

Note. *Shika* is always foll. by a neg. *Shika* is often preceded by *kiri* 2 q.v. or *dake*.

*mō mitsu shika arimasen* (C) : there are only three left.

*jip-pun shika kakarimasen* (C) : it will only take ten minutes.

*sore shika arimasen* (C) : there is but that; that is all there is.

*pan dake shika nai* (B) : there is only some bread.

**shi-kaku**, [*shi* four; *kaku* corner]. A square; rectangle; a four-cornered figure.

*shi-kaku na* : square.

**shikaru.** To scold.

*Tarō wo shikatte yaru* (B) : I'll give Tarō a scolding.

*sensei ni shikarareta* (B) : the teacher scolded me.

Comp.: *shikari-tsūke-ru* : to give a good scolding.

**shikashi.** But; however; and yet.

**shikata**, [*suru* to do; *kata* way].

1) The way or method of doing something.

*sore de wa shi-kata ga chigau* (B) : that is the wrong way to do it.

*sono shi-kata de wa totemo dame da* (B) : it's not the slightest use doing it like that.

*hoka ni shi-kata ga nai deshō* (C) : I don't think there is any other way of doing it.

2) Expedient; remedy. In this sense practically synonymous with *shiyō*.

*shikata ga nai* (B); *shikata ga aru* (= *ari ya*) *shi-nai* (B) : it can't be helped.

*dō ka shikata ga aru deshō* (C) : there must be some expedient.

*hoka ni shikata ga nai deshō* (B) : I don't think it can be helped.

*taikutsū de shikata ga gozaimasen* (D) : I am awfully bored.

*atsūkute shikata ga nai* (B) : it is awfully hot; it is so hot I don't know what to do.

*nakūte wa shikata ga arimasen* (C) : I cannot do without it.

*sonna ni okotte mo shikata ga nai* (B) : it is no use your getting angry like that.

*shikata ga nai hito da* (B) : he is past mending; he is hopeless.

*ano ko wa shikata ga nai* (B) : that child is very troublesome.

*mō shikata ga nai* (B); *shikata ga naku natte shimatta* (B) : there's no help for it now.

*omae san ni shikata ga nai koto de mo watashi*

*ga kangaereba shikata ga aru ka mo shirenai* (B) : though it may seem a hopeless case to you, if I think it over, I may perhaps be able to find a remedy.

*kono ko wa naite bakari ite shikata ga arimasen* (C) : this child is a great nuisance, he does nothing but cry.

*o bā-san wa shikata nashi ni jibun de dete ikimashita* (C) : as there was no help for it, the old woman went herself.

**shikkari.** Firmly.

*shikkari shita uchi da* (B) : it is a strongly built house.

*shikkari shita hito da* (B) : he is a reliable man.

*shikkari shibaru* : to bind tightly.

**shiku.** To spread (as a mat).

*hiki-dashi no soko ni kami wo ichi-mai o shiki nasai* (B) : please spread a sheet of paper over the bottom of the drawer.

*tōri ni shi wo shiku* : to pave a street.

*futon wo shiku* : to make a bed (Japanese).

o shiki kudasai (D) : please sit on a cushion, (said to a guest in a Japanese room).  
 ano onna wa teishu wo shiri ni shiku (B) : that woman has her husband tied to her apron strings.

shima. Island.

shimai, [stem of *shimau* to end]. The end ; termination ; completion.

mō o shimai desū (C) : it is all over.

shimai ni naru : to come to an end ; be finished.

o shimai ni natta (B) : it has been finished ; it is all exhausted (as things kept for use).

itsū shigoto ga shimai ni narimasu ka ? (C) : when will the work be finished ? (Compare : itsū shigoto wo o shimai ni narimasu ka ? (D) : when will you finish the work ?).

sore de o shimai (B) : and that is all.

shimai no : last ; the last one.

ichiban shimai no : the very last one.

shimai made nokotte imashita (C) : I remained to the last.

shimai ni : at last ; finally.

shimai ni wa dō naru darō (B) : I wonder how it will all turn out in the end.

shimai ni okorimashita (C) : at last he got angry.

shimaru, v.i. [cogn. w. *shimeru* v.t.]. To shut ; become tight.

to ga chanto shimarimasen (C) : the door doesn't shut properly.

kokoro ga shimaru : to have control of one's temper.

shimau.

1) To finish ; end.

shigoto wo shimau : to finish one's work.

ā ! shimatta (koto wo shita) (B) : now I've gone and done it.

2) To put away.

kane wa kore kara hoka no tokoro e shimaimashō (C) : in future I shall keep my money in another place.

dōgu wo shimau : to put tools away.

mise wo shimau : to close a shop (for the night or for good).

shimatte oku : to put away.

3) After a gerund, *shimau* means the completion of an action, or it is merely emphatic. The final syllable *te* or *de* of the gerund and the syllables *shima* of the verb *shimau* are often contracted in ordinary conversation thus : *-te shima-* becomes *-cha-* ; *-de shima-* becomes *-ja-*. E.g. : *kaichatta for kaite shimatta* ; *shinjaimashita for shinde shimaimashita*.

kodomo wa nete shimatta (B) : the child has gone to sleep. (The meaning is not : he has finished sleeping. *Neru* means to go to sleep, not to be asleep ; so the meaning is he has finished going to sleep, or finished by sleeping).

itte shimaimashita (C) : he has gone away (and will not come back).

tsukatte shimau : to use (something) all up.  
 kono hon wo mō yonjatta (B) : I have finished reading this book.

tōtō byōki ni natchatta (B) : at last he finished by falling ill.

Der. and comp.

shimai, q.v.

shimai-komu : to put away.

shimbun. Newspaper, (generally daily).

shimbun wo toru : to take in a newspaper.

shimbun ni de'ru : to appear in a newspaper.

shimbun ni dasu : to put in a newspaper.

shimeppoi, [shimeru<sup>2</sup> to become damp ; -ppo ; q.v.]. Moist ; damp.

shimeru<sup>1</sup>, v.t. [cogn. w. *shimaru* v.i.]. To close ; tighten ; squeeze ; put on (as a belt) ; add up.

to wo shimeru : to close a door.

mise wo shimeru : to close a shop (for the night or for good).

himo wo shimeru : to tighten a cord.

obi wo shimeru : to put on a belt.

tori wo shimeru : to wring a fowl's neck.

kanjō wo shimeru : to close an account.

Der. : shimete, q.v.

shimeru<sup>2</sup>. To become moist ; become damp.

Der. : shimeppoi : moist ; damp ; [see -ppo].

shimete, [gerund of *shimeru* to close]. Sum ; total ; all together.

shimete ikura ni narimasu ka ? (C) : what does it come to all together ? what is the total ?

shimi. A stain.

shimi wo nuku : to take out a stain.

Comp. : abura-jimi : a grease-spot.

shimol. Frost.

kesa shimo ga furimashita (C) : there was frost this morning.

shimo<sup>2</sup>. Below.

hashi no shimo : below the bridge.

hashi kara ichi-ri shimo desū (C) : it is one mile below the bridge.

shimpai. Anxiety ; care ; worry.

shimpai suru : to be anxious ; to worry.

shimpai shi-nai de mo ii (B) : you need not worry about it.

tomodachi no koto wo shimpai shite imasu (C) : I am anxious about my friend.

moshi ya o ki ni ira-nai ka to omotte shimpai shimashita (C) : I was afraid you would not like it.

shimpai na koto : a thing one is anxious about.

kesshite shimpai wa arimasen (C) : there's not the slightest reason for anxiety.

kimono wo yogosui no ga shimpai desū (C) : I am afraid of dirtying my dress.

shimpai wo kake'ru : to cause somebody anxiety.



*iro-iro go shimpai wo kakemashita* (D) : I have caused you a great deal of anxiety.  
*shimpai de shiyō ga nai* (B) : I am awfully anxious.

**shina.** Quality ; articles.

*shina ga yoroshikute nedan ga yasui* (B) : the quality is good and the price is cheap.

*ore to kore to wa maru de shina ga chigai-masu* (C) : that article and this are of quite different qualities.

Note : —*shina* is sometimes used preceded by the abb. 2nd set of num. (276, 4).

Comp. : *shina-mono* : articles ; goods.

**Shina.** China.

Comp.

*Shina-jin* : a Chinese.

*Shina-go* : the Chinese language.

**shina-mono**, [*shina* thing ; *mono* thing]. Articles ; goods.

**shinchū.** Brass.

**shinjiru**, [corr. of *shinzuru* ; f. *shin* confidence ; *suru* to do : cogn. w. *shinyō* confidence]. To believe ; trust.

**shinrui.** A relative ; relation.

*ano hito wa go shinrui desu ka* ? (C) : is he a relation of yours ?

*dō iu go shinrui desu ka* ? (C) : what relation is he to you ?

**shinsetsū.** Kindness.

*shinsetsū na* : kind.

*go shinsetsū ni arigatō gozaimashita* (D) : thank you for your kind offices.

Der. : *fu-shinsetsū* : unkindness.

**shinu.** To die.

Note. *Shinu* is a plain verb : the corresponding polite verb is *nakunaru*.

*kyonen chichi ga shinimashita* (C) : my father died last year.

*doku wo nonde shinimashita* (C) : he killed himself with poison.

*shinu made* : until death.

*shinda ko no toshi wo kazoeru* : to calculate the age of one's dead child ; to cry over spilt milk.

*shinimashita ka* ? (C) : is he dead ?

*kono sakana wa ikite iru ka ? shinde iru ka* ? (B) : is this fish alive or dead ?

Der. : *shi2* : death.

**shinyō**, [cogn. w. *shinjiru* to trust]. Confidence ; trust.

*shinyō suru* : to trust.

*ano hito wo shinyō shimasu* (C) : I trust that man.

*ano hito wa shinyō dekimasen* (C) : I cannot trust him.

*ano mise wa shinyō ga nai sō desu* (C) : they say that shop doesn't enjoy the confidence of the public.

**shio.** Salt ; taste.

*shio ga tari-nai* ; *shio ga kiite i-nai* ; *shio ga amai* : not salt enough.

Comp.

*shio-ambai* ; *shio-kagen* : the seasoning or taste of food as the result of artificial preparation.

*shio-kagen ga ii* (B) : the taste is good.

*shio-karai* : (too) salty.

*shioke* : a salty taste, [see -*ke*].

*shio-mizu* : salt water ; brine.

**shippo**, [*shiri* buttocks ; o tail]. Tail.

*shippo wo dasu* : to reveal one's true (bad) character unintentionally ; to show the cloven hoof.

**shiraberu.** To examine ; inquire ; look into.  
*shirabete mimashō* (C) : I will look into the matter.

**shira(n)**, [f. *shiranu* literary neg. form of *shiru2* to know].

1) An adj. meaning 'unconcerned', 'feigning ignorance' : in this case the final *n* is never dropped.

*shiran kao shite tōrimashita* (C) : he passed by with an unconcerned face (as if he didn't know me, as if nothing had happened).

2) *Ka shira* (the *n* is generally dropped) is added to the end of a sentence to express doubt.

*dare ka kita ka shira* (B) : I wonder if anybody has come.

*ano hito wa tsuita ka shira* (B) : I wonder whether he has arrived.

**shirase**, [stem of *shiraseru* to inform]. News ; information ; report ; omen.

*shinda to iu shirase ga kita* (B) : I have received news of his death.

*kore wa nani ka ii koto no shirase ka mo shire-nai* (B) : I believe this is an omen of something good.

**shiraseru**, [causative of *shiru2* to know]. To let know ; inform ; tell.

*watashi no kaetta no wo ano hito ni shirasete kudasai* (C) : please let him know that I am back.

*shirashite morau hazu deshita* (C) : I ought to have been informed.

Der. : *shirase*, q.v.

**shire'ru**, v.i. [cogn. w. *shiru2* v.t. to which it also serves as potential]. To become known ; can know.

1) *kakushite mo ima ni shireru* (B) : although you may conceal it, it will be discovered some day.

*itte mireba shireru* (B) : if you go and see, you can know for yourself.

2) *Ka mo shire-nai* is added to the end of a sentence to express doubt. It is never used after the future.

*kyō wa o tenki ni naru ka mo shire-nai* (B) : I believe it will turn out fine today.

*nani ka atta no ka mo shire-nai* (B) : I am afraid that something has happened.

**shiri.** The buttocks; the bottom (outside) or base of a thing.

*nabe no shiri ga kitanai* (B): the bottom (outside) of the pot is dirty.

*hito no shiri ni tsuku*: to follow somebody about like a dog.

*teishu wo shiri ni shiku* (B): she has her husband tied to her apron strings.

*o shiri ni tamago no kara ga kutsuite iru* (B): (like a chicken just hatched with) the shell still sticking on to its back-side; said of a person who is very child-like, inexperienced, or innocent.

**shiro**, n. 182, [*shiroi* adj. white]. White.

*shiro kuro wo wakeru*: to distinguish white from black; to know what's good.

**shiroi**, adj. White.

**Der.** and comp.

*shiro*; *shirōto*; q.v.

*shirōmi*: the white of an egg, [*mi* meat].

*masshiroi*: snow-white, [see *ma2* truth].

*shira-ga*: white (or grey) hair, [*kami* hair].

**shirōto**, [*shiroi* white; *hito* man]. An amateur; inexperienced person.

*kono shashin wa shirōto ni shite wa yoku tote aru* (B): this photograph is well taken for an amateur.

**shiru**<sup>1</sup>. Juice; sauce.

**shiru**<sup>2</sup>. To know.

*shirimasen* (C): I don't know.

*ano kata wo shitte imasu ka?* (C): do you know that gentleman?

*shitteru hito*: a person I know; an acquaintance.

*shira-nai hito*: a person unknown to me.

*shira-nai kao*: an unknown face.

*shira-nai kao wo suru*: to feign ignorance.

*watakushi no shitteru tokoro de wa*: as far as I know.

*watakushi no shira-nai uchi ni*: without my knowledge.

*dō shite watashi ga shitteru mono desu ka?* (C): how should I know?

*sonna koto wo shira-nai mono wa nai* (B): everybody knows it; there is not a person who doesn't know it.

*watashi wa sonna koto wa shira-nai* (B): I know nothing about it; I wish to have nothing to do with it.

*dō narō to watakushi wa shira-nai* (B): I don't care what becomes of it.

*kore wa anata no shitta koto ja nai* (B): it is none of your business.

*yūbe no jishin wa shirimasen deshita* (C): I didn't feel the earthquake last night.

*ka shira(n)*, see *shira(n)*.

*ka mo shira-nai*, see *shire-ru*.

**Der.** *shire-ru*; *shirase-ru*; *shira(n)*; q.v.

**shirushi**. A mark; sign.

*shirushi wo tsuke ru*: to mark.

*hon no shirushi desu ga...* (C): please accept this though it is only a trifle; (this

is only a token, not a measure, of my regard).

**shita**<sup>1</sup>. Under; below; down.

*hashi no shita wo tōrimashita* (C): I passed under the bridge.

*shita e oite o kure* (A): put it down.

*jochū wa shita ni masu* (C): the maid is downstairs.

*yuki no shita kara deru mizu*: water that comes out from under the snow.

*shita kara dereba ibaru* (B): if I humble myself before him he gets puffed up.

*hito no shita ni tsuku*: to occupy a rank or position subordinate to another.

*go-jū-yen shita de wa urimasen* (C): I would not sell it under fifty yen.

*kono shita no wa ni-yen desu* (C): the next one in order of cheapness costs two yen.

*kore yori shita no tabako wa nai* (B): there's no tobacco cheaper than this.

*ano hito wa watakushi yori futatsu shita desu* (C): he is two years younger than I.

**Comp.**

*kutsu-shita*: socks; stockings; [*kutsu* boots].

*zubon-shita*: drawers, [*zubon* trousers].

*shita-gi*: underclothing, [*ki-ru* to put on].

**shita**<sup>2</sup>. Tongue.

*watakushi mo sore ni wa shita wo maita* (B): I also was speechless with admiration.

**shitaku**. Preparation; getting ready.

*shitaku wo suru*: to get ready.

*jū-ji made ni shitaku ga dekimasu* (C): I shall be ready by ten o'clock.

*rippa na shitaku wo shiteru* (B): she is beautifully dressed.

*asuko no o yome san wa shitaku ga takusan aru* (B): that bride has a very big trousseau.

**shitate-ya**. Tailor (especially for Japanese clothes).

**shitsūrei**, [*reil* politeness]. Rudeness.

*shitsūrei na*: rude.

*shitsūrei na koto wo iu*: to speak in an impolite way.

*senjitsu wa shitsūrei itashimashita* (D): excuse my rudeness the other day.

*shitsūrei desu ga sono hon wo chotto kashite kudasaimasen ka?* (C): excuse me but would you please lend me that book a moment?

*sore wa eiyō de wa shitsūrei na koto da to shite arimasu* (C): that is considered impolite in Europe.

**shiyō**, [*suru* to do; *yō3* way]. Meanings and uses like *shikata* (q.v.) especially in sentences like those given under 2); rarely used in cases like those found in 1).

**shizen** (no or na). Natural; spontaneous.

*shizen ni*: spontaneously; of its own accord.

*shizen ni wareru hazu wa nai* (B): it cannot have broken of itself.



**shizuka (na).** Silent; quiet; tranquil.

*shizuka ni nasai* (A): be quiet.

**shōbai.** Business; occupation.

*go shōbai wa?* (C): what is your occupation?

*shōbai suru*: to trade.

*shōbai wo hajimeru*: to set up in trade.

*shōbai ni nara-nai* (B): it does not pay.

Comp.: *shōbai-nin*: a merchant; trader.

**shōchi.** Consent; knowledge.

*shōchi suru*: to consent; know.

*shōchi ga dekimasen* (C): I cannot agree to that.

*go shōchi nara*: with your permission; if you do not mind.

*go shōchi no tōri*: as you are aware.

*shōchi itashimashita* (D): very well, Sir; I understand and will do as you desire.

*sonna koto wo suru to shōchi shi-nai* (B): if you do such a thing, I won't stand it.

**shō-gatsū**, [gatsū month]. January; it often refers specially to the first days of the month.

**shōjiki (na).** Honest.

**shōkai.** Introduction.

*shōkai suru*: to introduce one person to another.

(anata wo) *Itō San ni go shōkai itashimashō ka?* (D): may I introduce you to Mr Itō?

Comp.: *shōkai-jō*: a letter of introduction, [jō letter].

**shōko.** Proof.

*shōko ga arimasu ka?* (C): can you prove it?

**shokubutsū.** A plant.

**shokudō.** Dining-room.

**shokuji.** A meal.

*shokuji wo suru*: to take a meal.

**shoku-nin.** Artisan; mechanic.

**shomotsū.** A book.

**shōsetsū.** A novel.

**shū.** Week; (used mostly in composition).

*konsū*: this week, [see *kono*2].

*raishū*: next week, [see *rai*-].

*sensū*: last week, [see *sen*1].

*mai-shū*: every week; weekly; [see *mai*-].

*shūkan*1 q.v.

**shujin.** Master; husband (not polite).

**shūkan**1, [shū week; kan2 interval]. A week.

Note. *Shūkan* is preceded by the 1st set of num.: 1 *is-shūkan*; 8 *has-shūkan*; 10 *jis-shūkan*.

**shūkan**2. Habit; custom.

*Nihon no shūkan da* (B): it is a Japanese custom.

**sōi.**

1) So; thus; in that way. *Sō* gen. refers to something which has been said or done. Compare *kō*.

*tabun sō deshō* (C): it may be so.

*dare ga sō imashita ka?* (C): who said so?

*anata ga sō imashita* (C): you said so.

*dare de mo sō imasu* (C): everybody says so.

*sō itta hito ga aru* (B): somebody said so.

*sō shite wa ikemasen* (B): don't do it like that.

*sō wa ikemasen* (C): that is impossible.

2) *Sō* foll. by neg. or interr. has sometimes a superlative meaning.

*yuki ga sō furimasen* (C): it doesn't snow so very much.

*sō ii hito da to omoimasen* (C): I don't think he is such a very good man.

*sō samuku nai* (B): it is not as cold as all that.

*sō ugoite wa ikemasen* (B): don't move, be still; don't move so much (but I want you to move a little); don't move that way (move some other way).

*sō tabete ii no desū ka?* (C): do you think it's good to eat as much as that? haven't you had enough?

3) *Sō iu*; *sō iu fū na*; *sō iu yō na*: that kind of; that sort of; like that.

*sō iu fū na hito ga sūki desū* (C): that is the sort of person I like.

*sō iu no wa iya da* (B): that is not what I want; (this sentence may also mean, I don't like to say a thing like that).

*sō iu no ja nai* (B): that is not the right sort.

*sō iu hazu wa nai* (B): that ought not to be so.

*sō iu hanashi desū ga tashika ni to wa iwaremasen* (C): people say so but nobody knows for certain.

4) *Sō da* at the end of a sentence after an adj., a q. adj. in *na*, or a verb, corresponds to the English 'they say' 'he says'. (Compare *-sō*).

*jōbu na sō da* (B): they say he is healthy.

*kane-mochi da sō desū* (C): I hear he is rich.

*sō da sō desū* (C): they say so.

5) *Matsu wa atama ga itakutte kyō wa okirare-nai sō da* (B): Matsu says she has a headache and she can't get up today.

5) Various.

*sō desū* (C): a definite assent—yes.

*sō desū to mo* (C): an emphatic assent—I should just think so.

*sō desū ne* (C): a polite agreeing with what another says; also used when one is perplexed and is considering what answer he had better give: let me see.

*sō ja nai* (B): a definite negation—no; that is not so.

*sō de mo nai* (B): a qualified negation—well, not exactly so.

*sō ja nai ka?* (B): a way of inviting the 2nd person to agree with what one says—isn't it so?

*sō desū ka?* (C): a polite manifestation of mild surprise—indeed; is that so?

*sō shite* (often contr. to *sōshite*); *sō shita tokoro ga*: ways of continuing a narrative: and; and then; after that.

*sō ieba*: by the way.

*sō ieba sō da* (B): now you point it out to me, I see it is so.

*sō ka to omou to*: nevertheless.

*sō suru to*; *sō shitara*: and then; if that is so; in that case.

*sō sureba*; *sō nara* (often corr. to *sonnara*);

*sō naraba*: if that is so; in that case.

\**sore wa sō to*: be that as it may; by the way.

Der.: *sōrashii*: apparently so, [see *-rashii*].  
sō2. A.n. used for ships, boats, etc.

Note: 1 *is-sō*; 3 *san-zō* or *san-sō*; 8 *has-sō*; 10 *jis-sō*; 1000 *sen-zō* or *sen-sō*; *nan-zō* or *nan-sō*?

-sō, [compare sōl 4]. A suffix meaning 'appearance'; it is added to the stem of verbs, the stem of true adj. and the noun part of q. adj. The resulting compound is a noun and is often foll. by *na* thus becoming a q. adj.

*mō jiki ki-sō na mono da* (B): he ought to be here directly now.

*kono tatami wa kitana-sō desū* (C): these mats seem to be dirty.

*ame ga furi-sō desū* (C): it looks like rain.

*Shige wa jibu-sō da* (B): Shige looks strong.

*sore wa ari-sō mo nai hanashi da* (B): that sounds like an improbable story.

*henji gurai yokoshite mo yosa-sō na mono da* (B): you might at least have answered my letter.

Note. *Nai* non-existent, and *yoi* good, form this compound irregularly, thus, *nasa-sō*, *yosa-sō*. The compounds of *nai* may either follow *nai* in this irregularity or be formed regularly.

**soba.** Beside; near.

*soba ni yoru*: to approach near.

*tēburu no soba ni*: beside the table.

*uchi no soba no ki*: the tree near the house.

*soba kara jun ni hiroite o kure* (A): pick them up in order, beginning with those nearest you.

*kodomo wa shikaru soba kara itazura wo suru* (B): children start doing mischief again as soon as you have done scolding them.

**sochi**; **sochira**; (*sochi* is gen. pron. *sochi*). There; that place.

*sochi ni aru* (B): there are some there.

**sōdan.** Consultation.

*sōdan suru*: to consult; confer together.

*sūkoshi go sōdan shitai koto ga arimasū* (C): I have something I want to talk to you about.

*sōdan ni notte kure-nai ka?* (B): won't you help me with your advice?

*deki-nai sōdan*: impracticable advice.

**sodate'ru.** To bring up; rear; educate.

**sode**, [te arm]. Sleeve.

**sōji.** Sweeping and cleaning.

*sōji suru*: to clean; sweep.

*ato de kono heya wo sōji shite o kure* (A): do this room afterwards.

*kutsu wo sōji shite kure* (A): clean my boots.

**soko**, [sono that; tokoro place]. That place; there; that time; then.

*soko ni arimasū* (C): it is there.

*soko ga dajji da* (B): that is an important point.

*soko to naku*: no place in particular; everywhere.

*soko de nan to osshatga ka?* (B): what did he say then?

*soko e*: at that moment.

Comp.

*soko-ira*: thereabouts, [see *-ira*].

*go-yen ka soko-ira de kaeru darō* (B): I think you can buy one for about five yen.

**soko**2. The bottom (inside).

*nabe no soko ga nurete iru* (B): the bottom (inside) of the pot is wet.

*hikidashi no soko ni kami wo ichi-mai shite kure* (A): spread a sheet of paper over the bottom of the drawer.

*kane-ire no soko wo hataite mo kore dake shika arimasen* (C): even if you turned my purse inside out, you wouldn't find any more money.

*umi no soko*: the bottom of the sea.

**sokonau.** To injure; hurt.

In comp. it means, 'to fail', 'make a mistake'.

*deki-sokonau*: to be a failure.

*kaki-sokonau*: to make a mistake in writing.

*mi-sokonau*: to overlook.

*shi-sokonau*: to do wrong.

**soku.** A.n. used for pairs of boots, clogs, socks, etc.

Note: 1 *is-soku*; 3 *san-zoku*; 8 *has-soku*; 10 *jis-soku*; 1000 *sen-zoku*; *nan-zoku*?

**somaru**, v.i. [cogn. w. *some'ru* v.t.]. To dye; become dyed.

*somatte i'ru*: to be dyed.

*kinu wa yoku somarimasū* (C): silk dyes very well.

**somatsū** (na). Coarse; rough.

*makoto ni somatsū na mono desū ga dōzo o tori kudasai* (D): please accept this although it is but coarsely made.

*oya wo somatsū ni suru*: to treat one's parents with disrespect.

*hon wo somatsū ni suru*: to treat a book roughly.

*o somatsū sama deshita* (C): excuse me for not having been attentive to you.

**some'ru**, v.t. [cogn. w. *somaru* v.i.]. To dye.



*kire wo akaku* (or *aka ni*) *some'ru* : to dye a cloth red.

**son.** Loss.

*son wo suru* : to suffer loss ; lose.

*son wo shite uru* : to sell at a loss.

*son ni naru* : to lose by something.

*son wo kake'ru* : to cause loss to somebody.  
*sore de wa watashi ga son da* (B) : then the loss is mine.

*kisha de byōki ni naru hito wa son desu ne* (C) : people who feel sick in a train don't get much pleasure out of travelling, do they ?

*son ga iku* : to suffer a loss ; lose.

**sonkei.** Respect ; esteem.

*sonkei suru* : to respect.

**sonna**, [contr. of *sono yō na*]. That kind of ; such as that ; like that ; so.

- 1) Is used attrib. before a noun ; it then has sometimes a contemptuous meaning.

*sonna mon' deshō* (C) : that's just about it.  
*sonna koto wa nakatta* (B) : no such thing occurred.

*kesshite sonna wake de wa nai* (B) : such, certainly, is not the case.

*sonna shimpai wo shite wa ike-nai* (B) : don't worry about a thing like that.

*sonna hanashi wa nai* (B) : that's not true.

- 2) Has a sup. sense before an adj. ; *sonna ni* has also this sense.

*sonna kitana'i mono wa o sute nasai* (B) : throw away a dirty thing like that.

*sonna ni shimpai shite wa ike-nai* (B) : don't worry so much.

*sonna ni hayaku ika-nai de o kure* (A) : don't go so fast.

**sonnara**, [sōi so ; nara if]. If that is so ; in that case ; then.

*sonnara naoru ka mo shiremasen* (C) : then he may get well.

**sono**, adj. [often = *sore no*]. That (referring to things at some little distance or things connected with the 2nd person ; 336 ; 343).

*sono hon* : that book.

*sono gurai* : about that much.

*sono toki ni* : then ; at that time.

*sono toki ni koko ni imasu' ka?* (C) : will you be here then ?

*sono toki hajimete* : then and not till then.

*sono koro ni* : then ; about that time.

*sono ue* : besides that.

*sono ue kimasen deshita* (C) : besides that he did not come.

*sono hoka* : besides that.

*sono hoka nanni mo kimasen* (C) : nothing else came besides that (parcel).

*sono ato* : after that.

*sono ashita* : the day after that ; the following day.

*sono ko* : that child ; the child of that person of whom we are speaking.

**sora.** Heaven ; sky.

*sora de oboe'ru* : to learn by heart.

*sora de yomu* : to recite by heart.

**Comp.**

*ao-zora* : blue sky.

*sora-moyō* : the appearance of the sky.

*sora-iro* : sky blue.

**sore**, n. That (referring to things at some little distance or things connected with the 2nd person ; 336 ; 343 : it is also used when referring to something which has just been spoken of or done by the 2nd person) ; that time ; then.

*sore wa* : (a) that thing, that fact ; (b) the reason of that ; (c) exclamation.

*sore wa nan desu ka?* (C) : what is that ?

*sore wa ikemasen* (C) : that's bad, I am sorry to hear it.

*sore de wa ikemasen* (C) : that won't do.

*sore wa sō to* : be that as it may ; by the way.

*kono kire wa mō samete shimaimashita—sore wa yasu-mono da kara deshō* : the colour of this cloth is quite faded—the reason no doubt is that it was a cheap article.

*kyō wa sorya (=sore wa) samui yo* (B) : it's very cold today and no mistake.

*Tora to iu sore wa, sore wa, kirei na geisha ga arimashita* (C) : there was once a very pretty singing-girl called Tora.

*sore de ii* (B) : that's enough ; that will do.

*sore de anshin shimashita* (C) : that is the end of my worry.

*sore de nan to imashita ka?* (C) : what did he say then ?

*sore de wa nai* (B) : that's not it.

*sore de wa, Tōkyō ni wa nai deshō* (C) : then I don't think you will find one in Tōkyō.

*sore de wa watakushi ga komarimasu* (C) : that will put me in a difficulty.

*sore de mo ikimashita* (C) : in spite of that he went.

*sore de* sometimes serves as a copulative phrase ; and so.

*sore ni kimasen deshita* (C) : besides that he didn't come.

*sore ni shite mo* : even allowing that.

*sore kara* : then ; after that (time past or future).

*sore kara kuruma wo yobimashita* (C) : then I called a rikisha.

*shigoto wo saki ni shite sore kara o asobi* (A) : do your work first and then play.

*sore da kara* : therefore.

*sore made koko ni o oki nasai* (B) : leave it here till then.

*sore made ni o shitaku ga dekimasu ka?* (C) : will you be ready by then ?

*sore mita koto ka* (A) : I thought as much ; I told you so.

*sore to naku* : in a casual manner ; indirectly.

*sore to naku kokoro wo kiite miyō* (B): I'll sound him in a casual way.  
*sore!* (often corr. to *sora* !): an interjection (used as a reprimand).  
*sore wo*; *sore na no ni*; *sore da no ni*: although things are thus, nevertheless.  
*sore mo*: besides that; however.  
**soroban.** A calculating instrument; abacus.  
*soroban ga awa-nai* (B): the accounts do not agree.  
*soroban ni awa-nai*; *soroban ga tata-nai* (B): it does not pay me; it doesn't come up to my expectations.  
**soroe'ru**, v.t. [cogn. w. *sorou* v.i.]. To arrange in order; complete (as a set); match.  
*kuchi wo sorotte iu*: to speak unanimously.  
**soroi**, [*sorou* to become arranged]. A set; suit.  
*soroi no*: of the same pattern.  
 Note:—*soroi* is used in connection with the abb. 2nd set of num. (276, 4).  
 Comp.: *fu-soroi na*: not equal or uniform.  
**soro-soro.** Slowly (in a good sense).  
*soro-soro yatte o kure* (A): do it quite slowly.  
*mō soro-soro kuru jibun da* (B): it will soon be time they were here.  
*soro-soro* (= *mō*) *dekakemashō* (C): well, let's be going.  
**sorou**, v.i. [cogn. w. *soroe'ru* v.t.]. To become arranged in order; become complete.  
*sorotte iru*: to be arranged in order; be complete.  
*kono hon wa sorotte i-nai* (B): these books are not in order.  
*ki ga sorou*: to be of one mind.  
*hito-kazu wa minna sorotte iru ka?* (B): is everybody here?  
*soroi mo sorotta rippa na hito bakari desū* (C): it is a gathering composed exclusively of persons of position.  
*jita-oya ga sorotte iru*: to have both parents alive.  
 Der. and comp.  
*soroi*, q.v.  
*saki-sorou*: to be in full bloom.  
**soru**, (gen. corr. to *suru*2). To shave.  
*hige wo suru*: to shave (the face); to get shaved.  
*atama wo suru*: to shave the head.  
 Comp.: *kamisori*; *kamisuri*: a razor, [*kami* hair].  
*soshite*, [*sō* so; *shite* gerund of *suru*1 to do]. After that; and.  
**sosokkashii.** Hasty; careless; rough.  
**sotchi.** See *sochi*.  
**soto.** Outside; exterior.  
*soto e deru*: to go outside.  
*soto wa makkura da* (B): it is pitch dark out of doors.  
*ano gakkō wa soto wa kirei da ga naka wa*

*kitanai* (B): that school is beautiful outside but the inside is dirty.  
*mon no soto*: outside the gate.  
**sotto**; **sōto**. Softly; quietly; stealthily.  
**su1.** Vinegar; acid.  
 Der.: *suppai*: sour.  
**su2.** [*sumu* to live in a place]. Nest.  
*tori no su*: a bird's nest.  
*kumo no su*: a cobweb.  
*dorobō no su*: a den of thieves.  
*su wo koshiraeru*; *su wo kuu*: to build a nest.  
**suberu.** To slip.  
*michi ga suberimasu* (C): the road is slippery.  
*ashi ga suberimashita* (C): my foot slipped.  
*subette koronda* (B): I slipped and fell down.  
*kōri wo suberu*: to slide on ice.  
 Comp. and der.  
*suberi-ochi'ru*: to slip and fall down from a height (as from off a roof).  
*sube-sube*, q.v.  
*sube-sube*, [*suberu* to slip]. Slippery; smooth.  
*sube-sube shita ita*: a slippery plank.  
**sugata.** Form; figure; shape.  
*ano onna wa sugata ga ii* (B): that woman has a good figure.  
*sugata wo kakusu*: to conceal oneself.  
**sugi**, [*sugi'ru* to go beyond]. Past; after.  
*yo-ji go-fun sugi*: five minutes past four.  
*san-ji sūkoshi sugi ni dekakemashita* (C): he started a little after three.  
 Comp.: *hiru-sugi*: afternoon.  
**sugi'ru.** To go beyond; be in excess.  
*ni-shaku wo sugi-nai*: not exceeding two feet.  
*san-nen sugite*: after three years.  
*san-ji jip-pun sugi-nai uchi ni ko-nakereba narimasen* (B): you must be here before ten past three.  
*kotoba ga sugi'ru*; *kuchi ga sugi'ru*: to speak too much.  
*jōdan mo hodo wo sugite wa dame da* (B): even jokes should not be carried too far.  
 Comp. and der. *Sugi'ru* is added to the stem of verbs, the stem of true adj. or the noun part of a q. adj.; it signifies excess of an action or quality.  
*iki-sugi'ru*: to go too far, [*iku*1 to go].  
*ii-sugi'ru*: to talk too much, [*iu*1 to talk].  
*ō-sugi'ru*: to be in excess, too many, [*ōi* many].  
*satō ga ō-sugimasu* (C): there is too much sugar (in it).  
*taka-sugi'ru*: to be too high, [*takai* high].  
*haya-sugi'ru*: to be too early or fast, [*hayai* early, fast].  
*hade-sugi'ru*: to be of too lively a colour, [*hade* bright].  
*anata wa hayaku aruki-sugimasu*; *anata wa*



*aruku no ga haya-sugimasu* (C): you walk too fast.

See also *sugi*.

### sugu.

1) Directly; soon; immediately.

*sugu dekimasu ka?* (C): can you do it directly?

*sugu (ni) kaette kimasu* (C): I'll be back in a moment.

*sugu ni wa deki-nai* (B): it can't be done immediately.

*sugu dekiru koto wo itsu made mo guzu-guzu shite imasu* (C): he is dawdling over a thing that can be done in no time.

*koko kara sugu ni mairimasho* (D): we will go direct from here.

*uchi no sugu ushiro*: just behind the house.

*sugu me no mae*: right in front of your eyes.

*shokujū ni sugu ato*: just after dinner.

*sugu tonari*: next door.

*mon no sugu soto*: just outside the gate.

2) After the conditional, or the present foll. by to—as soon as.

*dekitaru sugu ni okutte kudasai* (C): please send it as soon as it is ready.

*dekakeru to sugu ni ame ga futte kimashita* (C): I had hardly gone out when it began to rain.

Comp.: *massugu na*: perfectly straight, [see *ma*<sup>2</sup>].

**sui.** Water, (used only in composition).

*sui-dō*: water (laid on in a house).

*suiyō*; *suiyō-bi*: Wednesday, [see *yō-bi*].

**suitori-gami**, [suu to suck; toru to take; kami paper; *sui* water, may serve as a mnemonic]. Blotting-paper.

**suji.** A line; lineage; muscle; nerve; reason.

*kami ni suji wo hiku*: to draw lines on paper.

*te no suji wo mi-ru*: to examine the lines on the palm of the hand (so as to tell one's fortune).

*suji ga warui*: of bad lineage; of leprous family.

*ashi no suji ga itamu*: to feel pain in the nerves of the foot.

*ano hito no iu koto wa suji ga tōtte iru* (B): what he says is reasonable.

*hanashi no suji*: the plot of a story.

*tashika na suji*: a reliable source.

Note. *Suji*, preceded by the abb. 2nd set of num. (276, 4), is used for counting things like *tenugi* towels, *obi* belts, etc.

Comp.: *chi-suji*: pedigree.

**sūkenai**, see *sūkunai*.

**sūki**, [sūku<sup>2</sup> to like]. Fondness for anything.

*sūki na hon*: a book one is fond of.

*kudamono ga sūki da* (B): I am fond of fruit.

*uchi no Tarō wa kudamono ga taihen sūki desu* (C): my son (brother) Tarō is very fond of fruit.

*nan de mo sūki na mono*: whatever you like.

*dai-sūki desu* (C): I like it very much.

*Nihon wa o sūki desu ka?* (C): do you like Japan?

*kono hana wa sūki de wa nai* (B): I don't care for this flower.

*sūki ni sasete oite kure* (A): let him do as he likes.

*anata no sūki na yō ni shimashō* (C): I will do as you wish.

*sūki na koto wo suru*: to act according to one's fancy.

*ano hito ga sūki desu* (C): I like that man; that man likes it.

Note. The Japanese construction does not always distinguish clearly between the subject and the object of the liking; however, if both the subj. and the obj. are expressed, the subj. gen. takes *wa* and the obj. *ga*; the obj. sometimes takes *wo*. Note also that the emphatic neg. of *sūki* is often *kirai*.

### Comp.

*mono-zuki*: inquisitiveness.

*sake-zuki*: a sake drinker; drunkard.

*kirei-zuki*: a liking for cleanliness.

*sewa-zuki*: a person fond of rendering assistance; an officious, meddling person.

*sūki-kirai*: likes and dislikes.

*hito ni wa sūki-kirai ga aru* (B): men have their likes and dislikes.

**sukkari.** Entirely; completely.

*sukkari wasureta* (B): I completely forgot it.

*sukkari onaji de wa arimasen* (C): it is not exactly the same.

### sūkoshi.

1) A little; few; some.

*pan wo sūkoshi kudasai* (C): give me a little bread please.

*sūkoshi kane ga irimasu* (C): it costs some money.

*sūkoshi matte o kure* (A): wait a little.

*sūkoshi no aida o muchi kudasai* (D): wait a little please.

*uchi no niwa ni hana ga sūkoshi arimasu* (C): there are a few flowers in my garden.

*uchi no niwa ni wa hana ga sūkoshi shika arimasen* (C): there are but few flowers in my garden.

*sūkoshi wa ii no desu ka?* (C): are you any better?

*sūkoshi bakari*: just a little.

*sūkoshi gurai nara kamaimasen* (C): I don't care either way if it is only a small amount.

*kore wa sūkoshi desu keredomo dōzo o tori kudasai* (D): please accept this though it is only a trifle.

2) *Sūkoshi ni* is an adverbial form used with such verbs as *naru*, *suru*, *mi-ru*, etc. 190, 4 b.

*sukoshi ni naru* : to become less.

*sukoshi ni suru* : to make less.

- 3) *Sukoshi no* is sometimes used attributively with the meaning of *sukunai* which cannot be employed in this way.

*sukoshi no kane ga areba ii* (B) : if you have a little money that will do.

- 4) *Sukoshi mo* gen. foll. by neg. : none at all ; not at all.

*sukoshi mo nokorimasen* (C) : there is absolutely none left.

*kane ga sukoshi mo arimasen ka?* (C) : haven't you any money at all?

*sukoshi mo kamaimasen* (C) : I don't care a bit.

*sukoshi mo hayaku o-ide nasai* (C) : come as soon as you possibly can.

- 5) *Mō sukoshi*, see *mō* 1).

- sukul.** To become empty ; thinned out.

*hara (or onaka) ga sükimashita* (C) : I am hungry.

*ima te ga suite imasu* (C) : I have a little spare time now.

*sukoshi basho ga suite kita* (B) : the seats have become less crowded.

- suku<sup>2</sup>.** To be fond of ; (used as a verb sometimes in the neg. but hardly ever in the aff.; see *suki*).

*Nihon no ryōri wo sükimasen* (C) : I don't like Japanese cooking.

- sükunai**, (often corr. to *sükennai*), [*sükoshi* little]. Little (in quantity) ; few ; scarce. *Sükunai* is not used attributively except when forming part of an adj. phrase as *ame ga sükunai kuni*, 'a dry country', and even in this case *sükunai* may be considered as the predicate of *ame*, 'a rain-is-scarce country'. *Sukoshi no* is sometimes used attributively instead of *sükunai* : the adverbial form *sükunaku* is used but we also find *sukoshi ni* sometimes used in the same sense and position : see *sukoshi* 2), 3).

*mada hito-kazu ga sükunai* (B) : the number of persons is still small.

*sei no takai Nihon-jin wa sükunō gozaimasu* (D) : few Japanese are tall ; (*lit.* tall Japanese are few).

*ano gakkō wa seito ga sükunai* (B) : that school has not many scholars.

*sükunaku naru* : to become scarce.

*sükunaku suru* : to lessen.

*sükunaku mo* : at least.

*sükunaku mo hyaku wa arimasu* (C) : there are at least a hundred.

*sükunakute mo* : even if it is only a little ; at least.

*ichi-jikan yori sükunai* : less than an hour.

*hitori sükunai* : one man less.

*ni-jū-nin yori sükunaku nai* : not less than twenty persons.

**sumi.** Charcoal ; Indian ink.

- sumi<sup>2</sup>.** Corner (interior).

*sumi wo yoku hataite kure* (A) : dust the corners carefully.

- sumpō**, [*sun* an inch ; *hō* direction]. Dimensions ; measurement.

*sumpō wo toru* : to measure.

- sumu.** To live, dwell or reside in a place.

*Tōkyō ni itsu kara sunde imasu ka?* (C) : how long have you been living in Tōkyō?  
*sumeba miyako* : wherever I live, there is the capital ; to every bird its own nest is charming.

**Comp.**

*sumi-ii* : good to live in.

*koko wa sumi-ii tokoro desu ka?* (C) : is this a pleasant place to live in?

**sumu<sup>2</sup>.**

- 1) To become clear, settled, freed from impurities.

*mizu ga yoku sunde iru* (B) : the water is quite clear.

- 2) To be easy in mind ; (especially used in the neg. in sentences said to beg somebody's pardon).

*go mendō kakete makoto ni sumimasen* (D) : I am sorry to trouble you.

*dōmo sumimasen, warui koto wo shimashita* (C) : I apologize for what has happened.

*O Take San ni ayamara-nakute wa sumimasūmai* (C) : I think you ought to apologize to Miss Take.

*omae sonna ni namakete ite wa o tō-san ni suma-nai yo* (A) : it is unfilial to your father to be so idle.

*kyō wa mise e ika-nai de mo sumu kara raku da* (B) : as I haven't got to trouble about going to the office, I shall have an easy time of it today.

- 3) To end ; finish ; come to an end.

*shibai wa mō sunda* (B) : the theatre is over.

**Der.**

*suma-nai*, adj. : inexcusable ; unpardonable.  
*suma-nai koto wo shimashita* (C) : I have done some thing I greatly regret.

**sun.** One tenth of a foot ; inch.

Note : 1 *is-sun* ; 3 *san-sun* ; 8 *has-sun* ; instead of *jis-sun* you usually say *is-shaku* one foot.

**sun.** Sand ; gravel.

**suppai**, [*sul* acid]. Sour ; acid.

**suru**, irreg. verb ; see 28. The regular form of the neg. future, *surumai* is used, but *shimai* is commoner : *sumai* and *semai* are also sometimes heard.

- 1) Real transitive verb, taking an object with *wo* : to do ; make.

*baka na koto wo shita* (A) : you did a silly thing.

*dare ga kore wo shimashita?* (C) : who has done this?

*nani wo shite imasu ka?* (C) : what are you doing?



*jama wo suru* : to make obstruction, i.e. to be in the way.

- 2) The object sometimes is not expressed, though the meaning remains transitive.

*dō suru no desū ka?* (C) : how do you do it?

See dō2.

- 3) The stem of a verb foll. by *wo* and *suru* is sometimes used instead of the simple verb.

*hanashi wo suru* : for *hanasū*, to speak.

- 4) The *wo* of the objective case is often omitted ; *suru* then becomes hardly more than a suffix serving to verbalize the noun. The combination thus formed may be transitive (with an accusative and *wo*), intransitive, or passive.

*kono hon wo benkyō suru* : to study this book.

*shitsūrei suru* : to be impolite.

*bikkuri suru* : to be astonished.

*kega suru* : to be wounded.

*kai-mono (wo) suru* : to make purchases.

*sagashi-mono (wo) suru* : to look for something.

Note. Although the *wo* is sometimes dropped in cases like these last two, this is probably due to the careless pronunciation of the *wo* after *mono*.

- 5) Resembles *aru* and means 'there is', 'to have'.

*nioi ga suru* (B) : there is a smell.

*zutsū ga suru* (B) : I have a headache.

*koe ga suru* : a voice is heard.

*oto ga suru* (B) : there is a noise.

Hence : *neko ga oto wo sasemashita* (C) : the cat made a noise.

- 6) *Shitai*, besides its obvious meaning of 'wishing to do', often expresses a simple wish that a thing may be.

*ashita tenki ni shitai mono da* (B) : I hope it will be fine tomorrow.

*komban dekiru yō ni shitai* (B) : I hope it will be ready tonight.

- 7) The stem of a verb foll. by *wa* (often corr. to *ya*) and the neg. of *suru* is an emphatic form of neg. very frequently used ; it refers generally to the future, but often to the present and sometimes even to the past. The same construction is sometimes used in the aff. but then *ya* may not take the place of *wa*. See 47-49.

*iki wa (or ya) shi-nai* (B) : I certainly will not go.

*wakari wa shimasū ga...* (C) : I understand, but...

*shiyō ga arya (=ari ya) shi-nai* (B) : it can't be helped.

Note. There is a construction with *koso* (q. v.) instead of *wa*, similar to the above.

- 8) When two clauses like the above are co-ordinated, *mo* replaces *wa* in both.

*mi mo shi-nai, kiki mo shi-nai* (B) : I neither saw nor heard anything.

- 9) *Suru* is often used after the frequentative.

*shabettari warattari shite ita de wa arimasen ka?* (B) : weren't you talking and laughing?

- 10) Some compounds in *suru* correspond to English reflexives.

*shitaku suru* : to prepare oneself, (to get ready).

*itaku suru* ; *kega suru* : to hurt oneself.

- 11) *Ni suru*, generally has the meaning of a) determine upon ; or b) make into.

*kore ni shimashō* (C) : I shall take (buy) this one.

*dotchi ni shimashō ka?* (C) : which one shall I choose?

*san-yen ni o shi nasai* (B) : let me have it for three yen.

*aka ni suru* : to make (something) red.

*hari-bako ni shiyō to omotte kaimashita* (C) : I bought it for a needle-case.

*Tōkyō de iku koto ni shimashita* (C) : he decided to go to Tōkyō.

*kaette kara no koto ni shiyō* (B) : I will leave it till after my return.

*hito wo baka ni suru* : to make a fool of somebody.

*yō ni suru*, see yō3.

- 12) *To shite* (wa), *ni shite* (wa) mean 'for' or 'as'.

*kodomo ni shite wa yoku kaite arimasū* (C) : it is well written for a child.

*isha to shite iu no desū ga mō sūkoshi undō nasara-nakereba ikemasen* (C) : as a doctor I would say you must take more exercise.

*to shite*, *to suru*, etc., see to2 10, 11, 12.

- 13) *Suru* may refer to the appearance that a person (or a thing) has, or to the condition in which he is.

*ano hito wa aoi kao wo shite iru* (B) : that man has a pale face.

*konna kitanai fū wo shite ite, hyaku-yen yaru to ieba odoroku darō* (B) : seeing me so poorly dressed, I dare say it surprises you to hear me offer you a hundred yen.

*kinō wa wake ga atte kitanai fū wo shite ikimashita* (C) : for a certain reason I had, I went out yesterday dressed in

some dirty old clothes.

- 14) *Suru* sometimes refers to lapse of time.

*shibaraku shite* : after a short time.

*ni-jikan bakari shite* : two hours afterwards.

- 15) Various.

*sore wa watashi no suru koto desū* (C) : that is my business (you needn't attend to it).

*nani wo suru no da?* (A) : what do you mean by this behaviour?

*sore wa seiyō de wa shitsūrei na koto da to shite arimasū* (C) : that is considered impolite in Europe.

*sō sureba* : if that is so.

(*sō*) *suru to* ; *sō shitara* : and then ; if that is so ; in that case.

*sō shite*, see *soshite*.

Note. The humble form of *suru*, polite for the 1st person, is *itasu* : the honorific form, polite for the 2nd person, is *nasaru*. Although *nasaru* is a polite verb the imperative *nasai* is not polite, neither when used by itself nor when it follows a verbal stem : the polite imperative of *suru* is *shite kudasai* or better *nas'ite kudasai*. When *suru* is a suffix it sometimes drops the final *ru* : *nakusuru* or *nakusu* to lose. The compounds of *suru* follow *suru* in its irregularities. When *suru* comes after *n* in a compound it is changed to *jiru* ; *zonjiru* [f. *zonzuru*, f. *zon suru*] to know. The passive of *suru* is *sareru* : the causative *saseru* ; *dekiru* gen. does duty for potential. See 156-163.

Comp.

*shi-ageru* : to finish doing.

*shi-naosu* : to do over again.

*shi-sokonau* : to do wrong.

*shi-tsūkeru* : to be accustomed to do, [*tsūkeru* to join].

*shi-nikui* : difficult to do, [*-nikui*2 difficult].

*shikata*, *shigoto*, *shiyō*, *shi-awase*, *soshite*, *nakusu(ru)*, *jikusu(ru)*, *yakusu(ru)*, *shin-jiru* ; q.v.

*suru*<sup>2</sup>, [incorrect but usual pronunciation of *soru* q.v. to shave].

Note. *Suru* to shave, is regular ; not irregular like *suru* to do.

*suso*. The lower part of mountain or dress ; the skirt of a garment.

*sūteishon*, [English]. Station (railway).

*sūteki (na)*. Fine ; remarkable ; great.

*sūteki na uchi* : a fine house.

*sore wa sūteki da* (B) : that is excellent.

*sūteki ni mōkaru* : to earn a great amount of money.

*sūtekki*, [English]. Walking-stick ; cane.

*sūtekki wo tsūku* : to walk with a stick.

*sūteru*. To throw away ; abandon ; get rid of.

*koko ni gomi wo sūte wa ike-nai* (A) : you mustn't throw rubbish here.

*tomodachi ni sūterare mashita* (C) : I was abandoned by my friends.

*sūteru kami ga areba tasūkeru kami ga aru* : if some gods have abandoned you, there are others who will save you.

*inochi wo sūteru* : to sacrifice one's life.

*sūteki oku* : to leave alone ; let be.

*sūteki oite kure* (A) : leave it alone.

*kirai nara sūteki oki nasai* (B) : if you don't like it, leave it.

*sūteki shimau* : to throw away (for good).

*sūtōbu*, [English]. Stove.

*suwaru*. To sit ; squat (i.e. kneel and sit on one's heels).

*kono tsūkie wa ashi ga ip-pon mijikai no desu* (B) : this desk is unsteady as one of its legs is too short.

*suzushii*. Cool (weather).

*suzushii kaze* : a cool breeze.

*tabako*, [Portuguese or Spanish, tabaco]. Tobacco.

*tabako wo nomu* : to smoke.

*taberu*. To eat.

*nani ka tabetai* (B) : I want something to eat.

*nani wo shite tabete iru ka* ? (A) : how does that man earn his living ?

*taberareru*, as an adj. : edible.

*taberare-nai*, as an adj. : not fit to eat.

Note. *Taberu* is a plain verb ; the corresponding humble verb, polite for the eating of the 1st person, of something received from the 2nd, is *itadaku* or *chōdai suru* : the honorific verb, polite for the eating of the 2nd and sometimes the 3rd person, is *agaru* or *meshi-agaru*.

Comp.

*tabe-mono* : food.

*tabe-nare ru* : to be accustomed to eat.

*tabi*. Time ; repetitions.

*iku-tabi* ? how many times ?

*iku-tabi mo* ; *iku-tabi to naku* : ever so many times.

*ano hito wo miru tabi ni* : whenever I see that man.

Note. When used with a num., the abb. 2nd set (276, 4) is used for the first four numbers ; from five onwards the 1st set of num. is preferred but the 2nd is also heard sometimes. 1 *hito-tabi* ; 2 *ji-ta-ba* ; 3 *mi-tabi* ; 4 *yo-tabi* ; 5 *go-tabi* or *itsu-tabi* ; 8 *hat-tabi* or *ya-tabi* ; 10 *jit-tabi* or *to-tabi*.

*tabi-tabi*, [*tabi* time, repeated so as to signify many]. Many times ; often ; again and again.

*kore wa tabi-tabi hanashite okimashita* (C) : I have told you this several times.

*tabi-tabi no koto desu* (C) : it is a common occurrence.

*tabun*. Probably ; (used gen. at the beginning of the sentence).

*tabun nakushita no deshō* (C) : he may have lost it.

*tabun ame ga furu deshō* (C) : probably it will rain.

*tabun sō deshita* (C) : perhaps it was so ; it may have been so.

-*tachi*.

1) Sign of the plural.

*ano hito-tachi wa naka ga warui* (B) : those men are on bad terms with each other.

2) Added to the name of a person, it serves to include other persons resembling the one mentioned.

*Tarō-tachi ni wa sore wa dekimasen* (C) : Tarō and people like him can't do that.



Note: *tomodachi*, which originally was the plural of *tomo*, and meant 'friends', has lost the special plural signification and like other Japanese nouns refers to either singular or plural.

**tada.**

1) Only; (in this sense sometimes pronounced emphatically *tata* q.v.).  
*tada ichi-do mimashita* (C): I have only seen it once.

*tada yonde bakari imasu* (C): he does nothing but read.

*ano hito wa tada Nihon-go wo hanasu bakari de naku kaku koto mo dekimasu* (C): he can not only speak Japanese but he can also write it.

2) Ordinary; common; usual.

*tada no uchi*: just an ordinary house (not a shop nor a government office, etc.).

*kore wa tada no koto to wa chigau* (B): this is not an every-day affair.

3) Free; gratis.

*tada desu ka?* (C): is admission free?

*tada de shimashita* (C): he did it for nothing.

*tada hodo takai mono wa nai* (B): nothing costs more than what we receive for nothing.

Comp.: *tadaima*, q.v.

**tadaima**, [*tada* only; *ima* now]. Refers to the near past or future, or it may refer to the present: just now; now; presently.

*tadaima* (*kaerimashita*): a salutation said (gen. by inferior to superior) when returning to one's home; I have just come back home.

*tadaima tsukai ni dekakemashita* (C): he has just gone out on an errand.

*tadaima motte mairimasu* (D): I will bring it in a moment.

*tadaima rusu de gozaimasu* (D): he is out at present.

Note. *Tadaima* has an elastic meaning, and foreigners must not be surprised if they have to wait quite a long time for something they have been told is coming *tadaima*.

**tagai** (no). Reciprocal; common.

*o tagai no son ni narimasu* (C): that would be a loss for both of us.

*tagai ni yakusoku suru*: to promise each other.

*o tagai ni naka yoku shimasho* (C): let us be on good terms with each other.

**tagai**, [*dai*-great]. Generally; almost all; most; probably.

*tagai roku-ji ni okimasu* (C): I generally rise at six.

*tagai dekimashita* (C): it is nearly all ready.

*tagai wakarimashita* (C): I understood most of it.

*tagai no hon*: most of the books.

*tagai no hito wa shite iru* (B): most people

know it.

*tagai dekiru to omoimasu* (C): I think I shall probably be able to do it.

*kore de tagai ii deshō* (C): this will probably do.

*tagai ni shite o oki* (or *yame*) *nasai* (B): don't go to the extreme limit, leave off now.

**taihen** (na), [*dai*-great]. Serious; terrible; awful.

*sore wa taihen* (na *koto*) *desu* (C): that is a very serious affair.

*nakunattara taihen da kara yoku ki wo tsukete* (A): as it would be a very serious thing if it were to be lost, take very great care.

*taihen* (ni): very; a great many.

*taihen* (ni) *yoku narimashita* (C): I feel very much better.

*yūbe wa taihen* (ni) *atsukatta* (B): it was very hot last night.

*ano kōen ni wa sakura ga taihen* (ni) *aru* (B): there are a great many cherry-trees in that park.

*kotoshi wa taihen* (ni) *sekitan wo tsukatta* (B): we have used a great many coals this year.

**taikutsu**. Tedium; weariness.

*taikutsu desu* (C): I am bored; it is wearisome.

*taikutsu de shiyō ga arimasen* (C): I am awfully bored.

*go taikutsu de gozaimashitarō* (D): you must have felt bored.

*taikutsu suru*: to be bored.

*taikutsu na*: tiresome; wearisome.

**taira** (na). Flat; level; even.

*taira de nai*: uneven; rough; hilly.

**taisetsu** (na). Important; almost synonymous with *daiji* q.v.

**taishita**, [*dai*-great; *suru* to do]. Important. *taishita kega de wa nai* (B): it is not a severe wound.

**taisō**, [*dai*-great]. Very; much; a great deal. (*Taisō* can always be replaced by *taihen* but not vice versa).

*yūbe wa taisō atsukatta* (B): it was very hot last night.

*kotoshi wa taisō sekitan wo tsukatta* (B): we have used a great many coals this year.

**taitei**, [*dai*-great]. Generally; almost all; most; probably. *Taitei* is practically synonymous with *tagai* q.v.

**taiyō**, [*dai*-big]. Sun.

*taiyō ga de-ru*: the sun rises.

*taiyō ga kakure-ru* (or *hairu*): the sun sets.

**taka**, [*takai* high]. Sum; total; amount.

*nimotsu no taka ni gorimasu* (C): it depends on the amount of luggage.

*taka ga*: merely; after all.

*taka ga jū-shi no kodomo ja nai ka?* (B):

after all he is only a boy of fourteen, isn't he?

*taka ga shireta mono* : a trifling thing.

Comp.

*kane-daka* : the total amount (money).

*mōke-daka* : the total profit.

*takai*. High; tall; dear; expensive; loud.

*takai ki wa kaze ni atari-yasui* : big trees are more exposed to the wind.

*sei no takai hito* : a tall man.

*nedan ga amari takai* (R) : the price is too dear.

*takaku suru* : to put on the price.

*takaku naru* : to become dear.

*koe ga amari takai* (B) : your voice is too loud.

*na no takai hito* : a famous man.

*hana no takai hito* : a man with a prominent nose; a proud man.

*nioi no takai hana* : a flower with a strong scent.

Der.: *takasa* : height.

*takara*, [*ta* paddy-field; *kara* from]. Treasures.

Comp.: *takara-mono* : a precious thing.

take. Bamboo.

Comp.: *take-no-ko* : bamboo sprout.

*taki*. Cascade; waterfall.

*taku*<sup>1</sup>. House; home; my husband.

*o taku wa doko de gozaimasu ka?* (D) : where do you live?

*taku*<sup>2</sup>. To kindle.

*hi wo taku* : to light a fire.

*meshi wo taku* : to cook rice.

Comp.: *taki-mono* : fuel; firewood.

*takusan*. A great deal; plenty; enough.

*takusan arimasu* (C) : there are a great many; there is enough.

*kotoshi wa sekitan wo takusan tsukatta* (B) : we have used a great many coals this year.

*ano hako no naka ni kane ga takusan haitte imasu ka?* (C) : is there much money in that box?

*sore de takusan* (B) : that is enough.

*kane ga takusan arimasu ka?* (C) : has he a great deal of money? have you enough money?

*dochira no hako ga takusan hairu darō?* (B) : which box holds the more?

*anata yori watashi no hō ga takusan arimasu* (C) : I have more than you.

*mō takusan* : that is enough; no more, thank you.

*takusan* : no, thank you (I won't take any).

*tamago wo takusan katte wa ike-nai* (A) : don't buy too many eggs.

*koko wa ka ga takusan ite iya desu* (C) : I don't like this place, there are so many mosquitos.

*tama*. A precious stone; a jewel; a ball; a bullet.

*tama ni kizu* : a defect in an otherwise very beautiful thing.

*tamago*, [*tama* ball; *ko* child].

*tamago wo umu* : to lay an egg.

*tamago wo kaesu* : to hatch eggs.

*tamago no shiromi* : the white of an egg.

*tamago no kimi* : the yolk of an egg.

*tamago no kara* : an empty egg-shell.

*umitate no tamago* : a new-laid egg.

*tamaru*, v.i. [eogn. w. *tameru* v.t.].

1) To become accumulated; to collect.

*ano hito wa kane ga takusan tamatta* (B) : he has saved up a great deal of money.

*koko ni mizu ga tamatte iru* (B) : water has collected here.

2) To bear; endure; used especially when meaning 'cannot bear' or 'won't bear'.  
*samukitte tamara-nai* (B) : I can't stand this cold.

*mō tamara-nai* (B) : I can't bear it any longer.

*okashikute tamara-nakatta* (B) : I could hardly contain myself for laughter. (The Japanese construction does not indicate clearly whether as a matter of fact I laughed or not).

*sonna ni shikararete tamaru mono ka?* (A) : am I to stand such a scolding as that?

*hara ga tatte tamara-nai* (B) : I am awfully angry.

*isogashikute tamarimasen* (C) : I am very busy.

*tambi*, [corr. of *tabi* q.v.]. As often as; whenever.

*ano hito wo miru tambi ni* : whenever I see that man.

*o-kami-san wa sono tambi ni jibun no heya e itte nakimashita* (C) : whenever that happened his wife would go to her room and cry.

*tame*. Sake; account; reason; purpose.

*anata no tame ni shimashita* (C) : I did it on account of you.

*ā, sono tame deshita* (C) : ah, that was the reason.

*nan no tame ni desu?* (C) : for what purpose is that? what is the cause of that?

*nen no tame ni* : for precaution's sake.

*kuni no tame nara itsu de mo inochi wo suteru* (B) : I am always ready to give my life for my country.

*ame ga fuita tame ni ika-nakatta* (B) : I didn't go because of the rain.

*kaze no tame ni uchi ga kowareta* (B) : the house was wrecked by the wind.

*watashi wo komaraseru tame ni shimashita* (C) : he did it to annoy me.

*tame ni naru* : to be to somebody's advantage.

*karada no tame ni naru* : good for the health.

*ano musume wa oya no tame ni mi wo utta*



(B) : that girl sold herself to help her parents.

*taiō shujin no tame ni hatarakimasu* (C) : he works very hard for his master.

*mie wo haru tame ni* : for appearance' sake.

**tameru**, v.t. [cogn. w. *tamaru* v.i.]. To collect ; accumulate.

**tamesu**. To test ; prove ; try ; attempt.

*tameshite mi-ru* : to try.

*tameshite goran nasai* (B) : have a try.

*ii ka warui ka tameshite mimashō* (C) : let us try and see if it is good or bad.

*tameshi no nai* : unprecedented.

*mono wa tameshi da* (B) : it is worth while trying.

**tana**. A shelf.

*tana e ageru* : to put on the shelf ; fig. to be oblivious of.

*jibun no koto wo tana e agete hito no koto wo iu* : to be fond of finding fault with others, but to forget one's own failings.

Comp.

*todana* : a cupboard.

*hon-dana* : a book-shelf.

**tane**, [ta paddy-field; nei root]. Seed ; pips ; stone (of a fruit) ; origin.

*tane wo maku* : to sow seeds.

*maka-nai tane wa hae-nai* : seeds that are not sown, don't germinate ; if you sow no seeds, you get no crops.

*kenka no tane* : the origin of a dispute.

*hanashi no tane* : a subject of conversation.

**tani**. Valley ; ravine.

**tanjō-bi**, [hil day]. Birthday.

**tanomu**. To ask for aid ; request.

*dare ni tanomimashō ku?* (C) : to whom must I ask ?

*hito ni koto wo tanomu* : to call upon a person for assistance.

*san-ji ni kuru yō ni tanonde o kure* (A) : ask him to come at three o'clock.

*isha wo tanomu* : to call a doctor.

*uchi no Chiyo ni hana no sensei wo hitori tanomitai* (B) : I wish to engage a person to teach the arrangement of flowers to my daughter Chiyo.

*omae wa dare ni tanomarete sonna koto wo suru no da?* (A) : who asked you to do such a thing ?

*rusu chū wa yoroshiku tanomimasu* (C) : please look after things while I am away.

*tanonda kutsu wo tori ni o-ide* (A) : go and fetch the boots I ordered.

*o tanomi mōshimasu* (often contr. to *o tanomōshimasu*) (D) : please do me the favour.

Der.

*tanomi* : a request.

*dōzo kono tanomi wo kiite kudasai* (D) : please grant this request.

**tansū**. Chest of drawers.

**taore-ru**, v.i. [cogn. w. *taosu* v.t.]. To fall over.

**taosu**, v.t. [cogn. w. *taore-ru* v.i.]. To overthrow.

*kondo wa anata wo taoshite miseru* (B) : I will beat you this time.

**tari-ru**. To be enough, sufficient.

*kore de tariru darō* (B) : I think this will be enough.

*kore wa satō ga tari-nai* (B) : this is not sweet enough.

*ichi-mai tari-nai* : one page is wanting.

*jis-sen tari-nai* : ten sen short.

*ni-ri tara-zu* : less than two ri (miles).

*ano hito wa sūkoshi tari-nai* (B) : that man is a little wanting (intellectually).

**tashika** (na). Safe ; certain.

*ano ginkō wa tashika da* (B) : that bank is quite safe.

*tashika (na koto) desū ka?* (C) : is it quite certain ?

*tashika na hito* : a trustworthy man.

*tashika ni wa shirimasen* (C) : I don't know for certain.

*tashika ni shōchi itashimashita* (D) : I have understood your meaning perfectly well.

*tashika ni sore ni chigai nai* (B) : I am certain there is no mistake about it.

*tashika ni te ni hairu* : to secure to oneself.

**tasū**. To add ; make up a deficiency.

*san ni go wo taseba hachi desū* (C) : five added to three make eight.

*tari-nai tokoro wo tasū* : to add what is wanting.

**tasūkaru**, v.i. [cogn. w. *tasūke-ru* v.t.]. To escape from danger ; be saved, relieved.

*o-kage sama de tasūkarimashita* (D) : thanks to you I was saved.

**tasūke-ru**, v.t. [cogn. w. *tasūkaru* v.i.]. To save ; help ; (gen. refers to some serious need).

*bimbō-nin wo tasūke-ru* : to aid the poor.

*musāme wa toshiyori no o tō-san wo tasūkete niwa wo sampo shita* (B) : the girl supported her aged father and walked round the garden with him.

**tataku**. To strike ; beat ; knock.

*hito wo tataku* : to beat a person.

*te wo tataku* : to clap the hands.

*to wo tataku* : to knock at a door ; to visit.

**tatami**, [tatamu to fold : originally the mats were skins and could be folded and put away]. A Japanese floor-mat.

**tatamu**. To fold ; close.

*yōfuku wa kō iu fū ni tatamu no desū* (C) : foreign clothes must be folded like this.

*mise wo tatamu* : to close a shop, (give up business).

Comp.: *tatami-isū* : a folding chair.

**tate** (no), [tate-ru to set up]. Vertical ; standing ; lengthwise.

*tate ni narabete oite kure* (A) : stand them up in a row.

*tate ni kiru* : to cut lengthwise.

-tate, [tate<sup>ru</sup> to set up]. A suffix.

- 1) Added to stem of verb gives the meaning of an action just accomplished.

*umitate no tamago* : a new-laid egg, [umu to lay].

*toritate no kudamono* : freshly-picked fruit, [toru to pick].

- 2) A stand.

*rōsoku-tate* : a candlestick, [rōsoku candle].

*tatemono*, [tate<sup>ru</sup> to set up; *mono* thing]. A building.

*tate<sup>ru</sup>*, v.t. [cogn. w. *tatsū* v.i.]. To set up; build.

*hara wo tate<sup>ru</sup>* : to get angry.

*hokori wo tate<sup>ru</sup>* : to raise dust.

*uchi wo tate<sup>ru</sup>* : to build a house.

*koe wo tate<sup>ru</sup>* : to raise the voice.

*mi wo tate<sup>ru</sup>* : to establish oneself in the world.

*na wo tate<sup>ru</sup>* : to become famous.

*to wo tate<sup>ru</sup>* : to close a door.

*dō ka kō ka kurashi wo tateite imasū* (C) : I manage to make a living somehow.

Der. and comp.

*tate no* ; -tate ; *tatemono* ; q.v.

*tatoba*. For instance ; for example.

*tatsū*, v.i. [cogn. w. *tate<sup>ru</sup>* v.t.].

- 1) To stand up.

*basho ga nai kara tatte imashō* (C) : as there is no vacant seat I will stand

*koko ni gakkō ga tatsū sō da* (B) : it appears they are going to build a school here ; (lit. a school will stand here they say).

- 2) To start.

*go-ji ni tachimashita* (C) : he left at five o'clock.

- 3) To pass (as time) ; elapse.

*hito-tsuki tatte* : in a month's time.

*mo sukoshi tatte kite kudasai* (C) : come a little later.

*ichi-nen tata-nai uchi ni* : in less than a year.

*toki no tatsū no wa hayai mono da* (B) : how time flies.

- 4) Various.

*kaze ga tatsū to nami ga tachimasū* (C) : when the wind rises, the sea becomes rough.

*hito no me ni tatsū* : to attract people's attention.

*na ga tatsū* : to become famous.

*yubi ni hari no saki ga tachimashita* (C) : I've got the end of a needle sticking in my finger.

*hokori ga tatsū kara mizu wo maite kure* (A) : sprinkle water on the ground as it is dusty.

*kiri ga tachimashita* (C) : a mist has come on.

*ano hito wa ima ki ga tatte iru n' da kara soba e itcha ike-nai* (A) : as he is in a bad temper now, don't go near him.

*yaku ni tatsū* : to be useful.

*yaku ni tata-nai* : to be good for nothing.

*hara ga tatsū* : to get angry.

Comp.

*medatsū* : to be conspicuous.

*tachi-domaru* : to stop while walking, [to-maru to stop].

*tatta*, [emphatic pronunciation of *tada* q.v.]. Only.

*tatta ichi-do mimashita* (C) : I have only seen it once.

*tatta ima deaketa bakari desū* (C) : he has only just gone out.

*Tatta ima* differs from *tadaima* in that it generally refers only to the past, and is more emphatic.

*tazune<sup>ru</sup>*. To inquire ; visit.

*kono kinjo wa minna tazunemashita* (C) : I have inquired everywhere in the neighbourhood.

*kinō tazunete kimashita* (C) : he called upon me yesterday.

Note. *Tazune<sup>ru</sup>* is a plain verb. The corresponding humble verb, polite for the action of the 1st person towards the 2nd, is *ukagau*. The corresponding honorific verb, polite for the action of the 2nd person towards the 3rd, is *o tazune nasaru*, *o tazune ni naru* or *o tazune de gozaru* : when referring to the action of the 2nd person towards the 1st, *o tazune kudasanu*.

te. The hand ; arm ; handwriting ; handle ; deed ; plan ; direction ; sort ; person.

*migi no te* : the right hand.

*hidari no te* : the left hand.

*te wo tataku* ; *te wo utsū* : to clap the hands.

*dō shite anata no te ni hairimashita* (or *ire-mashita*) ? (C) : how did it come into your possession ?

*te wo kiru* : to break off relationship.

*ano hito to te wo kitta* (B) : I have washed my hands of him.

*te wo hiku* : to lead (as a child) by the hand ; to withdraw one's hand or assistance.

*te wo hanasu* : to let go the hand ; leave off.

*te wo kashite kudasai* (C) : please help me.

*te wo kari<sup>ru</sup>* : to borrow another's hand ; ask for help.

*amari te ga kakarimasū* (C) : it is too much trouble.

*kore ni te wo sawatte wa ike-nai* (A) : you mustn't touch this.

*te wo kaete miyō* (B) : I will try it again in a different way.

*te wo kae shina wo kae* : by every possible way one can think of.

*kore wa naka-naka te no konda saiku da* (B) : there is a lot of work in this article.

*kore wa watashi no te ni wa awa-nai* (B) : this is more than I can manage ; this is not in my line.

*te ga kiku* : to be handy at any work.

*kore wa te ni awa-nai shigoto da* (B) : this work is beyond my ability.



*konna ni mecha-kucha de wa te no tsūke-yō ga nai* (B): these things are in such disorder I don't know how to set about it.  
*sono te wa kuwa-nai* (B): I am not to be caught by such a trick.

*sono te de wa mō damasaremasen* (C): you can't take me in again by such a trick.

*sono te ni wa komatta* (B): those proceedings put me in a difficult position.

*ano hito wa naka-naka te ga ii* (B): he writes a very good hand.

*kono te wa tadama kirete orimasu* (C): this kind of article is now out of stock.

*te ga agaru*: to make progress (in manual accomplishments).

*ima chotto te ga aite imasen* (C): I am engaged just now.

*te wo akete matsu*: to cease work and wait. *te ni toru yō ni*: as if close at hand.

*te mo naku dekimashita* (C): it was done without any difficulty.

*te wo dasu*: to attempt; do or meddle with work that doesn't belong to one.

*ano koto de sukkari te wo yaita* (B): he burnt his fingers badly in that affair.

*ano hito wa te ga nagai kara ki wo tsūke nasai* (B): as he has light fingers, you must be careful.

*te ga todoku*: to be able to reach; be within one's reach.

*nani kara nani made te ga todoite iru* (B): attention has been given to the smallest details.

*tomodachi no te wo tōshite tanonda* (B): I applied through a friend.

*kyō wa shigoto ga te ni tsūka-nai* (B): I cannot apply myself to my work today.

*ano hito wa ichi-do te wo tsūketara, kesshite yame-nai* (B): he is a man who once he puts his hand to the plough never turns back.

*te wo orosu*: to reach down the hand; attempt.

*te wo nurasa-zu ni*: not wetting one's hands; without any effort.

*te ni hairu*: to secure to oneself; succeed in getting; obtain.

*jōzu no te kara mizu ga moru*: even the wisest make mistakes; even Homer sometimes nods.

*te wo ieru*: to take part in a work.

*kono te de ikō* (B): let's do it this way.

*kago no te*: the handle of a basket.

Comp.

*kata-te*: one hand.

*ryō-te*: both hands.

*te-bukuro*: gloves.

*te-kubi*: wrist.

*kara-te*: empty-handed.

*kai-te*: the buyer.

*uri-te*: the seller.

*ura-te*: the rear; back side.

'te, see 'tte.

*tēburu*, [corr. of English]. Table.

*tegami*, [te hand; kami<sup>2</sup> paper]. A letter.

*tegami wo kaku*: to write a letter.

*tegami wo dasu*: to post a letter.

*tehon*, [te handwriting; compare *mihon*]. A copy-book model; pattern; sample.

*kore wo tehon ni shite koshirae te kudasai* (C): please make it after this pattern.

*teinei* (na). Polite; kind; careful; attentive to details.

*teishaba*, [tei to stop; shā carriage; ba place]. Station (railway).

*teishu*. Husband.

Note. *Teishu* is a plain word; the corresponding humble words, polite for the 1st person, are *yado*, *taku*, *uchi* or *shujin*; the honorific expression, polite for 'your husband', is *danna sama*.

*tema*, [te hand, work; ma<sup>1</sup> interval]. Time spent in doing any work.

*kore wa tema ga kakarimasu* (C): this takes a lot of time; there is a lot of work in this.

*tema wo irete suru*: to do a thing with great care and so take a long time over it.

*tema wo harau*: to pay wages.

*tema ga tore:ru* (or *toru*): to take time.

*shoku-nin no tema*: a workman's wages.

*ten<sup>1</sup>*. The heavens; sky.

*ten de deki-nai* (B): I can't do it at all.

*ten de wakara-nai* (B): I don't understand it at all.

*ten ni de mo noboru yō ni yorokobimashita* (C): he was as happy as if he were in Heaven.

*ten<sup>2</sup>*. A point; dot; spot.

*ten wo utsu*: to make a dot; to criticize; find fault with.

*tenjō*, [ten<sup>1</sup> sky]. The ceiling.

*tenki*, [ten<sup>1</sup> sky; ki<sup>2</sup> spirit]. Weather; (the honorific *o* is gen. pref.).

*ii o tenki de gozaimasu* (D): what fine weather it is!

*o tenki ni narimashita* (C): it has turned out fine.

*ashita wa tenki ni shitai mono da* (B): I hope it will be fine tomorrow.

*Tennō Heika*, [ten<sup>1</sup> heaven; ō emperor; heika majesty]. His Majesty the Emperor (of Japan).

*tenugui*, [te hand; nuguu to wipe]. A towel.

*teppō*, [tetsū iron; hō a gun]. A gun.

*teppō no tama*: a bullet.

*teppō wo utsu*: to fire a gun.

*teppō wo muke:ru*: to aim a gun.

*tera*. A Buddhist temple; (the honorific *o* is gen. pref.).

*teru*. To shine.

*hi ga tette imasu* (C): the sun is shining.

*tetsū*. Iron.

Comp.: *tetsubin*: a kettle, [bin a bottle].

tetsudau, [te hand]. To assist; help; lend a hand.

to1. Door.

to wo akeru: to open a door.

to wo shimeru: to shut a door.

to wo tataku: to knock at a door; visit.

Comp.

ama-do: outside shutters, [ame rain].

todana: a cupboard, [tana shelf].

to2, ppn.

1) Serves to express thoughts or to quote those thoughts already expressed in words or writing. *Ka* before the *to* indicates that there is doubt in the mind of the person quoted; *ka* after the *to* means that there is doubt in the mind of the speaker as to whether he is quoting correctly.

*honto da to omou* (B): I think (that) it is true.

*uso da to iimasu* (C): he says (that) it is a lie.

*Ito San wa uchi wo kaō ka to iimashita* (C): Mr Itō said he was thinking of buying a house.

*ikō ka to omou* (B): I've half a mind to go.

*kuru to ka iimashita* (C): if I mistake not he said he would come.

*sumi no tokoro ni 'Suzuki' to kaite arimasu* (C): the name Suzuki was written in the corner (of the cloth).

*'kuru' to wa iimasen deshita* (C): I didn't say I would come

2) The foll. examples are somewhat similar to the above.

*Yamada San ga iru to wa shira-zu ni warukuchi wo iimashita* (C): he talked ill of Mr Yamada without knowing that he was present.

*Kotoshi wa Karuizawa e ika-nai to kime-mashita* (C): I have made up my mind not to go to Karuizawa this year.

*ano uchi wa shujin ga i-nai to mieru* (B): it looks as if the owner of that house was absent.

3) The words *omou*, *iu*, etc. are often suppressed in these constructions when telling tales but not often in ordinary conversation.

*'nan darō?' to, tsutsumi wo hiroi-agemashita* (C): asking himself 'I wonder what it is?' he picked up the parcel; (to *itte*).

*inu ga nigeru darō to shimpai shimashita* (C): thinking the dog might perhaps run away he was very anxious; (to *omotte*).

4) *To* is sometimes foll. by a pleonastic *kō*, or *sō*.

*mō kesshite totte wa ike-nai to sō ii nasai* (A): tell him never to take it again.

5) *To iu* is found in the foll. examples, though there is no quotation in the ordinary sense of the word.

*kinō mita (to iu) hito*: the man (you said) you saw yesterday.

*kore wa nan to iimasu ka?* (C): what do you call this?

*nan to (iimashita ka)?* (B): what did you say?

*hito wo baka to iu*: to call somebody a fool.

*Tōkyō Maru to iu june*: a ship called the Tōkyō Maru.

*Tora to ka iu geisha*: a geisha called, I believe, Tora.

*Tōkyō ni Ueno to iu ōki na kōen ga aru* (B): in Tōkyō there is a big park called Ueno. *Nihon ni wa Fuji to itte takai yama ga arimasu* (C): there is a high mountain in Japan called Fuji.

*otonashii to itte mo wakai musūme no koto da* (B): she is very well-behaved no doubt but after all she is only a young girl (so don't send her to places like that).

*natsū wa umi yori yama no hō ga suzushii kara* (C): in summer I prefer the mountains to the sea-shore, and I'll tell you why, it is cooler up on the mountains.

*ano hito to ieba dō shite iru deshō?* (C): I wonder what that man is doing?

6) *To iu* foll. by a noun (sometimes suppressed) may be equivalent to *sō iu* (see sō1 3): that; like that.

*watashi no ii-tōke wo nan de mo suru to iu yakusoku wo suru ka?* (A): will you promise to do everything I tell you?

*watashi wa mō kanai wo motō to iu tsumori wa nai* (B): I have no intention of marrying again.

*moeshi anata ga mitsukete kuretaru o kane wo ageru to iu imi na no desū* (C): my meaning is that if you were to find it for me I'd give you a reward.

*Satō San to ka, Kimura San to ka iu yō na hito ga sōdan shita no desū* (C): Mr Satō, Mr Kimura, and people like that met in consultation.

*Maeda ga byōki da to iu koto wo kikimashita* (C): I heard that Maeda was ill.

*onna ga hitori de iru to iu koto wa yoku nai koto da* (B): it's not good for a woman to be single.

*Suzuki San ga ko-nai to iu (koto) nara hoka no hito wo yobimashō* (C): if Mr Suzuki is not coming I'll call someone else.

*kore to iu koto wa nai* (B): not anything you could call important.

*kanemochi to iu hodo de wa arimasen deshita* (C): he wasn't exactly what you'd call rich.

*iya to iu hodo butsū*: to give somebody a good beating.

Note:—*To iu mono* is sometimes placed after a noun, when the noun refers to a whole class.

*inu to iu mono wa rikō na mono desū* (C): the dog is a clever animal.



- 7) In the foll. examples *to iu* has a slight emphatic force; it may be suppressed in many cases without changing the meaning substantially.

*kyō wa ammari samai (to iu) no de sampo ni dekakemassen (C)*: he finds it too cold today to go for a walk.

*Nihon-jin no tsuyoi (to iu) no wa honto desū ka? (C)*: is it true that the Japanese are strong?

'history' (*to iu no wa nan desū ka? (C)*): what does 'history' mean?

- 8) *To omou* after a verb in the future means intention, if the subjects of the two verbs are the same; but if the subjects are different it means think, hope, fear, etc.

*ie wo tateyō to omotta (B)*: I intended to build a house.

*dō shiyō to omoimasū ka? (C)*: what do you propose to do?

*hari-bako ni shiyō to omotte kaimashita (C)*: I bought it for a needle-case.

*anata de mo yarō to omoeba dekiru koto desū (C)*: it is a thing that even you could do if you tried.

*hairō to omoeba haireru (B)*: you can go in if you really want to (but I think you had better not).

*dōmo byōki wa naora-nai darō to omoimasū (C)*: I am afraid he will never get well again.

*ano hito ga okoru darō to omoimashita (C)*: I was afraid he would get angry.

*dekimasūmai to omoimasū (C)*: I fear it won't be ready.

*anata ga sonna koto wo iō to wa omoimasen deshita (C)*: I never thought you'd say such a thing.

- 9) *To omou* after other parts of the verb than the future or after adj., means think, hope, fear, etc.

*koko ni anata ga iru to wa omoimasen deshita (C)*: I didn't think that you were here; I am surprised to find you here.

*amari yoku nai to omoimasū (C)*: I don't think it's very good.

*ii to omoimasū (C)*: it seems all right to me.

*kono kisha de kuru to omotta (B)*: I hoped he would come by this train.

*raigetsū kaeritai to omoimasū (C)*: I hope to come back next month.

*Ei-go wo oshiete itadakitai to omoimasū (D)*: I wish you'd be good enough to teach me English.

*konnichi wa kō-nai to omoimasū (C)*: I am afraid he won't come today.

*tomodachi to omou*: to consider somebody a friend.

- 10) *To (shite)* is added sometimes to certain adverbs without appreciably changing their meaning; *to shita* converts these expressions into adj. *To (shite)* is also added to nouns to make adverbs.

*bonyari*; *bonyari to*; *bonyari to shite*: dimly.  
*bonyari to shita*; *bonyari shita*: dim.

*shi-awase to (shite) ii o tenki deshita (C)*: luckily the weather was fine.

*kodomo to shite wa yoku kaite arimasū (C)*: it is well written for a child.

See *suru* 12).

- 11) After the future *to suru* means 'be about to', 'intend to'.

*ikō to shite*: being about to go; intending to go.

*anata ga kura wo tateyō to shite irassharu jimen wa doko desū? (C)*: where is the plot of land on which you are thinking of building a godown?

- 12) *To suru* in other cases.

*dare ni itta to shite mo yoku nai (A)*: whomsoever you may have told it to you did wrong.

*Takeo wa uso-tsūki to shite tōtte iru (B)*: Takeo has a name for being a liar.

*moshi ano hito ga kuru to sureba nichiyō ni kimasū (C)*: he will come on Sunday if he comes at all.

*anata ga iku mono to sureba kō iu baai ni dō shimasū ka? (C)*: if you were going what would you do in such a case?

*kyōdai to suru*: to consider (somebody) as a brother.

- 13) *To naru* is more used in the literary style, but is sometimes heard in the colloquial.

*hito to naru*: to become a man.

*shūkan to naru*: to become a habit.

- 14) The present tense (aff. or neg.) foll. by *to* may mean a) 'if' or b) 'when'. *To* is constructed in a similar way with an adj. instead of a verb.

*taberu to o kō-san ni shikararemasū (C)*: if you eat it your mother will scold you.

*isoga-nai to osoku narimasū (C)*: hurry up or you will be late; (lit. if you do not hurry etc.).

*ugoku to ike-nai (A)*: you must not move; (lit. if you move that won't do).

*ki wo tsūke-nai to ike-nai (A)*: you must be careful.

*kasa wo motte iku to yokatta (B)*: you ought to have taken an umbrella.

*sō suru to*: in that case; then.

*kane ga naru to kisha ga deru (B)*: when the bell rings the train starts.

*okiru to sugu ni ikimasū (C)*: I will go as soon as I get up.

*atsui to byōki ni naru (B)*: the hot weather upsets me.

- 15) *To* between nouns often means 'and'.  
*pan to niku to sakana wo kaimashita (C)*: I have bought some bread, meat and fish.

- 16) *To ka* is used in enumerations and may mean 'and' or 'or'.

*kisha to ka, denwa to ka, densha to ka (iu yō*

na mono) wa kono-goro dekita mono desū (C) : trains, telephones, electric cars and such like things are all modern inventions.

pen to ka, fude to ka, dotchi ka de o kaki nasai (C) : write with a pen or a brush (but don't use a pencil).

17) To may also mean 'with'.

anata to sampo ni ikitai (B) : I would like to go for a walk with you.

ano hito to te wo kitta (B) : I have done with him, (will have nothing more to do with him).

musūko to fūtari : two, counting my son.

18) To is used in comparisons and in other cases where two objects are considered the one in relation to the other.

o cha to kōhii to dochira ga yoroshii no desū ka ? (C) : which do you prefer tea or coffee ?

maru de yuki to sumi to no chigai : as different as black and white, (lit. snow and charcoal).

sore to kore to torikaemashō ka ? (C) : shall I change that for this ?

kore to wa chigaimasu (C) : it is different from this.

are to onaji : the same as that.

ano hen mo moto to wa yohodo kawarimashita (C) : that neighbourhood also is very different to what it used to be.

watakushi to kyōdai desū (C) : he is my brother.

19) To is sometimes used when denying the repetition of a thing or a fact.

kono kurai no mono wa Tōkyō-jū sagashite mo fūtatsū to wa nai deshō (C) : if you searched all Tōkyō I do not think you would find another article like this.

anna ii hito wa fūtari to wa i ya shi-nai (B) : there's not another man as good as he is.

mō ni-do to Kichiza ni au koto wa dekimasen (C) : she would never be able to see Kichiza again.

20) To mo has four meanings : a) emphatic after words like ryōhō or fūtari ; also in replies, after the verb ; b) a concessive force like the gerund foll. by mo ; c) about equal to ni mo ; d) elliptical.

ryōhō to mo shi-nakereba nara-nai (B) : you must do both.

arimasu ka ?—arimasu to mo (C) : are there any ?—of course there are.

sūkunaku to mo ii (B) : even a little will do ; (sūkunakute mo).

isoga-naku to mo ii (B) : you needn't hurry.

sore wa iwa-zu to mo shireta koto desū (C) : that goes without saying.

iku to mo yosū to mo watashi no katte da (B) : whether I go or whether I don't is nobody's business but mine.

donna muri wo itte koyō to mo kamawa-nai

(B) : whatever unreasonable things he may say I will take no notice.

nan to mo iimasen (C) : he said nothing at all, (ni mo).

nan to mo yemasen (C) : I can't say ; it may be ; I don't know.

kaiku mo nan to mo nai (B) : I don't feel any itch or anything.

doko to mo iemasen ga, karada-jū ga itai (B) : I can't say where, but my whole body pains me, (to mo is perhaps here to iu koto mo).

See also tomo.

21) Note the following in which there is an ellipsis after to.

nani ! ano hito ga shinda to ? (B) : what ! that man is dead ? (to iu no desū ka ?).

ano hito wa doko to naku jōhin na tokoro ga aru (B) : there is something refined about him ; (doko to iu koto mo naku).

sore to naku : in a casual way.

nan to naku : without any special reason ; not knowing why or how.

22) Various.

sore kara to iu mono wa : after that.

nan to, see nani 3).

to wa is often equivalent to to iu mono wa, to iu koto wa, or to iu no wa.

to ; to itte ; to omotte ; to kiite ; to itte mo ; to iimasu ; to iimashita are often contracted or corrupted in familiar speech to 'te q.v.

Comp. Tō is the final syllable of many adverbs, as, chanto, chitto, choito, jitto, kitto, motto, sōtto, zatto, zutto.

to3, [tō ten]. Ten ; abb. 2nd set of num. (276, 4).

tō1. Ten.

Note :—in comp. tō is abb. to to : see 276, 4.

tō2. Class ; degree ; rank.

Comp.

it-tō : first class.

ni-tō : second class.

san-tō : third class.

jōto : best quality ; first class ; [jō2 best].

chūtō : medium quality ; second class ; [chū middle].

katō : inferior quality ; third class ; [ka inferior].

tobu. To fly ; jump.

tori ga tobu : the bird flies.

kodomo ga tobu : the child jumps.

tonde hi ni iru natsū no mushi : a summer insect that flies into a light ; the fool that hunts for misfortune.

tonde iku : to go flying, in great haste.

Comp.

tobi-agaru : to jump up.

tobi-dasu : to jump out.

tobi-komu : to jump in, into.

tobi-noru : to jump on to (a tram-car in motion).

tobi-oriru : to jump down, off.



**tōbun.** For the present ; at present.

*tōbun no uchi* ; *tōbun no aida* : for the present.

*tōbun hima da* (B) : I have nothing to do at present.

**tochū**, [to road ; chū during]. While on the road.

*koko e kuru tochū de* : on my way here.

*hanashi no tochū de* : in the midst of a conversation.

*tochū de kane wo otoshita* (B) : I have lost my money on the road.

*tochū made issho ni ikimashō* (C) : I will go part of the way with you.

**todana**, [tol door ; tana shelf]. A cupboard.

**todokeru**, v.t. [cogn. w. *todoku* v.i.]. To send to destination ; deliver (as a letter) ; to report ; inform.

*kore wo uchi ni todokete kudasai* (C) : please send this to my house.

*tegami wo todokeru* : to deliver a letter.

*keisatsu ni todokeru* : to report (something) to the police.

**todoku**, v.i. [cogn. w. *todokeru* v.t.]. To reach ; arrive.

*ano hana wa te ga todokimasen* (C) : I can't reach that flower with my hand.

*isu ni nottara todoku deshō* (C) : if I get on a chair, I think I can reach it.

*nimotsū wa kesa todoita* (B) : the goods arrived this morning.

*ano jūsa wa yoku me ga todoku* (B) : nothing escapes that policeman's eyes.

**toгарu**, v.i. [cogn. w. *toгу* v.t. to sharpen an edge]. To become pointed, sharp.

*togatte iru* : to be pointed, sharp.

*saki wa hari no yō ni togatte iru* (B) : the end is as sharp as a needle.

**toge**, [toгу to sharpen]. A thorn ; splinter.  
*te ni toge ga tatta* (B) : I have run a splinter into my hand.

**togu**, v.t. [cogn. w. *toгарu* v.i. to become pointed]. To sharpen (an edge) ; to wash (rice).

**tōi**. Far ; distant. The polite form of the predicate, used before the verb *gozaru* is logically *tōo* or *toō* ; but it is gen. pron. *tō*.  
*teishaba kara tōi no desū ka ?* (C) : is it far from the station ?

*tō gozaimasu* (D) : it is far.

*tōi tokoro kara miru to kirei ni miemasu* (C) : seen from a distance it looks pretty.

*ano yama kara yoppodo tōku hanarete imasu* (C) : it is a long way away from that mountain.

*tōkūte chikai mono wa otoko to onna no naka da* (B) : the relations between man and woman change readily from reserve to intimacy.

Note :—the adverbial form *tōku* is used at times like a noun and may be foll. by a ppn. ; it is then equivalent to *tōi tokoro*.

*tōku kara mimashita* (C) : I saw it from a distance.

*tōku ni mieru yama ga Fuji-san de gozaimasu* (D) : that mountain you see in the distance is Mount Fuji.

**tōka**, [tōl ten ; -ka q.v.]. Ten days ; the tenth day of the month.

*tōka no kiku* : chrysanthemums of the 10th ; something that arrives too late to be useful ; (the feast of the chrysanthemums is on the 9th).

**tokasu**, v.t. [cogn. w. *tokeru* v.i.]. To melt ; dissolve.

**tokel**. Watch ; clock.

*tokei wo maku* : to wind a clock.

*tokei ga tomarimashita* (C) : the clock is not going ; the clock has stopped.

*tokei ga okurete iru* (B) : the clock is slow.

*watashi no tokei wa go-fun bakari hayai* (B) : my watch is five minutes fast.

*kono tokei wa yoku atte imasu* (C) : this clock keeps good time.

*watashi no tokei wo teishaba no ni awasemashita* (C) : I set my watch by the station.

**tokeru**, v.i. [cogn. w. *tokasu* v.t. to which it also serves as potential]. To melt ; can melt ; get untied.

*shio wa mizu ni tokemasu* (C) : salt dissolves in water.

*himo ga toketa* (B) : the string got untied.

**toki**.

1) Time ; opportunity ; occasion.

*kaeru toki ga chikaku natta* (B) : the time for going back is drawing near.

*sono toki no sensei wa Tanaka San deshita* (C) : the teacher at that time was Mr Tanaka.

*ano hito wa toki wo machigae-zu ni kita* (B) : he came punctually.

*kimashita toki kara* : from the moment I arrived.

*toki wo utsu* : to strike the hour.

*toki wo matsu* (or *ukagau*) : to wait for a favourable opportunity.

*toki no mono* : a thing in season.

*toki wo mite dekakemashō* (C) : I shall leave when I see an opportunity.

*kono toki ni wa yaku ni tata-nai* (B) : it is of no use in this case.

*toki ni yotte* : according to circumstances.

*toki ni wa benri desū* (C) : occasionally it comes in useful.

*masaka no toki* : in time of need.

2) **Toki** (ni) : when ; as.

*kodomo no toki ni* ; *chiisai toki ni* : when I was a child.

*sore ga okotta toki Igrisiu ni orimashita* (C) : when that happened I was in England.

*chōdo dekakeyō to omou toki ni ame ga furidashita* (B) : it began to rain just as I was about to leave.

3) **Toki** (ni) *wa* : hypothetical.

*moshi tegami ga nakunatta toki ni wa dō ita-shimashō ka?* (D): if the letter should be lost what shall I do?

4) Various.

*toki ni* (at the beginning of a sentence): by the way.

*toki ni, nan-ji deshō ka?* (C): by the way, I wonder what time it is.

*toki-doki, [toki-occasion]*. Now and then; occasionally.

**tokoro.**

1) Place.

*koko wa nan to iu tokoro desū ka?* (C): what is this place called?

*koko no tokoro ga dōmo wakarimasen* (C): I cannot at all make out this passage.

*anata no tokoro wa doko desū ka?* (C): where do you live?

*tokoro kawareba shina kawaru*: different countries have different customs.

*ate iru tokoro ga arimasū ka?* (C): is there a seat free?

*watashi no tokoro de kaimashita* (C): our firm (or I) bought it.

2) The relative 'where'.

*koko wa fune ni noru tokoro desū ka?* (C): is this where we take the boat?

*iku tokoro wo oshiemashō* (C): I will direct you where to go.

3) Time; occasion.

*chōdo ii tokoro e irasshaimashita* (D): you have come just in good time.

*dekakeyō to suru tokoro desū* (C): I am about to start.

*ima sampo kara kaetta tokoro desū* (C): I have just come back from a walk.

*watashi ga kuchi wo dasu tokoro de wa nai* (B): it is not for me to interfere.

*guzu-guzu shite iru tokoro de wa nai* (B): there is no occasion to dawdle.

4) When; while; as.

*o isogashii tokoro wo o jama itashimashita* (D): excuse me for interrupting you when you were busy.

*shokujū wo shite iru tokoro e, hito ga kaimashita* (C): a person came just as I was having my dinner (or lunch).

*chōdo deru tokoro e, kyaku ga mieta* (B): a visitor came just as I was going out.

*ginkō no mae ni tatte iru tokoro e, tomodachi ga dete kaimashita* (C): while I was standing in front of the bank a friend came out.

*tokoro e* (at the beginning of a sentence): at that moment.

5) For.

*anata no tokoro e dempō ga kaimashita* (C): a telegram has come for you.

*watakushi no tokoro e nimatsū ga kimasen deshita ka?* (C): didn't a package come for me?

6) *Tokoro* has a somewhat abstract meaning in the following examples.

*gekkyū no tokoro wa tameshite mile kara kimemashō* (C): coming now to the matter of your monthly wages, I shall settle that after I have tried you for a while.

*ano hito wa doko to naku jōhin na tokoro ga aru* (B): there is something refined about him (though I can't say what it is).

*okorippoi tokoro wa wasurete, shinsensu na tokoro dake oboete irasshai* (C): don't think of his hasty temper, but remember only his kindness to you.

7) *Tokoro de* at the beginning of a sentence may mean: and so, by the way, however; at the end of a clause: even if, when.

*tokoro de kore wa dō shimashō?* (C): and so what shall we do about it?

*tokoro de anata ni hitotsū o negai ga arimasū* (C): by the way, I have a favour to ask of you.

*tokoro de miru to kiku to wa ō-chigai desū* (C): however, hearing is quite a different thing from seeing.

*itta tokoro de ac-nai deshō* (C): even if I went I don't think I could see him.

*maketa tokoro de nigemashita* (C): when defeated they at once fled.

8) *Tokoro de wa*— according.

*watashi ga mita tokoro de wa*: judging by what I saw.

*watashi no shitteru tokoro de wa*: as far as I know.

9) *Tokoro ga* at the beginning of a sentence means nevertheless; in a sentence it may mean: and, even if, or when.

*tokoro ga jitsū wa ō ja arimasen* (C): nevertheless it is not so.

*yoku mita tokoro ga chigatte orimashita* (C): I looked carefully and found it was a mistake.

*yonda tokoro ga kimasūmai* (C): he won't come even if you call him.

*o kō-san no kao wo mita tokoro ga kodomo wa kyū ni naku no wo yamemashita* (C): when the child saw his mother's face, he immediately stopped crying.

10) The *nigori*'ed form *dokoro* is used in sentences like the following.

*yasui dokoro de wa nai* (B): it is anything but cheap.

*naka-naka ō suru dokoro ja nai* (B): it is quite out of the question.

*yorokobu dokoro ka, okotte ita* (B): happy indeed! why he was furious.

*samui dokoro ka naka-naka atsui* (B): far from being cold I was very hot.

*go-yen dokoro ka go-jū yen de mo kaimasen* (C): five yen, indeed! why you couldn't buy it for fifty.

Note. *Tokoro* is sometimes used in connection with the abb. 2nd set of num. 276, 4.

Comp.

*tokoro-dokoro*: here and there.



*daidokoro* : kitchen, [*dai*] a stard].

*nedoko* : bed ; bed-room ; [*ne-ru* to sleep].

*tokoro-gaki* : written address, [*kaku*] to write].

*tokoro-dokoro*, [*tokoro* place]. Here and there.

*toko-ya*, [*ya*] house]. Barber's shop ; a barber.

*toku*. Gain ; profit ; advantage.

*toku wo toru* : to gain.

*toku ga nai* : not profitable.

*sō nas'ita hō ga toku deshō* (C) : I think it will be to your advantage to do so.

*toku ni nareba nan de mo yaru to iu jū na hito da* (B) : he is the sort of man who would do anything if it is to his advantage.

*tokubetsū* (na). Special.

*ashita wa tokubetsū ni irimasu* (C) : I want it particularly by tomorrow.

*tomaru*, v.i. [cogn. w. *to-meru* v.t.]. To stop (cease motion) ; lodge.

*tokei ga tomarimashita* (C) : my watch has stopped.

*Nagoya de wa iku-jun tomarimasu ka?* (C) : How long does (the train) stop at Nagoya?

*Yokohama de dono hōteru ni o tomaru nasai-mashita ka?* (D) : at what hotel did you stop in Yokohama?

*suidō ga tomatta* (B) : no water comes from the tap.

*tori ga eda ni tomatte iru* (B) : the bird is perched on a branch.

*me ni tomaru* : to catch the eye ; attract one's notice.

*itami ga tomatta* (B) : the pain has ceased.

Comp. : *tachi-domaru* : to stop while walking, [*tatsu* to stand].

*to-meru*, v.t. [cogn. w. *tomaru* v.i.]. To stop ; check ; prohibit.

*tomete kudasai, orimasu* (C) : stop, I wish to get out, (said in a tram-car).

*chi wo to-meru* : to stop the bleeding.

*dō shite omae wa watashi no tometu koto wo shimasu ka?* (A) : how dare you do what I have forbidden?

*me wo tomete mi-ru* : to look attentively.

*sono suidō wo tomete kure* (A) : turn off that tap (of water).

*tomo*. Together ; companion ; friend.

*hako tomo watashimashita* (C) : I gave it to him together with the box.

*tomo wo erabu* : to choose friends.

*o tomo wo itashimashō* (D) : I will go with you.

*tomo wo tsurete iku* : to go with an attendant.

For *to mo*, see to2 20).

Comp. : -*domo* ; *tomodachi* ; q.v.

*tomodachi*, [*tomo* friend ; -*tachi* plural suf. : the original meaning was 'friends' only].

Friend ; friends.

*naka no ii tomodachi* : intimate friends.

*tomodachi to sake wa furui hodo ii* : as re-

gards friends and wine, the older the better.

*tomokaku* (mo). Practically synonymous with *tonikaku*, q.v. : anyhow ; be that as it may.

*tonari*, [*to*] door ; *narabu* to be in a row]. The adjoining house ; next door.

*tonari no* : neighbouring ; near.

*tonari no hito* : a neighbour.

*Yamada San wa watakushi no tonari ni koshi-kakemashita* (C) : Mr Yamada sat next to me.

Comp. :

*tonari-kinjo* : the immediate neighbourhood.

*tonari-ai* : to live next door to each other.

*tonikaku*. Anyhow ; be that as it may.

*tonikaku tegami wo dashimashō* (C) : anyhow, I'll send him a letter.

*Nara wa tonikaku Kyōto wa zehi goran nasai* (C) : don't miss seeing Kyōto for anything, whatever you do as regards Nara.

*to-ru*, v.i. [cogn. w. *toru* v.t. to which it serves as potential]. To take ; be able to take ; get taken ; come off.

*hima ga toremasu* (C) : it takes a lot of time.

*takai kara nashi ga toremasen* (C) : I can't pick the pear because it is too high.

*Nagasaki no chikaku de sakana ga takusan toremasu* (C) : near Nagasaki a lot of fish is caught.

*botan ga toremashita* (C) : the button has come off.

*tori*. A bird.

Comp.

*ondori* : a cock-bird, [*o-* male].

*mendori* : a hen-bird, [*me-* female].

*niwa-tori* : a domestic fowl, [*niwa* garden].

*tōri*, [*tōru* to pass].

1) The passing (as of persons, etc.).

*ichi-nichi-jū hito no tōri ga aru* (B) : people are coming and going all day.

*kaze no tōri ga yoku nai* (B) : the ventilation is not good.

2) Road ; street.

*ano tōri wa semai* (B) : that street is narrow.

*omote no tōri* : the road in front of the house.

3) Way ; manner ; as.

*mae ni hanashita tōri* : as I have already said.

*o hanashi no tōri desu* (C) : it is as you say.

*sono tōri ni shite o oki nasai* (B) : leave it as it is.

*itsu mo no tōri* : the same as usual.

*omotta tōri* : just as I expected.

*tadaima itta tōri* : as I have just said.

*goran no tōri* : as you see.

*watashi wa kono tōri toshiyori da* (B) : as you see, I am old.

4) Various.

ano hito wa tomodachi ni tōri ga ii (B) : he is a favourite with all his friends.

Comp.

hito-tōri : in a general way, [hito- one].

ō-dōri : a main road.

kaigan-dōri : a bund.

chūmon-dōri ; chūmon no tōri : according to order.

yakūsoku-dōri ; yakūsoku no tōri : according to promise.

torikae-ru, [toru to take ; kae-ru<sup>2</sup> to change]. To exchange (as one thing for another).

tori-tsugu. To act as agent ; transmit.

Itō to iu mono ga kita to shujin ni tori-tsuide kudasai (C) : please go and tell your master that (I) Mr Itō has come.

tori-tsugi ni de-ru : to go to the door (as a servant in answer to the bell or a call).

toru, v.t. [cogn. w. toreru v.i. which serves also as potential]. To take.

te ni mono wo toru : to take a thing in the hand.

kore wo o tori ni narimasu ka ? (D) : will you take this ?

sono hon wo totte kudasai (C) : please hand me that book.

Han wa tokei wo tori ni ikimashita ka ? (C) : has Han gone for my watch ?

Denjirō wo tori ni o yari nasai (B) : send Denjirō for it.

sono hana wo toritai (B) : I should like to pick that flower.

hito no mono wo toru : to steal.

watashi wa tokei wo torareta (B) : I have been robbed of my watch.

sensei wa seito kara no okuri-mono wo toranai (B) : teachers do not accept presents from their pupils.

gekkyū wa ikura toru ka ? (A) : what monthly salary do you get ?

sono hon wa ikura torimashita ka ? (C) : how much did that book cost ?

totte oku : to put away ; keep.

shashin wo toru : to take a photograph ; have one's photograph taken.

dasho wo toru : to take up room ; take a seat.

kutsu wo toru : to take off one's boots.

tori ni tari-nai ningen : a fellow not worth our consideration.

hima wo toru : to require time ; apply for dismissal.

tema wo toru : to take time.

toshi wo toru : to get old.

sakana wo toru : to fish.

nezumi wo toru : to catch a rat.

na wo toru : to become famous ; get a name.

sake kara su wo toru : to make vinegar from sake.

hito no kangae wo toru : to follow another's opinion.

kyaku no kigen wo toru : to please one's guest.

yome wo toru : to marry a wife.

bōshi wo totte aisatsu suru : to take off one's hat and salute.

yado wo toru : to lodge at an inn.

sumpō wo toru : to measure.

te ni toru yō ni : as if close at hand.

waruku toru : to take in bad part.

sore wa watakushi ni totte taihen shi-awase na koto desu (C) : that is a very fortunate thing for me.

ano hito ni totte wa taihen na kane da (B) : for him it is a large sum.

Comp.

tori-chigae-ru : to take by mistake.

torikae-ru : to exchange, (one thing for another).

tori-kesu : to cancel ; annul.

tori-yoseru : to get ; procure.

kaki-toru : to write from dictation.

kidoru : to put on airs, [ki<sup>2</sup> spirit].

tori-tsugu ; sutori-gami ; uke-toru ; q.v.

tōru, v.i. [cogn. w. tōsu v.t.]. To pass through.

kōen wo totte teishaba e itte o kure (A) : go to the station passing through the park.

Shiberia wo tōtte kimashita (C) : I came by way of Siberia.

o taku no mae wo tōrimashita kara chotto o tazune shimashita (C) : as I was passing in front of your house, I thought I'd just call.

kare no iu koto wa suji ga tōtte iru (B) : what he says is logical.

imi ga tōra-nai (B) : the meaning is unintelligible.

michi ga tōru : the street passes through to the other side, (it is not a blind alley).

michi wo tōru : to pass along a street.

Takeo wa uso-tsuki to shite tōtte iru (B) : Takeo has a name for being a liar.

Comp. and der.

tōri-awase-ru ; tōri-kakaru : to happen to pass.

tōri, q.v.

tō-san, [san Mr.]. Father ; (the honorific o is gen. pref. : o tō-sama is more polite than o tō-san).

toshi. Year ; age.

o toshi wa o ikutsu de irasshaimasu ka ? (D) : what age are you ?

chichi wa haha yori mittai toshi ga ue desu (or toshi wo totte imasu) (C) : my father is three years older than my mother.

toshi wo toru : to grow old.

toshi no kagen de : on account of old age.

toshi no wari ni tsuyoi (B) : he is strong for his age.

shinda ko no toshi wo kazareru : to calculate the age of one's dead child ; to cry over spilt milk.

Comp.

kotoshi : this year, [see kono<sup>2</sup>].



*mai-toshi* : every year.

*ototoshi* : the year before last.

*toshiyori* : an old person.

**toshiyori** (no), [*toshi* year; *yori*<sup>2</sup> to collect].

Old (of persons).

*sonna ni toshi yori de wa arimasen* (C) : he is not so very old.

**tōsū**, v.t. [cogn. w. *tōru* v.i.]. To pass something through; cause to pass through.

*hari ni ito wo tōshite o kure* (A) : pass the thread through the needle; thread the needle.

*o tōshi nasai* (A) : show him in.

*tomodachi wo tōshite kore wo moraimashita* (C) : I got this through my friend.

*ano hito wa jibun no iu koto wo doko made mo tōshimasu* (C) : that man sticks to what he says.

Comp.: *yari-tōsū* : to put through; carry out.

**totemo**. An emphatic neg. word, used especially in connection with the neg. pot.

*kore de wa totemo ikemasen* (C) : this will not do at all.

*totemo ikaremasen* (C) : I cannot possibly go.

*totemo kore hodo wa kake-nai* (B) : I cannot possibly write all this.

*totemo dame da* (B) : it is altogether useless.

*totemo ima deki-sō mo nai* (B) : I believe that now it is impossible to do it.

**tōtō**. Finally; at last. *tōtō* refers to a result which was not specially wished for.

*tōtō nakunarimashita* (C) : at last he died.

*tōtō shōchi shimashita* (C) : finally I consented.

**tsūben**. An interpreter.

*tsūben wo suru* : to act as interpreter.

**tsubo**. A jar.

**tsubure:ru**, v.i. [cogn. w. *tsubusu* v.t.]. To get crushed, smashed.

*kimo ga tsubure:ru* : to be frightened out of one's wits.

*me ga tsubure:ru* : to lose (the use of) an eye.

**tsubusū**, v.t. [cogn. w. *tsubure:ru* v.i.]. To crush; smash.

*hima wo tsubusū* : to waste time.

*uchi wo tsubusū* : to squander one's fortune.

*kimo wo tsubusū* : to be frightened out of one's wits.

*me wo tsubusū* : to damage and cause the loss of an eye.

*tori wo tsubusū* : to kill a fowl (for food).

**tsuchi**. Earth; ground.

Comp.: *kabe-tsuchi* : plaster.

**tsue**. A walking-stick; staff.

*tsue wo tsuite aruku* : to walk with a stick.

*koroba-nai saki no tsue* : take a stick before falling down; take precautions in due time.

**tsugi**. The next (in time or position); following.

*tsugi no hi* : the next day.

*kono tsugi ni suru* : to put off till next time.

*sono tsugi* : after that one; the next one.

**tsugō**.

1) Convenience.

*konnichi tsugō wa ii no desū ka?* (C) : is it convenient today?

*ashita ni shite wa go tsugō wa ikaga de gozaimasu ka?* (I) : suppose we say tomorrow, how would that suit you?

*tsugō ga yoku naru* : to become convenient; to become rich.

*tsugō wo suru* : to suit one's convenience.

*tsugō wo yoku suru* : to facilitate.

*tsugō no ii toki ni* : when convenient.

*tsugō shidai* : as soon as convenient.

*go tsugō ga yokereba* : if convenient to you.

*tsugō ga warui kara raigetsū ni nobashimasu* (C) : as it is inconvenient now, I will put it off till next month.

*tsugō wo shite mimashō* (C) : I'll see what can be done.

*minna tsugō yoku ikimashita* (C) : everything went off without a hitch.

2) Total; amount.

*tsugō jū-go-yen ni narimasu* (C) : the total comes to fifteen yen.

3) Various.

*kono-goro tsugō ga yoku natta* (B) : I am now in easier circumstances financially.

*dō tsugō shite mo harau koto ga dekimasen* (C) : no matter what I do I can't pay it.

*tsugō ga atte ashita ikaremasen* (C) : for certain reasons I can't go tomorrow.

**tsugu**. To join; mend; pour into.

*sara no korareta no wo tsugu* : to mend a broken plate.

*koppu ni mizu wo tsugu* : to pour water into a glass.

**tsui**. A pair; a.n. for pairs such as vases, etc.

*tsui de ikura desū ka?* (C) : how much are they the pair?

**tsui**<sup>2</sup>.

1) Unintentionally; by chance.

*tsui shita no desū kara gomen kudasai* (C) : excuse me, I didn't do it on purpose.

*tsui otoshita* (B) : I dropped it without knowing.

*tsui isogashii mono de go-busata itashimashita* (D) : I happen to be a busy person that is why I have been remiss about visiting you.

2) Soon; just now.

*tsui kono aida* : a few days ago; only the other day.

*tsui soko ni aru* (B) : it's just a little way off.

3) After all.

*tsui wasurete shimaimashita* (C) : after all I forgot all about it.

*tsui kō narimashita* (C) : the matter has turned out to be such.

*tsui shitsūrei itashimashita* (D) : excuse my not having been more attentive to you;

(the idea seems to be : I intended to be very polite, but after all I was impolite).

**tsuide.** Opportunity ; as ; when.

*Nikkō e iku tsuide ni Chūzenji e ikimashō* (C) : as I am going to Nikkō, I shall visit Chūzenji.

*deru tsuide ni kuruma wo tanonde oite kudasai* (B) : please order a riksha for me when you go out.

*tsuide ni o todoke mōshimasū* (D) : I will send it to you at the same time.

*chōdo konnichi wa asoko e iku tsuide ga arimasū* (C) : luckily we have occasion to go there today.

*a tsuide no toki* : when you have the opportunity.

**tsuitachi**, [*tsūki* month ; *tatsū* to start]. The first day of the month.

**tsuite.** With regard to.

*ryokō ni tsuite dō omoimasū ka ?* (C) : what do you think about the journey ?

*somo koto ni tsuite wa nani mo iwa-nai hō ga ii* (B) : do not let us argue the subject.

*sore ni tsuite wa nani mo shirimasen* (C) : I know nothing about that.

See also *tsūku*.

**tsūkai**, [*tsūkai* to employ]. Errand ; messenger.

*tsūkai de yaru* : to send by a messenger.

*tsūkai wo yaru* : to send a messenger.

*tsūkai ni yaru* : to send on an errand.

*tsūkai ni iku* : to go on an errand.

*tsūkai de shirasete kudasai* (C) : please let me know by messenger.

**tsūkai-michi**, [*tsūkai* to employ ; *michi* way]. Way of using ; use.

*kore wa tsūkai-michi ga nai* (B) : this is of no use.

*ano hito wa baka de tsūkai-michi ga nai* (B) : he is such a fool that it is impossible to make any use of him.

**tsūkai-mono**, [*?* *tsūkai* to use ; *mono* thing]. A gift ; present ; the honorific *o* is gen. prof.

**tsūkamaeru.** To lay hold of ; seize ; catch.

*dorobō wo tsūkamaeru* : to catch a thief.

**tsūkare-ru**, 114. To become tired.

*tsūkare mashita* (C) : I am tired.

**tsūkau.** To employ ; use ; spend.

*kore wa nan ni tsūkau no desū ka ?* (C) : what is this used for ?

*jibun de tsūkau no desū* (C) : it is for my own personal use.

*'jiki' to 'sugu' to wa dotchi wa yokei tsūkaimasū ka ?* (C) : which is used more frequently *jiki* or *sugu* ?

*yoku tsūkau koto da* (B) : it is a common expression.

*misc ni wa ōzei no hito wo tsūkutte imasū* (C) : there are a great many people employed at the shop.

*tsumara-nai mono desū ga dōzo o tsūkai ku-*

*dasai* (D) : this is of no value, but please accept it and make use of it.

*kane wo tsūkau* : to spend money.

*kane wo minna tsūkatte shimaishita* (C) : I have spent all my money.

*ki wo tsūkau* : to worry ; be anxious.

Der. and comp.

*tsūkai* ; *tsūkai-michi* ; *muda-zukai* ; q.v.

*tsūkai-nare-ru* : to be accustomed to using.

*tsūkai-nikui* : inconvenient to use, [*-nikui* difficult].

**tsūke-ru**, v.t. [cogn. w. *tsūku* v.i.]. To attach ; apply ; fix one thing on to another.

*nani ka kūsuri wo tsūketa ga ii* (A) : you had better apply some remedy.

*akari wo tsūke-ru* : to light the lights.

*hi wo tsūke-ru* : to set on fire.

*dare ka hi wo tsūketa no da* (B) : somebody has set it on fire.

*chōmen ni tsūke-ru* : to put down in an account book.

*(watakushi no kanjō ni) tsūkete oite kudasai*

(C) : please charge it to my account.

*ki wo tsūke-ru* : to take care.

*ki wo tsūke-nakereba ike-nai yo* (A) : now then, be careful.

*sono o kashi ni tegami wo tsūkete motashite yatte kudasai* (C) : send a note together with the sweets.

*ichi-yen wo tsūkete tegami wo dashimashita* (C) : he sent a letter enclosing one yen.

*na wo tsūke-ru* : to give a name.

*nedan wo ikura ni tsūketa ka ?* (A) : what did you price it at ?

*ato wo tsūke-ru* : to follow in another's track.

*chikara wo tsūke-ru* : to encourage.

*iro wo tsūke-ru* : to colour ; paint.

*shirushi wo tsūke-ru* : to mark ; affix a sign.

*shio ni tsūke-ru* : to pickle in salt.

*shio wo tsūke-ru* : to put salt on.

Comp.

*hi-zuke* : date (of letter, document, etc.).

*mitsūke-ru* q.v. : to find.

*mi-tsūke-ru* : to happen to see ; be accustomed to see.

*ii-tsūke-ru* q.v. : to order ; command ; be accustomed to say.

*kiki-tsūke-ru* : to happen to hear ; be accustomed to hear.

*shi-tsūke-ru* : to be accustomed to do.

*kaki-tsūke-ru* q.v. : to write down.

*nuri-tsūke-ru* : to paint ; plaster ; smear.

*nui-tsūke-ru* : to sew on.

*nirami-tsūke-ru* : to glare at.

*shikari-tsūke-ru* : to give a good scolding.

*katazuke-ru* ; *kotozuke-ru* ; *kutsūke-ru* ; q.v.

**tsūki**. Moon ; month.

*tsūki no de wa nan-ji desū ka ?* (C) : at what time does the moon rise ?

Note. *Tsūki* is used in connection with the abb. 2nd set of num. 276, 4 ; 293.

Comp.



*mai-tsūki* : every month ; monthly.

*tsūki-zuki* : month after month.

*tsūki-hi* : time.

*tsuitachi*, q.v.

**tsūku**<sup>1</sup>, v.i. [cogn. w. *tsūkeru* v.t.].

1) To adhere ; stick ; be in contact.

*nimotsū ni kami ga tsuite iru* (B) : the parcel has a paper stuck on it.

*hi ga tsūku* : to catch fire.

*hi ga tonari no uchi ni tsuita* (B) : the fire spread to the next house.

*warui kuse wa jiki ni tsūku mono da* (B) : bad habits are easily acquired.

*kimi no kimono ni doro ga tsuite iru* (B) : there is some mud on your dress.

*yuki ni ashi-ato ga tsuite iru* (B) : there are foot-prints in the snow.

*ne ga tsūku* : to take root.

2) To follow ; go together with.

*watashi no ato ni tsuite kite o kure* (A) : follow close behind.

*kono kawa ni tsuite kudareba soko ni deru* (B) : if you go down following this river, you will get there.

*ani ni tsuite ikimashita* (C) : I went with my elder brother.

3) To arrive.

*nan-ji ni kisen ga tsukimasu ka?* (C) : at what time does the steamer arrive?

*nimotsū wa kinō tsukimashita* (C) : the parcel arrived yesterday.

4) Various.

*me ni tsūku* : to catch the eye.

*kangae ga tsūku* : to form an opinion.

*mada kimari ga tsuka-nai* (B) : it is not yet settled.

*dōmo kufu ga tsuka-nai* (B) : I cannot arrange the matter any way.

*ashi ga tsūku* : to be found out (in wrong-doing).

Comp.

*kangae-tsūku* : to call to mind.

*kami-tsūku*; *kui-tsūku* : to bite (as an attack).

*oi-tsūku* : to overtake.

*umare-tsūki* : inborn disposition.

*kutsutsūku*; *ochi-tsūku*; q.v.

**tsūku**<sup>2</sup>, v.t. To strike ; push.

*kome wo tsūku* : to pound rice.

*hito wo tsūku* : to push somebody.

*uso wo tsūku* : to tell a lie.

*iki wo tsūku* : to breathe.

Comp.

*tsūki-otosu* : to knock down.

*uso-tsūki*, q.v.

**tsūkue**. A table ; desk.

**tsūkuru**, [f. *tsūkeru* to attach, apply]. To make ; build ; compose ; cultivate.

**tsumara-nai**; **tsumarimasen**; [f. **tsumaru** : the neg. forms are the only ones in ordinary use].

1) As a verb : expresses discontent or disapproval.

*ame ga fute soto e derare-nai kara tsumara-nai* (B) : what a nuisance ! it's raining and I can't go out.

*me ga warukute hon wo yomu koto ga dekinasen kara tsumarimasen* (C) : my eyes are bad so I'm not allowed to read, it's most annoying.

2) As an adj. : worthless ; foolish.

*tsumara-nai hon* : a stupid book.

*tsumara-nai hito* : a man of no importance.

*hon no tsumara-nai mono desu ga dōzo o tori kudasai* (D) : this is of no value but please be kind enough to accept it.

**tsumari**. After all ; in the end.

*kore wa tsumari dō naru darō?* (B) : I wonder what will be the outcome of all this.

*tsumari wa dō nan desu?* (B) : what does it all come to? what is the long and short of it all?

*dokhira ni shite mo tsumari onaji koto da* (B) : whichever we choose, it will all come to the same thing in the end.

**tsumbo**. A deaf person.

*tsumbo no haya-mimi* : the deaf have often sharp ears, (when others speak ill of them).

**tsume**. The nail (of the finger or toe) ; hoof ; claw.

**tsumetai**, [tsume nail ; itai painful]. Cold (to the touch, not of weather).

*te ga tsumetai* (B) : my hands are cold.

**tsumi**. Crime ; guilt.

*watakushi no tsumi desu* (C) : it is my fault.

*tsumi no nai kodomo* : an innocent child.

*onna wa tsumi no fūkai mono da* (B) : woman has many sins to answer for.

**tsumori**.

1) Intention ; purpose.

*ashita Tōkyō e iku tsumori desu* (C) : I intend to go to Tōkyō tomorrow.

*ao suru tsumori wa sūkoshi mo arimasen* (C) : I have not the least intention of doing so.

*dō suru tsumori desu ka?* (C) : what do you intend to do?

*dō iu tsumori de sonna koto wo shimasu ka?* (C) : what is your motive in doing such a thing?

2) Something to be borne in mind.

*sono tsumori de (i nasai)* (B) : so bear that in mind ; so now you know.

*o seji ga jōzu na no desu kara sono tsumori de irasshai* (C) : I warn you that he is very insincere in what he says.

*anata wa ii ka mo shiremasen ga, watashi wa kesshite shōchi shimasen kara sono tsumori de ite kudasai* (C) : you may think it all right but I warn you that I will never consent and don't you forget it.

3) Opinion ; calculation.

*ano hito wa jōbu na tsumori de iru* (B) : that man thinks himself strong.

*kanjō wa machigawa-nai tsumori desu* (C) : I think I counted right.

*atarashii tsumori de furui no wo katta* (B) : I bought an old article thinking it was new.  
*wakatta tsumori desu* (C) : I believe I understand it.

*tsumori-dōri ni wa nara-nakatta* (B) : it did not come up to my expectations.

*tsuna*. A rope.

*tsuno*. A horn.

*tsure-ru*. To take (person or animal) along with.

*imōto wo tsurete sampo ni itta* (B) : he took his younger sister with him for a walk.

*toshi wo toru ni tsurete* : as one grows older.

*tsuri*. The change, (money returned as balance of that tendered for an article); the honorific *o* is gen. pref.

*tsuru*. To hang by a string; suspend.

*sakana wo tsuru* : to catch a fish (with a line).

*ka-ya wo tsuru* : to put up a mosquito net.

*tana wo tsuru* : to put up a shelf; (Japanese shelves are usually suspended from above, not supported from below).

*tsutome*. Duty; obligation.

*kore wo suru no wa anata no tsutome desu* (C) : it is your duty to do this.

*tsutsumi*, [tsutsumu to wrap up]. Parcel.

Note. *Tsutsumi* is used in connection with the abb. 2nd set of num. 276, 4.

Comp.

*ko-tsutsumi* : a parcel (for the post).

*kami-zutsumi* : a paper parcel.

*tsutsumu*. To wrap up; pack; conceal.

*kami ni tsutsumu* : to wrap up in paper.

*tsutsuma-zu hakujō suru* : to confess without concealing anything; make a clean breast of it.

Der.: *tsutsumi*, q.v.

*tsuyoi*. Strong.

*ki no tsuyoi hito* : a brave man.

*hi ni tsuyoi* : fire-proof.

*chikara ga tsuyoi* : of great physical strength.

*tsuyoku atama wo butta* (B) : I hit my head very hard.

*tsuzuke-ru*, v.t. [cogn. w. *tsuzuku* v.i.]. To continue; keep up.

*hanashi wo tsuzukemashita* (C) : he continued his tale.

*mō sukoshi tsuzukete yarimashō* (C) : I shall go on with it a little longer.

*futsūka tsuzukete* : two days running.

Comp.

*ii-tsuzuke-ru* : to continue to speak.

*i-tsuzuke-ru* : to continue to stay.

*nomi-tsuzuke-ru* : to continue to drink.

*tsuzuku*, v.i. [cogn. w. *tsuzuke-ru* v.t.]. To continue; last.

*ii koto wa nagaku tsuzuka-nai* (B) : good luck doesn't last long.

*arashi ga futsūka tsuzukimashita* (C) : the storm lasted two days.

*tsuzuite Suzuki San mo dekakemashita* (C) :

soon after the other man, Mr Suzuki also left.

Der. and comp.

*tsuzuki* : the continuation.

*sono hanashi no tsuzuki wa ashita no shimbun ni demasu* (C) : the continuation of that story will appear in tomorrow's paper.

*furi-tsuzuku* : to fall continuously, (of rain, snow, etc.).

*teri-tsuzuku* : to continue bright, (of the weather).

'tte; 'tteba. One *t* is dropped after a final *n*.

1) 'te (=to itte mo) after the past tense has a concessive force—even if; although. Equivalent to the constructions noted in mo 4).

*kyō wa yonda 'te ko-nai deshō* (C) : even if you ask him, I don't think he will come today.

*ikura itta 'te ano ko wa kikimasen* (C) : no matter how often I tell that child, he won't obey.

2) A similar construction occurs with the adjective after changing the final *s* of the gerund into *a*; see 200, footnote. Neg. verbs are also constructed like this.

*yasūkita* (or *yasūkitta*) 'te kaimasen (C) : I won't buy it even if it is cheap.

*ko-nakitta 'te kamaimasen* (C) : even if he doesn't come, it doesn't matter.

3) 'te (=to itte).

*atsui no atsuku nai no 'te yake-sō deshita* (C) : talk about heat! it seemed as if we were burning.

*hau no hawa-nai no 'te yoku arukimasu* (C) : did you say creep? why he walks beautifully.

4) 'te (=to iu mono).

*hatoba 'te nan no koto desu ka?* (C) : what does hatoba mean?

5) 'te (=to iu; to itta; etc.).

*sō da 'te* (B) : so he says.

*aoi 'te* (B) : he says it's green.

*kirei desu 'te* (C) : he says it's pretty.

*o yu ni iku 'te demashita* (C) : he went out saying that he was going to the bath.

*arimasen 'te* (C) : he says there are none.

*ko-nakatta 'te* (B) : they say he didn't come.

*watashi wa mō kanai wo motō 'te tsumori wa nai* (B) : I have no intention of marrying again.

6) 'te (=to).

*komban kuru 'te imashita* (C) : he said he would come tonight.

*kore wa ii kūsuri da 'te kikimashita* (C) : I have heard say that this medicine is very efficacious.

7) 'tteba, a contr. of *to ieba* has two meanings: (a) *to iu no wa* or simply *wa*; (b) *to iu no ni*.

*Fumi 'tteba shijū sara wo kowashiteru no* (B) : Fumi is always breaking plates.



*jūton 'teba nan desū ka?* (C): what is a *jūton*?

*naze 'teba*, see *naze*.

*ike-nai 'teba...* (A): although I told you not to do it how is it that you still go on?

### 8) Various.

*ano hito no sei ga takai 'tte nai* (B): there can't be another man as tall as he is.

*watashi wa o-ide nasai 'te 'ta* (B): I told him to come. *'te=to*; *'ta* is a corr. of *itta*; compare 14, 2, b.

*'takusan' 'te 'ta 'te itsū mo no tōri desū* (C): although I said 'very much' it's only the same as usual. The 1st *'te=to* as in 6) above; the 2nd *'ta* is a corr. of *itta*; the 3rd *'te* is used as in 1) above; the sentence is therefore equivalent to *'takusan' to itte mo*, etc.

Note. The constructions noted under 4), 5), and 7) are mostly used by women.

### uchi.

#### 1) Inside.

*uchi kara jō wo oroshite-atta* (B): it was locked from the inside.

#### 2) Among.

*kono uchi ni aru darō* (B): it is probably among these.

*kono hon no uchi de dore ga ichiban ii no desū ka?* (C): which is the best of these books?  
*kono uchi ni shitteru hito wa hitori mo arimasen* (C): among these people there is not one that I know.

*kono uchi de donata mo zonzimasen* (D): I don't know any one among these people.  
*geisha no uchi ni wa kirei na no ga imasū* (C): some of the singing-girls are very pretty.

Note. In examples like the above *ni* and not *de* is used when the existence of a thing is in question.

#### 3) While; within.

*ni-san-nichi uchi ni*: within a few days.

*chikui uchi ni*: in a short time; soon.

*sono uchi ni*: in the meantime; in a short time.

*sono uchi ni agarimashō* (D): I will call on you shortly.

*shokuji wo shitteru uchi ni cha wo irete kure* (C): while we are eating make the tea.

*wakai uchi ni benkyō shite okeba yokatta* (B): I wish I had studied when I was young.

*fura-nai uchi ni kaerō* (B): I shall return before it starts raining; (*lit.* while it is not raining).

*mi-nai uchi wa wakarimasen* (C): I cannot judge until I see it; (while I don't see it).

*ano hito no ko-nai uchi ni yonde shimaishō* (C): I will have finished reading it before he comes.

*tegami ga ko-nai uchi wa ikaremasen* (C): I can't go until the letter comes.

*hiru no uchi wa hito-dōri ga ōi* (B): in the

day-time there are lots of people going and coming.

*akarui uchi ni kaera-nai to ikemasen*; *akarui uchi ni o kaeri nasai* (B): come back before it gets dark.

*hajime no uchi wa*: at first.

Note. When *uchi* is followed by a neg. verb it takes *wa*; when followed by an aff. verb it gen. takes *ni* but sometimes *wa*. In the last example but one, the two neg. verbs are equal to an aff.

#### 4) House; home; my husband.

*tomodachi no uchi ni orimasū* (C): I am staying at a friend's house.

*uchi ga wakarimasen* (C): I do not know where he lives.

*Tanaka San wa o uchi desū ka?* (C): is Mr Tanaka at home?

*uchi e kaerimasū* (C): I shall go back home.

*uchi no koto wa minna kanai ni saseru* (B): I leave household matters entirely to my wife.

*uchi wo tateru*: to build a house.

*uchi wo kari-ru*: to rent a house.

*uchi wo motsū*: to keep house.

*uchi wa mada kaerimasen* (C): my husband is not back yet.

#### 5) Uchi no: belonging to my household; my; our.

*uchi no Tarō*: my son (brother) Tarō.

*uchi no jōchū wa minna shōjiki desū* (C): all our servants are honest.

#### 6) Various.

*ima no uchi wa kore de gaman o shi nasai* (B): put up with this for the present.

*jū no uchi hachi*: eight out of ten.

#### Comp.

*uchi-uchi no*: private.

*kore wa uchi-uchi no hanashi ni shimashō* (C): let this be between ourselves.

*uchiwa*, [*utau* to strike; *wa* a wing]. A fan (non-folding).

*ude*, [*? ue* above; *te* hand]. Arm; skill.

*ude wo tamesū*: to test a man's ability.

*ude wo migaku*: to endeavour to improve (in manual work).

*ude no aru shoku-nin wo yatoitai* (B): I wish to engage a capable workman.

*ude-ru*. To boil or cook by boiling.

*ue*, (sometimes *uwa*).

#### 1) The top or higher part; above; upon.

*tana no ue ni ōte o kure* (A): put this on the shelf.

*tsukue no ue ga akimasū* (C): the top of the desk opens.

*ue no hō*: the top side.

*ue no hito*: a superior.

*yama no ue ni noboru*: to ascend a mountain.

#### 2) More than.

*ano hito wa watakushi yori jūtatsu ue desū* (C): he is two years older than I.

*kono ue no wa hachi-jis-sen desū* (C): the next one in order of expensiveness costs eighty sen.

*Kamakura made go-ri no ue desū* (C): it is more than five *ri* to Kamakura.

*kore yori ue no sake wa nai* (B): this is the very best sake that's made.

*kono ue mo nai shi-awase*: luck not to be surpassed.

### 3) Besides.

*sono ue*: besides that.

*tasukete moratta ue ni kane made moratta* (B): he not only saved my life but he also gave me some money.

*makeashita ue ni kai mo shi-nai de itte shi-maimashita* (C): he made me reduce the price and then went off without buying anything.

### 4) After; until after.

*mita ue de kau ka mo shiremasen* (C): I may possibly buy it after I have seen it.

*mita ue de nakereba kawaremasen* (C): I can't buy it until after I have seen it.

*atta ue de sōdan shimashō* (C): when I meet him I will consult him about it.

*chichi ni sōdan no ue de kimemashō* (C): after I have consulted my father, I shall decide about it.

*kangaerareru dake wa kangae mo shita ue no koto desū* (C): it is a thing I have decided on only after having considered it from every point of view.

### 5) Various.

*mi no ue banashi wo suru*: to talk about one's own personal affairs.

*ue ni wa ue ga aru*: it is impossible to find perfection.

*uwa no sora*: absence of mind.

### Comp.

*uwa-gaki*: the address written on an envelope, [*kaku* to write].

*uwa-gi*: a coat, [*ki-ru* to wear].

*ueru*, v.t. [cogn. w. *uwaru* v.i.]. To plant. *ki wo ueru*: to plant a tree.

### Comp.

*ue-ki*: a plant; a pot-plant.

*ueki-ya*: a gardener.

*ugokasū*, v.t. [cogn. w. *ugoku* v.i.]. To move; set in motion.

*ugoku*, v.i. [cogn. w. *ugokasū* v.t.]. To move.

*ha ga ugokimasū* (C): the tooth is loose.

*koko wo is-sun mo ugoki ya shi-nai* (B): I won't move an inch from here.

*kokoro ga ugoita no da* (B): his resolution was shaken; his heart was moved.

*ukabu*. To float.

*chotto mune ni ukabimashita* (C): it has just occurred to me.

*mada ii kangae ga ukaba-nai* (B): no good idea has occurred to me yet.

*ukagau*. To inquire; hear; visit; watch.

*sūkoshi ukagaitai koto ga arimasū* (C): there is something I wish to ask you.

*go byōki no yō ni ukagaimashita ga hontō de gozaimasū ka?* (D): I heard you had been ill, was that really so?

*kigen wo ukagau*: to inquire after somebody's health.

*chikai uchi ni o taku e o ukagai itashimasū* (D): I shall call on you shortly.

*ori wo ukagau*: to watch for an opportunity.

Note. *Ukagau* is a humble verb, used politely in the 1st person.

*ukeau*. To assure; guarantee; contract.

*kono kutsu nara jōbu na koto wa o ukeai itashimasū* (D): as for these boots I can guarantee their durability.

*watakushi wa sono shigoto wo ukeatta* (B): I have contracted to do that work.

*ukeru*.

1) To receive.

*okuri-mono wo ukeru*: to receive a gift.

*hito no sewa wo ukeru*: to receive another's assistance.

2) To be the subject of.

*on wo ukeru*: to be under obligations.

*dorobō no utagai wo ukeru*: to be under suspicion of theft.

*warui hyōban wo ukeru*: to get a bad reputation.

Note. *Ukeru* is a plain verb: the corresponding humble verbs, polite in the 1st person, are *itadaku* and *chōdai suru*.

Der. and comp.

*uke*: opinion about a person.

*uke no ii*: well spoken of.

*uke no warui hito*: a person of bad reputation.

*uke-dasū*: to ransom; redeem (as a pawned article, a singing-girl before her contract is up).

*hiki-ukeru*; *uke-toru*; *uke-tori*; q.v.

*uke-tori*, [stem of foll.]. A receipt.

*dōzo uke-tori wo kudasai* (D): please give me a receipt for it.

*uke-tori ni shite kudasai* (C): please receipt this (account).

*uke-toru*, [*ukeru* to receive; *toru* to take]. To receive.

*kinō o tegami wo uke-torimashita* (C): I received your letter yesterday.

*sore wa uke-tore-nai hanashi da* (B): that is an incredible story.

Der.: *uke-tori*, q.v.

*ukkari*. Thoughtlessly; carelessly.

*ukkari shite iru uchi ni kane-ire wo torareta* (B): when I wasn't thinking, my purse was stolen.

*ukkari mono desū* (C): he is an absent-minded fellow.

*ūma*. Horse.

*ūma ni noru*: to ride a horse.



*uma no mimi ni kaze* : like wind in a horse's ear (produces no effect whatever).  
**ūmai.**

1) Nice ; agreeable (of taste).

*undō suru to shokujī ga ūmai* (B) : when we take exercise we enjoy our meals.

*ūmaku ryōri shite aru* (B) : it is deliciously cooked.

2) Satisfactory ; skilful ; clever.

*ūmai, ūmai ! well done !*

*ūmaku o yari nasai* (B) : I hope you will be successful.

*kono hon wa ūmaku iku deshō ka ?* (C) : I wonder whether this book will be a success.

*ano hito wa ji ga ūmai* (B) : he writes a pretty hand.

*ūmaku naru* : to become good at anything.

*sō ūmaku wa ika-nai* (B) : it can't be done so well.

**ūmare-ru**, v.i. [cogn. w. *umu* v.t.]. To be born.

*Tōkyō de ūmaremashita* (C) : I was born in Tōkyō.

*watashi ga ūmarete kara* : after I was born ; from the time of my birth till now ; in all my life.

Der. and comp.

*ūmare* : birth.

*ano hito wa ūmare ga naka-naka ii* (B) : he is of very good birth.

*ūmare-tsūki* : inborn disposition, [tsūku to adhere].

**ūme-ru**.

1) To bury.

*ano shinda neko wo ūme nasai* (A) : bury that dead cat.

*hori wo ūmete kure* (A) : fill up that ditch.

2) To pour in cold water in order to reduce the temperature.

*atsui kara sūkoshi ūmete kudasai* (C) : please pour in some cold water, it is too hot.

**umi**, [mizu water]. The sea ; ocean.

*umi ga arete imasu* (C) : the sea is rough.

*kyō wa umi ga shizuka desu* (C) : the sea is smooth today.

Comp.: *mizu-umi* : a lake.

**umu**, v.t. [cogn. w. *ūmare-ru* v.i.]. To give birth to ; lay (as an egg).

Comp.: *umitate no* : new-laid, [see -tate].

**un**. Fortune ; luck.

*un no ii hito* : a lucky man.

*un shidai da* (B) : it is all a question of luck.

*watakushi wa un ga warui* (B) : I have bad luck.

*un wo tamesu* : to try one's fortune.

*un ni makasete yatte mimashō* (C) : I will trust to fortune and venture it.

*un ga muku* : luck is turning.

*un wa ten ni aru no da* (B) : our destiny lies on the knees of the Gods.

**unchin**, [chin fare]. Charge for transportation ; carriage ; cartage.

*unchin harai-sumi* : carriage paid.

*unchin saki-barai* ; see *saki-barai*.

**undō**. Movement ; exercise.

*undō suru* : to take exercise ; to canvass (for elections).

**ura**. The back ; rear ; opposite side ; lining.

*uchi no ura ni niwa ga arimasu* (C) : there is a garden at the back of the house.

*ura wo iu* : to speak ironically.

*ura wo tsūke-ru* : to line (a garment).

*te no ura* : the palm of the hand.

Comp.

*ura-gaesu* : to turn inside out.

*ura-mon* : the back-gate.

*ura-te* : the rear ; back-side.

**urayamashii**. Envious ; enviable.

*ā, urayamashii !* (B) : oh, I envy you.

*urayamashii ha da* (B) : those are teeth to be envied.

*anata no sugata ga urayamashii* (B) : I envy you your figure.

Der.: *urayamashigaru* ; *urayamashiku omou* : to feel envy.

**ure-ru**, v.i. [cogn. w. *uru* v.t. to which it serves as potential]. To sell ; can sell ; be sold.

*kore wa yoku ureru* (B) : this sells very well.

*ano hito wa kao ga urete iru* (B) : he is well known to the public.

*na no ureta hito* : a famous man.

Der.

*ure* : sale.

*ure no ii hon* : a book that sells well.

**ureshii**. Joyful.

*ureshii, ureshii !* (B) : oh, I am pleased.

*issu ni ikete ureshii* (B) : I shall be very happy to accompany you.

*sō shite kudasareba hontō ni ureshii no desu* (C) : if you would kindly do so you would give me great pleasure.

Der.

*ureshigaru* : to rejoice.

*tomodachi ga kita no de ureshigatte imasu* (C) : he is very happy because his friend has come.

**uru**, v.t. [cogn. w. *ure-ru* v.i. which serves as potential]. To sell.

*e-gagaki wa doko de utemasu ka ?* (C) : where can I buy some picture-postcards ?

Comp.

*uri-mono* : a thing for sale.

*uri-ya* : a house for sale.

*uri-te* : the seller.

*uri-kire-ru* : to be sold out.

**urusai**. Annoying.

*ā, urusai !* (B) : you are a nuisance ! how tiresome !

**ushi**. A cow ; ox ; bull.

*ushi wa ushi-zure, ūma wa ūma-zure* : birds of a feather flock together, [tsure-ru to take along with].

Comp.

*me-ushi* : a cow.

*o-ushi* : a bull ; ox.

*ko-ushi* : a calf.

**ushi**. The back ; rear.

*no ushiro ni* : behind.

*sono isu no ushiro ni* : behind that chair.

**uso**. A lie ; falsehood ; error.

*uso wo tsūku* ; *uso wo iu* : to tell a lie.

*sore koso makka na uso da* (B) : that is a barefaced lie.

*uso no* : false.

*honto no zōge desū ka, uso no desū ka?* (C) : is it true ivory or artificial ?

*ano hito wa toki-doki uso wo oshiemasu* (C) : that man sometimes teaches us wrong.

**Note**. *Uso* is often used familiarly as a mere contradiction to what has been said : you are mistaken ; that is not so.

**Der.** and comp.

*usorashi* : apparently untrue, [see *-rashi*].

*uso-tsūki* : a liar ; story-teller ; [*tsūku*2 to push].

**usui**. Thin ; not thick ; not dense.

*usui iro* : a light shade.

*shinsetsū no usui hito* : a man whose kindness is only superficial.

**utagai**, [stem of foll.]. Doubt.

*utagai mo naku* : without doubt.

*utagai wo ire-nai* (B) : it is not open to doubt

*utagai wa ano hito ni kakatta* (B) : suspicion fell upon him.

*utagai wo kakeru* : to suspect.

*utagai wo kakerare-ru* ; *utagai wo uke-ru* : to be suspected.

**utagau**. To doubt.

*hito wo utagau* : to suspect another.

**Der.** : *utagai*, q.v.

**utau**. To sing.

**Der.** : *uta* : a song ; poem.

**utcharu**, [corr. of *uchi-yaru*]. To throw away.

*utchatte oku* : to leave alone.

**utsū**. To strike ; beat ; kill.

*kugi wo utsū* : to drive a nail.

*ima utta no wa nan-ji desū?* (C) : what did it (the clock) strike just now ?

*ima ku-ji utta tokoro desū* (C) : it struck nine only a moment ago.

*kataki wo utsū* : to kill an enemy.

*tori wo utsū* : to shoot a bird.

*teppō wo utsū* : to fire a gun.

*dempō wo utsū* : to send a telegram.

*mizu wo utsū* : to sprinkle water.

*ten wo utsū* : to make a dot ; criticize ; find fault with.

**Der.** and comp.

*utsū* q.v.

*uchi-korosū* : to beat to death ; shoot dead ; kill.

**utsuru**, v.i. [cogn. w. *utsūsu* v.t.]. To remove ; be infectious ; be reflected.

*konaida Kanda e utsurimashita* (C) : I have lately removed to Kanda.

*utsuru byōki* : an infectious disease.

*ani no byōki ga otōto ni utsurimashita* (C) : the boy caught the illness from his elder brother.

*hi ga tonari no uchi ni utsutta* (B) : the fire spread to the neighbouring house.

*warui kuse wa jiki utsurimasu* (C) : bad habits are very catching.

*tsūki ga mizu ni utsutte kirei na koto!* (B) : how pretty the moon looks reflected in the water.

*kabe ni hito no kage ga utsutte iru* (B) : a man's shadow is thrown upon the wall.

*kono shashin wa yoku utsuttemasu* (C) : this photograph is well taken.

**utsūsu**, v.t. [cogn. w. *utsuru* v.i.]. To remove ; reflect (as in a mirror).

*sono hon wo minna tonari no heya ni utsushite kure* (A) : take all those books to the next room.

*fukuro no satō wo kan ni utsushimashō ka?* (C) : shall I empty the sugar out of the bag into the tin box ?

*kono tegami wo utsushite o kure* (A) : copy this letter.

*mizu ni kao wo utsūsu* : to reflect one's face in the water.

*kono shashin wa watashi ga utsushita no desū* (C) : I took this photograph.

**uwa-gaki**, [ue above ; kakul to write]. The address written on an envelope.

**uwa-gl**, [ue above ; ki-ru to put on]. A coat.

**uwaru**, v.i. [cogn. w. *ueru* v.t.]. To get planted.

**wa**. A ppn. that generally has an emphatic or contrasting effect ; it often seems to separate the words which precede it from the rest of the sentence. Though not in itself a sign of the nominative case, it is used more frequently after the subject than after the object. See 389-392 for a comparison of the use of *wa* and *ga* after the subject of a sentence.

1) After the subject.

*kore wa ginkō desū* (C) : this is a bank.

*tomodachi wa kinō Tōkyō ni ikimashita* (C) : my friend went to Tōkyō yesterday.

*anata wa gakkō ni iku no desū ka?* (C) : are you going to school ?

**Note**. As regards sentences like *anata wa, gakkō desū ka?* the author cannot agree with the opinion of Prof. Chamberlain (Handbook of Colloquial Japanese, p. 89) and Ballet (Grammaire Japonaise de la langue parlée, p. 199) who say it is absurd to call *anata wa* (you) the subject of this sentence. If *anata wa* is not the subject, what is the subject ? The translation suggested as the result of this hypothesis, viz. 'are you a school ?' is of course nonsense ; but if the fault lies in the subject, it ought to be remedied by



putting instead of 'you' the proper subject: this cannot be done. It seems, therefore, that the subject is *anata wa* (you), but the predicate is elliptical: the full sentence is *anata wa gakkō ni iku no desū ka?* are you going to school? The present writer is of opinion that, though *wa* is by no means of necessity the sign of the nominative case, in this particular instance it certainly is used after the subject of the sentence.

2) After the object.

*tabako wa nomu ga sake wa noma-nai* (B): I smoke but I do not drink sake.

*sonna kitanai mono wa o sūte nasai* (B): throw away a dirty thing like that.

*sara wa sara, chawan wa chawan to betsū na hako ni o ire nasai* (B): put the plates and the tea-cups in separate boxes.

3) After nouns or adverbs denoting time or place.

*kyō wa o tenki desū* (C): it is fine weather today.

*Tōkyō wa kono-goro atsui sō desū* (C): they say it has been hot in Tōkyō lately.

4) The separating effect is very noticeable in sentences like the following.

*shio wa, donō gurai mazatte imasū ka?* (C): how much salt is there in this? (I'm talking of salt, how much is there in it?).

*nashi wa, mono-oki ni arimasū ka?* (C): are the pears in the pantry? (I'm talking of the pears, are they in the pantry?).

5) Contrast, expressed or implied.

*kore wa takai, are wa yasui* (B): this one is dear, that one cheap.

*watakushi wa mairimasū* (D): I shall go (others may go or not as they please).

6) After the stem of a verb and followed by *suru* it is emphatic. When *suru* is in a neg. inflexion as it gen. is, *wa* may be corrupted to *ya*; (see 47-49).

*iki wa* (or *ya*) *shi-nai* (B): I shall not go.

7) After the stem of a verb followed by another inflexion of the same verb, it is also emphatic.

*yomi wa yomimashita ga wakarimasen deshita* (C): oh yes, I did read it, but I did not understand it.

8) In the above, the infinitive followed by *koto* or *ni* may take the place of the stem. *yomu koto* (or *yomu ni*) *wa yomimashita ga wakarimasen deshita*.

9) There are three distinct uses of *wa* after a gerund: a) when the gerund is the first component of a verbal phrase, the *wa* has an emphatic force; b) when the gerund (or adjective in gerundial form) is at the end of a clause, *wa* refers to a condition which may be put or has been put; c) it sometimes means repetition.

*nete wa i-nai* (B): oh no, he is not asleep.

*kotowatte wa okimashita ga kuru ka mo shi-remasen* (C): I certainly refused but he may come in spite of that.

*Yokohama e hikkoshite wa juben de gozaimasu* (D): it would be inconvenient for me to move to Yokohama, (if I were to move to Yokohama).

*benkyō shi-nakute wa ike-nai* (A): you must study; (if you don't study it won't do).

*omokute wa ikemasen* (C): it mustn't be heavy.

*takakute wa kaemasen* (C): as it is dear, I can't buy it.

*sō itte wa komaru* (B): if you say that you put me in a difficult position.

*ame ga futte wa komaru* (B): (a) if it rains I will be in a difficult position; (b) as it is raining I find myself in a difficult position.

*itazura wo shite wa shikarareru* (B): (a) if you get up to mischief you'll be scolded; (b) he is often scolded as he is always up to mischief.

For contr. of *wa* after a gerund, see below 14).

10) *Wa* is used in neg. sentences even more freely than in aff.; (comp. 94). In neg. sentences it may be used after the adverbial form of an adj.

*takaku wa nai* (B): it is not dear.

11) *Wa* may be added to almost all the postpositions except *ga*.

*Tōkyō ni wa arimasen* (C): there are none to be had in Tōkyō.

*ano hito no hanashi de wa*: according to what that man says.

See no 11), 12), 13); and to 2 18).

12) *Wa* is used in elliptical interrogative sentences with only a noun.

*inu wa?* (B): how about the dog? what of the dog? (This may mean: where is the dog? has the dog recovered? will you bring the dog with you? or almost anything according to context and circumstances).

13) Observe the following examples in which *wa* has not merely an emphatic force but changes the meaning considerably.

*minna miemasen* (C): I can't see any of them.

*minna wa miemasen* (C): I can't see them all.

*omokute ikemasen* (C): it is too heavy.

*omokute wa ikemasen* (C): it mustn't be heavy.

14) Contractions and corruptions.

We have seen above in 6) that *wa* is sometimes corrupted to *ya*.

The final *te* of a gerund and *wa* are contracted to *cha*. *Itte wa=itcha*.

The final *de* of a gerund and *wa* are contracted to *ja*. *Yonde wa=yonja*.

Note also the following, which are not given as a complete list, but rather as samples.

*de wa* = *ja* (very common).

*ni wa* = *nya*.

*no wa* = *nā*.

*kondo wa* = *konda*.

*sore wa* = *soryā*.

*atsūku wa* = *atsūka*.

**wa<sup>2</sup>.** Interjection used at the end of a sentence with a slight emphatic force: used only in familiar speech and almost exclusively by women.

*watashi wa kono hō ga ii wa* (B): I like this one, I do.

*sonna baka na koto wa nai wa* (B): I feel certain he hasn't done such a silly thing as that.

**wa<sup>3</sup>.** Hoop; ring; wheel.

*kuruma no wa*: the wheel of a wagon or rikisha.

*wa ni wa wo kakete iu*: to exaggerate.

Comp.: *yubi-wa*: ring, [*yubi* finger].

**wa<sup>4</sup>.** A wing: a.n. used for counting birds; also used for counting bunches of things tied together.

Note: 1 *ichi-wa* or *ip-pa*; 3 *sam-ba*; 6 *roku-wa* or *rōp-pa*; 10 *jip-pa*; 100 *hyap-pa*; 1000 *sem-ba*; *nam-ba*?

**wagamama**, [cogn. w. *watakushi* I; *mama* doing as one pleases]. Wilfulness; waywardness; self-will.

*wagamama na kodomo*: a wayward child; a child fond of getting its own way.

*kodomo wo wagamama ni sasete oku*: to let a child have its own way.

**wakai**. Young.

**wakareru**, v.t. 114, [cogn. w. *wakeru* v.t.].

To become separated; part with.

*wakarete iru*: to be separated, divided.

*ano onna wa teishu to wakareta* (B): that woman was divorced by her husband.

*o wakare ni mairimashita* (D): I have come to bid farewell.

Comp.: *fūfu-wakare*: divorcee.

**wakaru**, [*wakeru* to distinguish]. To understand; know.

Note. *Wakaru* is not a transitive verb like the English 'to understand': the object of the English verb becomes the subject of *wakaru* and takes the ppn. *ga* or *wa*; the English subject, when expressed in Japanese, occasionally takes the ppn. *ni*, more frequently *ni wa* or simply *wa*; but even in this latter case it is not the subject of the Japanese verb. All this will be better understood when it is remembered that *wakaru* is probably a corruption of *wakerareru* to be distinguished, be classified, be understood, pass. of *wakeru* to distinguish.

*Ei-go ga wakarimasen* (C): I (he, she, we, etc.) don't understand English.

*sonna muzukashii kotoba wa seiyō-jin ni wa wakarimasen* (C): foreigners don't under-

stand such difficult words.

*watashi wa Ei-go ga wakaru* (B): I understand English.

*ā, ima wakarimashita* (C): oh, now I understand.

*ano hito wa nani wo iu no da ka wakarimasen* (C): I don't understand what he says. *mono no wakatta hito*: a sensible, level-headed man; a man who understands things.

*are wa chitto mo wake ga wakara-nai* (B): he won't listen to reason.

*wakari no ii hito*: a man quick to understand.

*wakari no warui hito*: a man slow to understand.

*wakara-nai yatsu*: a silly person who can't understand.

*wakara-nai koto wo iu*: to say unreasonable things.

Comp.

*wakari-ii*: easy to understand.

*wakari-nikui*: difficult to understand.

*wakari-kitta*: well-known; obvious; [see *kiru*<sup>2</sup> to cut].

*sore wa wakari-kitta koto da* (B): that is quite obvious.

**wakasū**, v.t. [cogn. w. *waku* v.i.]. To boil.

**wake**, [stem of *wakeru* to distinguish].

1) Reason; cause.

*dō iu wake desū ka?* (C): what is the reason?

*kō iu wake desū* (C): this is the reason.

*dō iu wake de ano hito wa ko-nai no desū?*

(C): why doesn't he come?

*sō o omoi nasaru wake wa arimasen* (C): you have no reason to think so.

*sore ni wa fūkai wake ga aru* (B): there is an important reason for it.

*shitteru wake ga nai* (B): there's no reason why he should be aware of it.

*wake no wakatta koto desū* (C): that is reasonable.

*wake no wakara-nai yatsu*: a silly fellow who can't understand things.

*wake no wakara-nai koto wo iu*: to say things that are unreasonable.

*chitto mo wake ga wakara-nakatta* (B): I could not understand at all what it was all about.

*chanto shita wake ga nakute*: without due cause.

*sore wa nani ka wake ga aru ni chigai nai* (B): there must be some reason for it.

*dō iu wake ka kesa wa shimbun ga osoku kimashita* (C): for some reason or other the newspaper came late this morning.

*wake ga atte kyō wa ikare-nai* (B): there is a reason which makes it impossible for me to go today.

2) The meaning of *wake* in *wake ja nai* is sometimes very vague.



*watashi ga shinde mo naku hito hitori aru wake ja nai* (B): even if I die there's nobody to cry for me.

- 3) *Wake ni wa ika-nai* (or *mairimasen*) is used as a kind of neg. potential.

*sō hayaku yaru wake ni wa ika-nai* (B): it cannot be done so quickly.

*ima to natte wa yosō wake ni wa mairimasen* (D): we cannot exactly stop at this time.

- 4) Various.

*wake (mo) nai koto*: an easy matter.

*wake naku dekimasu* (C): it can easily be done.

*tōka mo o tenki ga tsuzuita no da kara mō futte mo ii wake desū ne?* (C): as we have been having fine weather now for ten days it is about time it rained, isn't it?

*sonna wake wa nai* (B): what you say is absurd.

#### Comp.

*ii-wake*: an excuse, [iul to say].

*mōshi-wake*: an excuse, [mōsū to say].

The difference between these two words seems to be that *ii-wake* is gen. used of excuses offered to me, and *mōshi-wake* of excuses made to the 2nd or 3rd person.

*omae wa itsu de mo ii-wake bakkari shite iru* (A): you have always got an excuse to give, (said to one's servant).

*kimi wa zuibun mōshi-wake ga ūmai ne* (B): I say, you are good at inventing excuses, (said to a fellow-servant).

*nante mōshi-wake wo suru tsumori desū?*

(C): what excuse are you going to make?

*go-busata itashimashite mōshi-wake ga go-zaimasen* (D): I have been sadly remiss about calling upon you and (I am afraid)

I have no excuse to offer.

**wakeru**, v.t. [cogn. w. *wakare-ru* v.i.]. To separate; part; distinguish.

*kodomo ni wakete yarimashō* (C): let's divide it among the children.

*kimi ni mo wakete agemashō* (C): I'll give you a share also.

#### Comp.

*kiki-wakeru*: to distinguish by hearing.

*mi-wakeru*: to distinguish by seeing.

**waku**, v.i. [cogn. w. *wakasū* v.t.]. To boil; gush forth.

*o yu ga waite iru* (B): the water is boiling.

*koko kara* (or *ni*) *kirei na mizu ga wakimasu* (C): there is a spring of clear water here.

**wan**. A bay.

Comp.: *Tōkyō-wan*, etc.: Tōkyō bay, etc.

**wara**. Straw.

**warau**. To laugh.

*hito no warau no wo chitto mo ki ni kake-nakatta* (B): he remained quite indifferent to the jeers of others.

*ōzei no naka de warawareta* (B): he was ridiculed before a large company.

*hara no naka de warau*: to laugh in one's sleeve.

#### Comp.

*warai-goto*: a laughing matter, [koto thing].

*warai-goto ja nai* (B): it is nothing to laugh about.

*niga-warai*: a sarcastic laugh; sneer.

**ware-ru**, v.i. 114; [cogn. w. *waru* v.t.]. To become cracked, split, divided.

*warete i-ru*: to be cracked, split, divided.

*sara wa fūtatsū ni wareta* (B): the plate is broken in two.

**wari**, [waru to divide].

- 1) Per ten; ten per cent; (see 308).

*ni-wari*: twenty per cent, (two per ten).

*san-wari go-bu*: thirty-five per cent.

- 2) Per centage of profit; profit; advantage.

*wari no ii shigoto*: lucrative work.

*watashi wa ichiban wari ga warui* (B): I am in a most disadvantageous position.

- 3) **Wari ni**: relatively; comparatively.

*wari ni yasui*: relatively cheap.

*kono yado-ya wa wari ni ii* (B): this inn is rather good (considering the size of this town).

*san to go no wari ni mazete kure* (A): mix them in the proportion of five to three.

**waru**, v.t. [cogn. w. *ware-ru* v.i.]. To break; crack; split; divide.

*sara wo otoshite warimashita* (C): I dropped the plate and broke it.

#### Comp.

*buchi-warui*: to break by a blow; break; [butō to strike].

*wari*; *kotowaru*; q.v.

#### warui.

- 1) Bad.

*shina-mono wa mihon yori warui* (B): the goods are inferior to sample.

*ā, warui koto wo shita* (B): oh, I have made a bad mistake.

*warui koto deshita ne* (C): I am sorry for that.

*waruku iu*: to speak ill of.

*Yamada San no koto wo waruku iu*: to speak ill of Mr Yamada.

*watakushi no iu koto wo waruku totte wa komarimasu* (C): I should be sorry if you were to take my words in bad part.

*waruku suru*: to spoil; ruin.

*waruku naru*: to go bad; become spoilt.

*dan-dan waruku naru*: to grow worse and worse.

- 2) Sick; ill.

*karada ga warui* (B): I feel ill.

*kyō wa nao warui* (B): he is worse today.

*kimochi ga warui*: to have a disagreeable feeling; to feel ill.

*nune ga warui*: to have a sickly feeling in the stomach.

## 3) Fault.

*watashi ga warui no de wa arimasen* (C) : it is not my fault.

*sore wa anata ga warui no da* (B) : that is your fault.

## 4) Serves to form numerous adjectival phrases, as :

*kuchi no warui* : coarse in speech.

*un no warui* : unlucky.

*taugō no warui* : inconvenient.

*iji no warui* : bad-tempered.

## Comp.

*waru-kuchi* : evil-speaking.

*waru-kuchi wo iu* : to speak ill of people ; call names.

**wasure**ru. To forget.

*wasurete wa ikemasen* (B) : don't forget it.

*sukkuri wasuremashita* (C) : I entirely forgot it.

*kisha no naka e wasurete kimashita* (C) : I left it (by mistake) in the train.

*shichi-ji ni wasure-nai de okoshite o kure*

(A) : don't forget to call me at seven.

## Comp.

*mono-wasure* : forgetfulness ; the forgetting of facts.

*wasure-mono* : a thing (e.g. umbrella) left behind, forgotten.

*o wasure-mono wa arimasen ka?* (C) : are you leaving nothing behind ?

*oki-wasure*ru : to mislay.

*wasureppoi* : forgetful ; absent-minded ; [see -ppoi].

**wata**, [compare French ouatte, German watte]. Cotton-wool ; wadding.

*karada ga wata no yō da* (B) : I feel as limp as a rag.

**watakūshi**, (often corr. to *watashi*, and, by women, even to *atashi*). I.

*watakūshi no desū* (C) : it is mine.

*watakūshi wa Tanabe desū* (C) : my name is Tanabe.

*watakūshi no nai hito* : a disinterested man.

*watakūshi naku shujin no tame ni hata-raita* (B) : he served his master disinterestedly.

## Comp.

*watakūshi-domo* : I and others ; we ; (not : you and I).

*watakūshi-tachi* : I and others ; you and I ; we.

**wataru**, v.i. 117, [cogn. w. *watasū* v.t.]. To go over ; cross over.

*hashi wo wataru* : to cross over a bridge.

**watashi**. See *watakūshi*.**watasū**, v.t. [cogn. w. *wataru* v.i.]. To take across (a ferry) ; hand over ; deliver.

*fune de hito wo watasū* : to carry a person across in a boat.

*kawa ni hashi wo watasū* : to make a bridge across a river.

*nimotsu wo watasū* : to hand over a parcel.

**waza to**. Purposely ; deliberately ; knowingly ; (refers gen. to something bad or disagreeable).

*waza to Ei-go de itte yatta* (B) : I said it purposely in English (so that that other person shouldn't understand).

*waza to watashi no hō e tabako no kemuri wo fuite yokoshita* (B) : he deliberately blew the smoke in my direction, (so as to annoy me).

**waza-waza**, [f. prec.]. Purposely ; expressly ; with special intention ; not incidentally ; (gen. refers to something done with a certain amount of trouble).

*waza-waza o tazune kudasa'imashite dōmo arigatō gozaimasū* (D) : thank you for coming expressly to see me.

*waza-waza ika-nakūte mo tsuide no toki ni katte kudasai* (C) : don't go on purpose, but the next time you go please buy it for me.

**wo**, (very often pron. o), ppn.

1) It is gen. the sign of the accusative or direct object of a transitive verb. *Hon wo kau* : to buy a book. Note the two meanings of *hako wo sagasu* : (a) to look for the box ; (b) to look in the box (for it), i.e. to search the box.

2) Used sometimes in connection with passive verbs. *Ashi wo inu ni kui-tsukare-mashita* (C) : I have had my leg bitten by a dog ; my leg was bitten by a dog. (124).

3) Used sometimes with verbs considered intransitive by the Japanese themselves ; the complement with *wo* then means the place at which or from which the action takes place. *Kisha wo ori*ru : to get down from a train. Note however *kuchi wo aite goran nasai*, open your mouth.

4) *Wo* after the objective case may often be used or dropped at will : this is especially common in the case of the verb *suru*, 158. *Baka (wo) iu na* (A) : don't talk nonsense. *Benkyō (wo) suru* : to study. *Jama (wo) suru* : to be in the way.

5) When the *wo* before *suru* has thus been dropped, the resulting combination forms a verbal unit which is sometimes transitive. *Ei-go wo benkyō suru* : to study English.

6) It is even possible to have two objects with *wo*. *O isogashii tokoro wo o jama wo itashimashita* (D) : excuse my having interrupted you when you were busy ; (lit. I interrupted your busy time). *Hi wo ki wo tsūke nasai* (A) : take care of the fire (that it doesn't set fire to anything, that it doesn't go out).

7) When two or more nouns connected by 'and' form the object, *wo* is placed only after the last one. *Kami to, empitō to, hon wo kaimashita* (C) : I bought some paper, a pencil and a book.



- 8) When *mo* is repeated after the objects in Japanese *wo* is not used after the last. *Kami mo hon mo kaimashita* (C) : I bought some paper and also a book.
- 9) In the case of contrast or emphasis *wa* may take the place of *wo*. *Sake wa nomanai ga tabako wa nomu* (B) : I don't drink sake but I do smoke.
- 10) When *suru* means 'to be' or 'to have' *wo* is changed to *ga*. *Nioi ga suru* (B) : there is a smell. *Zutsu ga suru* (B) : I have a headache.
- 11) For *mono wo*, see *mono* 10) ; *no wo*, see *no* 20).
- ya<sup>1</sup>**, (used only in comp.). The original meaning is 'a house', 'a shop' ; it after came to mean also the person who-keeps the shop or trades in an article ; sometimes only the meaning of person remains. The foll. are only a few examples.
- 1) House.  
*aki-ya* : an unoccupied house.  
*uri-ya* : a house for sale.  
*kashi-ya* : a house to let.  
*nikai-ya* : a two-storied house.  
*cha-ya* : a tea-house ; house for light refreshment.  
*ya-chin* : the house-rent, [*chin* hire].
- 2) Shop or tradesman.  
*kusuri-ya* : chemist (shop or person).  
*hon-ya* : bookseller (shop or person).  
*sentaku-ya* : laundry ; washerman.  
 Note. This class of comp. is extremely numerous. If we wish to show clearly that we are speaking of the person and not of the shop, we add *san* ; thus *sentaku-ya-san* the washerman.
- 3) Person.  
*kuruma-ya* : a rikisha-man.  
*yubin-ya* : a postman.  
*yakamashi-ya* : a fault-finding person.  
*wakara-zu-ya* : a man who won't listen to reason.  
*oya* : the landlord, [*o-* big ; the landlord was supposed to be a more important person than the tenant].
- ya<sup>2</sup>**, ppn.
- 1) A conjunction used in enumerations (especially when the list is not given as complete) : it is used after each member except the last.  
*tonari no uchi de wa, inu ya neko ga sūki to miemasu* (C) : they seem to be very fond of dogs and cats (and such like animals) in the house next door.  
*Ya* is repeated after the last member in the phrases :  
*nani ya ka ya ; sore ya kore ya* : one thing and another ; this, that and the other ; all sorts of things.
- 2) Exclamation.  
*Haru ya !* (A) : I say, Haru !
- 3) Sometimes a corr. of *wa*, (49).  
*iki ya shi-nai* (B) : I certainly will not go.
- 4) In the written language *ya* often expresses doubt ; in the spoken language it hardly has this meaning except in *moshi ya = moshi ka* : supposing.
- ya-**, [*yatsū* eight]. Eight ; abb. 2nd set of num. (276, 4).
- yā**, [*yatsū* eight]. Eight ; 3rd set of num. (271 ; 275).
- yabuke-ru**, v.i. [eogn. w. *yabuku* v.t. to which it serves as potential]. To get torn ; be able to tear.  
*yabukete iru* : to be torn.  
*kimono ga yabukemashita* (C) : I've torn my dress.  
 Comp. : *yabuke-yasui* : easily torn.
- yabuku**, v. t. [f. *yaburu* : eogn. w. *yabukeru* v.i. which also serves as potential]. To tear.  
*kimono wo yabukimashita* (C) : I've torn my dress.  
*mecha-mecha ni yabuku* : to tear into small pieces.
- yaburu**. To tear ; rend.  
*yakūsoku wo yaburu* : to break a promise.
- ya-chin**, [*ya* house ; *chin* hire]. The house-rent.
- yado**. Home ; temporary residence ; my husband.  
 Comp. : *yado-ya* : an inn.
- yahari**. Original but less common form of *yappari*, q.v.
- yakamashii**. Noisy ; fault-finding.  
*ā, yakamashii* (B) : what a noise !  
*yakamashiku iu* : to find fault ; make a fuss.  
*yakamashii hito* : a fault-finding person.
- yake-ru**, v.i. [eogn. w. *yakul* v.t.].
- 1) To become destroyed by fire, burnt.  
*yūbe no kaji de go-jik-ken ijō yaketa sō desu* (C) : in last night's fire they say that more than fifty houses were burnt down.
- 2) To get baked, toasted.  
*sakana ga yakete imasu* (C) : the fish is roasted.  
*hinata wo aruku to hi ni yakeru* (B) : if you walk in the sun you will get sunburnt.
- 3) Various.  
*sewa no yakeru kodomo* : a child who gives a lot of trouble, or requires a great deal of attention.  
*oku-san wa sore wo mitara hidoku yakemashita* (C) : when his wife saw that she became very jealous.  
 Comp. : *yake-yasui* : said of a colour that easily fades or is spoilt by the sun.
- yakimochi**, [*yakul* to burn]. Jealousy.  
*yakimochi wo yaku* : to be jealous.
- yakul**, v.t. [eogn. w. *yake-ru* v.i.].
- 1) To burn.  
*te wo yaku* : to burn one's fingers.  
*sumi wo yaku* : to make charcoal.

- 2) To bake; toast; roast.

*mo chitto yoku yaite o kure* (A): roast it a little more.

*setomono wo yaku*: to bake porcelain.

- 3) Various.

*sewa wo yaku*: to be officious; trouble oneself about another.

*inu wo moratte mo sewa wo yaku hito ga nai* (B): even if I got a dog there would be no one to look after it.

*oku-sama wa sore wo mitara yakimashita* (C): when his wife saw that, she became very jealous.

Comp.

*yaki-mono*: earthenware.

*yaki-zakana*: roast fish.

## yaku<sup>2</sup>. Translation.

*ano hito wa yaku ga ūmai* (B): he translates very well.

*kore wo Ei-go ni yaku shite kudasai* (C): please translate this into English.

Comp.: *yakusu(ru)*: to translate, (160).

## yaku<sup>3</sup>. Service.

*yaku ni tatsū*: to be serviceable; be of use.

## yakūsoku. A promise; agreement.

*yakūsoku (wo) suru*: to promise.

*yakūsoku wo yaburu*: to break a promise.

*yakūsoku wo mamoru*: to keep a promise; fulfil an engagement.

*yakūsoku wa dekimasen* (C): I can't promise.

*go-yen no yakūsoku desū* (C): we have agreed on five yen.

Comp.: *yakūsoku-dōri*: according to promise, [tōri way].

## yama. Mountain; heap; the wild part of the country.

*yama ni noboru*: to climb a mountain.

*yama no yō ni*: in great quantity.

*hito ga yama no yō ni atsumatte imashita* (C): people gathered in a large crowd.

Note. Used after the abb. 2nd set of num. (276, 4). *yama* means a heap or pile.

Comp.: *yama-zakura*: a wild cherry-tree.

## yame'ru, v.t. [cogn. w. *yamu* v.i.]. To stop; cease; leave off; give up.

*tabako wo yame'ru*: to leave off smoking.

*iku no wo yamemashita* (C): I gave up the idea of going.

*yamesae'ru*: to dismiss (as a servant).

## yamu, v.i. [cogn. w. *yame'ru* v.t.]. To stop; cease.

*ame ga yanda* (B): the rain has stopped.

*yane*, [yai house; no ue above]. Roof.

## yao-ya, [yai house, person]. Greengrocer, (shop or tradesman).

## yappari, [corr. of *yahari*].

- 1) Also; too; not—either.

*ashita mo yappari ame darō ka?* (B): I wonder whether it will rain again tomorrow?

*anata mo yappari sō datta no desū ka?* (C): was that the case also with you?

*anna hito de mo yappari kane ga hoshii to mieru* (B): even such a man appears to want money all the same.

*yappari omae mo ikare-nai* (B): you can't go either.

- 2) After all is said and done; still.

*yappari sen-yen gurai wa kakaru darō* (B): still it will probably cost a thousand yen or so.

*yappari yame-nai de yaru ga ii* (B): still you had better stick to it.

## yaru.

- 1) To give (to an inferior).

*takusan yatta, mō yara-nai* (A): I have given you plenty, I'll give you no more.

- 2) After a gerund it means that the action is performed on or in favour of another person, (this person is an inferior). Frequently, however, it adds almost nothing to the meaning of the first verb.

*uwa-gaki wo kaite yarimashō ka?* (B): shall I write the address for you?

*dōzo kono ko wo anata no jochū ni shite yatte kudasai* (C): please do this child the favour of taking her as a servant.

*butte yaru*: to give a beating; beat.

*shikatte yaru*: to give a scolding; scold.

*itte yaru*: to give orders; send word.

- 3) To send.

*tegami wo yaru*: to send a letter.

*tsūkai wo yatte kudasai* (C): please send a messenger.

*dare ka Tōkyō e tsūkai ni yaritai* (B): I wish to send somebody on an errand to Tōkyō.

*o isha wo yobi ni yatte kudasai* (C): please send for the doctor.

*dare ka tori ni yarimashō* (C): I will send somebody for it.

*naoshi ni yaru*: to send to be mended.

*motasete yaru*: to send by a person.

- 4) To do.

*mō yatte mo yō gozaimasū ka?* (D): may I do it now?

*ano hito wa ima nani wo yatte iru ka?* (B): what is he doing now?

*hon-ya wo yatte imasū* (C): he has a book-shop.

*Ei-go wo o yari desū ka?* (C): are you studying English?

*yahari yame-nai de yaru ga ii* (B): still you had better stick to it.

*sei wo dashite yaru*: to try hard.

*yatte miru*: to try to do; have a try.

*o hima no toki ni yatte goran nasai* (C): try to do it when you have time.

*mā, yatte mimashō* (C): well, I'll have a try.

*yatte kita* (B): he is here; he has turned up.

Comp.: *yari-tōsū*: to put through; carry out.

*yasai(-mono)*. Vegetables.

*yasashii*. Easy; aimable.

*yase'ru*. To get thin.



*amari shimpai suru to yaseru* (B) : over-anxiety makes one thin.

Der.: *yaseta*, adj.: thin; lean.

*yashinau*. To nourish; support.

*yoppodo karada no yashinai ni naru* (B) : it is extremely nutritive.

*yasui*.

1) Cheap.

*yasui kara yoku uremasu* (C) : as it is cheap it sells well.

*hoka de wa motto yasui* (B) : I can get it cheaper somewhere else.

*yasukarō warukarō* : cheap but of bad quality.

2) Easy.

*o yasui go yō* : no trouble-at all.

Comp.

*yasu-mono* : a cheap article (depreciatory).

*yasuppoi* : cheap (depreciatory), [see -ppoi].

*yomi-yasui* : easy to read.

*yabuke-yasui* : easily torn.

*yasumi*, [stem of foll.]. Rest; holiday.

*kyō wa ginkō wa yasumi desu* (C) : the bank is closed today.

*ashita wa yasumi desu ka?* (C) : is tomorrow a holiday?

*yasumu*, [*yasui* easy]. To rest; cease from work; go to bed; lie down.

*ano ki no shita de yasumimashō* (C) : let us rest under that tree.

*byōki de nagaku gakkō wo yasunde imasu* (C) : I have been absent from school a long time through illness.

*watashi wa taitei jū-ji ni yasumimasu* (C) : I generally go to bed at ten.

*o yasumi nasai* (C) : good night.

*sūkoshi o yasumi nasai* (C) : you had better rest a moment.

Der.: *yasumi*, q.v.

*yatara* (na). Careless; reckless.

*yatara ni butareta* (B) : I was knocked about (as in a scuffle).

*yatou*. To hire; engage; employ.

*jochū wo yatou* : to engage a servant.

Comp.: *yatoi-nin* : a servant; employee.

*yatsuī*, (gen. pron. *yattsū*). Eight.

Note. In comp. *yatsuī* is abb. to *ya-*; see 276, 4.

*yatsuī*2. Fellow; thing.

*shitsūrei na yatsuī da* (A) : you are a rude fellow.

*yatto*. Practically equal to *yōyō*, q.v.

*yawa*, [*yatsuī* eight]. Eight, (in the 3rd set of num. 271; 275).

*yawarakai*; *yawaraka* (na) (223). Soft; tender; gentle.

ye. See el.

yen, (gen. pron. en, 8). The Japanese dollar.

Note : 4 *yo-yen* is always used instead of *shi-yen*; 7 *nana-yen* often heard instead of *shichi-yen*; 9 *kyū-yen* sometimes instead of *ku-yen*.

*yo*1. The world.

*yo no naka wa dan-dan kawatte iku* (B) : the things of this world are gradually changing.

*kono yo wa kurushimi no yo no naka da* (B) : this world is a world of suffering.

*yo ga yo nara ibatte irareru no da* (B) : if times had not changed, he would be holding up his head.

*yo*2. Night.

*yo no ake-nai uchi ni* : before dawn.

Comp.

*yo-ake* : dawn.

*yo-ban* : night-watchman, [*ban*1 a guard].

*yo-jū* : all night long.

*yo-naka* : midnight.

*yoru*1 q.v.

*yo*3. An interj. placed at the end of a sentence for emphasis. Sometimes the gerund foll. by *yo* takes the place of the indicative. *Yo* is always familiar and used mostly by women; the construction with the gerund, only by women.

*iku no yo!* (B) : I am off.

*abunai yo!* (B) : look out!

*o tabe yo!* (A) : eat some.

*atashi mo itte yo* (B) : I am going (went) too.

*yo!* a childish way of insisting or repeating a request : please do.

*yo-*, [*yotsū* four]. Four, (in the abb. 2nd set of num. 276, 4; also used sometimes instead of *shi*3, 272; 273).

*yō*1, [*yotsū* four]. Four, (in the 3rd set of num. 271; 275).

*yō*2. Business; something to be attended to; use.

*asūko ni yō ga aru* (B) : I have business there; I have something to attend to there.

*yō ga takusan arimasu* (C) : I am very busy.

*anata ni yō ga arimasu* (C) : I want you for something.

*nan no go yō desu ka?* (C) : on what business have you come? what can I do for you?

*nani yō ga dekita?* (A) : what is it now? what do you want now?

*yō ga dekita* (B) : something has occurred that engages my attention.

*yō ga katazuita* (B) : I have finished the business.

*yō ni tate ru* : to utilize.

*yō wo ii-tsuke ru* : to order to do something.

*yō wo suru* : to do work.

Comp.

*yō-ji* : business; [meaning and uses practically identical to *yō*2]; [*ji*4 affair].

*iri-yō*, q.v.

*yō*3.

1) *Yō na* : like.

*Yamada San no yō na ii hito wa makoto ni mezurashii* (B) : men as good as Mr Yamada are very rare.

*nani ka kowareta yō na oto ga shimashita* (C) : I heard a noise as if something had been broken.

*kono yō na ; kō iu yō na* : like this.  
*sono yō na ; sō iu yō na ; ano yō na ; ā iu yō na* : like that.

*kono yō na kire ga arimasu ka ?* (C) : have you any cloth like this ?

*Yamada San no inu no yō na ōki na inu wa mita koto ga arimasen* (C) : I have never seen a dog as big as Mr Yamada's.

*moshi tōka ni korare-nai yō nara denwa de sō itte kudasai* (C) : if you shouldn't be able to come on the 10th, let me know by telephone.

*kō iu hon ga yome-nai yō de wa Aoyama gakkō e haire-nai* (B) : if your education is not sufficient to enable you to read books like this, you cannot enter Aoyama College. (Remember that a noun foll. by *de* is equivalent to a gerund ; a gerund foll. by *wa* has the force of a conditional.)

*bimbō no yō ja nai* (B) : he doesn't look poor.  
*sore wo kiite taihen ni odoroiita yō na fū wo shimashita* (C) : when he heard that he pretended to be greatly surprised.

2) *Yō ni* : a) as ; like.

*kono yō ni koshirae moraitai* (B) : I want it made like this.

*anata no ii yō ni nasai* (B) : do as you please.  
*moto no yō ni naoshite kudasai* (C) : please mend it as it was before.

*omou yō ni ikimasen mono desu* (C) : things don't always go as one thinks they will.

*ima made no yō ni yoku nemuru koto ga dan-dan sūkunaku natta* (B) : he's was no longer able to enjoy the good, long sleep he was accustomed to.

*mai-ban no yō ni* : almost every night.

3) *Yō ni* : b) in order to ; so as to ; so that.  
*ashita kuru yō ni itte kure* (A) : tell him to come tomorrow.

*okure-nai yō ni isoide o-ide nasai* (B) : go quickly so as not to be late.

*shokuji wo dasu yō ni Yosuke ni itte o kure* (A) : tell Yosuke to serve dinner.

*kodomo ni kaze wo hikae-nai yō ni ki wo tsuke nasai* (A) : be careful and keep the children from taking cold.

4) *Yō ni suru*.

*hi ga kie-nai yō ni shi nasai* (A) : don't let the fire go out.

*kore wo same-nai yō ni shite oki nasai* (A) : don't let this get cold.

*okure-nai yō ni shitai mono desu* (C) : I should like to arrange things so as not to be late.

*hayaku o naori nasaru yō ni shitai mono desu* (C) : I hope you will soon recover.

5) *Yō ni naru*.

*Nagasaki ni mo densha ga dekiru yō ni nari-*

*masu* (C) : Nagasaki also is to have tram-cars.

*kono-goro wa yūbin ga ooku kuru yō ni natta* (B) : recently the post has been arriving late.

*Brown San wa kuni e kaeru yō ni natta* (B) : Mr Brown finds that he is obliged to return to his native land.

*akambō ga tateru yō ni narimashita* (C) : the baby is now able to stand.

*Nihon no hito mo dan-dan yōfuku wo kiru yō ni narimashita* (C) : little by little the Japanese are beginning to wear foreign clothes.

6) *Yō da* after verbs, adj., q-adj. in *na* or *no*, and other nouns foll. by *no* means : it seems ; looks as if.

*ame ga furu yō desu* (C) : it looks like rain.  
*kono tatami wa kitanai yō da* (B) : these mats seem to be dirty.

*ano uchi wa kirei na yō de gozaimasu* (D) : that seems to be a pretty house.

*are wa dorobō no yō da* (B) : he looks like a thief.

*ano hito wa Ei-go ga o deki no yō de gozaimasu* (D) : it seems as if that man could speak English. (A verbal stem is equivalent to a noun.)

*komaite o-ide no yō desu* (C) : he seems to be in great trouble. (Remember *o-ide* is equivalent to a verbal stem.)

7) Kind ; form.

*ichi-yō* : of the same kind.

Comp. *Yō* may be added to the stem of a great many verbs ; it means way of doing.  
*sono koshirae-yō wo oshiete kudasai* (C) : please tell me how to make it.

*dō shite mo wa to ga no tsūkai-yō ga wakaranai* (B) : I never know how to use *wa* and *ga* correctly.

*kesa wa kutsu no migaki-yō ga tari-nakatta* (A) : you didn't polish my boots enough this morning.

*sono shi-yō wa shirimasen* (C) : I don't know how to do it.

See also *shiyō*.

-*yō* ; -*yō-bi*, [hiil day]. Suf. to the names of the days of the week.

*nichiyō(-bi)* : Sunday, [nichi sun].

*getsuyō(-bi)* : Monday, [getsu moon].

*kayō(-bi)* : Tuesday, [ka fire].

*suiryō(-bi)* : Wednesday, [sui water].

*mokuyō(-bi)* : Thursday, [moku tree].

*kingyō(-bi)* : Friday, [kinl metal].

*doyō(-bi)* : Saturday, [do earth].

*kyō wa nani yō-bi desu ka ?* (C) : what day of the week is it today ?

*yobu*. To call.

*kodomo wo yobu* : to call a child.

*o yobi nasaimashita ka ?* (D) : did you call me ?

*isha wo yobi ni itta ga ruu datta* (B) : I went for the doctor but he was out.



*Kin wo yobi ni yarimashō ka?* (C): shall I send somebody to call Kin? shall I send Kin to call him (e.g. the doctor)?

Comp.

*yobi-ageru*: to call out.

*yobi-kaesu*: to call back.

*yobi-rin*: a small bell (as for calling a servant).

*yōfuku*, [fuku] clothes. Foreign clothes, (especially the outer garments).

*yōfuku wo kiru*: to put on foreign clothes.

*yogore-ru*, v.i. 114, [cogn. w. *yogosu* v.t.].

To get soiled, dirty.

*yogorete iru*: to be soiled, dirty.

*kimono ga yogoreta* (B): my dress is dirty.

*yogosu*, v.t. [cogn. w. *yogore-ru* v.i.]. To soil; make dirty; stain.

*koronde kimono wo yogoshita* (B): I fell and soiled my clothes.

*kao wo yogosu*: to bring disgrace upon somebody.

*yohodo*. Original but less common form of *yoppodo*, q.v.

*yoi*, [yoshi the literary form of *yoi*]. Good; (*yoi* is gen. corr. to *ii*; the other inflexions such as *yō*, *yoku*, *yokatta*, etc. suffer no alteration).

1)

*ii ko ni o nari nasai* (B): be a good child.

*o tenki*: fine weather.

*sore wa yokatta* (B): that was very fortunate.

*taihen yoku narimashita* (C): it has greatly improved; he is much better now.

*ii ja arimasen ka?* (C): well, that's all right, isn't it?

*sore de ii* (B): that will do; enough of that.

*kore wa anata ni ii deshō* (C): I think it will do you good.

*kore wa doko ga ii no desū?* (C): what is the good of this?

*anata no ii yō ni nasai* (B): do as you please.

*uchi ni iru no ga ichiban ii* (B): I like staying at home best.

*ii to omou dake haratte kudasai* (C): just pay what you think right.

*ii hana wa ii mi wo mota-nai*: it's not the prettiest flowers that result in the finest fruit.

*ame dake nara ii ga kaze ga tsuyoi* (B): if it were only the rain it wouldn't matter so much, but the wind is so strong.

*ii ka?* (A): after a proposition may mean: do you agree? have you anything to say against it?

*yō gozaimasu* (D): very well; all right.

2) *De mo ii* means qualified satisfaction, a makeshift.

*empitsu de mo ii* (B): a pencil will do (though I'd prefer a pen).

*kaette kara de mo ii* (B): it will be time enough when you come back.

*nan de mo ii* (B): anything will do.

*itsu de mo ii* (B): any time will do.

3) *Ii* after a gerund means approval, and has, sometimes, a mild imperative force.

*tabete ii* (A): eat it.

*inaka wa atarashii yasai ga taberarete ii* (B): I like the country because you get fresh vegetables to eat.

4) A gerund foll. by *mo ii* means permission, liberty.

*itte mo ii* (A): you may go.

*matte i-nakute mo ii* (A): you need not wait.

*nakute mo ii* (B): I can do without it.

*kyō uchi e itte (mo) yō gozaimasu ka?* (D): would you allow me to go home today, please? (Notice that the presence or absence of *mo* sometimes makes very little difference.)

5) A cond. (or construction equivalent to a cond.) foll. by *yoi*, serves to give or to ask for advice.

*kasa wo motte ikeba ii* (B): you had better take an umbrella.

*dono michi wo itara yokarō?* (B): which road shall I take?

6) The present or past of a verb foll. by (*hō*) *ga ii* is a curt way of expressing one's opinion amounting almost to a command; by using the future of *yoi*, the sentence becomes more polite.

*kasa wo motte iku (hō) ga ii* (B): you had better take an umbrella.

*kasa wo motte iku (hō) ga ii deshō* (C): perhaps it would be better to take an umbrella.

7) The gerund foll. by the past of *yoi* serves to express approval of past line of conduct.

*kasa wo motte itte yokatta* (B): it was a good thing you took an umbrella.

8) Disapproval of past line of conduct may be expressed by any of the foll. combinations:

infinitive, <i>hō ga</i>	} and {	<i>yokatta (no ni)</i> .
present conditional		<i>yokatta darō (ni)</i> .
infinitive, <i>to</i>		<i>ii no ni</i> .

*kasa wo motte iku hō ga yokatta (no ni)* (B): you ought to have taken an umbrella.

*mō sūkoshi ki wo tsukereba ii no ni* (A): you ought to have been more careful.

*motto hayaku ikeba yokatta* (B): I wish I'd gone earlier.

9) Desire coupled with doubt, fear or regret is translated by the present conditional foll. by *ii*, or the present foll. by *to ii*. Doubt is emphasized by adding *ga* or *keredomo*; regret, by adding *no ni*.

*ano hito ga kyō kuru to ii ga...* (B): I wish he would come today but... (I am afraid he will not be able to).

*ame ga fura-nakereba ii no ni* (B): I wish it wasn't raining.

*anata wa jibun no koto dake shite ireba ii* (B):

I wish you would mind your own business.

- 10) The adverb *yoku* refers sometimes vaguely to the perfection of the act, sometimes to the frequency of the act, sometimes to the difficulty surmounted.

*yoku shirimasen* (C): I don't exactly know.

*yoku nite imasu* (C): it is very much like it.

*yoku kimasu* (C): he often comes.

*yoku byōki ni naru* (B): he is often ill.

*yoku anata wa Nihon-go wo wasuremasen ne* (C): it is remarkable that you don't forget your Japanese.

*yoku nasaimashita* (D): I am surprised to see you have been able to do it.

*yoku koware-nai mono da* (B): it is wonderfully strong.

*yoku irasshaimashita* (D): I am glad you came.

- 11) *Yoi* serves to form numerous adjectival phrases, as:

*un no ii*: lucky.

*naka no ii*: intimate.

*tsugō no ii*: convenient.

*iji no ii*: good-tempered.

*genki no ii*: lively.

Comp.

*yosai-sō*: apparently good, [see. -sō].

Often added to the stem of a verb.

*sumi-ii*: good to live in.

*wakari-ii*: easy to understand.

*yomi-ii*: easy to read.

*yō-ji*, [yō2 business; ji4 affair]. Meaning and uses practically the same as *yō2* q.v.

*yōka*, [yatsū1 eight; -ka q.v.]. Eight days; the eighth day of the month.

*yokei* (na).

- 1) Excessive; superfluous.

*kore wa yokei na mono da* (B): this is superfluous.

*kore de wa yokei de gozaimasu* (D): this is a little too much.

*yokei ni wa moraimasen* (C): I won't take more than necessary.

*yokei na kane wo tsukatte wa ike-nai* (A): don't buy unnecessary things.

*yokei na koto wo iu*: to say unnecessary things; speak of things that don't concern the matter in hand.

*yokei na kuchi wo dashite wa ike-nai* (A): don't speak when you are not wanted.

*yokei na o sewa da* (A): don't interfere; mind your own business.

*yokei na koto wo shi-nai de o kure* (A): don't interfere.

- 2) More; most.

*dochira no hako ga yokei hairu darō?* (B): which box (of two) holds the more?

*ik-kin yori yokei de wa nai* (B): it is not more than one pound.

*yokeru*. To turn aside; avoid.

*ame wo yokeru*: to shelter from the rain.

*basha wo yokeru*: to get out of the way of a carriage.

*michi wo yokeru*: to get out of the way.

*yokka*, [yotsū four; -ka q.v.]. Four days: the fourth day of the month.

*yoko*. Side.

*yoko ni shite oite kudasai* (C): please lay it on its side.

*Ei-go wa yoko ni kaku* (B): English is written sideways, (not up and down like Japanese).

*yoko ni naru*: to lie down.

*yoko no mono wo tate ni mo shi-nai* (B): he is an idle, good-for-nothing fellow.

*yoko kara kuchi wo dasu*: to interfere in other people's conversation.

*yokosū*. To send (towards the speaker); hand over (to the speaker).

*jochū wo kochira ni yokoshite kudasai* (C): please send the maid here.

*tegami wa yokoshita* (B): I have received a letter.

—to *itte yokoshita* (B): he wrote to say—; he sent a message to say—.

*yokubar*. To be avaricious, covetous.

Der.

*yokubari*: avarice; greed.

*yokubari na*: avaricious.

*yome*, [yobu to call; me female]. Daughter-in-law; a bride; wife of the son of the house, who has become a member of her husband's family and taken his name; compare *muko*.

*yome ni yaru*: to give (a girl) in marriage.

*yome wo toru* (or *morau*): to take a wife.

*yome ni iku*: to get married (said of the girl who goes to the husband's house).

*yomeru*, v.i. [cogn. w. *yomu* v.t. to which it serves as potential]. To be able to read.

*komakakute yome-nai* (B): it (the printing) is so small I cannot read it.

*ano hito no kokoro wa sukkanari yomemashita* (C): I can read that man's heart through and through.

*yomu*, v.t. [cogn. w. *yomeru* v.i. which serves as potential]. To read.

*kore wo yonde kudasai* (C): please read this.

*kore wo yonde kikashite kudasai* (C): please read this to me.

*Rongo yomi no Rongo shira-zu*: to learn the precepts of the wise, but not to practise them. (Rongo is the title of one of Confucius's books.)

Comp.

*yomi-ii*; *yomi-yasui*: easy to read, [yoi; yasui easy].

*yomi-nikui*: difficult to read.

*yomi-kakeru*: to begin to read, [see *kakeru*].

*yomi-otosu*: to omit in reading.

*yon*, [yotsū four]. Four; used occasionally instead of *shi*; see 272; 273.



**yopparau.** To get drunk.

*yopparatte iru* : to be drunk.

**Der.:** *yopparai* : a drunkard.

**yoppodo**, [corr. of *yohodo*]. A good deal; much; very.

*watashi yori yoppodo jōzu da* (B) : he is much better at it than I.

*yoppodo hayaku dekita* (B) : it was very quickly done.

*yoppodo dekimashita* (C) : the greater part is done.

*jū-ji mo yoppodo sugimashita* (C) : it is long past ten o'clock.

*ano toki wa yoppodo hito ga shinda* (B) : a great many people perished then.

*yoppodo na wake* : a very serious reason.

**yori.**

1) In comparisons—than.

*Asama yori Fuji ga takai* (B) : Fuji is higher than Asama.

*ik-kin yori yokei de wa nai* (B) : it is not more than one pound.

*kore wa are yori ii* (B) : this is better than that.

*noru yori aruku hō ga ii* (B) : I would rather walk than ride.

*nani yori kekkō na o shina wo arigatō gozaimasu* (D) : thanks for your splendid present (more-splendid-than-anything present).

*kore wa kore wa nani yori* (B) : thanks for your splendid present.

*matsū yori iku hō ga ii* (B) : it is better to go than to wait.

*Nikkō yori tōi tokoro e wa ika-nai hō ga ii* (B) : you had better not go anywhere farther than Nikkō.

2) If both the things compared have the quality, but one has it in a higher degree than the other, *mo* may be put after *yori*.

*niku yori mo sakana ga sukui* (B) : I like fish better than meat, (though I also like meat).

*omotta yori mo hayakatta* (B) : it was earlier than I expected (though I knew it would be early).

3) Except.

*watakushi yori hoka ni wa dare mo shirimasen* (C) : nobody knows except myself.

*kono shōbai wo yameru ka, yoso e hikkosū ka, dotchi ka suru yori shikata ga nai* (B) : I must either give up this trade or move somewhere else, no other course of action is possible.

4) From; used in this sense in formal speeches but not in ordinary colloquial.

**yorokobu.** To rejoice.

*yorokonde iru* : to be happy, pleased.

**Der.**

*yorokobi* : pleasure; happiness.

*chichi no yorokobi wa donna deshō* (C) : how pleased my father will be.

**Yōroppa**, [Spanish or Portuguese, Europa]. Europe.

**yoroshii**, [cogn. w. *yoshi*, *yoi* good]. Hardly ever used attributively; predicatively very similar to *yoi*, *ii*; the adverbial inflexion *yoroshiku* has special uses.

1) Good; right.

*kaette mo yoroshii* (A) : you may return.

*mō yoroshii* (A) : I want no more; that is enough.

*yoroshii* : very well; all right.

*byōki mo dan-dan yoroshii* (B) : he is recovering little by little from his illness.

*rusu-chū wa yoroshiku tanomimasu* (C) : please look after things for me while I'm away.

*dōzo yoroshiku o negai mōshimasu* (D) : please grant me the favour of your friendship, (said on being introduced to somebody).

2) *Yoroshiku* is very frequently used for sending or giving greetings.

*dōzo, Satō San ni yoroshiku itte kudasai* (C) : please remember me kindly to Mr Satō.

*mina-san ni yoroshiku* (C) : remember me to everybody (at home).

*Yamada San ga yoroshiku to osshaimashita* (D) : Mr Yamada wished to be remembered to you.

**yoru**<sup>1</sup>, [yo<sup>2</sup> night; *aru* to be]. Night.

**yoru**<sup>2</sup>, v.i. [cogn. w. *yoseru* v.t.].

1) To collect; assemble; approach; draw near.

*hito-tokoro ni yoru* : to collect in one place.  
*satō wo oku to hai ga yoru* : if you leave sugar about, flies will collect.

*yoru to sawaru to sono hanashi desu* (C) : they talk of it whenever they meet.

2) To call in when passing.

*michi de Nakamura San no uchi e yorimashō* (C) : I shall call at Mr Nakamura's on my way.

*fune wa Moji e yorimasu ka?* (C) : does the steamer call at Moji?

*soba e yotte yoku goran nasai* (C) : come near and have a good look.

**yoru**<sup>3</sup>. To rely; depend upon; be according to.

*sore wa o tenki ni yoru* (B) : that depends on the weather.

*nimotsū no taka ni yorimasu* (C) : it depends on the amount of luggage.

*ni yotte*; *ni yoru to*; *ni yoreba* : according to, *toki ni yotte*; *baai ni yotte* : according to circumstances.

*hana ni yotte nioi ga nai* (B) : some flowers have no smell.

*nimotsū no mekata ni yotte unchin ga chigaimasu* (C) : the charge varies according to the weight of the case.

*o tegami ni yoru to* : according to your letter.  
*Asahi Shinbun ni yoreba Amerika ni ō-*

*jishin ga otta sō da* (B): according to the Asahi Shimbun there has been a great earthquake in America.

*yosa-sō* (na), [*yoi* good; -*sō* q.v.]. Apparently good.

*yoseru*, v.t. [cogn. w. *yoru*<sup>2</sup> v.i.]. To collect; add up; let call or stop in passing.

*yosete kudasai* (C): please add it up.

*uchi e yose-nai*: to forbid a person the house.

Comp.: *tori-yoseru*: to get; procure.

*yoshi*. Good; right; (*yoshi* is a literary form used sometimes in colloquial).

*yoshi, yoshi*: all right.

Der. and comp.

*yoi*; *yoroshi*; *o-hito-yoshi*; q.v.

*yoso*. Another, a different place.

*yoso no kuni*: a foreign country.

*yoso no kodomo*: somebody else's child, not belonging to this house, not mine.

*kyō wa chotto yoso e ikimashita* (C): he has just gone out today.

*kono natsu doko ka yoso e ikimasu ka?* (C): are you going anywhere this summer?

*yoso yori wa yasuku urimasu* (C): I sell cheaper than elsewhere.

*yoso wo mi-ru*: to look away.

*yosū*. To stop; cease; leave off; give up.

*o yoshi nasai* (B): leave off; don't do that.

*somo kitanai mizu wo nomu no wa o yoshi nasai* (C): don't drink that dirty water.

*iku no wo yoshimashō* (C): I'll give up the idea of going.

*yōsū*.

1) Condition; state.

*ima no yōsū*: the present state of affairs.

*ano hito no yōsū*: that man's condition of health, financial, etc.).

*hitotsū yōsū wo mite kimashō* (C): I will just go and see how things are getting on.

*tonari no heya de yōsū wo kiite ita* (B): I was listening in the next room to what was happening.

2) Carriage; manners; deportment.

*yōsū no ii hito*: a person with a handsome appearance.

*yotsū*, [gen. pron. *yottsū*]. Four.

Note: in comp. *yotsū* is abb. to *yo-*; see 276, 4.

*yottari*, [*yotsū* four; *oru* to be: compare *fū-tari*]. Four persons.

*yottsū*. See *yotsū*.

*yowai*. Weak; infirm.

*watashi wa sake ni yowai* (B): I have a weak head for spirits.

*ki no yowai hito*: a timid man.

Der.: *yowaru*, q.v.: to become weak.

*yowaru*, [*yowai* weak]. To become weak, fatigued, perplexed.

*yowatta koto ni natta* (B): it has become a perplexing affair.

*nani wo sonna ni yowatte iru?* (B): what are you so downcast about?

*yōyō*. At length; at last; scarcely. *Yōyō* refers to something the accomplishment of which was wished for: compare *tōtō*.

*shokujū ga yōyō dekimashita* (C): dinner is ready at last.

*kono-goro yōyō hanashi ga dekiru yō ni nari-mashita* (C): I am able at last to converse a little.

*ano hito wa yōyō san-jū gurai da* (B): he is hardly thirty years old.

*yōyō kisha ni ma ni aimashita* (C): I was just able to catch the train.

*yōyō koko made nigete kita* (B): I have just managed to escape here.

*kinō yōyō o tegami ga todokimashita* (C): your letter only reached me yesterday.

*yu*. Hot water; a hot bath; (the honorific *o* is gen. prefixed).

*o yu ni hairu*: to take a hot bath.

*o yu ga wakimashita ka?* (C): is the water boiling? is the bath ready?

*nurui yu*: tepid water.

Comp.: *nie-yu*: boiling water.

*yū!*. See *iū* to say, and *iū*<sup>2</sup> to do up the hair.

*yū*<sup>2</sup>. Evening.

Comp.

*yū-han*; *yū-meshi*: evening meal, [*han*<sup>3</sup>, *meshi* meal].

*asa-yū*: morning and evening.

*yūbe*: last night.

*yūgata*; *yūkata*: towards evening; twilight.

*yūbe*. Last night.

*yubi*, (often pron. *ibi*). Finger.

*yubi (wo) sasū*: to point out with the finger.

*yubi wo otte kazoe-ru*: to count on the fingers.

*ashi no yubi*: toe.

Comp.

*yubi-sasū*: to point out (with the finger).

*yubi-ua*: ring (ornament for the finger).

The fingers are called:

*oya-yubi*: thumb, [*oya* parent].

*hito-sashi-yubi*: index, [*hito* man, *sasū* to point out].

*naka-yubi*: second finger, [*naka* middle].

*kūsuri-yubi*: third finger, [*kūsuri* medicine; this finger is often used for applying ointments].

*ko-yubi*: little finger, [*ko* small].

*yūbin*. The post; mail.

*yūbin wa mada kimasen* (C): the mail has not come yet.

*yūbin wo dasū*: to post (whatever there is for the post).

Comp.

*yūbin-ya*: postman.

*yūbin-bako*: post-box; pillar-box.

*yūbin-kitte*: postage stamp.

*yūbin-kyoku*: post office.



**yūgata** ; **yūkata**. Towards evening ; sunset ; twilight.

**yuka**. Floor.

**yuki**. Snow.

*yuki ga furu* : to snow.

**yukkuri**. Leisurely ; not in a hurry ; slowly (gen. in a good sense).

*dōzo yukkuri hanashite kudasai* (C) : please speak slowly.

*kono isogashii no ni yukkuri shite ite wa ike-nai* (A) : when we are so busy you must not take it easy like that.

*go yukkuri* (C) : don't go away so soon ; don't hurry away ; (said to a guest when he says he must be going).

*mata yukkuri mairimasu* (D) : I'll come again and have a long talk.

**yuku**, (gen. pron. *iku* q.v.). To go.

*Kyōto-yuki no kisha* : the train for Kyōto.

**yume**. A dream.

*yume wo mi-ru* : to dream.

*inu no yume wo mi-ru* : to dream about a dog.

*kowai yume* : a nightmare.

*yume ni mo shira-nai* (B) : I never even dreamt of it.

*maru de yume no yō desu* (C) : it seems just like a dream to me.

*yume wo mite iru kokoro-mochi deshita* (C) : I felt as if I were dreaming.

**yūmel** (na). Famous.

**yurui**. Loose.

Der. : *yurusu*, q.v.

**yurusu**, [*yurui* loose]. To loosen ; set free ; pardon ; permit ; consent.

*hito ni kokoro wo yurushte wa ike-nai* (A) : never confide in another.

*o tō-san ga o yurushi ni narimashita ka?* (D) : did your father allow you ?

*yurushte kudasai* (D) : please consent to it ; please pardon me.

*yurushte itadakitai* (C) : I beg to be excused, (declining an offer).

Der.

*yurushi* : permission.

*yurushi wo uke-ru* : to get permission.

**yusugu**. To rinse ; cleanse by washing.

**yuu**. See *iu*1 to say, and *iu*2 to do up the hair.

**zannen**. Regret ; disappointment.

*zannen da ga...* : I am sorry (to say) that...

*zannen desu ga ikarimasen* (C) : I regret I cannot go.

*ano hito wa anata no ko-nai no wo zannen ni omotte imashita* (C) : he was disappointed at your not coming.

*zannen nagara...* : much as I regret it, still...

**zara-zara** (na). Rough ; coarse.

*kono kire wa zara-zara de iya* (B) : I don't like this cloth, it is rough.

*zara-zara shita* : rough ; coarse.

**zasshi**. A magazine ; periodical.

**zatto**. Roughly ; coarsely.

*isogashikatta no de zatto ōji shimashita* (C) : as I was busy I could not sweep the room very carefully.

*zatto ni-hyaku-yen gurai kakarimasu* (C) : roughly it will cost about two hundred yen.

**zeshi**. By all means ; without fail.

*zeshi hayaku o-ide nasai* (C) : be sure to come early.

*zeshi kyō wa ika-nakereba nara-nai* (B) : I must go today without fail.

*zeshi ikitai 'tte* (B) : he says he wouldn't like to miss going for anything.

**zeitaku**. Luxury.

*sonna zeitaku wo itte wa ike-nai* (A) : don't ask for such luxuries.

*zeitaku na* : luxurious.

**zentai**. The whole.

*kotoshi wa zentai kome ga yoku dekita* (B) : this year the rice-crop has been good everywhere (in all Japan).

*zentai no kangae de kō iu koto ni kinemashita* (C) : acceding to the general opinion.

I have arranged this.

*zentai de kore dake desu* (C) : this is all there is.

*zentai anata ga yoku nai no da* (B) : after all you were to blame.

**zo**. Interj. at the end of a sentence adds force to an assertion, a command or a prohibition.

*kita zo, kita zo !* (B) : he has arrived.

*sō ja nai zo !* (B) : I tell you it's not so.

*damara-nakereba butsū zo !* (A) : if you are not silent, I'll beat you.

**zōge**. Ivory.

**zōkin**. A house-cloth ; duster.

**zoku** (na). Common ; vulgar.

*kare wa zoku na hito da* (B) : he is a very common man.

*zoku ni iu baka to wa kimi no koto da* (A) : you are what they commonly call a fool.

Comp. : *zoku-go* : colloquial language.

**zonji'ru**.

1) To know. *Zonji'ru* is a humble verb used politely in the 1st person ; *go zonji de aru* or *go zonji de irassharu* is an honorific verb used politely in the 2nd person ; the corresponding plain verb is *shiru*2. *Go zonji nasaru* and *go zonji ni na ru* are also used politely in the 2nd person in certain cases, especially in the neg. In the 1st person the neg. is much more common than the aff.

*Ei-go wo zonjimasen no de fuben de gozaimasu* (D) : I find it very inconvenient not knowing English.

*chitto mo sono koto wa zonjimasen* (D) : I know absolutely nothing about it.

*banchi wo go zonji desu ka?* (C) : do you know his address ?

*anata no go zonji no kata desu ka?* (C): is he an acquaintance of yours?

*go zonji no tōri*: as you know.

2) To think; feel; (used in the 1st person).

*o tegami wo arigatō zonzimāsū* (D): many thanks for your letter. (Note the exceptional termination of the adj.)

*hito no mae de sonna koto wo suru no wa yoku nai to zonzimāsū* (C): I think you ought not to do a thing like that before other people.

**zonzai** (na). Sloven; careless; rude.

**zōri**. Sandals; Japanese slippers.

—**zu**. Suf. used for forming the neg. gerund; it often has the meaning of without.

*kutsu wo tora-zu ni haitte mo ii* (A): you may go in without taking off your boots.

*chichi ga nokora-zu koborete shimatta* (B): every bit of the milk was spilt, (without any remaining over).

**zubon**. Trousers.

Comp.: *zubon-shita*: drawers, [*shita* under].

**zuibun**. Very; a great deal; rather.

*zuibun omoshirokatta* (B): I was very much amused.

*kyō wa atsui ne, zuibun* (B): it's awfully hot today, isn't it?

*zuibun na hito da* (B): well, there's a nice fellow for you! (ironical).

Note. *Zuibun* is not used in interrogative sentences.

**zurui**. Sly; cunning; unfair.

*zurui yatsū*: a cheat.

**zutsū**. Each; apiece; at a time.

*jis-sen zutsū de kaimashō* (C): I'll buy them at ten sen each.

*kippu no kane wo hitori mae go-jis-sen zutsū dashite kudasai* (C): each one of you please give me fifty sen, the price of the ticket.

*hitotsū-zutsū*: one at a time; one by one.

*hitori ni mitsū zutsū wakete kudasai* (C): please distribute them three to each person.

*mai-toshi ni-do zutsū*: twice a year.

**zutsū**. A headache.

*zutsū ga suru*: to have a headache.

**zutto**.

1) Direct; straight.

*kono michi wo zutto o-ide nasai* (C): go straight along this road.

2) Very much.

*ano hito no hō ga zutto tsuyoi* (B): that man is by far the stronger.

*zutto mae*: a long time ago; long before that.



大正四年十二月二十一日印刷  
大正四年十二月二十三日發行  
大正六年十月十三日訂正印刷  
大正六年十月十六日訂正再版發行



編輯者兼  
發行者

橫濱市本牧町箕輪下三百五十番地

アーサー、ロース、イニス

印刷者

橫濱市山下町六十一番

シー、エツチ、ソー

印刷所

同所

ボックス、オプ、キユリオス社

發行所

橫濱市山下町七十八番

クリー、アンド、ウォルシ株式會社

# Conversational Japanese for Beginners.

NEW EDITION

## ADDENDA ET CORRIGENDA

### PART II.

- Page 11, col. 3, line 25. After : *NAKUTE* add : (or *NAKUTTE*)  
,, 14, line 11. Erase : in hypothetical cases.  
,, 24, ,, 5 from bottom. After : However, add : the negative future of  
*suru* is *shimai*, of *kuru*, *komai* or *kimai*,  
,, 25, col. 3, lines 11 and 26. After : *nakute* add : (or *nakutte*).  
,, 30, line 13. After : *ni* add : occasionally *kara*.  
,, 36, ,, 14. After : compounds add : written in one word ;  
,, 41, ,, 4. After : *mo ii* add : or by the negative conditional follow-  
ed by *nara-nai koto wa nai* :  
There's no necessity for you to go ; *ika-nakereba nara-nai koto wa*  
*nai*.  
,, 54, line 18. Instead of : a true read : an  
,, ,, 20. After : child add : *Te no kirei na'onna* ; a woman with  
pretty hands.  
,, 62, line 1. After : degrees add : *tabi* times,  
,, ,, ,, After : o'clock add : *jikan* hour,  
,, 68, ,, 9. Instead of : *meridian* read : *meridiem*  
,, 95. After line 9, add :

In cases like the above, it is almost impossible to get a real word for word quotation, even when you ask for it : it is likewise impossible to get a servant to give a message in your exact words, if they do not happen to correspond with his or her idea of politeness.

### PART III.

- Page 9, col. 1, after line 28, add :

*Tarō mo Jirō mo dekiru, ato dare ni mo deki-nai* (B) : Tarō and Jirō  
can do it, nobody else can.

- ,, 56, col. 2, at bottom, add :

*o isha kara iwareta* (B) : I (he) was told by the doctor.

- ,, 68, col. 2, line 49. Instead of : *kiru*<sup>1</sup> read : *ki'ru*<sup>1</sup>.

- ,, 128, col. 1, after line 55, add :

Note :—*Soshite* serves generally to connect complete sentences, but it is clumsy and should not be used too freely. It sometimes serves to join nouns (*inki soshite pen*, pen and ink), and in this case it is occasionally found used pleonastically, when *to* or *ni* has already been employed (*inki to soshite pen*).





# BOOKS ON JAPANESE

BY

ARTHUR ROSE-INNES.

---

**Kelly & Walsh's English-Japanese Conversation Dictionary.** 2nd edition, 283 pp. 1 yen. A practical little pocket-dictionary which will generally give you not only the word you want, but the very sentence you wish to say.

**Conversational Japanese for Beginners.** In four parts, paper cover, 1 yen each. Parts I, II and III in one volume, cloth binding, 3 yen.

Part I. Graduated Exercises in Conversational Japanese with an English translation. New Edition.

Part II. Elementary Grammar of the Japanese Spoken Language. New Edition.

Part III. Vocabulary of Common Japanese Words with numerous examples and notes. New Edition.

Part IV. The Japanese text of Part I in large Japanese characters with *kana* alongside.

**Examples of Conversational Japanese.** In three parts: Part I, 100 pp. 1 yen; Part II, 104 pp. 1 yen; Part III, 138 pp. 50 sen.

Part I consists of Japanese tales told in simple language with an English translation alongside. Specimen page overleaf.

Part II consists of tales and anecdotes. No translation is given but the words used are all found in the vocabulary of CONVERSATIONAL JAPANESE FOR BEGINNERS. Specimen page overleaf.

Part III is the Japanese text of Parts I and II in Japanese characters with *kana* alongside.

**3000 Chinese-Japanese Characters in their Printed and Written forms.** 2nd edition, 230 pp. 1 yen,

The written forms of the characters are due to the brush of the celebrated Prof. Tamaki Aiseki.

---

**KELLY & WALSH, LTD.**

YOKOHAMA, SHANGHAI, HONGKONG AND SINGAPORE.



# EXAMPLES

## OF

### CONVERSATIONAL JAPANESE

#### SHITA-KIRI SUZUME

<sup>1</sup>Mukashi, mukashi, <sup>2</sup>o jii-san to o  
bā-san ga <sup>3</sup>suzume wo katte orimashi-  
ta. <sup>4</sup>Aru hi <sup>5</sup>o bā-san wa sentaku wo  
shiyō to omotte, <sup>6</sup>nori wo nite okima-  
shita. <sup>7</sup>Sentaku wo sumasete <sup>8</sup>nori wo  
tori ni kimashitara, <sup>9</sup>nori wo irete oita  
domburi dake atte <sup>10</sup>nori ga miemasen.

“Oya, dō shita no darō?”

<sup>1</sup>To, <sup>2</sup>hōbō sagashite iru uchi ni,  
<sup>3</sup>mukō no kago no suzume ga me ni  
tsukimashita.

“Omae wa koko ni atta nori wo  
shira-nai kai?”

“<sup>1</sup>Domburi ni atta nori de goza-  
imasu ka? <sup>2</sup>Sore nara watakushi ga  
itadakimashita.”

“Omae ga tabete shimatta?”

“<sup>1</sup>Ee, <sup>2</sup>itsumo watakushi no e wo  
irete itadaku domburi ni haitte ima-  
shita kara, <sup>3</sup>tabete mo ii no da to omot-  
te.”

#### THE SPARROW THAT HAD ITS TONGUE CUT OUT

<sup>1</sup>Once upon a time, <sup>2</sup>an old man  
and an old woman <sup>3</sup>kept a tame  
sparrow. <sup>4</sup>One day <sup>5</sup>the old lady pro-  
posed doing her washing, <sup>6</sup>(so) she  
made some starch and went to her  
work. <sup>7</sup>When she had finished her  
washing <sup>8</sup>and went to fetch the starch,  
<sup>9</sup>she only found the bowl in which  
she had put the starch; <sup>10</sup>the starch  
itself was gone.

“Oh! what does this mean?”

<sup>1</sup>Thus (she spoke); <sup>2</sup>and while she  
was looking around, <sup>3</sup>she happened  
to see the sparrow that was in its cage  
over there.

“Do you know anything about the  
starch that was here?”

“<sup>1</sup>Do you mean the starch that was  
in the bowl? <sup>2</sup>If that (is what you  
are referring to), I ate it up.”

“You ate it up!”

“<sup>1</sup>Yes, <sup>2</sup>as it was in the bowl in  
which my food is usually put, <sup>3</sup>I  
thought there would be no harm in  
eating it.”

# EXAMPLES OF CONVERSATIONAL JAPANESE

---

## KECHIMBŌ<sup>1</sup>

Taisō kechi na o jii-san ga arimashita. Aru hi :

“Chōmatsu, omae o tonari ni itte, kugi wo utsu no desu ga, o uchi no kanazuchi<sup>2</sup> wo chotto kashite kudasai; to itte karite kite o kure.”

“Hai.”

Chōmatsu wa tonari ni ikimashita.

“Konnichi wa. Makoto ni sumimasen ga, o uchi ni kanazuchi ga gozaimashitara, kashite kudasaimasen ka ?”

Tonari no o jii-san mo yappari kechi deshita kara :

“Nani ni tsukau no desu ?”

“Shujin ga kugi wo utsu no ni tsukaimasu.”

“Kugi wa, kane no kugi desu ka, take no desu ka ?”

“Kane no deshō.”

“Sonnara kashite ageru koto wa dekimasen to, sō itte kudasai. Take no kugi nara, sō de mo nai ga, kane no kugi nan-ka uttara, kanazuchi ga hette taihen da.”

Chōmatsu wa odorosite, uchi ye kaeri, tonari no o jii-san ga itta tōri wo shujin ni hanashimashita.

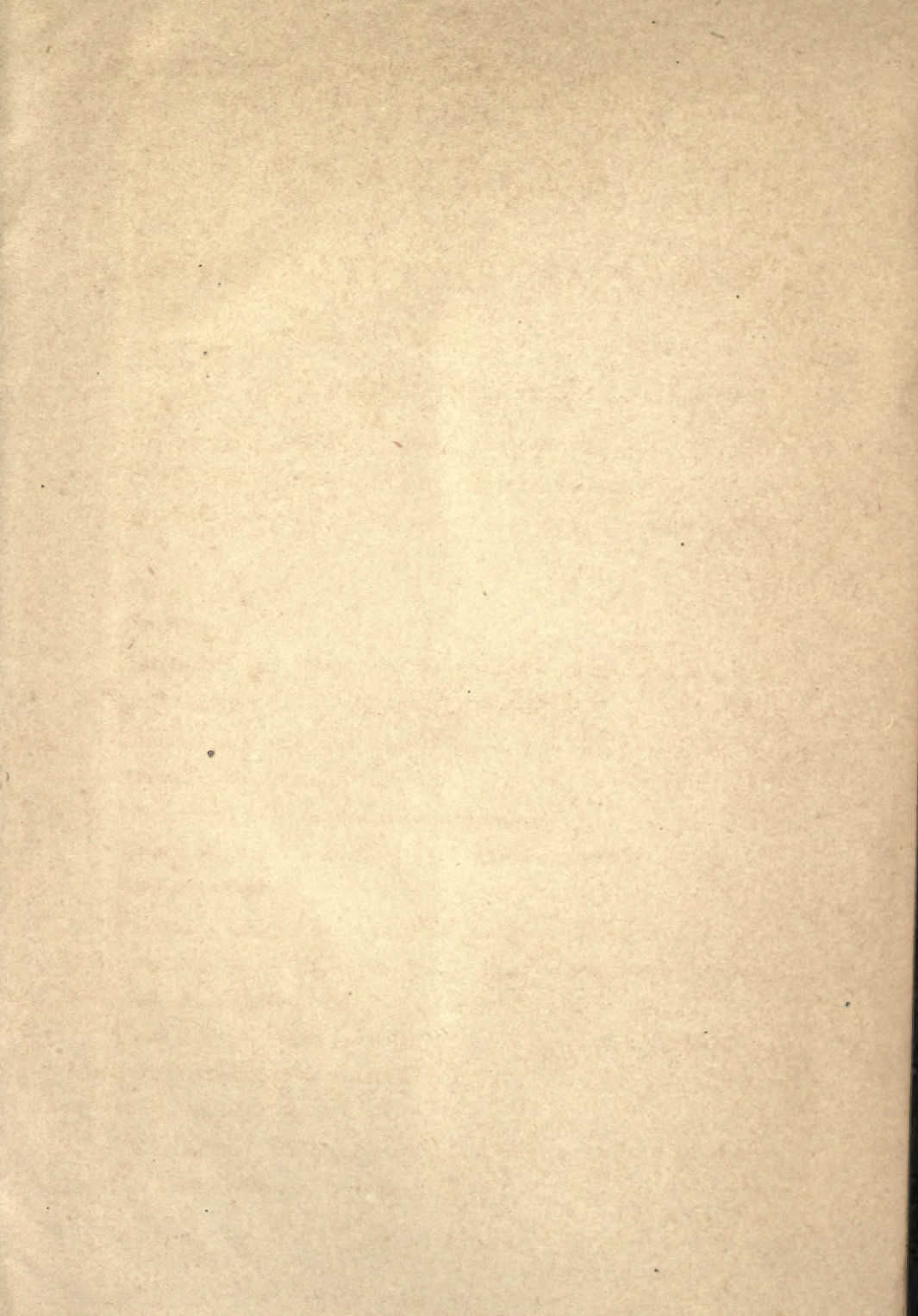
Shujin wa kore wo kiite :

“Mā, nan to iu kechi na yatsu darō. Sore de wa dōmo shi-kata ga nai. Uchi no wo dashite tsukaō.”

<sup>1</sup>*Kechimbō*, miser. <sup>2</sup>*Kanazuchi*, hammer.











UC SOUTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY



**A** 000 132 668 5



